



# Diseases of the Knee

Management in Medicine and Surgery

ANTHONY F DePALMA, M D

*James Edward Professor of Orthopedic Surgery and  
Head of the Department Jefferson Medical College  
Philadelphia Attending Orthopedic Surgeon Jef  
ferson Medical College Hospital Philadelphia  
Attending Orthopedic Surgeon Methodist Epis  
copal Hospital Philadelphia Chief Orthopedic  
Surgeon (Rotating) Philadelphia General Hospital  
Consultant Orthopedic Surgeon New Jersey Ortho  
pedic Hospital Consultant Orthopedic Surgeon  
Veterans Hospital Philadelphia*

455 Illustrations

*Drawings by Carl Brill*



J B LIPPINCOTT COMPANY

Philadelphia

London

Montreal

COPYRIGHT 1954  
BY J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY

---

THIS BOOK IS FULLY PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT  
AND WITH THE EXCEPTION OF BRIEF EXCERPTS  
FOR REVIEW NO PART OF IT MAY BE REPRODUCED  
IN ANY FORM WITHOUT THE WRITTEN PERMISS-  
SION OF THE PUBLISHERS.

Library of Congress  
Catalog Card Number  
53-12288

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

This book is dedicated to  
my mother and father  
whose stature rises to higher levels as  
I become older They are blessed with  
the faculty of giving so much and  
asking for so little





## Preface

The literature contains numerous articles dealing with the anatomy, the mechanics and the disorders of the knee joint. Much of this material is still controversial, and in spite of the fact that some of the investigations were conducted many decades ago, the last word on many of the subjects provoking disagreement has not as yet been recorded. Contributions of great profundity have been made by John Goodsir, Love, Sir Robert Jones, MacKenzie, G. T. Fisher, Walmsley, Herzmark, Annandale and Nicoll, more recently much has been added to our knowledge by Ivar Palmer, King, Bohler, Helfet, D. M. Bosworth, Brantigan and Voshell, Bennett, Wayne and Bauer, Cubins and his co-workers, Hey Groves, Gallie and Le Mesurier, Smillie, O'Donoghue and a host of others. The desire to confirm or refute the observations recorded by some of the aforementioned workers has been the stimulus to the undertaking of the investigations which are contained in this work.

The study on the comparative anatomy of the knee joint reveals the alterations that have occurred in man. Of interest is the reduction in size of the cruciate ligaments as compared with those encountered in lower primates such as the macaque and the chimpanzee in which the knee joints are capable of wide arcs of rotary motion. Nevertheless, the role of the cruciates in the functional mechanics of the knee joint in man must not be underestimated, making it imperative that whenever possible the integrity of these structures, if disrupted, should be restored. In order to meet the requisites of the erect posture, certain changes have occurred in the configuration of the femoral condyles: the lateral condyle is larger than the medial and supports the greater portion of the body weight in the upright position.

Many surgeons fail to understand the significant role that the patella plays in enhancing the power of the quadriceps apparatus, which is the most important single stabilizer of the knee joint. This is reflected in the numerous patellectomies that are performed indiscriminately. Study of the comparative anatomy and the embryology of the knee joint discloses that the patella is not a sesamoid bone in response to functional stimuli, as so many believe, it not only affords protection to the anterior aspect of the knee joint but it also increases the mechanical efficiency of the extensor apparatus. In man, in whom the mechanical efficiency of the knee joint surpasses that of all lower forms, the patella is massive and is endowed with a wide range of motion. The clinical observations of the author support the above observations, therefore, he makes a plea that this important component of the knee joint be spared whenever it is possible.

Throughout this book, the importance of a normal quadriceps muscle in order that the knee may perform efficiently and without harmful stresses and strains to its synovialis, capsule and ligaments, is emphasized repeatedly. Failure to recognize this established fact has led to irreversible pathologic alterations in the joint which are responsible for profound dysfunction. The responsibility of the surgeon does not terminate with treatment of a local lesion or with the execution of a skillfully performed operation on the knee joint. It is his moral obligation to prescribe and supervise a postoperative regimen designed to restore normal quadriceps power and complete rehabilitation of the patient, only then does his responsibility end.

During World War II the author had the good fortune to be assigned to a center which was actively engaged in the basic training of

many thousands of Marines Traumatic lesions of the menisci, the ligaments and the extensor apparatus occurred frequently during the rigorous training. These cases together with the many cases encountered in civilian life *resulting from injuries on foot ball and baseball fields and the basketball court*, provided the author with an abundance of clinical material. In addition for a period of 22 months the author had the opportunity to treat hundreds of fresh casualties some of which were seen almost immediately after the injury had occurred. This tour of duty provided many cases of soft tissue injuries about the knee open and penetrating wounds of the knee joint and all types of fractures of the bony elements of the knee joint. Finally, the author's association with a military rehabilitation center during the last few months of the war and also after the termination of hostilities provided ample opportunities to study the many problems of restoration of an injured knee joint to normalcy.

In the section dealing with surgical approaches and procedures every effort has been made to depict clearly by drawings and description the pertinent surgical anatomy of the region in question. For the sake of completeness some operative procedures have been included which the author rarely or never employs however emphasis has been laid on those procedures which have proved to give the most satisfactory long term end results.

In order to create a work which includes all the material deemed essential it has been necessary to draw from many sources. Particular care has been taken to give full credit to the source of the material used. If there are omissions they have been unintentional and the author wishes to record his apologies and regrets.

It is the hope of the author that the information contained herein will be of value not only to the orthopaedic expert but also to the general surgeon the general practitioner and the student. Considerable stress

has been laid on the more common pathologic condition of the knee joint particularly traumatic lesions of the menisci the ligaments the extensor apparatus and loose bodies in the knee joint villous synovitis and hypertrophic arthritis. The pertinent clinical manifestations which will lead to a correct diagnosis have been emphasized and the preferred method of treatment has been described in detail. Further it is hoped the investigations recorded herein will provide the reader with a broader understanding of the mechanism and the pathogenesis of the lesions discussed and will augment his diagnostic faculties and will promote effective means of therapy designed to result in complete rehabilitation of the patient. Finally it is the author's wish that this book may be a stimulus to the young minds of our profession to investigate further the many controversial topics.

This work could not have been undertaken without the co-operation of Dr G A Bennett Director of the Department of Anatomy and Dean of the Jefferson Medical College who made available to the author several hundred knee joints obtained from cadavers. These specimens were dissected carefully and the normal anatomy was studied and recorded in Chapter 4. For this and many other acts of kindness and for his guidance and encouragement, I wish to record a debt of gratitude to Dr Bennett. A debt of thanks is due to Dr Paul C Swenson Professor of Radiology Jefferson Medical College who unselfishly permitted me to use all the facilities that belong to his department.

The author also owes a debt of thanks to Dr J Dowling Dr I Smith Dr P Romanow Dr M Wohl Dr H Snedden Dr T Forker and Dr F Matter all of whom assisted faithfully in the investigative studies done on the mechanics of the knee joint to Dr G Delbert who helped collect and classify many specimens obtained following meniscectomies to Mrs M M Del B Sittel for her conscientious work on the numerous

drafts of the manuscript to Miss V. Quick who helped collect the many case histories and prepared and arranged the illustrations used in this work to Mr. C. Brill the artist whose enthusiasm is reflected in all the

drawings, to Mr. A. Hancock, the photographer, for his untiring interest and painstaking work, and lastly to the J. B. Lippincott Company for their constant encouragement, instructive criticism and loyalty.

A. F. DePALMA



# Contents

1	EVOLUTION OF THE KNEE JOINT	1
	Origin of Paired Limbs	1
	Evolution of the Pelvic Girdle	2
	Fishes	2
	Amphibia	5
	Reptiles	5
	Mammals	5
	Evolution of the Lower Extremities	6
	Femur	6
	Tibia and Fibula	8
2	COMPARATIVE ANATOMY OF THE KNEE JOINT	10
	Amphibia	10
	Salamander	10
	Reptiles	12
	Mammals	12
	Opossum	12
	Dog	12
	Primates	16
3	NORMAL ANATOMY OF THE KNEE JOINT	24
	Thigh	24
	Fasciae	24
	Muscles	27
	Knee Joint	36
	Condyles of the Femur	39
	Intrinsic Bony Architecture of the Femur	40
	Inner Structure of the Proximal End of the Femur	41
	Inner Structure of the Distal End of the Femur	43
	Patella	44
	Proximal Extremity of the Tibia	45
	Capsule and Ligaments of the Knee Joint	48
	Bursae	62
	Discoid Menisci	63
	Vessels and Nerves	66
	Arterial Anastomosis Around the Knee Joint	70
	Popliteal Fossa	72
	Ossification	73
4	MECHANICS OF THE KNEE JOINT	75
	Axis of the Knee Joint	75
	Statics of the Knee Joint	76
	Stress and Strains Acting on the Tibia	77

4	MECHANICS OF THE KNEE JOINT (Continued)	
	Dynamics of the Knee Joint	78
	Movements of the Knee Joint	78
	Movements of the Patella	81
	Dynamics of the Muscles Motorizing the Knee Joint	81
	Extensors of the Knee	81
	Flexors of the Knee	85
	Rotators of the Knee	86
	Maintenance of Stability at the Knee Joint	86
	Functional Mechanism of Menisci Cruciate and Collateral Ligaments	87
	Materials and Methods Employed in the Study	87
	Role of Ligaments and Menisci During Normal Extension and Flexion	
	Movements of Knee Joint	89
	Tibial Collateral Ligament	90
	Fibular Collateral Ligament	93
	Cruciate Ligaments	94
	Analysis of Control of Different Ligaments on Motions of Knee Joint	97
	Sagittal Motion	97
	Anteroposterior Displacement of the Tibia on the Femur	99
	Lateral Motion (Abduction and Adduction Rocking of the Tibia on the Femur)	100
	Rotary Motion	101
	Ligaments Perform as a Functional Unit	104
5	AFFECTIONS OF THE MENISCI	108
	Surgical Anatomy of the Menisci	108
	Medial Meniscus and Tibial Collateral Ligament	108
	Lateral Meniscus and the Fibular Collateral Ligament	110
	Role of Menisci in Mechanics of the Knee Joint	111
	Functions of the Menisci	113
	Nutrition of Menisci	113
	Behavior of Torn Menisci	115
	Regeneration of Menisci	116
	Traumatic Lesions of the Menisci	118
	Mechanism	118
	Varieties of Traumatic Lesions of Menisci	120
	Calcification in Menisci	140
	Calcification in Menisci Associated with Trauma	140
	Calcification Associated with Degenerative Joint Changes	141
	Regenerated Menisci	142
	Clinical Features—Factors Predisposing Menisci to Injury	142
	Developmental Factors	142
	Anatomic Factors	142
	Constitutional and Occupational Factors	143
	Pathologic Factors	143
	Age Incidence and Sex Factors	144
	Diagnostic Factors	144

Scheme of History Taking and Physical Examination	144
History Factors	145
Clinical Features—Symptoms	145
Pain	145
Click or Snap	146
Effusion	146
Locking	146
Tenderness	148
Dysfunction Immediately After Injury	148
Physical Examination	148
Clinical Features Peculiar to Tears of the Lateral Meniscus	153
Evaluation of Original Injury	154
Recurrent Injuries	154
Differential Diagnosis	155
Lesions of the Infrapatellar Fat Pad	156
Cysts of the Menisci	157
Discoid Menisci	159
Regenerated Menisci	160
Incomplete Removal of Torn Meniscus	161
Lesions of Collateral and Cruciate Ligaments	161
Fractures of Tibial Spine and Osteochondral Fractures of Patella	162
Other Diagnostic Aids	162
Treatment of Traumatic Lesions of the Menisci	163
General Considerations	163
Conservative Management	163
Causes of Poor Results Following Meniscectomy	167
Operative Management	169
Restoration of Normal Function	175
Postoperative Complications	176
Degenerative Lesions of the Menisci	181
<b>6 DISORDERS OF THE EXTENSOR APPARATUS OF THE KNEE JOINT</b>	184
Congenital Malformations	184
Congenital Abnormalities of the Patella	185
Recurrent Dislocation of Patella	187
General Considerations	187
Clinical Manifestations	189
Associated Lesions	191
Treatment	192
Persistent Dislocation of Patella	196
Treatment	197
Primary Dislocation of Patella	197
Treatment	199
Irreducible Lateral Dislocation of Patella with Rotation	200
Case Report	200
Ruptures of the Extensor Apparatus	201
Fresh Rupture or Avulsion of Quadriceps Muscle From Patella	201
Pathologic Findings	202



6	DISORDERS OF THE EXTENSOR APPARATUS OF THE KNEE JOINT ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Fresh Rupture or Avulsion of Quadriceps Muscle From Patella ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Clinical Manifestations	202
	Treatment	202
	Old Ruptures of the Quadriceps Tendon	205
	Postoperative Management	205
	Avulsion of Patellar Tendon From Tibial Tubercle	207
	Treatment	208
	Avulsion of Patellar Tendon From Patella	209
	Treatment	209
	Old Ruptures of the Patellar Tendon	210
	Rupture of Isolated Groups of Fibers of Components of Quadriceps Muscle	210
	Fractures of the Patella	213
	General Considerations	213
	Mechanisms	215
	Associated Pathology	216
	Clinical Features	218
	Considerations Governing Treatment	219
	Preferred Methods of Treatment	221
	Nonoperative Treatment	222
	Operative Treatment	222
	Fractures of Patella with Superficial Lacerations	229
	Open Fractures of the Patella	230
	Marginal Fractures of the Patella	231
	Osteochondral Fracture of the Patella	232
	Fractures of Tibial Tubercle	234
	Mechanism of Production and Clinical Features	234
	Treatment	235
	Separation of the Upper Epiphysis of the Tibia	235
	Treatment	235
	Complete Avulsion of the Epiphysis of the Tibial Tubercle	236
	Treatment	236
	Osgood Schlatter's Disease	237
	Clinical Features	237
	Treatment	239
	Osteochondritis of the Poles of the Patella (Larsen Johansson Disease)	240
	Treatment	240
	Chondromalacia Patellae	240
	General Considerations	240
	Etiology	241
	Incidence and Age	242
	Pathology	242
	Clinical Features	244
	Roentgenographic Features	245
	Treatment	245
	Acute Osteomyelitis of the Patella	248
	Restoration of Normal Quadriceps Function	252
	General Considerations	252

Physical Properties of Muscle	254
Muscle Power	254
Velocity and Speed of Contraction	255
Co-ordination	255
Endurance	255
Principles of Exercises	256
Focal and General Exercises	256
Dosage	257
Rhythm	257
Progression	257
Variations	258
Quadriceps Exercises	258
 7 CONGENITAL AND ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES OF THE KNEE JOINT	 267
Congenital Anomalies	267
Absence of the Femur	267
Absence of the Tibia	269
Absence of the Fibula	276
Congenital Genu Recurvatum	279
Stiff Knee Subsequent to Injuries of or About the Knee Joint	281
General Considerations	281
Safeguards Against Loss of Flexion	284
Correct Choice of Methods to Treat Fractures of the Femur	285
Early Mobilization of the Limb	286
Surgical Procedures	287
Flexion Contractures Following Injuries to or in the Region of the Knee Joint	295
Management of Early Flexion Deformities	296
Resistant Flexion Deformities	296
Osteotomy to Correct Flexion Deformities	296
Arthrodesis and Arthroplasty of the Knee Joint	297
Bony Ankylosis of the Knee in Flexion	297
Open Wedge Supracondylar Osteotomy	298
Cuneiform Supracondylar Osteotomy	299
Circular Osteotomy	299
Telescoping V-Osteotomy	301
Bony Ankylosis of the Knee in Recurvatum	303
Angular Deformities	304
Genu Valgum	306
Technic for Correction of Valgus Deformity (Blount and Clarke)	309
Stapling for Linear Deformities	310
Osteotomy at Site of Maximum Deformity	311
Severe Valgus Deformities	312
Technic for Correction	313
Maximum Correction of Deformity in the Upper End of the Tibia	315
Genu Varum (Bowleg)	317
Etiology	317
Clinical Features	318
Treatment	318

7	CONGENITAL AND ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES OF THE KNEE JOINT ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Tibia Vara	321
	Infantile Type	321
	Adolescent Type	322
	Genu Recurvatum	325
	Operative Correction	325
	Deformities of the Knee Joint Following Poliomyelitis	329
	Yount's Procedure	330
	Procedure for Flexion Abduction and Rotation Deformities	330
	Observations on Knee Flexion Deformities Following Poliomyelitis	331
	Genu Recurvatum Following Anterior Poliomyelitis	332
	Genu Recurvatum with Osseous Alterations	332
	Genu Recurvatum Without Osseous Alterations	333
	Correction of Genu Recurvatum Incident to Anterior Poliomyelitis	333
	Flail Knee	336
	Torsion of the Tibia and the Femur	336
	Treatment	339
	Surgical Correction in Femur Deformities	342
	Derotation Osteotomy	342
	Deformities of the Knee Incident to Cerebral Palsy	343
	Etiology	343
	Types of Cerebral Palsy	343
	Prognosis	345
	Treatment	345
	Correction of Deformities of the Knee	346
	Advancement of the Patella in Spastic Paralysis (Chandler)	348
	Technic	348
	Division of the Patellar Retinacula (Eggers)	350
	Technic	350
	Transplantation of the Hamstring Tendons to the Femoral Condyles in Spastic Paralysis (Eggers)	352
	Technic	352
	Neurectomy of the Soleus Muscle	353
8	TRAUMATIC LESIONS OF THE LIGAMENTS	358
	General Considerations	358
	Mechanisms Responsible for Injuries of the Ligaments	359
	Abduction Flexion and Internal Rotation of the Femur on the Tibia	360
	Abduction Flexion and External Rotation of the Femur on the Tibia	363
	Hyperextension	364
	Anteroposterior Displacement	365
	Recent Traumatic Lesions of the Collateral Ligaments	366
	Injuries of the Tibial Collateral Ligament	366
	Injuries of the Fibular Collateral Ligament	385
	Recent Injuries of the Anterior Cruciate Ligament	389
	Mechanism of Injury of the Anterior Cruciate Ligament	390
	Clinical Features	391
	Management of Lesions	394

Rupture of the Posterior Cruciate Ligament	397
Clinical Features	397
Management	397
Pellegrini Stieda Disease (Para-articular Calcification and Ossification of the Knee Joint)	400
Etiology and Pathogenesis	400
Clinical Manifestations	402
Roentgenologic Features	403
Management	403
Old Lesions of the Ligaments of the Knee Joint	404
General Considerations	404
Pathogenesis and Clinical Features of Old Ruptures	406
Management of Old Ruptures of the Ligaments	409
Reconstruction of the Ligaments of the Knee Joint	410
Traumatic Dislocation of the Knee Joint	417
 9 FRACTURES AND WOUNDS ABOUT THE KNEE JOINT	422
Fractures of the Distal End of the Femur	422
General Considerations	422
Supracondylar Fractures	424
Intercondylar Fractures (T and Y Fractures)	432
Fracture of a Single Condyle of the Femur	435
Separation of Distal Epiphysis of the Femur	439
Management	440
Fractures of the Upper End of the Tibia	444
Mechanism and Associated Lesions of Condylar Fractures of the Tibia	444
Management of Fractures of the Lateral Tibial Condyle	446
T or Y Fractures of the Upper End of the Tibia	452
Arthrodesis and Arthroplasty of the Knee Joint	454
Fractures of the Upper End of the Fibula	455
Isolated Fractures	455
Dislocation	456
Wounds of the Knee Joint	456
Treatment of Penetrating Wounds	457
Classification of Penetrating Wounds of the Knee Joint	460
Infected Knee Joint	463
 10 LOOSE BODIES	466
Classification of Loose Bodies (Mercer)	466
Osteochondritis Dissecans	467
Etiology and Pathogenesis	467
Pathology	472
Clinical Manifestations	473
Roentgenographic Studies	474
Management	475
Osteochondromatosis	481
Historical Review and Etiology	481
Pathology	483

10	LOOSE BODIES ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Osteochondromatosis ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Clinical Features	485
	Roentgenographic Findings	486
	Diagnosis	487
	Management	487
	Prognosis	488
	Loose Bodies Associated with Osteoarthritis	488
	Management	489
	Loose Bodies of Traumatic Origin	490
	Loose Bodies Arising From Menisci	490
	Rice Bodies ( <i>Corpora Oryzoidea</i> )	491
	Other Varieties of Loose Bodies	491
11	AFFECTIONS OF THE SYNOVIALIS AND THE BURSÆ OF THE KNEE JOINT	494
	Synovialis	494
	Synovial Fluid	495
	Acute Traumatic Synovitis	496
	Traumatic Hemarthrosis	499
	Chronic Nonspecific Villous Synovitis	500
	Pigmented Villonodular Synovitis	507
	Malignant Synovioma	518
	Synovial Osteochondromatosis	525
	Bursæ	525
	General Considerations	525
	Forms of Bursitis	526
	Management of Bursitis	529
	Popliteal Bursæ	531
	Excision of Gastrocnemio-semimembranosus and Semimembranosus Bursa	536
	Intermittent Hydrarthrosis	537
	Clinical Features	537
	Pathologic Alterations	538
	Management	538
12	ARTHRITIDES	543
	Classification	543
	Rheumatoid Arthritis	544
	Clinical Types	544
	Etiology	545
	Clinical Features	547
	Course of the Disease	548
	Relapse of the Disease	549
	Blood Studies	549
	Roentgenographic Features	550
	Pathology and Pathogenesis	552
	Prognosis	553

Treatment	554
Prevention and Management of Knee Deformities	563
Correction of Knee Deformities	564
Degenerative Arthritis	577
Etiology	577
Pathology and Pathogenesis	579
Loose Bodies Associated With Degenerative Arthritis	583
Clinical Features	584
Roentgenographic Findings	586
Conservative Management	586
Surgical Measures	588
Roentgen Therapy in Degenerative Arthritis	591
Ankylosis of Knee Joint Following Severe Trauma	591
Menopausal Arthritis	592
Hemophilic Arthritis	593
Clinical Features	594
Pathologic Alterations in Joint Constituents	594
Flexion Deformities	596
Management	597
Gout	600
Etiology	600
Pathology	602
Clinical Manifestations	603
Roentgenographic Features	605
Diagnosis	605
Management	606
Neuropathic Arthropathies	607
Etiology	607
Pathology	610
Clinical Features	611
Roentgenographic Features	612
Management	613
Pyogenic Arthritis	613
Etiology	613
Pathology	614
Clinical Manifestations	615
Roentgenographic Features	616
Management	616
<b>13 SURGICAL APPROACHES AND PROCEDURES</b>	<b>628</b>
General Considerations	628
Preoperative Management	629
Preparative Preparation of Local Area	629
Position of the Limb	630
Management of Tissues	630
Dressings	631
Anesthesia	631
Sepsis	631

13	SURGICAL APPROACHES AND PROCEDURES ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Anatomic Considerations	632
	Bony Elements	632
	Capsule	632
	Tendon of the Quadriceps Femoris	633
	Synovialis	634
	Bursae	635
	Arteries	636
	Cutaneous Nerves	636
	Historical Review of Surgical Approaches to the Knee Joint	637
	Surgical Approaches to the Anterior Region of the Knee Joint	639
	Landmarks	639
	Parapatellar Incisions	641
	Anteromedial and Anterolateral Approaches	646
	Surgical Approaches to the Medial Region of the Knee Joint	652
	Approaches to the Lateral Region of the Knee Joint	657
	Posteromedial and Posterolateral Incisions	659
	Approaches to Posterior Region of the Knee Joint	665
	Approaches Dividing the Patella	668
	Approaches Dividing the Quadriceps Femoris Muscle or the Patellar Tendon	668
	Surgical Procedures	669
	Arthrodesis of the Knee Joint	669
	Arthrodesis of Tuberculous Knee Joints	670
	Arthrodesis for Nontuberculous Affections of the Knee Joint	679
	Arthroplasty of the Knee Joint	681
	Transplantation of Tendons at the Knee for Paralyzed Quadriceps	697
	Drainage for Sepsis of the Knee Joint	706
	Resection of Upper End of Fibula	709
	Amputations	711
14	BONE NEOPLASMS IN THE REGION OF THE KNEE JOINT	733
	General Considerations	733
	Classification of Bone Neoplasms	735
	Diagnosis of Bone Neoplasms	735
	History	735
	Injury	736
	Age	736
	Site of the Tumor	736
	Pain	736
	Loss of Function	738
	Objective Findings	738
	Body Reaction	739
	Pulsating Tumors	739
	Roentgenographic Studies	739
	Laboratory Examination	740
	Histologic Examination	741

---

Aspiration Biopsy	741
Surgical Biopsy	742
Benign Bone Neoplasms	742
Osteocartilaginous Exostosis (Osteochondroma)	742
Chondroma	745
Benign Chondroblastoma of Bone	748
Giant-Cell Tumor	750
Solitary Bone Cyst	764
Osteoid Osteoma	769
Nonosteogenic Fibroma of Bone	772
Chondromyxoid Fibroma of Bone	774
Chondrosarcoma	776
Sarcoma of Bone	781
Osteogenic Sarcoma	782
Ewing's Sarcoma	786
Multiple Myeloma	789
Solitary Plasma-Cell Myeloma	793
Metastatic Carcinoma	793
Myositis Ossificans Circumscripta	795
 BIBLIOGRAPHIC INDEX	 801
 SUBJECT INDEX	 807







## EVOLUTION OF THE PELVIC GIRDLE

Evolution of the pelvic girdle lagged behind the evolution of the pectoral girdle. The elasmobranchs confirm this point: the pectoral girdle of the elasmobranchs discloses a well-developed dorsal arm (the scapula) whereas the pelvic girdle reveals only little indication of a dorsal arm (the ilium). However in the elasmobranchs both the pectoral and the pelvic extremities are jointed to their respective girdles by a ball and socket articulation. Although the pelvic and the pectoral appendages have many features in common and retain their basic

similarity to one another the evolution of the lower limb differs from that of the upper limb. In the early stages of evolution the pelvic girdle developed as a link between the fin skeleton and the body wall but was free of the axial skeleton. Later it fused with the vertebral column. Its position in relation to the body wall brings it in close association with the cloacal aperture, whereas the pectoral girdle is in close proximity to the gills series.

### FISHES

In primitive fishes the pelvic girdle comprised an extension of the fin skeleton into the body wall. This arrangement provided

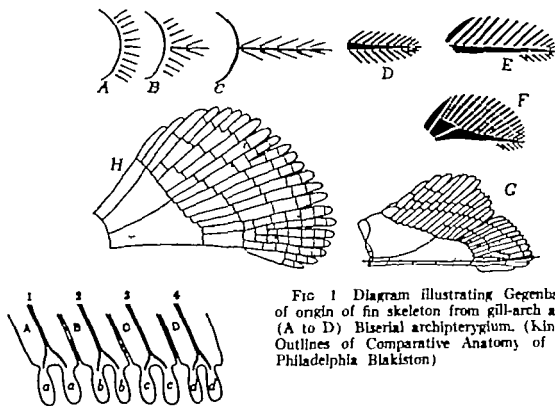


FIG 1 Diagram illustrating Gegenbaur's theory of origin of fin skeleton from gill-arch and gill rays (A to D) Biserial archipterygium. (Kingsley J S. *Outlines of Comparative Anatomy of Vertebrates*, Philadelphia: Blakiston)

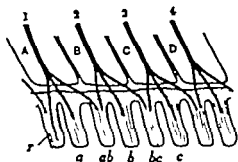


FIG 2 Formation of adult radial muscles from embryonic muscle buds and their motor nerve supply. (Above) Embryonic stage with a pair of buds to each segment. (Below) Adult stage with radial muscles compounded of material from adjacent buds. 1 to 4 spinal nerves. A to D 4 myomeres. a to d muscle buds. r radial muscles. (Goodrich E S. *Studies on the Structure and Development of Vertebrates* London: Macmillan)

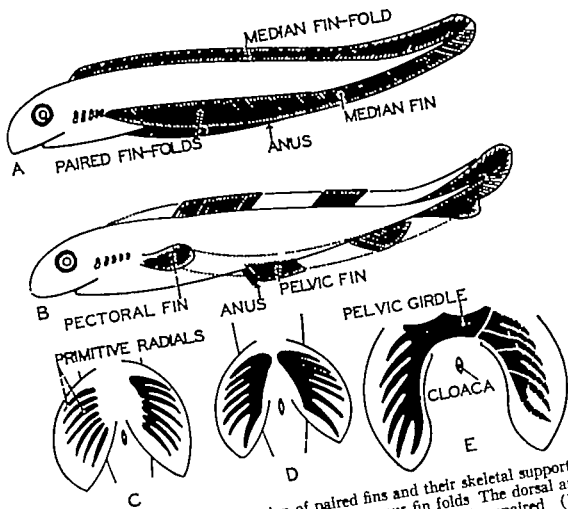
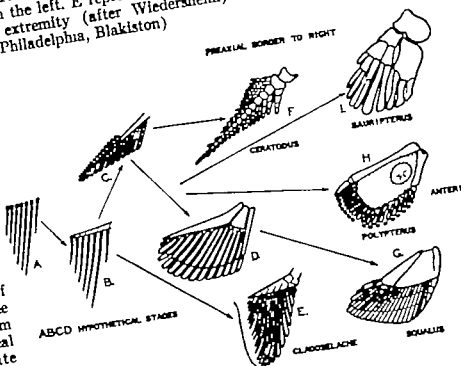


FIG 3 Hypothetical evolution of paired fins and their skeletal supports. (A) Primitive stage, characterized by continuous fin folds. The dorsal and the ventral fins posterior to the anus are median and unpaired (B) Elasmobranch stage. Paired fin folds persist only in the region of the pectoral and the pelvic fins, median fins have become discontinuous. (C E) Hypothetical stages in the evolution of the skeleton of the pelvic fins of elasmobranch fishes. The right side of C and E represents a later stage in the phylogenesis than the left. E represents the differentiated skeletons of the girdle and the extremity (after Wiedersheim) (Neal and Rand Chordate Anatomy Philadelphia, Blakiston)

FIG 4 Diagrams illustrating hypothetical evolution of the extremities of diapnoan (I), ganoid (H) and elasmobranch (G) from a fin fold supported by a series of similar radial cartilages. By fusion of radial cartilages basidia (basal cartilages) are formed. Skeletal supports of the fins eventually differ in relation to the basal elements to the radialis (Redrawn from A. Brazier Howell) (Neal and Rand Chordate Anatomy, Philadelphia Blakiston)



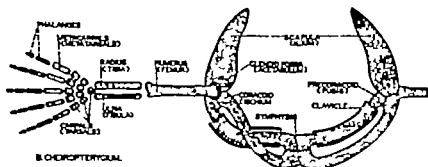
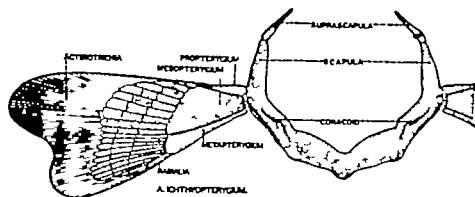


FIG 5 Diagrams illustrating scheme of pectoral appendages of lower and higher vertebrates. (Bottom) Names of corresponding parts of pelvic appendages are shown in parentheses. (Neal and Rand Chordate Anatomy, Philadelphia Blakiston)

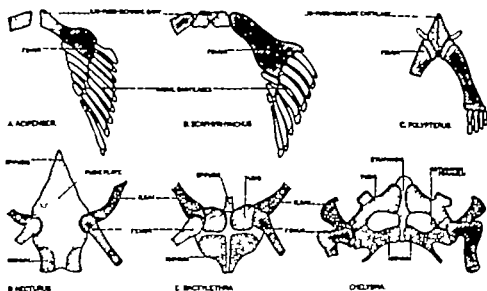


FIG 6 A series of 6 appendicular skeletons illustrating the gradual emergence of the elements of the pelvic girdle found in reptiles and mammals. They represent fairly well the stages in the evolution of the human pelvis. First come the separation of girdle and extremity (A and B) then the fusion of the paired elements of the girdle into a median ventral cartilaginous plate (C and D) differentiation of bony ischium pubis and ilium (D and F) and finally the appearance of the obturator foramen (F). There is no essential difference between the girdles of reptiles and mammals. (Redrawn from Wilder History of the Human Body New York Holt)

support for the fin and attachment for its muscles. Further in the scale of evolution the paired ventral cartilages of the pelvic girdle fused in the mid line, forming a transverse plate in front of the cloacal outlet as seen in *Selachii*. The fin skeleton is attached to the outer border of the transverse plate, which is pierced by diazonal nerves. A slight dorsal process is noted above the articulation of the fin. Some consider this elevation the forerunner of the ilium of tetrapods. Still further in the evolutionary scale the originally cartilaginous pelvic girdles may become ossified and remain as two separate bones lying in the body wall and meeting in front of the anus. Such an arrangement is observed in the teleostomes.

#### AMPHIBIA

Although the beginning of the pelvis is mostly conjectural, evidence points to the possibility that it was initiated by a sagittal bar of cartilaginous tissue in the mid line associated with function of muscles controlling the cloaca. Later this bar developed into a ventral plate (ischiopubic bar) and was concerned exclusively with ventral muscles. No ilium was present in the early stages of evolution, the femur articulated with the dorsal aspect of the ischiopubic bar. Further in the evolutionary stage a dorsal process developed which projected into the dorsal musculature, providing attachment for muscles of the back and the tail.

In the most primitive amphibia (*Stegocephalia*) the ventral segment of the girdle is broad with a large ischium and a smaller pubis. The ilium is almost vertical tapering dorsally and articulates with one sacral rib. The pubis provides a foramen for the obturator nerve. Later, centers of ossification appeared in the ventral plate, these centers correspond to the ischium and the pubis of reptiles (Fig. 6).

Study of fossil remains suggests that the terrestrial amphibians and the primitive rep-

tiles possessed hind limbs which held the lower legs in a transverse plane with the knee and the foot directed laterally. Living lizards and urodeles possess knees which are directly lateral, but their lower legs point posteriorly (Howell).

#### REPTILES

The basic pattern of pelvic girdles of the reptiles closely resembles that of the amphibia. The ischium and the pubis comprise the ventral plate, the latter provides an opening for the obturator nerve. Generally, the ilium is a stout bone and articulates with two sacral vertebrae. At first the ilium occupied a vertical plane, later, because of postural influences and functional demands of the lower extremity, a caudal process was developed for attachment of back muscles. However, when the laterally directed knee and foot were brought beneath the body, new functional demands were made upon the ilium, which responded by developing a cranial process to provide a more anterior attachment for iliac muscles, while its caudal process diminished. The ischium and the pubis responded to the same influences that effected the change in the inclination of the ilium. Both of these migrated to a dorsocaudal position to provide a better retractive angle for the vertical femur (Howell).

#### MAMMALS

Despite the lack of evidence based on fossil remains linking the evolution of the pelvic girdle of the mammals to that of the therapsid reptiles, the basic pattern of the mammalian girdle is similar to that of the primitive reptilian girdle. The ilium is directed forward and the symphysis is shortened particularly in *Insectivora*; the ischium is extended dorsally and is directed caudally, and the acetabulum has migrated posteriorly to the sacrum. Generally the ilium, the ischium and the pubis radiate from the acetabulum. A well formed obturator foramen is present. In monotremes

and marsupials epipubic bones developed which articulated with the pubis these are considered by some workers as homologous with the lateral pubic processes of Amphibia.

In mammals there is an increase in the number of sacral vertebrae which articulate with the ilium. In man 3 of the 5 sacral segments articulate with the coxal bone. Man's change from a quadruped to a biped was responsible for the acquisition of certain features peculiar to the human pelvis. The craniocaudal dimensions have decreased, the lateral dimensions have increased, thereby broadening the pelvis, and the ilium has expanded dorsally. The shortening and the broadening of the ilium are undoubtedly in response to the new function of the gluteus medius muscle and to provide attachment for the abdominal muscles in the upright posture. In addition to the aforementioned adaptive changes the ischium and the pubis have shifted dorsally; this was necessary to meet the new functional demands of the musculature of the thigh in the erect position which deleted the angle of leverage of the hamstring muscles.

## EVOLUTION OF THE LOWER EXTREMITIES

Considerable controversy still exists among students of vertebrate morphology relative to the derivation of the cheiropterygium or the tetrapod limb (also called the pentadactyl limb) from the Ichthyopterygia (paired fins of fishes). It is interesting to note that in spite of the wide differences between the fore and the hind limbs sufficient evidence has been accumulated to suggest that they were similar in primitive vertebra and that they evolved from the same basic pattern. In the evolutionary stages of the free paired appendages the proximal or the basal ends of the radials (cartilage rays) fused to form basilia. With the demand of greater movability of the fin a joint evolved between the radials and the basilia, several of which in turn articulated

with the girdle. Such a pattern is demonstrable in the paired fins of the elasmobranchs, which possess three basilia (propterygium, mesopterygium and metapterygium) situated between the girdle and the radials of the fin (Fig. 5). The pectoral girdles and the fins of the crossopterygii, the Eusthenopteron and the Sauripterus (fossils from upper Devonian) provide an arrangement of skeletal elements which may be considered as a link between paired fins of fishes and tetrapod limbs. These two genera of crossopterygian fishes are accepted as close to the forms from which the amphibia evolved. Essentially the basic scheme of their pectoral appendages consisted of a proximal segment which joined to two middle segments which in turn articulated with several distal elements. From the proximal element evolved the humerus, from the middle elements the radius and the ulna and from the distal ones the carpus and the digits. Although these crossopterygii provide a link between the paired pectoral fins of fishes and the pectoral limbs of the tetrapod, nothing is known of the pelvic fins of these fishes. Nevertheless it is logical to assume that the fishlike forerunners of the tetrapods possessed pectoral and pelvic fins having a similar basic pattern and from these evolved the pentadactyl limb.

In the pelvic appendage the evolution was as in the pectoral limb. Pronounced changes occurred in the skeletal elements when animals emerged from the water and adopted a terrestrial existence. Both the pectoral and the pelvic limbs were then used for locomotion and support. In the amphibia the first animals to adopt terrestrial habits the pentadactyl limb evolved from the paired fins. From the distal elements of the pelvic fin arose the tarsus, the metatarsus and the phalanges, from the middle elements the tibia and the fibula and from the proximal element the femur.

## FEMUR

The characteristic features of the femur of the primitive amphibia are less known

than those of the humerus. However, the primitive amphibian femur resembled in a large measure the femur of the early reptiles. Its length was greater, and its diameter was less than the corresponding humerus, but it did not possess the tetrahedral configuration of the humerus. It appears that changes in posture of the lower extremity are reflected in the relation of the articular surface of the head of the femur to the shaft. Early tetrapods possessed an ovoid articular surface at the proximal end of the shaft of the femur while in some reptiles and monotremes the articular surface tended to incline toward the lateral side of the shaft. These features are consistent with an extremity in which the knee is held at a higher level than the acetabulum, and the arcs of movements of the thigh are confined to the horizontal plane. This is in contrast with the observations noted in mammal like reptiles and dinosaurs in which the articular surface of the head of the femur had migrated to the medial side of the shaft such a feature points to a thigh assuming a more nearly vertical position.

Reptiles do not possess a femoral neck comparable with that found in mammals. In mammals a subspheroidal femoral head and a well-defined, constricted neck are constant and characteristic features the articular surface being more nearly spherical than that of the corresponding humerus. Howell points out that the greater mobility of the forelimb may play a part in the differences in shape and size of the humeral and the femoral heads. He notes "If so then the reason for the extent of the articular surface is probably that the acetabulum is immovable while the position of the glenoid may be altered."

Morphologists have encountered great difficulty in establishing the homology of the trochanters of the femur. The recorded factors responsible for this difficulty are

1 Migration of many of the implicated muscles from their primitive position

2 Difficulty in homologizing the muscles

of reptiles with those of mammals. This has led to many errors.

3 In one class the insertion of a muscle mass is associated with a tuberosity, while in another class no process is discernible. Pronounced variation is demonstrable in the arrangement of the trochanters, particularly in the different reptiles. These variations are the result of the same muscles or muscle mass having different angles of leverage in the different classes of reptiles.

In reptiles such as the iguana, the large trochanter is situated on the medial aspect of the femoral shaft. It provides insertion for the tibial-obturator muscle mass (flexor puboischiofemoralis) which corresponds to the gemelli, the obturator internus and the quadratus femoris of mammals and for a part of the short prozonal extensors which is the homologue of the psoas major muscle. At the base of the trochanter the iliofemorallis (deep gluteals) inserts. It becomes apparent that the greater trochanter on the medial aspect of the femur of the reptiles is the homologue of the greater trochanter of the mammals which is situated on the lateral aspect. The external trochanter is either missing or poorly developed when present in the reptiles. It affords an insertion to the extensor puboischiofemoralis (iliacus muscle) and is comparable with the lesser trochanter of the mammals.

In mammals the large trochanter occupies a lateral position on the proximal end of the shaft of the femur. Upon it insert the deep gluteal muscles (Ilio-femoralis group) and into its base insert the muscles of the short tibial-obturator sheet the gemelli the obturator internus and the quadratus femoris. It is of interest that in some mammals such as Insectivora and some Rodentia a third process is discernible distal to the base of the large trochanter or the process may take the form of a bony crest. It affords insertion for the superficial gluteus muscles. In some mammals no third process is present. In some of these forms of mammals the superficial gluteus muscle continues together with the biceps femoris



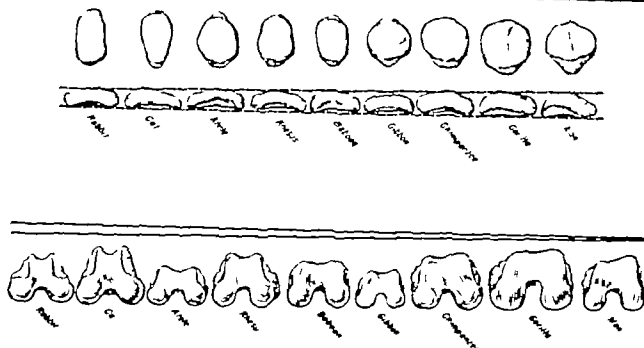


FIG 7 Note the variations in the patellar grooves of the different forms In the lower primates (*Ateles rhesus* etc.) the grooves are well defined deep and long extending proximally on the femoral shaft in the chimpanzee the depth is markedly reduced and in man the groove is relatively well defined in the condylar region but beyond this point it is flat, and its margins are poorly defined The femoral condyles are equal in size and of the same configuration in the lower forms In the higher forms the lateral femoral condyle is more prominent reaching its greatest development in man.

muscle to the lower leg The lesser trochanter of mammals occupies a lateral position and provides an insertion for the psoas major and the iliacus muscles

A fourth trochanter is demonstrable in Crocodilla and in some birds it is situated distal to the large lateral trochanter and the caudofemoralis inserts into it It appears to be associated with a bipedal or a partly bipedal posture When present in mammals it corresponds to the adductor tubercle which is situated on the medial aspect of the femur proximal to the epicondyle and provides insertion for the adductor magnus in man

The relation of the greater trochanter to the level of the head of the femur is of some significance In general a high greater trochanter is indicative of powerful and highly specialized deep gluteal muscles as noted in runners and leapers but it is also demonstrable in other mammals for different purposes In ungulates it is high In the

chimpanzee it is equal to the height of the femoral head It is higher in the gorilla and lower in man

During the evolutionary stages posture and functional requirements of the lower extremities were responsible for the rearrangement of the bony elements comprising the knee and the ankle joints In mammals which require strong extensors of the lower leg as graviportal and cursorial forms the patellar groove is well defined and is located at a distance from the condyles of the femur Moreover the patella in the aforementioned mammals is well developed and occupies a position favoring high efficiency of the extensor apparatus of the knee joint (Fig 7)

#### TIBIA AND FIBULA

According to Williston there is reason to believe that in the amphibians and the terrestrial reptiles the proximal end of the

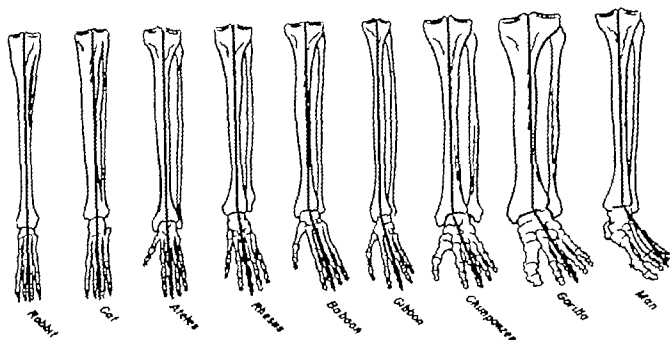


FIG. 8 Note that the torsion angle of the tibia in primates, except man, is minus (the knees are directed out and the toes forward) in cursorial animals the angle approaches zero, in man the angle is expressed in positive degrees (the knees point forward while the toes point outward)

tibia bore most of the body weight, which was transmitted through the fibula to the ankle joint. In these forms the tibia was larger than the fibula and articulated proximally with both the preaxial and the postaxial condyles of the femur and distally with the astragalus only. On the other hand, the fibula articulated proximally only with the postaxial condyle and distally with the astragalus and the calcaneus. During the evolution of the reptiles to higher forms, particularly in the biped forms, the greater weight of the body was transferred gradually to the ankle joint through the tibia. This tendency reaches completion in the mammals. In these animals the tibia solely is responsible for transmitting the weight of the body to the ankle joint through the astragalus.

Posture and function are also responsible for varying degrees of torsion of the tibia. The tibial torsion angle is formed by the long axis of the proximal and the distal joint surfaces. In most quadrupedal mammals and primates exclusive of man the knee points in varying degrees outward whereas the toes point forward or inward.

This produces an inward rotation of the tibia expressed in minus degrees. Cursorial and saltatorial mammals possess lower extremities which function in one plane; in these the torsion angle approaches zero. The torsion angle in man is expressed in positive degrees because the knee points forward while the toes point outward (Fig. 8). This arrangement is an expression of recent adaptive alterations associated with acquisition of an upright posture.

In all mammals except monotremes and some marsupials, the fibula fails to articulate with the femur, and except in the artiodactyls and the elephants it does not participate in the transmission of body weight to the ankle. Not infrequently the proximal part of the fibula is lacking, whereas the distal part is discernible in all forms. In general the distal part forms the lateral malleolus and articulates with the astragalus; the exception to this is found in the monotremes in which no malleoli are present. Morphologic alterations in the fibula indicate that its reduction is associated with restriction of the arcs of movements of the extremity to a single plane.

# Comparative Anatomy of the Knee Joint

In man the knee joint has evolved into a highly specialized organ surpassing in complexity the knee joint of all other animals. This has been the result of added functional demands made on the knee joints when man assumed the erect position with the knee extended completely. To meet these new requirements many alterations were necessary in the bony elements and the soft tissue structures comprising this articulation. A study of this mechanism as it is observed in the successive stages of phylogenetic development from the simplest vertebrate animals to man discloses the numerous and intricate evolutionary changes that have occurred. Such a study was made and the observations noted follow they substantiate the work of Herzmark (1938)

## AMPHIBIA

### SALAMANDER

In this classification the salamander and the frog possess the simplest forms of knee joints that of the frog is more advanced than that of the salamander. Salamanders have long slender tapering bodies their limbs are short thin delicate and very simple in structure. The hind limbs are directed laterally and slightly backward. The knee joints are habitually held higher than the hip joints and function in the coronal plane. These animals are not capable of rapid activity. Their knee joints reveal an architecture exceedingly simple the femur ends in two round condyles which articulate with the plateau of the tibiofibula. In this animal the tibia and the fibula do not exist as separate bones but are fused together to

form a single structure (tibiofibula). The articular surfaces are enclosed in a thin enveloping membrane stretching from the upper borders of the femoral condyles to the lower margins of the articulating surface of the tibiofibula. It is reasonable to conceive that the inner surface of this interarticular membrane may function as a synovial lining. The muscles comprising the extensor apparatus converge toward the knee joint and terminate in a conjoined tendon which spans the superior surface of the articulation and inserts into the anterior aspect of the tibiofibula. The patella is wanting no menisci or cruciate ligaments are demonstrable.

The knee joint of the frog discloses the same simple architecture as that of the salamander. Its femur terminates in a rounded bulblike articular surface with poorly defined condyles which articulate with the tibiofibula. A thin delicate interarticular membrane encloses the articular ends of the femur and the tibiofibula thereby providing a simple joint capsule it is reinforced through longitudinal thickenings which are all situated on the anterior aspect of the interarticular membrane and tend to converge toward the center of the anterior surface of the tibiofibula (Fig 9). No horizontal thickenings were noted. Some workers are of the opinion that such thickenings in the interarticular membrane are indicative of the earliest morphologic alterations which will lead to the development of menisci observed in animals higher in the scale of development. However there is no convincing evidence supporting this premise. The extensor apparatus is well developed and ends in a sturdy

tendon which crosses the knee joint and inserts into the anterior aspect of the upper end of the tibiofibula. It was interesting to note in this animal the pronounced develop-

ment of the gastrocnemius muscle, which is a powerful flexor of the knee joint and an antagonist of the extensor muscles. As in the salamander no menisci or cruciate liga-

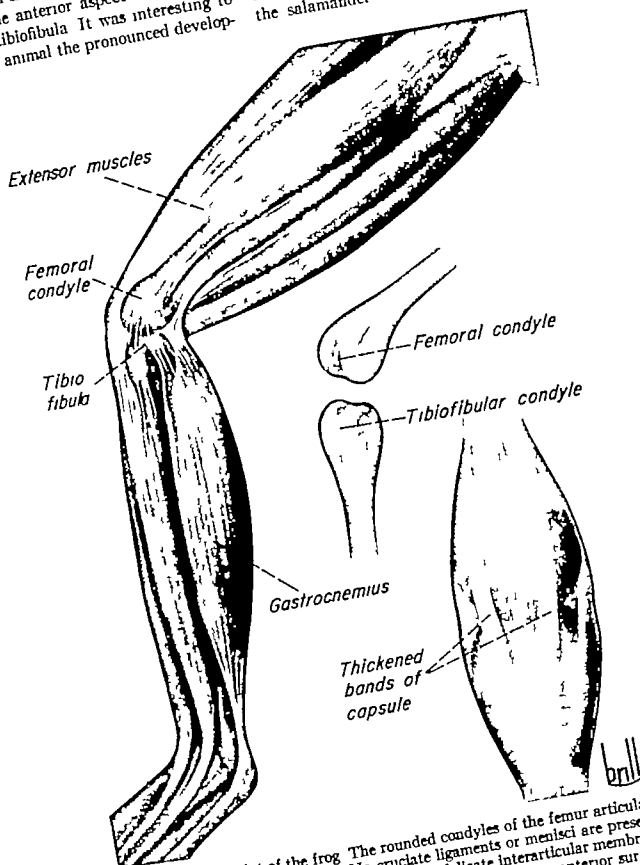


FIG 9 Knee joint of the frog. The rounded condyles of the femur articulate with the single bone tibiofibula. No cruciate ligaments or menisci are present. The ends of the bones are enclosed by a thin, delicate interarticular membrane which exhibits several longitudinal thickenings situated on its anterior surface and converged toward the anterior surface of the tibiofibula. This mechanism is capable of powerful and rapid movements.

ments or patella are present. In spite of the simplicity of the knee joint the hind extremities of the frog are long, powerful and capable of rapid movements.

### REPTILES

The turtle provides a knee joint which is representative of those of the reptiles. In this classification the extremities reveal advanced development and specialization. The lower leg has two bones—the tibia and the fibula—the proximal end of the latter projects beyond the transverse plane of the knee joint and articulates with the lateral condyle of the femur. Unlike the configuration noted in the frog the end of the femur terminates in two well formed condyles. Two sharply defined menisci are present. The lateral meniscus continues posteriorly to the inner aspect of the posterior region of the medial condyle of the femur. It also has a lateral projection circular in shape, which is interposed between the lateral condyle and the articulating surface of the fibula. The femorofibula joint is at right angles to and continuous with the femorotibia joint. A patella is not present (Fig 10).

### MAMMALS

#### OPPOSSUM

The opossum a marsupial provides us with the simplest form of knee joint found in mammals. Its extremities show a high scale of development and are adapted to rapid movements. The bony components of the knee joint present characteristic and interesting configurations. The femur ends in two well formed condyles the medial being slightly larger than the lateral they are oval in shape and are separated by a well-demarcated groove which extends proximally a short distance on the anterior surface of the femur. Of interest is the angulation of the tibial plateau which slopes downward backward and laterally. The

proximal end of the fibula is unusually large and abuts against the lateral condyle of the femur above the level of the joint line. Two well formed menisci are present the external meniscus has an extension posteriorly which inserts into the medial condyle and may function as a posterior cruciate ligament. A well-defined fibrous structure arises from the articular surface of the medial portion of the tibial plateau which is surrounded by the internal meniscus. It extends upward and laterally to insert into the inner aspect of the lateral condyle. This structure functions as an anterior cruciate ligament. No fibrocartilagenous structure is present between the head of the fibula and the lateral condyle of the femur (Fig 11). Separating the two menisci is a prominent ligamentum mucosum which inserts into the tibia. The extensor apparatus of the knee possesses no patella and ends in two tendons one of which inserts into the upper border of the slanting surface of the tibia and the other into its lower border. Immediately in front of the joint a thickening is discernible in the extensor tendon this may be the first alteration in the structure leading to the development of a patella in higher forms.

#### DOG

In the dog the knee joint reveals an architecture designed for rapid and strenuous movements. The knee joint is held habitually in a flexed position and is motorized by powerful muscles. Around the entire musculature of the extremity is found a dense fascia which together with the extensor muscles restricts to a marked degree the excursion of the patella. The patella is an elongated flat bone held at some distance from the joint level. A large well formed suprapatellar pouch is present. The femur ends in two round condyles of equal size between them is a deep groove with sharply demarcated margins which extends well up on the shaft of the femur. This is a feature not prominent in the higher primates and

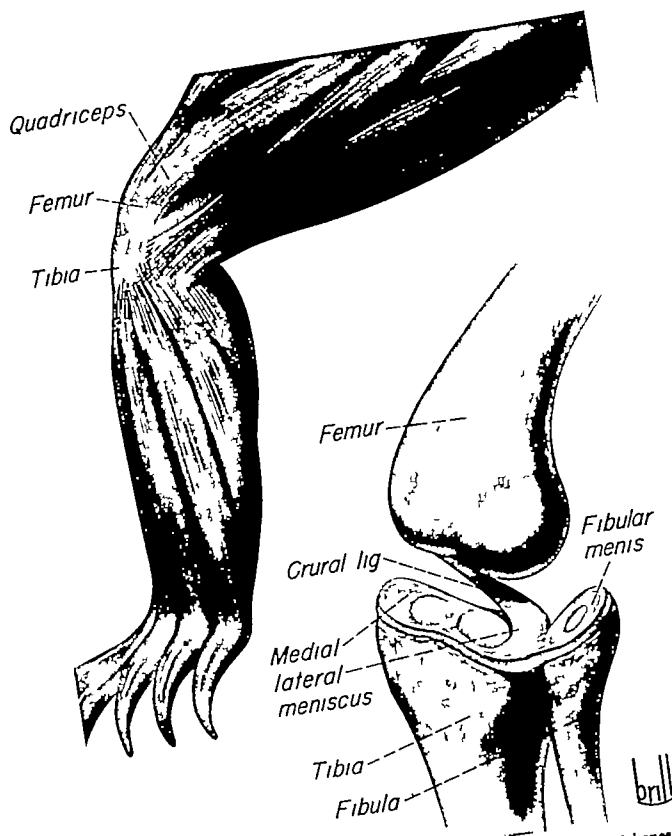


FIG 10 Knee joints of the turtle. Note that the lower leg consists of 2 bones, the proximal end of the fibula projects beyond the transverse plane of the knee and articulates with the lateral condyle of the femur. Two menisci are present, that the external meniscus continues posteriorly to the inner aspect of the condyle of the femur and also has a lateral projection, circular in shape, which separates the articular surface of the fibula from the lateral condyle. No patella is present.

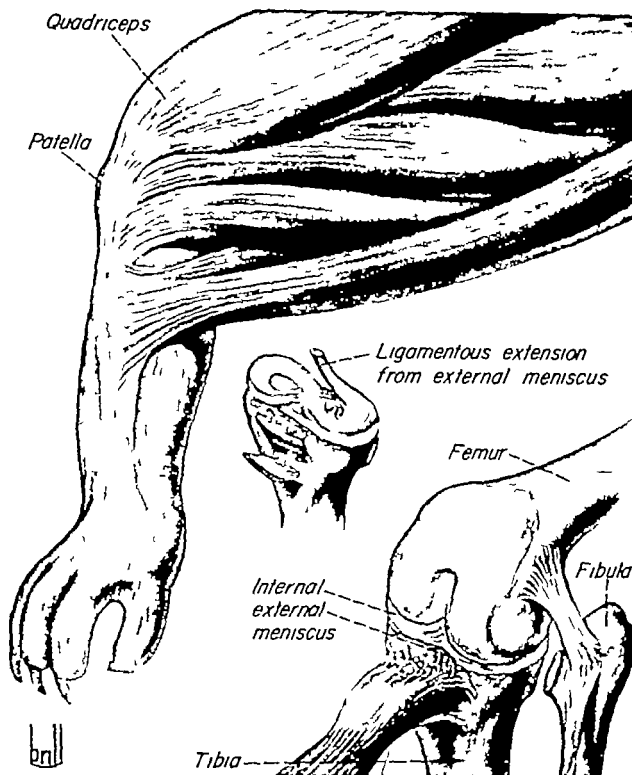


FIG. 11 Knee joint of the opossum. The tibial plateau slopes slightly downward backward and laterally; the tibia articulates with the femur. Two menisci and fibrous structure comparable with the anterior cruciate ligament are present. Note the thickening in the terminal end of the quadriceps tendon which may be the first change in this structure leading to the development of a patella in higher forms.

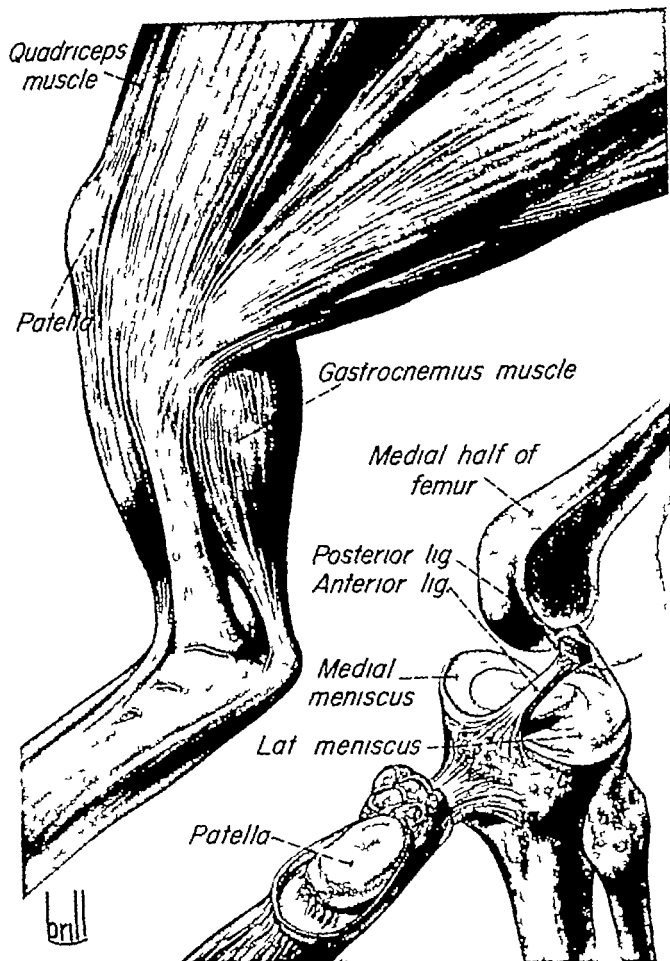


FIG. 12 Knee joint of the dog. The patella has very little range of motion and lies at a distance from the joint level. It possesses a well-defined patellar groove on the anterior aspect of the femur between the femoral condyles. Note the large infrapatellar fat pad. Both cruciate ligaments are present but they are not massive structures. The fibula is fused to the tibia below the level of the joint line.



man it seems to be peculiar to animals which are capable of speedy locomotion. The patellar tendon is broad and well formed and inserts into a massive prominence on the anterior aspect of the tibia some distance below the joint line. A large infrapatellar fat pad is present. The ligamentum mucosum inserts into the tibia below and into the intercondylar notch of the femur above.

Two well formed menisci are demonstrable. The internal meniscus is almost a complete circle while the external one is crescent in shape. The posterior segment of the external meniscus gives off a fibrous band which continues medially to insert into the outer aspect of the medial condyle of the femur. Although the menisci are distinct structures they do not appear to play a major role in the function and the efficiency of the knee joint. This is more apparent particularly when the structures are compared with the menisci found in higher primates and man. A similar observation was made concerning the cruciate ligaments found in the dog and other lower animals.

Both the anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments are distinct structures but not very massive or sturdy. The anterior ligament arises from an area situated between the two articular plateaus of the tibia. The posterior cruciate arises from the posterior border of the tibia.

The upper end of the fibula is fused to the lateral tuberosity of the tibia below the level of the joint line (Fig. 12).

### PRIMATES

#### MACAQUE MONKEY

In this classification the most significant observation was the further development of the cruciate ligaments as compared with those noted in lower animals. This animal's foot is equipped with a very mobile and opposable hallux. Hence the foot is used as a prehensile organ. Close scrutiny of the movements of this animal reveals that the

knees are held habitually in varying degrees of flexion. The grasping characteristic of the foot allows the animal to grasp a branch and swing from it to another with pronounced ease. Soon it becomes apparent that the execution of such movements imposes considerable traction and rotation stresses on the knee joints in both flexion and extension movements and that the knee joints must be endowed with strong interarticular ligaments to allow such complicated strenuous movements.

The lower extremity is very muscular. The patella is firmly bound to the anterior surface of the femur by an enveloping fascia and the extensor muscles. It is interesting to note that the extensor muscles retain their fleshy state almost to the very point of insertion into the patella. The patellar tendon is bound tightly across the joint and inserts into the tibial tuberosity at a distance below the joint line. These anatomic features permit the patella a very small range of excursion. The patella is rather broad and quadrilateral in configuration. There is a large well formed suprapatellar pouch. The femoral condyles are of equal size and show a pronounced posterior projection. They are separated by a clearly demarcated groove which is not so deep or long and with margins which are not so sharp as noted in the dog (Fig. 13 A).

Two well formed but delicate menisci are present. The inner meniscus is crescent in shape while the lateral is an almost complete disk except for a small defect in its center and covers almost the entire lateral plateau of the tibia. The inner edges of both menisci are exceedingly thin almost transparent. From the posterior portion of the external meniscus a fibrous band projects posteriorly to insert into the medial condyle.

The cruciate ligaments are broad fibrous structures capable of providing good stability to the joint. It is interesting to note that the anterior cruciate ligament arises from the articular surface of the inner tibial plateau as a fan-shaped fibrous membrane

which is overlapped by the thin edge of the internal meniscus. This anatomic feature is present in the knee joint of the cat but not in that of the dog. The fibers on the tibial

articular surface converge to form the anterior cruciate ligament, which is sturdier than the posterior cruciate ligament. Such a mode of origin is not present for the pos

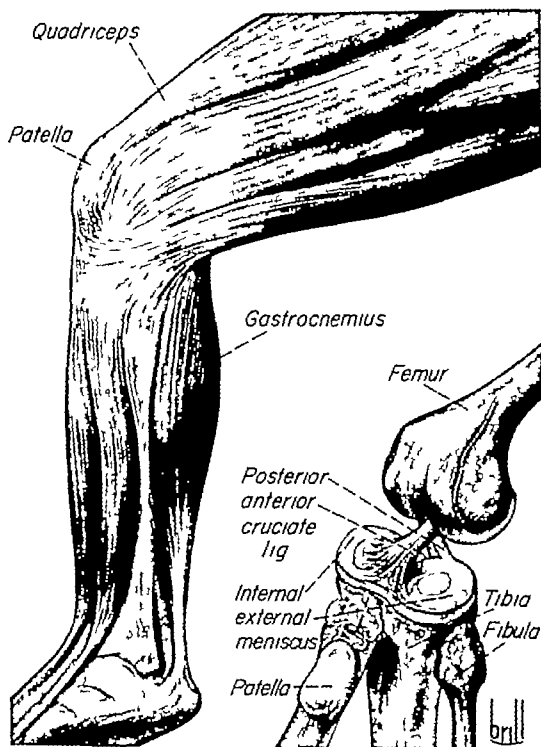


FIG. 13 (A) Knee joint of the macaque monkey. Note the quadrilateral configuration of the patella; the femoral condyles are equal in size and exhibit a prominent posterior projection. The lateral meniscus covers the entire lateral tibial plateau except for a small area in its center. Note the sturdiness of both cruciate ligaments; the anterior arises from the central portion of the articular surface of the inner tibial plateau.

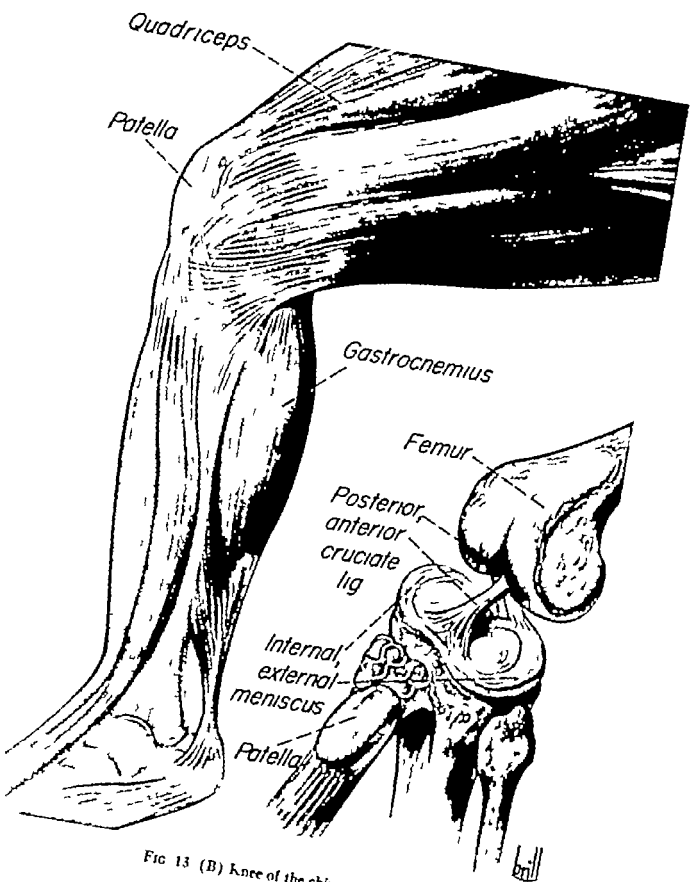


FIG 13 (B) Knee of the chimpanzee

terior ligament, however this structure does gain attachment to the posterior segment of the external cartilage

#### CHIMPANZEE

In general, the anatomic features of the

musculature of the hind limb resemble closely those of the macaque (Fig 13 B). The extremity is motorized by powerful muscles which in the thigh extend almost to the joint line. The patella is a relatively small bone and is bound down firmly on

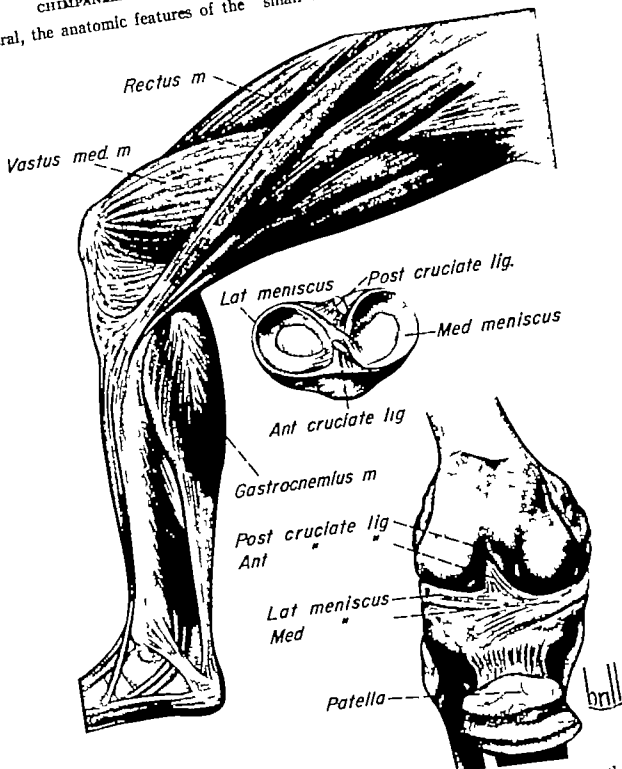


FIG 14 Knee joint of man. The menisci are better developed than in other primates on the other hand the cruciates are less developed. The lateral femoral condyle is larger than the medial and the articular surface of the patella exhibits facets which articulate with corresponding areas on the femoral condyles during flexion and extension of the joint.

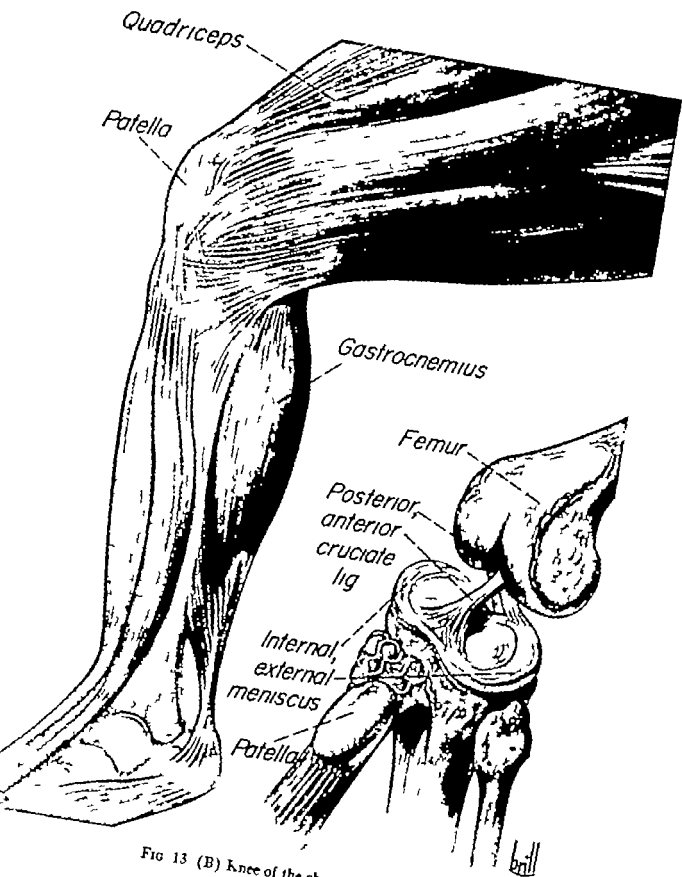


FIG 13 (B) Knee of the chimpanzee

anterior ligament however, this structure does gain attachment to the posterior segment of the external cartilage.

# CHIMPANZEE

In general, the anatomic features of the

musculature of the hind limb resemble closely those of the macaque (Fig 13 B). The extremity is motorized by powerful muscles which in the thigh extend almost to the joint line. The patella is a relatively small bone and is bound down firmly on

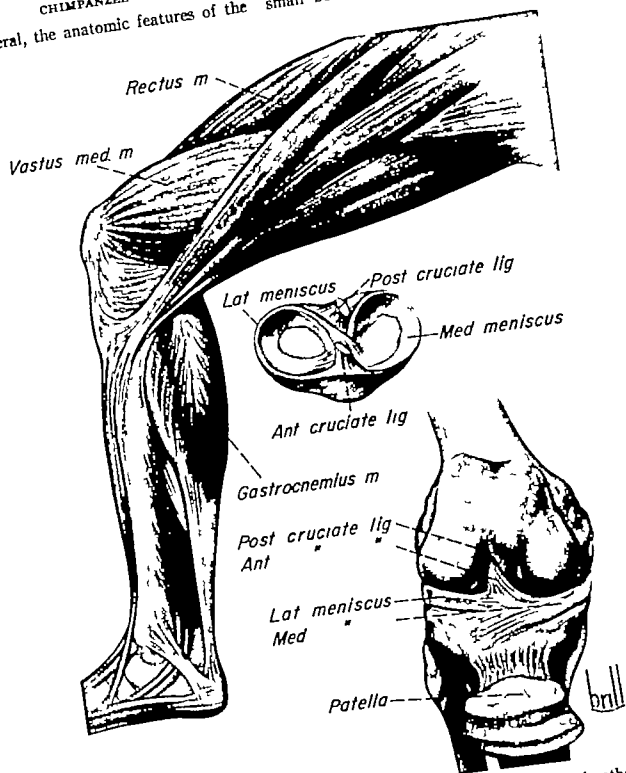


FIG 14 Knee joint of man. The menisci are better developed than in other primates. On the other hand the cruciates are less developed. The lateral femoral condyle is larger than the medial and the articular surface of the patella exhibits facets which articulate with corresponding areas on the femoral condyles during flexion and extension of the joint.

the anterior surface of the femur by the extensor muscles, the patellar tendon and the fascia of the leg. This arrangement greatly restricts the range of motion of the patella. On the other hand the scheme of the interior of the joint is similar to that encountered in man.

This animal tends to assume a semierect posture with the knee held in a habitually flexed attitude. In observing closely, one will see that the chimpanzee uses the hind limbs as organs of support, locomotion and grasping almost as much as the forelimbs. It becomes apparent that strong intra-articular ligaments must be present to provide the extra stability to the knee joints in order that such intricate and strenuous movements can be performed.

The femur ends in two rounded condyles which project posteriorly and are of equal size. Between the condyles is a shallow groove with rounded margins. This configuration of the lower end of the femur differs from that of the macaque in which the groove is deeper and possesses sharper margins but it bears a close resemblance to that found in man. Both menisci are well formed but delicate in structure. The internal meniscus is crescent in shape and anchored firmly to the coronary ligament; the external meniscus resembles an incomplete circle and from its posterior portion a fibrous band is given off which inserts into the medial condyle. The development of the menisci in this animal is greater than that found in lower forms and is surpassed only by that observed in man.

Whereas the menisci are thin narrow delicate structures the cruciate ligaments are broad sturdy cords of fibrous tissue well adapted to the functional demands made on the knee joint. The anterior cruciate which is the larger of the two arises from a broad base on the anterior and central area of the articular surface of the tibia between the two menisci. It bears no resemblance to the origin of the anterior cruciate in the cat or the macaque but ap-

proaches the anatomy present in man. The posterior cruciate also is a large and strong ligament. It is attached posteriorly to the external meniscus. A large infrapatellar fat pad and a well-developed ligamentum mucosum are present.

#### MAN

Man exhibits the highest development of the knee joint. In assuming the erect position new functional demands were made on the musculature motorizing the joint and upon some of the intra-articular components of the joint (Fig. 14). The extensors of the leg together with the iliotemoral muscles especially the gluteal group, now play a major role in maintaining the erect position and the knee in a habitual attitude of extension. Of significance is the greater size of the menisci in man when compared with the size of those in lower primates. This emphasizes the importance of these structures in man. Their role is twofold: they act as buffers between the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia and they increase the concavity of the tibial plateaus thereby adding to the stability of the joint. The internal meniscus is crescent in form and attached firmly to the internal collateral ligament; the external meniscus is more nearly circular and is attached only to the coronary ligament. It has more freedom than the internal meniscus. The posterior segment of the external meniscus is attached to the posterior cruciate ligament and gives rise to a fibrous band which continues to the outer aspect of the medial condyle (ligament of Wrisberg).

From a comparative viewpoint the cruciate ligaments in man are less developed than those of the chimpanzee and the macaque. One can comprehend this fact readily when the movements of the knee joint are analyzed. The principal motion of this articulation is in one plane—the sagittal plane. Rotary motions such as are observed in the macaque and the chimpanzee are not demanded of the human knee.

hence, the role of the cruciate ligaments is less than in the lower forms

Again, to meet the requisites of the erect posture some alteration has occurred in the configuration and the relative size of the femoral condyles. There are two well formed condyles which are separated by a groove which is not so deep or long as that found in the macaque but more pronounced than the one observed in the chimpanzee. Of greater significance is the difference in size in the condyles, the lateral one is larger indicating that this condyle transmits the

greater portion of the weight in the upright position. This is a recent acquisition in man, for embryologic studies disclose that during the development of the knee joint the medial condyle is the larger of the two.

The patella is not bound tightly over the anterior aspect of the femur and has a long range of excursion during flexion and extension of the joint. On its articular surface are found three sets of facets which articulate with corresponding areas on the femoral condyles during varying positions of flexion and extension.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Adams, J. D., and Leonard, R. D. Developmental anomaly of patella frequently diagnosed as fracture, Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 41 601 1925
- Aschner, Berta. Typical hereditary syndrome dystrophy of the nails congenital defect of patella and congenital defect of head of radius J.A.M.A. 102 201 1934
- Bardeen, C. R. The development of the thoracic vertebrae in man, Am. J. Anat. 4 163 1904-05
- Development of the skeleton and of the connective tissues Chap. IX in Keibel, Frants and Mall, F. P. Manual of Human Embryology Philadelphia Lippincott 1910
- Bardeen, C. R. and Lewis, W. H. Development of limbs, body wall and back, Am. J. Anat. 1 1 1901-02
- Berkheiser, E. J. Excision of patella in arthritis of knee joint J.A.M.A. 113 2303 1939
- Brooke, R. Treatment of fractured patella by excision. Study of morphology and function Brit. J. Surg. 24 733 1937
- Bruce, J., and Walmsley, R. Excision of patella some experimental and anatomical observations J. Bone & Joint Surg. 24 311 1942
- Buzby, B. F. Recurring external dislocations of patella, Ann. Surg. 97 38, 1933
- Carey, E. J. Genesis of thigh muscles and primary bone of femur J. Morphol. 37 1 1922
- The clinical application of the dynamics of histogenesis regarding the origin, growth, and structural maintenance of patellar bone, knee joint and related thigh muscles mobilization and the traction trabeculae and pressure pillars of human patella Radiology 10 234 1928
- Carey, E. J., Zeit, W., and McGrath, B. F. Studies in the dynamics of histogenesis. The regeneration of the patellae of dogs, Am. J. Anat. 40 127 1927
- Chandler, F. A. Symposium on injuries of knee joints congenital abnormalities of the external semilunar cartilage S. Clin. North America 17 331 1937
- Compere, E. L. and Siegling, J. A. Lesions of extensor apparatus of knee S. Clin. North America 17 341 1937
- De Vriesse, B. Zur anatomie der patella Verhandl. anat. Gesellschaft 22 163 1908
- Dobbie, R. P. and Ryerson, S. Treatment of fractured patella by excision Am. J. Surg. 55 339 1942
- Ellis, V. H. Congenital abnormality of external semilunar cartilage Lancet 1 1359 1932
- Fell, H. B. The origin and developmental mechanics of the avian sternum Philos. Tr. Roy. Soc. London, A 229 407 1939
- Fell, H. B. and Cantl, R. G. Experiments on the development in vitro of the avian knee-joint Proc. Roy. Soc., London B 116 316 1934
- Finder, J. G. Discoid external semilunar cartilage cause of internal derangement of knee joint J. Bone & Joint Surg. 16 804 1934
- Flint, J. M. Notes on the form of the cavity of the knee joint, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. 15 309 1904-05
- Forty, F. Congenital and recurrent dislocation of patella treated by transplantation of patellar tendon Lancet 2 1046 1935
- Gardner, E. Physiology of movable joints Physiol. Rev. 30 127 1950
- The anatomy of the joints in Am. Acad. Orthop. Surgeons Instructional Course Lectures Vol. IX, pp. 149 155 1952
- Gardner, E., and Gray, D. J. Prenatal development of the human hip joint Am. J. Anat. 87 163 1950
- Giles, R. G. Congenital anomaly of patella Texas State J. Med. 23 731 1928



- Goodrick E. S. Studies on the Structure and Development of Vertebrates London, Macmillan, 1930
- Goodair J. Anatomical Memoirs 2 224 Edinburgh, Black, 1868
- Gray D. J. and Gardner E. D. The human sternochondral joints Anat Rec 87 235 1943
- Prenatal development of the human elbow joint Am J Anat 88 429 1951
- Prenatal development of the human knee and superior tibio-tibular joints Am. J Anat 86 235 1950
- Gregory W. K. Present status of the problem of the origin of the tetrapod with special reference to the skull and paired limbs Ann. New York Acad. Sc. 26 317 1915
- Further observations on the pectoral girdle and fin of *Sauripterus Taylori* Hall, a crossopterygian fish from the upper Devonian of Pennsylvania with special reference to the origin of the pentadactylate extremities of tetrapods Proc Am. Philos. Soc. 75 673 1935
- Groves E. W. H. Note on extension apparatus of knee-joint Brit. J Surg 24 747 1931
- Hagen Torn, O. Entwicklung und Bau der Synovialmembranen, Arch. mikr Anat 21 591
- Haines R. W. The development of joints, J Anat. 81 33 1941
- Hamburger V., and Hamilton, H. L. A series of normal stages in the development of the chick embryo J Morphol. 88 49 1951
- Hamburger V., and Waugh, M. The primary development of the skeleton in nerveless and poorly innervated limb transplants of chick embryos. Physiol Zool 13 367 1940
- Harrison R. G. Experiments on the development of the fore limb of amblystoma a self-differentiating equipotential system J Exper Zool. 25 413 1918
- Hauser E. D. W. Total tendon transplant for slipping patella Surg., Gynec. & Obst 66 199 1938
- Henderson M. S. Derangement of knee joint South Surgeon 3 123 1934
- Herzmark M. H. Evolution of the knee joint J Bone & Joint Surg 20 71 1938
- Howell A. B. Speed in Animals Chicago Univ. Chicago Press 1944
- Hultkrantz, J. W. Das Ellenbogengelenk und seine Mechanik. Eine Anatomische Studie 153 p. Jena Fischer 1897
- Huxley T. H. Manual of the Comparative Anatomy of the Vertebrated Animals New York Appleton 18 1
- Jaffe H. L. Comparative anatomy of semilunar cartilages of the knees Normal presence of bone in menisci of some animals Arch. Path. 15 599 1933
- Jones F. W. Attainment of upright position of man Nature London 146 26 1940
- Jones H. C., and Hedrick, D. W. Patellar anomalies roentgenologic and clinical consideration, Radiology 38 30 1942
- Jordan, H. E., and Kindred, J. E. A Textbook of Human Embryology New York, Appleton 1926
- Kazzander J. Ueber die Entwicklung des Kniegelenkes Arch. Anat. Entw. Gesellsch p. 161 1894
- Keith A. Human Embryology and Morphology Baltimore Wood, 1933
- King E. S. J. The formation of ganglia and cysts of the meniscus of the knee Observations on the Golgi apparatus Surg. Gynec. & Obst 70 150 1940
- Kingsley J. S. Comparative Anatomy of the Vertebrates Philadelphia, Blakiston 1917
- Langer M. Ueber die Entwicklung des Kniegelenkes Ztschr. d. ges. Anat. (Abt. I) 89 83 1929
- MacConaill M. A. The function of intra articular fibrocartilages with special reference to knee and inferior radio-ulnar joints J Anat. 66 210 1932
- McDermott, L. J. Development of the human knee joint Arch. Surg. 46 705 1943
- Malkin S. A. Dislocation of patella, Brit. M. J. 2 91 1932
- Murray P. D. F. An experimental study of the development of the limbs of the chick, Proc. Linn. Soc. N. S. Wales 51 187 1926
- Murray P. D. F. and Selby D. Intrinsic and extrinsic factors in the primary development of the skeleton, Arch. Entw. Org 122 629 1930
- Nesl, H. V. and Rand, H. W. Comparative Anatomy Philadelphia Blakiston 1936
- Nickerson, S. H. Pathology of the anomalies found in knee joints Am J Roentgenol 53 213 1945
- Ober F. R. Slipping patella or recurrent dislocation of patella J Bone & Joint Surg 17 774 1935
- Parsons F. G. The joints of mammals compared with those of man J Anat & Physiol. 34 301 1900
- Rubin, G. Congenital absence of patellae and other patellar anomalies in three members of same family J A.M.A. 64 2062 1915
- Smith, L. D. Accessory patella (bipartita) Wisconsin M. J. 31 384 1932
- Patellae bipartite New England J Med 212 331 1936

- Soutter R. New operation for slipping patella  
New England J Med. 209 59 1933
- Streeter G L. Developmental horizons in human embryos. Description of age group XI 13-20 Somites and age group XII 21-29 Somites  
Contrib Embryol. 30 (197) 211 Pub No 541 Carnegie Inst. of Wash., 1942
- Developmental horizons in human embryos. Descriptions of age group XIII, embryos about 4 or 5 millimeters long and age group XIV, period of indentations of lens vesicle  
Contrib Embryol 31 (199) 27, Pub No 557 Carnegie Inst. of Wash. 1945
- Developmental horizons in human embryos. Descriptions of age groups XV XVI XVII and XVIII being the third issue of a survey of the Carnegie Collection. Contrib Embryol 32 (211) 133 Pub No 575 Carnegie Inst of Wash 1948
- Developmental horizons in human embryos. Description of age groups XIX XX XXI XXII and XXIII being the fifth issue of a survey of the Carnegie Collection. Contrib Embryol. 34 (230) 169 Pub No 592 Carnegie Inst. of Wash. 1951
- Sutton J B Ligaments Their Nature and Morphology Philadelphia, Blakiston, 1887
- Walmsley R. Development of patella J Anat 74 360, 1940
- Willis, R. A. The growth of embryo bones transplanted whole in the rat's brain Proc. Roy Soc London, s.B 120 49b 1936

### 3

## Normal Anatomy of the Knee Joint

A study of the anatomy and the functional mechanics of the hip and the knee joints reveals that many muscles of the thigh extend across both joints. By changing their fixed points these muscles motorize both joints. Moreover the normal states and the dynamic mechanism of the lower limb are dependent upon the integrity of the hip the knee and the ankle joints, particularly the first two articulations. It becomes apparent that any discussion dealing with the anatomy and the mechanics of the knee joint must include the anatomy and the mechanics of the hip joint also.

### THIGH

#### FASCIAE

The muscles of the thigh are enveloped by two distinct fasciae the superficial fascia or *tela subcutanea* and the deep fascia or *fascia lata*.

#### SUPERFICIAL FASCIA (TELA SUBCUTANEA)

This fascia layer varies in thickness in different regions and contains varying amounts of adipose tissue. Anteriorly it is continuous with the superficial fascia of the abdomen and the leg and posteriorly with the fascia overlying the back and the gluteal region. It comprises a superficial fatty layer and a deep membranous layer. Between the two are located the saphenous vein, the superficial inguinal lymph nodes and the superficial vessels and nerves. The superficial fatty layer may be separated into several planes by fine membranous layers. This is particularly true in the superomedial aspect of the thigh in individuals possessing

considerable subcutaneous adipose tissue. The membranous layer fuses with the *fascia lata* slightly distal to the inguinal ligament and along the superomedial region of the thigh. Also it is adherent to the falciform margin of the fossa ovalis and covers the outlet with a spongy tissue perforated by numerous openings for the blood vessels and the lymph channels. This portion of the membranous fascia filling the fossa ovalis is designated the *fascia cribrosa*. In the superficial fascia overlying the patella a subcutaneous bursa is situated (prepatellar bursa) frequently another is found over the proximal region of the patellar tendon (infrapatellar bursa).

#### FASCIA LATA

This deep membranous layer is a dense fascia sheet investing the entire musculature of the thigh. Its lateral portion is thick and strong because of the reinforcement it receives from the tendons in this region. Where it lacks such reinforcement it is thin and delicate. The portion covering the anterior aspect of the thigh contains stout transverse fibers which convert it into a dense fibrous membrane. Proximally it gains attachment to the anterior superior spine, the pubic tubercle and the inguinal ligament and it is continuous with the external abdominal and lumbodorsal fascia. Distally it passes over the knee and fuses with the fibrous capsule of the joint and receives contributing fibers from the extensor apparatus chiefly from the vastus lateralis and the vastus medialis. This arrangement augments in a large measure the stability of the knee and the strength of the

extensor apparatus of the joint. The fascia investing the medial and the posterior regions of the thigh is less dense, in fact, it is thin and does not possess the features of an aponeurotic sheet except in the region of the knee. It is attached to the sacrotuberous ligament, the tuberosity and the inferior ramus of the ischium and of the pubis and extends distally to become continuous with

the fascia of the posterior aspect of the leg. In the region of the knee joint fibers from the tendons of the quadriceps, the sartorius, the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles reinforce the fascia.

That portion of the fascia covering the anterior region of the thigh exhibits some interesting anatomic features. Proximally, it is attached to the anterior superior spine of

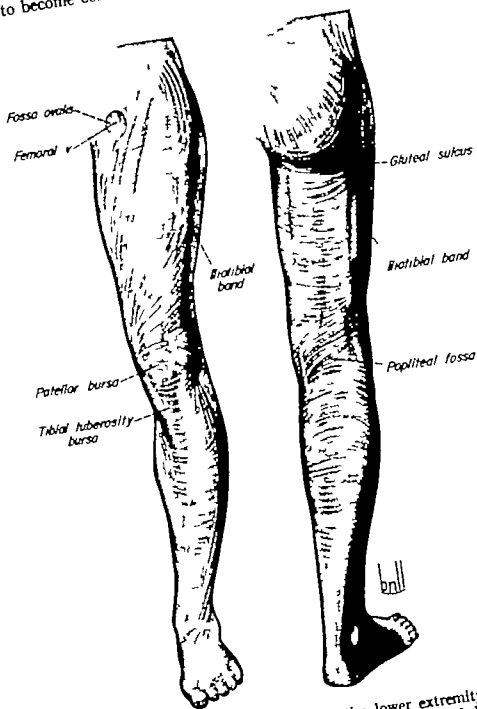


FIG 15 Fasciae enveloping the entire lower extremity. Distal to the medial half of the inguinal ligament the outer and deep laminae of the fascia lata sweep around the great saphenous vein to form the fossa ovalis.

the ilium the inguinal ligament and the tubercle of the pubis (Fig 15) Slightly beyond the outer half the inguinal ligament, the three abdominal fasciae blend to form a single aponeurotic sheet. The most superficial of these fasciae is the external fascia passing over the obliquus externus muscle which continues distally superficial to the inguinal ligament. The middle fascia is a prolongation of the transversalis fascia of the antero-abdominal wall. It passes distally beneath the inguinal ligament. The internal fascia is an extension of the iliac fascia which also passes beneath the inguinal ligament, the portion below the ligament being designated the iliopectineal fascia. Just beyond the medial half of the inguinal ligament the middle and the internal fasciae do not fuse with the fascia lata and extend distally to form the anterior and the posterior walls of the femoral sheath. In the region of the femoral vessels the fascia lata gains in thickness and becomes laminated, it also exhibits an opening (fossa ovalis) through which passes the great saphenous vein. The outer lamina together with the inguinal ligament gains attachment to the tubercle of the pubis. It possesses a distinct falciform edge which sweeps around the proximal end of the great saphenous vein and continues in the nature of a spiral downward and outward behind the vein to become continuous with the deep lamina along the medial aspect of the vein. Between the two laminae some adipose tissue is present.

The lateral portion of the fascia lata is noted for its aponeurotic nature and thickness. It embodies strong tendinous fibers of insertion of the gluteus maximus and the tensor fascia lata muscles. That portion between the superior border of the gluteus maximus muscle and the crest of the ilium is supplemented by vertical tendinous bundles and is designated the gluteal aponeurosis. Along the border of the gluteus maximus this fascia splits into a superficial and a deep layer and invests the muscle. The

superficial layer is relatively thin (gluteal fascia), and from it fibrous septa arise which extend downward between large muscle bundles. Proximal and lateral to the greater trochanter of the femur muscular fasciculi terminate in a broad, thick tendon which is continuous with the fascia lata and is known as the iliotibial band. Distal to the anterior region of the iliac crest the fascia separates into two layers and envelopes the tensor fascia lata muscle which inserts into the iliotibial band. Between the iliotibial band and the vastus lateralis muscle a distinct fascial cleft is present. It extends distally, inserting into the tibia and blends with the fibrous expansions from the vastus lateralis and the biceps femoris.

At the lower border of the gluteus maximus the layers of fascia enveloping this muscle fuse into one sheet which continues distally over the hamstring muscles and the popliteal fossa. This constitutes the posterior portion of the fascia lata.

From the deep surface of the fascia lata several fibrous septa arise, these pass between the underlying muscles. The most significant of these are the lateral and the medial intermuscular septa. Of the aforementioned septa, the lateral intermuscular septum is the stronger. It is reinforced by an abundance of longitudinal fibers and its distal portion is by far the thickest. It extends from the insertion of gluteus maximus to the lateral condyle of the femur and separates the vastus lateralis from the biceps femoris. Both these muscles fuse with the septum. The vastus lateralis joins the ventrolateral surface of the septum and the short head of the biceps femoris the dorso-medial surface. The medial intermuscular septum separates the anterior extensor group of muscles from the medial adductor group (between the vastus medialis the adductors and the pectineus muscles). Near the fascia lata the outer portion of the septum separates into two laminae which invest the sartorius. It also contributes to the formation of the adductor canal (Hunt

er's canal), which extends from the apex of the femoral triangle to the proximal end of the popliteal space. Through Hunter's canal pass the femoral vessels and the saphenous nerve.

**Fossa Ovalis.** Just distal to the medial end of the inguinal ligament is found an oval aperture in the fascia lata known as the fossa ovalis. Through it passes the saphenous vein just before it ends in the femoral vein. In this region the fascia lata which is rather thick, separates into two layers between which loose fatty tissue is present. The superficial lamina stretches between and is attached to the inguinal ligament and the tubercle of the pubis, presenting a free edge designated as the falciform margin of the fossa. Beginning at the pubic tubercle this falciform margin sweeps in the form of a spiral first laterally in which position it lies superficial to the saphenous vein, then downward and medially under the vein. Just medial to this vein, both superficial and deep layers merge with each other. The upper and lateral segment of the falciform margin is called the superior cornu; the distal and medial segment, the inferior cornu. The deep layer of the fascia comprises the pectineal, the iliopectineal and the iliac fasciae. The aperture (fossa ovalis) is covered by a deep layer of the superficial fascia of the thigh (fascia cribrosa) which is perforated by numerous openings for the passage of vessels and lymphatic channels.

### MUSCLES

The musculature of the thigh comprises three groups: the anterior, the medial and the posterior. In general, each group is concerned with specific actions and possesses a particular nerve supply.

#### ANTERIOR GROUP

This group originally occupied a dorsal position and constitutes the principal flexor of the hip and the extensor of the knee. It consists of the sartorius, the tensor fasciae latae, the quadriceps femoris, the articularis

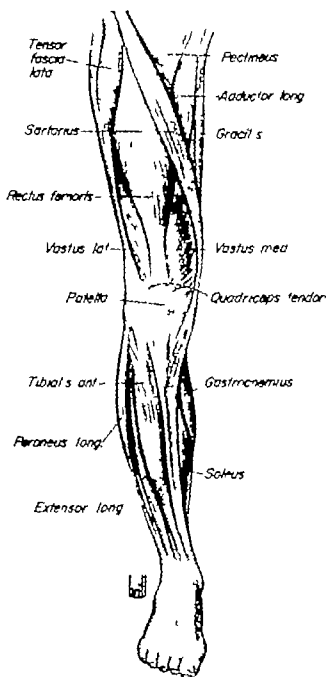


FIG. 16. Anterior group of muscles of the thigh and the leg.

geni, the iliopsoas and the psoas minor (Fig. 16).

**Sartorius.** The most superficial muscle of the anterior group is the sartorius, also called the "tailor" muscle. It is a long ribbonlike muscle; its muscle fibers run parallel with one another and are believed to be the longest in the body. The muscle pursues a spiral course, extending from the anterior superior spine above to the medial tibial condyle and the adjacent fascia of the

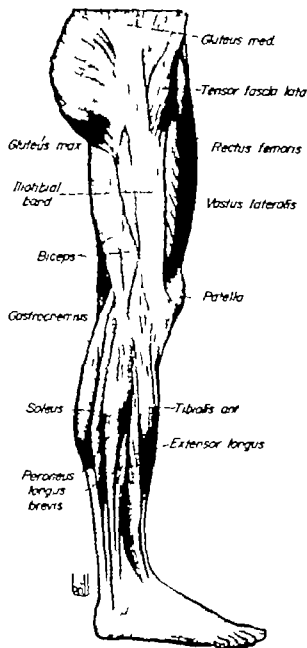


FIG. 17 Lateral muscles of the lower leg. The origin, the course and the insertion of the iliotibial band are clearly shown.

leg below. The tendon of insertion is first noted at the level of the medial epicondyle of the femur on the undersurface of the muscle. Muscle fibers insert into the superficial surface of the tendon as far as the lower border of the knee joint. The tendon then continues forward to its site of insertion. Inasmuch as the muscle spans both the hip and the knee joints, it functions as a flexor of the hip and the knee. Some au-

thorities believe it to be an initiator of flexion in the hip. Flexion of the knee is possible because it pursues a path posterior to the axis of motion of the knee joint. In addition to the actions described, the sartorius is capable of two other functions. Its medial insertion below the knee and its lateral site of origin permit it to rotate the thigh externally. Also, it is an abductor of the thigh. Together, the four actions of this muscle make possible the cross-legged sitting posture assumed by tailors; hence the designation "tailor" muscle.

**Tensor Fascia Lata.** This muscle is relatively short and flat and arises by a tendinous band from the external lip of the iliac crest and the upper half of the notch between the superior and the inferior iliac spines. Some fibers of origin arise from the intermuscular septum between the tensor fascia lata and the gluteus medius. It follows a course directed slightly posteriorly and inserts into the iliotibial band approximately at the junction of the upper and the middle thirds of the thigh. The muscle mass is enclosed in two sheets of fascia lata (Fig. 17).

Primarily, it is a flexor of the hip, but its posterior direction allows it to act together with the gluteus medius and minimus as an internal rotator of the thigh. Also, it assists these muscles in abduction of the thigh. Furthermore, together with the gluteus maximus, it sustains extension of the knee through its insertion into the iliotibial band. When the foot is set down as in walking and the leg is fixed, this muscle advances the opposite side of the pelvis by abducting and flexing the pelvis and rotating it laterally. Finally, it assists in further flexing of the flexed knee joint.

**Quadriceps Femoris.** This is the large fleshy mass covering the anterior medial and lateral surfaces of the femur. It comprises four distinct muscles: the rectus femoris, which occupies the middle of the thigh and also possesses a tendinous origin from the ilium; the vastus lateralis cover-

ing the lateral surface of the femur the vastus medialis, situated on the medial side, and the vastus intermedius, on the front of the femur

**RECTUS FEMORIS** This muscle mass occupies a more anterior position than the other components of the quadriceps femoris muscle. It is fusiform in configuration, while the deep fibers continue a straight course to the deep aponeurosis. It arises from the ilium by two tendons, one arising from the anterior inferior spine of the ilium and the second from a sulcus just over the brim of the acetabulum. The former tendon pursues a straight course and occupies an anterior position, the latter lies more posteriorly and is reflected from its site of origin. The tendons join at an acute angle and fan out into an aponeurotic expansion, which projects downward on the anterior surface of the muscle, and from which the muscle fibers arise. The muscle terminates in a strong aponeurotic sheet which covers the distal two thirds of the undersurface of the muscle and tapers off to form a stout flattened tendon, this inserts into the superior border of the patella and ultimately through the patellar ligament into the tuberosity of the tibia. Because the muscle crosses the hip joint, it acts as a flexor of the thigh, a function which none of the other members of the group are able to execute. Together with the vasti, the rectus femoris extends the knee joint.

**VASTUS LATERALIS** This is the largest member of the quadriceps femoris group, covering the greater part of the lateral and the posterolateral aspects of the femur. It arises from several sites. Of these, the most important is a broad aponeurosis attached to the upper part of the intertrochanteric line, to the antero-inferior region of the greater tuberosity and in front of the gluteal tuberosity and to the proximal half of the lateral lip of the linea aspera. This aponeurotic expansion spreads out over the superficial surface of the proximal two thirds of the muscle and from its undersurface many

muscle fibers take origin. Some fibers take origin from the lateral intermuscular septum situated between the biceps femoris and the vastus lateralis, and some from the tendon of the gluteus maximus. The fibers continue distally in a parallel course directed ventromedially and insert in a thick aponeurosis covering the deep surface of the muscle. Fleishy fibers insert into the aponeurosis a short distance from the patella. Ultimately the aponeurosis ends in a strong flat tendon which inserts into the lateral aspect of the patella, fusing with the tendon of the quadriceps femoris. Medially, the tendon blends with that of the vastus medialis and dorsally with fibers coming from the tendon of the vastus intermedius. Also it blends with the capsule of the knee joint. The muscle mass of the vastus lateralis may be separated into two layers, a superficial and deep. Occasionally, the latter may be divided further into two muscle sheets.

**VASTUS MEDIALIS** To the casual observer the vastus medialis and the intermedius muscles appear to be united through their entire extent. However, if the rectus femoris is removed from the muscular mass, one observes a narrow plane of division between the two muscles. It extends from the medial border of the patella to the distal portion of the intertrochanteric line, where the muscles are often inseparable. The vastus medialis arises from the entire length of the medial lip of the linea aspera and from the distal half of the intertrochanteric line. Some fibers also arise from the medial intermuscular septum and the tendons of insertion of the adductor muscles. The fiber bundles run downward and forward and insert into an aponeurosis on the deep surface in the muscle. The aponeurosis begins at approximately the middle of the muscle near its lateral margin. It inserts into the medial proximal half of the medial border of the patella and the tendon of the quadriceps femoris and into the medial condyle of the tibia and the fascia of the leg. Also, some fibers join the capsule of the knee joint.



**VASTUS INTERMEDIUS** This muscle arises from a large surface area of the femur and covers most of the medial and the lateral surfaces of the femoral shaft. Its origin may be described as arising from the proximal two thirds of the anterolateral surfaces of the femur and from the distal portion of the intermuscular septum. The fiber bundles insert into the deep surface a superficial aponeurosis which covers most of the ventral surface of the muscle and inserts into the upper border of the patella forming the deep portion of the quadriceps femoris tendon. The proximal fiber bundles continue distally to their insertion in a vertical direction, the medial and the lateral ones take an oblique course. Laterally, the tendon of insertion blends with that of the vastus lateralis and medially with that of the vastus medialis.

**Articularis Genu** Beneath the vastus intermedius but distinct from it (occasionally blending with it) is situated a small group of muscle fibers arranged concentrically, which arises from the anterior surface of the lower portion of the shaft of the femur. This muscle group called articularis genu inserts into the proximal portion of the synovial membrane of the knee joint. Its function is to draw the synovial membrane upward as the leg is extended.

**Tendon of the Quadriceps Femoris** The combined quadriceps tendon comprises three laminae: the superficial layer is formed chiefly by the tendon of the rectus femoris; the deep layer by the tendon of the vastus intermedius and the middle layer by the tendons of the vastus lateralis and the vastus medialis (Fig. 18). At the lower end of the thigh the aforementioned layers fuse to form a stout single tendon which inserts into the superior and the lateral borders of the patella. Some fibers pass over the front of the patella and blend with the fibers of the patellar ligament. Some tendon fibers of the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis fan out and extend distally on each side of the patella to insert into the condyles

of the tibia on either side of the tuberosity. These fibers form the medial and the lateral patellar retinacula, which occupy a position between the anterior and the collateral ligaments (Fig. 19). Bundles of fibers stretching from the epicondyles of the femur to the patella reinforce the retinacula; also into these fibers some fleshy muscle fibers insert.

**Ligamentum Patellae** The central portion of the combined quadriceps tendon continues over the patella to the tuberosity of the tibia as the patellar ligament (anterior ligament). It is a stout, flat tendinous band firmly attached above to the apex and the margins of the patella and below to the tibial tuberosity. Its superficial fibers cross over the front of the patella and unite with those of the quadriceps tendon. Between the tibia and the tendon a bursa is interposed on the posterior surface of the tendon; a pad of fat (infrapatellar fat pad) is found which is lined with synovial membrane and projects into the joint cavity.

From the above anatomic characteristics of the components of the quadriceps femoris it becomes apparent that this muscle functions solely as an extensor of the leg. Of the four members of this group the vastus medialis is by far the most important because as will be shown in the discussion dealing with the mechanics of the knee joint it is the chief stabilizer of the knee and is responsible for the last 10° or 15° of extension.

Contrary to the belief of many, the patella is not a sesamoid bone but develops as part of the femoropatellar joint. Its presence ensures the efficiency of the quadriceps muscle by providing additional leverage. It accomplishes this by placing the tendon anterior to the axis of motion. Moreover, the patella affords adequate protection to the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles and spares the quadriceps tendon undue frictional strains. All these features must be considered before one is justified in excising the patella.

**Iliopsoas.** Generally this muscle mass is

FIG 18 The quadriceps tendon comprises 3 laminae the superficial, the intermediate and the deep

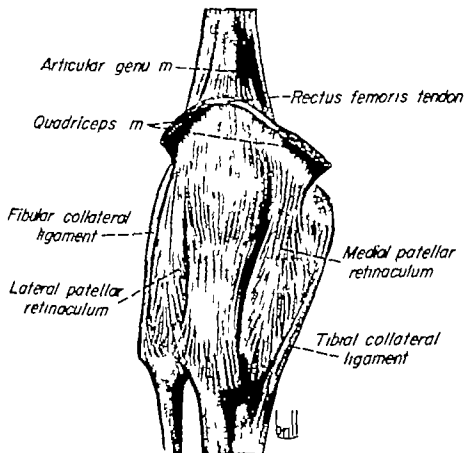
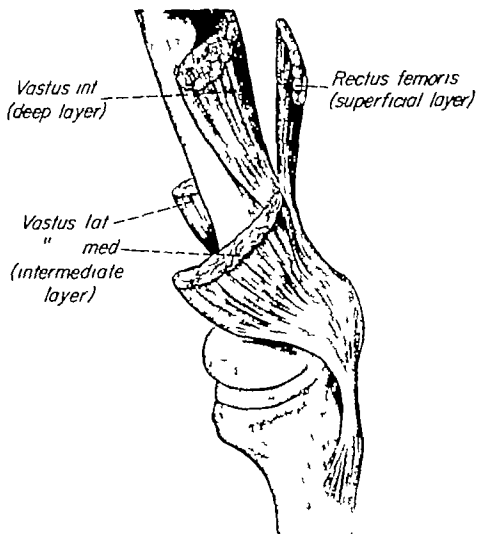


FIG 19 Observe the patellar retinacula occupying the intervals between the anterior and the respective collateral ligaments

considered as consisting of two muscles the iliacus and the psoas. Both arise within the abdomen and insert into the lesser trochanter of the femur by a common tendon.

The psoas major muscle arises from the sides of the bodies and the corresponding intervertebral disks of 12 thoracic and all the lumbar vertebrae by stout fasciculi (5 in number) each of which is attached to the adjacent superior and inferior borders of 2 vertebrae and to the intervertebral disks from the anterior surfaces, the bases and the inferior margins of the transverse processes of all the lumbar vertebrae and from the tendinous arches stretching across the narrowed central portions of the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae. Within the posterior substance of the muscle close to its origin and anterior to the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae the roots and the branches of the lumbar plexus are situated. From their origin the muscle fibers group to form a fusiform muscle which proceeds in a downward direction almost vertically across the brim of the minor pelvis. It diminishes gradually in bulk as it approaches its insertion passing under the inguinal ligament and along the anterior aspect of the capsule of the hip joint and terminating in a tendon which joins most of the fibers of the iliacus. It inserts into the lesser trochanter of the femur.

The iliacus arises within the abdomen as does the psoas major from the ventral margin of the ilium situated between the anterior superior and the anterior inferior iliac spines and the notch between them from the inner lip of the iliac crest and from the base of the sacrum the ilio-lumbar and the anterior sacro-iliac ligaments. From these sources of origin the muscle fibers converge to form a flat triangular muscle and insert in a penniform manner into the lateral border of the tendons of the psoas major some fibers continue distally and insert directly into the shaft of the femur just below and in front of the lesser trochanter.

The iliopsoas is the most powerful of all the flexors of the thigh at the hip. When acting on the free limb (foot off the ground) it functions as an external rotator of the thigh with the leg fixed (foot on the ground), it functions as an internal rotator and in walking it aids in advancing the opposite side of the pelvis. This last action is executed chiefly by the psoas portion of the muscle mass. By reversing their fixed points, the iliopsoas muscle flexes the pelvis on the thigh, as in sitting up from a supine position.

**Psoas Minor** From the sides of the 12 dorsal and the first lumbar vertebrae and from the intervening interarticular disks arises a long narrow tapering muscle called the psoas minor. It lies in front of the psoas major. It terminates in a flat tendon that inserts into the iliopectineal eminence and the pectineal line. Its lateral border blends with the iliac fascia. Not infrequently this muscle is absent.

#### MEDIAL GROUP (ADDUCTOR MUSCLES)

The adductor group is concerned chiefly with adduction and flexion of the thigh. Originally it occupied a ventral position. It comprises the gracilis the pectineus the adductor longus the adductor brevis and the adductor magnus.

**Gracilis.** This muscle is the most superficial of the group. It arises by a thin aponeurosis from the inferior pubic and ischial rami and extends downward along the medial aspect of the thigh as a flat ribbon-like muscle tapering below and ending in a rounded tendon that curves forward from behind the medial condyle of the femur. Close to its insertion the tendon becomes flattened and inserts into the upper portion of the medial aspect of the body of the tibia just below the condyle. Some fibers of the tendon continue distally to blend with the fascia of the leg. At its insertion the tendon lies partly under that of the sartorius and is just above that of the semitendinosus. Between the tendons of the gracilis the

semitendinosus and the tibial collateral ligament is situated a small bursa. The gracilis is a flexor and adductor of the thigh, in addition it functions as a medial rotator of the leg when the knee is flexed

**Pectineus.** This muscle is the most lateral of the group, it is flat and quadrangular and occupies a position in the proximal and medial region of the thigh. It arises from the pectineal line, from the bone in front of it and from the pectineal fascia covering the ventral surface of the muscle. From their insertion the muscle fibers run downward, backward and laterally and insert into the raised, roughened bony margin extending from the lesser trochanter to the linea aspera. It functions as a flexor and adductor of the thigh

**Adductor Longus.** This triangularly shaped muscle is situated more superficially than the other two adductors. By means of a stout, flat tendon, it arises from the pubic tubercle the tendon soon gives origin to a substantial fleshy muscle which runs downward, backward and inward, paralleling the course of the pectineus muscle. It inserts into the medial lip of the linea aspera between the insertions of the vastus medialis and the adductor magnus, the aponeurosis of insertion of the adductor longus blends with both these muscles and with the medial intermuscular septum

Primarily, this muscle is a flexor and adductor of the hip joint but it also functions as an external rotator of the thigh. In addition, together with the other adductors from a position of acute flexion it may reverse its action and function as an initiator of extension of the hip

**Adductor Brevis.** Like the adductor longus muscle it assumes a triangular form. It lies under the adductor longus and the pectineus. It arises by means of a short narrow tendon from the outer surface of the inferior ramus of the pubis between the gracilis and the obturator externus. From their origin the muscle fibers take a course directed downward, laterally and inward

and terminate in an aponeurosis, which inserts into the distal portion of the line extending from the lesser trochanter to the linea aspera and into the proximal portion of the linea aspera just posterior to the insertion of the pectineus and the upper portion of that of the adductor longus. Its chief functions are adduction, flexion and external rotation of the hip joint

**Adductor Magnus.** This is the largest and the strongest of the adductor group, it is triangular in shape and occupies a medial position on the thigh. It takes origin from a small area on the inferior ramus of the pubis from the inferior ramus of the ischius and from the tuberosity of the ischium. From this origin three distinct groups of muscle fibers are demonstrable (1) The upper fibers run almost a horizontal course from their origin on the inferior ramus of the pubis to their insertion into the superior part of the linea aspera, medial to the gluteus maximus (2) The lower fibers extend almost vertically downward from the tuberosity of the ischium at the distal third of the thigh they end in a strong rounded tendon which inserts into the adductor tubercle of the femur and by means of a broad aponeurosis is attached to the line extending from the tubercle to the linea aspera (3) Between the upper and the lower fibers are found a group which arises from the ramus of the ischium and pursues a course directed obliquely downward and laterally and inserts by means of a broad fibrous expansion into the distal three fourths of the linea aspera. Along the line of insertion several openings exist for the passage of the perforating branches of the profunda femoris artery, the most distal opening is the largest and is traversed by the femoral artery and the femoral vein

The adductor magnus has a dual nerve supply the posterior branch of the obturator nerve supplies the upper and oblique muscle fibers and the sciatic nerve supplies the lower and vertical fibers. Those fibers enervated by the obturator nerve are

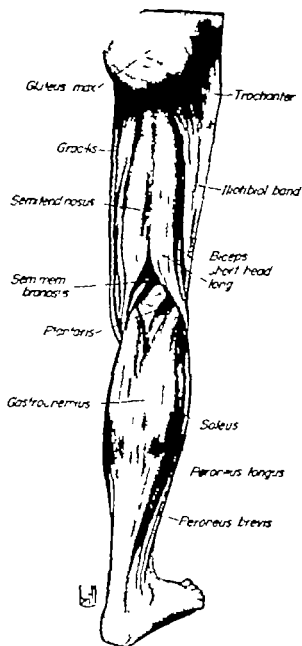


FIG 20 Posterior superficial muscles of the thigh and the leg

chiefly concerned with adduction flexion and external rotation of the hip those supplied by the sciatic nerve function with the hamstring muscles and act as extensors and internal rotators of the hip

#### POSTERIOR GROUP (HAMSTRING MUSCLES)

This group is primarily concerned with flexion of the leg and rotation of the leg when the knee is flexed also it extends and adducts the thigh (Fig 20) Originally the

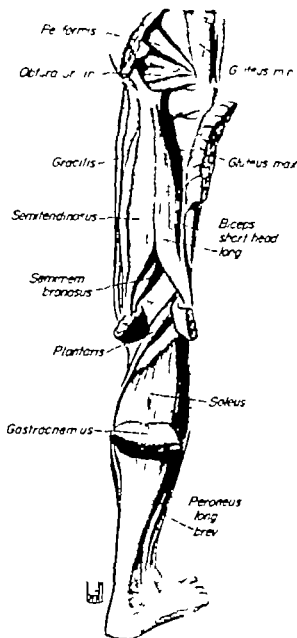


FIG 21 Posterior muscles of the thigh and the leg with the gluteus maximus muscle reflexed showing the origin and the insertion of the two heads of the biceps femoris and the origin and insertions of the other hamstring muscles (semimembranosus and semitendinosus)

muscles comprising this group were situated ventrally Mammals below man possess an arrangement of the insertions of the gracilis the semitendinosus and the biceps femoris which favors the fixed flexed position of the knee joint the above muscles

extend more distally than in man and insert chiefly in the fascia of the posterior aspect of the leg. The semimembranosus of the lower primates functions primarily as an internal rotator of the leg.

As previously noted, the straight portion of the adductor magnus, extending from the tuberosity of the ischium to the adductor tubercle and innervated by the sciatic nerve, performs with the hamstring muscles and from a functional viewpoint may be considered as belonging to this group. Some observers are of the opinion that the hamstring portion of the adductor magnus is the remains of a muscle which originally extended across the knee joint, and that the tibial collateral ligament represents the remains of the segment of the muscle crossing the joint line to gain insertion into the tibia.

**Biceps Femoris.** This muscle occupies a position on the posterior and lateral aspect of the thigh. As its name indicates, it has two heads of origin. The long head arises by a common tendon to it and the semitendinosus from the inner of two impressions on the posterior surface of the tuberosity of the ischium and from the sacrotuberous ligament. The short head arises by short tendinous fibers from the lateral lip of the linea aspera of the femur between the adductor magnus and the vastus lateralis, from the middle of the femur to the bifurcation of the linea aspera from the lateral intermuscular septum and from the upper two thirds of the supracondylar ridge. A short distance from the site of origin of the common tendon of the long head, fiber bundles appear forming a thick fusiform muscle which runs downward and laterally ending in an aponeurosis on the deep surface of the muscle. This aponeurosis of insertion begins approximately at the middle of the back and lateral aspect of the muscle and receives the fibers of insertion of the short head. As it continues distally the aponeurosis becomes condensed into a stout tendon which winds around the superficial layer of the lateral collateral ligament and

inserts into the outer aspect of the head of the fibula. It sends a small fibrous projection to the lateral condyle of the tibia and into the fascia of the leg (Fig. 21).

The chief function of the biceps femoris is to extend and adduct the thigh and to flex the leg; the short head acts only on the leg. In addition, the long head assists in external rotation of the thigh; also, it is an external rotator of the leg when the knee is flexed. Study of the origins and the insertions of the hamstring muscles discloses that they resemble the anterior group of muscles in that they cross two joints which flex in opposite directions.

**Semitendinosus.** This muscle arises from a tendon common to it and the long head of the biceps femoris from the mediodorsal impression on the tuberosity of the ischium and from an aponeurotic sheet joining the adjacent surfaces of the proximal portions of the semitendinosus and the long head of the biceps. The fiber bundles form a flat fusiform muscle belly that terminates at the middle of the shaft of the femur in a long tendon of insertion that passes behind the medial condyle of the femur, then curves forward and ends in a triangular fibrous expansion that inserts into the proximal portion of the medial surface of the body of the tibia, extending almost as far as the anterior crest of the tibia. As it runs forward the tendon crosses the tibial collateral ligament of the knee joint; a bursa is interposed between the two structures. At its insertion the tendon lies below that of the gracilis and is overlapped by that of the sartorius; it sends out a fibrous expansion which blends with the deep fascia of the leg. A bursa (anserine bursa) intervenes between the tendon of insertion of the sartorius on the one hand and the tendons of the semitendinosus and the gracilis on the other; this bursa may exist as an extension of the bursa between the semitendinosus and the tibial collateral ligaments or it may exist as a separate bursa. The arrangement of the tendons of insertion of the sartorius, the

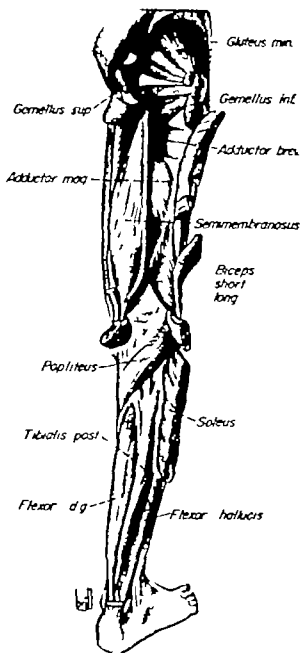


FIG. 22 Deep muscles of the posterior aspect of the thigh. Note the anatomic arrangement of the adductor magnus, the semimembranosus, the intermuscular septum and the short head of the biceps femoris.

semitendinosus and the gracilis is often referred to as the pes anserine. At about the middle of the semitendinosus a tendinous septum divides the belly into a proximal and a distal segment.

It functions as an extensor, an adductor and an internal rotator of the thigh and a

flexor of the leg when the knee is flexed; it acts as an internal rotator of the leg.

**Semimembranosus** (Fig. 22) This muscle occupies a position on the posterior and medial aspect of the thigh. It arises by means of a broad flat tendon from the superior, lateral facet in the tuberosity of the ischium between the tendons of the biceps femoris and the quadratus femoris. Soon after its origin the tendon gives rise to a broad aponeurotic sheet which covers the proximal portion of the anterior surface of the muscle. From this fibrous expansion fiber bundles arise which converge to form a second fibrous layer covering the distal half of the posterior surface of the muscle. Then it contracts to form a stout tendon of insertion which inserts into the posterior aspect of the medial condyle of the tibia and sends out a fibrous prolongation that is projected obliquely upward and laterally, blending with the capsule of the knee joint to form the oblique popliteal ligament. This ligament inserts into the lateral condyle of the femur, the tibial collateral ligament, the deep fascia of the leg and the fascia covering the popliteus muscle. Between the joint capsule and the tendon of the semimembranosus a bursa is interposed which in some instances communicates with the cavity of the knee joint and as a rule continues downward to occupy a position between the semimembranosus and the medial head of the gastrocnemius.

The semimembranosus functions as an extensor, an adductor and an internal rotator of the leg; it flexes the leg and rotates it internally.

## KNEE JOINT

The knee joint is the most massive joint of the human skeletal system; also it is the most superficial and the most vulnerable. Nature has endowed this articulation with distinctive anatomic features which adapt it to meet the varied static and dynamic functional demands made upon it by man.

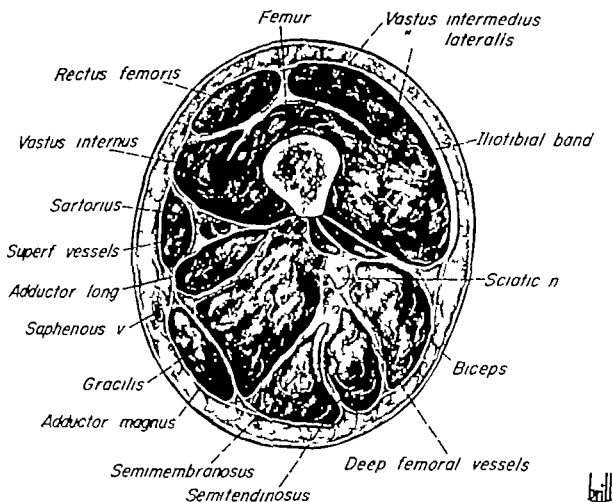


FIG. 23 Cross section through the middle of the thigh.

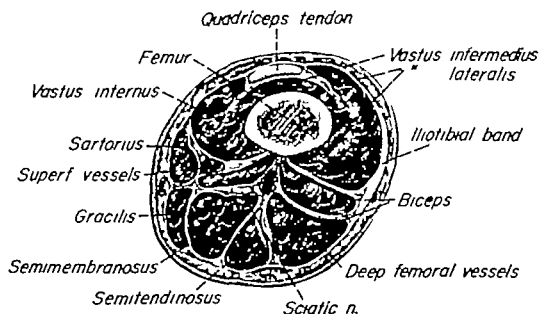


FIG. 24 Cross section through the distal third of the thigh.



To meet the constantly changing stresses on the joint during weight bearing and to fulfill adequately the mechanism of propulsion of the body in locomotion the articulating bones comprising the knee joint are unusually massive, and yet their configuration is such that free and easy motion is executed

The joint is situated at the ends of the longest bones in the body predisposing it to great stresses in all planes these stresses are neutralized by a network of stout ligamentous supports. Finally the requirements of the acts of balance and propulsion have been responsible for the evolution of a

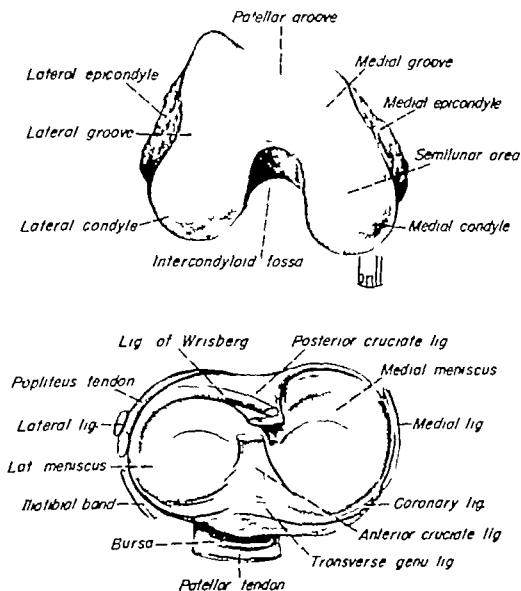


FIG. 25 Note the massive configuration of the femoral condyles and the location of the epicondyles. There are 3 articular surfaces: the femoral condyles and the articular surface on the anterior surface of the femur which articulates with the patella. The bottom figure depicts the corresponding articular surfaces on the tibia and the relation of the intra articular ligaments and the collateral ligaments. Also observe the relation of the popliteus tendon to the fibular collateral ligament and the lateral meniscus. The medial and lateral grooves on the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles are clearly shown.

muscular apparatus motorizing this articulation, powerful on one hand and complicated and delicate on the other. This intricate muscular development allows both coarse and refined movements at the knee joint in the sagittal plane and in a rotatory direction.

From a functional viewpoint, the knee joint is a compound joint consisting of three articulations enclosed by one fibrous joint capsule. Two of these are condyloid in type situated between each of the condyles of the femur and the corresponding condyles of the tibia, a meniscus is interposed between each set of condyles. The third articulation approaches the arthroidal type and is situated between the patella and the femur. Pronounced incongruity of the articulating surfaces of the patella and the femur exists in the joint after the third year of life, so that the gliding movements of the patella over the femur are not similar to those of a true arthroidal joint. The anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments situated in the middle of the joint and the ligamentum mucosa and the alar ligaments tend to divide arbitrarily the synovial cavity into smaller lateral and medial cavities. The cruciate ligaments may be regarded as collateral ligaments of the medial and the lateral femorotibial joints.

#### CONDYLES OF THE FEMUR

The distal end of the femur terminates in two rounded, expanded articulating surfaces—the femoral condyles—that articulate with the upper end of the tibia (Fig. 25). A third articulating surface is located on the anterior surface of the distal end of the femur over it the patella glides backward and forward during flexion and extension of the knee joint. Medially and laterally immediately proximal to the condyles irregular elevated areas are present which comprise the medial and the lateral epicondyles. The upper portion of the medial epicondyle gives rise to a sharp elevation designated as the adductor tubercle. On its posterior surface

the middle one third of the femur is reinforced by a prominent longitudinal bony ridge, the *linea aspera*, exhibiting a medial and a lateral lip and an irregular intermediate line. Below, the *linea aspera* continues as two diverging roughened crests, the medial and the lateral supracondylar lines. They enclose between them the popliteal surface of the femur, a triangular area over which pass the popliteal vessels. The lateral ridge is elevated more than the medial and it continues as far as the superior aspect of the lateral condyle. The medial ridge is less prominent and is projected downward as far as the superior aspect of the medial condyle where it terminates in the adductor tubercle.

As previously noted, the condyles of the femur are separated in front by the patellar surface, behind, they project posteriorly, forming massive rollers which are separated by a deep interval, the intercondylar fossa. Also, as they continue posteriorly and inferiorly they diverge slightly. Of the two condyles, the lateral is the more prominent; it is broader both in the anteroposterior and the transverse planes. Although the medial condyle is less prominent it projects distally to a lower level than the lateral when the shaft of the femur is held in a true perpendicular plane. Normally the femoral shaft is held in a slight oblique plane, hence producing a valgus condition at the knee joint. In this position the distal articular surfaces of both condyles are in the same transverse plane. While the bony axis of the lateral condyle is almost in a true anteroposterior plane, that of the medial condyle courses backward and medialward. The sagittal course of both condyles forms circles whose radii become progressively smaller, forming spiral curves; the radii of the spiral curve of the lateral condyle are longer than those of the medial.

The patellar surface exhibits a medial groove and a medial and a lateral convexity; the lateral convexity is more prominent and broader and projects upward to a higher

the femur just below the greater tuberosity and extend along curved pathways across the greater trochanter ending at its superior surface. They cross the trabeculae arising on the opposite side, their function is primarily to strengthen stability of the neck of the femur. In the aged these trabeculae are frequently absent.

Trabeculae comprising the principal tensile group arise from the lateral surface of the femur distal to the *calcar femorale*. They arch upward and medialward in smooth convex lines which tend to run parallel with one another, crossing the neck of the femur and ending in the inferior region of the femoral head. Compared with the bony plates of the compressive groups, these trabeculae are thinner and more widely

spaced, they intersect the trabeculae of the opposite side at right angles. Upon the upper group the upper end of the femur depends considerably for its tensile strength.

The trabeculae of the secondary tensile group arise from the outer surface of the shaft below the principal tensile trabeculae. They too arch upward and medially, crossing the axis of the femur and ending beyond the mid line, they intersect trabeculae from the opposite side at right angles.

As pointed out by Koch the trabeculae of the tensile system are thinner and more delicate than those of the compressive system in corresponding positions; the stress of the lamellae varies with the intensity of the stresses acting at any given point.

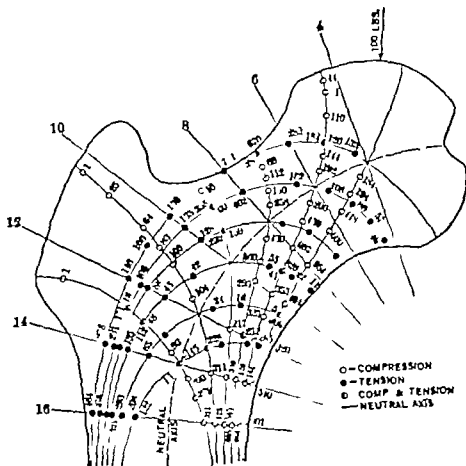


FIG. 27 Intensity of maximum tensile and compression stresses in upper femur. Computed for load of 100 pounds on right femur (after Koch) (Goss: *Gray's Anatomy*, Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger).

becomes apparent that the trabeculae of the compressive group are subjected to greater loads than those of the tensile group in corresponding positions. To illustrate this point, in Figure 27 one notes that the maximum tensile strength at Section 10 in the trabeculae occupying a superior position is 150 pounds per square inch, on the other hand, the corresponding point in the compressive system discloses compressive stresses of 404 pounds per square inch. It also becomes obvious that the trabeculae are arranged in pathways of maximum tensile and compressive stresses, a pattern which permits the trabeculae to carry the load in the most economical manner. Based on this observation, Koch recorded that the above configuration was in accordance with the mechanical principle stating that the most direct manner of transmitting stresses is in the direction in which the stresses act. The intensities of the vertical shear diminish as the lower level of the upper end of the femur is approached paralleling this change the amount of bony material in the spongy portion of the upper end of the femur varies in proportion to the intensity of the shearing stresses at the various sections. In accordance with this mechanical law one notes that the pattern of the bony plates in the upper end of the femur is such that the greatest strength is attained with a minimum of material.

The shaft of the femur also conforms to and illustrates the aforementioned mechanical principle. In the shaft both vertical and horizontal shearing stresses are minimal in intensity hence the minimal amount of material is required to resist these forces which are best counteracted by material being near the neutral plane. The shaft reveals very little material in its central region or neutral plane the bony trabeculae resisting the forces of stress are found near the neutral axis in the compact bone. This arrangement also resists most effectively those stresses tending to bend the bone which

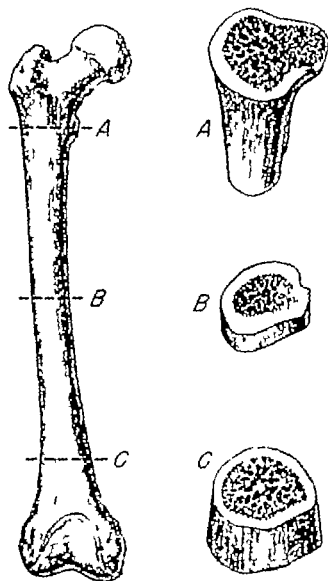


FIG 28 Tubular structure of the shaft of the femur at the identical levels. This pattern follows specific mechanical laws so that minimal amount of bony substance is capable of securing great strength.

result from the load on the head of the femur and other loads tending to bend the shaft in other planes. Of special significance to meet the above stresses is the tubular structure of the shaft of the femur. Here again one observes that a minimum amount of bony substance is capable of securing great strength because its arrangement follows specific mechanical laws (Fig 28).

#### INNER STRUCTURE OF THE DISTAL END OF THE FEMUR

The distal end of the femur reveals a

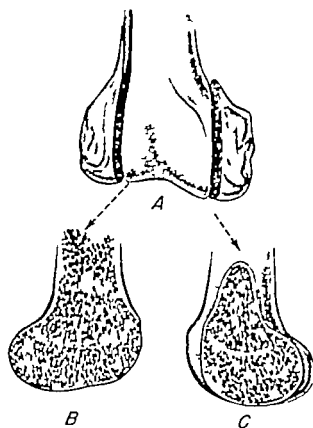


FIG 29 The distal end of the shaft of the femur flares out to form two massive femoral condyles. As the distal end is approached the compact bone becomes progressively thinner and the cancellous bone increases in amount

constructural design suitable to transmit effectively the loads of the femur through the knee joint. Stability in a large joint such as the knee requires that the distal end of the femur be relatively massive but its architectural configuration should be such that it be as light as is consistent with the required strength. To meet these requisites the resisting trabeculae should be arranged in lines parallel with the direction in which the stresses act and in the paths taken by the stresses. The most efficient manner to achieve these objectives would be to project the innermost trabeculae as straight lines parallel with the longitudinal axis of the shaft of the femur gradually to flare the outer layers of compact bone outward and at the same time to continue giving off filaments of bone parallel with the longitudinal

axis as the terminal regions of the femur are approached. In addition the above filaments should be braced by struts placed transversely and each should carry its proportionate share of the total load, transmitting it to the articular surface of the femur in a plane perpendicular to that surface.

Study of the intrinsic configuration of the distal end of the femur reveals that it conforms to the above mechanical plan (Fig 29). The distal end of the shaft of the femur flares out to form the two massive femoral condyles. Simultaneously, as the distal end is approached the compact bone becomes progressively thinner and the cancellous bone increases in amount. Two systems of trabeculae are discernible—a longitudinal and a transverse system. The longitudinal trabeculae spring from the inner wall of the shaft of the femur and are prolonged distally in straight lines parallel with the shaft of the femur as far as the epiphyseal line; they then continue in smooth curved lines to the articular surface meeting that surface at right angles at every point. Near the center of the bone the above longitudinal filaments give rise to other fine delicate longitudinal trabeculae to which they are connected by fine transverse trabeculae lying in planes parallel with the sagittal plane. Unlike the stout sturdy longitudinal trabeculae the transverse trabeculae are delicate and lighter in structure. They are placed at right angles to the longitudinal lamellae acting as struts.

#### PATELLA

The patella is a flat sturdy bone triangular in cross section occupying a position on the front of the knee joint. It is composed chiefly of compact cancellous tissue and presents an anterior and a posterior surface, two borders, an apex and a base (Fig 30). Contrary to the belief of many observers the patella is not a sesamoid bone. This observation emphasizes the importance of the role that the patella plays in the normal

mechanics of the knee joint, a role which too many workers tend to minimize

Its anterior surface is slightly convex, traversed by many longitudinal striae and perforated by numerous small openings for the passage of nutrient vessels. In the recent state, this surface is covered by an extension from the tendon of the quadriceps femoris (suprapatellar tendon) which fuses below with the superior fibers of the ligamentum patellae (infrapatellar tendon). Between the skin and the anterior surface is a well defined bursa which occasionally may be loculated.

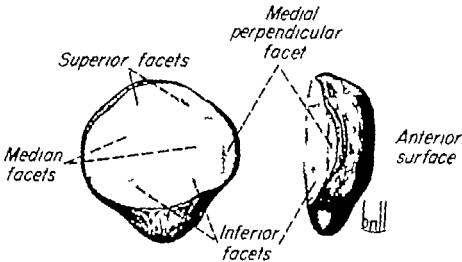
The posterior or articular surface is covered in the recent state by a thick layer of hyaline cartilage. It is oval in outline and is divided into a lateral and a medial portion by a vertical ridge. The medial and the lateral areas or facets correspond to the patellar surfaces on the medial and the lateral condyles of the femur; the lateral articular surface is the larger. In the adult patella, transverse ridges acquired after birth are discernible and divide the patella into func-

tional areas, opposing the articular surface of the femur in different positions of the knee joint. Just distal to the articular surface is a rough convex area which affords attachment to the ligamentum patellae; the upper portion of this nonarticular region is separated from the head of the tibia by a pad of adipose tissue.

The base or superior border of the patella is broad and slopes downward and forward. It provides attachment for the fibers of the quadriceps tendon, derived chiefly from the rectus femoris and the vastus intermedius muscles. On either side of the patella are the medial and the lateral borders, which are thinner than the base and converge to the apex. They give attachment to the majority of the fibers derived from the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis. The apex of the patella is directed slightly inferiorly, and into it inserts the ligamentum patellae.

#### PROXIMAL EXTREMITY OF THE TIBIA

The upper end of the shaft of the tibia is expanded to form two large eminences,



*Articular Surface of Left Patella*

FIG. 30. Articular surface of the patella, showing the vertical or perpendicular ridge and the superior, median and inferior facets which articulate with corresponding areas on the lateral and the medial condyles of the femur in different positions of the knee joint.

the lateral and the medial condyles (Fig 31) Its upper surface is smooth and articulates with the condyles of the femur It comprises two facets or plateaus. The medial facet is oval in outline and is slightly concave from side to side and from front backward, it articulates with the medial condyle of the femur The lateral facet is circular in shape, smaller and almost flat however closer inspection reveals it to be slightly concave from side to side and slightly convex from front backward, particularly on its posterior surface It receives the lateral condyle of the femur Only the central portion of each facet articulates with the corresponding condyle of the femur the periphery of each facet is covered by a fibrocartilaginous meniscus which is interposed between the tibia and the femur and attached to the borders of the tibial condyles by fibers derived from the capsule of the knee joint. Separating the two articular surfaces is a rough irregular interval which is depressed anteriorly forming the anterior

intercondyloid fossa it provides attachment for the medial and the lateral menisci and the anterior cruciate ligament In the center of this interval (slightly more posteriorly than anteriorly) rises the intercondyloid eminence which presents a medial and a lateral intercondylar tubercle onto which the articular facets are projected The posterior horns of the medial and the lateral menisci are attached to the posterior region of the base of the intercondyloid eminence Posteriorly the condyles are separated by a deep rough depression the posterior intercondyloid fossa which gives attachment to a portion of the posterior ligament of the knee joint and to the posterior cruciate ligament Anteriorly, the condyles of the tibia are connected by a flat triangular surface whose distal region terminates in an oblong prominence, the tibial tubercle which provides attachment for the ligamentum patellae

A bursa is interposed between the superior surface of the tibial tubercle and the

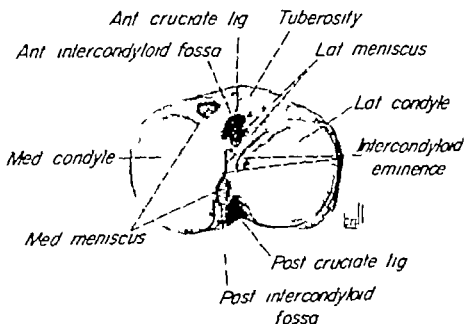


FIG 31 Superior surface of tibia showing the two plateaus the medial and the lateral intercondylar tubercles the anterior and the posterior intercondylar areas and the points of attachments of the anterior and the posterior horns of the menisci

deep surface of the ligamentum patellae. A deep transverse sulcus traverses the posterior aspect of the medial condyle, in it the tendon of the semimembranosus muscle finds attachment. The medial surface of the medial condyle is directly under the skin. It is also prominent and assumes a convex configuration, it provides an attachment for the tibial collateral ligament. The lateral tibial condyle also presents a convex lateral surface which is prominent and rough and occupies a subcutaneous position. Slightly anterior to the middle of the lateral surface of the lateral condyle and on the same level as the tuberosity of the tibia a rough prominence arises into which inserts the iliotibial band. Posteriorly, this condyle ex-

hibits a facet which is flat and almost circular in outline, it faces downward, backward and laterally and articulates with the articulating surface of the fibula. The periphery of the facet is rough and provides attachment for the ligaments of the superior tibiofibular joint.

The proximal end of the fibula, the head, is a rounded expansion of the upper end of the shaft and is responsible for the palpable eminence on the lateral and posterior aspect of the lateral condyle of the tibia. On its medial surface it presents an articular facet circular in shape, directed upward, forward and medially, articulating with the lateral condyle of the tibia. A rough prominence is situated on the superior surface of the

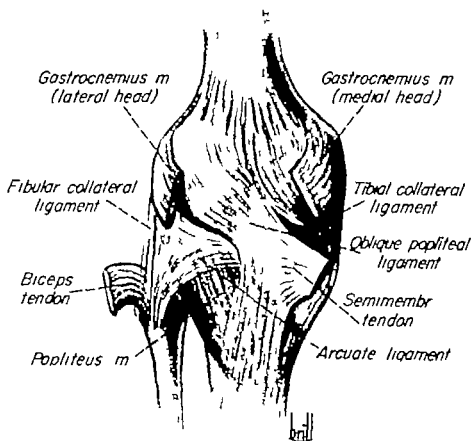


FIG. 32 Posterior aspect of the knee joint, showing the origin of the oblique popliteal ligament from the tendon of the semimembranosus. This ligament lies posterior to the posterior cruciate ligament and reinforces the posterior portion of the joint capsule.



head which gives attachment to the tendon of the biceps femoris and the fibular collateral ligament of the knee joint the tendon is divided into two sections by the ligament. On the lateral aspect a rough eminence projects upward and posteriorly, terminating in a pointed prominence designated as the apex. Into it inserts the arcuate ligament of the knee joint.

### CAPSULE AND LIGAMENTS OF THE KNEE JOINT

#### FIBROUS CAPSULE

The articular cavity of the knee joint is enclosed by a thin strong fibrous capsule which is reinforced on all sides by numerous bands of fibrous tissue. Its weakest portion is situated anteriorly beneath the tendon of the quadriceps femoris. In this region the fibrous membrane is very thin and does not exist as a distinct separate structure but blends with the undersurface of the quadriceps tendon while the synovial membrane lining the capsule is very prominent. The fascia lata and the tendons located in the vicinity of the knee joint provide expansions of reinforcing fibrous tissue. Anteriorly the capsule is strengthened by fibrous expansions derived from the vasti, the fascia lata and the iliotibial band. These comprise the medial and the lateral patellar retinacula. Posteriorly its proximal attachment is immediately adjacent to the articular borders of the two femoral condyles and the margins of the intercondyloid fossa of the femur. It fuses with the sides of the posterior cruciate ligament. The posterior portion of the capsule is strengthened by a stout expansion from the tendon of the semimembranosus which is directed upward and laterally and designated as the oblique popliteal ligament. This structure lies posterior to the cruciate ligaments (Fig. 32). Medially it fuses with the tibial collateral ligament and receives fibers of reinforcement from the semimembranosus and the sartorius muscles. Laterally it is separated

from the fibular collateral ligament by the tendon of the popliteus muscle, which pierces the fibrous capsule to gain entrance into the joint cavity. This region is augmented by bands projected from the iliotibial band. They occupy the space between the fibular collateral ligament and the oblique popliteal ligament.

#### LIGAMENTUM PATELLAE

It was previously recorded that the ligamentum patellae is the chief anterior ligament of the knee joint. Essentially it comprises the central portion of the tendon of the quadriceps femoris muscle which is projected over the anterior surface of the patella to its site of insertion on the tuberosity of the tibia (Fig. 19). It is a flat tendinous structure about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 inches long, firmly anchored above to the apex and the borders of the patella and to the irregular depression on its posterior surface. The fibers of the tendon of the quadriceps femoris blend with those of the ligamentum patellae on the anterior surface of the patella. Interposed between the synovial membrane of the knee joint and the posterior surface of this ligament is a large pad of fat (infrapatellar fat pad) and a bursa is found between the tibia and the ligament.

#### PATELLAR RETINACULA

This structure strengthens the lateral and the medial portions of the fibrous capsule. It comprises fibrous strands prolonged from the tendons of the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis. Proximally the fibers are attached to the anterior aspect of the lateral and the medial margins of the patella. They continue distally along the sides of the ligamentum patellae and insert into the tibia, filling the interval between the collateral ligaments and the ligamentum patellae. Laterally the above fibers are continuous with the fascia lata and the iliotibial band; medially they blend with the periosteum of the shaft of the tibia below the oblique line (Fig. 19).

FIG 33 Posteromedial aspect of the knee, showing the triangular shaped tibial collateral ligament. It includes long vertical anterior fibers and short oblique superior and inferior fibers, its widest portion is directly opposite the medial meniscus

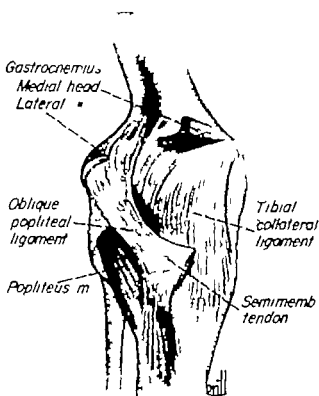
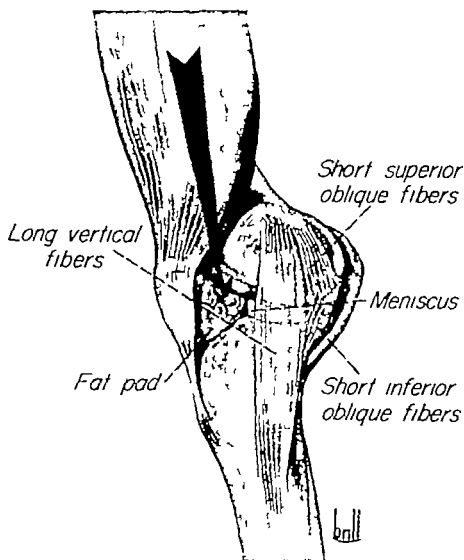


FIG 34 Showing relation of the triangular tibial collateral ligament to the medial meniscus. Also observe the direction of the anterior vertical fibers and the direction of the short superior and the inferior oblique fibers, also note that the anterior portion of the femoral condyle compresses the semilunar fat pad and not the meniscus.



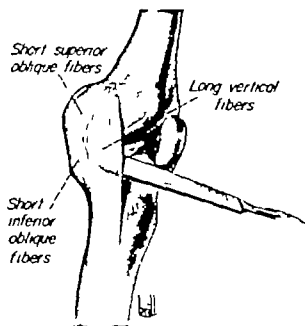


FIG 35 Drawing of an anatomic dissection, showing the interval between the anterior vertical border of the tibial collateral ligament and the medial meniscus.

#### TIBIAL COLLATERAL LIGAMENT (INTERNAL LATERAL LIGAMENT)

This is a flat broad triangular fibrous structure possessing great strength. It plays an important role in the stability of the knee joint (Fig 33). From a morphologic viewpoint this structure consists of a deep and a superficial layer.

The deep layer is the smaller and comprises thickened vertical fibers of the joint capsule. Proximally, it is attached to the medial epicondyle of the femur and distally to the articular margin and the medial surface of the shaft of the tibia. It is firmly adherent to the periphery of the medial meniscus and its anterior and posterior borders are continuous with the fibrous capsule of the joint.

The superficial layer covers completely the deep or capsular layer. It is this portion of the ligament which assumes the flat triangular shape described above. It is approximately 10.4 cm long and runs slightly forward from above downward. It consists of long vertical anterior fibers and short

oblique superior and inferior posterior fibers. The widest portion is directly over the medial meniscus. Above it inserts into the femur just distal to the adductor tubercle and into the medial epicondyle of the femur. Below the anterior portion inserts into the medial aspect of the shaft of the tibia 4.5 cm distal to the articular margin. The fibers of insertion continue downward on the medial aspect of the tibia for approximately 3 more centimeters. It becomes apparent that the ligament is not attached to the tibia throughout its entire length (Fig 34). In many instances a bursa exists between the upper portion of the tibia and the ligament; a bursa was present in 96 per cent of the specimens studied. The oblique posterior fibers tend to converge backward toward the joint line and blend with the periphery of the medial meniscus. Some fibers continue downward to gain insertion into the upper border of the groove for the tendon of the semimembranosus; others cross the tendon to the lower border of the groove and still other fibers are continuous with the anterior vertical portion of the medial ligament. The anterior vertical border is free and not adherent to the meniscus; in fact a bursa is found occasionally at this site (Fig 35). All anatomic specimens studied revealed that proximal to the joint space the deep and the superficial layers of the tibial collateral ligament blend into one fibrous structure. The layers can not be separated by sharp dissection. Distal to the joint space a projection from the tendon of the semimembranosus separates the two layers. Below this point the inferior medial genicular vessels and nerves pass beneath the medial ligament separating it from the shaft of the tibia (Fig 36). In contradiction to the belief of many observers the tibial collateral ligament is not firmly attached to the capsule and the periphery of the medial meniscus. Careful dissection of this region reveals that the cornua of the meniscus are free and that the periphery of the anterior segment and the capsule

in this region are only loosely attached to the ligament. The two strata can be separated readily by blunt dissection, occasionally a bursa is interposed between the two. However, just posterior to its center the meniscus fuses firmly with the fibrous capsule and the posterior oblique fibers of the ligament. This fixed juncture tends to restrict but not eliminate the forward and backward excursion of the meniscus during extension and flexion of the knee joint and also plays a pertinent role in the abnormal mechanics of the joint responsible for injury to the meniscus. The distal portion of the tibial collateral ligament is crossed by the tendons of the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles and by the expansion of the sartorius muscle being separated from these

structures by the bursa anserina. From the medial border of the patella strong, curved retinacular fibers pass to and fuse with the proximal portion of the anterior border of the ligament.

Some authorities are of the opinion that the strong anterior portion of the medial ligament is morphologically the continuation of the tendon of the hamstring part of the adductor magnus, which inserts into the adductor tubercle and is innervated by a branch from the sciatic nerve. This concept is not confirmed by study of the embryologic development of the knee joint. The lateral ligaments develop as distinct structures from the same tissue which forms the fibrous capsule. In the regions of the lateral aspects of the knee joint destined to be oc-

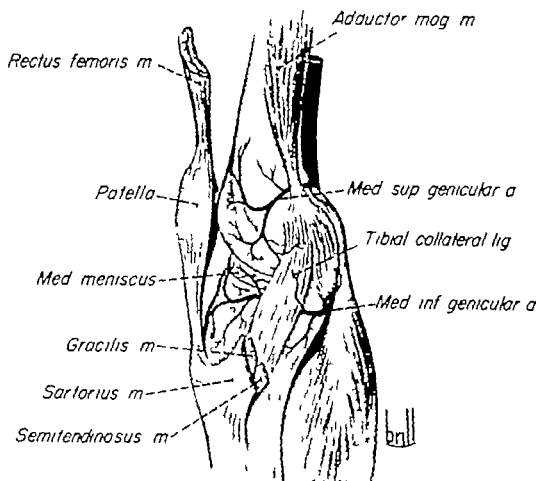


FIG 36 Relation of the superior and the inferior medial genicular vessels and nerves to the tibial collateral ligament note that the inferior structures lie beneath the ligament separating it from the tibia. Observe the arterial anastomosis on the medial side of the joint

cupied by the lateral ligaments the primitive connective tissue becomes thicker than in the anterior and the posterior regions of the joint the primitive fibroblasts become arranged in parallel rows packed closely and are at first continuous with the cells comprising the menisci Older specimens reveal the gradual transformation of the ligaments until they assume adult features

The structural pattern of the various components of the medial ligament and their relation to the medial meniscus are factors of fundamental significance in the mechanism of production of certain lesions of the internal meniscus and of the medial ligament itself

#### FIBULAR COLLATERAL LIGAMENT (EXTERNAL LATERAL LIGAMENT)

It has been recorded in many of the current texts dealing with the development of the various structures of the knee joint that during the early stages of development the fibula articulates with the femur and that

the fibula is excluded from the knee joint by the difference in the rate of growth of the tibia and the fibula In so doing the head and the styloid process of the fibula pull down with them a projection of the fibrous capsule and this becomes the deep portion of the external lateral ligament (short external ligament) The superficial portion or the long external lateral ligament, is believed to be the remnant of the tendon of the peroneus longus As noted previously these concepts are not substantiated by investigations conducted on the embryology of the knee joint The proximal tibiofibular joint develops as a separate articulation its development is similar to the femorotibial joint Moreover like the internal lateral ligament the external lateral ligament develops as a separate structure arising from the primitive tissue destined to form the adult fibrous capsule of the knee joint

The adult fibular collateral ligament consists of a deep and a superficial component (Fig. 37) The deep portion is relatively

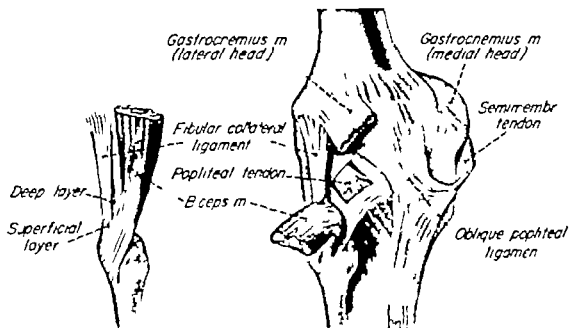


FIG. 37 The fibular collateral ligament is separated from the periphery of the lateral meniscus by the popliteus tendon and its synovial sheath. The ligament consists of a superficial and a deep portion. Just proximal to the styloid process of the fibula the tendon of the biceps forms a spiral winding counter-clockwise around the superficial portion of the ligament so that it comes to lie between the two layers of the ligament.

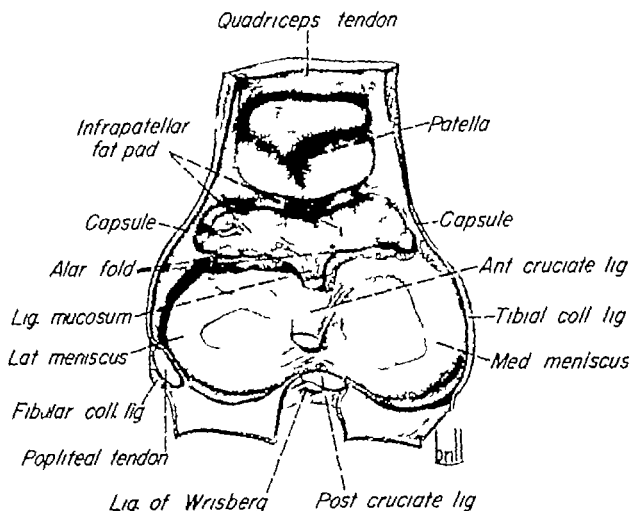


FIG 38 Superior surface of the tibia with patellar tendon attached. Observe the relation of the anterior cruciate ligament to the menisci, the ligamentum mucosum and the infrapatellar fat pad.

small and is attached above to the lateral epicondyle of the femur and below to the medial aspect of the upper surface of the head of the fibula and to the styloid process. It is separated from the periphery of the lateral meniscus by the tendon of the popliteus muscle and its synovial sheath. It is not attached to the lateral meniscus at any point. Its posterior border is continuous with the fascia covering the popliteus muscle and contributes to the formation of the arcuate ligament. The upper portion of the arcuate ligament together with the capsule is firmly adherent to the periphery of the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus, the posterior surface of the ligament of Wrisberg (if present) and to the posterior surface of the posterior cruciate ligament. The super-

ficial component of the fibular collateral ligament is referred to as the long external ligament or the lateral ligament. It is a stout fibrous cord. It inserts above to the lateral epicondyle of the femur, below it attaches to the upper surface of the head of the fibula lateral to the deep portion. The two parts of the ligament can be separated readily by sharp dissection. Just proximal to the styloid process of the fibula the tendon of the biceps femoris forms a spiral, winding counterclockwise around the superficial portion of the ligament so that the tendon eventually comes to occupy a position between the two layers of the ligament. In turn, the ligament divides the tendon of the biceps femoris into a superficial and a deep layer. The superficial lamina inserts

cupied by the lateral ligaments the primitive connective tissue becomes thicker than in the anterior and the posterior regions of the joint the primitive fibroblasts become arranged in parallel rows packed closely and are at first continuous with the cells comprising the menisci Older specimens reveal the gradual transformation of the ligaments until they assume adult features

The structural pattern of the various components of the medial ligament and their relation to the medial meniscus are factors of fundamental significance in the mechanism of production of certain lesions of the internal meniscus and of the medial ligament itself

#### FIBULAR COLLATERAL LIGAMENT (EXTERNAL LATERAL LIGAMENT)

It has been recorded in many of the current texts dealing with the development of the various structures of the knee joint that during the early stages of development the fibula articulates with the femur and that

the fibula is excluded from the knee joint by the difference in the rate of growth of the tibia and the fibula In so doing the head and the styloid process of the fibula pull down with them a projection of the fibrous capsule and this becomes the deep portion of the external lateral ligament (short external ligament) The superficial portion or the long external lateral ligament, is believed to be the remnant of the tendon of the peroneus longus As noted previously, these concepts are not substantiated by investigations conducted on the embryology of the knee joint. The proximal tibiofibular joint develops as a separate articulation Its development is similar to the femorotibial joint Moreover like the internal lateral ligament the external lateral ligament develops as a separate structure arising from the primitive tissue destined to form the adult fibrous capsule of the knee joint

The adult fibular collateral ligament consists of a deep and a superficial component (Fig 37) The deep portion is relatively

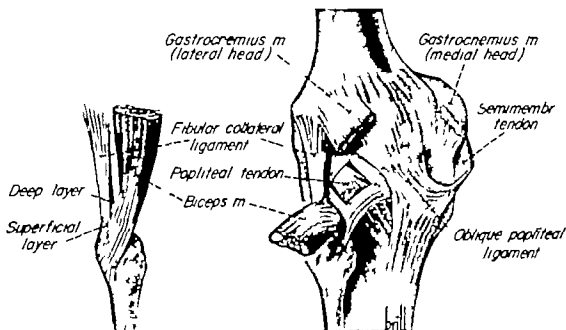


FIG 37 The fibular collateral ligament is separated from the periphery of the lateral meniscus by the popliteus tendon and its synovial sheath. The ligament consists of a superficial and a deep portion Just proximal to the styloid process of the fibula the tendon of the biceps forms a spiral winding counter-clockwise around the superficial portion of the ligament so that it comes to lie between the two layers of the ligament

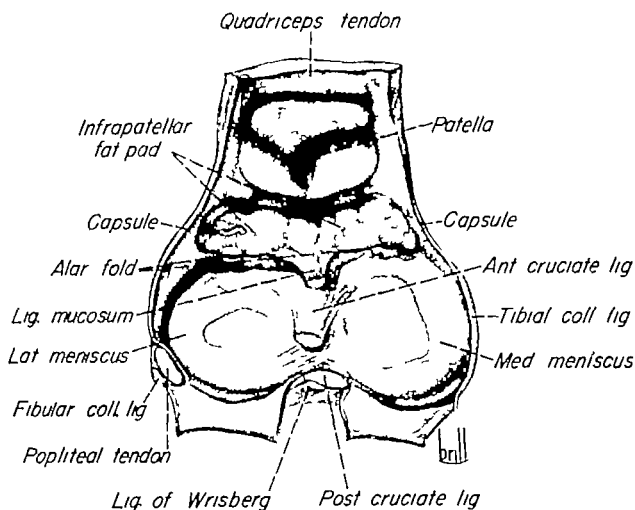


FIG 38 Superior surface of the tibia with patellar tendon attached. Observe the relation of the anterior cruciate ligament to the menisci, the ligamentum mucosum and the infrapatellar fat pad

small and is attached above to the lateral epicondyle of the femur and below to the medial aspect of the upper surface of the head of the fibula and to the styloid process. It is separated from the periphery of the lateral meniscus by the tendon of the popliteus muscle and its synovial sheath. It is not attached to the lateral meniscus at any point. Its posterior border is continuous with the fascia covering the popliteus muscle and contributes to the formation of the arcuate ligament. The upper portion of the arcuate ligament together with the capsule is firmly adherent to the periphery of the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus. The posterior surface of the ligament of Wrisberg (if present) and to the posterior surface of the posterior cruciate ligament. The super-

ficial component of the fibular collateral ligament is referred to as the long external ligament or the lateral ligament, it is a stout fibrous cord. It inserts above to the lateral epicondyle of the femur, below it attaches to the upper surface of the head of the fibula lateral to the deep portion. The two parts of the ligament can be separated readily by sharp dissection. Just proximal to the styloid process of the fibula the tendon of the biceps femoris forms a spiral, winding counterclockwise around the superficial portion of the ligament so that the tendon eventually comes to occupy a position between the two layers of the ligament. In turn, the ligament divides the tendon of the biceps femoris into a superficial and a deep layer. The superficial lamina inserts



into the lateral aspect of the head of the fibula, and its fibers continue distally fusing with the fibrous capsule of the proximal tibiofibular joint. The deep portion of the biceps tendon inserts into the head of the fibula between the superficial and the deep components of the collateral ligament.

#### OBLIQUE POPLITEAL LIGAMENT (LIGAMENT OF WINSTON)

Essentially this ligament is an expansion of some of the fibers of the tendon of the semimembranosus muscle directed proximally and laterally and extending from the posterior aspect of the medial condyle of the tibia to the outer epicondyle of the femur (Fig 32). Its fibers are interlacing and arranged in fasciculi between which are located apertures for the passage of vessels and nerves. It is a dense flat, relatively broad structure forming the floor of the popliteal fossa and upon it lie the popliteal vessels.

#### ARCULATE POPLITEAL LIGAMENT

Proximally this ligament is in relation to the posterolateral aspect of the lateral condyle of the femur; here it blends with the oblique popliteal ligament beneath the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle. It arches downward over the tendon of the popliteus muscle and its fibers converge toward the styloid process of the fibula where they insert in two distinct bands (Fig 32).

#### CRUCIATE LIGAMENTS

The bony configuration of the knee joint contributes little to the stability and the integrity of this articulation. As previously recorded the strength of the knee joint is dependent upon the integrity of the muscles which motorize it upon its intricate system of ligaments. It will be shown subsequently that the ligaments of the knee joint are second to the muscular apparatus in providing the normal stability of this joint. Furthermore, it will be shown that the functional mechanics of the numerous ligaments

is such that they all work together as a single unit. This is particularly true of the collateral the cruciate and the capsular ligaments. The tibial collateral ligament and the anterior cruciate ligament are most vulnerable to minor and severe trauma; hence, lesions of these structures are encountered not infrequently.

From a developmental viewpoint, the cruciate ligaments represent the collateral ligaments of two femorotibial joints. It is generally accepted that they arise as intra-articular structures and are discernible before the development of the capsule. This observation fails to support Keith's conception that the cruciate ligaments are part of the posterior capsule and are displaced into the joint cavity during development by growth backward of the condyles of the femur. They possess considerable strength and occupy a position in the middle of the articulation slightly more posterior than anterior. Their position of attachment to the tibia is responsible for the designations anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments.

**Anterior Cruciate Ligament.** This ligament is attached anteriorly to the nonarticular area of the upper end of the tibia just in front of the intercondyloid eminence and on a level with the anterior attachment of the outer meniscus (Fig 38). Occasionally it receives projection from one or both of the menisci. It pursues a course directed upward, backward and laterally and gains attachment to the posterior aspect of the inner surface of the lateral condyle of the femur. Except for the posterior surface of the posterior attachment, the ligament is enveloped completely by synovial membrane.

**Posterior Cruciate Ligament.** Posterior to the anterior cruciate ligament is located the posterior cruciate. It is of greater strength than the anterior structure. It is attached to the posterior intercondyloid fossa of the tibia just behind the posterior horn of the medial meniscus with which it also fuses. It then proceeds upward, forward

and medially, crossing the anterior cruciate to be fixed to the anterior and the lateral aspects of the medial condyle of the femur (Fig 39). Generally, the posterior aspect of the cruciate ligament blends with the capsule, occasionally, a synovial recess may be found partially separating the two structures. Moreover, it receives a slip from the posterior horn of the lateral meniscus. The projection usually passes posterior to the cruciate ligament and gains attachment to the medial condyle of the femur. It is known as the ligament of Wrisberg. Occasionally, the slip passes anteriorly (ligament of Humphry) and in rare instances it separates into two slips, one passing anterior

and the other posterior to the posterior cruciate ligament (Fig 40). The function of these structures will be discussed in the section on the mechanism of the knee joint.

#### MENISCI OF THE KNEE JOINT

These are two crescentric disks triangular in cross section, each covering less than two thirds of the corresponding articular surface of the tibia upon which they rest (Fig 38). Their configuration deepens the articular surfaces of the tibial plateaus, and they consist of dense, tightly woven collagen fibers which are arranged more loosely at their extremities. The circumferential borders of each meniscus are convex and

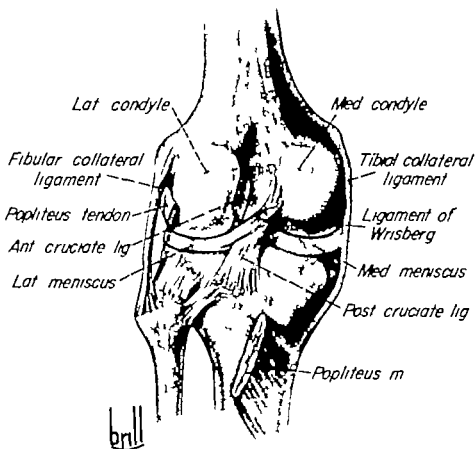


FIG 39 Posterior aspect of the stripped knee joint. Observe the relation of the posterior cruciate ligament to the medial meniscus, the anterior cruciate ligament to the medial meniscus, the posterior cruciate ligament to the ligament of Wrisberg

thick and loosely attached to the borders of the condyles of the tibia by the coronary ligaments and to the inner surface of the fibrous capsule of the joint except where the tendon of the popliteus is interposed between the capsule and the external meniscus. The inner borders are free, thin and concave. Their superior surfaces are concave and articulate with the femoral condyles; on the other hand the inferior surfaces are flat and articulate with the plateaus of the tibia. In adults all unattached surfaces of the menisci are devoid of synovialis and are avascular except for a narrow zone adjacent to their points of attachment.

**Medial Meniscus** The structure discloses a shape more oval than circular, being nearly semicircular; it is a segment of a larger circle than the lateral meniscus is. Also its posterior portion is broader than the anterior; the anterior cornu is thin and slightly pointed. Both the anterior and the posterior cornua gain attachment by means of dense fibrous tissue to the anterior and

the posterior regions of the non-articular areas of the upper end of the tibia. The anterior cornu is attached firmly to the aforementioned non-articular area anterior to the anterior cornu of the meniscus and the anterior cruciate ligament (Fig. 38). The broad attachment of the posterior cornu occupies a site between the tibial spine and the point of attachment of the posterior cruciate ligament. From the above description one notes that both of the lateral meniscus are situated anterior to those of the medial meniscus. Occasionally a synovial pouch is projected between the posterior cornu of the medial meniscus and the posterior cruciate ligament. In some instances a reflection of synovialis extends behind the posterior cruciate ligament and at times also behind the posteriorment of the meniscus.

Three variations of the attachment of the anterior cornu of the medial meniscus may be found (Fig. 41). (1) The anterior cornu may have a single attachment to the anterior region of the non-articular area

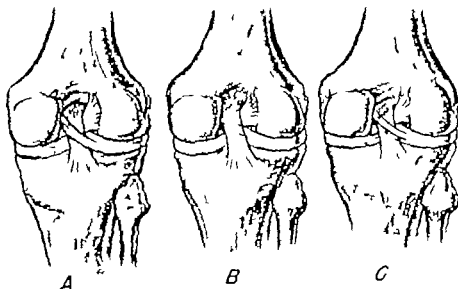


FIG. 40. Different arrangements of slip or slips from the lateral meniscus in relation to the posterior cruciate ligament. (A) two slips, one passing anterior and the other posterior to the ligament. (B) one slip passing anterior to the ligament (ligament of Humphry). (C) one slip passing posterior to the ligament (ligament of Wrisberg).

addition to the main site of attachment noted above, a transverse cord of fibrous tissue of varying length, designated as the transverse ligament may extend from the anterior cornu of the meniscus to the outer aspect of the anterior cornu of the lateral meniscus, occasionally, a pad of fat tissue is interposed between the transverse ligament and the tibia. (3) A second band of fibrous tissue may be found extending from the anterior cornu to the anterior cruciate ligament.

It was recorded previously that, except at the periphery of the anterior and the posterior cornua, the circumference of the medial meniscus blends with the fibrous joint capsule and fuses firmly with the oblique posterior fibers of the superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament just posterior to its center. The periphery of the anterior segment of the meniscus is attached loosely to the anterior portion of the ligament from which it can be detached readily by blunt dissection (Fig 35)

**Lateral Meniscus.** The shape of the lateral meniscus is nearly circular. It forms a large segment of a small circle. It covers more of the articular surface of the corresponding plateau of the tibia than the medial meniscus does (Fig 38). Both cornua are attached to the tibia. The anterior one is attached in front of the intercondyloid eminence of the tibia behind and slightly lateral to the anterior cruciate ligament and behind the attachment of the anterior cornu of the medial meniscus, the posterior cornu inserts into the posterior region of the intercondyloid eminence of the tibia and in front of the posterior cornu of the medial meniscus. Occasionally the anterior cornu gives off a small fibrous prolongation which continues to the anterior cruciate ligament. Another fasciculus varying in size, arising from the convex margin of the lateral meniscus extends to the anterior cornu of the medial meniscus. This constitutes the transverse ligament. The posterior cornu gives origin to a strong fas-

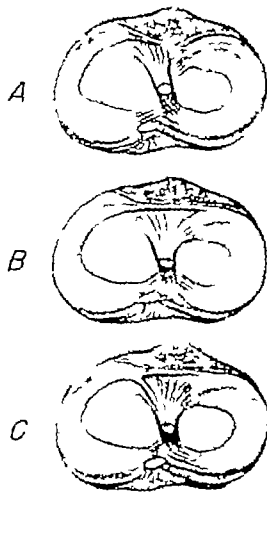


FIG 41 Three variations of the attachment of the anterior cornu of the medial meniscus. (A) It may have single attachment to the anterior region of the nonarticular area of the tibia. (B) In addition to the attachment noted above a transverse fibrous slip may extend from the anterior cornu of the meniscus to the anterior cornu of the lateral meniscus. (C) A second band may extend from the anterior cornu to the anterior cruciate ligament.

ciculus which continues upward and medially behind the posterior cruciate ligament inserting into the medial condyle of the femur thus constitutes the ligament of Wrisberg and was found in 53 per cent of the specimens studied. This is a relatively strong ligament. Usually it blends with the posterior cruciate ligament occasionally

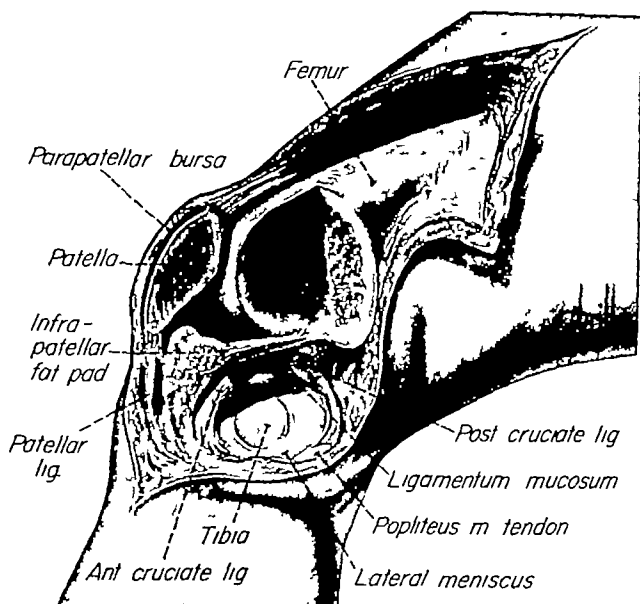


FIG. 42 View of structures in the lateral compartment of the knee joint. The lateral femoral condyle has been removed

an interval of several millimeters may separate the two structures. It is not invested by synovial membrane.

In 20 per cent of the specimens a fasciculus arising from the posterior cornu extended upward and medially in front of the posterior cruciate ligament and like the ligament of Wrisberg became attached to the medial condyle of the femur; this is the ligament of Humphry first described by George Murray Humphry in 1858. Generally it is a smaller structure than the posterior ligament (Wrisberg's ligament) and is covered by synovial membrane; it blends with the posterior cruciate ligament.

From the above description it becomes apparent that both cornua of the lateral meniscus are anchored firmly; in addition its posterior segment is fixed to the arcuate ligament whose fibers blend with those of the fascia, covering the popliteus muscle. Elsewhere the lateral meniscus is free for the tendon of the popliteus muscle which is invested in a synovial membrane separates it from the joint capsule and the deep portion of the fibular collateral ligament (Fig. 38). The tendon of the popliteus muscle produces a well-defined oblique groove on the periphery of the external meniscus; this region of the meniscus is the only portion

on the periphery of either meniscus which is in contact with synovial membrane. Subsequently, it will be pointed out that the above relationship of the external meniscus to the cul-de-sac of synovialis covering the popliteus tendon may play a role in the formation of "cysts of the external meniscus" (Fig 42)

The aforementioned points of fixation of the lateral meniscus together with its relative degree of mobility, undoubtedly play a major role in the protection of the structure from injury, particularly during medial rotation of the fixed tibia in flexion. When the motion is executed the popliteus muscle via the arcuate ligament draws backward the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus thereby preventing the structure from being crushed between the femoral condyle and tibial plateau. The ligaments of Hum

phry and Wrisberg also act in backward displacement of the lateral meniscus

#### TRANSVERSE LIGAMENT

This structure comprises a fasciculus running from the periphery of the anterior convex portion of the lateral meniscus to the corresponding region of the medial meniscus (Fig 41)

#### CORONARY LIGAMENTS

These are fibrous prolongations of the fibrous capsule which connect the peripheries of the menisci with the adjacent margin of the head of the tibia.

#### SYNOVIAL MEMBRANE

The cavity of the knee joint is the largest in the body and is enclosed by the fibrous joint capsule which is lined by synovial

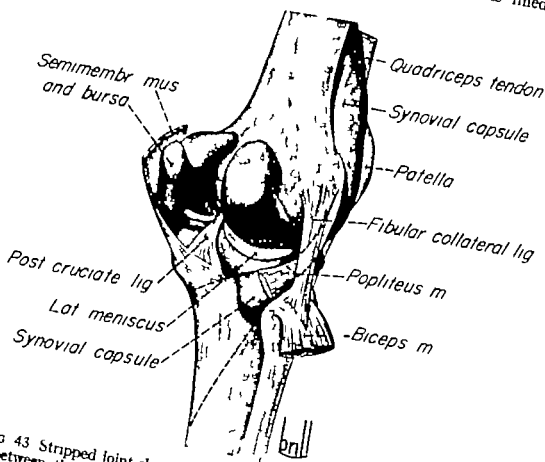


FIG 43 Stripped joint showing the synovial capsule. The quadriceps pouch lies between the anterior surface of the femur and the quadriceps tendon. The semimembranosus bursa in this specimen communicates with the joint cavity. The popliteus tendon is separated from the lateral meniscus by a pro-

membrane (Fig 43) According to Mc Dermott the synovialis develops by re arrangement of the fibroblasts forming the inner surface of the fetal capsule of the joint and the most superficial cells of the un attached portions of the intra-articular structures namely the menisci the cruciate ligaments the ligament of Humphry and the infrapatellar fat pad Under the quadriceps femoris muscle the synovialis extends upward a handbreadth above the upper pole of the patella to form the quadriceps pouch which rests on the anterior surface of the distal portion of the femur Between the femur and the synovial pouch is a loosely arranged layer of adipose tissue The upper pole of the pouch is supported during move

ments of the knee joint by a small muscle the articularis genu, which arises from the anterior surface of the femur beneath the vastus intermedius and inserts into the proximal portion of the synovial pouch Occasionally the quadriceps pouch communicates with a bursa lying between the femur and the tendon From either side of the patella the synovialis projects beneath the aponeurosis of the vasti muscles Anteriorly it is separated from the undersurface of the ligamentum patellae by a large pyramidal pad of fat the infrapatellar fat pad, which projects into the joint cavity and occupies the space from the lower border of the patella to the anterior border of the articular surface of the tibia. On either side of

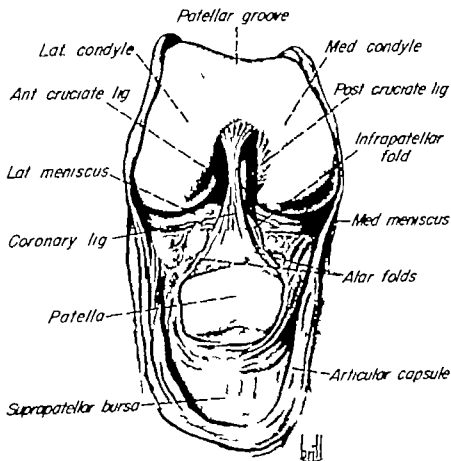


FIG 44 This specimen exhibits a well formed ligamentum mucosum formed by the convergence of the alar folds.

the patella close to the articular margins, the synovialis investing the Infrapatellar fat pad falls into loose folds designated as alar folds, below, these converge to form a median fold, the ligamentum mucosum which extends to the anterior region of the intercondyloid fossa of the femur in relation to the anterior surfaces of both the anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments (Fig 44) In many dissected specimens the alar folds were found to be demarcated poorly or were absent in the lower region of attachment of the ligamentum mucosum. On the other hand, all knee joints revealed well formed plications of synovialis (alar folds) on either side of the patella. From the inferior portions of the Infrapatellar fat pad loose folds of synovial membrane and fat tissue are observed normally to cover the anterior portions of the semilunar cartilages. Fisher designated these processes

semilunar processes of the infrapatellar fat pad or "semilunar pads." He further noted that in the terminal phase of extension (the screw home movement), the anterior portion of the inner condyle of the femur moves over the inner semilunar pad and not on the anterior segment of the inner meniscus. The writer has confirmed this observation many times in the specimens studied. Moreover in complete extension the semilunar pads, not the menisci, are compressed between the anterior portions of the condyles and the articular surfaces of the tibia.

During flexion of the knee joint the ligamentum mucosum becomes taut and pulls the infrapatellar fat pad backward. Some fibers of the articularis genu muscle continue downward and blend with the infrapatellar fat pad. In complete extension these muscle fibers displace the pad of fat upward thereby preventing this structure

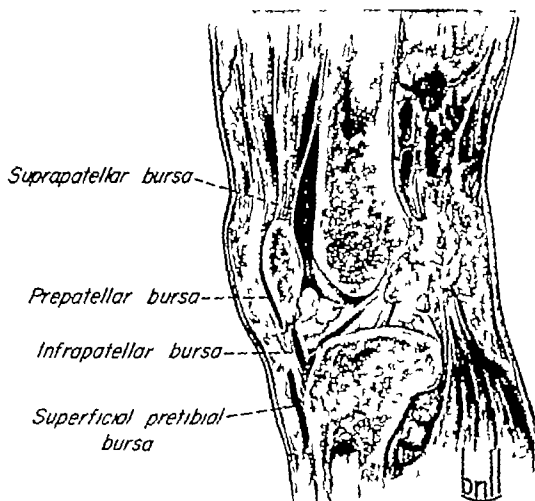


FIG 45 Bursae about the knee joint.



from being caught between the condyles of the femur and the tibial plateaus. The same mechanism would tend to pull the semilunar cartilages forward.

In the position they occupy in relation to the menisci, the semilunar pads are vulnerable to the same mechanisms of trauma that produce lesions of the menisci. Lesions of the semilunar processes must be considered as factors responsible for internal derangement of the knee joint.

Before the period of the erect position is assumed all unattached surfaces of the menisci and the cruciate ligaments are covered by synovial membrane. In the adult the superior and the inferior surfaces of the menisci are devoid of synovialis except at their site of attachment to the capsule. Unattached surfaces of both cruciate ligaments

are invested with synovialis. A constant defect in the fibrous capsule is created by the passage of the tendon of the popliteus muscle which forms an oblique indentation or groove on the posterior aspect of the lateral meniscus. The tendon is ensheathed in synovial membrane which forms a small cul-de-sac in this region. Two prolongations of the synovial membrane in the form of pouches are found constantly on the back of the knee joint, one on each side between the medial and the lateral condyles of the femur and the tendons of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle.

#### BURSAE

Numerous bursae are present in relation to the knee joint (Fig. 45). Anteriorly there are 4 bursae. One is situated between the

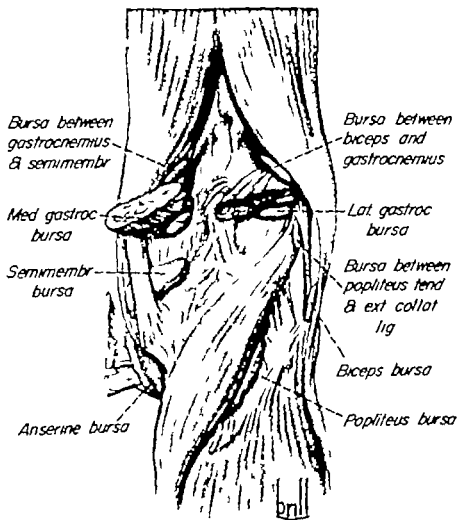
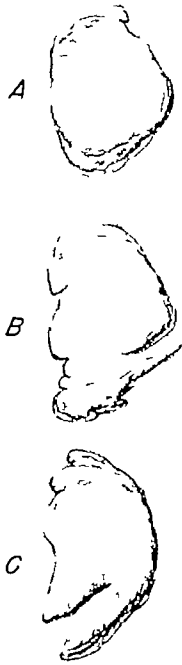


FIG. 45 (Continued) Bursae about the knee joint

Fig. 46 Types of congenital discoid menisci according to Smillie's classification drawn from specimens obtained at operation. (A) Primitive disk. No evidence of dissolution of the central portion of the disk the peripheries and the central area exhibit considerable thickness. (B) The central margin is notched and thinner than the corresponding region in the primitive disk also, the central region is less massive. (C) This approaches the configuration of the normal structure more closely than the other two forms There is an abnormal increase in breadth of the central portion of the structure as compared with the normal Drawn from specimens (Figs 123, 125, 127)



skin and the anterior surface of the patella (prepatellar bursa) a smaller bursa is present between the ligamentum patellae and the anterior surface of the upper region of the tibia The third bursa lies between the skin and the distal portion of the tuberosity of the tibia the fourth is located between the undersurface of the tendon of the quadriceps femoris and the anterior surface of the distal portion of the femur As a rule, this last bursa communicates with the cavity of the knee joint Laterally 4 bursae are usually demonstrable One lies between the capsule of the joint and the lateral head of the gastrocnemius, frequently this bursa communicates with the articular cavity The second is situated between the tendon of the biceps femoris and the fibular collateral ligament, a third bursa is present between the lateral condyle of the femur and the tendon of the popliteus and the fourth lies between the tendon of the popliteus and the fibular collateral ligament Medially 4 bursae are usually encountered The first occupies a position between the capsule and the medial head of the gastrocnemius this frequently communicates with the joint and also extends between the tendon of the semimembranosus and the tendon of origin of the medial head of the gastrocnemius. Another is located between the tendons of the sartorius, the gracilis the semitendinosus and the outer surface of the tibial collateral ligament A third is found between the head of the tibia and the undersurface of the tendon of the semimembranosus this sends a prolongation between

the tendon of the semimembranosus and the deep surface of the tibial collateral ligament. A fourth is present occasionally between the tendons of the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus

#### DISCOID MENISCI

Study of the development of the knee joint discloses that discoid menisci represent a failure of interchondral disks to assume the characteristic features of the adult structure

It is a clinical fact that congenital discoid menisci are encountered most frequently by

far in the lateral femorotibial component of the knee joint. Although medial congenital discoid menisci have been recorded in the literature they are exceedingly rare. Also bilateral discoid menisci have been reported.

From the middle of the fourth month of antenatal life to birth the menisci cover the greater part of the adjacent articular surfaces of the tibia and the femur; the medial meniscus allows a larger area of contact between the condyle of the femur and the tibia than the lateral meniscus does. This relationship does not alter in any appreciable degree until the child begins to assume the erect posture. Then the area of contact between the femoral condyles and the tibia increases progressively in size until it assumes the dimensions observed in the adult knee joint.

Study of the gross specimens obtained at operation and at postmortem reveals that arrest in the formation of the lateral meniscus at different stages of development results in numerous varieties of congenital discoid menisci. Smillie, in his comprehensive work *Injuries of the Knee Joint* grouped all these varieties into three categories: the primitive, the intermediate and the infantile type. Each type represents a stage at which the normal development of the meniscus has been terminated. It becomes apparent that numerous variations are possible; however, for practical purposes all anomalies encountered can be grouped in the aforementioned classification.

#### PRIMITIVE DISK

This disk represents the earliest stage at which interruption of the natural development of the meniscus occurs in antenatal life (Fig. 46 A). Dissolution of the central portion of the interchondral disk fails to occur or occurs only in part, never sufficiently to allow the formation of a structure which possesses any resemblance to a normal meniscus. The thickness and the breadth of the interchondral plate depend

upon the stage at which arrest of the normal processes of development occurs; the thickness of the periphery of the disk does not differ from that of a normal meniscus. Therefore it becomes obvious that the earlier the interruption of development occurs, the greater will be the breadth of the disk and the greater will be the thickness of its central portion.

#### INTERMEDIATE DISK

Arrest of development of the meniscus just beyond the stage responsible for the formation of a primitive type of disk results in the formation of the intermediate type (Fig. 46 B). Its features are less distinctive than those of the primitive type. Its central portion is relatively thin and its central border may be transparent, a structural characteristic not observed in the primitive type. Its total mass is considerably less than that of the primitive variety. Another constant configuration of this structure is the presence of two indentations on its central border: one is situated immediately in front of the posterior attachment of the disk and the other directly behind the anterior central attachment. Between the two indentations the central margin bulges toward the center of the joint; the extent of the central projection varies considerably in the different specimens.

#### INFANTILE DISK

This structure represents a stage in the arrest of development not far from the formation of a normal meniscus (Fig. 46 C). In many respects it demonstrates features resembling closely those of a fully developed meniscus noted at birth. Its chief differentiating feature is an abnormal increase in breadth of the central portion of the meniscus. In a normally developed lateral meniscus the anterior, the posterior and the central portions are all of the same width. As pointed out by Smillie, not infrequently some slight increase in the breadth of the central portion is encountered; however,

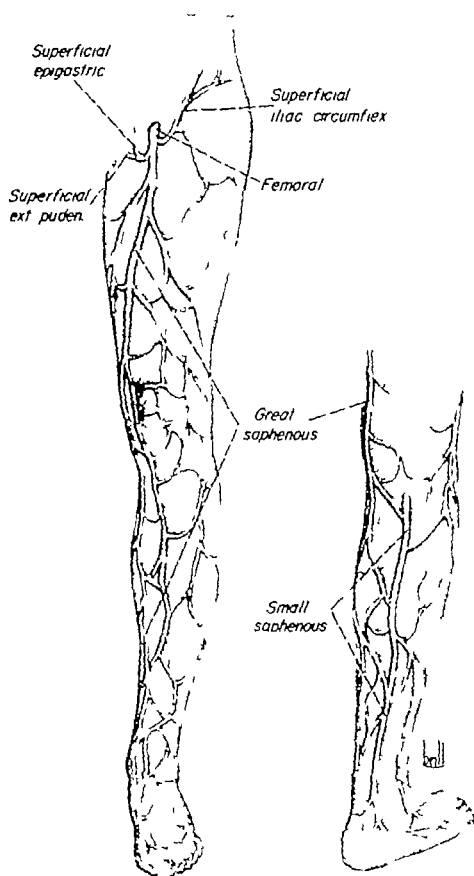


FIG 47 Superficial veins of the extremity

this is considered to be within normal limits. Abnormal increase in the breadth of the central segment must be considered as an interruption in the natural process of development.

## VESSELS AND NERVES

### SUPERFICIAL VESSELS

A rich network of small veins lies in the superficial fascia of the thigh and the lower leg (Fig. 47). From this intricate network two large trunks emerge into which all the smaller vessels empty. The great saphenous vein is the larger of the two collecting vessels; it takes origin on the anteromedial aspect of the foot from the dorsal venous arch and pursues a course upward in front of the medial malleolus and slightly posterior to the medial margin of the tibia. It continues upward behind the medial epicondyle of the femur, then passes to the anteromedial position in the thigh to a point approximately 3 cm. below the inguinal ligament. Here it passes through a defect in the fascia lata (*fossa ovalis*) and ends in the femoral vein. In its ascent in the lower leg it is in relation with the saphenous nerve which pierces the deep fascia just below the knee joint to occupy a more superficial position. This vein may have as many as 10 to 20 valves.

The small saphenous vein arises from the lateral portion of the venous arch on the dorsum of the foot behind the external malleolus. At first it continues upward along the lateral border of the tendo calcaneus then crosses it to occupy a position in the center of the posterior surface of the calf in relation with the sural nerve (short saphenous nerve). At the distal end of the popliteal fossa it perforates the deep fascia and between the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle terminates in the popliteal vein. It possesses from 9 to 12 valves.

### DEEP VESSELS

**Popliteal Vein.** At the distal border of the popliteus muscle the anterior and the

posterior tibial veins join to form the popliteal vein, which continues upward through the popliteal fossa as far as the aperture in the adductor magnus muscle. Here it becomes the femoral vein. At the beginning of its course the vein lies on the medial side of the femoral artery between the two heads of the gastrocnemius; it occupies a position superficial to the artery, crossing it obliquely and finally in the upper region of the popliteal fossa it lies close to its lateral side. Into the popliteal vein empty the small saphenous vein, the accessory popliteal veins and the veins accompanying the corresponding branches of the popliteal arch. Its fascial sheath blends with that of the femoral artery; it contains from 2 to 4 valves. Superficial to the vein is the tibial nerve (internal popliteal) which in its downward course first lies lateral then posterior and finally medial to the vein.

**Femoral Vein.** This vein begins as a continuation of the popliteal vein at the opening in the adductor magnus muscle; it extends upward to the inguinal ligament. Throughout its course it lies in relation to the femoral artery. Its lower portion lies posterior and lateral to the artery; at the apex of the femoral triangle it is posterior to it. From this point it assumes gradually a medial position to the artery so that at the inguinal ligament it lies directly to its medial side and on the same plane. The femoral vein possesses from 3 to 5 valves (Fig. 48).

**Deep Femoral Vein.** The tributaries corresponding to the perforating branches of the profunda artery drain into the deep femoral vein which in turn empties into the femoral vein. Both the medial and the lateral femoral circumflex veins open into the profunda femoris veins; occasionally they flow directly into the femoral vein.

**Femoral Artery.** The femoral vein, the femoral artery and the femoral nerve in the order noted from medial to lateral side pass beneath the inguinal ligament to appear on the anterior aspect of the thigh. Both the artery and the vein pass imme-

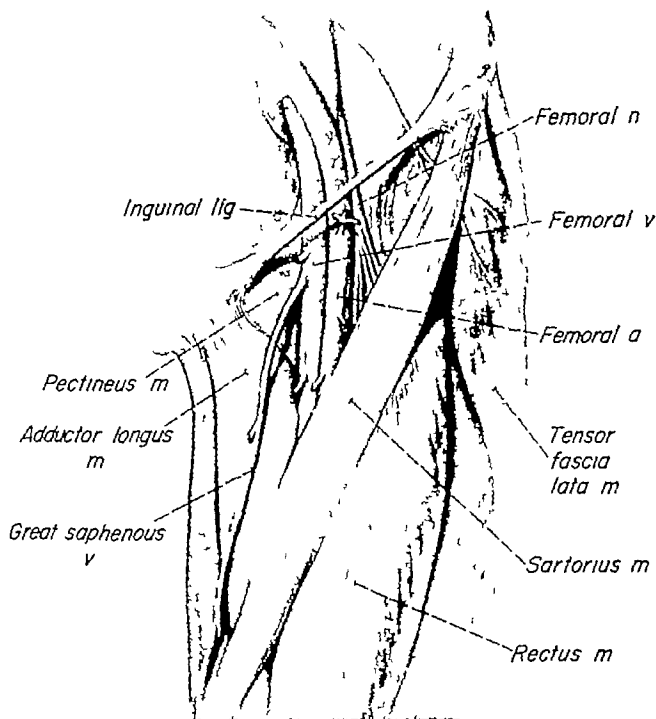


FIG 48 Anatomic relations of the femoral vein the femoral artery and the femoral nerve in the femoral triangle

diately behind the inguinal ligament in a fascial compartment which is formed by a continuation distally of the transversalis fascia in front and the iliac fascia behind the femoral vessels. This structure (about 4 cm long) is called the femoral sheath and

is shaped like a funnel its wide end being directed upward and its distal end blending with the fascial covering of the vessels. The femoral sheath is subdivided into three separate compartments by two vertical fibrous septa. The medial one (femoral canal) con-

tains no significant structures being occupied by loose areolar tissue and a lymph node the intermediate compartment contains the femoral vein and the lateral the femoral artery. The femoral nerve lies outside the femoral sheath behind the iliac fascia it passes downward on the anterior surface of the iliopsoas muscle occupying the same fascia compartment as the muscle (Fig. 48).

The femoral artery is the continuation of the external iliac artery, it begins just behind the inguinal ligament and passes distally along the anterior and the medial aspects of the thigh as far as the aperture in the adductor magnus muscle at the junction of the middle and the lower thirds of the thigh. Here it passes through the hiatus to reach the posterior aspect of the distal third of the thigh, where it becomes the popliteal artery. In the extreme upper end of the thigh immediately below the inguinal ligament the first 4 cm. of femoral artery lie in the femoral sheath. In the upper third of the thigh it occupies a position in the femoral triangle in relation with the femoral vein and the femoral nerve. The distal end of the artery lies in the adductor canal. The adductor canal is an interval between the quadriceps muscles and the adductor muscles which is covered by an aponeurotic prolongation extending from the vastus medialis to the adductor longus and the adductor magnus muscles. Immediately anterior to this fibrous sheath lies the sartorius muscle. With the leg in a position of slight abduction and flexion the course of the artery follows a line extending from a point midway between the symphysis pubis and the anterior spine of the ilium to the adductor tubercle. In the upper part of the thigh the artery occupies a position in front of the hip joint.

Immediately below the inguinal ligament the femoral artery gives off four small branches which supply the lower part of the abdomen and the genitals. These are the superficial epigastric, the superficial iliac

circumflex, the superficial external pudendal and the deep external pudendal arteries. Also in this region it gives off two larger branches the medial and the lateral circumflex arteries, which encircle the extremity completely and anastomose with each other and other vessels situated in the proximal portion of the extremity. These last two arteries mentioned may arise from the profunda femoris.

The profunda femoris (deep femoral artery) is a relatively large vessel, it takes origin from the lateral and the posterior aspects of the femoral artery from 4 to 6 cm. distal to the inguinal ligament. It continues distally and posteriorly first lying lateral to the femoral artery then posterior to it close to the medial margin of the femur. It may pass in front of or behind the adductor longus muscle and in the distal third of the thigh it terminates in a small branch which, after piercing the adductor magnus muscle, terminates in the hamstring muscles. Four perforating branches are given off by the profunda femoris artery, the fourth comprises the termination of the artery. They are designated perforating arteries because they perforate the tendinous insertion of the adductor muscle in order to reach the posterior region of the thigh passing in close relation to the linea aspera of the femur through aponeurotic openings in the muscle. The most proximal branch takes origin from the profunda femoris above the adductor brevis muscle, the intermediate branch in front of the muscle and the third branch just distal to it. As noted above the fourth branch is really the termination of the artery. All four perforating vessels form anastomosing loops with each other on the posterior surface of the adductor magnus muscle, furthermore they anastomose above with the circumflex and the gluteal arteries and below with the genicular and the muscular branches of the popliteal artery.

**Popliteal Artery.** The popliteal artery begins at the hiatus in the adductor magnus

muscle. It is a continuation of the femoral artery and terminates at the lower border of the popliteus muscle by dividing into the anterior and the posterior tibial arteries (Fig. 49). It traverses the popliteal fossa, in which it occupies a deep berth. In some in-

stances it divides into its terminal branches at the level of the knee joint. The anterior tibial continues distally in front of the popliteus muscle.

Directly in front of the artery from above downward are located the popliteal surface

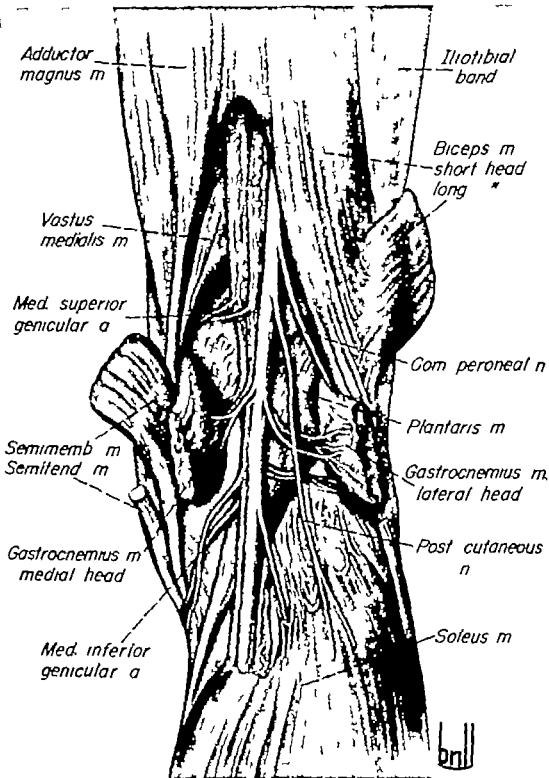


FIG. 49. Anatomic relation of the vessels and the nerves in the popliteal fossa.



of the femur, the posterior capsule of the knee joint and the fascial covering of the popliteal muscle. Posteriorly, the inner portion of the semimembranosus muscle overlaps the upper part of the artery and the distal segment of the vessel is covered completely by the inner portion of gastrocnemius and the plantaris muscles. The middle part of the artery is covered with much areolar tissue fat and skin and it is crossed by the tibial nerve and the popliteal vein as they pursue a course downward from the lateral to the medial side the vein being situated between the nerve and the artery. Proximally on the lateral aspect of the artery are situated the popliteal vein, the tibial nerve, the biceps femoris muscle and the lateral condyle of the femur in the order noted from medial to lateral side distally

there are the plantaris and the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscles. On the medial aspect, proximally are located the medial condyle of the femur and the semimembranosus muscle, distally there are the medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle and the tibial nerve. The popliteal artery gives off the following branches: the sural and two or three superior muscular branches: the cutaneous, the medial superior genicular, the lateral superior genicular, the middle genicular, the medial inferior genicular and the lateral inferior genicular.

#### ARTERIAL ANASTOMOSIS AROUND THE KNEE JOINT

A rich arterial rete is formed around the knee joint chiefly by the genicular arteries and the anterior recurrent tibial artery.

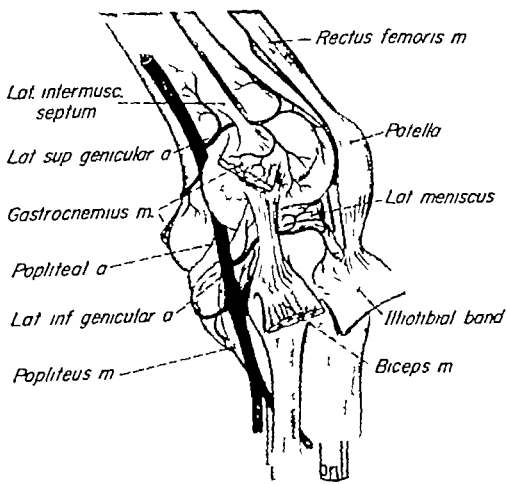


FIG. 50 Arterial anastomosis around the knee joint lateral side

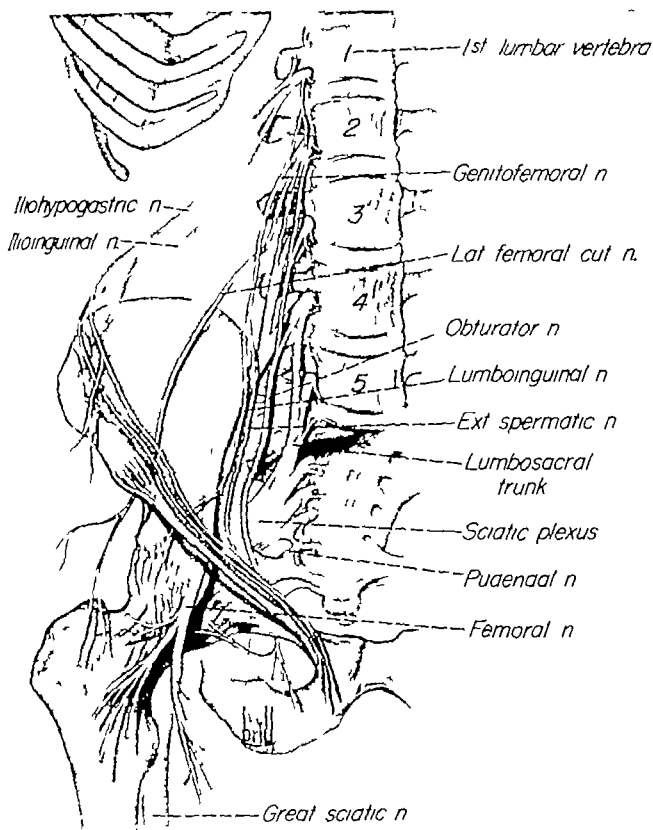


FIG 51 Origin of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve of the thigh the obturator nerve, the femoral nerve and the sciatic nerve

(Figs 36 and 50) Two distinct anastomoses can be identified a superficial and a deep In the region of the upper border of the patella the superficial plexus or rete lies among the superficial fibers of the quadri-

ceps muscle and comprises essentially a distinct vascular arch in this region Below the patella two similar arches are found beneath the ligamentum patellae In the loose fatty tissue situated in this region The deep

anastomosis comprises an intricate network of vessels located on the lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia sending branches to the contiguous bones and into the joint. Chiefly concerned with the formation of the deep plexus are the four genicular arteries, the highest genicular (*genu suprema*) the descending branch of the lateral femoral circumflex and the anterior recurrent tibial. The middle genicular artery (*azygos*) is smaller than the other four genicular arteries, it arises from the

posterior aspect of the popliteal artery and together with the articular branch of the obturator nerve pierces the popliteal ligament to gain entrance into the knee joint. It is distributed to the synovialis lining the joint the alar folds and the cruciate ligaments.

#### POPLITEAL FOSSA

Knowledge of the anatomic positions of the structures found in the popliteal fossa is essential to surgeons performing operative

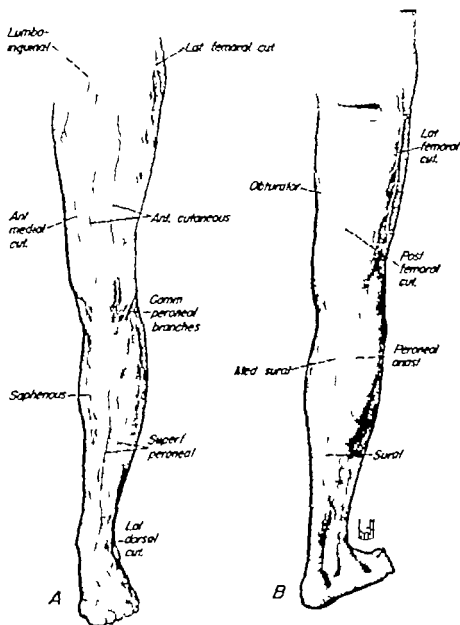


FIG. 52 Cutaneous nerves of the lower extremity (A) anterior view (B) posterior view

procedures on the posterior aspect of the knee joint (Fig 49) As will be shown later, many pathologic processes may arise in the region, necessitating surgical intervention

The muscles crossing the posterior aspect of the knee joint form the boundaries of the fossa which is lozenge shaped On the medial side above it is bordered by the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus muscles, below by the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle The lateral boundary comprises, above, the biceps femoris muscle and, below the plantaris and the outer head of the gastrocnemius muscles Anteriorly the floor of the fossa comprises from above downward, the popliteal surface of the femur the oblique popliteal ligament, the upper end of the tibia and the fascial covering of the popliteus muscle Posteriorly the roof of the fossa is formed by the fascia lata

The structures of greatest importance contained in the popliteal fossa are the popliteal artery and the popliteal vein and the tibial and the common peroneal nerves Of lesser importance are the articular branch of the obturator nerve the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve the termination of the small saphenous vein fat and several small lymph nodes Lying directly on the floor of the fossa are the popliteal artery and the vein In the upper one half of fossa the vein lies lateral to the artery it then crosses the artery and in the lower one half it is found on the medial side of the artery Occasionally, two veins may be present In such instances the artery occupies a position between the two veins In the fossa the popliteal artery gives off the genicular branches which leave at right angles to the mother vessel The tibial nerve lies under the deep fascia and pursues a course from above downward through the center of the fossa

crossing the popliteal artery and the popliteal vein posteriorly from a lateral to a medial position The common peroneal nerve traverses the lateral side of the fossa under cover of the medial border, the biceps femoris muscle above and its tendon below In addition to the tibial and the common peroneal nerves the articular branch of obturator nerve is found in the fossa, occasionally it is absent It enters the fossa upon the popliteal artery, to which it gives filaments, and descends as far as the oblique popliteal ligament in the back of the knee joint, it pierces this ligament to gain entrance into the joint cavity where it supplies the synovial membrane (Figs 51 and 52)

#### OSSIFICATION

The osseous nucleus of the distal epiphysis of the femur is, as a rule, demonstrable at birth union of the epiphysis with the diaphysis usually occurs at the nineteenth year The appearance of the bony center of the patella varies greatly In females it generally appears in the fourth or the fifth year In some children it may appear during the first year in others not until puberty Not infrequently more than one center of ossification is present Ossification of the sesamoid bone of the outer head of the gastrocnemius muscle known as the fabella usually is delayed until puberty It is present in approximately 25 per cent of adult knees it may be bilateral

At birth or 2 or 3 weeks after, the nucleus of the upper end of the tibia is demonstrable it fuses with the diaphysis between the sixteenth and the twentieth years The nucleus for the proximal epiphysis of the fibula makes its appearance during the third or the fourth year it joins the shaft between the twentieth and twenty fifth years

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Bennett, G E Cysts of the semilunar cartilage  
Am J Surg 43 512 1939  
Chandler F A Symposium on injuries of knee

- joint congenital abnormalities of the external  
semilunar cartilage S Clin North America 17  
331 1937

- DeLorme T L. Restoration of muscle power by heavy resistance exercises J Bone & Joint Surg 27 645 1945
- DePalma, A. F. Surgery of the Shoulder Philadelphia Lippincott, 1950
- Goss C. M. Gray's Anatomy Philadelphia Lea 1948
- Grant J C. B. A Method of Anatomy Descriptive and Deductive p 335 Baltimore Wood 1937
- An Atlas of Anatomy Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1947
- Herzmark, M. H. The evolution of the knee joint J Bone & Joint Surg 20 7 1938
- Hollinshead, W. H. Functional Anatomy of the Limbs and Back Philadelphia Saunders 1951
- Horwitz, M. T. An investigation of the surgical anatomy of the ligaments of the knee joint Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 47 28 1938.
- Humphry G. M. A Treatise on the Human Skeleton (Including the Joints) p. 545 Cambridge Macmillan, 1853
- MacKenzie Colin. The Action of Muscles London Lewis 172 186 1945
- Petty M. J. Two cases of abnormal patella Brit J Surg 12 99 1924-25
- Schaeffer J. P. Morris Human Anatomy Philadelphia Blakiston, 1942

## Mechanics of the Knee Joint

With the assumption of the erect posture many changes were necessary in the configuration and the mechanics of the knee joint. These alterations are reflected in the statics and the dynamics of this articulation. The fact that dysfunction in the quadriceps apparatus is precipitated so readily by even minor injuries is a strong argument favoring the premise that the function of the quadriceps muscle in man is a recent acquisition. Furthermore, the human knee joint finds itself in a vulnerable position and frequently is subjected to direct trauma and extraordinary torsional and bending stresses. These forces give rise to specific injuries of the osseous elements and the ligamentous structures of the joint. Knowledge of the normal mechanics of the knee joint is essential in order to comprehend the pathomechanics producing the numerous and the varied lesions of the components of this articulation.

### AXIS OF THE KNEE JOINT

The mechanical axis of the femur does not coincide with its anatomic axis. This discrepancy is brought about by the position of the femoral neck in relation to the shaft which forms an angle of  $120^{\circ}$  to  $135^{\circ}$  with the femoral shaft. The mechanical axis corresponds to a line traversing the center of the hip joint and the center of the knee joint, forming an angle of from  $6^{\circ}$  to  $9^{\circ}$  with the axis of the shaft of the femur (Fig 53). In the erect position a transverse axis through the knee joints lies in the true horizontal plane; this horizontal axis forms an angle of  $87^{\circ}$  with the mechanical axis of the

femur and an angle of  $81^{\circ}$  with its anatomic axis (Fig 53). If the  $87^{\circ}$  which corresponds to the angle between the transverse axis of the knee joint and the mechanical axis of the femur are subtracted from  $180^{\circ}$ , a supplementary angle of  $93^{\circ}$  remains which is the angle the mechanical axis makes with the transverse axis of the knee joint below the horizontal axis. The normal deviation from the center of the knee is between  $10^{\circ}$  and  $12^{\circ}$ , corresponding to the axial deviation between the tibia and the femur. The angle varies slightly in normal extremities and greatly in certain pathologic conditions as in genu varum and genu valgum. Figure 54 shows that the mechanical axis of the femur is displaced further outward as the angle of abduction decreases and is displaced further inward as the angle increases. According to Steindler Mikulicz noted that of 200 cases studied, 58 per cent revealed that the mechanical axis of the femur passed through the center of the joint, in the remaining 42 per cent the line deviated to the median side less than 1 cm in 87.5 per cent and more than 1 cm in 12.5 per cent. Although these figures may vary in normal individuals, arbitrarily any deviation of the mechanical axis of the femur of 2.5 cm or more from the center of the knee joint in either direction must be considered abnormal.

Displacement of the mechanical axis to either side of the center of the knee joints in excess of 2.5 cm produces increased abnormal longitudinal stresses on some of the bony elements of the articulation and stretching of the soft tissue structures on the same side. In genu varum longitudinal

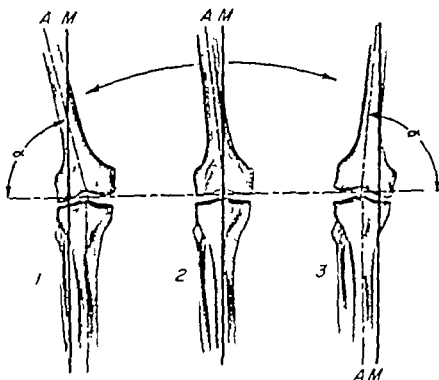
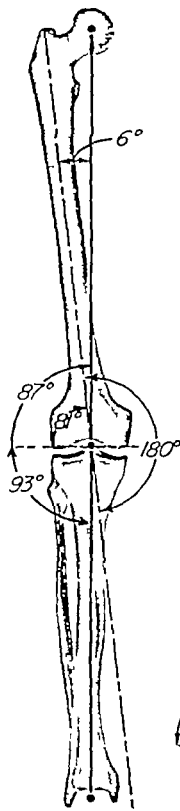
stresses are accentuated on the inner condyle of the femur and the inner articulating surface of the tibia and the capsule and the fibular collateral ligament on the lateral aspect of the knee joint are unduly stretched the reverse is true in genu valgum

### STATICS OF THE KNEE JOINT

Examination of the lower extremities in the erect position with the knees extended discloses that the transverse axis passing through the condyles of the femora lies in a true frontal plane this is also true of a similar axis passing through both hip joints.

FIG 53 (*Left*) Anatomic axis of the femur mechanical axis of the femur transverse axis of the knee joint and mechanical axis of the leg (Redrawn from Steindler *Mechanics of Normal Locomotion in Man*)

FIG 54 (*Bottom*) The solid line represents the mechanical axis of the femur Note that as the angle of abduction decreases the mechanical axis is displaced further outward and as the angle increases the axis is displaced further inward. (1) Genu valgum the mechanical axis falls on the outer side of the center of the knee joint. (2) In the normal joint the mechanical axis passes through the center of the joint. (3) Genu varum the axis falls to the inner side of the center



However, the transverse axes of the necks of the femora are diverted forward by the normal position of anteversion of the necks in relation to the femoral shafts. It becomes apparent that in order for the proximal and distal ends of the femur to be in a strictly frontal plane, the shaft of the femur must undergo some inward torsion to compensate for the forward twist of the neck of the femur. This torsion of the femur is approximately  $25^\circ$ .

A similar relationship exists between the knee joint and the ankle joint. In the latter the transverse axis courses obliquely from outward and backward to forward and inward. Outward torsion of the lower portion of the tibia is responsible for the deflection of the axis of the ankle joint. Furthermore, this deviation places the external malleolus of the ankle slightly behind the internal malleolus. The outward twist of the tibia is approximately  $30^\circ$ . As a result of the aforementioned deflection of the transverse axis of the neck of the femur and of the ankle joint, the knee joint which lies between the two occupies a position of  $25^\circ$  of internal rotation in relation to the femoral neck and from  $20^\circ$  to  $30^\circ$  internal rotation in relation to the transverse axis of the distal end of the tibia.

### STRESS AND STRAINS ACTING ON THE TIBIA

As pointed out by Steindler the tibia in the frontal plane approaches closely a column fixed above and below, since no movements at the knee joint are possible in this plane. The maximum bending stresses act at the middle of the shaft, while minimum bending stresses act at the intersections of the curves (Fig 55). In a measure these forces are influenced by the normal deviation of the knee joint which causes the load to fall lateral to the axis of the tibia and also by the lateral position of the fibula which affords further support to the tibia. In the sagittal plane the tibia is similar

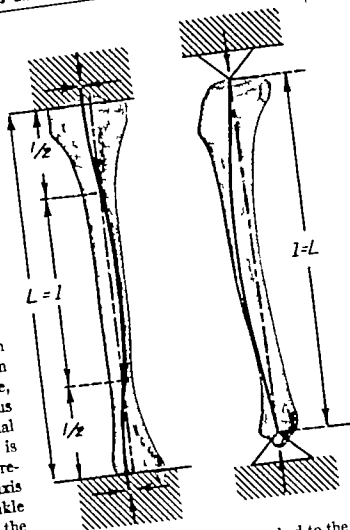


FIG 55 Column theory applied to the tibia. Frontal plane,  $1 = L/2$  Sagittal plane,  $1 = L$  (Redrawn from Steindler *Mechanics of Normal Locomotion in Man*)

to a column hinged at both ends in which the maximum bending stresses are operative at the middle of the shaft and the maximum shearing forces at the ends.

As previously noted with the knee extended the transverse axis of the knee joint is rotated inward from  $20^\circ$  to  $30^\circ$  in relation to the axis of the ankle joint. This results in a torque outward of the lower end of the tibia.

Steindler further recorded that in the frontal plane the inclination of the axis of the femur to that of the tibia produces a horizontal gravitational component with bending and shearing stresses which are maximal at the joint and are resisted by ligamentous tension. Also that similar bending



forces develop in the sagittal plane in abnormal situations as with *tibia recurvata* and *patella alta*

## DYNAMICS OF THE KNEE JOINT

The knee joint possesses features characteristic of both the *ginglymus* (hinge joint) and *trochoid* (pivot joint) articulations. Essentially, it is capable of flexion and extension in the sagittal plane and, in certain positions of the joint of internal and external rotation. The latter movements can be effected only when the knee joint is in certain degrees of flexion no rotation is possible with the knee in the fully extended position. Movement in the sagittal plane is not only a true rolling motion on a transverse axis but also describes a certain amount of gliding motion of the articular surfaces upon each other. This is borne out by the marked incongruity that is demonstrable between the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles and the tibial plateau. The menisci partially compensate for the incongruity by occupying a position between the articulating surfaces to a lesser degree further compensation is provided by the infrapatellar fat pad and the synovial folds. As will be shown subsequently the menisci together with the collateral ligaments the cruciate ligaments and the patellar retinacula play a part in the stability of the knee joint.

The natural deflection outward of the tibia on the femur at the knee joint permits greater weight bearing stresses on the outer femoral condyle than the inner but because the medial condyle of the femur is prolonged further forward than the lateral the vertical axis of rotation falls in a plane nearer the medial condyle. During rotary movements the medial condyles describe a smaller arc than the lateral which must possess more freedom of motion and are less vulnerable to crushing forces during rotary movements.

That the knee joint is not a true gingly-

mus joint is further demonstrated by the configuration of the condyles of the femur. Both condyles are prolonged posteriorly in the form of massive rollers, being separated by the intercondylar fossa as they continue posteriorly they diverge slightly. The lateral condyle is broader both in the anteroposterior and the transverse planes than the medial the latter projects distally to a level slightly lower than the lateral condyle when the femur is held in a strictly perpendicular plane. The natural deviation of the knee joint compensates for this difference so that when the erect position is assumed and the knee joint is extended fully both condyles lie in a true transverse plane. The sagittal curves of both the medial and the lateral condyles form circles whose radii become progressively smaller forming a spiral curve. It has been estimated that the ratio of the radius between the foremost and the hindmost portions of the curve is from 9 to 5. The radii of the curve of the lateral condyle are longer than those of the medial. It becomes obvious that during flexion and extension of the knee joint the center of motion is not in a fixed transverse plane but is constantly changing. The points of contact between the tibia and the femur in varying degrees of flexion have been demonstrated by roentgenograms (Zupplinger) and the angles of flexion corresponding to these contact areas were calculated by Fischer.

## MOVEMENTS OF THE KNEE JOINT

Analysis of the movements of the knee joint with the tibia fixed reveals that with the joint in full extension no rotary motion is possible. During the first 20° of flexion the movement is strictly a rocking motion equidistant points on the articular surfaces of the condyles of the femur contact equidistant points on the tibial plateaus. After 20° of flexion the movement becomes a gliding motion the femoral condyles now

glide over a small circumscribed portion of the surface of the tibia. The transition from one form of motion to the other is gradual but progressive, until the gliding form replaces the rocking element completely. The two types of motion described conform to the functional demands made on this articulation. The rocking motion demonstrable in the first 20° of flexion meets the requirements for stability, beyond this first phase the joint unwinds, becoming more relaxed in order to permit axial rotation. This last phase of movement is made possible by the progressively diminishing size of the posterior portions of the condyles of the femur and the relaxation of some and the decrease in tautness of other supporting ligaments. The configuration of the bony elements of the knee joint and the tenseness of its supporting ligaments allow no rotary motion in the extended and the hyperextended positions. When flexion is initiated the fibular collateral ligament relaxes and the tibial collateral and the cruciate ligaments become less taut, hence allowing rotary movements. As will be noted subsequently, the amount of axial rotation increases progressively varying in different joints, at 90° of flexion rotation ranged from 5° to 31°. In complete flexion rotation is decreased, in this position the cruciate ligaments are tense. Moreover with increased flexion the demands of weight bearing become increasingly less hence the gliding mechanism is well adapted for this stage of movement.

During flexion and extension the menisci maintain contact with the head of the tibia however they do migrate slightly forward in full extension and backward in full flexion. In advanced flexion only a small area of the posterior portion of the condyles of the femur remain in contact with the menisci. This area increases progressively in size as the degree of extension becomes greater. It will also be shown that during flexion and extension the range of excursion of the internal meniscus is less than that of the external the former being firmly an-

chored to the capsule and the tibial collateral ligament at a point just posterior to its center. This greater freedom of the external meniscus is responsible for making it less vulnerable to injury than the inner meniscus during forceful rotary movements of the joint. When the extended knee executes the "screw home" movement, the posterior portion of the outer condyle of the femur rotates forward and outward, pulling in its wake the posterior horn of the external meniscus. As noted by Keith, repetition of this maneuver might tear the meniscus from its posterior capsular attachment, however, this is prevented by the stout fibrous attachment between the posterior cruciate ligament and the posterior horn of the external meniscus (ligament of Wrisberg).

Because of the difference in the configuration of the femoral condyles, the longitudinal axis of rotation passes through the medial condyle. Inspection of the articular surfaces of the condyles discloses that the posterior two thirds of both condyles are parallel with one another. However, the anterior one third of the medial condyle is directed outward toward the trochlear surface, no such counterpart exists on the outer condyle. When extension is performed with the tibia fixed, the femoral condyles roll and glide on the articular surface of the tibia and the superior surfaces of the menisci until the total area of the external femoral condyle and the corresponding surface of the internal condyle are expended. With continued muscular action, the remaining movement to complete extension occurs on the curved oblique portion of the inner condyle. This is achieved by internal rotation of the femur until all of the remaining articular surface is consummated in the movement. The final position places the knee joint in full extension, and the act achieving it is designated the "screw home" movement. The knee joint is now locked in extension. If axial rotation is desired it can be accomplished only by unscrewing the

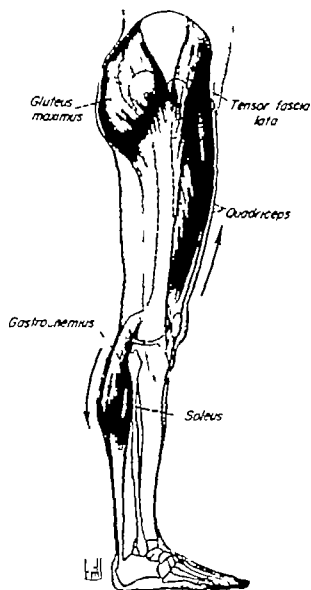


FIG 56 Extensors of knee joint.

knee, which occurs in the first 20° of motion, beyond this point free inward and outward rotation can be performed. With attainment of the locked position (full extension) the anterior cruciate ligaments and the articular margin in front of the tibial intercondyloid eminence fit in the anterior region of the intercondyloid fossa of the femur and the greater portion of the curved surface of the anterior aspect of the inner condyle abuts against the semilunar extension of the infrapatellar fat pad and not against the internal meniscus. On the lateral aspect of the joint the anterior segment

of the lateral meniscus is received in the lateral aspect of the groove on the lateral femoral condyle, while the medial portion of the groove abuts against the articular area in front of the lateral process of the tibial intercondyloid eminence.

In the sagittal plane the normal flexion-extension range is from approximately 40° flexion to 5° to 10° of hyperextension. Axial rotation (inward and outward rotation) varies greatly in different individuals. In some, 30° may be demonstrable when the knee is flexed 90°. With greater flexion as much as 40° to 50° of axial rotation may be achieved. Inward rotation is always greater than outward rotation. In complete extension no rotation is possible. As pointed out by Steindler, man's faculty to rotate the leg inwardly makes the human gait possible. It permits the leg to place the ankle joint the axis of which is in an oblique plane, in the frontal plane thus bringing the foot straight forward.

In addition to flexion, extension and axial rotation, other types of motion are demonstrable in the knee joint. These play no part in the functional mechanics of the joint and generally are only minimal in amount.

Sagittal displacement of the tibia on the fixed femur is discernible in both the anterior and the posterior directions when the knee is in the flexed position. Under normal condition the extent of the excursion of the femur does not exceed 3 mm.

Lateral (abduction-adduction) motion at the knee joint occurs to a limited extent with the knee in the extended position; this never exceeds 6°. In the hyperextended position, no lateral motion is present while in the flexed position it may exceed 6° but never 12°.

Lateral gliding (mediolateral displacement in the frontal plane) is not demonstrable in the normal knee between 90° of flexion and the completely extended position; however, beyond 90° of flexion minimal amounts of lateral gliding may be elicited.

## MOVEMENTS OF THE PATELLA

The extensor apparatus pulls the patella upward with great force, in so doing, all structures on the anterior aspect of the joint are made taut thus stabilizing the knee in extension. The infrapatellar fat pad and the alar ligaments which adhere to the patella are displaced upward by the pull of the quadriceps muscles, thus preventing impingement of these structures between the condyles of the femur. Close inspection of the articular surface of the patella reveals that three paired horizontal facets and a medial perpendicular facet are demonstrable. The medial perpendicular facet is a projection backward of the medial portion of the articular surface of the patella. It articulates with the semilunar surface on the lateral aspect of the medial femoral condyle when the knee is in extreme flexion. As the leg passes from a position of flexion to one of extension, first the superior, then the middle and finally the inferior pair of facets articulate with the patellar surface of the femur. With the knee fully extended

and the extensor apparatus in a relaxed state, the patella occupies a position on the front of the distal end of the femur and can be moved freely in all directions.

DYNAMICS OF THE MUSCLES  
MOTORIZING THE KNEE JOINT

## EXTENSORS OF THE KNEE

The quadriceps is the principal extensor of the knee (Fig. 56). Of lesser importance is the tensor fascia lata. In cases of complete paralysis of the quadriceps, almost complete extension of the knee may be attained and held by muscles acting indirectly on the knee. With the foot in a fixed position the gluteus maximus above and the gastrocnemius below pull the femur backward while the soleus also pulls backward on the proximal end of the tibia, thus extending the knee. Both the tensor fascia lata and the gluteus maximus insert into the iliotibial band the greater portion of which passes anterior to the center of the knee joint. It becomes obvious that both these muscles play an important part in

TABLE 1 WORKING ABILITY OF THE FLEXORS AND THE EXTENSORS OF THE KNEE\*

NAME OF MUSCLE	SHORTENING IN METERS	CROSS SECTION AREA IN SQ. CM.	WORK IN KG. = SHORTENING IN METERS X CROSS SECTION AREA IN SQ. CM. X 10
A. EXTENSORS			
Vastl	0.080	148.30	= 118.640
Rectus femoris	0.081	28.89	= 23.400
Tensor fasc. lat	0.010	7.56	= 0.756
			142.796
B. FLEXORS			
Semimembranosus	0.064	26.38	= 16.833
Semitendinosus	0.134	7.27	= 9.733
Biceps femoris	0.059	17.37	= 10.248
Gracilis	0.075	4.11	= 3.082
Sartorius	0.070	3.17	= 2.319
			42.215

\* Flick. The kilogrammetric values are based on Flick's constant of 10 kg. per sq. cm. to get Recklinghaus's value (3.6) multiply values of last column by 0.36.

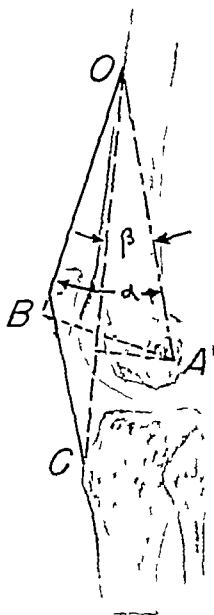


FIG. 57 Anatomic arrangement of the patella in relation to the anterior surface of the femur and the tibia: this arrangement deflects the line of pull of the quadriceps anterior to the center of the joint, thereby increasing the strength of the muscle by improving the leverage. (Redrawn from Steindler: *Mechanics of Normal Locomotion in Man*)

knee in these patients can be regained by progressive quadriceps exercises designed to restore muscle tone and strength to the optimum point of development.

From an anatomic viewpoint the quadriceps comprises the rectus femoris and the three vasti muscles, all being innervated by the femoral nerve. Functionally, the components of the muscle mass differ. The rectus femoris alone cannot extend the leg fully; this function is performed by the vasti, of which the *medialis* is the most powerful. The 3 vasti are designed physiologically to function as a single unit; their combined contraction results in pulling the patella upward. If the muscles are stimulated separately by an electric current, one observes that the vastus intermedius pulls the patella directly upward, the *medialis* pulls the patella upward and medially, and the *lateralis* pulls it obliquely upward and laterally; each produces *extension of the leg on the thigh*. Stimulation of the rectus femoris draws the patella directly upward. Duchenne regards the *medialis* and the *lateralis* as antagonists in lateral motion of the patella and synergists in extension of the knee.

The anatomic position that the patella occupies in relation to the knee joint adds considerably to the mechanical efficiency of the quadriceps. This fact is being disregarded by many surgeons, as is evidenced by the number of patellectomies that are being performed for varied reasons. Many observers justify their actions by the belief that the patella is a sesamoid bone and has no significant role in the movements of the knee. The chief role of the patella is to increase the strength of the quadriceps muscle

holding the extended position at the knee once it has been attained. The quadriceps is the most powerful group in the thigh, being the antagonist of 6 flexors of the knee; the working ability of this group and of the flexor muscles was calculated by Fick (Table 1). The strength of the quadriceps is three times that of the combined flexor muscles. It is a common clinical observation that the stability of the knee depends in a large measure on muscle tone, particularly of the quadriceps. This is best demonstrated in patients with torn collateral or cruciate ligaments. Stability of the

by improving leverage. This is accomplished by deflecting the line of pull of the motor force necessary to extend the joint anterior to the center of the joint, so that it acts at an angle instead of in a straight line to the bony elements of the articulation (Fig 57).

✓ It must be remembered that the axes of muscles are almost parallel with the axis of the elements of the skeleton which are to be put in motion. This arrangement provides for great stability of the parts of the skeleton and for maintenance of equilibrium. However, this is only the static function of muscles, the dynamic function is production of rotary movements. It becomes apparent that muscle force comprises a rotary and a tangential or axial component. In order to move parts of the skeleton nature must design ways whereby the muscle axes are deflected from the center of rotation thus increasing the angle of application. This has been achieved by many ingenious arrangements of the elements involved in producing motion. The anatomic arrangement of the patella and the quadriceps is only one of many designs, another will be pointed out in the flexor surface of the knee joint. According to Steindler, so long as the angle of deflection of the muscle axes does not exceed  $30^\circ$  the stabilizing component of the muscle force is greater than the rotary element. Such is the arrangement in man, except for isolated instances such as the transverse muscles like the pectoralis and the latissimus dorsi in which the rotary component is greater since their axes of application approach a right angle.

Analysis of the role that the quadriceps assumes in the stability and the movements of the knee joint brings forcefully to light the importance of this muscle mass in the maintenance of the erect posture in man. This is achieved by the ability to produce powerful extension of the knee to stabilize the knee and to maintain equilibrium. In addition to opposing the action of the flexor muscles the quadriceps must also counterbalance gravity and body weight. These

functional demands made on the extensors explain their great muscle volume and great force of action. Under normal conditions this muscle has considerable reserve force which is readily demonstrated when one stands on one extremity, the muscle will shorten and becomes tense. Transverse fractures of the patella resulting from sudden powerful contraction of the quadriceps with the knee semiflexed are encountered frequently and provide another example of its great strength.

The erect posture in man has been achieved by the assumption of new functions by muscles primarily designed to motorize the knee in the pronograde position. Gradual stages of development of this new function can be demonstrated in the lower animals. MacKenzie points out that in spite of the similar anatomic position of the quadriceps in the platypus and man their functions vary greatly. In the former the quadriceps extends the flexed knee, a function that is different from that of supporting the orthograde posture. In the ape, quadriceps function is more complex than in the platypus, and in man more complex than in the ape. The higher primates in assuming the upright position hold the knees slightly flexed and insist upon using one or both forelimbs for balance. The ability of the quadriceps to extend the knee fully and to stabilize the joint in varying positions of flexion to complete extension has been an important factor in the great evolutionary strides of man. It has enabled him to free the forelimbs for prehensile use and to elevate them above his head when in the erect position; also, it has permitted him to stand and develop a free bipedal gait. It becomes apparent that the new functions of the quadriceps are late acquisitions in man's evolution. This is substantiated by the clinical observation that the intrinsic quadriceps mechanism being very unstable is readily unbalanced by even trivial injuries which interfere with normal joint function. This disorder is manifested in the loss of

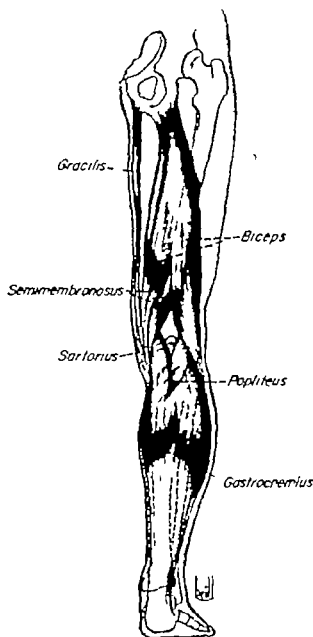


FIG. 58 Flexors of knee joint.

muscle volume diminished power of contraction and disorientation of the muscle mass. Varying degrees of severity are encountered the more severe derangements present features not unlike flaccid paralysis.

According to Mackenzie the functional stages in the evolution of the quadriceps are frequently demonstrable in patients of flicted with poliomyelitis and having quadriceps "paralysis." He noted that in some such instances the patient was unable to

stand or when lying in bed unable to raise the heel with the knee extended. However the same patient while lying on the unaffected side was able to extend with ease the affected knee from an acutely flexed position. This act is in accord with the common concept of extension of the knee as described in textbooks. It becomes apparent that in the above cases the quadriceps may lose the function of recent biologic origin and reverts to the functional status possessed by lower animals performing plantigrade motion. In view of these facts Mackenzie said that the "term paralysis of muscles really refers to the loss of some not necessarily all of the functions." He further recorded that recovery of function like loss follows in an ancestral or evolutionary sequence. The observations noted above are applicable also to the deltoid.

#### VASTUS MEDIALIS

This muscle is the most important component of the extensor apparatus. Although it works in unison with the other extensors in addition it possesses specialized functions not observed in the others. It is greater in volume and stronger than any one of the other components of the quadriceps. Anatomically its muscle fibers produce the fullness on the lower and inner aspect of the thigh many of the fibers insert directly into the inner border of the patella. Functionally it is responsible for the last 10° to 15° of extension. Although it assists extension movements through the entire range its most powerful action comes into play in the last few degrees of extension and is thus responsible in a large measure for the locked position of the knee joint or the "screw home" motion.

Clinical experience supports the observations recorded above. Extensive and rapid loss of volume of the vastus medialis always is associated with loss of full extension of the knee following traumatic disorders of sufficient severity to interfere with normal joint activity. Complete restoration of func-

tion of the quadriceps is not achieved in these cases until the vastus medialis has returned to normalcy. This is observed frequently in patients following surgical procedures on the knee joint. They complain of "giving way" of the knee joint, particularly on descending stairs, when the full weight of the body is placed on the affected limb. This act requires the quadriceps, particularly the vastus medialis, to expend great strength in order to stabilize the knee joint and to maintain equilibrium. If the medialis shows evidence of wasting which is indicative of lessened power, the knee may 'buckle' or "give away." Permanent loss of full extension regardless of the causative agent, always is associated with advanced atrophy of the vastus medialis.

Smillie recorded that in instances of destruction of the vastus medialis alone, such as may be seen in war injuries, a full range of motion is possible but the knees constantly "give away." There is no dispute that the above observation is applicable to most cases, however, there are rare exceptions. In instances with complete loss of the medialis it is possible for the remaining components of the quadriceps to compensate in power and efficiency to such a degree that the "giving-away" phenomenon does not occur. A case in point is that of H. C. aged 24 who had osteomyelitis of the right femur during childhood. Numerous surgical procedures and the presence of an open wound for many months resulted in total destruction of the vastus medialis. When examined by the author the patient had no symptoms referable to the affected limb. Healing had occurred at the age of 12 there had been no recurrence of the infection during the following 12 years. While attending college the patient participated in strenuous sports such as football and basketball at no time did he note any instability in the knee joint. Examination of the limb revealed complete absence of the medialis but marked hypertrophy of the remaining components of the quadriceps.

### FLXORS OF THE KNEE

The principal flexors of the knee are the semitendinosus, the semimembranosus, the biceps femoris, the gracilis and the sartorius. Some muscles in the calf of the leg which expand the knee joint also produce flexion. These are the popliteus, the plantaris and the gastrocnemius. The flexion action of this latter group does not come into play until the knee has been flexed slightly by the flexors in the thigh. The outer flexors are capable of greater leverage because their point of application is deflected a greater distance than that of the inner from the axis of the skeletal com-

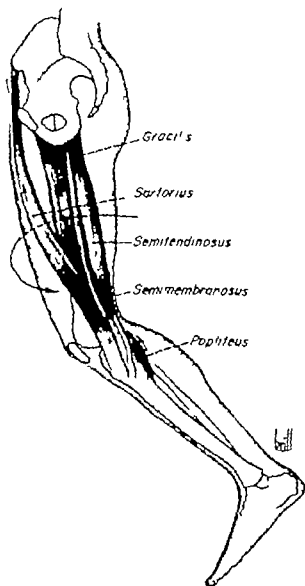


FIG. 59 Internal rotators of knee.



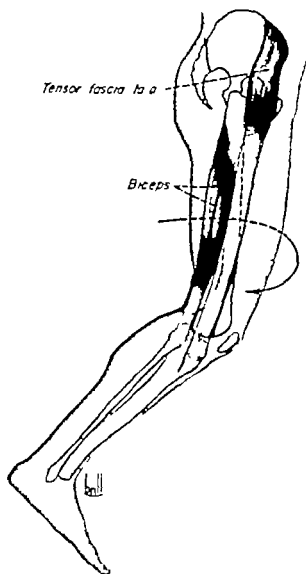


FIG 60 External rotators of knee

ponents of the joint. The flexor tendons are deflected in their path as they course over posterior portions of the femoral condyles which project considerably backward (Fig 58).

#### ROTATORS OF THE KNEE

The same muscles producing flexion of the knee are the rotators. Internal rotation is affected by the semimembranosus, the semitendinosus, the sartorius and the gracilis, all passing around the medial aspect of the knee joint to insert into the tibia. In addition the popliteus is also a powerful

internal rotator (Fig 59). The principal external rotator is the biceps femoris, which passes distally on the lateral side of the knee to reach the head of the fibula. When the knee is slightly flexed the tensor fasciae latae aids in flexion movements by its pull on the iliotibial band (Fig 60).

It was recorded previously that in the fully extended position little or no rotary motion is possible at the knee joint. In the locked position the configuration of the medial femoral condyle causes the femur to rotate inward (when the leg is fixed). The internal rotators play an important role in unwinding the knee in order to initiate flexion. When the leg is fixed by taking their fixed point from below they rotate the femur on the leg outward. With completion of this act flexion at the knee is possible. The popliteus muscle assumes a very significant part in the execution of this movement.

#### MAINTENANCE OF STABILITY AT THE KNEE JOINT

Under normal conditions the muscles of the thigh, particularly the quadriceps, and some muscles in the posterior aspect of the leg, the gastrocnemius and the popliteus, are the principal stabilizers of the knee in the extended position. As will be shown subsequently, this is especially true in patients with torn collateral or cruciate ligaments or both. In the treatment of these lesions it becomes apparent that the goal is good tone and strength in the quadriceps; all therapeutic measures should be directed toward this end. In addition it has been shown that the configuration of the bony components of the knee are such that stability is enhanced when extension is completed. The "screw home" phenomenon made possible by the prolongation of the anterior portion of the articular surface of the medial condyle is the most important factor in this movement. Normal erect body position is another factor; once extension of the

knees has been achieved, the center of weight distribution falls slightly anterior to the center of movements in the knee joints, thus tending to maintain the knees in the extended position. It will be shown further that in extension considerable tightening of the collateral ligaments occurs, a factor adding to the stability of the joint. In varying degrees of flexion of the knee, the gluteus maximus and the muscles of the posterior aspect of the leg mentioned previously play an important role in maintaining stability and equilibrium, thus being of considerable assistance to the quadriceps. Finally, the iliotibial band, because of its anatomic position, must be considered as a stabilizer of both the hip and the knee. It runs from the ilium to the tibia crossing both the hip and the knee. The gluteus maximus inserts into its posterior portion, and the tensor fascia latae into the anterior. Contraction of these muscles aids in stabilizing through the iliotibial band, flexion-extension movements at the hip. Inasmuch as the iliotibial band passes anterior to the center of movements of the knee, it contributes to the stability of this joint when extended.

investigation on the anatomy and the mechanics of the knee joint. Although the aforementioned two studies contained many observations and conclusions which were in agreement with one another, they were in total discord with those recorded by many other observers. The knee joint with its menisci and ligaments is vulnerable and subjected frequently to abnormal stresses, producing minor or severe injuries to one or several of the components of this articulation. It becomes obvious that knowledge of the mechanics of the various structures and the significance of their individual role in the stability and the over-all performance of the movements of the knee joint is essential. This information is the basis for the wisdom of accepting some injuries and refusing to accept others. In the latter instance an attempt is made to restore the disrupted structures to anatomic normalcy by surgical intervention. Because of the many discrepancies encountered in the literature, an investigation of the subject was made (Table 2). The plan of the study paralleled in many respects (particularly the preparation of the specimens) that made by Brantigan and Voshell.

## FUNCTIONAL MECHANISM OF MENISCI, CRUCIATE AND COLLATERAL LIGAMENTS

Much has been written on the movements of the knee joint and the functional mechanism of the menisci, the cruciate and the collateral ligaments. A survey of this literature reveals considerable disagreement among the many workers interested in this subject. In fact, many assertions are ambiguous and contradictory leaving the reader in a state of confusion. In recent years the work of Brantigan and Voshell on the mechanics of the ligaments and the menisci of the knee joint has thrown some light on this obscure problem. In 1911, Fick published his observations and conclusions made in a meticulous and comprehensive

## MATERIALS AND METHODS EMPLOYED IN THE STUDY

This investigation was conducted together with a study on degenerative lesions of the knee joint, the latter investigation will be reported in a subsequent publication. For both problems, 86 fresh knee joints obtained from high amputations were dissected and studied. Only knee joints of patients who were unaware of any disability relative to their knees were used in the study of the ligaments, moreover, upon physical examination prior to amputation these knees disclosed no objective evidence of any dysfunction. The study on motion and function of the knee joint was carried out on intact fresh joints and on stripped fresh joints. In the former the various measurements were made on joints with all

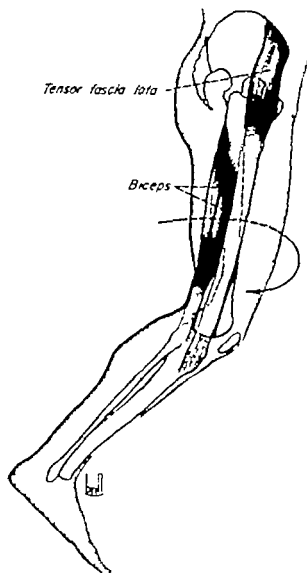


FIG 60 External rotators of knee

ponents of the joint. The flexor tendons are deflected in their path as they course over posterior portions of the femoral condyles which project considerably backward (Fig 58)

#### ROTATORS OF THE KNEE

The same muscles producing flexion of the knee are the rotators. Internal rotation is affected by the semimembranosus the semitendinosus the sartorius and the gracilis all passing around the medial aspect of the knee joint to insert into the tibia. In addition the popliteus is also a powerful

internal rotator (Fig 59) The principal external rotator is the biceps femoris which passes distally on the lateral side of the knee to reach the head of the fibula. When the knee is slightly flexed the tensor fasciae latae aids in flexion movements by its pull on the iliotibial band (Fig 60)

It was recorded previously that in the fully extended position little or no rotary motion is possible at the knee joint. In the locked position the configuration of the medial femoral condyle causes the femur to rotate inward (when the leg is fixed). The internal rotators play an important role in unwinding the knee in order to initiate flexion. When the leg is fixed by taking their fixed point from below they rotate the femur on the leg outward. With completion of this act flexion at the knee is possible. The popliteus muscle assumes a very significant part in the execution of this movement.

#### MAINTENANCE OF STABILITY AT THE KNEE JOINT

Under normal conditions the muscles of the thigh particularly the quadriceps and some muscles in the posterior aspect of the leg the gastrocnemius and the popliteus are the principal stabilizers of the knee in the extended position. As will be shown subsequently this is especially true in patients with torn collateral or cruciate ligaments or both. In the treatment of these lesions it becomes apparent that the goal is good tone and strength in the quadriceps; all therapeutic measures should be directed toward this end. In addition it has been shown that the configuration of the bony components of the knee are such that stability is enhanced when extension is completed. The "screw home" phenomenon made possible by the prolongation of the anterior portion of the articular surface of the medial condyle is the most important factor in this movement. Normal erect body position is another factor once extension of the

knees has been achieved, the center of weight distribution falls slightly anterior to the center of movements in the knee joints, thus tending to maintain the knees in the extended position. It will be shown further that in extension considerable tightening of the collateral ligaments occurs a factor adding to the stability of the joint. In varying degrees of flexion of the knee, the *gluteus maximus* and the muscles of the posterior aspect of the leg mentioned previously play an important role in maintaining stability and equilibrium, thus being of considerable assistance to the quadriceps. Finally, the iliotibial band, because of its anatomic position, must be considered as a stabilizer of both the hip and the knee. It runs from the ilium to the tibia crossing both the hip and the knee. The *gluteus maximus* inserts into its posterior portion, and the *tensor fascia latae* into the anterior. Contraction of these muscles aids in stabilizing, through the iliotibial band, flexion-extension movements at the hip. Inasmuch as the iliotibial band passes anterior to the center of movements of the knee, it contributes to the stability of this joint when extended.

### FUNCTIONAL MECHANISM OF MENISCI, CRUCIATE AND COLLATERAL LIGAMENTS

Much has been written on the movements of the knee joint and the functional mechanism of the menisci, the cruciate and the collateral ligaments. A survey of this literature reveals considerable disagreement among the many workers interested in this subject in fact many assertions are ambiguous and contradictory leaving the reader in a state of confusion. In recent years the work of Brantigan and Voshell on the mechanics of the ligaments and the menisci of the knee joint has thrown some light on this obscure problem. In 1911, Fick published his observations and conclusions made in a meticulous and comprehensive

investigation on the anatomy and the mechanics of the knee joint. Although the aforementioned two studies contained many observations and conclusions which were in agreement with one another, they were in total discord with those recorded by many other observers. The knee joint with its menisci and ligaments is vulnerable and subjected frequently to abnormal stresses producing minor or severe injuries to one or several of the components of this articulation. It becomes obvious that knowledge of the mechanics of the various structures and the significance of their individual role in the stability and the over-all performance of the movements of the knee joint is essential. This information is the basis for the wisdom of accepting some injuries and refusing to accept others. In the latter instance an attempt is made to restore the disrupted structures to anatomic normalcy by surgical intervention. Because of the many discrepancies encountered in the literature, an investigation of the subject was made (Table 2). The plan of the study paralleled in many respects (particularly the preparation of the specimens) that made by Brantigan and Voshell.

### MATERIALS AND METHODS EMPLOYED IN THE STUDY

This investigation was conducted together with a study on degenerative lesions of the knee joint, the latter investigation will be reported in a subsequent publication. For both problems 86 fresh knee joints obtained from high amputations were dissected and studied. Only knee joints of patients who were unaware of any disability relative to their knees were used in the study of the ligaments; moreover, upon physical examination prior to amputation, these knees disclosed no objective evidence of any dysfunction. The study on motion and function of the knee joint was carried out on intact fresh joints and on stripped fresh joints. In the former, the various measurements were made on joints with all



the latter the same measurements were recorded on joints stripped of soft tissues except the ligaments and the menisci. In order to evaluate the role of the individual ligaments, they were severed singly and in combination. When this was done on fresh intact specimens the ligaments were cut through small stab wounds which were closed before the measurements were made. It was found necessary to split the joints in several planes so that the function and the significance of certain ligaments could be studied, this is particularly true of the cruciate ligament. All measurements were made with the femur fixed (Fig 61). Lateral motion comprises two elements, abduction and adduction—rocking of the tibia on the fixed femur.

Measurement of lateral and rotary motion of the knee joint in different degrees of extension and flexion necessitated the construction of the apparatus shown in Figure 61.

#### ROLE OF LIGAMENTS AND MENISCI DURING NORMAL EXTENSION AND FLEXION MOVEMENTS OF KNEE JOINT

With the knee joint extended completely both tibial and fibular collateral ligaments are taut. With hyperextension tension in these structures increases (Fig 62). This same phenomenon is demonstrable in the cruciate ligaments: the tendon of the popliteus muscle and the fibrous cords running from the periphery of the posterior segment of the external meniscus to the inner and posterior aspect of the medial condyle of the femur (ligament of Wrisberg, ligament of Humphry or both). In the extended position in nonweight bearing joints the menisci fit snugly in their grooves in the corresponding condyles of the femur but they are not compressed. Compression of these structures between the femoral and the tibial condyles does not occur even when hyperextension is executed. Instead the lateral extensions of the infrapatellar fat

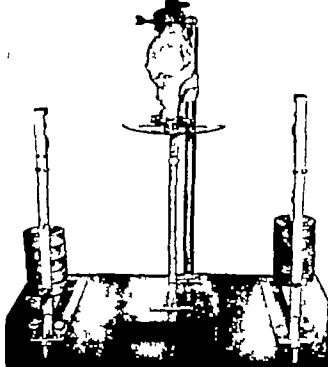


FIG 61 Apparatus employed to study motion of the knee joints in different planes, observe that the femur is fixed

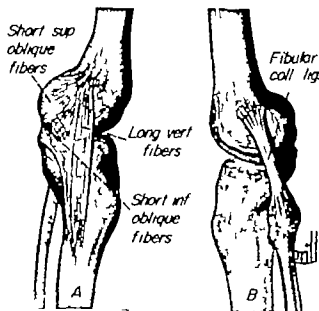


FIG 62 With the knee hyperextended, the tension in the tibial and the fibular collateral ligaments increases (A) Tibial collateral ligament (B) Fibular collateral ligament.

pad are compressed by extension and hyperextension of the joint. This is evident particularly at the end of extension when the 'screw home' movement is being completed.

When flexion is initiated with the tibia fixed, unscrewing of the joint is discernible; this is achieved by external rotation of the femur on the fixed tibia. During the first few degrees of motion, unwinding of the joint is barely perceptible and becomes more apparent with each successive degree of flexion, reaching its maximum after 20° of flexion have been performed. As previously recorded, the rotary movements responsible for screwing and unscrewing of the knee joint are around an axis which passes near the medial condyle of the femur.

Both menisci migrate forward on extension and backward on flexion of the knee joint; the motion takes place between the menisci and the corresponding articular surfaces of the plateaus of the tibia (Fig. 63 A and B). At the beginning of flexion there is immediate backward displacement of the external meniscus. The greatest amount of the excursion occurs after 5° to 7° of flexion, a phase in flexion which corresponds to the end of the unscrewing maneuver of the knee joint. The amount of backward displacement varies from 5 mm to 14 mm, the average in this series being 9 mm. During the first phase of flexion the internal meniscus remains stationary; backward displacement begins after 17° to 20° of flexion have been achieved. The amount of displacement varies from 1 mm to 7 mm, the average being 3 mm; this is considerably less than that recorded for the opposite meniscus (Table 2). No further displacement of the internal structures occurs after 70° of flexion; beyond this arc the meniscus is gripped firmly between the posterior flare of the articular surface of the medial condyle of the femur and the articular surface of the tibia. This situation differs from that noted on the outer side of the joint. It can be demonstrated readily that backward

displacement of the external fibrocartilage continues until 110° of flexion has been consummated; beyond this arc, in forced hyperflexion, the posterior segment of the meniscus tends to slide posteriorly over the posterior flare of the external condyle of the femur, thereby preventing compression between the condyle of the femur and that of the tibia. In flexion, posterior displacement of the external structure is enhanced by the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry; these structures also prevent anterior displacement of the meniscus during abnormal maneuvers which would tend to trap the structure between the condyles of the femur and the tibia. It becomes apparent that they play a significant role in making the posterior horn of the external meniscus less vulnerable to injury. A comparable situation does not exist on the posterior aspect of the inner side of the knee joint.

It was noted previously that the configuration of the condyles of the femur plays a very significant role in controlling rotary movements with the knee in extension. With beginning of flexion, unlocking of the knee commences; after this phase is executed, tension of the ligamentous apparatus is diminished because the posterior halves of the condyles of the femur are segments of smaller circles than the anterior halves. Inasmuch as the axis of rotation is nearer the medial condyle of the femur, it becomes obvious that the lateral condyle must describe a greater arc during rotatory movements than the medial and hence must be freer. The greater range of excursion of the external meniscus as compared with that of the internal supports this observation.

#### TIBIAL COLLATERAL LIGAMENT

This ligament is the most important component of the ligamentous apparatus and its frequency of injury is greater than that of any of the other ligaments of the knee joint. Its structure plays a pertinent role in the stability of the joint both in extension and flexion. It consists of a deep and a

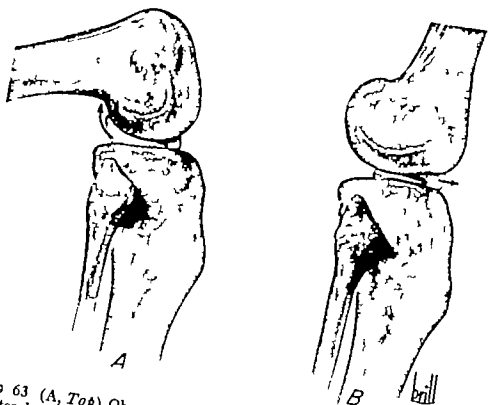
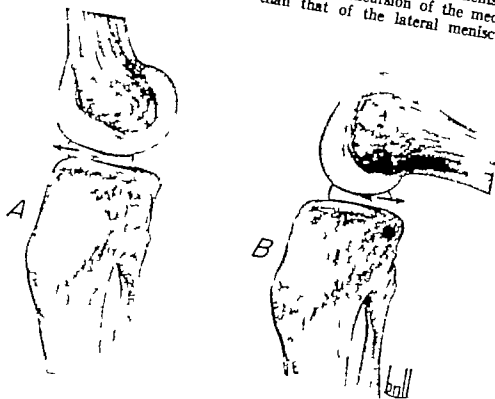


FIG 63 (A, *Top*) Observe the forward and backward excursion of the lateral meniscus with extension and flexion of the knee joint. Also note that at the extremes of flexion the posterior segment of the meniscus tends to slide posteriorly and upward over the posterior flare of the external femoral condyle, hence compression of the meniscus is prevented (B *Bottom*) The backward excursion of the medial meniscus is considerably less than that of the lateral meniscus





superficial layer. The deep layer is smaller and consists of short vertical fibers extending from the medial epicondyle to the articular margin of the tibial condyle and continuing distally for a short distance on the medial aspect of the condyle. It blends with the fibrous capsule and is firmly adherent to the internal meniscus. The superficial portion is triangular in shape with its base located anteriorly and its apex posteriorly; it is subdivided further into anterior and posterior portions. The anterior fibers are inserted proximally into the medial femoral epicondyle; the line of attachment to the bone is at a slight angle. Distally, the fibers are attached to the medial aspect of the tibia at a distance of 0.3 cm to 4.2 cm (the average being 2.2 cm) below the articular

margin of the tibial plateau. The fibers then continue downward for a distance of approximately 2.1 cm (Fig. 64). The posterior portion comprises the superior oblique and the inferior oblique fibers. They lie above and below the joint line respectively and are directed obliquely toward the inner and posterior aspect of the tibial condyle; they blend and insert into the condyle immediately superior and lateral to the site of the insertion of the tendon of the semimembranosus. In fact, the inferior fibers arch over the tendon of the semimembranosus to reach their point of bony attachment. At the level of the joint line, the converging oblique fibers blend with the periphery of the internal meniscus, forming a fixed point posterior to the middle of the tibial ligament

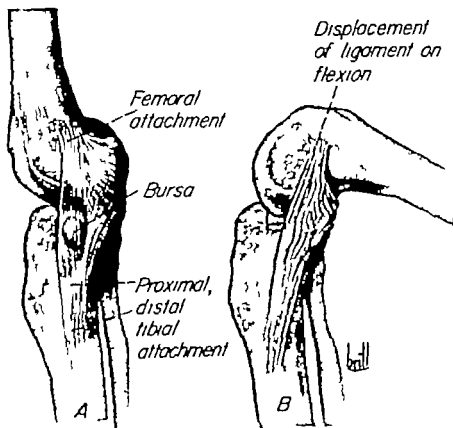


FIG. 64 Tibial collateral ligament. (A) Note that its posterior oblique fibers blend with the periphery of the meniscus at the level of the joint posterior to the middle of the ligament. Frequently, a bursa is encountered between the meniscus and the anterior portion of the superficial layer of the ligament. (B) In flexion the posterior fibers relax; however, even in complete flexion some of the anterior vertical fibers are still taut. Also in flexion the ligament as a whole shifts backward.

The anterior portion of the superficial layer is attached loosely to the underlying meniscus. Frequently, a bursa is interposed between the two structures, in this study a bursa was present in 94 per cent of the specimens. Abbott et al observed that the posterior oblique fibers blend with the joint capsule, forming a hemispherical pouch which is lax in flexion and tense in extension, the pouch contains the posterior part of the medial femoral condyle. In extension the posterior one half of the medial femoral condyle is grasped firmly by the inner surface of the pouch, this arrangement enhances considerably the stability of the knee in extension. According to the above workers if this arrangement is destroyed it results in instability of the knee in the locked or extended position.

In extension all portions of the tibial collateral ligament are tense, allowing no abduction rocking or axial rotation of the tibia (Fig 64). As flexion begins the posterior oblique fibers relax beginning from posterior to anterior, more and more fibers relax as flexion increases. However, even in extreme flexion the long anterior superficial fibers are still taut, preventing any abduction rocking, and some axial rotation is still permitted. It becomes apparent that throughout the entire arc of flexion some portion of the ligament is taut. During flexion the entire ligament shifts slightly backward in relation to the medial tibial condyle, the amount of displacement varies from 1 mm. to 1.2 cm., the average being 4 mm. This distance was measured by noting the extent of displacement backward of the anterior margin of the long anterior fibers of the ligament. When the knee is flexed 90° the amount of abduction at the joint line ranged from 3 mm. to 8 mm. the average being 5.6 mm.

#### FIBULAR COLLATERAL LIGAMENT

This structure comprises a deep and a superficial portion (Fig 65). The small deep component extends from the lateral epicon

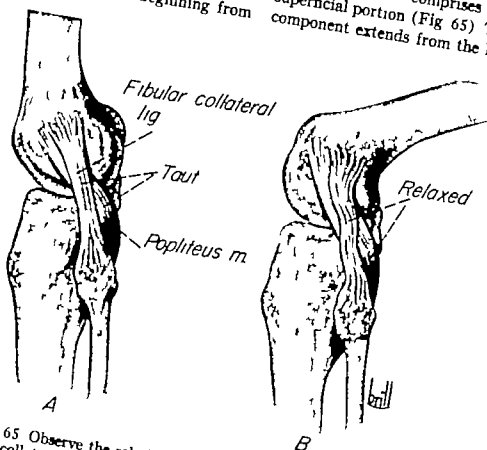


FIG 65 Observe the relation of the tendon of the popliteus to the fibular collateral ligament (A) both structures are taut in extension and (B) relaxed in all positions of flexion

dyle of the femur to the medial aspect of the upper surface of the fibula and to the styloid process. Between the ligament and the external meniscus is interposed the tendon of the popliteus muscle and its synovial sheath. Its posterior margin blends with the fascial covering of the popliteus muscle and contributes to the formation of the arcuate ligament.

The superficial portion or the long external ligament is a stout fibrous cord stretching from the lateral epicondyle of the femur to the upper surfaces of the head of the fibula lateral to the deep portion. The tendon of the biceps femoris separates the two layers of the fibular collateral ligament, but the superficial ligament divides the tendon into a superficial and a deep lamina.

In extension and hyperextension this ligament is taut and precludes any adduction rocking of the tibia. However, it is relaxed

in all positions of flexion, the same is true of the tendon of the popliteus muscle (Fig. 66). In the flexed positions the ligament functions as a checkrein to axial rotation in both medial and lateral directions. It acts essentially on the lateral condyle of the femur.

#### CRUCIATE LIGAMENTS

Although these structures are less developed in the knee joint of man as compared with the cruciate ligaments found in lower primates, nevertheless they play a significant role in the functional mechanics of the knee joint. The intricate manner in which they function is primarily the result of the peculiar arrangement of their insertions into the femoral condyles. In general the insertion of one is the mirror image of the other. The posterior cruciate ligament is the larger of the two ligaments and its femoral in-

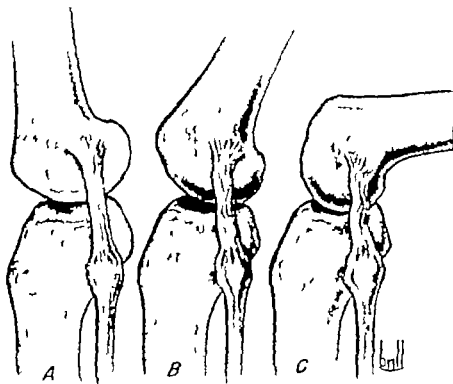


FIG. 66 The fibular collateral ligament. The ligament is taut in (A) hyperextension and (B) extension but (C) relaxed in all positions of flexion.

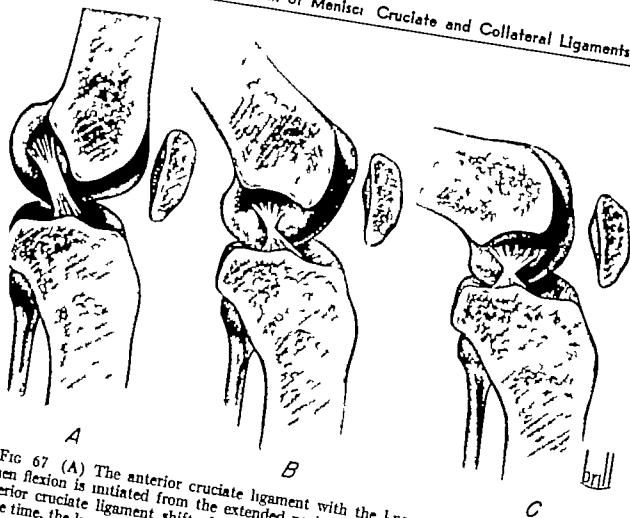


FIG 67 (A) The anterior cruciate ligament with the knee extended. (B and C) When flexion is initiated from the extended position the femoral attachment of the anterior cruciate ligament shifts from a vertical to a horizontal plane (C) at the same time, the ligament twists on its longitudinal axis counterclockwise. The reverse is true when the knee is extended from the flexed position.

section is slightly higher and also more anterior than that of the anterior cruciate ligament

#### ANTERIOR CRUCIATE LIGAMENT

In this study with the knee flexed  $90^\circ$  the average length of this structure is 2.7 cm. Its tibial attachment is located in the nonarticular area of the upper end of the tibia immediately in front of the intercondylar eminence. It passes obliquely upward backward and laterally and inserts into a small depressed area on the posterior aspect of the inner surface of the lateral condyle of the femur. Just before the ligament reaches the femoral condyle its fibers spread out so that the area of bony insertion is greater than the diameter of the ligament at its middle. The direction of the plane of insertion of the fibers into the femur changes

with flexion and extension (Fig 67). In the position of full extension the line of insertion approaches the vertical plane, the anterior fibers of the ligament are located at the upper level of the line of attachment while the posterior fibers are situated at the lower level. In this position the posterior fibers are less taut than the anterior, but in hyperextension they become tense. When flexion is initiated the plane of the femoral attachment begins to shift from a vertical to a horizontal position. At the same time the posterior fibers shift forward and the anterior fibers shift backward. It readily becomes obvious that the ligament as a whole twists counterclockwise on its longitudinal axis on flexion and unwinds in extension. This twisting and untwisting of the fibers is the result of the changes in the axis of the femoral insertion of the ligament.



FIG 68 (A) The posterior cruciate ligament with knee in the extended position (B) as to (C) As flexion increases from the extended position the plane of the line of the femoral insertion changes from a horizontal to a vertical plane at the same time the ligament twists on its longitudinal axis in clockwise fashion. During extension the ligament unwinds the direction of the twist is opposite to that of the anterior cruciate ligament (Fig. 67)

The ligament is tense only in hyperextension and in complete flexion. In all other phases of flexion some portion of the ligament is less taut than others but none of the fibers is tense. This difference in degree of tautness while the knee is in varying degrees of flexion with the tibia fixed permits a certain amount of axial rotation of the femur on the tibia and some adduction rocking also the femur can be displaced backward a few millimeters in the sagittal plane. It becomes apparent that when the tibia is fixed and the knee is approaching complete extension the anterior cruciate ligament functions as a guide wire at the end of which the lateral femoral condyle performs when the femur is fixed it controls lateral rotation of the tibia. This is the most important function of the anterior cruciate ligament. Derangement of the normal

lateral rotation of the tibia (or medial rotation of the femur) is responsible for a large percentage of the lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament. The control of the anterior cruciate and the fibular collateral ligaments on the lateral condyle is responsible for the "final compulsory rotation" described by Fick. As the knee moves from a position of flexion to one of extension the forward motion of the lateral condyle is checked at approximately 160° by the tightening of the two aforementioned ligaments. With continued muscular action complete extension can be achieved only by backward gliding of the medial condyle and internal rotation of the femur when complete extension is attained both the cruciates and the collateral ligaments are tense holding the joint in the locked position.

As previously recorded the anterior cru

date ligament is a strong checkrein to posterior displacement of the femur in the sagittal plane. However, a minimal amount of displacement is usually discernible in most points when in varying degrees of flexion.

#### POSTERIOR CRUCIATE LIGAMENT

With the knee extended the posterior cruciate ligament measures 3.3 cm in length. It is attached to the posterior intercondyloid fossa of the tibia just behind the posterior horn of the internal meniscus. Its fibers pass obliquely upward, forward and medially crossing the anterior cruciate ligament, and gain attachment in a depressed area on the lateral aspect of the medial condyle of the femur (Fig. 68). The relation of the line of insertion of the femoral attachment to the articular surface of the tibia varies with the position of the knee joint. In the position of complete extension, the line of insertion is almost in a horizontal plane; the posterior fibers are more taut than the anterior fibers. In the hyperextended position the posterior fibers become tense, while the anterior ones relax; this is effected by a shift in the plane of the femoral insertion of the ligament which now is directed downward and forward, placing the insertion of the posterior fibers at a higher level than that of the anterior fibers. When flexion is initiated the plane of the line of insertion begins to reverse itself so that at 90° of flexion it lies in a vertical plane. In approaching this position the posterior fibers relax and shift forward and beneath the anterior fibers, which now become taut; as flexion continues the posterior fibers shift anteriorly still further while the anterior fibers are displaced posteriorly. It is apparent that during flexion the fibers of the posterior cruciate ligament twist on their longitudinal axes in clockwise fashion and unwind during extension. The direction of the twist is opposite to that of the anterior cruciate ligament. Throughout flexion some portion of the ligament is taut; thereby con-

trolling the movements of the medial femoral condyle at all times throughout flexion.

This tenseness checks the range of internal rotation of the femur and abduction rocking in positions of flexion; it precludes any forward displacement of the femur on the tibia.

#### ANALYSIS OF CONTROL OF DIFFERENT LIGAMENTS ON MOTIONS OF KNEE JOINT

##### SAGITTAL MOTION

In complete extension the collateral and the cruciate ligaments are taut, also, the posterior capsule with its reinforcing ligaments—the arcuate ligament on the outer aspect and the oblique popliteal ligament (a prolongation of the semitendinosus tendon) on the inner aspect—is also tight. When the joint is hyperextended, the aforementioned structures become tense, precluding any further motion in this direction. Division of the posterior capsule transversely permits the joint to go into more degrees of hyperextension (5°), if the posterior cruciate ligament is also severed. 5° to 8° more hyperextension may be achieved. Beyond this point the bony configuration of the femoral condyles, and in a measure the anterior cruciate ligament and the tendon of the popliteus, prevents further hyperextension. It was pointed out by Brantigan and Voshell and confirmed by this investigation that when the patellar surfaces of the femoral condyles are removed and all ligaments are left intact in stripped fresh joints, as much as 100° of hyperextension may be achieved, yet the tension in the ligaments is not altered materially. The articular surfaces of the femoral condyles that articulate with the patella are segments of circles larger than those which articulate with the tibia. Hence when the knee is completely extended and hyperextended the larger patellar portions of the femoral condyles tend to distract the smaller portions away from the tibial plateaus. In

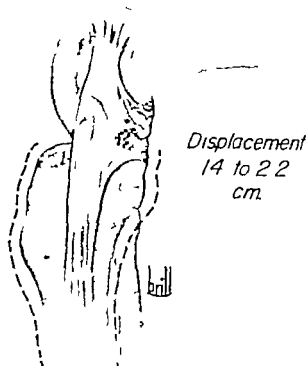


FIG 69 In fresh stripped joints when both cruciate ligaments are cut and the knees are flexed to a right angle, antero-posterior displacement of the tibia increases to as much as 1.4 cm to 2.2 cm. In part, this is due to relaxation of the fibular collateral ligament and the posterior oblique fibers of the tibial collateral ligament when the knee is in a position of flexion.

so doing there is a tendency to increase the interval between the attachments of all the femorotibial ligaments thereby increasing the tension in these structures. In hyperextension the anterior portions of the femoral condyles make firm compression on the medial and the lateral projections of the infrapatellar fat pad which now function as cushions between the femoral and the tibial articular surfaces.

Upon flexion of the joint the posterior portion of the tibial collateral and the entire fibular collateral ligament relax as flexion increases more fibers of the tibial collateral relax while the ligament as a whole gradually shifts backward. In complete flexion the long anterior fibers of the tibial liga-

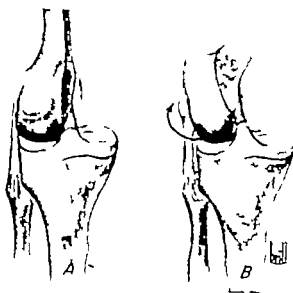


FIG 70 When the anterior cruciate ligament is cut, the lateral femoral condyle tends to slide off the tibial plateau during the act of flexion. (In this figure the medial femoral condyle and the posterior cruciate ligament have been omitted purposely in order to depict more clearly the relation of the lateral condyle to the tibial plateau.) (A) Denotes the normal relationship of the lateral femoral condyle to the tibial plateau when the knee is in the extended position. (B) depicts the femoral condyle sliding off the tibial plateau when the knee is flexed.

ment are tense the fibular collateral ligament is relaxed and the cruciate ligaments are also tense. In intact joints further flexion is prevented by the menisci interposed between the femur and the tibia, the femoral portion of the posterior capsule and the heads of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle which are wedged between the posterior surfaces of the femur and the tibia.

In summation the structures which restrain hyperextension are both collateral and both cruciate ligaments, the posterior capsule, the tendon of the popliteus, the oblique and the arcuate ligaments, the medial and the lateral prolongations of the infrapatellar fat pad and the patellar portions of the femoral condyles. Hyperflexion is inhibited by both cruciate ligaments, the posterior portion of the fibrous capsule and

the heads of the gastrocnemius muscle, the posterior segments of the menisci and the configuration of the femoral condyles. It is important to reiterate that flexion and extension also are governed by the muscular apparatus which functions in unison with the sensory mechanism of the supporting ligaments and the capsule of the knee joint.

#### ANTEROPosterior DISPLACEMENT OF THE TIBIA ON THE FEMUR

In stripped fresh specimens if the anterior cruciate ligament is divided and all other ligaments are left intact, the amount of anterior displacement of the tibia on the fixed femur varies from 2 mm to 5 mm while the knee is in  $180^\circ$  extension. In extension both collateral ligaments are tight and tend to check the amount of anteroposterior motion of the tibia on the femur. When both cruciates are cut and the collaterals are intact hyperextension is increased by  $22^\circ$  to  $32^\circ$  in flexion ( $90^\circ$ ) anteroposterior displacement of the tibia increases to as much as 1.4 cm to 2.2 cm (Fig. 69). In flexion the fibular collateral and the posterior fibers of the tibial collateral are relaxed, hence enhancing anteroposterior displacement. In addition with the anterior cruciate cut, when the knee proceeds into full flexion the lateral femoral condyle is no longer held in a fixed position in relation to the tibia but tends to slide off the tibial plateau (Fig. 70). This is also demonstrable when both cruciates are cut. (If the tibia is fixed one readily notes that medial rotation of the femur is increased.)

Division of the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligament result in a definite increase in the amount of anterior displacement of the tibia (anterior drawer sign). In this series with the knee flexed to a right angle it ranged from 1.8 cm to 2.6 cm (Fig. 71). It becomes apparent that an intact tibial collateral ligament plays a major role in checking the anteroposterior excursions of the tibia on the femur. In extension the entire ligament partakes in

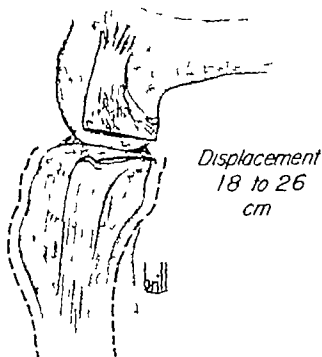


FIG. 71 With the knee flexed to a right angle, severance of the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligament permitted anterior displacement of the tibia ranging from 1.8 cm. to 2.6 cm.

this function, in flexion only the long anterior fibers are tight. When all the ligaments are divided, the joint is extremely unstable generally in stripped joints the extent of forward displacement exceeded 2 cm and in several specimens it reached as high as 2.9 cm. It becomes obvious that excessive anteroposterior motion invariably indicates disruption of the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligaments or the tibial collateral and both cruciate ligaments. Although an intact capsule and the muscular apparatus tend to reduce the amount of instability recorded above nevertheless even in the living when both the tibial collateral and the anterior cruciate ligaments are implicated the integrity of the joint is so impaired that a strongly positive anterior drawer sign and abnormal abduction rocking of the tibia are readily demonstrable.

This study discloses that the anterior cruciate ligament prevents anterior displacement of the tibia on the femur, and



the posterior cruciate prevents posterior displacement. Also the fibers of these ligaments are so arranged and inserted into the femoral condyles that some portion of the ligaments is always taut during flexion and in full flexion and extension they are tense. This feature converts the anterior cruciate into a checkrein which controls the movements of the lateral femoral condyle on the tibia while the posterior cruciate ligament controls the movements of the medial femoral condyle. Although all ligaments are important to the stability of the knee joint

it appears that the combination comprising the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligament contributes most to the stability of the joint.

#### LATERAL MOTION (ABDUCTION AND ADDUCTION) ROCKING OF THE TIBIA ON THE FEMUR

In full extension with all ligaments intact a few degrees of rocking of the tibia on the femur is discernible. It varies from 0° to 6° at right angle flexion rocking increases slightly varying from 5° to 12°. Division of

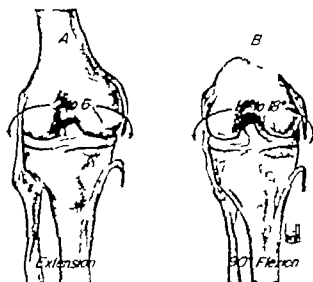
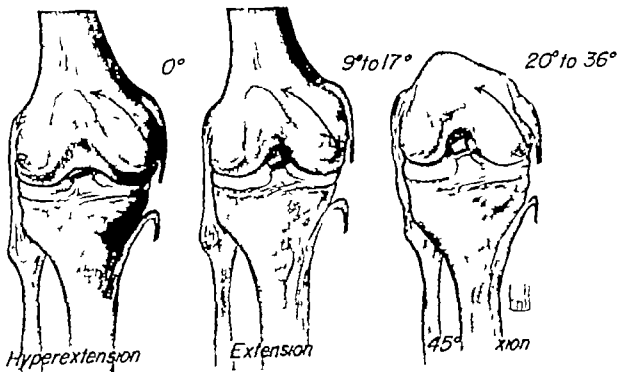


FIG 72 (Top) (A) In extension with only the tibial collateral ligament cut 0° to 6° lateral motion is demonstrable (B) with the knee flexed 90° lateral motion is increased from 14° to 18°

FIG 73 (Bottom) (A Left) When the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligaments are divided completely no abnormal lateral motion is discernible in hyperextension (B Center) in extension motion ranges from 9° to 17° and (C Right) in 45° flexion from 20° to 36°



the tibial collateral ligament alone reveals no abnormal lateral motion in full extension, however, in  $20^\circ$  of flexion some abnormal abduction rocking of the tibia on the femur is demonstrable. It varies from  $8^\circ$  to  $12^\circ$ , and in  $90^\circ$  flexion  $14^\circ$  to  $18^\circ$  (Fig 72). No abnormal lateral instability is demonstrable when the anterior or the posterior cruciate ligament is cut and the remaining ligaments are left intact. When the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral are divided completely, no abnormal lateral motion is discernible in hyperextension. However, in full extension ( $180^\circ$ ) from  $9^\circ$  to  $17^\circ$  of outward lateral motion (abduction rocking) is possible in  $45^\circ$  flexion from  $20^\circ$  to  $36^\circ$  of motion may be present (Fig 73).

If both the cruciates are divided and the collateral ligaments remain intact, no abnormal rocking is noted either in hyperextension or extension. In flexion the relaxation of the fibular collateral ligament, the posterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the popliteus tendon permit some adduction motion. In this study with the knee in  $90^\circ$  flexion it ranged from  $12^\circ$  to  $15^\circ$ , no abnormal abduction motion was demonstrable.

In the light of this investigation it becomes apparent that in addition to the stabilizing influence of the muscles the tendons and the aponeurosis about the knee joint the capsule, both cruciate ligaments the tibial and the fibular collateral ligaments are responsible for lateral stability of the joint in extension. Also, these structures with the exception of the fibular collateral ligament control lateral motion in flexion. Since the function of the collateral and the cruciate ligaments overlap insofar as lateral stability of the joint is concerned it becomes obvious that abnormal forces sufficient to disrupt one structure are very likely to jeopardize the integrity of others. A good example of this is the frequency with which a complete rupture of the tibial collateral ligament is associated with a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

Knowing the function of these two structures, the mechanics of this combined lesion is readily understandable. In the chapter dealing with the normal anatomy of the knee joint, the close relationship of the deep fibers and the posterior oblique fibers of the tibial collateral ligament to the fibrous capsule and the periphery of the medial meniscus was revealed. This intimate anatomy points to the possibility that in combined lesions (ruptures of the tibial collateral and the anterior cruciate ligaments) the fibrous capsule must be torn and that there may be an associated lesion of the medial meniscus. Clinical experience has proved that such complex lesions do exist and must be anticipated.

#### ROTARY MOTION

With all ligaments intact (in intact fresh joints) no rotation is demonstrable in the extended or the hyperextended knee joint. Some medial rotation is possible with the onset of flexion, which is greatest at approximately  $30^\circ$  of flexion ( $24^\circ$  to  $30^\circ$ ). Lateral rotation is only  $6^\circ$  to  $8^\circ$ . At  $90^\circ$  of flexion and in full flexion there is no appreciable increase over that noted at  $30^\circ$ . Medial rotation in the flexed knee joint occurs because the fibular collateral ligament relaxes, lateral rotation is prevented by the configuration of the tibial collateral ligament, particularly its oblique posterior portion which wraps it tightly around the periphery of the femoral condyle when lateral rotation is attempted. In a measure the tendon of the popliteus muscle also restricts the arc of both medial and lateral rotation.

In the extended position no medial or lateral rotation of the knee joint is discernible when the tibial collateral ligament alone is severed. In the flexed position there is a considerable amount of lateral rotation (up to  $30^\circ$ ) but medial rotation is not significantly increased over the range noted when all ligaments are intact (Fig 74). Severance of fibular collateral ligaments allows no abnormal increase in medial or lateral

rotation in the extended position, but in flexion lateral rotation is increased (Fig 77) Cutting of both cruciate ligaments does not effect any significant increase in the rotation of the joint in the position of extension however, in flexion both medial and lateral rotation are increased to 45° to 50° (Figs 78 and 79)

When the tibial collateral ligament is cut in combination with the anterior cruciate no abnormal medial rotary motion is apparent with the knee extended but an average range of 18° of lateral rotation is possible With the knee flexed 90° both medial and lateral rotation are increased to approximately 45°

Division of both cruciates and both collateral ligaments renders the joint exceedingly unstable It becomes apparent that the cruciate the collateral ligaments the capsule and the tendon of the popliteus muscle play a major role in rotary stability of the knee joint In the flexed position the fibular collateral ligament and the popliteus

tendon are relaxed hence they do not contribute to rotary stability In this position the capsule, the cruciate ligaments and the tibial collateral ligament are the prime stabilizing agents however in the position of extension all the aforementioned structures participate in providing rotary stability

#### LIGAMENTS PERFORM AS A FUNCTIONAL UNIT

The integrated action of the individual ligaments together with the muscular apparatus, makes possible the smooth precision movements of the knee joint The closely related action of each ligament is understood readily when the role of each ligament is analyzed during normal flexion and extension of the joint With the tibia fixed and the knee flexed fully the tibia is rotated medially on the femur The relaxed fibular collateral ligament the reduction in tautness of the anterior cruciate ligament and the relaxed tendon of the popliteus permit the tibia and the femur to assume the

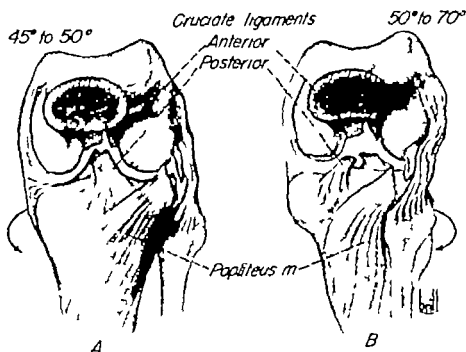


FIG 79 With both cruciate ligaments cut and the knee flexed lateral rotation is increased still further by severance of the popliteus tendon (ranging from 50° to 70°) Medial rotation (B) ranges from 45° to 50° (A)

aforementioned position in relation to one another. In this position, the medial femoral condyle is held in a relatively fixed position on the tibia by the posterior cruciate ligament and the tight long anterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament. When extension is initiated the femoral condyles roll and glide on the superior surface of the tibia. As extension proceeds the medial femoral condyle is allowed less freedom than the lateral condyle, whose path of motion is controlled by the anterior cruciate ligament and the configuration of the two femoral condyles. As extension approaches completion more and more posterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament become taut. At 160° of flexion the fibular collateral ligament and the tendon of the popliteus begin to become taut thereby inhibiting more forward motion of the lateral condyle. Full extension is achieved by internal rotation of the femur. In the final phase the medial condyle spins and glides slightly posteriorly. In this locked position, all fibers of the tibial collateral ligament, the fibular collateral ligament, both cruciate ligaments and the popliteus tendon are tense; also the posterior capsule and its reinforcing ligaments, the arcuate and the oblique popliteal ligaments are tight, precluding motion in any plane. Under normal conditions rotary motion can be achieved only by unlocking the joint, which occurs after the first 20° of flexion have been executed.

The cruciates intertwine as extension ad-

vances and in complete extension they are so tightly intertwined that any medial rotation of the tibia on the femur is precluded. The nature of the attachments of the cruciate ligaments prevents any abnormal displacement of the tibia on the femur in the sagittal plane. In all positions, the anterior cruciate prevents abnormal forward displacement of the tibia and the posterior cruciate abnormal backward displacement. Normally, in the flexion position a small amount of rotary motion and anteroposterior displacement is present.

It was recorded previously that this investigation paralleled the study recorded by Brantigan and Voshell in 1941. In general, the observations noted in this work are in agreement with those of the aforementioned investigators, however, there is one exception. These workers claim that after division of the tibial collateral ligament no abnormal lateral motion (abduction) of the tibia on the fixed femur occurs, either in extension or flexion. In the study recorded herein abduction rocking of the tibia on the femur was noted in flexion in all intact fresh specimens; the range varies from 14° to 18° when the knee is flexed 90°. This observation has been recorded by Palmer and Abbott and his co-workers. In addition, previous workers have failed to understand the role of the tendon of the popliteus muscle in protecting the knee joint against abnormal rotary forces; this feature has been observed and recorded herein.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abbott, L. C., Saunders, J. B., D. M. Bost, F. C., and Anderson, C. E. Injuries to ligaments of the knee joint. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 26: 503, 1944.
- Allen, H. R. Fractures of the spine of the tibia (discussion). *J.A.M.A.* 77: 857, 1921.
- Bennett, G. E. The use of fascia for the reinforcement of relaxed joints. *Arch. Surg.* 13: 655, 1926.
- . Relaxed knees and torn ligaments and the disability following such an injury. *Proc. Internat. Assembly Inter State Postgrad. Med. A North America* (1930) 6: 351, 1931.
- Bost, J. R. Reconstruction of the internal lateral ligament of the knee. *Texas State M. J.* 20: 381, 1924.
- Bosworth, D. M. Transplantation of the semitendinosus for repair of laceration of medial collateral ligament of the knee. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 34 A: 196, 1952.
- Bosworth, D. M., and Bosworth, B. M. Use of fascia lata to stabilize the knee in cases of rup-

- tured crucial ligaments, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 18 178 1936
- Brantigan O C., and Voshell A. F. The mechanics of the ligaments and menisci of the knee joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 23 44 1941
- Bristow W R. Internal derangement of the knee joint *Am. J Surg* 43 458 1939
- Caan, Paul Über Kreuzbandverletzungen *Med. Klin.* 25 904 1929
- Campbell, W C. Injuries and surgical diseases of joints in *Lewis Practice of Surgery* vol II p 154 Hagerstown, Md., Prior 1930
- Repair of the ligaments of the knee report of new operation for repair of anterior crucial ligament *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 62 964 1936
- Reconstruction of the ligaments of the knee *Am J Surg* 43 413 1939
- Christopher F. Avulsion of the tibial spine by the anterior cruciate ligament *S Clin. North America* 12 185 1932
- Conwell, H. E. Dislocations of the knee joint *Am. J Surg* 43 492 1939
- Conwell, H. E., and Alldredge, R. H. Complete dislocations of the knee joint a report of 7 cases with end results *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 64 94 1937
- Costa Alberto Arrancomiento de la espina de la tibia en la insercion del ligamento cruzado anterior *BoL Soc. cir Chile* 5 285 1927
- Cotton F J., and Morrison G M. Artificial ligaments at knee a technique *New England J Med.* 210 1386 1934
- Courty Fracture de l'épave du tibia Arthrotomie Extraction du fragment fracture *Bull. et mém Soc nat chir* 50 1075 1924
- Cubbins W R. Callahan J J and Scuderi C S Cruciate ligament injuries caused by complete and incomplete dislocations early and late pathology symptoms and method of repair *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 64 218 193
- Rupture of the crucial ligaments *S Clin. North America* 17 381 193
- Cruciate ligaments a résumé of operative attacks and results obtained *Am J Surg* 43 481 1939
- Cubbins W R. Conley A. H., Callahan, J J and Scuderi C S A new method of operating for the repair of ruptured cruciate ligaments of the knee joint *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 54 299 1932
- Darraach William Internal derangements of the knee *Ann Surg* 102 129 1935
- Dickson J A and Lawrence J C The use of fascia lata in the repair of ligaments of the knee *S Clin North America* 17 1451 193
- Duchenne G B Physiology of Motion Philadelphia Lippincott 1949
- Edwards A. H. Operative procedure for the repair of collateral ligaments of the knee *Brit J Surg* 8 266 1921
- Fick R A Handbuch der Anatomie und Mechanik der Gelenke Jena, G Fischer 1910.
- Fisher A G T Internal Degenerations of the Knee Joint New York, Macmillan 1933
- Gallie W E. and LeMesurier A B The repair of injuries to the posterior crucial ligament of the knee-joint *Ann Surg.* 85 592 192
- Goetjes H. Über Verletzungen der Ligamenta cruciata des Kniegelenks *Deutsche Ztschr chir* 123 221 1913
- Groves E. W H. Operation for the repair of the crucial ligaments *Lancet* 2 64 1917
- The crucial ligaments of the knee-joint their function rupture and the operative treatment of the same *Brit J Surg* 7 505 1919-20
- Henderson M S Mechanical derangements of knee joint *S Clin. North America* 17 120, 1937
- Horwitz M T and Davidson A. J Newer concepts in the treatment of injuries to ligaments of the knee joint An evaluation of the Mauck operation, *Surgery* 3 407 1938
- Jones Robert and Smith, S A On rupture of the crucial ligaments of the knee and on fracture of the spine of the tibia, *Brit J Surg* 1 0 1913
- Kreuscher P H Symposium on injuries of knee joint semilunar cartilage derangements *S Clin. North America* 17 315 193.
- Kurlander J J Fracture of the spine of the tibia *J.A.M.A.* 77 855 1921
- Lee H. G. Avulsion fracture of the tibial attachments of the crucial ligaments treatment by operative reduction, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 460 1937
- Leriche, R. and de Girardier J Traitement chirurgical immédiat des entorses du genou avec lesion osseuse radiographiquement visible ou cliniquement decelable *J chir* 34 1 1929
- McMurray T P The operative treatment of ruptured internal lateral ligaments of the knee *Brit J Surg* 6 377 1918-19
- Mauck H P A new operative procedure for instability of the knee *J Bone & Joint Surg* 18 984 1936
- Mayer Leo and Burman, M S Arthroscopy in the diagnosis of meniscal lesions of the knee joint *Ann J Surg* 43 501 1939
- Milch, Henry Injuries to the crucial ligaments, *Arch. Surg* 30 805 1935
- Moorehead, J J Knee joint injuries *S Clin North America* 1 159 1921

- Murphy F G Injuries to the internal and external lateral ligaments of the knee A conservative method of treatment J.A.M.A. 99 1994 1932
- Nicoll, E A Principle of exercise therapy Brit M J 1 747 1943
- Report of Surgeons Conference of Miners Welfare Commission 1947 Redevelopment of muscle function J Bone & Joint Surg 30-B 392 1948
- Pringle J H Avulsion of the spine of the tibia Ann Surg 46 169 1907
- Robson A W M Ruptured crucial ligaments and their repair by operation Ann. Surg 37 716 1903
- Roth P B Fracture of the spine of the tibia, J Bone & Joint Surg 10 509, 1928
- Ryerson, E W The lateral ligaments of the knee, S Clin. North America 17 335 1937
- Saunders J B D M. The knee joint—its functional anatomy and the mechanism of certain injuries California & West. Med. 39 83 1933
- Shands A. R., Jr., Hutchinson J L., and Ziv Louis Derangements of the semilunar cartilages of the knee a clinical and experimental study South. M J 29 1045 1936
- Smillie, I S The quadriceps in relation to recovery from injuries of the knee joint, Physiotherapy 35 53 1949
- Injuries of the knee joint Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1951
- Smith, S A. The diagnosis and treatment of injuries to the crucial ligaments Brit. J Surg 6 116 1918-19
- Steindler A. Mechanics of Normal and Pathological Locomotion in Man, Springfield, Ill. Thomas 1935
- Strickler F P A satisfactory method of repairing crucial ligaments Ann Surg 105 912 1937
- Swett, P P McPherson, S H., and Pike M M Fracture of the tibia into the knee joint Tr New England S Soc. 13 164 1930
- Umansky A. L. The Milich fasciodexis for the reconstruction of the tibial collateral ligament J Bone & Joint Surg 34 A 202 1952
- Valla Jose Rupture of the lateral ligaments of the knee joint, Am. J Surg 43 486 1939

## Affections of the Menisci

### SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE MENISCI

Comprehension of the surgical anatomy and the physiology of the menisci is essential in order that operative procedures on these structures may be performed with precision and furthermore to ensure the patient a knee capable of optimum function. It has been recorded previously that the menisci are important intra-articular structures which have reached the highest level of development in man. Although one must concede that their presence greatly facilitates normal function of the knee joint, clinical experience reveals that their removal does not preclude good function provided that no other alterations of the ligamentous and muscular apparatus of the joint exist. The menisci are crescentic disks triangular in cross section each covering approximately two thirds of the corresponding articular surface of the tibia (Fig. 38). In a measure they compensate for the incongruities of the articular surfaces of the femoral and the tibial condyles. Essentially they comprise dense tightly woven collagen fibers which are arranged more loosely at their extremities. The collagen fibers and their pattern of arrangement provide the menisci with great elasticity which can withstand compression. This feature is most prominent in children and adolescents but decreases in intensity in each successive age period. This provides an explanation for the infrequent occurrence of tears of the menisci in children and adolescents as compared with the frequency of such lesions in older individuals. The

outer border of each meniscus is convex and thick and attached to the inner surface of the fibrous capsule except where the tendon of the popliteus muscle is interposed between the capsule and the lateral meniscus. In addition the outer surface is attached loosely to the borders of the condyles of the tibia by the coronary ligaments which are fibrous projections of the fibrous capsule connecting the peripheries of the menisci with the adjacent margin of the head of the tibia. The inner borders are concave thin and unattached. After the age of 3 all unattached surfaces are devoid of synovialis and are avascular except for a narrow zone adjacent to their line of attachment to the fibrous capsule. The inferior surfaces are flat articulating with the plateau of the tibia; the superior surfaces are concave, articulating with the condyles of the femur.

### MEDIAL MENISCUS AND TIBIAL COLLATERAL LIGAMENT

The anatomic features of the medial meniscus which are of surgical significance are primarily the size the shape the attachments of the meniscus and its relation to the tibial collateral ligament. As previously noted the medial meniscus is larger than the lateral and is often described as a segment of a larger circle. Its posterior segment is wider and thicker than the anterior whose anterior horn often tapers gradually as it approaches its anterior site of fixation. The convex periphery decreases gradually in thickness as the thin free concave margin is approached; this change in thickness is less pronounced in the posterior segment

than in the anterior. The entire circumferential border of the structure is relatively firmly attached to the fibrous capsule of the joint and through the coronary ligaments to the border of the tibia. In addition the posterior horn is anchored to the posterior surface of the head of the tibia immediately in front of the attachment of the posterior cruciate ligament but behind the tibial spine. The anterior horn is attached firmly to the intercondyloid fossa of the tibia, in front of both the attachment of the anterior cruciate ligament and the anterior point of anchorage of the lateral meniscus. The different modes of attachment of the anterior horn are depicted in Figure 41.

Although the general configuration of the medial meniscus is more constant than that of the lateral, numerous variations may be encountered. The most significant one is unusual elongation and thinning of the anterior segment. On rare occasions a discoid cartilage may be observed.

The intimate relationship of the medial meniscus to the tibial collateral ligament explains in a measure the frequency of implication of both structures by a single mechanism. Numerous dissections of this ligament reveal that it consists of a deep and a superficial layer. The deep layer is the smaller of the two and essentially comprises thickened vertical fibers of the joint capsule. It extends from the medial epicondyle of the femur to the articular margin and the medial surface of the shaft of the tibia. It fuses firmly with the periphery of the meniscus; its anterior and posterior margins are continuous with the fibrous capsule.

Of greater surgical significance is the superficial layer of the tibial collateral ligament. It is a flat broad triangular fibrous structure possessing great strength. It overlaps the deeper layer completely and measures approximately 10.4 cm. in length. The superficial stratum of the ligament exhibits two groups of fibers: the long vertical anterior fibers and the short oblique posterior

fibers. Its widest portion is directly over the medial meniscus (Fig. 34). The mode of attachment of this ligament is of special importance. Proximally, it inserts into the femur just below the adductor tubercle and into the medial epicondyle of the femur; distally, the anterior fibers insert into the medial aspect of the shaft of the tibia 4.5 cm. below the articular margin. The fibers continue downward for approximately 2.1 cm. The ligament is not attached to the tibia throughout its entire length. A bursa was found between the upper portion of the vertical fibers and the tibia in 94 per cent of the specimens dissected.

The oblique fibers converge backward toward the joint line and fuse with the periphery of the meniscus. Some of these fibers continue downward and insert in the upper border of the groove of the tendon of the semimembranosus, while others cross the tendon to reach the lower border of the groove; still other fibers are continuous with the anterior vertical fibers of the ligament.

It must be emphasized that the anterior vertical border of the superficial portion of the ligament is free and not adherent to the meniscus; the space between the two structures contains loose areolar tissue and often a bursa. Proximal to the joint line, the deep and the superficial fibers of the ligament blend into one fibrous structure; distal to the joint space the two layers are separated by a projection of the tendon of the semimembranosus. Below this point the inferior medial genicular vessels and nerves pass between the shaft of the tibia and the ligament (Fig. 36). The tendons of the gracilis and the semitendinosus and the expansion of the sartorius cross the distal end of the ligament; between these structures and the ligament is interposed the bursa anserina. In all degrees of flexion some portion of the ligament is taut; this feature allows the medial ligament to control in a large measure abduction, adduction and rotatory movements of the knee joint. Also in flexion the



ligament glides backward approximately 4 mm.

From the above description of the surgical anatomy of the medial meniscus it becomes apparent that the structure is relatively firmly attached to the tibia, the capsule and the deep and the oblique posterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament nevertheless the attachments are such that the meniscus is capable of some forward and backward motion on flexion and extension of the joint. However the amount of movement is less than that exhibited by the lateral meniscus. The limited excursion of the meniscus is a factor making it more vulnerable to injuries produced by abnormal rotatory forces because it is more prone to be caught and crushed by the femoral condyle. Some observers are of the opinion that the narrow meniscus is less apt to be injured than the broad. This is based on the premise that being narrow less rotatory force can be imposed upon it by the femoral condyles than if it were broad.

#### LATERAL MENISCUS AND THE FIBULAR COLLATERAL LIGAMENT

The lateral meniscus exhibits more uniformity than the medial it is nearly circular, forming a large segment of a small circle. Also it covers more of the articular surface of the corresponding plateau of the tibia than does the medial meniscus. The anterior horn is attached to the tibia immediately in front of the intercondyloid eminence of the tibia and behind and slightly lateral to the anterior attachment of the medial meniscus. Its posterior horn inserts into the posterior aspect of the intercondyloid eminence and in front of the posterior attachment of the medial meniscus. In 53 per cent of the specimens studied a strong fasciculus is given off by the posterior cornu. This structure (ligament of Wrisberg) continues upward and medially behind the posterior cruciate ligament to gain insertion into the medial condyle of the femur. 20

per cent of the specimens revealed a similar structure (ligament of Humphry) passing in front of the posterior cruciate ligament (Fig. 40). In addition, the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus is attached to the fascia covering the popliteus muscle which in turn blends with the fibers of the arcuate ligament. Elsewhere the meniscus is free the tendon of the popliteus muscle separates it from the fibrous capsule and the deep fibers of the fibular collateral ligament. The tendon of the popliteus is enveloped in synovial membrane and forms an oblique groove on the periphery of the meniscus. At this point the synovial membrane is in proximity to the meniscus in fact this is the only region in the peripheries of either meniscus that such a relationship is demonstrable. One is likely to encounter more variations of the lateral meniscus than of the medial the incidence of discoid menisci observed in the lateral side of the joint is far greater than that noted in the medial. A common variation is unusual widening of the central portion of the structures as compared with its anterior and posterior segments.

The relationship of the lateral meniscus to the fibular collateral ligament is of particular surgical significance because it allows the meniscus a relatively large range of movement. Dissection of the fibular collateral ligament reveals that it comprises a deep and a superficial portion. This feature has been noted by other workers. The deep component which is the smaller of the two is attached proximally to the lateral epicondyle of the femur and distally to the medial aspect of the upper surface of the head of the fibula and to the styloid process. The tendon of the popliteus with its synovial sheath separates the ligament from the lateral meniscus. Its posterior border blends with the fibers of the fascia covering the popliteus muscles and some of the fibers contribute to the formation of the arcuate ligament. It was recorded previously that

the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus is attached to the upper portion of the arcuate ligament, the popliteal fascia and the fibrous capsule of the joint. The superficial portion (long external ligament) is a stout fibrous cord, it inserts above into the lateral epicondyle of the femur and below into the upper surface of the head of the fibula lateral to the deep fibers. Separation of the deep and the superficial fibers can be achieved readily by sharp dissection. Proximal to the styloid process of the fibula the tendon of the biceps femoris winds around the superficial fibers counterclockwise, occupying a position between the two layers of the fibular collateral ligament. In flexion this ligament is relaxed; hence, it in no way influences abduction, adduction or rotatory movements of the knee joint. This feature is in contradistinction to the controlling influence of the tibial collateral ligament in the movements enumerated. Some portion of the medial ligament is taut in all degrees of flexion; therefore, it effects considerable control on all movements of the joint.

From the above observations, it becomes apparent that the lateral meniscus is capable of considerable forward and backward movement. Complete detachment of the lateral meniscus from the fibular collateral ligament is the most important single feature allowing freedom of motion to the ligament; hence, it is less prone to be subjected to injurious rotatory forces. This is in contradistinction to the less mobile medial meniscus which because of its limited range of movement, is more vulnerable to injury by the same mechanisms. In addition when the tibia is rotated inward with the knee flexed, the popliteus muscle via the arcuate ligament draws the posterior segment of the meniscus backward, thereby preventing the structure from being caught between the condyle of the femur and the plateau of the tibia. Backward displacement of the meniscus is further en-

hanced by the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry.

## ROLE OF MENISCI IN MECHANICS OF THE KNEE JOINT

The importance of the menisci in the over all mechanics of the human knee joint is reflected in their size as compared with those in lower animals. In the study of the mechanics of the knee joint it was pointed out that menisci move forward in extension and backward in flexion. The motion is controlled by the movements of the femoral condyle and occurs between the superior surfaces of the menisci and the condyles of the femur. (Although the menisci move backward and forward on the tibia, together with the tibia they move on the femur in flexion and extension of the knee joint.) It becomes apparent that motion in the sagittal plane (flexion and extension) primarily occurs in the plane between the femoral articular surfaces and the superior surfaces of the menisci. Concurrently with the onset of flexion, the lateral meniscus moves backward, the greatest amount of displacement occurs after 5° to 7° of flexion have been achieved. The average amount of backward displacement in the author's study was 9 mm. It is of interest that during the initial phase of flexion the medial meniscus remains stationary; backward displacement occurs only after 17° to 20° of flexion have been consummated. The average amount of displacement noted was 3 mm, which is considerably less than that of the lateral meniscus. After 70° of flexion no further displacement of the medial meniscus is discernible; beyond this are the posterior segment of the structure is gripped firmly between the posterior flare of the femoral condyle and the tibial plateau. On the other hand, backward displacement of the lateral meniscus continues until full flexion has been achieved. If hyperflexion is continued beyond this point, the posterior segment of

the meniscus tends to slide backward over the posterior flare of the external condyle of the femur, thereby avoiding compression between the condyle of the femur and the articular surface of the tibia. Compression of the posterior segment may occur only in extreme hyperflexion, when the structure together with the corresponding portion of the medial meniscus the posterior capsule and the tendinous origins of the medial and the lateral heads of the gastrocnemius muscle tends to check further flexion. Hyperflexion is checked also by both cruciate ligaments which become very taut, and the bony configuration of the condyles of the femur. It must be understood that the observations made relative to compression of the menisci have been made on knee joints not bearing weight. As will be noted subsequently some compression of the fibrocartilage does occur when the joint is bearing weight or subjected to abnormal stresses which cause compression of the articular cartilage of the femur and the tibia. It may well be that in the living because of the aforementioned feature, the range of motion of both menisci in flexion and extension is less than that described above.

In flexion the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry assist in pulling the meniscus backward and prevent anterior displacement of the structure during abnormal flexion and rotatory movement which would tend to trap the meniscus between the femur and the tibia. All these factors play an important role in making the posterior portion of the lateral meniscus less vulnerable to injury. The medial meniscus does not possess such anatomic safeguards.

In flexion the knee unlocks the fibular collateral ligament is relaxed and the tibial collateral ligament the cruciate ligaments and the capsule are less tense allowing a small amount of abduction adduction and rotation. In rotatory movements the menisci move with the condyles of the femur. The greater range of excursion of the lateral meniscus as compared with that of the

medial is made possible by the wider arc described by the lateral femoral condyle the axis of rotation is near the medial femoral condyle hence the medial condyle must describe a smaller arc than the lateral. In the light of these observations one must conclude that rotatory movements in the knee joint occur in the plane between the articular plateaus of the tibia and the inferior surfaces of the menisci. As pointed out by Smillie the frequency of lesions of the inferior surface of the menisci resulting from abnormal forces acting in the plane between the tibia and the inferior surfaces of the menisci substantiate the aforementioned premise.

As the position of complete extension is approached from one of flexion abduction adduction and rotatory movements decrease progressively in range until no movements exist when full extension is achieved the knee has performed the screw home maneuver and is now locked in extension. Since lateral and rotatory movements are not possible an injury to the meniscus alone cannot occur however it is possible to inflict injury to the menisci if the ligamentous and the osseous elements are disrupted such as a rupture of a collateral ligament or a fracture of the condyles of the tibia.

In complete extension in nonweight bearing joints the menisci fit snugly in their respective grooves in the corresponding femoral condyles of the femur but they are not compressed. Even with hyperextension it is not possible to compress the structures between the condyles of the femur and the tibial plateaus. The structures compressed are the lateral expansions of the infrapatellar fat pad. This observation was recorded by Fisher and has been confirmed by the author in the study of several hundred specimens. If one studies the superior surfaces of the lateral expansions of the fat pad the imprints of the femoral condyle resulting from compression in extension and hyperextension are readily demonstrable. However in weight bearing positions particu-

larly such as standing, some compression of the articular cartilage of the femur and the tibia occurs, this in turn enables the menisci to share in weight bearing, hence, some compression of the fibrocartilage must occur. The mechanism of this function is discussed below.

#### FUNCTIONS OF THE MENISCI

The menisci compensate for the gross incongruity between articular surfaces of the tibia, thereby adding in a small measure to the stability of the knee joint. The attachment of the capsule and the synovialis to their circumferential borders precludes displacement of these structures into the joint; otherwise they would be sucked into the joint and nipped by the articular surfaces.

A very important function of the menisci was noted by MacConaill. In his study on the function of intra-articular fibrocartilage, he proposed that the menisci minimize friction by the formation and the maintenance of a thin, wedge-shaped film of synovia between the opposing articular surfaces. In the case of the menisci in the knee joint, this function is made possible by virtue of the triangular configuration of the structures and by their close relationship to both articular surfaces.

Finally the menisci also assume some weight bearing function. Fairbank has shown that as the result of normal weight bearing or from sudden strains, compression of the articular cartilage occurs. With an increase in compression the menisci are forced centrifugally a force which is resisted by the rising tension in the elastic fibrocartilages; this tension is made possible by the attachments of the ends of the menisci. It becomes apparent that the increase in the circumferential tension in the menisci parallels the increase in joint compression. Inasmuch as this tension resists extrusive forces, the menisci are made to share in some of the weight bearing thereby acting as buffers or shock absorbers and protecting the articular surfaces. The protective nature

of the menisci has been amply demonstrated experimentally by many workers. King (1936) observed the degenerative changes that occurred in the articular hyaline cartilages of dogs after partial or complete meniscectomies. The alterations were roughly proportional to the size of the segment excised, the maximum intensity in the changes was noted in cases with complete meniscectomy. In the human, Fairbank (1948) pointed out that the changes that occur after meniscectomy are ridge formation, narrowing of the joint space and flattening of the femoral condyle. He proposed that these alterations were the result of the loss of the weight bearing function of the meniscus. Although clinical experience would lead one to believe that meniscectomy is an innocuous procedure, it becomes apparent that the knee joint is deprived of a very important constituent when the meniscus is removed, and the articulation is predisposed to osteo-arthritic changes over a long term period.

#### NUTRITION OF MENISCI

It has been stated previously that during the development of the menisci, the structures are infiltrated throughout by a rich mesh of blood vessels. After the third year of life when the child has assumed the upright position, vascularity of the menisci is diminished; only that portion of the fibroelastic cartilages adjacent to the coronary ligaments and the capsules is permeated with blood vessels. The blood vessels come from the capsule and the synovial membrane which is reflected for a short distance over the superior and the inferior surfaces of the menisci close to their peripheral attachment to the capsule. The avascular central and concave portions of menisci are dependent entirely for nutrition upon the synovia which is adequate to provide nourishment for a normal meniscus but inadequate to achieve repair of lesions in the avascular zones. This feature has been sub-



FIG 80 (*Left*)  
Tear through the  
avascular zone of a  
medial meniscus  
this type of lesion  
never heals.



FIG 81 (*Right*)  
Tear through pe  
ripheral zone of a  
medial meniscus  
healing by fibrous  
tissue has occurred  
This is an extremely  
rare lesion

FIG. 82 (*Bottom*) (A *Left*) Longitudinal  
tear of the posterior segment extending to its  
tibial attachment a frustrated attempt to re-  
pair the defect is discernible (B, *Bottom*)  
Inferior view of the same specimen. Observe  
the maceration of the inferior surface.



stantiated many times experimentally in animals and clinically in humans

### BEHAVIOR OF TORN MENISCI

The work of King (1936) conducted on dogs established conclusively the reparative response of lesions in different portions of the menisci. The conclusions derived from this investigation are of special significance because they are applicable in every respect to the lesions encountered in the menisci of man. This has been confirmed clinically by many observers, including the author. The experiments indicated four conclusions:

1. Tears which are limited to the semilunar cartilage probably never heal.

2. A torn meniscus can be healed by connective tissue if the tear communicates with the synovial membrane laterally.

3. A complete transverse or oblique tear results in some separation of the fragments, but the intervening space fills in with connective tissue arising from the synovial membrane. This connective tissue is quite firm in 3 weeks, which suggests the length of time necessary for complete fixation in these cases.

4. If the meniscus is partially torn from its peripheral attachment it heals in normal anatomic position without difficulty.

The clinical import of the first conclusion becomes apparent when one realizes that the majority of lesions in man occur within the avascular portions of the meniscus at a distance from its peripheral attachment (Fig. 80). Longitudinal tears through the peripheral zone do occur, but clinical investigation reveals that they are exceedingly rare, also that nature attempts to heal lesions in this region can be proved by study of some of the specimens excised in toto at operation (Fig. 81).

The second conclusion has little practical significance because tears which communicate with the synovial membrane are encountered rarely. Transverse or oblique tears implicating the convex periphery while the remaining portion of the meniscus remains intact have not been encountered. It must be conceded that on occasion longi-



FIG. 83. Old complete transverse tear which has healed by fibrous tissue (constricted portion). Theoretically, healing has been achieved by extension of connective tissue from the periphery. This lesion is extremely rare. (Left, superior surface, right, inferior surface.)

tudinal tears involving the posterior segment may extend to the attachment of the synovial membrane. In these instances a frustrated attempt to repair the defect may be discernible (Fig. 82).

From a clinical viewpoint, the third conclusion indicates the period of time (3 weeks) that the limb should be immobilized and spared weight bearing if healing of a complete transverse tear is to be achieved. In the human complete transverse tears with separation do occur, but their incidence is very small when compared with the frequency of incomplete transverse and oblique tears extending from the thin concave margin for varying distances into the avascular substance of the meniscus. Cases of complete transverse tears extending laterally to the synovial membrane which have healed by fibrous tissue have been recorded. The author has encountered one case. It was interesting to note the configuration of the healed meniscus at the site of repair: the meniscus was constricted, narrowed and rounded as though a rubber band had been placed tightly around it (Fig. 83).

King's fourth conclusion provides a scientific basis for the conservative management

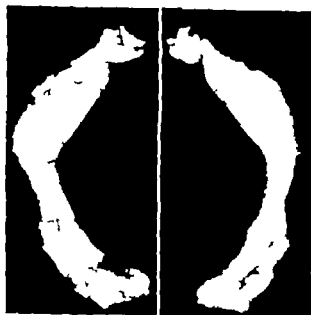


FIG. 84 Regenerated anterior segment of a medial meniscus. The patient had the first meniscectomy 15 years prior to the second. Observe the difference in the breadth of the anterior and the posterior segments. Microscopic examination revealed that the anterior half comprised dense fibrous tissue (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface)

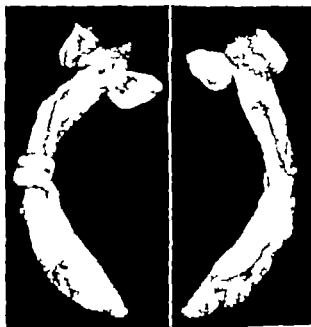


FIG. 85 Regenerated medial meniscus. The inferior surface (*left*) shows two pedunculated portions of the meniscus which have been displaced beneath the structure (*Right*) The superior surface shows a longitudinal tear in the posterior segment and maceration of the posterior attachment

of a specific group of tears of the meniscus. Experimentally and clinically it can be demonstrated that peripheral detachments of the meniscus may heal in normal anatomic positions. The mobility of the lateral meniscus renders this structure more vulnerable to this type of tear than its medial counterpart in which the lesion is encountered rarely. In order to assure normal restoration of the anatomy following partial tearing of the peripheral attachment of a meniscus the limb must be immobilized for a sufficient period of time to allow adequate healing and during this period no weight bearing must be permitted. Cases are encountered in which the interval between the convex margin of the meniscus and its peripheral site of attachment is bridged by elongated fibrous tissue making it apparent that inadequate immobilization failed to permit firm adherence of the fibrocartilage to the capsular tissues. In other instances this same factor is responsible for complete failure of any healing at the site of peripheral tearing the convex border of the meniscus is smooth free and hypermobile. It is exceedingly difficult to make a positive diagnosis of a tear at the site of peripheral attachment of a meniscus in fact it is impossible to distinguish this lesion from a longitudinal tear of the posterior segment. It becomes obvious that if conservative management is selected as the method of choice the selection is made with the mental reservation that the diagnosis of a peripheral tear may or may not be correct.

#### REGENERATION OF MENISCI

It is now accepted generally that following partial excision or total extirpation of a meniscus replacement of the structure occurs by ingrowth of connective tissue from the synovial membrane. The process by which this is accomplished parallels in every respect that observed in experimental animals. Following excision of an entire meniscus grossly the new structure resembles closely the normal meniscus in configuration the peculiarities of the medial

and the lateral meniscus are clearly distinguishable in the reproduction. Microscopically the false meniscus is readily discernible from the normal fibrocartilage. It comprises densely packed fibrous tissue, the absence of cartilage cells is a conspicuous feature.

As Smillie pointed out, the regenerated meniscus exhibits some characteristic features which set it aside from the normal. Its surface is smooth, glistening and of a whiter color than the normal structure. It tends to be elongated, thin and narrow and does not have the sharp, delineated margins of the triangular normal fibrocartilage. Instead its concave margin is thin and may be irregular in outline. Also, the structure does not exhibit the mobility noted in the normal meniscus, this is explained by the firm attachment of its convex border to the joint capsule.

The above features of a regenerated meniscus are even more conspicuous when only the anterior portion of normal fibrocartilage has been removed and replaced by fibrous tissue (Fig. 84). One readily notes the contrast in color in the two segments—the new structure is thinner and lacks the uniformity of the normal segment. The site of fusion between the two is often narrow and limited to the peripheral border where adequate blood supply is present.

The experimental work of King disclosed that following extirpation of the menisci degenerative changes ensued in the articular cartilage of the femur and the tibia. The intensity of the alterations was roughly proportional to the size of the segment excised, being greatest in the instances in which total meniscectomy was done. This observation leads one to conclude that one of the functions of the menisci is to protect the articular surfaces from undue stresses. Fairbank noted similar changes in the knee joint of humans following meniscectomy. It becomes apparent that the replica does not afford the same protection to a knee joint as the normal meniscus (Figs. 85, 86, 87).



FIG. 86 Regenerated medial meniscus (superior surface). Observe a longitudinal tear in the posterior horn. The pedunculated tag projected at the periphery behind the posterior margin of the tibial collateral ligament.

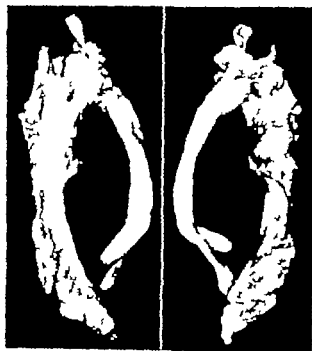


FIG. 87 Regenerated medial meniscus. Note the long longitudinal tear extending into both the anterior and the posterior segments. (Left, inferior surface; right, superior surface).



## TRAUMATIC LESIONS OF THE MENISCI

### MECHANISM

Numerous theories have been set forth in an attempt to explain the mechanism which produces the varied lesions of the menisci found at operation. The intricate mechanics and the many factors which must be considered in the analysis of the normal and the abnormal movements of the knee joint are responsible for the lack of agreement between many of the premises proposed. However there are some points which are acceptable to most observers. It has been recorded previously that it is impossible to injure only the fibrocartilages when the knee is locked in the position of extension.

If the forces are of sufficient violence produce lesions of the menisci with the extended, the lesions are always in connection with rupture of one of the collateral ligaments or the opposite tibial collateral. Lateral and rotatory motions at the knee are only possible in flexion. Of special importance is the relation of the menisci to the tibial condyles and of the femoral and tibial condyles when flexion or extension is superimposed upon the knee joint in internal or external rotation. One can demonstrate the following points readily in fresh specimens. With the lower leg in internal or external rotation if flexion and extension are performed one notes the normal relationship of the articular faces of the femoral condyles to the

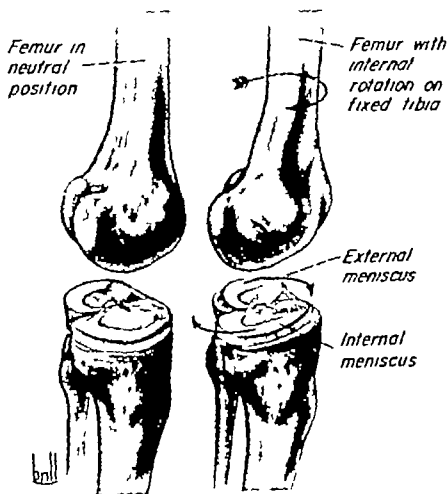


FIG. 88. During rotation of the femur on the fixed tibia the medial femoral condyle sweeps the internal meniscus backward and inward.

the tibia is altered, resulting in considerable incongruity. The extent of the anteroposterior motion of the menisci is appreciably lessened, the fibrocartilages remain fixed to the tibia and move with it on the femoral condyles. The femoral condyles tend to sweep the menisci toward the periphery, creating extrusive forces. It becomes obvious that if flexion and extension are added while the knee is held in internal or external rotation the menisci are subjected to abnormal forces which make them vulnerable to injury. In summation the factors responsible for injury to the menisci are flexion rotation, weight bearing and above all, failure to restore normal congruity between the femoral and the tibial condyles during flexion and extension. Study of dissected fresh knee joints indicates that lesions of the menisci are produced by the mechanism about to be described, this mechanism affords an explanation, partially on theoretical grounds, for the frequent implication of the posterior segments

#### MECHANISM OF INTERNAL ROTATION OF FEMUR (TIBIA FIXED AND KNEE FLEXED)

With the knee flexed and the tibia fixed, when the femur is rotated internally the medial condyle sweeps the internal meniscus as a whole backward and slightly inward but the posterior segment (that portion between the posterior oblique fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the attachment of the posterior horn) is carried directly backward or centrifugally (Fig 88). This act is resisted by the capsular, the anterior and the posterior bony attachments of the meniscus its fusion to the posterior oblique fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and by the rising tension in the stretched and elastic fibrocartilage. This tension is greatest in the posterior segment between its attachment to the tibial collateral ligament and its posterior attachment the circumferential tension in this sector rises rapidly. Because of the incongruity between the femoral and the tibial condyles, espe-

cially in flexion and rotation of the joint, the posterior flare of the medial condyle is not capable of maintaining even pressure on the displaced and stretched posterior segment. Hence as it sweeps inward the condyle releases the pressure from the center of the posterior segment, which, being under severe circumferential tension, snaps into the interior of the posterior compartment of the joint, if at this point the knee is extended, the segment is crushed between the femoral condyle and the tibial plateau or torn from its peripheral attachment.

During this maneuver the lateral meniscus centrifugally and forward. Because of the mobility of the lateral fibrocartilage and because of the wide arc that the femoral condyle describes in executing internal rotation, the meniscus is carried forward an appreciable distance, so that tension in any portion of the structure is never equal to that in the posterior segment of its medial counterpart. Instead severe traction is made on its posterior capsular attachment, pulling the posterior segment into the posterior compartment of the joint, if the joint is extended suddenly the segment may be trapped between the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia. The relative infrequency of this lesion as compared with lesions of the posterior segment of the medial meniscus can be explained by the freedom of movement that the lateral fibrocartilage possesses and also by virtue of its attachment posteriorly to the popliteus fascia and the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry, which act as checkreins to forward displacement and tend to pull the structure posteriorly before it can be trapped.

This same mechanism may produce transverse tears (partial or complete) of the meniscus. Internal rotation of the femoral condyles tends to stretch the relatively fixed fibrocartilage. This act places the greatest strain on the concave margin of the meniscus hence a transverse tear may result. Inasmuch as the lateral meniscus is a large

## TRAUMATIC LESIONS OF THE MENISCI

### MECHANISM

Numerous theories have been set forth in an attempt to explain the mechanism which produces the varied lesions of the menisci found at operation. The intricate mechanics and the many factors which must be considered in the analysis of the normal and the abnormal movements of the knee joint are responsible for the lack of agreement between many of the premises proposed. However there are some points which are acceptable to most observers. It has been recorded previously that it is impossible to injure only the fibrocartilages when the knee is locked in the position of extension

If the forces are of sufficient violence to produce lesions of the menisci with extension, the lesions are always in connection with rupture of one of the collateral ligaments or the opposite tibial collateral ligament. Lateral and rotatory motions at the knee are only possible in flexion. Of special importance is the relation of the menisci to the tibial condyles and of the femoral condyles when flexion or extension is superimposed upon the knee joint. Internal or external rotation of the femur can be demonstrated by the following points relative to fresh specimens. With the lower extremity in internal or external rotation, flexion and extension are performed one by one. The normal relationship of the articular faces of the femoral condyles to

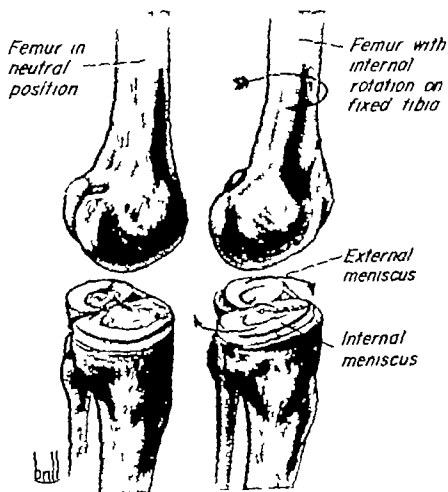


FIG. 88. During rotation of the femur on the fixed tibia the medial femoral condyle sweeps the internal meniscus backward and inward the posterior segment is carried backward and centrifugally

the tibia is altered, resulting in considerable incongruity. The extent of the anteroposterior motion of the menisci is appreciably lessened, the fibrocartilages remain fixed to the tibia and move with it on the femoral condyles. The femoral condyles tend to sweep the menisci toward the periphery, creating extrusive forces. It becomes obvious that if flexion and extension are added while the knee is held in internal or external rotation the menisci are subjected to abnormal forces which make them vulnerable to injury. In summation the factors responsible for injury to the menisci are flexion rotation, weight bearing and above all failure to restore normal congruity between the femoral and the tibial condyles during flexion and extension. Study of dissected fresh knee joints indicates that lesions of the menisci are produced by the mechanism about to be described, partially mechanism affords an explanation, partially on theoretical grounds, for the frequent implication of the posterior segments

#### MECHANISM OF INTERNAL ROTATION OF FEMUR (TIBIA FIXED AND KNEE FLEXED)

With the knee flexed and the tibia fixed, when the femur is rotated internally the medial condyle sweeps the internal meniscus as a whole backward and slightly inward but the posterior segment (that portion between the posterior oblique fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the attachment of the posterior horn) is carried directly backward or centrifugally (Fig 88). This act is resisted by the capsular, the anterior and the posterior bony attachments of the meniscus its fusion to the posterior oblique fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and by the rising tension in the stretched and elastic fibrocartilage. This tension is greatest in the posterior segment between its attachment to the tibial collateral ligament and its posterior attachment. Circumferential tension in this sector rises rapidly. Because of the incongruity between the femoral and the tibial condyles, espe-

cially in flexion and rotation of the joint, the posterior flare of the medial condyle is not capable of maintaining even pressure on the displaced and stretched posterior segment. Hence as it sweeps inward the condyle releases the pressure from the center of the posterior segment, which, being under severe circumferential tension, snaps into the interior of the posterior compartment of the joint. If at this point the knee is extended, the segment is crushed between the femoral condyle and the tibial plateau or torn from its peripheral attachment.

During this maneuver the lateral femoral condyle sweeps the lateral meniscus centrifugally and forward. Because of the mobility of the lateral fibrocartilage and because of the wide arc that the femoral condyle describes in executing internal rotation, the meniscus is carried forward an appreciable distance, so that tension in any portion of the structure is never equal to that in the posterior segment of its medial counterpart. Instead, severe traction is made on its posterior capsular attachment, pulling the posterior segment into the posterior compartment of the joint, if the joint is extended suddenly the segment may be trapped between the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia. The relative infrequency of this lesion as compared with lesions of the posterior segment of the medial meniscus can be explained by the freedom of movement that the lateral fibrocartilage possesses and also by virtue of its attachment posteriorly to the popliteus fascia and the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry, which act as checkreins to forward displacement and tend to pull the structure posteriorly before it can be trapped.

This same mechanism may produce transverse tears (partial or complete) of the meniscus. Internal rotation of the femoral condyles tends to stretch the relatively fixed fibrocartilage. This act places the greatest strain on the concave margin of the meniscus hence, a transverse tear may result. Inasmuch as the lateral meniscus is a large

segment of a small circle its concave margin is subjected to greater tearing forces than the medial meniscus which is a small segment of a large circle this explains the higher incidence of transverse tears in the lateral structure

#### MECHANISM OF EXTERNAL ROTATION OF THE FEMUR (TIBIA FIXED AND KNEE FLEXED)

With the knee flexed and the tibia fixed when the femur is forcibly rotated externally the opposite of the mechanism described above is produced This mechanism is more apt to cause peripheral tears of the posterior segment of the medial meniscus and transverse tears of the lateral meniscus Also, the recoil mechanism is less prone to inflict injuries to the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus because it is resisted by the action of the popliteus muscle and the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry

From the descriptions of the aforementioned mechanisms it becomes apparent that the posterior segments of the fibrocartilages are implicated most frequently and theoretically a longitudinal tear is the most common lesion to be expected This is substantiated by clinical observations The length, the depth and the position of the initial tear are variable and depend on the position of the posterior segment in relation to the femoral and the tibial condyles at the time extension is superimposed also it depends upon the severity of the force producing the lesion In addition one can readily conceive how pathologic processes at the periphery of the convex border of the meniscus may influence the frequency and the type of lesion such disorders as cysts or bursae causing fixation of the fibrocartilages tend to restrict their freedom of movement and render them more vulnerable to trappings Forces of minor intensities may produce incomplete longitudinal tears of the posterior segments or may core their inferior surfaces forces of greater intensities may produce complete tears, some of which may extend far ante-

riorly and produce the so-called bucket handle lesions, which cause true locking of the joint if the medial segment is displaced to the inner side of the corresponding femoral condyle In cases of lesions limited to the posterior segments a reversal of the recoil mechanism described above may force the structure into its normal anatomic position after trapping so that true locking of the joint does not occur

#### VARIETIES OF TRAUMATIC LESIONS OF MENISCI

From a survey of the pathologic specimens removed at operation and correlation of the observation noted with the mechanism of production of the different lesions previously described the numerous varieties of the lesions encountered can be placed in the following categories (1) longitudinal tears (2) transverse tears and oblique tears, (3) combined lesions (4) cysts of the menisci (5) lesions of discoid menisci and (6) lesions of both menisci (Tables 3 4 and 5)

TABLE 3 MENISCECTOMIES

Medial meniscus (uncomplicated)	272
Medial meniscus (complicated)	42
Lateral meniscus (uncomplicated)	127
Lateral meniscus (complicated)	66
Total	507
Male	465 (91.8%)
Female	42 (8.2%)
Cystic degeneration	48
Congenital discoid menisci	18
Regenerated menisci	13
Medial	10
Lateral	3
Normal menisci	29
Medial	23
Lateral	6
Of 358 cases studied for presence or absence of locking	
Locking occurred at the original injury in	19
Subsequent locking occurred in	26%
No history of locking in	55%

TABLE 4 CYSTS OF MENISCI

Lateral meniscus	40
Medial meniscus	8
Total	48
Male	34
Female	14
Age	17 to 58 years
Average age	26.5 years
Specific history of trauma	
Direct trauma to knee	26%
Twist of knee	22%
No history of specific trauma	52%

Based on 507 meniscectomies

TABLE 5 DISCOID MENISCI

Primary type	10
Intermediate type	3
Infantile type	5
Total	18
Lateral	17
Medial	1
Ages	6 to 43 years
Right side	10
Left side	8

Note: Six of these structures appeared normal. However, 2 of the 6 exhibited hypermobility. 2 other cases were detached completely.

## LONGITUDINAL TEARS

**Tears Involving Posterior Segment.** These lesions are observed most frequently in the posterior segment of the medial meniscus. They may be incomplete or complete, the latter penetrating the entire thickness of the fibrocartilage (Fig. 89). They may or may not extend beyond the convex periphery. Incomplete tears are encountered more frequently on the inferior than on the superior surface. Some specimens may exhibit numerous parallel incomplete tears on the inferior surface indicating that the structure was repeatedly crushed between the femoral and the tibial condyles (Fig. 90). Single tears limited to the posterior segment are not capable of producing true

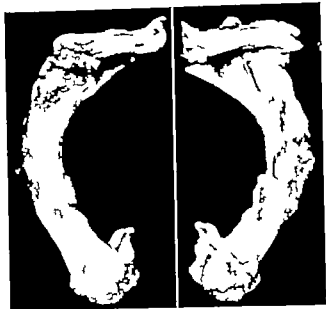


FIG. 89 Note the numerous longitudinal incomplete, ribbonlike tears on the inferior surface of the posterior segment. This is evidence of repeated trappings of the posterior horn (Left: superior surface, right: inferior surface, medial meniscus).



FIG. 90 Observe the complete longitudinal tear of the posterior segment and multiple scorings of its inferior surface (Left: inferior surface, right: superior surface, medial meniscus).



FIG 91 Observe the pronounced hypertrophy of the inner portion of the longitudinal tear in the posterior segment. (Left superior surface right inferior surface medial meniscus)

king of the joint but they do give rise to feeling of instability and incidents of giving way or buckling of the knee joint particularly when the patient is walking on even ground. In addition single lesions of this type predispose to repeated incidents of trapping of the posterior segment hence producing multiple tears. Not infrequently pronounced hypertrophy of the inner portion of the tear is demonstrable (Fig 91). This increase in size is an added factor making the posterior segment more vulnerable to recurrent trappings. Varying alterations may be discernible in the ribbonlike strands of tissue comprising the multiple tears. Some exhibit evidence of superimposed lon-

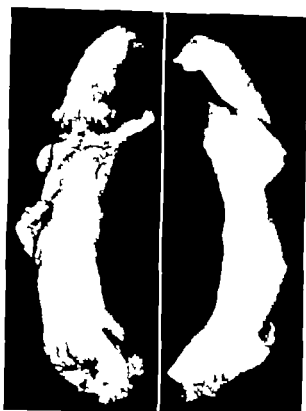


FIG 92 The inner portion of the tear has twisted upon itself and lies on the superior surface of the posterior segment. (Left inferior surface right superior surface medial meniscus)



FIG 93 The inner portion of the longitudinal tear has been divided transversely note that the ends are bulbous and smooth (Left inferior surface right superior surface medial meniscus)



FIG 94 No tear is noted in the posterior segment its peripheral attachment was stretched severely, allowing the segment to be displaced into the center of the joint. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface, medial meniscus)

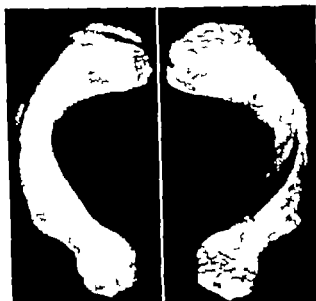


FIG 95 Note the small incomplete longitudinal tear at the peripheral attachment of the posterior segment. (*Left* inferior surface *right* superior surface medial meniscus)



FIG 96 Oblique tear through posterior segment of a medial meniscus, the surfaces oppose one another like the blades of scissors. (*Left* superior surface, *right* inferior surface)

gitudinal tears, others are twisted in their longitudinal axis, and still others are thinned, while some may be hypertrophied (Fig 92). Occasionally the longitudinal strips are divided transversely, and the severed ends may become smooth, rounded and even bulbous in shape (Fig 93). Posterior segments showing evidence of recurrent trappings invariably reveal advanced maceration on their inferior surfaces. This is explained readily when one visualizes the fibrocartilage caught between the femoral and the tibial condyles being ground on the tibial plateau by the rotating force of the femur to which is added the downward thrust of weight bearing. In some specimens it is interesting to note the extensive complications on the inferior surface as compared with the superior surface of the fibrocartilage indicating that the structure moves with the femur on the tibia when the lesions occur.

Longitudinal tears or stretching of the



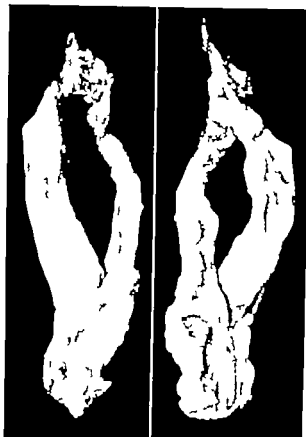


FIG 97 (*Left*) Medial meniscus, inferior surface. Old longitudinal tear of the posterior segment with fresh extension into the anterior segment resulting in locking of the joint. Note the small transverse tear in the central portion.

FIG 98 (*Right center*) Extensive longitudinal tear close to concave margin. Observe that the line of cleavage is slightly oblique. This is a recent extension of an old tear; it extends beyond the tibial collateral ligament. This lesion did not produce true mechanical locking (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface medial meniscus)



FIG 99 Longitudinal tear traverses the posterior horn and extends far into the anterior horn. Posterior segments exhibit evidence of repeated trappings. (*Left* inferior surface *right* superior surface medial meniscus)



peripheral attachments of the posterior segment are a concomitant finding of longitudinal tears in its substance per se. Occasionally the lesions occur without a longitudinal tear in the fibrocartilage. These lesions may be of sufficient severity to allow the posterior segment to be displaced into the center of the joint. Generally they occur more frequently on the lateral side but may occur on the medial (Fig 94).

Lesions limited to the peripheral attachments are relatively rare. One erroneously may interpret a longitudinal tear of the pos

terior segment close to its convex periphery as a tear in the peripheral attachment (Fig 95) The tear may traverse an oblique plane, the resulting surfaces opposing one another like the blades of scissors The tear on the superior surface may be close to the periphery of the meniscus and in this position may escape detection The tear on the inferior surface is usually near the center of the posterior segment (Fig 96) Traction on the ends of the fibrocartilage readily visualizes this lesion This type of lesion is produced by the grinding rotatory action of the femur on the head of the tibia

In two instances the posterior horn was found displaced into the center of the joint. In each case a small strip of the convex periphery of the fibrocartilage still retained its attachment to the capsule and to the posterior nonarticulating surface of the tibia

Extensive longitudinal tears may be responsible for mechanical locking when the central portion of the meniscus is displaced into the intercondylar notch in proximity to the cruciate ligaments (bucket handle tears) The lesion may be an extension of an old tear of the posterior segment or it may be the result of a single injury (Fig 97) The position of the initial fracture may vary it may be near the center of the fibrocartilage or close to the convex or the concave margins (Fig 98) Generally, the line of cleavage is not in the vertical plane but is in a slightly oblique plane. It extends for varying distances anterior to the collateral ligament of the affected side In some instances the tear traverses the attachments of the anterior or the posterior cornu (Fig 99) As Smillie points out, locking occurs only when the tear with its central portion displaced into the interior of the joint, extends beyond the collateral ligament for a sufficient distance so that its anterior limit acts as a mechanical block to extension of the femur (Fig 97) If the tear runs far into the anterior segment locking will not occur because the femur can be extended readily (Fig 98) Not infrequently, exten-

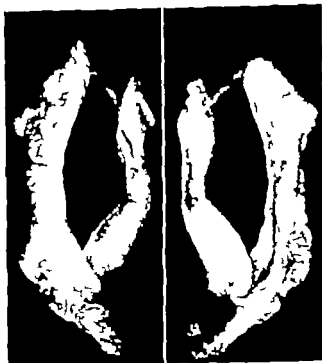


FIG 100 Old complete longitudinal tear, medial meniscus. The central portion was fixed in the region of the intercondylar notch no incidence of true locking occurred in this case. (Left, superior surface, right, inferior surface)

sive bucket handle tears are encountered in which the central portion is fixed to the structures in the intercondylar notch These patients present symptoms of internal derangement of the joint, but true mechanical locking does not occur (Fig 100) Once a long longitudinal tear is produced, both the central and the peripheral portions are vulnerable to repeated trappings which may result in a bizarre combination of tears Numerous alterations may occur in both portions but more in the central dislocated segment. If it remains in a fixed position in the intercondylar notch hypertrophy of the entire portion may occur On the other hand, if the central portion is caught repeatedly between the articular surfaces it may be divided transversely or longitudinally In cases of transverse division of the central portion, the ends may become hypertrophied and even bulbous in nature or, as the result of friction they may become thin and narrow and in some instances may disap-



FIG 101 Old complete longitudinal tear. The peripheral portion has been rotated on its longitudinal axis and has caused a palpable swelling on the medial aspect of the knee joint. Note the multiple longitudinal tears on the inferior aspect of the fibrocartilage. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface)



FIG 102 Old longitudinal tear with superimposed recent extension into the anterior segment. The tear splits the fibrocartilage obliquely. Observe the small transverse tear on the concave margin of the central portion. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface medial meniscus)



FIG 103 Extensive longitudinal tear extending far into the anterior segment. The peripheral segment together with the central segment, was found displaced into the center of the joint. Observe that both segments exhibit small transverse tears. The inferior surface is scored severely. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface medial meniscus)

pear completely. Generally the severity of the lesions on the inferior surface of the meniscus are far more pronounced than those on the superior surface. Both peripheral and central portions may exhibit multiple incomplete and complete superimposed longitudinal tears together with complete or incomplete transverse tears. As a rule the central portion is affected more severely. Pedunculated tabs resulting from transverse division of segments of a longitudinal tear do not cause mechanical locking but they are responsible for buckling or incidences of giving way of the knee joint (Figs 101-104).

**Tear Involving the Anterior Segment.** Isolated lesions of the anterior segment are rare when compared with the high incidence encountered in the posterior segment. They implicate the lateral meniscus more frequently than the medial, particularly if the natural free excursion of the lateral structure is restricted by some pathologic proc-



FIG 104 Multiple longitudinal tears. The largest tear was the original lesion, the central portion has undergone hyperthrophy and exhibits two superimposed smaller and more recent longitudinal tears. A detached portion of one of the strips of cartilage was found lying in the intercondylar notch. The central portion was fixed to the structures in the notch hence no true mechanical locking occurred in this instance. (*Left*, superior surface; *right*, inferior surface)

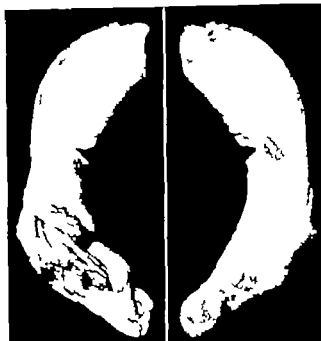


FIG 105 The inferior surface of the anterior segment shows numerous incomplete longitudinal tears; there is also an incomplete transverse tear of the concave margin. In this instance the anterior horn was detached completely from its bony attachment. (*Left*, inferior surface; *right*, superior surface)



FIG 106 Both the anterior and the posterior segments exhibit evidence of repeated trappings. An incomplete oblique split is discernible in the inferior surface of the posterior segment.

ness at its periphery such as cysts or adhesions. Surface tears of both the anterior and the posterior segments of the lateral meniscus are common concomitant lesions of cystic degeneration of the structure. An other factor which renders the anterior segment of the lateral fibrocartilage more susceptible to trauma than its medial counterpart is its anatomic position, lying in a plane slightly posterior to that of the anterior segment. The author has encountered two cases in which the anterior horn of the medial structure was torn completely from its capsular and tibial attachments and displaced into the intercondylar notch. In one of these cases the fragmented anterior horn had become attached to the anterior cruciate ligament. In another case the anterior segment exhibited evidence of repeated trap-



FIG 107 Incomplete transverse tear of lateral meniscus. Usually this lesion is encountered at the junction of the anterior and the medial thirds. (Left superior surface right inferior surface)



FIG 108 Usual location of a transverse tear in the medial fibrocartilage it occurs in its posterior third (Left superior surface right inferior surface)

pings the inferior surface showed numerous incomplete parallel longitudinal tears. This specimen was of further interest because the anterior segment was torn completely from the capsule and the coronary ligaments and a small incomplete transverse tear was demonstrable at the center of its concave border the superior surface of the segment was uninjured (Fig 105). Another medial fibrocartilage disclosed findings consistent with repeated injuries to both surfaces of the anterior and the posterior segments. The anterior segment revealed numerous incomplete longitudinal tears of the superior surface with pronounced hypertrophy of the affected region the inferior surface was severely macerated. An oblique incomplete split of the posterior segment was discernible on its inferior surface (Fig 106). It becomes apparent that lesions of the anterior segments generally are produced either by a shearing force which tends to tear the anterior cornu from its anchorage or by a compression force (with an added rotatory element) which is responsible for the parallel longitudinal incomplete tears. It was recorded previously

that, with the tibia fixed and the knee flexed if the femur is rotated internally the medial meniscus is displaced backward the medial femoral condyle hence the anterior segment may be pulled from its attachments or its attachments may be stretched sufficiently to allow inward placement of the anterior segment and extension of the joint at this point may displace the anterior segment between the articular surfaces of the femoral and the tibial condyles. In this same mechanism the femoral condyle sweeps the lateral meniscus backward making marked traction on the attachment of its anterior cornu. This force is greater by far than that made on the anterior segment of the medial structure by the medial condyle in a backward direction (Fig 88). External rotation of the femur reverses the above mechanism nevertheless the traction force made by the external condyle on the attachment of the anterior segment in a backward direction is great

than that made by the medial condyle on the medial anterior segment in an anterior direction. The factors responsible for the difference in the intensity of the traction forces are the wider arc that the lateral condyle makes in rotation, as compared with that of the medial and the posterior location of the anterior segment of the lateral meniscus in relation to the medial structure. Both factors render the lateral anterior portion of the fibrocartilage more vulnerable to injury than the medial. This affords an explanation for the higher incidence of lesions in the lateral structure.

#### TRANSVERSE OR OBLIQUE TEARS

These lesions are most frequently encountered in the lateral meniscus, they may be incomplete or complete, the latter being extremely rare. In the lateral meniscus they are situated usually at the junction of the anterior and the middle thirds, while in the medial fibrocartilage they are situated in the posterior third (Figs 107 and 108). The latter must be distinguished from longitudinal tears of the posterior segment, in which the distal end of the central segment has been worn away and resembles a transverse tear, also they never are so extensive as those observed in the lateral fibrocartilage. The mechanism producing the two lesions differs.

As previously stated, forces which tend to spread the anterior and the posterior attachments of the menisci stretch the thin concave borders thereby producing a transverse tear. Inasmuch as the lateral meniscus is a large segment of a small circle its concave margin is subjected to greater stresses than the medial meniscus which is a small segment of a large circle. Usually the tear begins at the concave margin and curves gently backward and toward the convex border as far as the outer third of the breadth of the cartilage; occasionally, it may traverse the peripheral third but only rarely does it divide the meniscus completely (Fig 107).



FIG 109 Observe that the margins of the transverse tear overlap, resembling the blades of scissors (*Left* superior surface, *right* inferior surface, lateral meniscus)

The frequent association of transverse tears with cystic degeneration of the lateral cartilage leads one to believe that a close relationship must exist between the two lesions. It is reasonable to assume that cystic alterations at the periphery of the meniscus restrict its natural excursion, thereby predisposing it to injury. Many of the old transverse tears exhibit a horizontal division of the anterior margin into which the posterior margin fits. According to Smillie the horizontal cleavage may result from the hinge action of the meniscus at the site of the tear. This motion forces the convex posterior margin to impinge against the concave anterior margin. As the result of numerous repetitions of this motion, a horizontal split is formed in the anterior margin, the cleavage may traverse the entire breadth of the meniscus, so that the posterior margin of the tear may come to lie at the joint line, forming a distinct swelling in this region. Occasionally the anterior and the posterior margins overlap and slide by one another without the formation of a horizontal cleavage; in this they closely resemble blades of scissors (Fig 109). Transverse tears in the anterior aspect of the meniscus may be associated lesions of single or multiple longitudinal tears in the posterior segment (Fig 110).



FIG 107 Incomplete transverse tear of lateral meniscus. Usually this lesion is encountered at the junction of the anterior and the medial thirds. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface)

pings, the inferior surface showed numerous incomplete parallel longitudinal tears. This specimen was of further interest because the anterior segment was torn completely from the capsule and the coronary ligaments and a small incomplete transverse tear was demonstrable at the center of its concave border the superior surface of the segment was uninjured (Fig 105). Another medial fibrocartilage disclosed findings consistent with repeated injuries to both surfaces of the anterior and the posterior segments. The anterior segment revealed numerous incomplete longitudinal tears of the superior surface with pronounced hypertrophy of the affected region the inferior surface was severely macerated. An oblique incomplete split of the posterior segment was discernible on its inferior surface (Fig. 106). It becomes apparent that lesions of the anterior segments generally are produced either by a shearing force which tends to tear the anterior cornu from its anchorage or by a compression force (with an added rotatory element) which is responsible for the parallel longitudinal incomplete tears. It was recorded previously



FIG 108 Usual location of a transverse tear in the medial fibrocartilage. It occurs in its posterior third. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface)

that with the tibia fixed and the knee flexed if the femur is rotated internally the medial meniscus is displaced backward by the medial femoral condyle hence the anterior segment may be pulled from its attachments or its attachments may be stretched sufficiently to allow inward displacement of the anterior segment sudden extension of the joint at this point may trap the anterior segment between the articular surfaces of the femoral and the tibial condyles. In this same mechanism, the femoral condyle sweeps the lateral meniscus forward making marked traction on the attachment of its anterior cornu. This force is greater by far than that made on the anterior segment of the medial structure by the medial condyle in a backward direction (Fig 88). External rotation of the femur reverses the above mechanism nevertheless the traction force made by the external condyle on the attachment of the anterior segment in a backward direction is greater

than that made by the medial condyle on the medial anterior segment in an anterior direction. The factors responsible for the difference in the intensity of the traction forces are the wider arc that the lateral condyle makes in rotation, as compared with that of the medial and the posterior location of the anterior segment of the lateral meniscus in relation to the medial structure. Both factors render the lateral anterior portion of the fibrocartilage more vulnerable to injury than the medial. This affords an explanation for the higher incidence of lesions in the lateral structure.

#### TRANSVERSE OR OBLIQUE TEARS

These lesions are most frequently encountered in the lateral meniscus. They may be incomplete or complete, the latter being extremely rare. In the lateral meniscus they are situated usually at the junction of the anterior and the middle thirds, while in the medial fibrocartilage they are situated in the posterior third (Figs. 107 and 108). The latter must be distinguished from longitudinal tears of the posterior segment, in which the distal end of the central segment has been worn away and resembles a transverse tear, also they never are so extensive as those observed in the lateral fibrocartilage. The mechanism producing the two lesions differs.

As previously stated, forces which tend to spread the anterior and the posterior attachments of the menisci stretch the thin concave borders, thereby producing a transverse tear. Inasmuch as the lateral meniscus is a large segment of a small circle, its concave margin is subjected to greater stresses than the medial meniscus, which is a small segment of a large circle. Usually the tear begins at the concave margin and curves gently backward and toward the convex border as far as the outer third of the breadth of the cartilage. Occasionally it may traverse the peripheral third but only rarely does it divide the meniscus completely (Fig. 107).



FIG 109 Observe that the margins of the transverse tear overlap resembling the blades of scissors. (*Left* superior surface, *right*, inferior surface, lateral meniscus)

The frequent association of transverse tears with cystic degeneration of the lateral cartilage leads one to believe that a close relationship must exist between the two lesions. It is reasonable to assume that cystic alterations at the periphery of the meniscus restrict its natural excursion, thereby predisposing it to injury. Many of the old transverse tears exhibit a horizontal division of the anterior margin into which the posterior margin fits. According to Smillie, the horizontal cleavage may result from the hinge action of the meniscus at the site of the tear. This motion forces the convex posterior margin to impinge against the concave anterior margin. As the result of numerous repetitions of this motion, a horizontal split is formed in the anterior margin; the cleavage may traverse the entire breadth of the meniscus, so that the posterior margin of the tear may come to lie at the joint line, forming a distinct swelling in this region. Occasionally the anterior and the posterior margins overlap and slide by one another without the formation of a horizontal cleavage; in this they closely resemble blades of scissors (Fig. 109). Transverse tears in the anterior aspect of the meniscus may be associated lesions of single or multiple longitudinal tears in the posterior segment (Fig. 110).



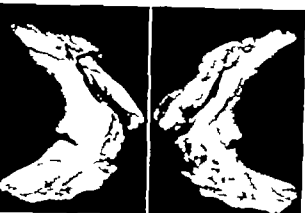


FIG 110. Transverse tear associated with a longitudinal split through the peripheral portion of the posterior segment (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface lateral meniscus)

#### COMBINED LESIONS

After the initial lesion has occurred the meniscus becomes vulnerable to repeated injuries. The accumulative effects of these subsequent injuries may produce a great variety of lesions in the same meniscus (Fig. 111). Severance of the central portion of a longitudinal tear gives rise to tongue-like projections on the concave border—they may be based anteriorly or posteriorly. The tabs may become rounded and hypertrophied—they may be detached completely from the main fragment as free loose bodies.

The clinical features vary with the size and the location of the processes. Small tags located near the anterior or the posterior segment may produce vague signs of interal derangement, the principal features being giving way of the knee joint and a feeling of instability. Large hypertrophied tags capable of being displaced into the anterior part of the joint anterior to the tibial collateral ligament may act as a mechanical wedge between the articular surfaces blocking full extension; the same is true of loose bodies of fibrocartilage. It becomes apparent that the clinical picture in the same individual may change from time to time depending upon the type of lesion or the combination of lesions present in the

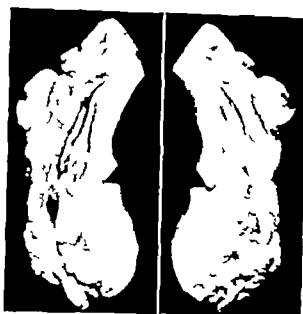


FIG 111. Small transverse tear on concave margins associated with a long complete tear in the peripheral region of both segments. The peripheral segment was displaced over the margin of the tibia. (*Left* inferior surface *right* superior surface medial meniscus)

affected meniscus. Transverse and longitudinal tears may exist in different portions of the same meniscus. Figure 111 exhibits a small transverse tear of the concave margin and a long longitudinal tear implicating the medial meniscus close to its convex periphery except at the extreme ends. Figure 110 reveals similar lesions in a lateral meniscus.

#### CYSTS OF THE MENISCI

**General Considerations.** The first comprehensive description of cysts of the meniscus was made by Ebner in 1904. This report stimulated interest in cystic lesions about the knee joint and in the subsequent years was followed by numerous articles dealing with this subject. Smillie recorded the largest series of cases—he encountered 146 cases in 1,500 meniscectomies. In this group (1,500 cases) there were 966 medial menisci of which 20 exhibited evidence of cystic alterations (2%). 534 lateral fibrocartilages of which 116 showed degenerative lesions (22%) and 10 discoid cartilages with

cystic changes. Analysis of the many reports in the literature and of the author's cases (48 cases) reveals that cystic abnormalities of the menisci is a disorder encountered most frequently in young athletic males. In the author's group the age ranged from 17 to 58, the average being 26.5; there were 34 males and 14 females. The lateral meniscus was implicated in 40 cases (84%) and the medial in 8 (16%) (Table 4).

**Etiology.** Although cystic changes in menisci are an accepted clinical entity, the etiology is still a controversial subject. Ebner expressed the opinion that the lesions are the result of cystic degeneration of the fibrocartilage associated with trauma. This view has been challenged by several workers; nevertheless the accumulative evidence indicates that trauma is the causative agent responsible for the characteristic cystic alterations in the fibrocartilages. The following are some of the theories concerning the formation of cysts of the menisci which have been advanced by different investigators. Ollerenshaw proposed that the cysts are derived from embryonic rests of synovial cells within the meniscus and that trauma stimulates these cells to secrete fluid and produce distention cysts. Geschickter and Lewis put forward evidence that the disorder was produced by synovial inclusions which are closely related to cysts arising in synovial membrane and to ganglia developing in tendon sheaths. Zadick and Jaffe expressed the belief that the cysts developed from synovial tissue implanted into cartilage at the time of trauma. King suggested that the cysts were the result of the activity of cells secreting gelatinous fluid. Ledderhose attempted to show that obliterative changes in the arterioles of the parameniscal tissue was the responsible factor.

In support of the traumatic theory, several significant observations must be recorded. The incidence of a definite history of direct trauma to the knee or of a rotatory strain is noted in a large percentage of the cases. In the author's series a specific his-

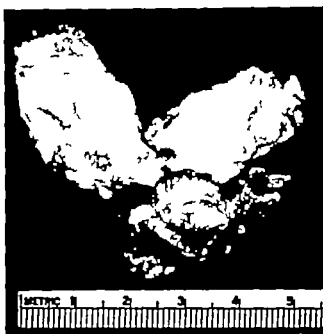


FIG. 112 Incomplete transverse tear of the lateral meniscus complicated by the presence of cystic degeneration.

tory of injury was observed in 48 per cent of the cases; the trauma was a direct blow in 26 per cent and a twist or a rotatory strain of the knee in 22 per cent. In the remaining cases a history of a specific injury was not obtainable; however, it is conceivable that some form of minor trauma which escaped notice of the patient did antedate the formation of the cyst, particularly when one notes that the lesions are generally encountered in individuals engaged in strenuous forms of athletics or work. The lateral meniscus is more vulnerable to direct trauma than the medial; in addition, the lesions are invariably located in the middle third of the lateral fibrocartilage. This is the only portion of the meniscus exposed to direct injuries; the anterior and the posterior thirds project inward under cover of the ligamentum patellae and the fibular collateral ligament. It was interesting to note that the medial meniscus was implicated in 8 of the 48 cases in the writer's series; in all 8 a history of direct injury to the anteromedial aspect of the knee was obtainable. The outer convex periphery of the lateral structure is thicker than that of the medial and

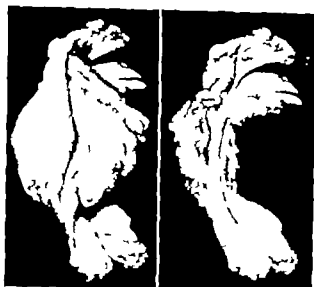


FIG 113 Cystic degeneration of a lateral meniscus associated with two longitudinal tears of its posterior segment. (*Left*) The cystic region has been divided longitudinally. Observe the numerous rounded cysts of varying size most of which occupy a parameniscal position



FIG 114 Cystic degeneration implicating the anterior horn of the medial meniscus. The small figures (*right*) show the multiple cysts in a portion of the involved area which was sectioned longitudinally

is more susceptible to compression by forces tending to abduct the lower leg on the femur. Rotatory strains produce lesions of the entire lateral meniscus close to its convex periphery whereas the same mechanism results in tears of the more central portions of the medial fibrocartilage the greater freedom of movement in the lateral structures is responsible for the frequency of the lesions close to its periphery. Not infrequently tears of the meniscus are concomitant lesions of cystic degeneration oblique or incomplete tears are the lesions most commonly encountered (Fig 112). In one lateral meniscus the condition was associated with a complete longitudinal tear of the posterior segment (Fig 113). It is logical to assume that cystic degeneration binds the meniscus to the capsular structures thereby restricting its natural range of movement and rendering it more vulnerable to trappings on the other hand both lesions may be the result of a single injury. Figure 114 depicts cystic degeneration arising from the anterior horn of the medial

meniscus. The patient a male 19 years old was kicked on the anteromedial aspect of the knee when participating in a game of football. Several hours after the incident the anterior region of the knee became swollen painful and discolored. He was treated by rest and ice packs to the injured part. After 7 days the patient resumed his football activities and finished the season. Approximately 4 months after the injury he noticed a small lump at the joint line on the inner side of the ligamentum patellae. He was aware of a clicking sensation on walking and with activity the knee became painful. Exploration of the knee joint revealed a well formed cystic mass attached

to the periphery of the anterior segment of the medial fibrocartilage. This case provides evidence that trauma to the medial meniscus is capable of producing cystic degeneration at the site of injury, and the lesions are comparable in every respect with those encountered in the lateral structure. Also cystic alterations are observed in those regions of both menisci which frequently exhibit evidence of recent or old injuries particularly at the peripheral attachments of their anterior and posterior horns.

The true nature of the cells lining the cysts has been the basis of much of the disagreement on the causation of the disorder. However the weight of evidence, mostly determined by microscopic study is in favor of the theory that the lining cells are compressed proliferating fibroblasts and are not of endothelial origin. The condition must not be confused with the parameniscal cysts arising from bursae and synovial outpouchings from the joint such as described by Bennett and Shae. These cysts are lined by endothelium. The author has reported previously 6 cases of cysts arising from bursae beneath the fibular collateral ligament in one of the cases the lesion was associated with a discoid cartilage. Microscopic examination revealed no involvement of the discoid structure.

**Pathogenesis** The pathogenesis of the condition is not definitely established. Some workers are of the opinion that trauma is followed by hemorrhage into the affected region of the meniscus. Next, mucoid degeneration of the hematoma occurs and this is followed by the formation of a cyst wall by compression of the surrounding fibrocartilage. It is generally accepted that the essential feature in the development of the lesion is mucoid degeneration of the fibrocartilage. In the first phase of the process the fibrils of the cartilage become swollen and less distinct and concurrently the cartilage cells show evidence of disintegration. Minute cysts now make their appearance surrounded by a zone of proliferating round



FIG 115 Large area of cystic degeneration implicating the middle third of the lateral meniscus. The entire thickness of the meniscus is implicated the affected area is expanded at the center and tapers anteriorly and posteriorly (Left superior surface right view of convex surface)

and spindle cells the process indicates an attempt toward repair by nature. With increase in the size of the cysts the fibroblasts are compressed to form a limiting wall consistent with a lining membrane. It is doubtful that obliteration of vessels in the region of the peripheral attachment of the affected portion of the fibrocartilage plays a role in the causation of the degenerative process because the peripheral regions are amply supplied with blood vessels, particularly in young people. It is more reasonable to assume that the rising tension in the fluid in the primary cysts resulting from the initial degenerative process makes undue pressure on the surrounding fibrocartilage, which in turn undergoes degeneration. It becomes apparent that two processes progress concur

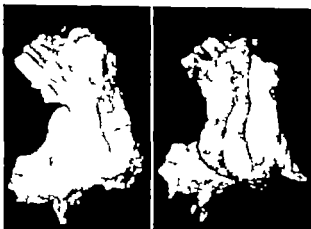


FIG. 116 Lateral meniscus with extensive cystic degeneration. The lesion was visible and palpable anterior to and beneath the fibular collateral ligament (Fig. 117) (*Right*) The lesion sectioned longitudinally. Observe the presence of large cystic areas.

rently one characterized by cystic degeneration of the meniscus and the other by repair through fibrosis. Eventually, the large cysts are extruded from the meniscus and may penetrate through the capsule to occupy a parameniscal position (Fig. 113).

**Macroscopic Features.** The gross appearance of the cystic lesion depends upon its size, location, duration and the presence or the absence of recent injury. As noted

FIG. 117 (A, *Left*) Lesion shown in Figure 116. It produced a firm, rounded swelling anterior to and beneath the fibular collateral ligament. Knee extended. (B, *Right*) Lesion shown in Figure 116. Knee flexed.



previously, in the lateral meniscus the disorder generally is situated in its middle third (Fig. 115). Some lesions arising from the extreme periphery of the fibrocartilage grow to an appreciable size. They may come to lie in the interval between the meniscus and the tendon of the popliteus muscle; if growth continues, the portions anterior and posterior to the popliteus tendon rupture through the capsule to occupy a position immediately under the deep fascia of the leg. Frequently, the anterior portion of the cystic mass can be seen and palpated beneath and anterior to the fibular collateral ligament (Figs. 116, 117). Other lesions tend to extend centrally, involving the breadth and the thickness of the meniscus so that the affected segment is expanded markedly at its center and tapers anteriorly and posteriorly (Fig. 115). Such lesions are fixed to the capsule but do not penetrate it; in other words, they do not occupy a parameniscal position. Cysts of this nature may produce pressure on the synovial membrane



of the femoral condyle and the articular borders of the femur and the tibia in contact with the affected meniscus. This irritation may be responsible for osseous and cartilaginous alterations which resemble those of hypertrophic arthritis.

Lesions of the medial meniscus are encountered more frequently in the region of the peripheral attachment of the anterior and the posterior segments (Fig 118). Like the cysts of the lateral meniscus, they tend to rupture through the capsule and occasionally through the fibers of the tibial collateral ligament. Also, they usually attain larger proportions than the lesions of the lateral meniscus. As a rule, the lesions arise from the peripheral zone of the fibrocartilage and later occupy a parameniscal position; on rare occasions they invade the greater portion of the fibrocartilage and retain an intracapsular position.

The outer aspect of the cystic mass may exhibit domelike projections which are really clusters of smaller cysts; these often are limited by a glistening membrane and may be discolored by fresh or old hemorrhages within the cyst cavities. In addition, the outer surface of the lesions beyond the periphery may be irregular and exhibit evidence of fibrosis and adhesions. The affected segment of the meniscus appears swollen and on section one notes that the entire mass is honeycombed by cysts varying in size and filled with a soft yellow gelatinous material (Figs. 113, 114). The individual cysts range in size from lesions barely perceptible to the naked eye to cysts measuring 3 to 4 cm. in diameter. The fibrocartilage between the cysts is softened, edematous and exhibits evidence of degeneration. The entire mass is multilocular the loculi being separated by fine septa of fibrous tissue. The smaller cysts are found in the substance of the fibrocartilage while the larger ones tend to extend toward the periphery and eventually assume parameniscal positions.

**Microscopic Features.** Microscopically

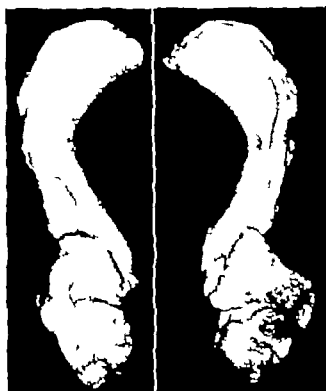


FIG 118 A large cystic mass arising from the anterior cornu of a medial meniscus. It lay immediately beneath the fascia of the leg and was palpable at the joint line on the inner aspect of the patellar tendon. (Left, superior surface, right, inferior surface)

cysts in varying stages of development are discernible. The earliest alterations are manifested by myxomatous softening areas of the cartilage. The fibrils become swollen and indistinct, they lose the normal pattern of arrangement and stain poorly, and the cartilage cells show evidence of disintegration. Further progression of the process reveals the appearance of small clefts or slits in the degenerated cartilage; these enlarge to varying size and represent the cysts observed macroscopically. Some of the large cysts are semilocular; others are divided by fine septa into multilocular cysts (Fig 119). Throughout the affected portion of the fibrocartilage and surrounding the degenerated areas described above, a highly vascular connective tissue is discernible. It comprises round cells, spindle cells and blood vessels. This tissue appears to arise in the vascular zone of the meniscus and



FIG 119 Photomicrograph  $\times 50$  of an area of cystic degeneration in a lateral meniscus. Observe the formation and coalescence of small clefts in the degenerated fibrocartilage to form larger multifollicular cysts. Also note the highly vascular connective tissue creeping between the degenerated areas.

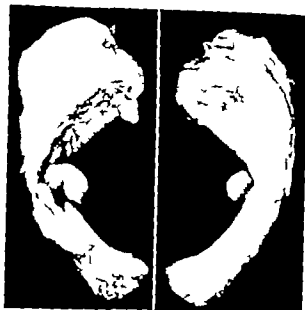


FIG 120 Discoid medial meniscus approaching the infantile type. Note the pedunculated tag resulting from a transverse tear superimposed on the central portion of a longitudinal tear (*Left* inferior surface *right* superior surface)

creeps between the degenerated areas. With enlargement of the cysts this tissue is compressed and eventually becomes the limiting wall or a lining membrane of the cyst. In some areas fibrosis is a prominent feature. Areas of hyalinization and thickening of the walls of the blood vessels are demonstrable; some vessels appear to be partially occluded. The flattened connective tissue cells which line the cysts must be distinguished from the endothelial cells which line parameniscal cysts arising from bursae and synovial outpourings of the capsule.

Old lesions exhibit extensive fibrosis and evidence of chronic inflammatory changes and old hemorrhages. Freshly traumatized cysts may reveal evidence of recent hemorrhage.

#### LESIONS OF DISCOID MENISCI

**General Considerations.** The anatomy and the varieties of congenital discoid

menisci were discussed in Chapter 3. Although the structures are rarely encountered, they are vulnerable to injury and exhibit characteristic lesions. In the writer's series there were 18 discoid menisci; of these 17 were observed in the lateral compartment of the knee joint and 1 in the medial. There were 11 males and 7 females; the right knee was implicated in 10 cases and the left in 8. The age ranged from 6 to 43; there was 1 bilateral case. No case was encountered which had both lateral and medial discoid menisci. The rarity of medial discoid cartilages is evidenced by the paucity of recorded cases in the literature. The first case was reported in 1945 by Dwyer and Taylor, although Smillie encountered a case with cystic degeneration at its periphery in 1943. Both these cases exhibited a horizontal cleavage. The author's case revealed a longitudinal tear whose central portion had been severed transversely, leaving a proximal and a distal pedunculated tag (Fig. 120).

**Type of Lesions.** The pertinent observation in all cases encountered was the hyper

mobility of the discoid structures as compared with the normal. In addition, the actual bulk of tissue between the articular surfaces renders them vulnerable to compression and rotatory stresses. It becomes apparent that the premature disk, which essentially is more or less a complete septum of fibrocartilage between the articular surfaces, is prone to show a combination of lesions produced by the aforementioned forces and will exhibit more extensive alterations than the other two types (the intermediate and the infantile types), which are less bulky and approach more closely the size and the configuration of the normal meniscus.

**Hypermobility of the Meniscus.** Hypermobility may or may not be associated with other lesions of discoid menisci. In this series 4 cases exhibited no detachment or other lesions, the structures appeared to be well anchored to the capsular and tibial attachments. Two cases showed no gross lesions of the meniscus, but considerable amounts of forward and backward motion were demonstrable on extension and flexion of the knee. Certainly this abnormal excursion of the structures increases their susceptibility to injury. All structures showing lesions of their surfaces or substance also disclosed varying degrees of detachment of their anterior portion or an excessive range of backward and forward motion.

**Detachment.** Hypermobility may be the precursor of detachment. Middleton noted that when the knee is approaching full extension the femoral condyle slips over the anterior margin of the loose discoid fibrocartilage and forces it backward in the direction of the posterior compartment. This explanation is particularly applicable

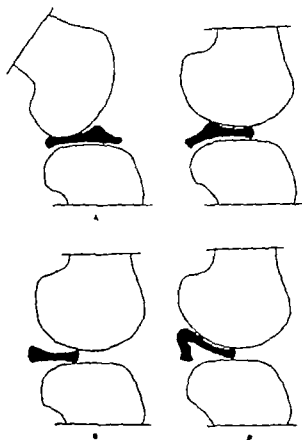


FIG 121 The cause of "snapping" (A) Relation of femoral condyle to the ridge in flexion. (B) Relation of femoral condyle in extension. (C) The condyle has slipped over the anterior compartment. (D) The condyle has slipped over the anterior margin of a large disk flexed upon itself in the posterior compartment. (From Smillie *Injuries of the Knee Joint*, Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins)

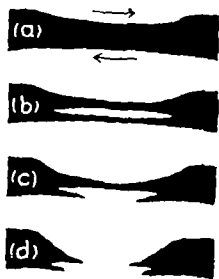


FIG 122 Diagrammatic representation of the stages of horizontal cleavage. (A) The superior and the inferior surfaces shift in relation to one another. (B) A line of cleavage appears. (C) The inferior surface wears away. (D) Wearing of both surfaces results in a central hole. (From Smillie *Injuries of the Knee Joint*, Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins)





FIG 123 Primitive discoid lateral meniscus. Note that it is massive in size comprising a complete disk with thick peripheral and central margins. The hollow in its superior surface to accommodate the femoral condyle is visible (*Left* inferior surface *right* superior surface)

to small primitive disks with loose peripheral attachments. In cases of large discoid menisci, the same mechanism may force the meniscus to buckle upon itself when it is driven into the posterior compartment. Upon flexion of the knee the mechanism is reversed, and as the condyles slip behind the anterior edge of the meniscus the structure snaps into its natural position.

The presence of ridges on the superior surface of the menisci, particularly those of the primitive type, has been the cause of considerable speculation. According to Smillie, the ridges are produced by the wearing away of the inferior surface which allows the superior surface to descend to a lower level, thereby forming a shallow hollow to accommodate the femoral condyle. The ridge may run transversely, obliquely or in an anteroposterior direction. In the presence of a transverse ridge the femoral condyle rides over it when full extension is approached driving the structure backward the reverse is true when the knee is flexed (Fig 121). It becomes apparent that through repetition of the maneuver described above or as the result of abnormal forces of tension and compression the anterior ligaments and the capsular attach-



FIG 124 Primitive discoid lateral meniscus with a central defect produced by the wearing away of the superior and the inferior surfaces. A horizontal plane of cleavage around the defect is also present. Note that the central portion is thinner than the peripheral and the central margins. (*Left* superior surface *right* inferior surface)

ments become stretched, attenuated and finally torn, resulting in complete detachment. This lesion was noted in two cases: in one the entire meniscus was displaced into the posterior compartment of the joint and had become fixed to the capsular tissues in this region. The second meniscus was displaced in the intercondylar space. In all of the remaining menisci in this series, some degree of stretching and attenuation of the anteromedial attachment was demonstrable.

**Horizontal Tears.** These lesions are encountered most commonly in the primitive type which is characterized by considerable thickness. The most plausible explanation of their mode of origin was conceived by Smillie: the horizontal cleavage is the result of continuous movement of the superior surface on the inferior surface (Fig 122). This is possible because the superior surface is relatively free moving with the femoral condyle while the inferior is fixed to the tibial plateau (Fig 123). Continuous flexion and extension plus rotatory stresses eventually cause a split between the two surfaces. In one of the specimens in this series the horizontal lesion was not discernible until the disk was sectioned; the line

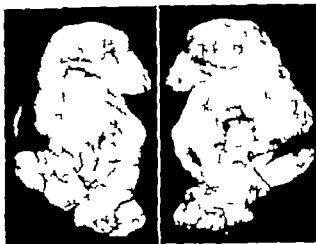


FIG 125 Intermediate discoid meniscus. Note that its bulk is less than that of the primitive type and that it exhibits 2 notches on its central margin. Several incomplete longitudinal tears are seen on the inferior surface (*Left* inferior surface, *right*, superior surface)

of cleavage had no connection with the periphery. In more advanced lesions the inferior and the superior surfaces are worn away gradually by the continuous forces of friction so that eventually an irregular circular defect is formed in the center of the disk (Fig 124). Generally the line of cleavage between the two surfaces is demonstrable at the margin of the defect on the inferior surface. Horizontal lesions of varying severity were observed in 6 of the cases.

**Longitudinal Tears.** Incomplete longitudinal tears are relatively frequent at the peripheral attachments of the primitive discoid cartilage; the intermediate type is even more likely to show complete as well as incomplete tears. These usually are located in the posterior portion of the disk and represent incidences of repeated injury. All 3 cases in this series exhibited complete posterior tears (Fig. 125). A longitudinal tear with a superimposed transverse tear of the central portion was observed in one medial discoid meniscus of this series; the proximal pedunculated tab became displaced anteriorly and caused locking of the joint (Fig 120). This specimen also showed a long incomplete longitudinal tear of the in-



FIG 126 Infantile discoid meniscus with an incomplete oblique tear (*Left* inferior surface, *right* superior surface)

ferior surface of its posterior convex border close to the peripheral attachment. Longitudinal tears are found also in the infantile forms usually at the periphery or through the capsular attachments.

**Transverse Tears.** Transverse or oblique tears are associated more commonly with the infantile disk than with the other two types (Fig 126). Inasmuch as this variety closely resembles the normal lateral meniscus, it is logical to assume that it is sus-

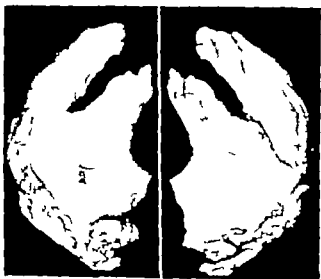


FIG 127 Infantile discoid meniscus showing an extensive longitudinal tear of the posterior segment. (*Left* superior surface, *right*, inferior surface)



FIG 128 Calcification of the lateral meniscus in a female 48 years old. Cystic degeneration of the periphery of the meniscus was also present. Note the secondary bone reaction at the outer articular margins of the femoral and the tibial condyles.

ceptible to the same abnormal stresses as the normal lateral structure and hence should exhibit similar lesions. Clinical observation substantiates this premise. In fact the short concave border of the wide infantile disk exhibits a higher incidence of transverse tears than the normal structure because it is less capable of counteracting those forces which tend to increase the interval between the anterior and the posterior cornua. Four of the 5 infantile disks in this series disclosed a transverse or an oblique tear the other revealed no gross abnormality (Fig 127).

**Cystic Degeneration** Many observers are noting the high frequency of cysts associated with discoid fibrocartilage. In the

author's series 4 of the 18 discoid menisci revealed cystic lesions. 1 was observed in the primitive structures and 3 in the infantile menisci. If one contends that trauma is a causative factor in the production of cysts then the high incidence noted in discoid menisci is readily explainable, because certainly these structures are more susceptible to abnormal compression and rotatory stresses than the normal menisci. On the other hand, there is some evidence in support of the premise that cysts arise from embryonal cells within the substance of the fibrocartilage which are activated by trauma. The discoid menisci are more likely to harbor embryonal cells than the normal structure. The argument set forth to discredit this theory is the absence of an endothelial lining in true cysts of the fibrocartilage. The writer is of the opinion that trauma is the etiologic agent responsible for cystic degeneration of the menisci.

#### CALCIFICATION IN MENISCI

This entity is relatively rare and may occur in the younger age group following injuries to the knee and in the older age periods as a concomitant feature of degenerative arthritis.

#### CALCIFICATION IN MENISCI ASSOCIATED WITH TRAUMA

This lesion usually implicates only one of the menisci and as a rule produces symptoms of internal derangement of the joint. As noted above it generally occurs in young people engaged in strenuous sports. A history of injury to the knee is always present. Calcification may be associated with other lesions of the meniscus or it may exist as a single lesion. The most pertinent feature of the disorder is the presence of a well delineated shadow of increased density in the medial and the posterior compartment of the joint. If calcification of the meniscus is not suspected this may be interpreted erroneously as a loose body. If the disorder



FIG 129 Primary calcification of both menisci. Note the linear areas of calcification arranged parallel to one another.

is associated with tears of the meniscus, true locking of the joint may ensue; however, the usually important clinical features are giving way of the joint, often associated with a 'click' pain and varying degrees of swelling. Correct interpretation of the clinical and the roentgenographic features preclude unnecessary surgery in search of a loose body. Excision of the affected meniscus invariably cures the disorder.

The writer has encountered extensive calcification in a lateral meniscus which disclosed cystic degeneration of its periphery; the patient was a female 48 years old. The cysts formed a distinct mass under and anterior to the fibular collateral ligament. It was interesting to note the secondary bone reaction at the outer articular margins of the femoral and the tibial condyles. In this region irregular bone formation closely resembling that observed in hypertrophic arthritis was demonstrable (Fig 128).

#### CALCIFICATION ASSOCIATED WITH DEGENERATIVE JOINT CHANGES

On occasion calcification in the menisci is observed in knee joints exhibiting other



FIG 130 Complete ossification of the lateral meniscus following depressed fracture of the lateral femoral condyle. Note the loose body in the intercondylar notch.

manifestations of degenerative changes consistent with hypertrophic arthritis. Generally both fibrocartilages are involved. The roentgenographic features of the lesion are distinctive: in the joint space one notes linear areas of calcification arranged parallel to one another (Fig 129). The calcareous deposits vary in density; some exhibit an amorphous character while others are more dense and discrete.

In degenerative processes the next step following calcification in tissues is ossification. Such lesions have been observed in both the traumatic and the degenerative forms of calcification of the menisci. Figure 130 depicts extensive ossification of the external fibrocartilage following a depressed fracture of the lateral tibial condyle. Ossification is so complete that bone trabeculae arranged in the lines of stress and paralleling those of the femoral and the tibial condyles are demonstrable in the meniscus. This patient presented symptoms of internal derangement which were relieved by the removal of the loose body found in the intercondylar notch; the ossified meniscus was not disturbed (Fig 130).

## REGENERATED MENISCI

Lesions of regenerated menisci following total excision of the normal structure are exceedingly rare lesions following partial extirpation (in which the posterior segment is left *in situ*) are relatively more common. In this series of 507 meniscectomies 13 regenerated menisci were encountered. In 10 the original posterior segment was still demonstrable, in the remaining 3, total regeneration had occurred. In general the connective tissue replica is less vulnerable to injury than the normal structure. The factors which mitigate the incidence of injury are the reductions in size and the diminished range of motion of the structure as compared with the normal. The replica is firmly adherent to the capsule and its breadth and thickness are considerably less than the same dimensions of the original meniscus. In the light of these observations it becomes apparent that the mechanisms which inflict injuries of the original fibrocartilage are less likely to produce lesions of the regenerated meniscus also when lesions occur they are of less severity than those which generally occur in the normal fibrocartilage. The nature of the lesions is the same in both the normal and the regenerated menisci (Fig. 87).

CLINICAL FEATURES—FACTORS  
PREDISPOSING MENISCI  
TO INJURY

## DEVELOPMENTAL FACTORS

The knee joint in man is a highly specialized and intricate organ which from a biologic viewpoint is of recent origin. It has assumed the functions of weight bearing and equilibrium for which it was not designed primarily. These factors play a major role in the high incidence of knee injuries certainly the rapidity with which the quadriceps muscle undergoes atrophy and loses volume in the face of even minor injuries to the knee joint is a good indication of the

biologic newness of this organ as it exists in man. It was pointed out previously that loss of quadriceps efficiency favors instability of the joint and formation of effusions these factors in turn predispose the menisci to abnormal stresses and injury.

## ANATOMIC FACTORS

The knee joint exhibits specific peculiarities which increase the susceptibility of the menisci to injury. When compared with lower forms, one notes immediately the increase in the relative size of the femoral and the tibial condyles in man. Also the configuration of the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles is such that the joint is locked in extension by the screw home maneuver previously described. These alterations in the bony elements increase the vulnerability of the fibrocartilages which are comparatively delicate small structures between massive bone ends partaking in intricate movements during normal function of the articulation. Such a delicate mechanism is deranged readily inflicting injury to the menisci.

The stability afforded by the cruciate ligaments in the lower forms is lacking in man. In the forms holding the knee habitually flexed these ligamentous structures are strong and well developed. It was pointed out that in primates which use the lower limbs as prehensile organs and swing from branch to branch the cruciate ligaments are usually large and strong. In man the ligaments are reduced greatly in size and do not provide the knee joint with the protection that they afford the knees of lower animals.

On the other hand the fibrocartilages have attained their highest degree of development in man. This has been necessary in order to meet the new functional demands made on the knee joint. The increase in breadth and width which they have acquired and the freedom of motion they enjoy during flexion and extension of the joint are factors which render them vulnerable when abnormal stresses are applied to the knee.

joint. In addition, variations in size and shape are responsible for specific types of lesions, this has been amply demonstrated in lesions of the lateral and the congenital discoid cartilages.

#### CONSTITUTIONAL AND OCCUPATIONAL FACTORS

The high incidence of tears of the menisci in young people engaged in arduous sports is well recognized. Nevertheless, there is a certain group of cases in which the lesions are the result of trivial injuries sustained in domestic life. Every orthopedic surgeon at some time or other must have observed that in many of the aforementioned cases a close relationship exists between the physical status of the patient and the resulting injury to the knee joint. An observation of significance is the marked laxity that is demonstrable in the quadriceps and the ligamentous apparatuses of some individuals. Surely such persons must exhibit the same relaxation and laxity in the coronary ligaments thereby permitting the meniscus a greater excursion of motion than they normally have. Overweight individuals with generalized poor muscle tone also are more susceptible than those of normal weight and good muscular development.

American sports such as football, baseball and basketball are responsible for the largest percentage of lesions of the menisci in this country. These sports and others are also accountable for the high incidence observed on the continent. Occupations which maintain the flexed lower leg in a fixed position and prevent normal rotation of the tibia on the femur during flexion and extension are common causes of internal derangements of the knee. Smillie points out that coal mining in England where the seams are narrow is also responsible for a large number of cases; the miners are forced to work with the knees flexed. During flexion and extension of the knee the tibia of the miner is unable to rotate on the femur in the proper direction because the inner and

the outer borders of the feet are in contact with the floor. It becomes apparent that in such circumstances undue strains are placed on the coronary ligaments during extension and flexion of the joint, these structures eventually become stretched and predispose the menisci to trappings between the condyles of the femur and the tibia. Besides sports and coal mining, numerous incidents may occur in a great many forms of occupation which provide the requisites responsible for internal derangement of the knee. The author has observed a large number of cases in young men working on telephone and telegraph poles. These individuals wear spiked shoes which fix the feet and the legs to the poles; during the course of their work they are constantly leaning from one side to the other and twisting their trunks. In so doing, the flexed knees are subjected to undue rotary strains which in many instances are of sufficient severity to cause tears of the menisci.

#### PATHOLOGIC FACTORS

Any disorder which reduces the efficiency of the quadriceps as a stabilizer of the knee joint predisposes the patient to internal derangements of the knee. Trivial injuries attended inadequately may result in profound quadriceps wasting which in turn is accompanied by recurrent effusions. Under such circumstances the entire ligamentous apparatus and the capsule become relaxed, this includes the coronary ligaments which anchor the menisci to the tibial tuberosities. The resulting increased mobility of the menisci, together with the loss of the protective nature of the quadriceps, favors trippings of the menisci; these may occur in association with minor abnormal stresses which under normal conditions would not be capable of producing injuries of the fibrocartilages. Any mechanical derangement of the knee may cause the same sequence of events noted above. Notably among these are genu valgum which imposes undue strain on the internal ligaments

of the knee a poorly developed lateral condyle of the femur which permits recurrent subluxations or dislocations of the patella and an abnormally elongated patellar tendon with congenital relaxation of the ligaments and the capsule which also is responsible for lateral displacement of the patella. It is obvious that any agent causing loss of muscle tone and recurrent synovial effusions increases the vulnerability of the menisci.

#### AGE, INCIDENCE AND SEX FACTORS

Critical analysis of the numerous series of lesions of the menisci reveals that the lesions occur most frequently in the third decade of life, this was true in the author's cases. The next period in order of frequency was the fourth decade. It is interesting to note the high incidence occurring in the young adult males as compared with the females. In the series reported herein there were 465 males (91.8%) and 42 females (8.2%). This ratio certainly points to the important role that trauma plays in the production of lesions of the menisci.

#### DIAGNOSTIC FACTORS

In certain instances the diagnosis of a torn meniscus or another form of internal derangement of the knee joint is established without difficulty; this is especially true when a patient presents himself with a locked knee joint and gives a history of a twisting injury to the limb. On the other hand the diagnosis may challenge the most keen diagnostician particularly old cases of internal derangement which are seen between attacks of recurrent injury. When present certain symptoms, signs and physical findings provide sufficient data to make a diagnosis in most instances; however in their absence the surgeon must depend heavily on the details of the history to arrive at any conclusions. On occasion the diagnosis can be established only by exploration of the knee joint. The diagnostic acumen of the surgeon can be enhanced

greatly by analyzing meticulously all the details of the whole clinical picture. This can be achieved only by taking the history of the patient and performing the examination with a definite preconceived plan; all data should be recorded. The plan should include a description of the operative findings and a correlation of these observations with the history and the preoperative examination of the patient. The author has found the following plan to be adequate.

#### SCHEME OF HISTORY TAKING AND PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- |               |     |  |       |
|---------------|-----|--|-------|
| Name          |     |  |       |
| Knee affected |     |  |       |
| Age           | Sex |  | Color |
| Occupation    |     |  |       |
- HISTORY**
- Date of initial injury
  - Mechanism of initial injury (as described by the patient)
  - Symptoms associated with initial injury
    - 1 Pain—location
    - 2 Presence or absence of click or snap at time of injury
    - 3 Swelling—location and time of appearance after injury
    - 4 Degree of dysfunction immediately after injury
    - 5 Locking—present or absent after injury
    - 6 Tenderness—location
  - Immediate management after initial injury
  - Nature of symptoms after initial injury
  - Present complaints—swelling, instability, locking, pain, etc.
  - Physical examination of affected knee
    - 1 Position of the extremity—extended or flexed
    - 2 Effusion—present or absent
    - 3 Loss of muscle volume—degree (mild, moderate, severe)
    - 4 Measurements of circumference of thighs (taken at points measured from the anterior superior spines)
    - 5 Range of free motion—active and passive
    - 6 Crepitus associated with motion—presence or absence of click and location
    - 7 Tenderness—location
    - 8 Lateral instability
    - 9 Anteroposterior instability
    - 10 Presence or absence of undue laxity of capsule and quadriceps apparatus

- 11 Presence or absence of crepitus in patellofemoral joint
- 12 Tests
  - McMurray
  - Fouche
- Roentgenographic study
- Presumptive diagnosis
- Operative findings
- Final diagnosis

#### HISTORY FACTORS

As previously recorded, in many instances meticulous interrogation of the history of the case is more important than the physical examination. Little or no information may be available by examination of a knee after an acute episode has subsided, yet the history may provide valuable data leading to the correct diagnosis of the disorder. Much can be learned if the patient is allowed to tell the story in his own words and is asked to demonstrate the position of the limb after the injury and to point out the areas of maximum pain and tenderness.

It is important to ascertain whether or not some form of disorder existed in the knee prior to the initial injury or to the symptoms which force the patient to seek medical aid. Not infrequently the severity of the existing symptoms or the apprehension of the patient relegate symptoms of lesser severity to the background so that it requires painstaking questioning to establish their presence. Such information as recurrent effusions giving way of the knee joint and a sense of instability or "something jumping out of place" is valuable in determining the presence of predisposing factors—pathologic or anatomic—which eventually precipitate the major injury.

It is surprising to observe how many patients, even very intelligent ones are not capable of giving a reliable description of the mechanism responsible for the internal derangement. However the significant point to establish is whether or not a rotatory force was acting while the knee was in a position of flexion; these requisites are essential to sustain tears of the menisci.

## CLINICAL FEATURES—SYMPTOMS

### PAIN

At the occurrence of the initial lesion of major tears, pain may be unusually severe, it is more or less generalized but more intense over the affected side. The pain may be accompanied by a snap or a click which is felt and occasionally heard. Usually this indicates tearing of a meniscus or rupture of a ligament. The pain is the result of severe stretching and tearing of the synovial and the capsular attachments of the affected meniscus, it is not caused by tearing of the substance of the fibrocartilage. In some cases major tears of the meniscus with or without locking occur after numerous minor incidences associated with moderate pain and effusions. Eventually a major tear ensues; however, the intensity of the pain as a rule, is not equal to that observed in cases with a severe initial lesion without previous symptoms. On occasion a case is encountered in which a trivial injury results in a major initial tear of the meniscus yet the patient gives no history of previous symptoms. In such cases the intensity of the symptoms may be mild or moderate in nature. It must be assumed that gradual stretching of the coronary ligaments, the capsule and the capsular attachments of the menisci has occurred in these cases thereby predisposing the menisci to severe lesions by minor injuries. It is interesting to note that the severity of the lesions of the meniscus sustained by the first injury is not commensurate with the intensity of the symptoms. As has been recorded by other observers the author has encountered some of the most extensive tears in patients whose symptoms were initiated by a gradual onset, and at no time did they exhibit severe reactions. In most cases the patient indicates correctly the site of the pain. As noted above in recent injuries the pain may be generalized but is more pronounced on the affected side, in cases of long standing the



pain is more localized, and the patient in variably (except in very rare instances) points to the painful area without hesitation. Occasionally, a unilateral lesion may cause bilateral pain, and a bilateral lesion may be associated with unilateral pain. As a rule, the preponderance of tenderness over the affected meniscus establishes the site of the lesion. In the author's series there were 16 bilateral lesions. Of these 9 had pain and marked tenderness on the medial side of the joint. Lesions of the lateral meniscus were not suspected before operation. Contralateral pain is not a reliable diagnostic sign; often it may be caused by strains of the opposite collateral ligament.

#### CLICK OR SNAP

This is a relatively common symptom and in original injuries is accompanied by excruciating pain. Occasionally the click is heard by other people near the patient. In some old recurrent cases the patient may produce the click voluntarily by flexing and extending the knee joint. In these cases the patient may have some discomfort but no pain.

#### EFFUSION

Synovial effusion invariably accompanies every original tear of the menisci. As pointed out previously, it is the result of stretching and tearing of the synovial the capsular and the ligamentous attachments of the meniscus and is not caused by tearing of the substance of the fibrocartilage. It becomes manifest within a few hours after the injury; generally the maximum swelling is attained within 12 to 24 hours. This point is characteristic of traumatic synovial effusion and must be distinguished from hemarthrosis in which there is a rapid distention of the joint.

Traumatic synovial effusion is a concomitant finding of many other forms of injuries to the knee joint, and its presence following injury does not necessarily indicate a tear of the meniscus. Also with subsequent trap-

pings of the meniscus regardless of whether locking does or does not occur varying amounts of effusion are always associated with the incident. Generally, the reactions are of lesser severity than the one which followed the original incident. On rare occasions of long standing giving way or locking of the joint may occur without reactions. Large effusions do not give rise to acute pain but rather produce a feeling of tightness and discomfort in the knee joint. This is in contradistinction to hemarthrosis which causes intense pain.

#### LOCKING

True locking of the knee joint means that there is present a definite mechanical block to complete extension. It occurs at a point from 10° to 30° below complete extension. As previously noted, it usually takes place when a longitudinal tear extends into the anterior segment to a point anterior to the collateral ligament. In a few cases definite mechanical obstruction to extension is caused by lesions other than a longitudinal tear of the posterior segment extending anterior to the coronal plane of the joint. Posterior or anterior peripheral tears which will permit the meniscus to be displaced into the center of the joint may produce classical locking; the author has encountered two of the former and one of the latter. Also large tags based anteriorly or posteriorly which come to lie in front of the femoral condyle may produce true locking. Of particular interest was one case of a young man whose knee locked when he made a sudden turn pivoting on one leg while playing basketball. He experienced excruciating pain and was forced to leave the floor. When examined several hours later the knee was slightly swollen and locked at 165°. A diagnosis of a torn meniscus was made and operation was recommended. Upon exploration of the joint a large discrete pedunculated fatty tumor with its base attached to the medial semilunar fat pad was found. It was crushed

and wedged between the articular surfaces of the femoral and the tibial condyles. The menisci disclosed no evidence of injury.

It is generally recognized that it is difficult to ascertain a true incidence of locking at the original injury, also it appears that the incidence is lower than generally realized. A survey of some of the series reported in the literature indicates that less than 50 per cent of the patients with lesions of the menisci gave a history of locking at some time during the course of the disorder and that in less than 50 per cent of these, locking occurred at the original incident. In the remaining patients (over 50%) no history of locking was attainable. The author's series portrays a picture similar to this. Of 358 cases reviewed a history of definite locking at the original incident was obtained in 19 per cent, subsequent locking occurred in 26 per cent. In 55 per cent locking did not occur. Several factors are responsible for the low incidence of locking at the initial injury. Most important is the location and the size of the original tear in the meniscus. It usually involves the posterior segment, hence, the lesion is not capable of obstructing the femoral condyle during extension of the knee. In most instances in which the original tear extends anteriorly beyond the collateral ligaments, locking does not take place because spontaneous recoil of the central fragment forces the torn structure in its normal anatomic position in relation to the femoral and the tibial condyles. The inherent elastic qualities of normal fibrocartilage such as is found in the menisci of young adults together with the shape of the menisci account for the tendency toward spontaneous replacement of the central fragment of a longitudinal tear.

No one can deny that in the face of true locking together with a history pointing to the menisci as possible sources of trouble, a torn fibrocartilage is the most logical diagnosis. Under such circumstances locking may be considered as a characteristic fea-

ture of a torn cartilage. However, more important is the ability to make a clinical diagnosis of a torn meniscus in the absence of locking because, as previously noted, in more than 50 per cent of the cases locking of the joint does not occur. To confuse the clinical picture further, occasionally one encounters a complete longitudinal tear extending into the anterior segment of the meniscus with no evidence of locking, these patients complain of vague symptoms suggesting some form of internal derangement but exhibit no impediment to flexion or extension of the knee.

Many forms of pseudolockings may be interpreted erroneously as true lockings of the knee joint. When true locking occurs, it is sudden and dramatic, even more characteristic of the lesion is the suddenness with which it may unlock, giving the patient a relatively free range of painless motion. One must view with suspicion cases which are featured by inability to extend the knee but in which, during an interval of several days extension gradually returns to normal. Most of these cases are instances in which a large effusion or severe muscle spasm are responsible for the restricted arc of extension, in some instances crushing of the infrapatellar fat pad, followed by endurration of the tissue effusion and hemorrhage may produce the same clinical picture. Hemarthroses resulting from ruptures of the collateral ligaments, tearing of the synovial and the capsular attachments of the menisci or fractures of the tibial spine may cause marked restriction of extension and may simulate true locking. On the other hand, a massive effusion may mask a truly locked knee joint. The actual nature of the lesion may not become manifest until the effusion has subsided and full extension fails to return. If the surgeon is cognizant of these numerous pitfalls and carefully analyzes all the details of the history of the injury and carefully examines the part, as a rule he can make the correct interpretation of the condition at hand.

## TENDERNESS

In recent injuries some tenderness is demonstrable along the entire periphery of the affected cartilage; however, it will be noted that in lesions of the internal meniscus it is most acute at the joint line over, in front of or behind the tibial collateral ligament. This is a constant finding and must be distinguished from localized tenderness in conjunction with severe sprains of the collateral ligament. In such cases the maximum degree of tenderness is elicited at the superior or the inferior bony insertion of the ligament particularly in the region of the medial femoral epicondyle. Even in recurrent cases tenderness over the aforementioned site is invariably present.

Tenderness over the posterior segment immediately behind the posterior borders of the collateral ligaments can be demonstrated in recent tears of the posterior segment; this finding is in addition to the tenderness noted in the region of the tibial collateral ligament in cases of lesions of the internal meniscus. The stretching and the tearing of the peripheral attachments which is associated invariably with longitudinal tears of the posterior segment is responsible for the tenderness in this region. In fact in recurrent cases this may be the only objective finding that is demonstrable.

Tenderness localized over the anterior peripheral attachments of the menisci is present when these regions are implicated. In lesions of the medial meniscus it can be demonstrated best by making firm pressure with the thumb over the joint line in the anteromedial angle of the joint while the knee is flexed. The knee is then extended and as the leg approaches complete extension pain is elicited because at this point the convex surface of the meniscus is forced against the finger. On the lateral side the same maneuver is executed with the finger placed about 2 cm. from the lateral border of the ligamentum patellae. Tenderness over the anterior peripheral attachments is not a reliable sign because it is a concomitant

finding of many minor injuries not implicating the meniscus.

## DYSFUNCTION IMMEDIATELY AFTER INJURY

The degree of dysfunction following the original injury is governed in a large measure by the severity of the tear. If the tear implicates the fibrocartilage to the extent that locking ensues the resulting dysfunction is marked—so much so that the patient is unable to complete the task in which he was engaged. This is also true of incidents in which the locking was reduced spontaneously or manually immediately after it occurred. On the other hand momentary trappings of the meniscus producing complete or incomplete tears without true locking of the joint may produce only minimal dysfunction. In fact if it occurs on the football field the player may continue with the game. Subsequent injuries may result in true locking which will totally incapacitate the patient. The author has encountered a number of cases of original injuries on the football field in which it was apparent that the players had inflicted some injury to the posterior segment of the meniscus; however the lesions were short of the extent of the split in the meniscus required to produce locking. In some of these players the knees eventually locked following subsequent injuries.

## PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Certain points in the examination of the patient need elaboration.

## POSITION OF THE EXTREMITY

When true locking occurs either at the original injury or at subsequent injuries the knee is flexed from 10 to 30° below the line of complete extension. A player being carried off the football field assumes a characteristic attitude: the knee and the hip are flexed, the toe of the affected limb points downward and no weight is put on the limb. It was pointed out previously that pain and

muscle spasm resulting from injuries other than a torn meniscus will restrict the arc of extension. The author has observed numerous patients with supposedly locked knee joints in whom the joint would go readily into complete extension when muscle relaxation was obtained by general anesthesia. Massive synovial effusions and hemarthroses also may impede full extension.

#### TESTING FOR EFFUSION

Joints distended with synovial effusion are ballooned out, forming a semicircular convexity around the lateral margins and the base of the patella. Thus the mobility of the patella is increased, and ballotment of this bone is readily demonstrable by tapping its anterior surface gently. In massive effusions fluctuation is readily discernible; however, smaller effusions are not detected so readily. The method depicted in Figure 131 is of value in determining the presence of small effusions. The examiner's hands are placed on the anterior surface of the limb above and below the patella; gentle and uniform pressure is made above and below toward the center of the patella. By so doing fluid in the joint, particularly in the suprapatellar pouch, is displaced under the inferior surface of the patella. Then by gently tapping the patella with the index finger the bone can be felt to strike against the anterior surface of the femur; the contact can be both felt and heard.

#### LOSS OF TONE AND MUSCLE VOLUME

Loss of tone and volume of the quadriceps muscle in varying degrees is a constant finding in all disorders of the knee joint. The component showing the earliest and most profound alterations is the vastus medialis. Even before there is visible loss of muscle volume, careful and gentle palpation of the quadriceps will disclose loss of firmness and tone as compared with the unaffected side. Also, careful inspection reveals a barely perceptible degree of flatness which is rarely missed once the examiner learns to detect it. It is a good policy to measure the circum-

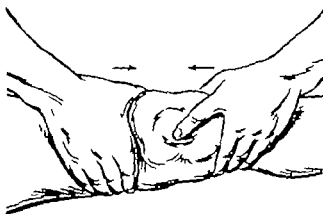


FIG. 131 Method eliciting the presence of effusion

ference of both thighs at about their mid points. The author employs the tips of the anterior superior spines of the iliac crest as the fixed points. In addition, measurements may also be taken at the level of the suprapatellar region, the joint line and the mid calf. It is important to emphasize that mensuration of the two thighs at the same respective levels is not a true index of the presence or the absence of wasting of the quadriceps. Often the readings are identical yet the trained observer can detect and feel a difference in the firmness and the tone of the two muscle masses. Only in rare instances does one encounter a meniscal lesion without some degree of wasting of the quadriceps; in such instances the nature of the lesion is such that the function of the joint is not impaired and in addition the activity of the extremity has been maintained at a high level, such as is observed in athletes in constant training.

#### BUCKLING OR GIVING-WAY

Giving way of the knee joint is the most frequently encountered symptom of internal derangement in which the menisci are at fault; yet it is commonly overlooked as a diagnostic sign of such lesions. The patient's description of the incident may be vague and confusing; nevertheless, a few leading questions will reveal the true nature of the pathology responsible for the disorder. The patient may describe the symptom as 'some

thing slipping out of place" or the "joint jumping out." Invariably he develops a sense of instability in the affected extremity and soon learns that certain acts will predispose the knee to giving way, such as walking on uneven terrain or pivoting on the affected leg. Numerous causes may produce giving way incidents, such as atrophy

of the quadriceps muscle, anteroposterior instability resulting from stretching of the cruciate ligaments, lateral instability caused by disruption of the collateral ligament, free bodies in the joint cavity, luxating patellae and occasionally mobile menisci. However, the most common cause is a longitudinal tear of the posterior

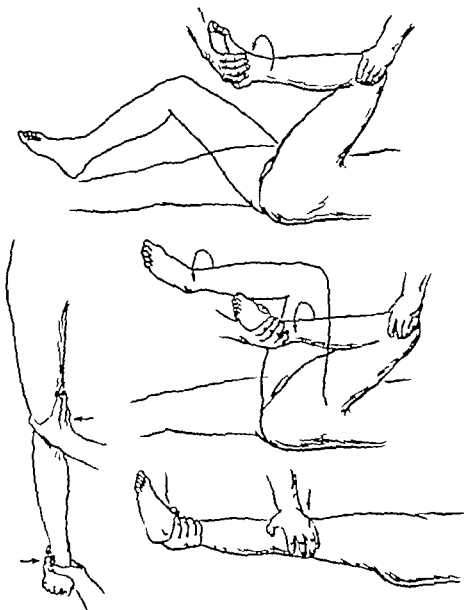


FIG. 132 (Top right) Fouché's maneuver to detect tear of the posterior segment.

FIG. 133 (Center right) McMurray's maneuver to detect lesions of the posterior segment.

FIG. 134 (Bottom left) Compression test to determine which meniscus is implicated.

FIG. 135 (Bottom right) Extension test to determine which meniscus is involved.

segment of a meniscus. The emphasis that Smillie has placed on the close relationship of giving way incidents to tears of the posterior segment has focused the attention of many orthopedic surgeons on this symptom. Clinical experience reveals that his observations are correct. This may be the only information available which indicates that the meniscus is involved. It becomes apparent that other causes capable of producing giving way incidents must be eliminated. This however, can be achieved readily by thorough examination of the part and careful interrogation of the patient. Demonstration of a click in the joint by special tests establishes the diagnosis.

#### SPECIAL TEST TO ELICIT "CLICK"

Numerous tests have been conceived to demonstrate lesions of the posterior segment of the menisci. Of these Fouché's test and McMurray's test are the most reliable. The former maneuver was described first in the American literature by Dutot and Enslin in 1945. It is of interest that the two tests are the reverse of one another.

#### FOUCHÉ'S TEST

In testing for lesions of the posterior segment of the medial meniscus the patient assumes the supine position with the hip and the knee of the affected limb fully flexed (Fig. 132). The left fingers of the examiner are placed on the joint line while the right hand firmly grasps the foot which is used to rotate the lower leg internally. A complete movement of arcduction is executed starting with the knee fully flexed and terminating with it slightly flexed. When the tibia is rotated internally the meniscus is fixed to the head of the tibia and moves with it, at the same time it is displaced forward toward the center of the joint. During the maneuver the concave margin of the meniscus which moves forward is nipped between the femoral and the tibial condyles and then recedes backward. At this point a click is felt and heard.

This sound is produced in normal joints and with practice the click associated with the normal meniscus is readily discernible. The sound elicited by a torn meniscus varies from a coarse thud when a large ragged tear of the posterior segment is present to a delicate click when a thin strip of fibrocartilage is displaced from the concave margin.

The maneuver is reversed when testing for lesions of the posterior segment of the lateral cartilage. Now the tibia is held firmly in the position of external rotation in relation to the femur.

#### MC MURRAY'S TEST

In this maneuver the mechanism which caused the meniscal tear is reproduced (Fig. 133). The patient lies on his back with the hip and the knee of the affected extremity fully flexed with the heel close to the buttock. One hand holds the knee in a fixed position while the other grasps the foot so that it can be used as a lever to rotate the leg either internally or externally. External motion is employed to test for lesions of the posterior segment of the lateral meniscus and internal rotation for lesions of the posterior segment of the medial fibrocartilage. By rotation of the tibia, the freedom of movement which the menisci naturally have is lessened and they become attached firmly to the tibia and move with it. While rotation of the tibia is maintained the joint is extended to a right angle. As the femoral condyles pass over the lesion in the meniscus a click occurs which is felt and may be audible. The portion of the meniscus which is compressed by the femur during this maneuver depends upon the degree of flexion of the rotated leg. In full flexion the posterior segment is tested, while in flexion approaching the right angle the middle portion is involved. The nature of the sound elicited imparts to the examiner a rough conception of the character and the size of the lesion. Also the approximate location of the lesion may be determined.

## COMPRESSION TEST

This test is of some value in determining the side of the joint affected particularly in recent injuries (original or recurrent) in which the patient is not able to localize the pain with any certainty. It may also be found of value in cases of long standing (Fig. 134). By this maneuver the affected meniscus is compressed and pain is elicited on the implicated side of the joint. It is most effective when some abnormality of the joint is present. With the knee extended the lower leg is adducted in testing for the medial meniscus and abducted in testing for the lateral.

## EXTENSION TEST

Again when there is doubt as to the meniscus involved, particularly after recent injuries, this test may be helpful in isolating the affected structure (Fig. 135). Full extension and even slight hyperextension of the joint will initiate pain over the joint line on the side of the torn meniscus. Extension of the joint forces the menisci to move forward. This test stretches the torn or frayed peripheral attachments of the torn meniscus thereby producing pain.

## OTHER CAUSES OF CLICKS OR CREPITUS

Sounds varying in character which are unrelated to meniscal tears are heard frequently in the knee joint. Notably among these is the rough grating crepitus associated with osteoarthritis of the joint either degenerative or traumatic in origin. The sounds arise from changes in the pericapsular tissues and roughening of the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia and the patella. In the degenerative type the crepitus is usually bilateral. In the traumatic type it is limited to the affected joint.

The patellofemoral joint is a common source of bizarre sounds. The lesions responsible for the crepitus may be chondromalacia of the patella alone or of both articular surfaces of the patellofemoral joint, generalized osteoarthritis of the knee

as described above, subluxating patellae and in rare instances osteochondral fractures of the patella.

Osteochondritis of the femoral condyles may give rise to varying degrees of crepitation in children and adults. This is unilateral and demonstrable only in the affected joint.

It is generally recognized that undue relaxation of the quadriceps and the ligamentous apparatus may be associated with clicks on movement of the joint. No specific lesion of the menisci need be present except laxity of its peripheral attachments. The clicks are usually bilateral and not associated with pain when they occur. This is in contradistinction to clicks associated with torn menisci in which pain or at least some discomfort is experienced by the patient.

Snapping tendons in the region of the knee joint may be responsible for unnatural sounds. Some patients are able to produce the sounds voluntarily. In certain trick movements of the joint in one child the sharp snap sounded like the twang of a bow string. Occasionally in children a thud may be present with flexion and extension of the joint, the cause being a discoid meniscus. Such sounds in children always should make one suspicious of a congenital discoid meniscus particularly if they occur on the outer side of the knee joint.

## EXTENSOR AND LIGAMENTOUS APPARATUS

No examination of the knee joint can be considered complete until the status of the quadriceps and the ligamentous apparatus is established. A painstaking examination may reveal lesions of the cruciate and the collateral ligaments and undue laxity in the extensor mechanism, the capsule and the ligaments. These alterations may exist independently of a meniscal tear or may be complications of the lesions following recent incidences of giving way and effusion. In the latter case analysis of the condition will give the examiner some concept of the amount of improvement that can be

anticipated following removal of the torn meniscus. Marked relaxation of the aforementioned structures tends to impede rapid restoration of function to normalcy, in fact, in the presence of advanced alterations normal function may be impossible to achieve, and additional complications such as osteoarthritis may ensue. This is true particularly if the knee is forced to perform work which is beyond its functional capacity.

#### MENISCUS PALPABLE AT THE JOINT LINE

Occasionally, the convex periphery of the torn meniscus can be palpated at the joint line. With the patient in the supine position with the hip and the knee fully flexed, the examiner's thumb is placed over the joint line at the point of maximum tenderness, the other hand grasps the foot and passively extends and flexes the lower leg while rotating it at the same time. The cartilage can be felt under the thumb as it plays back and forth on the tibial plateau. In rare instances a long pedunculated central portion of a longitudinal tear which has been severed at its distal or anterior end may be extended toward the periphery passing over or beneath the peripheral portion. In 2 cases the mass appeared on the lateral side of the joint anterior to the fibular collateral ligament. It was irreducible and painful on pressure; a diagnosis of cystic degeneration of the cartilage was made in each instance. At operation the true nature of the lesions was established. Also the periphery of the meniscus may be forced over the tibial margin to protrude at the joint line. It was interesting to note that this occurred in one of the regenerated menisci removed by the author; the tumefaction appeared behind the posterior margin of the fibular collateral ligament. In another case after several recurrent episodes of locking a mass presented itself in the antero-medial angle of the joint between the inner margin of the ligamentum patellae and the anterior border of the tibial collateral ligament; the mass was both visible and palpa-

ble. Exploration of the joint disclosed a triple longitudinal tear extending far into the anterior segment, the distal ends of the two central portions had become detached, and both meniscal flaps had been extruded toward the periphery of the anterior aspect of the joint where they lay in an entangled ball. The appearance of a lump at the joint line may be only transitory, usually following an incident of giving way, buckling of the joint or actual locking; it then suddenly snaps into place or the patient may learn to reduce it by trick movements of the knee or by manual pressure.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES PECULIAR TO TEARS OF THE LATERAL MENISCUS

In general, the mildness of the symptoms is the pertinent feature of lesions of the lateral meniscus. In fact, this characteristic is responsible for the high incidence of failure to recognize the true nature of the lesion at the time of the original or subsequent injuries. As a rule the initial trauma results in minor tears of the posterior segment with no locking and only minimal pain, disability and effusion. As the result of repeated trauma to the structure or as the result of normal function the original tear increases in severity, implicating a larger segment of the meniscus; eventually it is of sufficient size to produce incidences of buckling, pseudo-locking and giving way, thereby interfering markedly with normal function and increasing the disability of the patient.

Several factors are responsible for the discrepancy in the intensity of the symptoms and the disability incident to lesions of the medial and the lateral menisci. The increase in mobility of the lateral meniscus as compared with the medial renders it less liable to trappings between the femoral and the tibial condyles. Also this characteristic of the lateral fibrocartilage prevents undue tearing and stretching of the synovial and the capsular attachments; hence, less pain is elicited and only minimally synovial reaction ensues than is noted in lesions of



the medial structures. The latter is evidenced by the small amount (and in some instances the absence) of synovial effusion which accompanies injuries of the lateral fibrocartilage. The more circular configuration of the lateral meniscus is a factor in limiting longitudinal tears to the posterior segment; furthermore this characteristic in a measure precludes displacement of the central portion of a tear toward the center of the joint. Hence true locking at the original or subsequent injuries is not a frequent occurrence. It must be added that the popliteus muscle through its fascial attachments and the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry resists forward displacement of the posterior segment; this action is an other safeguard of the lateral meniscus.

#### EVALUATION OF ORIGINAL INJURY

It was stated previously that in some cases examined shortly after an original injury the diagnosis is established readily provided that the patient relates an undisputable history of a rotatory strain of the knee joint resulting in mechanical true locking or of crunching sensation in the joint followed by synovial effusion and that there is still evidence of definite localized tenderness over the joint line of the affected meniscus. On the other hand the problem may be exceedingly difficult when the patient is examined for the first time several weeks after the injury and gives a vague history of the incident and no characteristic signs except a synovial effusion are demonstrable. The patient is unable to determine on which side of the joint the pain was more pronounced and palpation fails to elicit sufficient tenderness at any one point over the medial or the lateral joint to incriminate one of the menisci unequivocally. It becomes apparent that under such circumstances it is impossible to determine the type, the severity or the location of the lesion. Surgical exploration at this time is not justified and a course of "watchful waiting" should be pursued. Attention should be directed to the restoration of good quadri-

ceps tone and power and the eradication of the associated traumatic synovitis. After this is achieved the patient should be encouraged to resume his normal activities. If he has sustained a tear of one of the menisci early or late clinical manifestations pointing to the torn structure will become evident and of course should be treated accordingly.

#### RECURRENT INJURIES

The pattern of the clinical picture varies considerably after the original injury. It was stated previously that symptoms in recurrent incidences rarely approach the severity of the first episode. In a certain group of cases transitory locking and giving way of the knee joint are frequent occurrences over a period of several years eventually complete locking of the joint occurs. Frequently the joint of these patients exhibits varying degrees of osteoarthritis. In another group true locking never occurs. There are numerous incidences of giving way accompanied by synovial effusion. As in the previous group these cases are likely to develop chronic synovitis, osteoarthritis, relaxation of the ligamentous and the extensor apparatus and occasionally tearing of the second meniscus in the same joint. Finally in the majority of patients the subsequent clinical course is characterized by repeated episodes of true locking. The incidence of mechanical locking in recurrent cases is far greater than that in the original injury. Many of the lockings are transitory in nature and often the patients learn to unlock the joint by trick movements of the limb or by manual reduction. Such lockings usually are not accompanied by severe pain or joint reaction; however occasionally lockings occurring after long intervals may be associated with severe pain and large effusions approaching the intensity of the original injury.

#### LESIONS OF BOTH MENISCI

The incidence of coexistent lesions of both menisci is sufficiently high to force the

surgeon to suspect its occurrence in all recent cases, in the series reported herein, there were 16 cases. The diagnosis is often difficult to establish because the intensity of the symptoms may be pronounced on one side and only minimal on the opposite side. Although it is possible to sustain double tears at the initial injury, this occurrence is relatively rare. Generally, the second meniscus is injured subsequently to the original injury. In some patients the severity of the first incident may not be recognized; the patient may have in addition to a tear of the meniscus concomitant injuries of the tibial collateral ligament or of the anterior cruciate ligament or both. Failure to institute adequate treatment results in an unstable knee joint in which there are numerous incidents of giving way, pseudolocking and recurrent effusions. This train of events favors relaxation of the capsular and the ligamentous mechanisms, insufficiency of the quadriceps apparatus and softening of the menisci. In the light of these alterations it becomes apparent that the second meniscus is rendered vulnerable to injury and that tearing of the structure may result. Such a sequence of events may follow a lesion of one meniscus without implication of other structures or it may occur in cases in which a meniscectomy has been performed and in adequate postoperative management has failed to restore maximum stability of the knee and optimum quadriceps power. Such knees are liable to recurrent episodes of giving way, synovial effusions and hence injury to the remaining fibrocartilage. Lastly, failure to remove the cartilage in toto by leaving the posterior segment behind may result in a postoperative clinical course similar to that described above; this predisposes the patient to injury of the second meniscus.

#### HYPERMOBILE MENISCI

It is generally accepted that hypermobility of the menisci does exist and is capable of producing symptoms of internal derangement of the knee joint. It is observed most

frequently in young women with relaxation of the capsular tissues and the extensor apparatus. Abnormal mobility of the menisci may be a sequel of recurrent synovial effusions producing stretching of coronary ligaments and other peripheral attachments of the menisci. However, close scrutiny of the inside of the knee joint and an apparently normal meniscus following its removal in many instances may disclose a definite pathologic process responsible for the clinical manifestations. Too often, failure to investigate the inside of the knee joint thoroughly or to recognize and assess existing lesions adequately leads to an erroneous diagnosis of hypermobile menisci. The abnormal mobility is the result of severe stretching and in some instances actual tearing of the peripheral attachments of the structures by repeated rotatory strains on the flexed knee. Such alterations may give rise to symptoms of internal derangement and may predispose the meniscus to more severe injuries. In the author's series, 29 normal menisci were removed. Careful investigation at the time of operation of the joints and of the excised menisci failed to reveal evidence of any pathologic process except unusual mobility of the fibrocartilage. Sixteen of the 29 cases were checked in a subsequent follow-up study; of these 11 were completely alleviated of the symptoms, 3 were improved and 2 were not improved.

#### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Before arriving at a diagnosis of tears of the menisci, several important entities must be considered and eliminated; this is particularly true in cases which fail to provide a classical clinical picture of a torn meniscus. The lesions which demand attention are

- 1 Lesions of the infrapatellar fat pad
- 2 Cysts of the menisci
- 3 Parameniscal cysts
- 4 Discoid menisci
- 5 Regenerated meniscus

the medial structures. The latter is evidenced by the small amount (and in some instances the absence) of synovial effusion which accompanies injuries of the lateral fibrocartilage. The more circular configuration of the lateral meniscus is a factor in limiting longitudinal tears to the posterior segment; furthermore this characteristic in a measure precludes displacement of the central portion of a tear toward the center of the joint. Hence true locking at the original or subsequent injuries is not a frequent occurrence. It must be added that the popliteus muscle through its fascial attachments and the ligaments of Wrisberg and Humphry resists forward displacement of the posterior segment; this action is an other safeguard of the lateral meniscus.

#### EVALUATION OF ORIGINAL INJURY

It was stated previously that in some cases examined shortly after an original injury the diagnosis is established readily provided that the patient relates an undisputable history of a rotatory strain of the knee joint resulting in mechanical true locking or of crunching sensation in the joint followed by synovial effusion and that there is still evidence of definite localized tenderness over the joint line of the affected meniscus. On the other hand, the problem may be exceedingly difficult when the patient is examined for the first time several weeks after the injury and gives a vague history of the incident and no characteristic signs except a synovial effusion are demonstrable. The patient is unable to determine on which side of the joint the pain was more pronounced and palpation fails to elicit sufficient tenderness at any one point over the medial or the lateral joint to incriminate one of the menisci unequivocally. It becomes apparent that under such circumstances it is impossible to determine the type, the severity or the location of the lesion. Surgical exploration at this time is not justified and a course of "watchful waiting" should be pursued. Attention should be directed to the restoration of good quadri-

ceps tone and power and the eradication of the associated traumatic synovitis. After this is achieved, the patient should be encouraged to resume his normal activities. If he has sustained a tear of one of the menisci early or late clinical manifestations pointing to the torn structure will become evident and of course should be treated accordingly.

#### RECURRENT INJURIES

The pattern of the clinical picture varies considerably after the original injury. It was stated previously that symptoms in recurrent incidences rarely approach the severity of the first episode. In a certain group of cases transitory locking and giving way of the knee joint are frequent occurrences over a period of several years eventually complete locking of the joint occurs. Frequently the joint of these patients exhibits varying degrees of osteoarthritis. In another group true locking never occurs. There are numerous incidences of giving way accompanied by synovial effusion. As in the previous group these cases are likely to develop chronic synovitis, osteoarthritis, relaxation of the ligamentous and the extensor apparatus and occasionally tearing of the second meniscus in the same joint. Finally in the majority of patients the subsequent clinical course is characterized by repeated episodes of true locking. The incidence of mechanical locking in recurrent cases is far greater than that in the original injury. Many of the lockings are transitory in nature and often the patients learn to unlock the joint by trick movements of the limb or by manual reduction. Such lockings usually are not accompanied by severe pain or joint reaction; however occasionally lockings occurring after long intervals may be associated with severe pain and large effusions approaching the intensity of the original injury.

#### LESIONS OF BOTH MENISCI

The incidence of coexistent lesions of both menisci is sufficiently high to force the

surgeon to suspect its occurrence in all recurrent cases, in the series reported herein, there were 16 cases. The diagnosis is often difficult to establish because the intensity of the symptoms may be pronounced on one side and only minimal on the opposite side. Although it is possible to sustain double tears at the initial injury, this occurrence is relatively rare. Generally, the second meniscus is injured subsequently to the original injury. In some patients the severity of the first incident may not be recognized, the patient may have, in addition to a tear of the meniscus, concomitant injuries of the tibial collateral ligament or of the anterior cruciate ligament or both. Failure to institute adequate treatment results in an unstable knee joint in which there are numerous incidents of giving way pseudolocking and recurrent effusions. This train of events favors relaxation of the capsular and the ligamentous mechanisms insufficiency of the quadriceps apparatus and softening of the menisci. In the light of these alterations, it becomes apparent that the second meniscus is rendered vulnerable to injury and that tearing of the structure may result. Such a sequence of events may follow a lesion of one meniscus without implication of other structures or it may occur in cases in which a meniscectomy has been performed and in adequate postoperative management has failed to restore maximum stability of the knee and optimum quadriceps power. Such knees are liable to recurrent episodes of giving way synovial effusions and hence injury to the remaining fibrocartilage. Lastly failure to remove the cartilage in toto by leaving the posterior segment behind may result in a postoperative clinical course similar to that described above. This predisposes the patient to injury of the second meniscus.

#### HYPERMOBILE MENISCI

It is generally accepted that hypermobility of the menisci does exist and is capable of producing symptoms of internal derangement of the knee joint. It is observed most

frequently in young women with relaxation of the capsular tissues and the extensor apparatus. Abnormal mobility of the menisci may be a sequel of recurrent synovial effusions producing stretching of coronary ligaments and other peripheral attachments of the menisci. However, close scrutiny of the inside of the knee joint and an apparently normal meniscus following its removal in many instances may disclose a definite pathologic process responsible for the clinical manifestations. Too often, failure to investigate the inside of the knee joint thoroughly or to recognize and assess existing lesions adequately leads to an erroneous diagnosis of hypermobile menisci. The abnormal mobility is the result of severe stretching and in some instances actual tearing of the peripheral attachments of the structures by repeated rotatory strains on the flexed knee. Such alterations may give rise to symptoms of internal derangement and may predispose the meniscus to more severe injuries. In the author's series, 29 normal menisci were removed. Careful investigation at the time of operation of the joints and of the excised menisci failed to reveal evidence of any pathologic process except unusual mobility of the fibrocartilage. Sixteen of the 29 cases were checked in a subsequent follow up study of these 11 were completely alleviated of the symptoms, 3 were improved, and 2 were not improved.

#### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Before arriving at a diagnosis of tears of the menisci several important entities must be considered and eliminated. This is particularly true in cases which fail to provide a classical clinical picture of a torn meniscus. The lesions which demand attention are

- 1 Lesions of the infrapatellar fat pad
- 2 Cysts of the menisci
- 3 Parameniscal cysts
- 4 Discoid menisci
- 5 Regenerated meniscus

- 6 Incomplete removal of torn meniscus
- 7 Lesions of collateral and cruciate ligaments
- 8 Fractures—tibial spine and osteochondral fractures of patella
- 9 Loose bodies
- 10 Recurrent dislocation of patella
- 11 Osteoarthritis
- 12 Periarthritic lesions—bursae and exostoses
- 13 Chondromalacia patellae

#### LESIONS OF THE INFRAPATELLAR FAT PAD

It was noted previously that a large pyramid shaped pad of fat occupies the interval between the lower border of the patella and the anterior border of the articular surface of the tibia. This fat pad is invested by synovial membranes on both sides of the patella and close to its articular margin which fall into loose folds designated as alar folds, these converge below to form a median fold the *ligamentum mucosum* which extends to the anterior region of the intercondylar fossa of the femur in relation to both the anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments. From the inferior portion of the infrapatellar fat pad loose folds of synovials and fat tissue project inward covering the anterior portions of the menisci these processes have been designated as *semilunar pads* (Fisher). Some fibers of the articularis genu muscle continue downward and blend with the proximal portion of the fat pad.

During flexion of the knee joint the alar folds become taut and tend to displace the fat pad backward into the joint. In extension the quadriceps muscle pulls upward on the patella in turn the patella elevates the fat pad through its attachment to the alar folds. Upward displacement is enhanced further by contraction of the articularis genu muscle. In complete extension the ligament the capsule and the quadriceps mechanism all become tense thereby compressing the fat pad into a smaller compartment. From these observations it becomes obvious

that in the presence of some disorder in the stabilizing mechanism of the knee joint such as a poor quadriceps effusions and relaxation of the reinforcing structures of the joint, the synovial fringes or portions of the fat pad may be trapped between the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia also a hypertrophied fat pad is vulnerable to the same mechanism of injury. This results in hemorrhage synovial effusion and thickening of the fat pad. Repeated incidences result in hypertrophy and fibrosis of the structure. In addition to this form of injury the semilunar pads may be crushed by the same mechanism which crushes the anterior segments of the menisci. In the terminal phase of extension (screw home movement) the anterior portion of the inner femoral condyle glides over the inner semilunar pad and not over the superior surface of the anterior segment of the meniscus. This is readily demonstrable in fresh cadaver specimens of knee joints and has been observed many times by the author. Fortunately traumatic lesions of the fat pad and its processes are not encountered frequently in normal joints as a rule they occur in joints impaired by degenerative alterations such as osteo-arthritis chronic villous synovitis and in joints rendered unstable by an inadequate extensor apparatus. The very infrequency of the lesions is one reason that they are commonly overlooked. The nature of the symptoms that they produce is similar to tears of the menisci without true locking.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

Two varieties of lesions of the fat pad are discernible—chronic and acute. In the chronic cases the pertinent clinical manifestations are vague pain in the retropatellar region which is accentuated by recurrent incidents of giving way and varying amounts of synovial effusions accompanying the incidents. Depending upon the degree of dysfunction of the knee joint associated with the disorder wasting of the quadriceps in varying degrees is present. Generally in

between episodes of nipping of the fat pad regional tenderness is not a constant finding, however, immediately after a recurrent incident, tenderness may be elicited on pressure in both the anteromedial and the anterolateral joint angles. In cases of marked hypertrophy of the fat pad, some increased fullness is discernible on either side of the patellar tendon. This condition may be difficult to distinguish from a cystic mass in the retropatellar region arising from the anterior segment of the menisci or from the infrapatellar pad per se. Here one can arrive only at a presumptive diagnosis. The final diagnosis can be established solely by exploration of the affected region.

In the acute cases the aforementioned findings are accentuated. In addition forceful extension of the knee or against resistance is invariably associated with pain in the retropatellar region. These maneuvers tend to compress the swollen and hemorrhagic fat pad into a smaller compartment.

Crushing of the semilunar processes more closely simulates lesions of the anterior horns of the menisci than nipping of the synovial fringes and the alar folds. The cardinal features are pain on forceful extension or on extension against resistance, a sense of instability caused primarily by incidents of giving way and a sensation of something slipping inside the joint and the appearance of synovial effusions after any form of activity. If the screw home movement is intensified acute pain may be elicited. This maneuver is accomplished by forcefully rotating the tibia externally while the knee is in full extension.

#### TREATMENT

Conservative management should aim to reduce the swelling and the thickening of synovial tags and of the infrapatellar fat pad as a whole and also to restore the quadriceps mechanism to normalcy. This is achieved by nonweight bearing exercises designed to increase tone and volume in the quadriceps muscle and to eliminate exer-

cises and activity which predispose the structures to crushing and nipping. It becomes obvious that in the event that conservative treatment fails to afford the desired results, excision of the pathologic processes, the hypertrophied tag and the folds is justifiable. A median parapatellar incision provides ample exposure of the affected region and also of the articular surface of the patella.

#### CYSTS OF THE MENISCI

Cystic degeneration of the menisci usually is encountered in the third decade. It was stated previously that in the author's series the ages ranged from 17 to 58, the average being 26.5, the youngest patient in this series was a 17 year-old girl with bilateral lesions. The lesions occur more frequently in the male than in the female, in the series reported herein there were 34 males and 14 females. The lateral meniscus was implicated in 84 per cent of the cases and the medial meniscus in 16 per cent. Unless there is a concomitant tear of the meniscus, the patient exhibits no clinical features of internal derangement of the knee joint. The cardinal features are a constant, deep-seated pain and the presence of a swelling on the outer side of the joint. Often the patient will focus the attention of the examiner on the swelling. Characteristically of the lesion, the symptoms are never so severe that the patient is disabled seriously, also the pain is accentuated by activity, particularly arduous sports and is diminished in intensity by rest. The patient frequently volunteers the information that the tumefaction varies in size from time to time usually being larger after exercises. An example of this point was provided by a young male who exhibited on the first examination a large swelling the size of a walnut on the outer side of the knee joint. He was admitted to the hospital to have the cystic mass removed. Ten days later when the patient was examined prior to surgery the mass was barely perceptible. In fact, the



FIG. 136 Cystic degeneration of the lateral meniscus: note the tense rounded mass anterior to and beneath the fibular collateral ligament.

question of a possible mistake in diagnosis arose. However, at operation the diagnosis was confirmed. Small cysts may not cause real pain but rather a feeling of discomfort and tightness on the lateral aspect of the knee. Occasionally the pain is accentuated when the knee is extended fully. This is particularly true of large cysts arising in the lateral meniscus. The size of the lesion is decidedly variable, measuring from 1 cm. to 6 or 8 cm. along the largest dimension. Small cysts are encountered more commonly than large cysts.

Examination of the lesions of the lateral fibrocartilage reveals that the smaller cysts usually are situated on the joint line immediately in front of the fibular collateral ligament; they are exceedingly firm and are fixed to the surrounding tissues. There may be present a slight bulge of the lateral liga-

ment (Fig. 136). The larger cysts may be found on the joint line or they may comply on the anterolateral surface of the berosity of the tibia or to occupy a position above the joint line on the lateral surface of the condyle of the femur. These cysts are slightly more mobile and less firm than the smaller variety; however, the consistency of the larger lesions is a decidedly variable feature. Without exception flexion causes a reduction in the size of the cysts, while extension produces an increase in the size. Firm pressure over the swelling elicits tenderness. This is more pronounced when the lesions have increased in size following some form of activity. Compression of the fibrocartilage by forcefully abducting the completely extended lower leg always produces pain on the lateral aspect of the joint. The intensity of the pain may be severe. If the maneuver is performed while the cysts are enlarged. A lesion commonly associated with cysts of the lateral fibrocartilage is an incomplete oblique or transverse tear of the concave margin of the meniscus (Fig. 11). When such a lesion is present, such features of internal derangement as incidents giving way, a sense of instability in the affected extremity and recurrent effusions are superimposed on those resulting from the cysts.

Cysts of the medial meniscus are less common but are usually larger and more mobile than those associated with the lateral. Also they have a tendency to penetrate the tibial collateral ligament from which site they may extend either anteriorly or posteriorly; the latter path is more common so that the cysts may come to lie on the posteromedial or even the posterior aspect of the medial femoral condyle.

Occasionally the clinical picture is confused by the development of cysts from the posterior or the anterior horns of the menisci. Lesions of the anterior horns may reach relatively large dimensions, discede through the capsule and occupy a position under the deep fascia of the leg on either

side of the patellar tendon. Since they are not under great tension, pain is not a prominent feature, they may lead to the erroneous impression that one is dealing with a lesion of the infrapatellar fat pad (Fig 118).

Concealed cysts of the lateral meniscus have been reported in the literature. These are rare lesions and arise from the medial (free) border of the lateral fibrocartilage, extend into the center of the joint space and lie in relation to the cruciate ligament. The first case was reported by Ollerenshaw (1935) in a girl 11 years old. A second case was recorded by Ditttrick (1946), in this instance the cyst arose from the anterior horn of the lateral meniscus with a detached hypermobile anterior segment. The cyst retained an intracapsular position. As stated previously the author has encountered one case of a cyst originating from the anterior segment of the meniscus; however this lesion did not retain an intracapsular position (Fig 118).

#### PARAMENISCAL CYSTS

The lesions arise from bursae or prolongations of synovial pouches beneath the fibular collateral ligament. It is difficult to distinguish these swellings from true cystic degenerative changes of the fibrocartilage because the physical findings are identical. The true nature of the lesions may be determined only at operation when it becomes apparent that the meniscus is not implicated. The author has reported 6 such cases, 1 being associated with a discoid meniscus. A 5 year follow-up study of these cases disclosed no recurrence of the lesion in any of the cases; at operation only the cystic masses had been excised and the menisci had not been removed.

Displacement of a portion of the torn meniscus toward the periphery of the joint may produce a swelling in the region of the collateral ligaments which may coincide with cysts of the fibrocartilage. Long pendunculated tags produced by a transverse

tear superimposed on a longitudinal tear are the more common lesions capable of protruding at the joint line. They may be based anteriorly or posteriorly and may cross over the superior surface or pass beneath the inferior surface of the meniscus (Fig 101). Like cysts, these lesions produce a firm swelling which tends to recede on flexion and to become more prominent on extension of the knee joint.

Smillie has described another interesting meniscal lesion which is capable of simulating cysts. This is an incomplete oblique tear with a horizontal cleavage in the substance of the parent structure situated opposite the posterior lip of the tear; the posterior lip of the oblique tear passes through this plane of cleavage to protrude at the joint line, producing in this region a firm tumefaction which recedes with flexion and increases its dimensions on extension. The author never has encountered this lesion. Occasionally, the convex peripheral portion of the disk may project over the rim of the tuberosity of the tibia producing a swelling on the lateral aspect of the joint. The same effect may be produced by a longitudinal split in the periphery of the meniscus with outward displacement of the peripheral portion (Fig 111).

Intracapsular loose bodies which have attained attachment in the region of the lateral aspect of the joint may produce palpable and visible swellings in this region which may be interpreted erroneously as cysts of the cartilage. Roentgenographic study should establish the diagnosis. Bony excrescences and osteophytes formed at the osteochondral junction of the tibia or the femur on the lateral aspect of the knee joint likewise may be very misleading particularly when one knows that the above alterations may be incident to cystic degenerations of the menisci.

#### DISCOID MENISCI

The symptoms and the signs incident to congenital discoid menisci do not permit a



correct diagnosis in the majority of the cases. It is now generally recognized that the loud thud produced by flexion and extension of the knee joint and believed at one time to be pathognomonic of discoid menisci is demonstrable in a very small percentage of the cases. The lesions are encountered frequently in children, however many are observed in the older age periods. In the author's series the age ranged from 6 to 43. As previously noted, there were 10 males and 8 females and 17 lateral and 1 medial discoid menisci. The right knee was involved in 10 cases and the left in 8; there was 1 bilateral case. No case was encountered in which there existed both a medial and a lateral discoid meniscus, however such cases have been recorded in the literature.

When a loud thud or a snap is present, particularly in children and is associated with vague symptoms of internal derangement in the lateral compartment of the joint, a presumptive diagnosis of a discoid cartilage should be made. In most cases symptoms of internal derangement, mild in nature, are the only features present and for this reason the true nature of the lesion is overlooked frequently. Tears associated with hypermobility are common alterations in discoid menisci; these alterations may be responsible for a clinical picture resembling tears of the normal structures and hence may lead to an incorrect diagnosis. In addition cystic degeneration of congenital discoid menisci is a relatively common occurrence; this associated feature may be manifested clinically overshadowing the presence of the malformed fibrocartilage.

The mechanism whereby the audible snap or the thud is produced is described best by Smillie. He points out that the sound is the result of sudden alteration of the relationship between the meniscus and the condyles of the femur and the tibia. The thud occurs at the instant the condyle of the femur rides over the ridge when the meniscus is projected forward or backward. There are two varieties of ridges. One is formed by a

mound of fibrocartilage situated along the anterior margin of the indentation in the substance of the meniscus produced by downward pressure of the femur; the other comprises the thickened anterior peripheral margin of the meniscus. Under normal circumstances the meniscus moves backward and forward with the femoral condyle on extension and flexion of the joint. As the femoral condyle comes to lie deeper in the substance of the meniscus stretching of the peripheral attachments of the fibrocartilage occurs because now it must follow more closely the movements of the femoral condyle. Some minor injury occurring just short of full extension may force the femoral condyle over the ridge, driving the meniscus backward and thereby stretching still further or even tearing its anterior peripheral attachments. The meniscus is forced forward to its anatomic position when the leg is flexed and at a point short of full flexion the condyle of the femur rides over the ridge projecting the meniscus in a forward direction. It becomes apparent that repetition of the above mechanism results in pronounced hypermobility of the meniscus so that the most trivial incident may allow the condyle to ride over the ridge hence producing the snap. In fact many of the patients are capable of producing the sound voluntarily (Fig. 121).

#### REGENERATED MENISCI

Experimental and clinical evidence discloses that following meniscectomy the structure is replaced by a replica of fibrous tissue. After properly performed operations the incidence of recurrent internal derangements is exceedingly small leading one to conclude that the new structure is less vulnerable to injury than the original. Study of the reformed meniscus reveals that it is smaller in its breadth and width and more firmly attached to the capsule than the normal fibrocartilage. This last feature allows it less freedom of motion. In the light of these observations it becomes apparent that the replica is less liable to injury than the

normal structure, provided that no other factors exist which might predispose it to trappings between the femoral and the tibial condyles

Factors which tend to reduce the stability of the knee joint prejudice the integrity of the replica. The most common causes are associated tear of the anterior cruciate ligament, general relaxation of the extensor mechanism and subluxating patellae. The author has encountered lesions of regenerated meniscus in which one or two of the above abnormalities were present and were believed to be directly responsible for the ensuing lesions of the fibrous structures. The author has had the unique experience of encountering a torn regenerated meniscus in a patient from whose knee he had removed the original structure 3 years prior to the second operation. The patient was a young marine aged 23, a medial meniscus with a bucket handle tear had been removed in toto in one of the naval hospitals in 1945. At the time of that operation it was noted that an associated frayed anterior cruciate ligament was present. Following meniscectomy a concerted effort was made to develop power in the quadriceps beyond normal. This was done with the hope that the strong quadriceps would compensate for the defective anterior cruciate ligament thereby providing sufficient stability to the knee joint. In April, 1948, he was admitted to a civilian hospital with a history of recurrent incidents of giving way followed by effusion. The patient had been free of symptoms for 2 years following the first operation. He then sustained a severe twisting injury to the knee while playing football. Following this episode, he noted a sense of instability in the knee joint and experienced repeated incidents of giving way. Examination disclosed a moderately swollen knee, an advanced relaxation of the quadriceps and the ligamentous apparatus and a positive anterior draw sign. At operation a completely reformed meniscus was found with an incomplete longitudinal tear on the superior surface and two small pe-

dunculated tags based anterior on the inferior surface (Fig. 85).

Figure 86 depicts a tear in the posterior segment of a regenerated meniscus in which the large pedunculated tag lay across the superior surface of the meniscus and projected at the periphery behind the posterior margin of the tibial collateral ligament. It led to the erroneous diagnosis of a cyst in this region arising from the remnants of the original structure which had been left behind following meniscectomy.

#### INCOMPLETE REMOVAL OF TORN MENISCUS

It is common knowledge that many surgeons, either volitionally or because of technical difficulties, fail to remove the torn meniscus in toto. Some remove only the central portion of a bucket handle tear, others leave the posterior segment behind. Although many of these patients are relieved in a measure of some of the symptoms such as locking, most of them still exhibit manifestations of internal derangement. The cardinal features are giving way or buckling of the knee joint, a sense of instability and recurrent effusions. Generally the signs and the symptoms point to implication of the posterior segment. In such cases Fouché's and McMurray's tests should be employed to elicit the diagnostic click in the posterior compartment of the joint. In the differential diagnosis other lesions producing the same train of symptoms and signs must be considered, such as an insufficient quadriceps muscle, recurrent subluxating patellae and loose bodies. Figure 84 shows the regenerated anterior portion of a medial meniscus which is continuous with the posterior segment of the original structure. The peripheral attachments of the posterior segment were attenuated markedly and both surfaces show evidence of repeated trappings and maceration, however, no longitudinal tears are demonstrable.

#### LESIONS OF COLLATERAL AND CRUCIATE LIGAMENTS

These lesions may exist singly or as le-

sions concomitant with tears of the menisci. They are discussed fully in the chapter dealing with injuries of the ligaments. However, at this point it should be pointed out that rupture or strains of the deep fibers of the tibial collateral ligament are frequently associated with lesions of tears of the medial fibrocartilage. The cardinal features of this entity are maximum tenderness over the ligament on a level of the joint line and pain when the extended leg is abducted forcefully. However, these signs also are present when the meniscus is implicated making the diagnosis difficult. In the absence of tears of the meniscus no features consistent with internal derangement are present.

Often, lesions of the anterior cruciate are associated with medial meniscal tears, and in some instances both injuries plus a rupture of the tibial collateral ligament may be present. Instead of a torn anterior cruciate ligament one may encounter a fracture or an avulsion of the tibial spine. In rare instances both cruciates may be torn. The surgeon should be aware constantly of the many combinations of lesions that may exist. Only in this way can he plan an adequate course of treatment.

Subsequently the more common combinations and their management will be discussed.

#### FRACTURES OF TIBIAL SPINE AND OSTEOCHONDRAL FRACTURES OF PATELLA

As noted above fracture or avulsion of the tibial spine may be a lesion coexistent with meniscal tears and is the equivalent of a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament. Osteochondral fractures of the patella associated with lesions of the fibrocartilage have been recorded in the literature and also observed by the author. The possibility of coexisting lesions makes it mandatory that in every case of meniscectomy the patella be scrutinized carefully preoperatively by roentgenographic study and during the operation by either visualization or palpation of the articular cartilage of the patella.

#### OTHER DIAGNOSTIC AIDS

**Roentgenographic Studies.** Routine roentgenograms do not depict lesions of the menisci; their value lies in eliminating other pathologic disorders which may simulate the clinical picture of torn menisci. Also, concomitant lesions with torn menisci may be uncovered. Such abnormalities as osteochondritis dissecans, loose bodies, subluxating patellae, osteochondral fractures of the patella and fractures of the tibial spine are readily detectable by roentgenographic studies. Failure to recognize these lesions when they exist singly or are associated with meniscal tears may be responsible for a poor result following removal of a meniscus which was considered preoperatively to be the sole causative agent for the internal derangement. In the light of this information it becomes apparent that routine roentgenograms comprising anteroposterior, lateral and axial views should be taken of every case exhibiting signs and symptoms consistent with a lesion of the menisci.

**Pneumoroentgenography.** Recently much has been written on pneumoroentgenography as a valuable aid in determining the types and the locations of meniscal lesions and to establish the presence of other intra-articular lesions such as ruptures of the cruciate ligaments. Some workers employ one of the iodized oils as the contrast medium and report a high incidence of accuracy in making the correct diagnosis. The author has experimented with several of the various techniques and has come to the conclusion that the routine use of these methods is not indicated. The techniques and the interpretations of the roentgenograms are difficult to master and do not influence the ultimate decision relative to the management of the individual case. The information provided by a history taken carefully and a physical examination executed meticulously suffices to make the correct diagnosis in the majority of the cases of meniscal lesions. Moreover in a high per-

centage of cases of atypical internal derangements of the knee joint arthrography fails to establish the correct diagnosis, making it apparent that the use of this method as a routine diagnostic aid is not warranted. The author is of the opinion that in atypical cases presenting difficult diagnostic problems exploration of the joint is indicated, provided that the symptoms are sufficiently severe to justify the procedure.

## TREATMENT OF TRAUMATIC LESIONS OF THE MENISCI

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Experimental and clinical observations have formulated the present-day concept of treatment of injuries of the menisci. These observations emphasize the futility of conservative measures in the majority of meniscal lesions. It has been recorded already that Kling's investigation proved conclusively that tears in the menisci which fail to extend into the vascular convex periphery of the fibrocartilages or into the peripheral attachments of the structures do not heal. Also lesions which communicate with the vascular zones heal, provided that the limb is immobilized adequately for a sufficient period of time (3 weeks). Clinical experience supports these observations. Unfortunately, the majority of tears of any practical significance occurring in humans are situated in the avascular regions of the menisci where healing cannot be expected. It becomes obvious that from a practical viewpoint conservative management is of doubtful value except as a temporary measure. Also, if lesions of the menisci of sufficient severity to cause symptoms of internal derangement are treated conservatively, recurrent incidents must be anticipated. Finally, insistence on conservative therapy invariably results in irreversible secondary osteoarthritic changes in the joint, pronounced insufficiency of the extensor apparatus and relaxation of the ligaments and the capsule. All of these factors, singly or in

combination, are capable of producing marked disability of the knee joint. In addition, it is generally known that if meniscectomy is performed soon after the initial injury, the incidence of good results is far greater than if the meniscus is removed after an interval of months or years. After secondary alterations have taken place in the cartilaginous elements and in the supportive structures of the joint, removal of the torn meniscus will not restore the joint to complete normalcy. Although the intensity of the symptoms may be decreased, some impairment of function is usual; the degree of disability parallels the severity of the irreparable damage to the joint as a whole. In order to prevent the aforementioned unfavorable sequelae, early surgical excision of the affected meniscus is the treatment of choice. However, there are instances in which conservative measures are justified, either as a preliminary or a definitive form of treatment.

### CONSERVATIVE MANAGEMENT

Frequently a definite diagnosis cannot be established following an initial injury. Although one may suspect a tear of one of the menisci, the available clinical and roentgenographic evidence may be inconclusive. Also, doubt as to the true nature of the lesion may exist after the acute reaction has subsided. In such cases a conservative program should be adopted until subsequent events permit one to arrive at an accurate estimate of the original lesion. Cases falling into this category should be treated as cases of traumatic synovitis. After the effusion is absorbed and the quadriceps tone is restored to normalcy, normal activity should be pursued. If recurrent episodes of locking or giving way accompanied by effusion occur, the case should be re-examined carefully and the diagnosis determined. If one of the menisci is believed to be the responsible agent for the internal derangement, it should be removed.

Occasionally, lesions of some of the sup-

porting structures of the joint may occur in conjunction with tears of the menisci the most common abnormalities are tears of the tibial collateral ligament and tears of the cruciate ligaments. Unless true locking is evident, these lesions may obscure the meniscal tears. In the absence of mechanical locking, cases of meniscal tears associated with one or both of the above complications should be treated conservatively until the acute reaction subsides. A waiting period of 2 to 3 weeks allows synovial effusions to be absorbed and tissues laden with fluid and blood to approach a state of normalcy. The detailed management of combined lesions of the ligaments is discussed fully in Chapter 8 "Traumatic Lesions of the Ligaments." When coexisting lesions of the ligaments are associated with a locked knee joint it is imperative that the knee be unlocked first. The subsequent treatment should be along the lines outlined above. In general the goal of conservative treatment in recent meniscal injuries with implication of the supporting structure is to preserve the efficiency of the quadriceps mechanism and to induce rapid restoration of all tissues to normal. This is achieved best by promoting

absorption of synovial effusion by compression bandages and in cases of large effusions by aspiration of the joint. Weight bearing during the early period of treatment should be prohibited. Quadriceps exercises should be commenced immediately and performed regularly only by such a regimen are the tone and the volume of the quadriceps maintained at a level approaching normal. As a rule the optimum time for surgical intervention is 2 or 3 weeks after the original injury. The author recommends this same mode of preoperative management for locked knee joints without impairment of the supportive structures, which are reduced spontaneously or manually.

#### THE LOCKED KNEE JOINT

The necessity of immediate reduction of a displaced torn cartilage is understood readily when one observes the changes that occur in the fibrocartilage in a joint that has been locked for several days. Upon opening the joint capsule varying amounts of yellow viscid synovial fluid escape. The torn meniscus has lost its sharply defined configuration and appears to be thickened, soft and edematous. It is no longer firm and



FIG. 137 Reduction of a locked medial meniscus. (A) With the hip and the knee flexed, first the leg is abducted (B) while abduction is maintained the leg is rotated internally and externally (C) When the maximum amount of internal rotation is attained the leg is extended suddenly. For locking due to a lateral meniscus the above procedure is reversed.

elastic but instead is soft and friable in cases of long standing. It becomes apparent that the structure is not capable of withstanding even minor degrees of compression without crushing of its substance or extension of the existing tear. It also becomes obvious that these alterations impede restoration of the displaced structure to its anatomic position. In the light of these observations the wisdom of reducing a torn meniscus as soon as possible following the locking incident becomes self-evident. Moreover, the maneuvers designed to attain reduction of the displaced fragment must be executed gently without undue force. Severe compression by the femoral condyle on the anterior portion of the meniscus not only may result in a forward extension of the tear into the anterior segment, but also the central concave fragment may remain in relation to the inner aspect of the condyle of the femur. This allows some increase in the range of extension but not complete extension. The author has encountered several cases in which complete extension was obtained following manipulation; however subsequent removal of the menisci disclosed that the tears extended into the anterior horns, and the central fragment became displaced permanently in the intercondylar notch of the femur and fixed to the cruciate ligament.

#### TECHNIC OF REDUCTION

Reduction of a dislocated meniscus is performed with the reservation that it is a temporary measure designed to relieve the patient of pain and to prevent further alterations in the displaced structure (Fig. 137). Inasmuch as healing will not occur after replacement of the meniscus the patient should be made aware of the purpose of this preliminary procedure and should be informed that surgical removal of the meniscus at the optimum time is essential in order to restore maximum function in the knee joint.

Generally an anesthetic is unnecessary; however in apprehensive patients or in dif-

ficult cases a general anesthesia will facilitate the procedure. Pentothal Sodium is an excellent anesthetic agent for the purpose. The surgeon should form a mental picture of the position of the displaced cartilage and then execute the following maneuvers which endeavor to force the displaced meniscus toward the periphery of the joint. The patient assumes the supine position on a firm table and attempts to relax the extremity completely. If the medial meniscus of the right knee is involved, the surgeon stands on the outer side and steadies the knee with the left hand and grasps the right ankle firmly with the right hand. The limb is then fully flexed, this movement tends to disengage the femoral condyle from the trapped portion of the meniscus. Next the inner joint space is opened by abducting the leg; this is a very important step in the procedure, and the greatest amount of abduction possible should be attained. While this position is maintained, the leg is rotated gently inward and outward. When the maximum amount of internal rotation is attained the leg is suddenly but not forcefully extended; an audible click often accompanies this last maneuver, indicating that reduction has been achieved. For lesions of the lateral meniscus the leg is adducted and in the final extension rotated externally.

A free and complete range of painless motion in the knee demonstrated by the patient is the best indication that reduction of the meniscus has been achieved. At this point one must note the position of the opposite leg in complete extension. It may be possible that a few degrees of hyperextension is normal for the patient; therefore 180° extension in the affected limb might not indicate that full extension has been achieved and a mechanical block might exist. In cases in which replacement of the meniscus has not been accomplished the patient is unable to attain full extension actively and passively; the examiner encounters an elastic resistance to complete extension. Attempts to extend the leg beyond this point of resistance elicits pain. If

it becomes apparent that the meniscus has not been restored to its normal peripheral position, the surgeon must refrain from the use of force. Forceful attempts to unlock the joint inflict further injury to the damaged meniscus. As a rule the longitudinal tear is extended forward into the anterior segment. In addition, forceful extension of the leg in the presence of an anterior intra-articular mechanical block stretches the anterior cruciate ligament. The surgeon is never justified in allowing weight bearing on a locked knee joint. In such cases immediate surgical intervention is the treatment of choice; there is no other alternative if irreparable damage to the knee joint is to be avoided.

#### MANAGEMENT OF RECURRENT LESIONS

It has been noted previously that in many instances after the initial injury with or without locking of the joint, the subsequent incidents may exhibit very little tissue reaction, in fact, the patient himself may learn to reduce the displaced meniscus and then continue with his normal activities until the next episode occurs. It is interesting to note the number of patients who have made a mental adjustment to the fact that they possess a "trick knee" and either voluntarily or because of poor counsel are of the opinion that nothing can be done medically or surgically for their malady. Others labor under the fear that surgical intervention is more likely to accentuate the disability than to improve it.

Early removal of the offending meniscus is the treatment of choice in all recurrent cases. The surgeon must overcome the patient's apprehension and convince him that failure to excise the torn meniscus can lead only to irreparable damage. In cases of long standing with secondary changes in the supporting elements and the articular surfaces of the joint (osteo-arthritis) the patients must be advised that excision of the meniscus will lessen the degree of disability but that the joint will not be restored to

normalcy. If the patients are advised correctly, they will accept some residual disability without discrediting the operative procedure. On the other hand, uncomplicated cases of recurrent lesions treated by meniscectomy before irreversible damage is done should achieve restoration of normal function.

#### MANAGEMENT OF TEARS OF BOTH MENISCI

Although tears of both menisci may occur at the original injury, this is indeed rare. Generally, the second lesion usually is a sequel of the instability of the knee joint following the first tear of the meniscus. It becomes apparent that when two menisci are involved, some impairment in the supporting structures of the joint exists such as pronounced insufficiency of the quadriceps apparatus and laxity or tears of the ligamentous structure particularly the tibial collateral ligament and the anterior cruciate ligament. When there is no doubt as to the diagnosis of tears of both fibrocartilages, removal of the medial and the lateral structures at a single operation is indicated.

Occasionally only one meniscus may be implicated yet its identity may be obscure because of the absence of positive localizing signs. On the other hand it was stressed previously that occasionally lesions of the lateral meniscus may fail to produce symptoms pointing to the lateral compartment of the joint but instead exhibit clinical manifestations which erroneously implicate the medial side of the joint. Such cases are a challenge to the most acute diagnosticians who often are chagrined when exploration of the joint reveals the true nature of the lesion and fails to confirm the preoperative diagnosis. When it is established that one is dealing with an internal derangement of the knee joint and yet the clinical features fail to localize the lesion, all the available clinical data must be scrutinized carefully then the side of the joint which is most

likely to be implicated is explored, and the meniscus is excised. If the structure exhibits a tear, one can assume that it is the offending meniscus, nevertheless, the opposite structure also must be investigated to the extent that an incision on the opposite side of the joint will allow. In the event that a normal meniscus is removed, it becomes mandatory that a second incision on the opposite side be made and the remaining meniscus excised.

#### CAUSES OF POOR RESULTS FOLLOWING MENISCECTOMY

**Faulty Operative Technic.** Occasionally meniscectomies performed for simple uncomplicated cases of meniscal tears are followed by a stormy, prolonged convalescence and at times even by some permanent disability. Faulty technic employed in the operative procedure may be the responsible factor. Too often the operation is attempted by unskilled surgeons who fail to understand the delicate nature of the joint structure, particularly the synovial membrane. The author has observed on many occasions the knee joint subjected to brutal traumatizing force in an attempt to spread the joint space in order to make the meniscus more accessible. The synovial membrane is stretched and torn away by such maneuvers predisposing to active bleeding after the joint is closed and the tourniquet is removed. In addition, the collateral ligaments may be stretched and in several instances the tibial collateral ligament actually was severed. By using the meniscectomy knife or the scissors blindly in the posterior compartment of the joint the peripheral attachments may be lacerated crudely. Such mauling procedures invariably result in severe postoperative tissue reactions and massive hemarthrosis. These unfavorable sequelae may lead to a protracted postoperative session and in more severe cases to some permanent impairment of the supportive structures of the joint. One case stands out vividly in the author's mind. He was called

in consultation to see a young man 22 years old on whom a meniscectomy had been performed 3 weeks prior to the visit in question. According to the surgeon who performed the operation, the knee joint became distended markedly immediately after the operation. On the following day 150 cc of blood was aspirated from the joint, and a tight compression bandage was applied. In spite of this, bleeding recurred, necessitating a second aspiration of blood on the third day. Up to the time of the consultation, the joint had been aspirated on 8 different occasions, and notwithstanding continuous compression and the use of ice packs bleeding continued, accompanied by severe pain. Examination of the limb disclosed a distended, boggy knee joint, a 30° flexion deformity and profound wasting of the quadriceps muscle. Any attempt to move the joint actively or passively elicited severe pain. It was apparent that a large vessel was responsible for the active bleeding and exploration of the joint was recommended. The original incision was opened and all free and clotted blood was flushed out of the joint and the suprapatellar pouch. The tibial collateral ligament was found to be severed completely, a ragged laceration of the synovial membrane and the capsule was noted on the inner aspect of the joint in the region of the peripheral attachment of the meniscus and a spurting blood vessel was found in the posterior limb of the laceration behind the posterior margin of the tibial collateral ligament. The vessel was clamped and ligated; the severed ends of the collateral ligament were approximated with interrupted cotton sutures. This case exemplifies the degree of surgical trauma that may be inflicted on a knee joint by surgeons not qualified to perform meniscectomies.

**Meniscectomies Performed Too Late.** In neglected cases of long standing the prognosis following meniscectomy must be guarded. Not infrequently these cases are complicated by secondary changes which preclude restoration of normal function.



after the torn fibrocartilage is removed. Repeated episodes over months and years of giving way and locking of the knee joint followed by effusion invariably lead to advanced wasting and insufficiency of the quadriceps apparatus, relaxation of the collateral ligaments and even stretching of the anterior cruciate ligament. In the presence of the aforementioned sequelae excision of a torn meniscus will result in some improvement of function because the primary offending agent is removed, and now the efficiency of the extensor mechanism can be cultivated to higher levels provided that a well regulated and intensive postoperative regimen is instituted. On the other hand complete return to normality may not be possible. In such an event the patient should be informed of the true nature of the situation and must be prepared to accept some residual permanent dysfunction of the knee joint. This really means that the patient usually can perform most activities except those which impose undue strains, particularly rotatory strains on the knee joint.

Occasionally clinical manifestations of a meniscal tear are encountered in joints exhibiting evidence of osteo-arthritis. It is often difficult to decide which lesion is responsible for the disorder. In cases with a definite history of a torn meniscus with subsequent increasing disability one must conclude that the meniscal lesion was the irritating factor which is responsible for the development of osteo-arthritis. It is true that pathologic processes associated with osteo-arthritis such as erosions and incongruity of the articular surfaces, peripheral bony excrescences, hypertrophied fat pads and villous synovitis may simulate the clinical picture of internal derangement resulting from meniscal tears. Nevertheless when the clinical picture is suggestive of a tear of the meniscus amelioration of the symptoms cannot be anticipated unless the implicated fibrocartilage is removed. Even in doubtful cases little harm is done by exploring the suspected compartment of the knee

joint and removing the meniscus. In cases where the symptoms are vague and fail to incriminate the menisci, and clinical studies point to the prevailing osteo-arthritis as the cause for the symptoms, excision of one or both menisci is not justified. More can be gained by simple conservative measures designed primarily to improve quadriceps power. The author does not wish to convey the thought that menisci never are involved in cases of osteo-arthritis resulting from wear tear and aging. The study on degenerative lesions of the knee joint at various ages reveals that the structures may show advanced alterations comprising fibrillation, shredding and thinning. Inasmuch as the knee joints with advanced osteo-arthritis invariably exhibit varying degrees of relaxation of the extensor apparatus the menisci are subjected to repeated minor traumas and in some instances cause severe pain and marked disability. Unfortunately lesions of this nature are encountered most frequently in obese patients, usually women. They do not always respond to conservative methods. In such cases the author does not hesitate to remove the offending structure. Now redevelopment of quadriceps power can be commenced and expected to attain such levels that painless function is restored. However it must be stressed that after removal of the meniscus the patient should not expect a normal joint.

**Unrecognized Lesions of the Remaining Meniscus.** It has been noted previously that occasionally lesions of both menisci are present yet the symptoms may point to only one side of the knee joint. Also lesions of the lateral meniscus may refer the symptoms to the medial compartment. It becomes obvious that a torn meniscus may be left behind or an unaffected meniscus removed. In such instances the patients are not relieved of the disorder and the operative procedure falls into disfavor.

**Failure to Remove the Meniscus in Toto.** Today as in the past there is considerable controversy relative to the re-

removal of the entire meniscus or of only the central portion of a longitudinal tear or only the local excision of pedunculated flaps. There is no doubt that the supporters of partial excision of the meniscus attain a high percentage of good results, nevertheless, many poor results following meniscectomy are the result of failure to remove all of the defective meniscus from the joint. It is common knowledge that many posterior tears cannot be visualized until the entire meniscus is removed (Figs 91 to 95). Also, more than one longitudinal tear may exist and excision of the one fragment which happens to be displaced into the center of the joint will benefit the patient in no way (Fig 104). If in the course of exploration of a suspected lesion of the meniscus the posterior peripheral attachments are mobilized it becomes imperative that the entire fibrocartilage be removed, regardless of whether a tear is observed or not. Failure to do this predisposes the posterior segment to trappings between the condyles of the femur and the tibia. If a lesion is situated in the middle of the meniscus, some surgeons remove only the anterior two thirds of the structure. There is no justification for such a procedure, because the remaining posterior segment becomes hypermobile and eventually will be caught between the articular surfaces of the femoral and the tibial condyles.

One must concede that partial removal of a meniscus is a simpler operation than complete removal. On the other hand men skilled in the surgery of the knee joint and familiar with the surgical anatomy of the region are capable of excising the fibrocartilage in toto with minimal surgical trauma. Moreover the postoperative course, the complications and their severity in these cases should not differ from those following partial excision. In the light of the observations recorded excision of the entire meniscus is the procedure of choice. The technique by which this is accomplished rests with the skill and the training of the surgeon.

**Inadequate Postoperative Management.** The surgeon's responsibility does not terminate with the completion of a skillfully performed meniscectomy, for it is his moral obligation to prescribe and supervise a regimen of postoperative management that will restore normal joint function, particular attention should be paid to redevelopment of quadriceps power. There is no doubt that some failures following meniscectomy are attributed directly to inadequate treatment after operation or to lack of comprehension of the importance of this phase of the treatment on the part of the surgeon or the patient or both. Neglected cases invariably have a protracted convalescence, and in some instances the resulting quadriceps weakness causes repeated episodes of giving way and effusions, these sequelae may result in irreparable damage and varying degrees of permanent dysfunction of the knee joint.

**Coexisting Lesions.** Failure to identify coexisting lesions before or during operation may be responsible for poor results in some cases. The lesions most likely to be overlooked are hypertrophied fringes of the fat pads, free loose bodies, tears or attenuation of the anterior cruciate ligament, tears or sprains of the tibial collateral ligament, chondromalacia of the patella and a lesion of the remaining cartilage.

#### OPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

The successful outcome of meniscectomy depends on many factors. It never should be considered as a minor procedure and should be performed by surgeons well versed in the anatomy of the region and possessing a high degree of technical skill. In addition the surgeon should be keenly aware of the importance of the preoperative and the postoperative management of the patient. Also he should be familiar with the complications that may ensue and should be competent to recognize and treat them.

#### PREOPERATIVE REQUISITES

Too much emphasis cannot be laid on

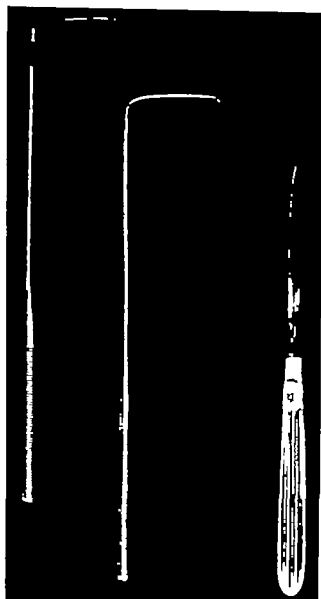


FIG 138 Knife and retractors employed by the author to perform meniscectomies.

focus his mind on what he is doing. This will facilitate resumption of the exercises and preclude disorientation of the quadriceps mass after the operation is performed.

Preparation of the local area, position of the patient, use of the tourniquet and choice of anesthesia are discussed in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures."

#### SPECIAL INSTRUMENTS

Many meniscus knives have been devised from time to time to facilitate removal of the fibrocartilage without undue surgical trauma to the other elements of the joint. The knives most frequently employed are the Lowe-Breck knife and the Smillie knives. Some surgeons use a long thin tenotomy knife. The knives devised by Lowe-Breck and Smillie are particularly useful in mobilizing the posterior segment of the meniscus and in severing its peripheral attachments. The author has designed a knife with a long thin, straight blade which is somewhat flexible and is capable of holding a sharp edge (Fig 138). At the end of every operation the knives employed are resharpened and held in readiness for the next meniscectomy.

As a rule any narrow thin blade retractor can be utilized to retract the ligamentum mucosum and the collateral ligaments. The author prefers those depicted in Figure 138. The Martin meniscus forceps or the Kocher clamp are useful instruments because they grasp the meniscus firmly and permit manipulation of the structure without losing their bite.

Skillful execution of meniscectomy does not depend so much on the design of the knife that the surgeon employs as on the dexterity which he acquires with the use of the instrument of his choice. This is attained by patience, practice and paying attention to all the details of the operation. The operation entails a high degree of technical skill. The young surgeon should realize this and should strive to achieve it.

the importance of familiarizing the patient with his role in the program. He should be impressed with the fact that in a large measure the success or the failure of the procedure rests on the degree of co-operation that he himself provides and the enthusiasm with which he executes his assignments. This is followed by instructing the patient in quadriceps setting and straight leg exercises which should be performed on a regulated schedule for several days prior to operation. In order that the patient may master the proper technique of the exercises they should be performed under supervision and the patient should be made to

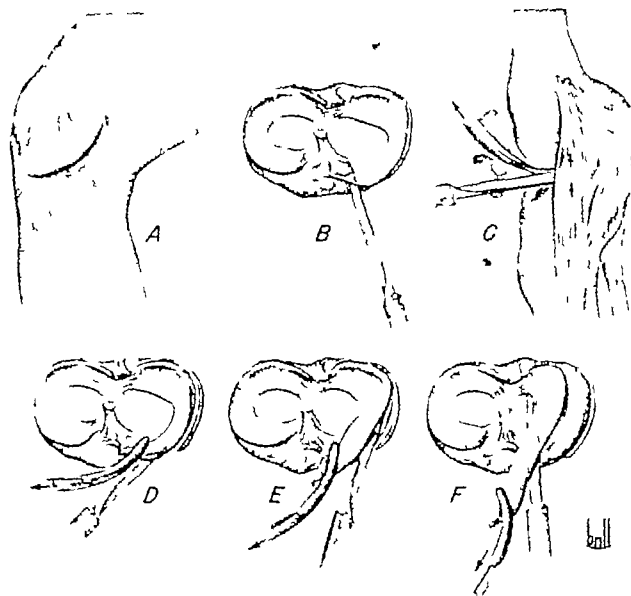


FIG 139 Technic of excising the medial meniscus

## INCISIONS

Numerous incisions have been conceived for the removal of the menisci; these are described in detail in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." For excision of the medial meniscus the author employs a slight modification of the Fisher incision; essentially it is an anteromedial curved incision. The advantage of the modification lies in the mild curve of the incision; this feature lends itself readily to extension of the incision posteriorly. In cases where a second incision in the capsule behind the tibial collateral ligament is needed in order to facilitate removal of the posterior segment of the meniscus.

## TECHNIC OF MENISCECTOMY

**Medial Meniscus** (Fig 139) With the patient in the supine position and the knee flexed 90° over the end of the table, the incision begins just above the joint line immediately anterior to the tibial collateral ligament. It curves gently downward and forward to the medial margin of the patellar tendon; it terminates at a point  $\frac{1}{2}$  cm. below the superior border of the tibial condyle. The stockinette is clipped to the wound edges with Michel clips. With a second scalpel the aponeurosis, the capsule, and the synovium are incised in the same line of the skin incision. Upon opening the joint, varying amounts of synovial fluid

will escape immediately in cases of marked joint irritation large quantities of fluid will gush out suddenly and obscure the entire operative field. The fluid should be sponged gently with moist gauze the delicate synovial membrane must not be traumatized further by rough handling and coarse dry gauze sponges. Next retractors are placed in the wound in such a manner that the wound edges are separated and the infrapatellar fat pad is displaced laterally. At this point the joint is examined thoroughly. Examination includes inspection of the medial meniscus the articular surface of the femur and the tibia the anterior cruciate ligament, the anterior tibial spine and the anterior segment of the lateral meniscus. It is practically impossible to examine to any satisfaction the articular surface of the patella and the suprapatellar pouch with the knee flexed at 90°. Therefore, the leg is extended to 180° by an assistant. The subsequent relaxation of the extensor apparatus allows visualization of the articular surface of the patella also a digital examination of the patella can be made readily. This incision does not afford adequate visualization of the suprapatellar pouch hence a digital examination must be made of this region.

With the scalpel the anterior segment of the meniscus is mobilized by severing its peripheral attachments to the capsule and the synovium then the blade is placed beneath the meniscus and all its attachments to the tibia are divided under vision. The free end of the meniscus is grasped with a Kocher clamp and a retractor displaces the tibial collateral ligament inward and backward. The thin-bladed meniscectomy knife is placed between the tibia and the under surface of the meniscus and while traction directed toward the center of the joint is maintained on the meniscus its peripheral attachments to the inner surface of the tibial collateral ligament are divided from below upward. An assistant now gently but firmly abducts and rotates the leg exter-

nally this maneuver tends to open the inner side of the joint space. The remaining peripheral tibial attachments of the meniscus are divided by passing the blade in a horizontal plane along the posterior periphery of the tibial plateau. At the completion of this step the tibia now is rotated internally and the meniscus is dislocated readily toward the center of the joint its remaining posterior central attachment is divided under direct vision.

As previously noted in rare instances it is impossible to remove the posterior segment of the medial meniscus without undue surgical trauma to other structures. This is true particularly when the ligamentous apparatus of the joint is unusually tight making access to the posterior regions difficult. Also the anteromedial incision may not be adequate to permit removal of a meniscus with advanced cystic degeneration. In such cases the skin incision described above is extended posteriorly and slightly upward to a point 1 cm. behind the medial epicondyle of the femur. The skin edges are retracted upward and downward exposing the aponeurosis posterior to the collateral ligaments and an oblique curved incision is made immediately posterior to the ligament in the aponeurosis the capsule and the synovium. It begins immediately below the epicondyle of the femur and continues slightly obliquely downward and forward crossing the joint line. This provides excellent exposure of the posterior region of the medial compartment and of the posterior segment of the medial meniscus. The posterior segment of the meniscus is freed from its peripheral capsular and posterior central attachments by sharp dissection. Now the entire meniscus can be delivered either from the anterior or the posterior incision in the capsule. Often the procedure is simplified when the freed anterior half of the meniscus is passed through the posterior incision before the posterior attachments are cut then the entire meniscus is delivered from the posterior opening.

The meniscus should be removed by clean sharp dissection, tugging, tearing and laceration of the tissues are not necessary and are to be deprecated. A final inspection of the joint is made before closure. All free remnants of the articular cartilage, the synovial membrane and the fibrocartilage are removed, invisible fragments in the posterior compartment of the joint are flushed out with a solution of normal saline. In order to facilitate closure of the wound the end of the table is raised to the horizontal so that the leg assumes a position of complete extension.

The wound is not closed in layers. Closure is achieved by approximation of the aponeurosis, the capsule and the synovium by interrupted cotton sutures passing through all layers, interrupted cotton sutures are also used in the subcutaneous tissue and the skin. At the termination of the operation 10 cc. of a solution of penicillin (250 units per cc. of sterile water) is injected directly into the joint cavity. This precaution against possible infection has been used routinely in all knee joint operations for the past 5 years.

**Lateral Meniscus.** The lateral meniscus is exposed by an anterolateral incision similar to the incision described above. It begins immediately above the joint line and in front of the fibular collateral ligament. It curves gently downward and forward terminating approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$  cm. below the head of the tibia just lateral to the outer margin of the patellar tendon. The aponeurosis, the capsule and the synovium are incised in the level of the skin incision. Upon inspecting the inside of the joint one notes that the anterior horn of the lateral fibrocartilage occupies a position posterior to that of the anterior horn of the medial meniscus. Also with the knee in the flexed position the anterior horn of the lateral meniscus tends to retract. These features add to the difficulty of mobilizing the anterior central attachment of the structure. After the anterior segment is freed and trac-

tion is maintained on it toward the middle of the joint, one observes that the meniscus as a whole moves forward with ease. This greatly facilitates its excision making the procedure considerably less difficult than removal of the medial structure. The factors responsible for the relative freedom of the lateral meniscus are the absence of attachment of the convex periphery of the structure to the fibular collateral ligament and the popliteus tendon which is situated between the outer surface of the meniscus and the capsule.

If a posterior incision in the joint is necessary, the skin incision is extended posteriorly and slightly upward to a point 1 cm. behind and on a level with the lateral epicondyle of the femur. The incision in the aponeurosis and the capsule is made parallel with and behind the fibers of the fibular collateral ligament. When the capsule is incised the popliteus tendon is visualized anterior to the incision. The posterior segment is readily accessible and can be excised by sharp dissection. This is a useful incision when large cysts of the meniscus are encountered which cannot be delivered from the anteromedial incision in the joint capsule.

**Indications for Opening Both the Anterior and the Posterior Compartments.** Although in most instances the meniscus can be excised in toto through an incision anterior to the collateral ligaments, occasions are encountered in which an incision in the posterior compartment is necessary in order to facilitate complete removal of the fibrocartilage. The joint may be unusually tight so that the removal of the posterior segment is difficult without the use of undue forces to open the joint. In such cases an incision posterior to the collateral ligament will make the posterior segment readily accessible and should be employed. The posterior compartment also should be opened in cases in which the posterior segment has been left behind in a partial meniscectomy. Attempts to remove the struc-

ture through the anterior opening may result in a transverse rupture at the junction of the regenerated anterior portion of the meniscus and the remaining posterior portion. The reformed meniscus which comprises fibrous tissue may not withstand the amount of traction necessary to dislocate the structure into the center of the joint. Also, as pointed out by Smillie, a regenerated meniscus is friable and if its removal is contemplated it is best excised by first mobilizing the anterior portion through an incision in the anterior compartment and then opening the posterior compartment to complete the excision of the posterior segment; this precludes rupture of the structure during its removal. Large cysts of the menisci may render the delivery of the intact fibrocartilage through an incision in the anterior compartment difficult or impossible; here the use of a second posterior incision simplifies the procedure. Finally when loose bodies in the posterior compartment are associated lesions of a meniscal tear they are made readily accessible by an incision in the joint capsule posterior to the collateral ligament.

**Treatment of Cysts of the Menisci**  
Once cystic degeneration of the menisci has progressed to the size that symptoms are produced the treatment of choice is surgical excision of the entire meniscus together with the concomitant lesion. Conservative measures are futile. In cases of small lesions of either the medial or the lateral meniscus the operative procedure is similar to that of excision of the fibrocartilage. However large cysts may demand a modification of the technic. As noted previously an incision in both the anterior and the posterior compartments simplifies the operation.

Cysts of the medial meniscus may reach large proportions and project posteriorly as far as the popliteal space. In such instances a second incision made in the posterior compartment is necessary in order to identify the limits of the cystic mass and to remove it in toto together with the meniscus. Now

the mass can be readily dissected free from the inner side of the capsule under vision. In the event that the cyst has penetrated the tibial collateral ligament the anterior and the posterior portions of the affected meniscus together with the cystic mass first are mobilized, then the exit of the mass through the capsule and the ligament is widened by two small vertical incisions one above and one below the point of exit; the extruded mass now can be made to retrace its steps and is delivered with the meniscus either through the anterior or the posterior incision in the capsule.

Large cystic masses of the lateral meniscus together with the fibrocartilage are removed best by the use of an anterior and a posterior capsular incision. The posterior incision is of particular value in disclosing the relationship of the cysts to the fibular collateral ligament and the tendon of the popliteus muscle; also through it the cysts and the posterior segment of the fibrocartilage are mobilized readily and dissected free from all surrounding tissue under vision.

**Important Technical Points in Meniscectomy**  
Failure to pay strict attention to every detail of the operation, step by step, may result in much confusion on the part of the surgeon and severe trauma to the delicate tissues of the knee joint.

Adequate exposure of the meniscus is the first requisite of the operation. This can be achieved only by an accurately placed incision. As noted previously many incisions have been designed to provide the desired exposure. However too often the incision chosen is not placed correctly. It may be too high or too low in relation to the joint line, too far anteriorly or too far posteriorly. The edges of such improperly placed incisions often are stretched severely by the surgeon in an effort to obtain the desired exposure. Incisions crossing the course of the infrapatellar nerve may cut this structure. If possible this should be avoided by identifying the nerve and retracting it out of harm's way. However division of the

nerve is not a serious technical error, it rarely results in unfavorable sequelae. After the deep fascia of the leg is divided the capsule and the synovium should be picked up between 2 forceps before they are opened, in order to avoid injury to the joint structure. The incision in the capsule and the synovium is made in the line of the skin and the fascial incision, on the medial side it begins just in front of the tibial collateral ligament about  $\frac{3}{4}$  cm above the superior margin of the meniscus and continues to the inner margin of the patellar tendon. Then the synovial and the capsular attachment of the anterior segment of the meniscus are visualized.

Large hypertrophied fat pads may obscure the anterior central attachment of the meniscus. If it is not possible to obtain adequate exposure by lateral displacement of the fat pad it may be necessary to cut away a portion of this structure. Large severed vessels in the fat pad should be ligated.

When the middle third of the meniscus is freed from its peripheral attachment, the true plane between the inner surface of the capsule and the convex periphery of the meniscus must be identified and the thin bladed knife should be passed between the two structures under vision. This is achieved readily by making traction on the freed anterior segment in the dissection of the center of the joint. Careful execution of these steps precludes division of the tibial collateral ligament or cutting through the convex periphery of the meniscus. Blind cutting of the attachments of the middle third may result in partial division of the segment. This weakens the structure so that moderate traction may tear it from the posterior segment. If this complication occurs, the posterior third may retract deeply in the posterior compartment making its removal exceedingly difficult. If the posterior segment is not readily accessible a second incision in the posterior compartment facilitates its removal.

In most instances after the thin blade is

passed along the posterior periphery of the tibial plateau, the posterior segment is mobilized sufficiently to allow the entire meniscus to be dislocated into the intercondylar notch, now the remaining capsular and the posterior central attachments can be divided under vision. Occasionally, in tight joints or in cases of a meniscus with normal posterior capsular attachments, it may be difficult to displace the meniscus as a whole into the center of the joint. As previously noted in these cases forceful brutal manipulation should be avoided. Instead the posterior segment should be freed through an incision in the posterior portion of the capsule as described above.

#### IMMEDIATE POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

At the close of the operation before the tourniquet is removed, 2 or 3 layers of cotton are wrapped around the knee extending from mid thigh to 6 inches below the knee. This is compressed around the joint by a 3 inch elastic bandage extending from the toes to the middle of the thigh, making uniform, snug compression. The author does not employ a posterior gutter splint. Now the tourniquet is removed, it is a safe policy for the surgeon to assume the responsibility of this procedure. When the patient is transferred to his bed the limb is elevated on hard pillows in a position of extension and ice bags are placed on both sides of the knee joint. Compression is maintained for 7 or 8 days, the sutures are removed on the ninth or the tenth postoperative day.

#### RESTORATION OF NORMAL FUNCTION

Following surgical procedures on the knee in which the continuity of the extensor mechanism is not interrupted the methods employed to restore joint function and normal muscular development are essentially the same. However, they are tempered by the duration and the severity of the lesion prior to surgical intervention and by the individual peculiarities of the patient. Also the intensity of the program must be gov-



erned by the tolerance of the patient strenuous or prolonged exercises may overtax the quadriceps muscle resulting in varying degrees of effusion and pain. In general quadriceps setting exercises are commenced on the second day and should be executed under supervision 2 or 3 times daily for 15 to 20 minutes. In addition, the patient should practice forceful contraction of the muscle every hour for 5 minutes. As soon as the patient has mastered the quadriceps drill straight leg exercises without resistances are added as a rule this may be achieved on the third or the fourth day. Occasionally patients are encountered who have great difficulty in performing the straight leg exercises these individuals require special attention and coaching. The author has found that straight leg exercises performed against the resistance of a rubber tubing as depicted in Figure 203 rapidly restores power and volume in the quadriceps he prefers this form of exercises to loaded straight leg raising using sand bags and weights. By adding additional pieces of tubing the resistance against straight leg raising is increased progressively. Like the quadriceps drill the straight leg raising exercise is performed on a regulated schedule for 5 minutes every hour. This program is continued for 10 days during this period no weight bearing is allowed. However some flexion exercises of the knee joint may be performed within the confines of the compression bandage.

At the end of 10 days the compression bandage is removed and if no effusion exists and the quadriceps shows good power weight bearing is permitted. In the presence of an effusion or a weak quadriceps or both no weight bearing is allowed. During the next week knee flexion exercises in addition to straight leg exercises against resistance are continued weight bearing during this phase of the treatment is kept to a minimum and frequent rest periods are prescribed. Long periods of standing walking or performing occupations<sup>1</sup>

may cause an effusion which may retard the progress of the recovery. As a rule by the third week the quadriceps muscle is ready to start resistance exercises as described in Chapter 7. These develop power and volume in the extensor apparatus which in turn stabilizes the knee joint and protects the ligamentous apparatus against repeated strains. Once power is restored exercises such as stair-climbing cycling and the use of pulleys can be employed to develop endurance.

It is of utmost importance to study and evaluate correctly the tolerance of the individual patient. Some patients progress more slowly than others and if in the former the muscles are worked beyond their capacity recurrent effusion ensues and may influence the ultimate recovery seriously or even may produce irreparable damage to the knee joint.

Normal restoration of function is achieved in from 10 to 12 weeks. At the end of this period most patients are capable of resuming normal activities this applies also to those engaged in strenuous athletics or laborious occupations. Individuals doing light or sedentary work may return to their employment as early as the fourth or the fifth week after operation. Patients receiving compensation for a knee injury may not adhere to the timetable recorded above. In spite of the absence of objective findings some of these individuals may register pain limitation of motion and stiffness in the knee joint. It has been noted frequently that these vague symptoms rapidly disappear after a monetary settlement satisfactory to the patient has been made.

#### POSTOPERATIVE COMPLICATIONS

One or more of the complications about to be discussed may occur even when meniscectomy is performed by the most adroit surgeon. However their incidence and severity is increased if the operation is executed by the surgeon when the surgeon fails to pay attention to all the de-

tails of the procedure. In general, unfavorable sequelae tend to prolong convalescence and in some instances are responsible for irreparable and permanent damage to the joint.

#### HEMARTHROSIS

Active bleeding into the joint cavity is usually the result of failure to look for and ligate large vessels during the course of the operation. Often large vessels pierce the infrapatellar fat pad. When this structure is incised, these vessels can be seen readily if one takes time to investigate the area. They should be picked up and tied. A common source of bleeding is division of the inferior lateral geniculate artery when the lateral meniscus is removed. The close proximity of this vessel to the periphery of the capsular attachment of the fibrocartilage makes it unusually vulnerable to surgical trauma. In addition, failure to apply a snug compression bandage around the knee prior to removal of the tourniquet may result in troublesome hemorrhage into the joint, and too early mobilization of the joint may be responsible for postoperative bleeding.

The clinical features depend upon the amount of blood in the joint cavity and the reaction of the patient. Small hemorrhages may give rise to minimal local and systemic reactions and little discomfort. On the other hand, more extensive hemorrhages may produce pronounced reactions and symptoms of great intensity. In the latter cases the patient has intense acute pain which differs from the sense of fullness and distention incident to an effusion. On palpation the joint tissues exhibit a rubbery resistance and firm pressure elicits acute tenderness. The local temperature is increased and the patient discloses evidence of a systemic reaction manifested by a rise in temperature and an increase in the leukocyte count.

Blood in the joint cavity is an irritant to the synovial membrane. Failure to remove this agent by the normal channels principally the lymphatics, results in thick-

ening of the synovialis, organization of the blood clots and eventually formation of adhesions. Massive hemorrhages cause increased intra-articular pressure which in turn collapses the lymphatic channels; hence, there is interference with the normal process of removing the blood cells from the joint cavity. In the light of these observations it becomes imperative that hemarthrosis be recognized early and that the joint be decompressed by repeated aspirations. This should be followed by the application of a tight elastic compression, and the joint should be placed at complete rest until the danger of recurrence of the bleeding has passed, this entails a period of 1 to 2 weeks. At the end of this period the regimen to restore quadriceps power and joint function is instituted. Hemarthrosis invariably prolongs the period of convalescence and recurrent hemorrhages may result in irreversible joint changes implicating chiefly the synovialis and the extensor mechanism of the joint.

#### POSTOPERATIVE EFFUSION OF TRAUMATIC ORIGIN

Small amounts of synovial effusions following meniscectomy are encountered frequently. The volume is usually greater in recent meniscal lesions than in old lesions in which varying degrees of relaxation of the capsule and the ligaments have occurred thereby making the excision of the meniscus a relatively simple procedure. As a rule in skillfully performed operations the resulting small effusion is not a serious sequela and readily disappears when the extensor apparatus regains good power and adequately stabilizes the joint and protects it from harmful strains. Large massive effusions evident shortly after the operation are generally the result of excessive surgical trauma, undue manipulation of the joint and much prolonged stretching of the soft tissues. This complication is observed frequently in cases where the surgeon insists on excising the meniscus through a small

buttonhole incision and severely stretches the wound edges in order to expose the structure in addition, he is forced to work blindly in the joint. No one can dispute that in a large measure large persistent post-operative effusions can be prevented by handling the tissue gently and by manipulating the joint sparingly. Fortunately in the advent of large effusions resulting from the aforementioned causes, no serious consequences ensue, provided that the post-operative management of the lesions is adequate. In these cases weight-bearing must not be permitted until quadriceps exercises have restored sufficient tone and power to the extensor apparatus to protect the soft tissue elements from further injury incident to weight bearing. Under such a program the effusion will subside gradually but return to normalcy is definitely prolonged.

Exercises designed to strengthen the quadriceps muscle never must exceed the capacity of the muscle strenuous or prolonged exercises cause fatigue which in turn predisposes the joint structures to harmful strains because the protective action of the quadriceps is diminished or lost. Persistent effusion is a frequent concomitant finding in these cases. This is also true in cases in which unrestricted weight bearing is permitted before the quadriceps has regained sufficient power to protect the joint from strains incident to weight bearing.

#### EFFUSION OF INFECTIOUS ORIGIN

Occasionally persistent effusion is observed in patients who also exhibit signs of a local inflammatory process and a systemic reaction comprising low grade fever, leukocytosis and increased sedimentation rate. Often the clinical picture is interpreted erroneously as a postoperative reaction. In stead this is a low grade sepsis of the joint, the postoperative use of antibiotics directly into the joint and administered parenterally is responsible for the confusing clinical picture. The author has observed 3 such cases the knee joints are swollen exhibit in-

creased local temperature and on palpation disclose more resistance than would be encountered in a simple effusion. This feature is produced by capsular thickening and a hyperplasia of the synovial membrane. Aspiration of the joint reveals a turbid synovial fluid with a high cellular count. Culture of this fluid fails to reveal the presence of organism undoubtedly, the antibiotics are responsible for the negative cultures. Repeated aspirations and complete immobilization of the limb does not prevent further recurrence of the effusion. The author's cases responded favorably to the following treatment. The limb was put at complete rest by adhesive traction supplied to the lower leg making a pull not greater than 5 pounds continuous hot packs were applied to the joint. The joint cavity was aspirated every second or third day, and following each aspiration 500 000 units of penicillin in 10 cc. of sterile water was injected into the joint. In addition 300 000 units of penicillin was administered parenterally twice daily. At the end of 2 weeks the local and the systemic reactions had disappeared then quadriceps exercises were instituted to restore the limb to normalcy. Smith has reported similar cases in which he employed fever therapy induced by the use of typhoid vaccine this measure was used in combination with the administration of antibiotics.

#### SEPSIS

Improved methods and technics of aseptic surgery have rendered true sepsis with frank pus in the joint cavity a rare complication of meniscectomy. The recent advent of chemotherapy and antibiotic agents has played a major role in reducing the incidence of this tragic sequel. Frank sepsis has not occurred in any of the author's cases but several cases were seen in consultation. When such a complication occurs it is usually indicative of a break in the aseptic technic or may be caused by reactivation of a focus of infection elsewhere in the body. This complication exhibits both general

and local manifestations. The patient becomes toxic and shows evidence of dehydration, the pulse is rapid, and the temperature is septic in character, occasionally, the patient may have repeated chills followed by a rapid elevation of the temperature. Blood studies reveal a high leukocytosis and a rapid sedimentation rate. Local signs are always present, pain is severe, and the knee is held in a position of flexion. Muscle spasm is a constant clinical feature, and the joint is swollen and exhibits increased local temperature. The slightest active or passive motion elicits severe pain. In the early stages roentgenologic studies fail to show any evidence of cartilage or osseous involvement except some slight demineralization of the bones. However, the joint space may be widened and the capsule distended. Negative roentgenograms at this stage are of no clinical significance.

Management of a septic knee should strive to control the infection without resorting to open drainage of the knee joint. However, every effort should be made to evacuate the joint cavity of the pus which causes rapid lysis of the articular cartilage. Free drainage not only renders the joint vulnerable to secondary organisms but also deprives the joint of the benefit of the bactericidal effect of the synovial fluid. It is important to identify the organism responsible for the infection, hence the joint should be aspirated immediately, a smear and a culture of the fluid should be obtained and the susceptibility of the organisms to the different antibiotic agents determined.

At the completion of the first aspiration 500,000 units of penicillin in 10 cc. of sterile water is injected into the joint cavity. This is performed daily. In addition 300,000 units is administered intramuscularly twice daily and 1 Gm of sulfadiazine is given by mouth twice daily. The entire limb is placed at complete rest by adhesive traction applied to the lower leg to which from 3 to 5 pounds of weight are suspended.

Continuous hot fomentations to the joint during the day provide considerable comfort to the patient. If the patient is very septic, small transfusions of whole blood (250 cc.) given every 3 or 4 days will reduce the toxicity and improve the general health and the resistance of the patient. A close watch must be maintained on the patient's fluid and electrolyte balance, and appropriate intravenous fluids should be administered as required. The aforementioned regimen is continued until all evidence of constitutional and local manifestations of the infection has disappeared. The patient is now ready to undertake the task of restoring optimum function in the limb. In these patients the convalescence may be protracted and rehabilitation progresses slowly.

#### POSTOPERATIVE PAIN

Although some discomfort in the operative area is present, severe pain is not a common complaint. Pain minimal in intensity may be felt when the patient first attempts to initiate quadriceps drill and straight leg raising. However, this diminishes rapidly in severity. Traction of the quadriceps apparatus on the incision is responsible for this pain. However, severe pain immediately or several days after the operation may occur. This may be the result of one or a combination of several factors.

**Immediate Postoperative Pain.** In most instances this complication invariably follows severe surgical trauma to the soft tissues during the course of the operative procedure. Undue traction on and stretching of the synovialis, the capsule and the skin margins is the chief cause. Also forceful manipulation of the joint and severe rotatory strains inflicted on the ligamentous apparatus while trying to attain adequate exposure of the posterior regions of the joint will result in acute postoperative pain. In most cases massive postoperative effusions usually demonstrable from 24 to 48 hours after the operation are frequently concomi-

tant findings of such unnecessary surgical trauma

Occasionally an elastic compression bandage applied too tightly may cause intense pain. Usually this is associated with varying degrees of swelling of the limb distal to the bandage. In those instances rapid removal and reapplication of the elastic bandage plus elevation of the extremity suffice to relieve the acute pain.

Failure to attain complete hemostasis may result in massive hemorrhage into the joint which as previously noted always is associated with persistent pain. The diagnosis and the management of this sequela have been discussed previously.

**Late Postoperative Pain.** The most common cause for the onset of persistent intense pain several days following the operative procedure is the accumulation of a large volume of blood in the joint cavity. This may result from injudicious forms of exercises, too early weight bearing before the quadriceps is sufficiently strong to stabilize the knee joint or latent active bleeding resulting from inadequate hemostasis. As previously recorded, another cause of latent pain is sepsis which may be in the nature of a low grade inflammatory process accompanied by persistent effusion or true suppuration of the joint. These forms are associated with systemic reactions of varying severity.

**Painful Scar.** The incidence of persistent painful scars following excision of the medial meniscus is exceedingly low. However varying degrees of hypersensitivity of the scar for several months after operation is now an infrequent occurrence. Generally in these cases the degree of sensitivity diminishes progressively and after 3 or 4 months it disappears completely. The disorder is undoubtedly the result of irritation of the severed ends of the infrapatellar plexus which are caught in the scar and are irritated by stretching of the scar or by the clothing during motion. In 2 cases this fea-

ture became so annoying that the patients demanded some form of intervention. Both responded to minimal doses of irradiation to the sensitive scar.

Much has been recorded in the literature relative to the formation of neuroma following division of the main trunk of the infrapatellar nerve. In fact, many incisions were designed purposely to avoid division of the nerve. Clinical experience reveals that painful neuromata following operative procedures on the medial aspect of the knee are exceedingly rare. In the author's series only 2 cases developed a persistent painful area in the region of the operative area following excision of a medial meniscus. In one a small tender mass the size of a pea was palpable immediately below the line of the incision; this proved to be a true neuroma arising from the proximal end of the severed infrapatellar nerve. In the second case a mass also about the size of a pea was palpable 1 cm proximal to the line of the incision. The lesion was excised and microscopic study disclosed its true nature; it was a glomus tumor. In the event that a painful neuroma is encountered, the lesion should be excised, together with a portion of the nerve from which it arises; this removes the severed end of the nerve from the line of the skin incision.

A more common complaint than pain in the region of the scar is anesthesia distal to the line of incision. The size of the anesthetic area is governed by the number of branches of the infrapatellar nerve which have been divided. If the main trunk has not been severed the area is relatively small. Division of the main branch results in larger areas of anesthesia. Fortunately in most cases the anesthesia is not permanent; the rich overlap of sensory fibers of the infrapatellar plexus in this region ensures restoration of normal sensation. Permanent anesthesia occurs only in the exceptionally rare cases and in these it generally is of no significance.

# PHLEBOTHROMBOSIS AND THROMBOPHLEBITIS

The incidence of these lesions following meniscectomy is exceedingly rare, nevertheless, 4 cases were encountered in the author's series. Early active exercises of the affected limbs after operation is a major prophylactic factor and is responsible for the infrequent occurrence of the disorders. In the 4 cases of this series the patients were all over 40 years old (47, 52, 56 and 58 respectively), the disorder was ushered in with pain and swelling in the calf muscles. In 2 cases tenderness along the course of the internal saphenous vein in the thigh was demonstrable. In all the temperature rose slightly above normal. All cases responded favorably to antibiotic and anticoagulant therapy. Also the extremities were elevated and wrapped in voluminous hot packs. Quadriceps drill was performed every hour within the packs. Within 3 to 4 days the tenderness and the swelling diminished substantially and the temperature returned to normal levels. At the end of this period the patients were put on the usual program of exercises to restore normal quadriceps power and joint function. None of these cases required blocking of the lumbar sympathetic ganglia with procaine; however, this method has been employed in thrombophlebitis subsequent to operative procedures elsewhere in the body (particularly following operations on the hip joint in elderly people) and has been found to be a valuable adjunct in relieving pain and muscle spasm and in enhancing resolution of the thrombus.

## DEGENERATIVE LESIONS OF THE MENISCI

It was pointed out in Chapter 6 "Disorders of the Extensor Apparatus of the Knee Joint" that the menisci like other elements of the knee joint exhibit degenerative changes resulting from wear, tear and senescence. These abnormalities in-

crease in gradient in each successive decade, however, the changes are in most instances compatible with normal function. The alterations comprise loss of elasticity, fraying and wrinkling of the inner free margins and narrowing of the peripheral attached margins. Advanced abnormalities comprise thinning and fasciculation of the menisci, some fibrocartilages even exhibit plaques of calcareous material grossly within their substance or on the surfaces.

Occasionally, degenerated menisci give rise to symptoms and signs of internal derangement of the knee joint; this is particularly true when mechanical disorders of the joint exist such as genu valgum and genu varum. Such disorders subject the menisci readily to abnormal stresses which tend to increase the intensity of the degenerative changes. In addition many of these patients are obese with poor quadriceps tone and relaxation of the capsular and the ligamentous structures. The degree of insufficiency of the extensor mechanism plays a large role in the severity of symptoms; nevertheless, the meniscus per se tends to impede recovery. In addition to a sense of instability in the knee joint, pain is a pertinent clinical manifestation; it is usually localized on the side of the affected meniscus and pressure over the peripheral attachments of this structure invariably elicits acute tenderness.

Conservative treatment should be employed as the method of choice in all these cases; these comprise physical measures such as radiant heat, gentle massage and a regulated program of heavy resistance exercises designed to increase the power of the quadriceps muscle. If such measures fail, one is justified in removing the implicated meniscus. The author has observed several cases in which after the meniscus was removed the aforementioned palliative measures effected marked improvement in the stability of the joint and alleviated the pain.

It is true that many cases disclose vary-

ing degrees of osteoarthritis which may be responsible in a measure for the pain and the dysfunction. However this is no contra-indication to the plan of treatment outlined above provided that the signs and the symptoms point to the meniscus as the most

responsible offender. Moreover the presence of a degenerated fibrocartilage which is capable of producing severe disability tends to increase the progression of the osteoarthritic process, and therefore its removal is justifiable.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Benninghoff A. Über den funktionellen Bau des Korpels. *Verhandl. anat. Gesellsch.* 31: 250 1927
- Form und Bau der Gelenkkorpel in ihren Beziehungen zur Funktion, *Ztschr. Zellforsch. u. mikr. Anat.* 2: 783 1925
- Bonnan J. G., and Boldero J. L. Air arthrography of the knee joint. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 85: 64 1947
- Bristow W. R. Cysts of the semilunar cartilages of the knee. *The Robert Jones Birthday Volume* pp. 269-278 London Oxford Univ. Press 1928
- Bruce J., and Walmsley R. Replacement of the semilunar cartilage of the knee after operative excision, *Brit. J. Surg.* 25: 17 1937
- Cave E. F., and Staples O. S. Congenital discoid meniscus: a cause of internal derangement of the knee. *Am. J. Surg.* 54: 371 1941
- DePalma A. F. Bursitis under the fibular collateral ligament. *Ann. Surg.* 127: 564 1948
- Dieterich, H. Die Regeneration des Meniscus. *Deutsche Ztschr. Chir.* 230: 251 1931
- Dittich R. J. Concealed cyst of the lateral meniscus of the knee. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 28: 646 1946
- Duncan, Donald. An anomaly of the knee-joint: lateral interarticular disc, *Anat. Rec.* 53: 305 1932
- Dunn, Naughton. Observations on some injuries of the knee joint. *Lancet* 1: 1267 1934
- duToit G. T. and Enslin, T. B. Analysis of 100 consecutive arthrotomies for traumatic internal derangement of knee joint. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 27: 412 1945
- Dwyer F. C. and Taylor C. Congenital discoid internal cartilage. *Brit. M. J.* 2: 287 1945
- Ebner A. Ein Fall von Ganglion am Kniegelenksmeniskus. *München. med. Wchnschr.* 51: II Hälfte 1: 3 1904
- Elliott H. C. Studies on articular cartilage growth mechanisms. *Am. J. Anat.* 58: 127 1936
- Ellis V. H. Congenital abnormality of the external semilunar cartilage. *Lancet* 1: 1359 1932
- Fairbank H. A. T. Internal derangement of the knee in children and adolescents. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. (Sect. Orthop.)* 30: 42 1937
- Finder J. G. Discoid external semilunar cartilage: a cause of internal derangement of the knee joint. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 16: 804 1934
- Fisher A. G. T. The disk shaped external semilunar cartilage. *Brit. M. J.* 1: 688 1936
- Internal Derangement of the Knee Joint, New York, Macmillan Co., 1933
- Furbank, T. J. Knee joint changes after meniscectomy. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 30-B: 664 1948
- Herzmark M. H. Bilateral giant meniscus: a case report. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 18: 1032 1936
- Jean G. Kystes de la région externe du genou. *Arch. méd. et pharm. nav.* 111: 84 1921
- Kystes du cartilage semi-lunaire externe du genou (meniscite chronique pseudo-kystique). *Bull. et mém. Soc. nat. chir.* 50: 75 1924
- Jones E. B. The discoid or congenital abnormality of the interarticular fibro-cartilage of the knee joint. *Liverpool Med.-Chir. J.* 43: 78 1935
- King D. Regeneration of the semilunar cartilage. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 62: 167 1936
- The function of semilunar cartilages. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 18: 1069 1936
- King E. S. J. The formation of ganglia and cysts of the menisci of the knee: observations on the Golgi apparatus. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 70: 150 1940
- Kulowski J. Meniscus cyst of knee joint. *J. Missouri State M. A.* 37: 503 1940
- Kulowski J. and Rickett H. W. The relation of discoid meniscus to cyst formation and joint mechanics. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 29: 990 1947
- Lloyd, E. I. Clicking knee in childhood, *Lancet* 1: 525 1933
- MacConaill M. A. The function of intra-articular fibro-cartilages with special reference to the knee and inferior radio-ulnar joints. *J. Anat.* 66: 210 1932
- McMurray T. P. The semilunar cartilages. *Brit. J. Surg.* 29: 407 1942
- Meekison D. M. Discoid lateral meniscus of the knee joint with rupture and cyst formation. *Brit. J. Surg.* 28: 135 1940

- Middleton D S Congenital disc-shaped lateral meniscus with snapping knee Brit J Surg 24 246 1936
- Ober F R Discoid cartilage trigger knee Surgery 6 24 1939
- Ollerenshaw Robert The development of cysts in connection with the external semilunar cartilage of the knee joint, Brit. J Surg 8 409 1920-21
- A further note in the development of cysts in connection with the semilunar cartilages of the knee joint, Brit J Surg 23 217 1935
- Premister D B Cysts of the external semilunar cartilage of the knee J.A.M.A. 80 593 1923
- Smillie I S Injuries of the Knee Joint Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1946
- The congenital discoid meniscus J Bone & Joint Surg 30 B 611 1948
- Steindler Arthur Mechanics of Normal and Pathological Locomotion in Man Springfield, Ill. Thomas 1935
- Sutton J B Ligaments Their Nature and Morphology Ed. 2 London, Lewis 1897



## 6

# Disorders of the Extensor Apparatus of the Knee Joint

### CONGENITAL MALFORMATIONS

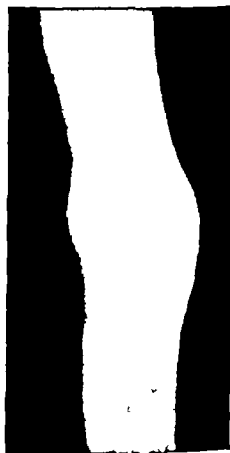
Congenital anomalies of the extensor apparatus are not encountered frequently; they may implicate the muscular and the tendinous portion of the extensor mechanism, the patella or both. The alterations may impede normal function of the knee joint and in some instances lead to severe disability. A rare congenital alteration is malformation of the quadriceps group of muscles; some or all of its elements may be underdeveloped or even absent (Fig. 140); the vastus medialis is especially prone to exhibit these abnormalities. Of the components of the extensor apparatus, the patella exhibits the greatest number of malformations. Occasionally it occupies an abnormally high position in the quadriceps tendon or it may be displaced laterally for

varying distances (Fig. 141). The insertion of the patellar tendon may be on the lateral surface of the tibia instead of on the tibial tubercle. Various forms of contractures of the soft tissue elements of the knee may occur. Notably among these are the contractures of the extensor apparatus, causing an extension deformity of the knee as in congenital genu recurvatum and contracture of the flexor of the knee. These soft tissue contractures will be discussed more fully in



FIG. 140 Extensor mechanism of the knee joint with congenital absence of the vastus medialis.

FIG. 141 Congenital anomaly of the patella. It occupies a position on the lateral aspect of the knee joint. In this case the insertion of the patellar tendon is on the lateral surface of the tibia.



Chapter 7, "Congenital and Acquired Deformities of the Knee Joint."

CONGENITAL ABNORMALITIES OF  
THE PATELLA

As noted above, numerous and varied congenital deformities of the patella have been observed. The patella may be absent. Although rare, this may be a hereditary characteristic; absence of the patella has been

recorded in association with multiple arthrodysplasia. Frank A. Stuart brought to the author's attention a case of congenital absence of the patellae in a male 16 years of age; the knee joints are capable of normal function. The patient's mother also has congenital absence of the patella—she lacks 50° of extension in each knee (Fig. 142 A and B). The patella may be underdeveloped; it may occupy an abnormally high position in



FIG. 142 (Top) Bilateral congenital absence of the patellae in a boy 16 years old. This patient can perform complete extension (Bottom) The mother of this boy. She lacks 50° extension in each knee. (From Dr. Frank A. Stuart, Tulsa, Okla.)

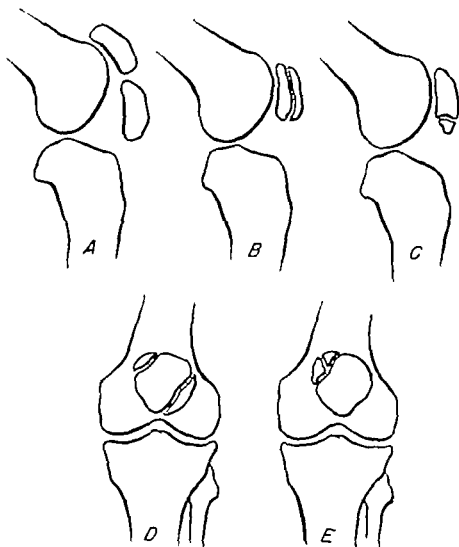


FIG 143 Types of anomalies of the patella (A) Haenisch, (B) Petty

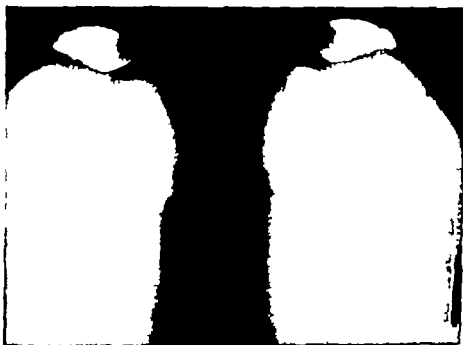


FIG 144 Bipartite left patella in a boy 12 years old the right patella is normal

the quadriceps tendon, or it may be displaced laterally for varying distances. In the latter instance, there may coexist an abnormality of the patellar tendon which may be anchored to the lateral aspect of the tibia. Relatively common developmental alterations are bipartite and tripartite patella, the smaller fragments are usually situated in the superolateral region of the patella but all fragments may be approximately the same size. Frequently, these lesions are interpreted erroneously as a fracture of the patella, particularly when the part was subjected to trauma prior to roentgenographic study. Haenisch described a bilateral double patella in which one bony element was anterior to the other, the former being the larger and possessing a concave posterior surface which articulated with the anterior surface of the smaller bone (Fig 143). Petty has recorded a case possessing a bilateral double patella, an interval of  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 inch existed between the two bones, suggesting development and ossification from two nuclei (Figs 143 and 144).

## RECURRENT DISLOCATION OF PATELLA

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The etiologic factors responsible for this disorder may be congenital or acquired. Superficial survey of a group of 54 cases disclosed that trauma was the initiating agent for the subsequent recurring dislocations in 32 of the cases. (This series does not include dislocated patellae following transplantation of the biceps femoris tendon into the patella in cases of paralysis of the quadriceps group.) However, more critical assessment of this group revealed that in 24 cases some form of congenital abnormality of the extensor apparatus existed, predisposing the extremity to the condition. In 5 of the remaining cases no abnormalities were discernible indicating that trauma alone was the responsible factor for the disorder. In 3 cases acquired genu valgum deformity was the underlying predisposing factor. In the remaining one third of the cases the congenital alterations per se were



Fig 145 Pronounced relaxation of the extensor apparatus (bilateral) permitting marked lateral displacement of the patella

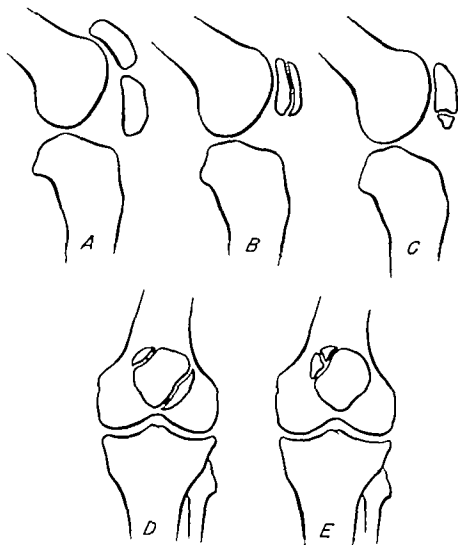


FIG 143 Types of anomalies of the patella. (A) Haenisch, (B) Petty

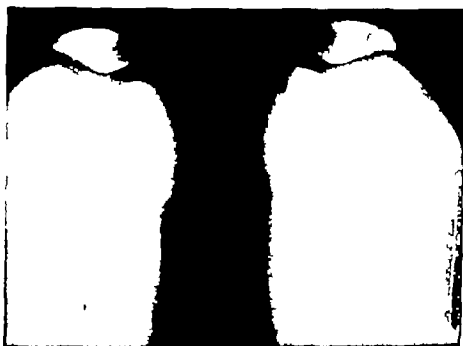


FIG 144 Bipartite left patella in a boy 12 years old the right patella is normal

the quadriceps tendon, or it may be displaced laterally for varying distances. In the latter instance, there may coexist an abnormality of the patellar tendon which may be anchored to the lateral aspect of the tibia. Relatively common developmental alterations are bipartite and tripartite patella; the smaller fragments are usually situated in superolateral region of the patella, but all fragments may be approximately the same size. Frequently, these lesions are interpreted erroneously as a fracture of the patella, particularly when the part was subjected to trauma prior to roentgenographic study. Haenisch described a bilateral double patella in which one bony element was anterior to the other, the former being the larger and possessing a concave posterior surface which articulated with the anterior surface of the smaller bone (Fig. 143). Petty has recorded a case possessing a bilateral double patella; an interval of  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 inch existed between the two bones, suggesting development and ossification from two nuclei (Figs. 143 and 144).

## RECURRENT DISLOCATION OF PATELLA

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The etiologic factors responsible for this disorder may be congenital or acquired. Superficial survey of a group of 54 cases disclosed that trauma was the initiating agent for the subsequent recurring dislocations in 32 of the cases. (This series does not include dislocated patellae following transplantation of the biceps femoris tendon into the patella in cases of paralysis of the quadriceps group.) However, more critical assessment of this group revealed that in 24 cases some form of congenital abnormality of the extensor apparatus existed, predisposing the extremity to the condition. In 5 of the remaining cases no abnormalities were discernible, indicating that trauma alone was the responsible factor for the disorder. In 3 cases acquired genu valgum deformity was the underlying predisposing factor. In the remaining one third of the cases the congenital alterations per se were



FIG. 145 Pronounced relaxation of the extensor apparatus (bilateral) permitting marked lateral displacement of the patella.

of sufficient severity to permit recurrent dislocations without trauma as a major role in the onset of the condition. The most frequently encountered congenital abnormality was congenital relaxation of the extensor apparatus of the knee joint (Fig. 145). In their order of frequency, the other alterations were congenital genu valgum, maldevelopment of the lateral condyle of the femur or deficient intercondylar sulcus (Fig. 146), anomalies of the patella as underdevelopment and lateral displacement of the patella (this was invariably associated with some abnormality of the quadriceps muscle, particularly underdevelopment of the vastus medialis), outward torsion deformities of the upper end of the tibia (in these instances the ligamentum patellae is displaced laterally) and the presence of abnormal fascial bands extending from the posterolateral border of the patella to the iliotibial band and the intramuscular septum anterior to the biceps tendon. This abnormality was found in 4 cases; the lesion was first described by Ober (1935).

As noted above, trauma may be the sole causative agent for recurrent dislocation of

the patella. In this group, trauma results in excessive tearing and shredding of the medial patellar retinaculum and avulsion of the fibers of insertion of the vastus medialis into the upper and inner aspect of the patella. Faulty repair of the soft tissue structures disturbs the normal mechanics of the extensor apparatus, leading to recurrent or even persistent dislocation of the patella. It was pointed out in Chapter 4, "Mechanics of the Knee Joint," that the vastus medialis plays a major role in the stability of the patella. Normal attachment of this muscle to the superomedial aspect of the patella, together with an intact medial patellar retinaculum, good tone of the extensor muscular apparatus and an adequate intercondylar sulcus are the principal factors stabilizing the patella during normal movements of the knee joint. The normal knee joint exhibits about 10° to 12° of natural lateral deviation. This is an essential feature of the knee joint because the medial femoral condyle projects distally to a slightly lower level than the lateral; hence, in order that both condyles may lie in a true transverse plane when the patient assumes the erect position



FIG. 146. Figure on left shows underdevelopment of the lateral femoral condyle allowing dislocation of the patella; compare with the opposite knee on the right.

and the knee is extended fully, the tibia is deflected slightly outward at the knee joint. It becomes apparent that with such an arrangement the vertical axes of the quadriceps muscle and the patellar tendon do not coincide, the latter deviates downward and outward, forming an obtuse angle with the former at the level of the patella. In order to prevent lateral displacement of the patella the vastus medialis pulls the bone upward and medially, thus opposing the vastus lateralis which pulls obliquely upward and laterally. According to Duchenne the medialis and the lateralis are antagonists in lateral motion of the patella and synergists in extension of the knee. In the presence of minor congenital deviations of these stabilizing features trauma is capable of precipitating recurrent dislocation of the patella.

In this series there are 4 cases of persistent dislocation of the patella, 2 being bilateral (e.g., Case G S, Fig 147) and 2 unilateral. Thirty six patients were females and 18 were males. The right knee was involved in 29 cases and the left in 25.

## CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

### SYMPTOMS

In general, the cases of recurrent dislocation of the patella can be grouped into two categories: (1) no clinical evidence of dysfunction of the knee joint existed until some form of injury occurs, or (2) symptoms of weakness and instability exist without a history of trauma. In the latter group if an injury occurred the symptoms were accentuated. Also, the intensity of the symptoms varies. In general, they are at first mild in nature; the patient is aware of a sense of weakness and insecurity in the affected joint. The knee tends to buckle and the patella slips over the margin of the lateral condyle. Each instance of subluxation usually is associated with swelling resulting from synovial effusion into the articular cavity. Later the subluxation is replaced by

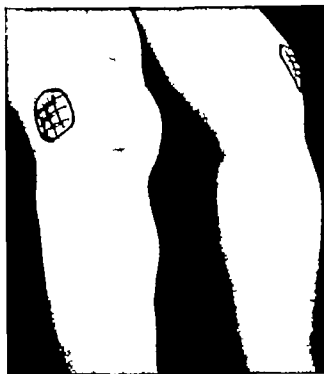


FIG 147 Case C S Bilateral persistent dislocation of the patellae. This patient has pronounced dysfunction and advanced secondary osteoarthritic changes in both knee joints.

a true dislocation of the patella. With each episode there is pain and tenderness particularly on the medial aspect of the joint. The patient walks with a limp. As a rule the displacement is reduced readily by simple extension of the knee; on occasion manual reduction is necessary. Frequently, the patients are very vague concerning the actual mechanism of the disorder and emphasize the sense of insecurity, the giving way of the joint and the pain on the anterior and the inner aspects of the knee. It becomes obvious that these manifestations may lead one to make an erroneous diagnosis of internal derangement implicating the internal meniscus. This is true especially in cases of subluxating patella. With dislocation the symptoms are greatly intensified. Being caught off guard, the patient often falls down when the incident occurs.

The group in which the disorder is initiated by trauma offers fewer difficulties in arriving at a correct diagnosis. In many instances the initial dislocation fails to re-



of sufficient severity to permit recurrent dislocations without trauma as a major role in the onset of the condition. The most frequently encountered congenital abnormality was congenital relaxation of the extensor apparatus of the knee joint (Fig 145) in their order of frequency the other alterations were congenital genu valgum, maldevelopment of the lateral condyle of the femur or deficient intercondylar sulcus (Fig 146), anomalies of the patella as underdevelopment and lateral displacement of the patella (this was invariably associated with some abnormality of the quadriceps muscle, particularly underdevelopment of the vastus medialis), outward torsion deformities of the upper end of the tibia. (In these instances the ligamentum patellae is displaced laterally) and the presence of abnormal fascial bands extending from the posterolateral border of the patella to the iliotibial band and the intramuscular septum anterior to the biceps tendon. This abnormality was found in 4 cases; the lesion was first described by Ober (1935).

As noted above, trauma may be the sole causative agent for recurrent dislocation of

the patella. In this group, trauma results in excessive tearing and shredding of the medial patellar retinaculum and avulsion of the fibers of insertion of the vastus medialis into the upper and inner aspect of the patella. Faulty repair of the soft tissue structures disturbs the normal mechanics of the extensor apparatus, leading to recurrent or even persistent dislocation of the patella. It was pointed out in Chapter 4, "Mechanics of the Knee Joint," that the vastus medialis plays a major role in the stability of the patella. Normal attachment of this muscle to the superomedial aspect of the patella, together with an intact medial patellar retinaculum, good tone of the extensor muscular apparatus and an adequate intercondylar sulcus are the principal factors stabilizing the patella during normal movements of the knee joint. The normal knee joint exhibits about 10° to 12° of natural lateral deviation. This is an essential feature of the knee joint because the medial femoral condyle projects distally to a slightly lower level than the lateral; hence, in order that both condyles may lie in a true transverse plane when the patient assumes the erect position



FIG 146 Figure on left shows underdevelopment of the lateral femoral condyle allowing dislocation of the patella; compare with the opposite knee on the right.

and the knee is extended fully, the tibia is deflected slightly outward at the knee joint. It becomes apparent that with such an arrangement the vertical axes of the quadriceps muscle and the patellar tendon do not coincide, the latter deviates downward and outward, forming an obtuse angle with the former at the level of the patella. In order to prevent lateral displacement of the patella the vastus medialis pulls the bone upward and medially, thus opposing the vastus lateralis which pulls obliquely upward and laterally. According to Duchenne the medialis and the lateralis are antagonists in lateral motion of the patella and synergists in extension of the knee. In the presence of minor congenital deviations of these stabilizing features trauma is capable of precipitating recurrent dislocation of the patella.

In this series there are 4 cases of persistent dislocation of the patella, 2 being bilateral (e.g., Case G S, Fig 147) and 2 unilateral. Thirty-six patients were females, and 18 were males, the right knee was involved in 29 cases, and the left in 25.

## CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

### SYMPTOMS

In general, the cases of recurrent dislocation of the patella can be grouped into two categories: (1) no clinical evidence of dysfunction of the knee joint existed until some form of injury occurs, or (2) symptoms of weakness and instability exist without a history of trauma. In the latter group if an injury occurred the symptoms were accentuated. Also the intensity of the symptoms varies. In general they are at first mild in nature; the patient is aware of a sense of weakness and insecurity in the affected joint. The knee tends to buckle and the patella slips over the margin of the lateral condyle. Each instance of subluxation usually is associated with swelling resulting from synovial effusion into the articular cavity. Later the subluxation is replaced by

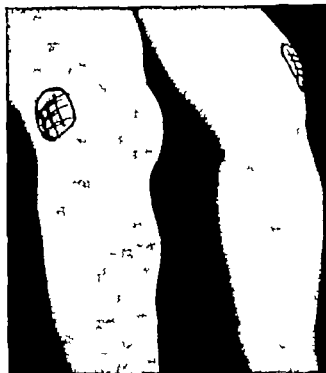


FIG 147 Case C S Bilateral persistent dislocation of the patellae. This patient has pronounced dysfunction and advanced secondary osteoarthritic changes in both knee joints.

a true dislocation of the patella. With each episode there is pain and tenderness particularly on the medial aspect of the joint; the patient walks with a limp. As a rule the displacement is reduced readily by simple extension of the knee, on occasion manual reduction is necessary. Frequently, the patients are very vague concerning the actual mechanism of the disorder and emphasize the sense of insecurity, the giving way of the joint and the pain on the anterior and the inner aspects of the knee. It becomes obvious that these manifestations may lead one to make an erroneous diagnosis of internal derangement implicating the internal meniscus. This is true especially in cases of subluxating patella. With dislocation the symptoms are greatly intensified, being caught off guard the patient often falls down when the incident occurs.

The group in which the disorder is initiated by trauma offers fewer difficulties in arriving at a correct diagnosis. In many instances the initial dislocation fails to re-



FIG 148 (Top) Traumatic dislocation of the patella requiring manual reduction. (Bottom) Same knee after reduction. Note the extent of swelling of the knee joint.



FIG 149 Demonstrates the amount of lateral instability of the joint in a case of recurrent dislocation of the patella of long standing.

duce spontaneously requiring manual reduction (Fig 148) pain is acute swelling is pronounced and dysfunction is marked. Following the initial dislocation the clinical course is similar to that described for the nontraumatic group.

**Physical Findings.** A constant finding in all cases of recurrent dislocation of the patella is varying degrees of laxity of all the components of the extensor apparatus and the medial portion of the capsular tissues. The vastus medialis exhibits profound loss of volume; this is noted to a lesser degree in the remaining elements of the quadriceps muscle. In addition lateral hypermobility of the patella exists; this can be demonstrated readily by pushing the bone outward. In some instances when this maneuver is performed forcefully a dislocation results.

Moreover frequently the patient tends to check the force employed by the examining hand because of the fear that a dislocation will ensue. If the examination is performed shortly after an episode of dislocation some effusion may be demonstrable in the joint and tenderness is elicited when pressure is made along the anteromedial aspect of the joint.

Frequently the patella which may be underdeveloped rides high on the anterior surface of the femur and is displaced laterally; the displacement is increased by flexion of the knee. This is true particularly when the prominence of the lateral condyle is diminished or when increased deviation of the knee is present. Many cases disclose some lateral instability of the joint arising from generalized relaxation of all the soft

tissue elements about the joint, including the collateral and the capsular ligaments (Fig. 149). Depending upon the duration of the symptoms and the severity of the lesion, some diminution in the range of flexion and extension of the joint may exist. Motion often is associated with varying degrees of crepitation in the patellofemoral joint. Old cases exhibit clinical manifestations consistent with osteoarthritis, such as irregularities of the patellar margins, thickening of the capsular and the pericapsular tissues, loud coarse crepitus and marked dysfunction of the knee joint (e.g., Case G S, Fig. 150).

**Roentgenologic Features.** With the knee in the extended position, any increase in the deviation of the knee joint is readily discernible. The patella may appear malformed and occupies a higher position than the opposite bone, it may be displaced laterally for varying distances. Upon flexion of the knee the undeveloped lateral condyle of the femur is demonstrable and the pa-

tella may shift still further on the lateral aspect of the femur (Fig. 151). Concomitant cartilaginous and osseous lesions may be visualized—these include chondromalacia of the articular surface of the patella, osteochondritis of the femoral condyles, congenital abnormalities of the patella (such as bipartite and tripartite patella), loose bodies (synovial osteochondromatosis) and osteoarthritic changes of all the cartilaginous and the bony elements of the joint (Fig. 150).

#### ASSOCIATED LESIONS

Occasionally, other lesions coexist with recurrent dislocation of the patella. In the author's series there were 6 males with lesions of the internal meniscus, 4 of these exhibited a longitudinal tear in the middle and anterior thirds of the meniscus, and 2 disclosed advanced shredding of the under surface of the posterior third. In 5 cases the lesions were suspected before definitive surgery for the dislocating patella was performed, and in 1 the lesion was overlooked,



FIG. 150 Case of old persistent bilateral dislocated patellae. Note the extensive osteoarthritic changes in both knee joints.



FIG 151 Note how the patella shifts laterally on the underdeveloped femoral condyle when the knee is flexed

underlying bone. Two cases showed a large osteochondritic area in the medial femoral condyle. It was interesting to note that one of these also revealed a tear of the internal meniscus. Advanced synovial osteochondromatosis was observed in one case. Varying degrees of synovitis were noted in the majority of the cases, and in 3 cases of long duration villonodular synovitis with advanced osteoarthritic alterations was present. As previously recorded abnormal fascial bands such as described by Ober were encountered in 4 cases.

#### TREATMENT

The numerous operations designed to cure this malady are a good indication that no single procedure succeeds in all cases. Most of the operations succeed in stabilizing the patella in the majority of cases, however it is the small percentage of failures which is most disconcerting both to the surgeon and the patient. In general the technics most commonly employed tend (1) to change the line of pull of the quadriceps apparatus from a lateral to a more medial position (Goldthwait and Hauser), (2) to maintain the patella in the intercondylar sulcus (Gallie), (3) to restore the depth of the intercondylar sulcus by elevating the prominence of the

necessitating a second operation. It is common knowledge that degenerative changes of varying severity in the articular cartilage of the lateral femoral condyle and the patella are inevitable sequelae of this disorder (Fig. 150). In cases of long standing the alterations reach profound proportions characterized by areas of complete destruction of the cartilage and eburnation of the

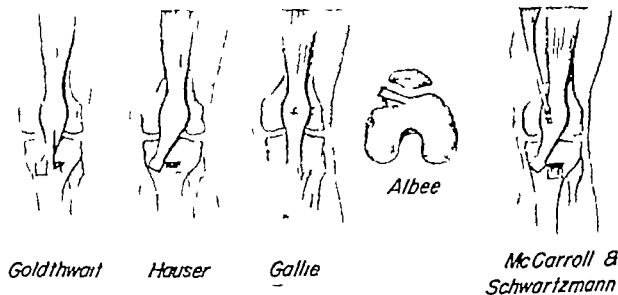


FIG 152 Types of operations to stabilize the patella in recurrent dislocation

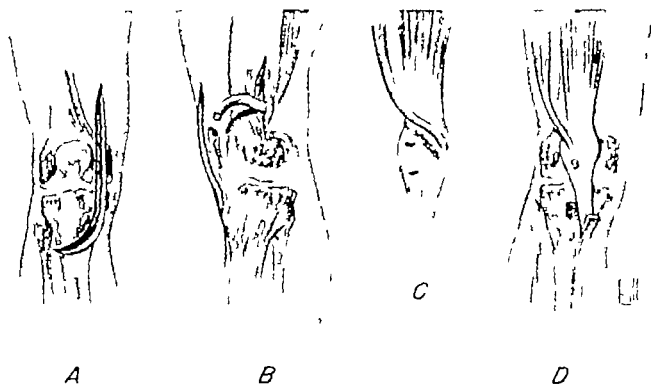


FIG 153 Method of McCarroll and Schwartzman (modified), utilized in children

lateral condyle of the femur (Albee) and (4) to correct the laxity of the soft tissues on the medial aspect of the joint by doing a plastic operation on the capsule and the medial patellar retinaculum (this includes reefing or plicating the affected tissues) (Fig. 152). The author has employed all of these procedures and has come to the conclusion that although they are adequate in most instances none remedies the disorder in all cases. Since 1945 the technic described by McCarroll and Schwartzmann slightly modified has been used routinely in all cases; no recurrences have occurred in this group. Essentially this operation comprises transplantation of the semitendinosus to the patella and transference of the tibial tubercle to the medial surface of the tibia at a slightly lower level than its original site. By this method the patella is maintained in the medial position of the extremity by a firm attachment above and below preventing any shift of the bone to a lateral position. Recently the author has modified this procedure slightly in adults by employing the method of anchorage of the tibial

tubercle recommended by Smillie and utilizing a lateral incision shaped like a hockey stick.

#### OPERATIVE TECHNIC (McCarroll and Schwartzmann)

Two incisions are made: the first is a lateral incision shaped like a hockey stick, beginning slightly above the base of the patella and extending directly downward to just below the tibial tubercle (Fig. 153 A). It then curves medially and distally for 2 inches. By reflecting the skin flaps the tendinous insertion of the sartorius muscle comes into view; this is divided in the line of its fibers exposing the tendons of the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles. The tendon of the semitendinosus is identified (it lies inferior to the tendon of the gracilis) and isolated by sharp dissection from all attachments; then it is divided close to its point of insertion into the tibia.

Next the hip and the knee are flexed; the limb is rotated externally and the second incision is made. It is 2 inches in length and begins at the mid point of the thigh

along its posteromedial aspect (Fig 153 B) The muscle mass of the semitendinosus is identified as it lies along the posterior aspect of the semimembranosus muscle Its identity is facilitated by making traction on its detached tendon. The muscle is isolated by blunt dissection and by gentle traction upward together with its tendon It is drawn through the incision

With a long Kelly clamp a subcutaneous tunnel is created extending downward and forward from the second incision to the proximal limit of the first incision The tunnel should be sufficiently wide to allow free excursion of the muscle belly and its tendon. After the tendon of the semitendinosus is drawn through the tunnel the second incision is closed

In growing children detachment of the tibial tubercle must be executed carefully in order to prevent injury to the epiphyseal line of the tibia This is achieved readily by using a thin blade osteotome which is placed beneath the tendon and parallel with the long axis of the leg and by removing only the superficial layer of bone of the tibial tubercle to which the patellar tendon is attached (a block of bone is not removed) The tendon then is brought forward and dissected free from the underlying extra synovial fat It is mobilized further by splitting the lateral patellar retinaculum from below upward along the lateral edge of the vastus lateralis This line of division extends proximally to that level which allows the patella to assume a mid line position on the anterior surface of the femur

The tibial tubercle with the attached patellar tendon is drawn distally and medially generally it can be displaced approximately  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches below the level of its original anchorage By splitting the fibers of the sartorius expansion in this region the underlying periosteum is exposed on the periosteum the upper limit and the two sides of the new anchorage of the tibial tubercle are outlined with a scalpel Then in children a thick osteoperiosteal flap is

elevated from above downward, leaving intact the bone and the periosteum at the base of the flap (Fig 153 D) Several small drill holes are made in the flap and through these are passed sutures of stout silk or wire anchoring firmly the tibial tubercle to the posterior surface of the flap After the transference of the tibial tubercle is accomplished the patellar tendon should make firm but not undue tension on the extensor apparatus to maintain the patella in the desired medial position In addition fixation of the patellar tendon is enhanced by attaching it to the adjacent periosteum and the expansion of the sartorius by interrupted sutures

Now the patella is made ready to receive the tendon of the semitendinosus By using a small osteotome a vertical tunnel is made from above downward through the body of the patella (Fig 153 C) care must be taken not to disturb the new attachment of the tibial tubercle The semitendinosus tendon is drawn through the tunnel and while moderate tension is maintained it is anchored to the quadriceps tendon and the patellar tendon by interrupted sutures The gap in the lateral patellar retinaculum is left open and the edges of the subcutaneous tissue and the skin are approximated with interrupted sutures A plaster cast is applied extending from the toes to the groin holding the limb in the extended position at the knee joint At the end of 4 weeks this is replaced by a skintight plaster cylinder reaching from above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh At this time progressive quadriceps exercises are instituted and weight bearing is permitted After 4 weeks the cylinder is removed and physical measures such as gentle heat massage and flexion and extension exercises are added in order to obtain optimum restoration of function at the knee joint

As previously recorded the author employs Smillie's method to anchor the tibial tubercle in adults This eliminates the possibility of displacement of the tibial tubercle and permits weight bearing at the end of 2

weeks and flexion at the knee joint at the end of 4 to 5 weeks

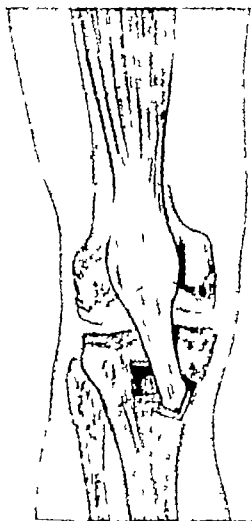
# OPERATIVE TECHNIC (Smillie)

The tibial tubercle and the attached patellar tendon are exposed in a manner similar to that described above a rectangle of cortical bone with the tendon attached measuring  $1\frac{1}{4}$  in by  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. is removed with a sharp thin osteotome (Fig 154 A) The long axis of the rectangle lies in the vertical plane. A defect corresponding in size to the cortical bone removed is outlined and made on the anteromedial aspect of the tibia at a lower level (1 to  $1\frac{1}{4}$  in) than its original site of attachment its long axis is inclined inward so that it makes an angle of  $45^\circ$  with the vertical axis of the tibia. With a curet the cancellous bone is removed from beneath the cortical bone at the superior

and the inferior ends of the defect. Next the tibial tubercle is placed in the defect and driven below the level of the cortical bone then it is rotated so that it is locked in position and its vertical axis coincides with that of the quadriceps (Fig 154 B)

After the semitendinosus is transplanted and the wound closed a posterior moulded plaster splint is applied, extending from the toes to the upper region of the thigh At the end of 2 weeks the wound is inspected, and the skin sutures are removed The limb is then encased in a skintight plaster cylinder extending from 2 inches above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh weight bearing is now permitted, and quadriceps exercises are commenced All fixation is removed at the end of 2 or 3 more weeks and active measures are instituted, designed to restore quadriceps

FIG 154 (A Left) Method of Smillie employed to anchor the tibial tubercle in adults. (B, Right) Roentgenogram showing the tibial tubercle in its new bed on the medial aspect of the tibia





volume power and normal motion at the knee joint

#### NONOPERATIVE TREATMENT

Certain cases of recurrent dislocation exhibit no congenital abnormalities except increased laxity of the soft tissues and poor tone of the quadriceps muscle. Other cases disclose only minor congenital defects which with the added factor of trauma may develop the disorder. Such cases should be given a trial of conservative management designed to reduce tissue laxity and increase muscle tone, particularly that of the vastus medialis. This goal can be achieved only by a carefully supervised regimen of quadriceps exercises as described on page 260. In the event that this form of therapy fails surgical intervention is justified.

#### PERSISTENT DISLOCATION OF PATELLA

This lesion may be congenital in nature or may be the sequela of recurrent disloca-

tion congenital or traumatic in origin. In the author's series there were 4 cases of persistent lateral dislocation of the patella: 2 were bilateral and 2 unilateral. One of the bilateral cases was an elderly woman (G. S.) whose mother also had persistent lateral location of the patellae (Fig. 150). The unilateral case was a young man who retained the initial dislocation while playing football; a direct blow was delivered to the inner side of the kneecap. A general anesthetic was necessary to reduce the dislocation; the limb was then placed in a plaster cast for 3 weeks. This was followed by a feeling of insecurity in the affected joint and several episodes of recurrent lateral location, which the patient reduced himself by extending the knee joint. Finally the patella assumed a fixed position on the lateral aspect of the knee and did not move medially any appreciable distance on extension of the knee (Fig. 155).

Persistent dislocation of the patella may be partial or complete; often it is associ-



FIG. 155 (Left) Case S. S. with persistent dislocation of the patella following trauma sustained in football. (Right) Roentgenogram shows the fixed lateral position of the patella.

with other congenital deformities of the knee particularly genu valgum. On occasion, with the knee flexed the lateral displacement of the patella is so great that the quadriceps follows it. The lower end of the femur is readily palpable under the skin. In many instances the function of the joint is relatively good, but as the patient increases in age severe dysfunction may occur resulting from secondary degenerative changes in the joint (Fig 156).

### TREATMENT

Essentially, the surgical approach to this problem is similar to that of recurrent dislocation of the patella. The patella may be bound firmly in its abnormal position by fibrous bands extending from its lateral border to the fascia lata and the undersurface of the iliotibial band. Ober has described such bands, believing that in recurrent dislocation there was an abnormal relationship between the patella and the iliotibial band. He also described a fibrous band extending from the patella to the intramuscular septum at the anterior aspect of the biceps tendon.

The author is convinced that patellectomy has no place in the surgical treatment of recurrent or persistent dislocation of the patella. However, in the presence of severe osteoarthritic changes characterized by pro-

nounced incongruity of the patellofemoral articular surfaces and hypertrophic bone formation patellectomy may be the only surgical procedure which will afford some comfort to the patient and improve function of the knee. In Case G S (Fig 150) the disability in both knee joints was severe. The patient had constant pain and swelling was becoming progressively worse. She was barely able to stand. Extension was possible to  $135^{\circ}$ , and quadriceps power was poor. Exploration of the joints revealed that the patellae were bound firmly to the lateral aspects of the knees by dense firm bands extending to the iliotibial bands. The articular cartilage of the patellae, the femurs and the tibiae exhibited profound degenerative changes (Fig 156). A diffuse villonodular synovitis was present in both joints. In addition to patellectomy synovectomy was done. After 4 months of physical therapy and quadriceps exercises the patient was able to extend the knees to  $165^{\circ}$ , she had some discomfort but no intense pain and was able to do her housework something that had not been possible for many years.

### PRIMARY DISLOCATION OF PATELLA

Initial lateral displacement of the patella resulting from congenital alterations in the



FIG 156 Undersurface of patellae obtained from a case of persistent dislocation. Note the pronounced degeneration of the articular cartilage and the peripheral excrescences.

structures responsible for the stability of the patella has been discussed previously. However, complete or incomplete dislocation also may occur in normal knees or in knees exhibiting only minor abnormalities when direct force is applied to the inner aspect of the patella driving the bone laterally. Severe direct force to the lateral or the superior aspects of the patella may drive the bone to a medial or an inferior position; such lesions are exceedingly rare. A rarer lesion is rotation of the patella on its longitudinal axis for varying degrees. Cases of complete rotation have been recorded. The author has encountered one such dislocation which was irreducible by closed manipulative measures. It required open operation to restore the bone to its anatomic position. The lesion is encountered usually in young people who are engaged in strenuous activities such as football or basketball. It becomes obvious that in the young muscular individuals in whom no anomalies of the quadriceps mechanism exist, who possess well-developed stabilizing structures, great force must be expended to displace the patella from its normal anatomic position. Depending upon the degree of dislocation, varying intensities of damage are inflicted upon the extensor apparatus, particularly the medial patellar retinaculum, the medial portion of the fibrous and the synovial capsule, and the vastus medialis. Occasionally, tangential osteochondral fracture of the patella results.

In incomplete dislocations the patella rides the lateral prominence of the lateral femoral condyle. In such instances soft tissue injury usually is not severe. The medial parapatellar structures may be stretched and even frayed but as a rule remain intact. Injury to the synovialis may be followed by an effusion or a hemarthrosis. Some of the fibers of the vastus medialis may be frayed or torn from their attachment to the superomedial margin of the patella. Generally, the dislocation is reduced spontaneously when the knee is extended. On occa-

sion the patient or someone else pushes the bone into place.

Examination of a reduced incomplete dislocation discloses no evidence of the nature of the disorder. Besides swelling, the other pertinent clinical manifestation is pain on pressure over the superomedial border of the patella and over the medial aspect of the knee. In the absence of any visible abnormalities of the knee, one is apt to interpret these findings as the result of a torn internal meniscus. The diagnosis is made readily in unreduced cases: the knee is held slightly flexed, and the patella is seen and felt riding on the lateral margin of the lateral femoral condyle.

Complete dislocations are associated with more extensive soft tissue damage. The patella comes to lie at the lateral aspect of the lateral femoral condyle. Generally, the pathology comprises rupture of the medial parapatellar retinaculum and the medial portion of the fibrous capsule and its synovial lining and avulsion of the muscle fibers of the vastus medialis from their line of insertion into the superomedial margin of the patella. With disruption of the aforementioned structures, blood and synovial effusion which, with an intact capsule normally would accumulate in the joint cavity, issue forth into the overlying soft tissues. All tissues in this region become edematous, being infiltrated with blood and synovium; this feature in many instances precludes recognition of a tear in the capsule and the medial parapatellar structures by inspection and palpation of the part. Moreover, powerful extension of the knee joint is still possible because the lateral portion of the extensor mechanism, together with the iliotibial band, is able to perform this function. It becomes apparent that a diagnosis of the severity of the injury is difficult to determine especially when spontaneous reduction has occurred. Some workers suggest injection of air into the joint capsule; the presence of air in the soft tissues points to a rent in the capsular tissues.

## TREATMENT

Proper evaluation of each case is the key note to successful management of this disorder. The pertinent points to consider are (1) the degree of displacement of the patella this knowledge provides a clue to the severity of damage sustained by the medial portion of the quadriceps mechanism and the capsular tissues, (2) a history of previous dislocations and (3) in cases of complete dislocations, the true nature of the pathology present in the soft tissues and the presence or the absence of injury to the articular surface of the patella (osteochondral fracture)

As previously noted many cases reduce spontaneously. If the displacement is present at the time of the initial examination, reduction usually is achieved readily by extension of the knee and pushing the patella medially over the lateral prominence of the lateral femoral condyle, the patella then assumes its normal anatomic position on the anterior surface of the femur. The manipulation should be executed with the patient under a general anesthesia. Subsequent treatment is governed by the evaluation previously made of each case. Those which have a history of previous dislocations are treated in accordance with the methods discussed in the section, Recurrent Dislocations of Patella (p 193). The management of all incomplete and complete primary dislocations should aim to restore a powerful quadriceps apparatus and to prevent recurrent dislocations.

In incomplete lesions the above goal is attained by aspiration of blood and synovial fluid from the joint cavity and application of a compression bandage. At this time no weight bearing is permitted. If fluid continues to accumulate evacuation of the joint cavity may be repeated several times every 2 or 3 days. Usually within 7 to 10 days the joint approaches normalcy at this time a skintight plaster cylinder is applied, extending from 2 inches above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh with the knee in

the extended position. Weight bearing is allowed also, progressive quadriceps exercises are commenced. The patient must be made aware of the importance of the exercises and encouraged to perform them on a regulated schedule. It may be necessary to reapply the plaster cylinder after 2 or 3 weeks because it may become too large and does not fit the leg snugly. After a period of 5 to 6 weeks the cast is removed, and exercises to restore flexion of the joint are added to the regimen, the quadriceps exercises are intensified.

The aims in the management of complete dislocations of the patella are similar to those of incomplete lesions. In most instances conservative treatment is the method of choice and does not differ from that outlined for incomplete dislocations. This line of treatment is justified by the observation that in the event of rupture of the medial patellar retinaculum and the medial capsule, and even of avulsion of the fibers of the vastus medialis retraction of these structures does not occur sufficiently to preclude good repair by simple fixation of the limb in extension. Retraction is prevented by the intact lateral and anterior portions of quadriceps mechanism and the intact lateral capsular tissues. In cases exhibiting extensive disruption of the medial capsule and the medial patellar retinaculum, surgical intervention should be employed. The region is exposed readily by a median parapatellar incision, the medial capsule and the fibrous expansion of the vastus medialis are approximated in layers by interrupted cotton sutures. On several occasions the author has encountered severe disruption of the affected tissues, making a suitable repair impossible by simple suturing of the tissues in layers, a wide strip of fascia lata, obtained from the same limb was employed to strengthen the repair. After completion of the operation the limb is placed in a plaster cylinder. Subsequent management is similar to that described for incomplete dislocations of the patella.

### IRREDUCIBLE LATERAL DISLOCATION OF PATELLA WITH ROTATION

Lateral dislocation of the patella with rotation about its long axis is rare; however, several cases have been reported in the literature. The earliest report was made by Cooper in 1844. Sanborn recorded a case in 1856. Borchard reported another in 1901, and Brown one in 1902. More recently, Trausner, Orsos and Martin each reported a case. The last case on record was reported by Inman and Smart in 1941. Some of the cases were reduced by forceful manipulation under anesthesia; others defied all closed methods requiring surgical intervention to achieve reduction. In those cases that were explored surgically, except in the case of Martin, severe tearing of the capsular tissues and the medial quadriceps expansion was encountered invariably. The patella rotates on its long axis so that the medial

edge impinges and locks under the border of the lateral femoral condyle. Its articular surface faces outward and downward. The mechanism of the dislocation is a severe driving force applied to the medial side of the patella, which forces the bone laterally while the knee is in almost complete extension and the quadriceps taut. Recently the author has encountered a case of lateral dislocation of the patella with rotation, which was impossible to reduce by manipulation. Reduction was achieved by surgical intervention.

#### CASE REPORT

G. C., a male 19 years old, was admitted to the Jefferson Medical College Hospital on June 6, 1952. While playing baseball he was kicked on the inner aspect of the right knee; he experienced severe pain and fell to the ground. At the initial examination of the patient a large prominence was visible and palpable on the lateral aspect of the knee, which was extended approximately 170°. The



FIG. 157 Irreducible traumatic lateral dislocation of the patella in a male (G. C.) 19 years old; also a small avulsion fracture of the tibial tubercle is present.

bony prominence, which obviously was the patella, lay in an oblique plane approaching the sagittal plane. Its medial margin had dipped beneath the lateral border of the femoral condyle while its articular surface faced obliquely downward and outward. The patellar tendon had shifted laterally and was taut like a bowstring. In spite of the severity of the deformity there was no clinical evidence of a synovial effusion or hemarthrosis. Pressure over the medial side of the joint elicited marked tenderness, the intercondylar sulcus of the femur was palpable under the stretched skin. Roentgenographic study, including tangential roentgenograms, disclosed the true nature of the displacement (Fig 157). In addition a small avulsion fracture of the tibial tubercle was discernible.

The patient was given a general anesthesia using Pentothal Sodium. Three attempts were made to manipulate and lever the patella into its normal position, all failed. On the following day the region was explored through an anterior mid line incision. Upon reflecting the skin margins, the extensive soft tissue damage on the medial aspect of the knee was visualized. All tissues were friable and infiltrated with blood and synovial fluid. The vastus medialis was torn from its patellar attachment and a large irregular longitudinal tear traversed the medial patellar retinaculum from above downward close to the medial border of the patella and extended into the substance of the lower muscle fibers of the vastus medialis. The patella was found rotated on its long axis approximately 85° with its articular surface facing downward and outward. It was interesting to note the twist in the quadriceps and the patellar tendons in which its medial fibers were rotated to an inferior position and its lateral fibers to a superior position. The tendon of the patella was unduly taut helping to maintain the displacement of the bone.

Reduction was achieved readily by dislodging the medial border of the patella from under the lateral margin of the lateral femoral condyle and slipping it over the condyle. De-rotation of the patella, the quadriceps and the patellar tendons followed the patella then assumed its anatomic position on the anterior surface of the femur.

Repair was effected by reattaching the vastus medialis to the superomedial border of the patella. The muscle was anchored to the edge of the bone by stout cotton mattress sutures approximating the torn muscle and

to the fascial and the periosteal layers of the patella. The medial patellar retinaculum and the fibrous capsule were closed in layers. The limb was placed in a plaster cylinder, extending from above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh with the knee extended. At the end of 2 weeks quadriceps exercises were started, after 1 more week weight bearing was permitted. The cast was removed at the end of 6 weeks. A recent follow up examination 6 months after the injury disclosed good quadriceps power, a normal range of motion and no instability of the knee. Slight atrophy of the vastus medialis was still demonstrable. Redislocation had not occurred.

### RUPTURES OF THE EXTENSOR APPARATUS

These lesions may be grouped into two categories (1) those encountered in the older age groups and (2) those occurring in young adults usually actively engaged in strenuous athletics. In the first category the most important lesions are rupture or avulsion from the patella of the tendon of the quadriceps femoris muscle, and in the second, avulsion of the patellar tendon from the tibial tubercle. Occasionally, a piece of the tubercle is avulsed from the shaft. Also, the patellar tendon may be avulsed from the inferior pole of the patella, and groups of fibers of the vasti muscles may be ruptured (these may be minor or extensive lesions). Immediate recognition of the nature of the pathology following an injury is imperative because excellent results are obtained by early surgical repair, in late cases restoration of the continuity of the quadriceps apparatus is difficult and complicated and the results are often far from satisfactory both to the surgeon and the patient.

### FRESH RUPTURE OR AVULSION OF QUADRICEPS MUSCLE FROM PATELLA

As noted previously, this lesion usually occurs in individuals beyond the fourth decade, who are often overweight. However

the author has observed the disorder in a thin woman 34 years old this case was of special interest because a second avulsion of the same quadriceps occurred 18 months after the first. Essentially the mechanism of the injury is violent contraction of the quadriceps muscle with the knee partially flexed. A common history is stumbling while descending steps or a curb. In order to regain balance the patient momentarily braces himself forcefully contracting the quadriceps of the extremity which support the full weight often he hears a snap or a crackling in the region of the knee followed by severe pain and loss of balance. He then falls suddenly to the ground.

#### PATHOLOGIC FINDINGS

Generally, a transverse tear is found in the quadriceps tendon, traversing its entire thickness so that the suprapatellar pouch comes into view. In recent cases the pouch is full of blood serum and blood tinged synovial fluid. The tear only on rare occasions is limited to the tendons of the rectus femoris and the vastus intermedius muscles. Generally it extends laterally and medially implicating the fibrous expansions of the vastus lateralis and medialis for varying distances. The tissues are infiltrated with blood and the margins of the tear are often ragged. Periosteal tabs may be found attached to the base of the patella. In other instances the tendon is avulsed from its insertion on the patella.

#### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The diagnosis is made readily provided that correct interpretation is given to the clinical features. Frequently the true nature of the lesion is overlooked because the examiner does not suspect the possibility of a rupture of the quadriceps tendon and depends too heavily on roentgenographic findings which usually are negative. As noted previously the cardinal clinical features are a history of stumbling, in patients past middle age who experience severe pain

above the knee and inability to extend the knee joint. Examination of the part reveals a transverse sulcus just above the patella which is best demonstrated by palpation; it becomes more apparent when the patient contracts the quadriceps. Depending on the duration of the lesion varying discolorations of the skin about the joint are discernible. Occasionally the ecchymosis is severe and extends for varying distances below the level of the knee. Pressure over the anterior and lateral aspects of the joint elicits tenderness. Contraction of the quadriceps fails to extend the leg at the knee. In rare cases in which only the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle is implicated and the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculum are intact extension of the leg is possible. In such instances the diagnosis often is missed and may not become apparent for several months until the patient fails to achieve normal power in the quadriceps and a calcifying hematoma becomes demonstrable in roentgenograms. Swelling of the knee is never a prominent feature because the blood and the synovial fluid escape into the surrounding soft tissues.

#### TREATMENT

Repair of the defect should be achieved by surgical intervention in all degrees of tears. Even those cases in which active extension of the leg is possible, indicating that the lesion is limited to the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle the patient is assured of an extremity approaching normalcy only if the two ends of the tendon are approximated by sutures. If possible the operation should be performed within 24 hours; however, primary union may be attained in cases from 4 to 5 weeks old.

#### TENDON-TO-TENDON REPAIR

A U shaped incision affords adequate exposure of the region; moreover this incision can be projected upward readily on the lateral aspect of the thigh in those cases needing reinforcement with fascia lata. The

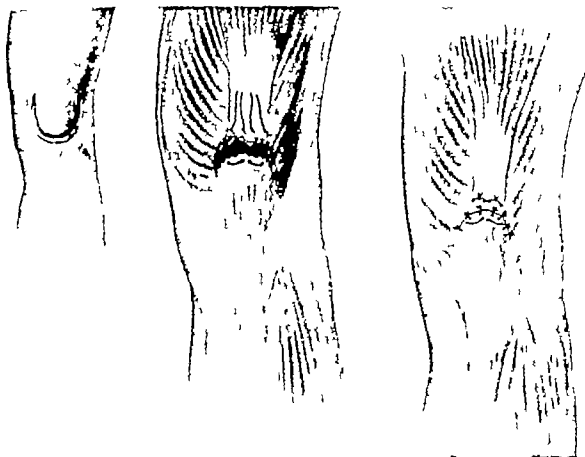


FIG 158 Tendon to-tendon repair

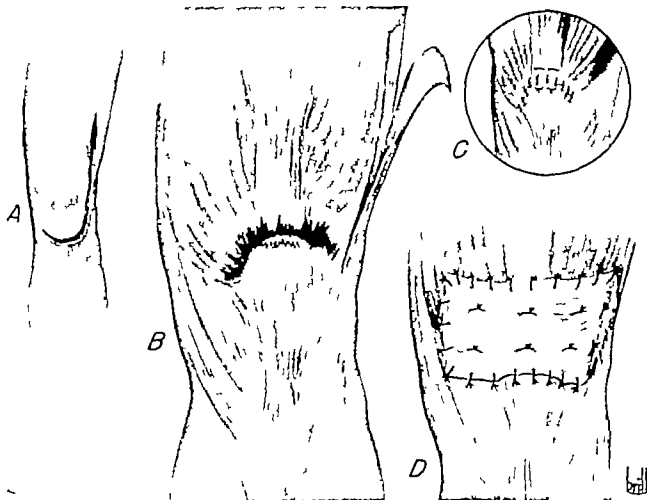


FIG 159 A strip of fascia lata may be employed to re-enforce the suture line.



skin and the deep fascia are reflected upward exposing the extensor mechanism. All clots are removed from the suprapatellar pouch and the cavity is flushed with a solution of normal saline. Then the extent of the tear is determined and the edges of the tendon are trimmed of all devitalized and frayed strands of tissue. A towel clip is placed on the proximal end of the tendon, which now is drawn distally until it is in apposition to the distal end. While traction is being maintained on the towel clip the two ends of the tendon are joined by two mattress sutures of braided silk or kangaroo tendon. The tears in the medial and the lateral expansions of the tendon are closed with interrupted cotton sutures. Some workers employ strips of fascia lata for the mattress sutures although this is excellent suture material it is not essential in most cases (Fig. 158). Occasionally, the author has reinforced the suture line with a wide strip of fascia lata obtained from the same side. This is done only in those instances in

which the ends of the tendon are very friable and the disruption of the tissues is severe. The reinforcing strip is sutured to the vasti muscles above and to the patella and its medial and lateral retinaculum below (Fig. 159 A to D).

#### TENDON-TO-BONE REPAIR

The technic differs slightly in cases of avulsion of the tendon from its attachment to the base of the patella. The end of the tendon is approximated to the bone by a mattress suture of braided silk passing through two drill holes in the body of the patella and tied on its anterior surface (Fig. 160). Beginning at the base of the patella two drill holes are made in the longitudinal axis of the bone, they are directed downward and slightly anteriorly so that the drill points emerge on the anterior surface of the lower portion of the patella. Tears in the lateral expansions of the vastus medialis and lateralis are repaired in the manner described above.

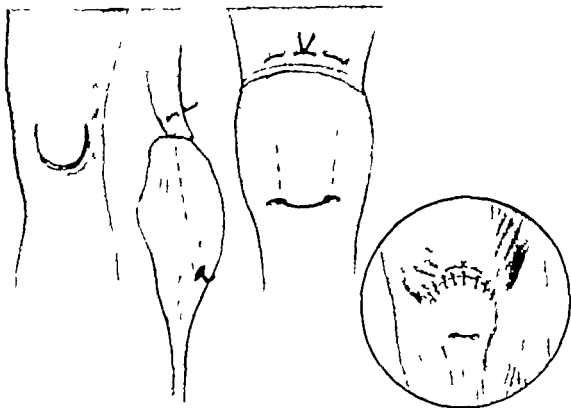


FIG. 160 Tendon to-bone repair

Postoperative management is similar to that described for old ruptures of the quadriceps tendon

## OLD RUPTURES OF THE QUADRICEPS TENDON

Neglected cases exhibit marked disability because of the total lack of stability in the affected extremity. Many of these patients must depend on the use of a cane or a brace in order to walk. The quadriceps muscle becomes shortened, and thin friable strands of fibrous tissue stretch across the interval between the ends of the tendon. Occasionally an ossifying hematoma is encountered. The ends of the tendon become thickened, bulbous and sclerotic. When the patient contracts the quadriceps muscle a wide sulcus between the patella and the muscle is readily discernible (Fig. 161). Repair of the defect is achieved in the same manner as was described for fresh lesions. However, in all

cases the author takes the added precaution of reinforcing the suture line by a wide strip of fascia lata swung from the same side, the distal attachment of the flap is left intact (Fig. 159). This added step is of particular importance when considerable difficulty is encountered in pulling the end of the shortened quadriceps muscle to the lower fragment or to the base of the patella. On occasions this can be achieved only by lengthening the extensor apparatus by a preliminary plastic procedure.

### POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

At the completion of the operation a compression bandage is applied on the limb splinted by a molded posterior plaster splint extending from the toes to the upper one third of the thigh, holding the foot at 90° to the leg and the knee extended fully. After 10 or 14 days the splint is removed, and a skintight plaster cylinder is applied

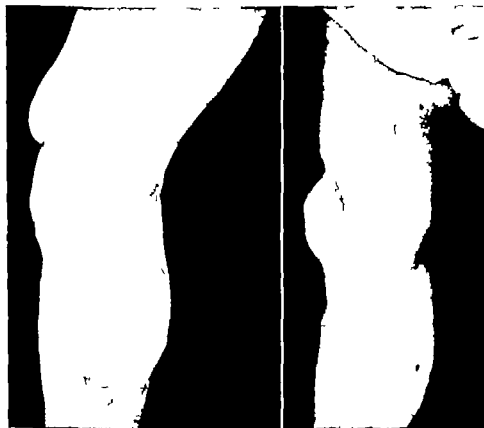


FIG. 161 (Left) Old rupture of the quadriceps tendon (Right) Contraction of the quadriceps muscle. The sulcus between the muscle and the tendon becomes more pronounced.

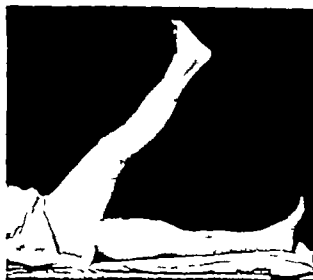


FIG. 162 Same case depicted in Figure 161. Note that extension is now complete (10 weeks after the repair).

Then mild quadriceps exercises are instituted: first the patient is taught simple controlled contractions of the quadriceps, and later with the aid of a balanced suspension

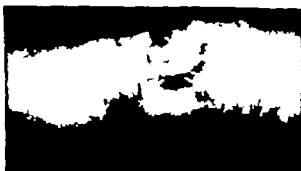


FIG. 163 Case of avulsion of the patellar tendon from the tibial tubercle in an elderly woman. The soft tissues overlying the tibial tubercle were broken.

apparatus straight leg raising is commenced. The cast is removed at the end of 5 to 6 weeks and protected weight bearing is allowed (using crutches). Now the patient is placed on a strenuous regulated regimen comprising exercises designed to restore quadriceps power and volume and to increase flexion of the knee joint. Generally



FIG. 164 Roentgenograms of case depicted in Figure 163. Note avulsion and comminution of the tibial tubercle with upward retraction of the patellar tendon.

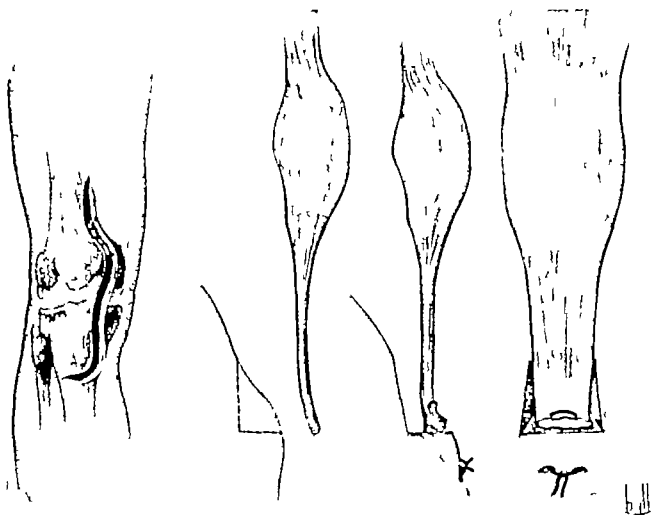


FIG 165 (A) Reattachment of the patellar tendon to the anterior surface of the tibia

8 weeks postoperatively extension should be 180° or nearly so and flexion should be between 110° and 130° (Fig 162). Power of the quadriceps muscle and flexion of the knee should increase progressively so that from 8 to 12 months after surgical repair optimum function is restored. In elderly patients complete flexion seldom is achieved following repair of a ruptured quadriceps tendon. However if 90° flexion is obtained, the result should be considered satisfactory because this range of motion is sufficient to meet the functional requirements of the individual.

#### AVULSION OF PATELLAR TENDON FROM TIBIAL TUBERCLE

The mechanism of this lesion is similar to that of rupture of the quadriceps tendon.

It also is encountered most frequently in individuals past middle life. The incidence of the disorder is far less than that of rupture of the quadriceps tendon. The pertinent clinical features are a history of stumbling while descending steps or coming down an inclined plane, of severe pain in the knee associated with a loud snap and of falling to the ground. Clinical examination reveals varying degrees of swelling of the knee particularly if the patient struck the knee against the step or the ground, a high riding patella, a sulcus which is readily palpable immediately above the tibial tubercle, tenderness on pressure over the tibial tubercle and the distal end of the patellar tendon and loss of active extension (Fig 163). Roentgenograms may exhibit fragmentation or avulsion of the proximal portion of the tibial tubercle (Fig. 164).

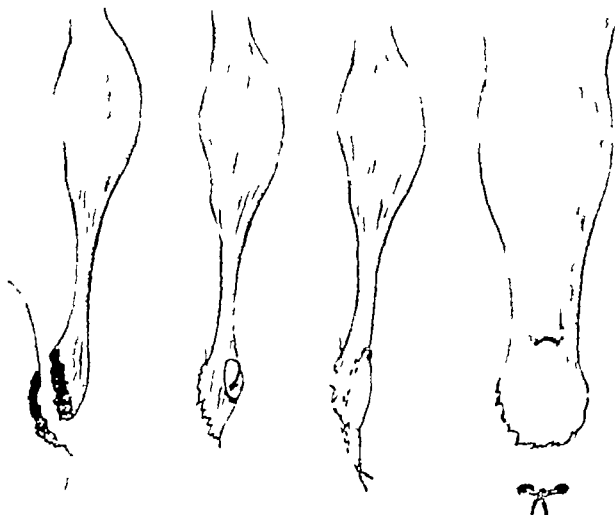


FIG 165 (B) If a large piece of bone is avulsed with the tendon it may be anchored to the tibia with a screw or piece of wire

#### TREATMENT

If possible the integrity of the extensor apparatus should be restored immediately by surgical intervention in order that shortening of the quadriceps muscle may be prevented (Fig 165). The author employs a median parapatellar incision the lower end of which swings laterally crossing the anterior tibial crest immediately below the tibial tubercle. The skin and the subcutaneous tissue are reflected outward exposing the patella the patellar ligamentum and the tibial tubercle. All blood clots and frayed shredded strands of tissue and periosteum are trimmed away from the end of the tendon and the upper end of the tubercle. Now the severity of the pathology can be determined. As a rule the defect between

the tendon and the tibial tubercle extends medially and laterally for varying distances through the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi. With a sharp osteotome a ledge  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch deep and at right angles to the longitudinal axis of the tibia is cut out of the proximal portion of the tibial tubercle. Two drill holes are made in the long axis of the tubercle beginning below on the tubercle and directed upward and inward so that the exits are on the raw surface of the ledge. Downward traction is made on the patella with a towel clip a mattress suture of braided silk or kangaroo tendon is passed through the lower end of the tendon and the drill holes and is tied on the anterior surface of the tubercle (Fig 165 A). The defect in the medial and the lateral fibrous expan-

nons of the quadriceps muscle is closed with interrupted cotton sutures. In the event that a small piece of bone is avulsed from the tubercle it is excised, and the operation is performed as described above. If a large piece of bone is avulsed with the tendon still attached it should be replaced in its anatomic position and anchored with a screw or a piece of wire (Fig 165 B). This latter lesion occurs in young people but rarely in patients past middle life at least, the author never has seen such a case. Post operative management is conducted in the same manner as that described for rupture of the quadriceps tendon.

#### AVULSION OF PATELLAR TENDON FROM PATELLA

As recorded previously, avulsion of the patellar tendon is encountered most frequently in the early decades of life. The mechanism is the same as that described for rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Generally the lesion comprises complete avulsion of the tendon from the apex of the patella; the tear extends into both the

medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi; occasionally, a small fragment of bone is avulsed from the lower pole of the patella.

The clinical picture does not differ from that of rupture of the quadriceps tendon. There is a history of injury followed by severe pain in the knee and loss of active extension of the leg. The patella assumes a higher position on the anterior surface of the femur than the patella of the normal extremity. A transverse defect is palpable between the lower pole of the patella and the patellar ligament. No change of tension is noted in the tendon when the quadriceps is contracted. Roentgenographic study may disclose a high riding patella and a fragment of bone lying at a distance distal to the apex of the bone. Roentgenograms taken to show soft tissue structures may reveal a break in continuity of the patellar tendon in the region of the apex of the patella.

#### TREATMENT

The rupture is exposed through a U shaped skin incision (Fig 166). Loose fragments of bone and strands of devitalized tissue are excised. The defect is flushed

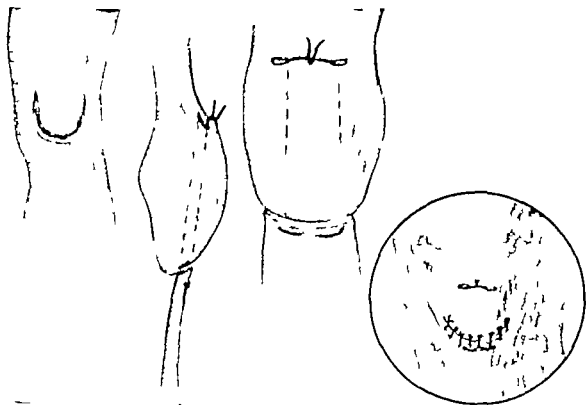


FIG 166 Reattachment of patellar tendon to the patella.

thoroughly with normal saline solution and all blood clots are removed. Repair of the defect is achieved in the same manner as that described for rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Tears in the medial and the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle are closed with interrupted cotton sutures. A wide strip of fascia lata swung from the lateral aspect of the thigh may be used to reinforce the repair.

### OLD RUPTURES OF THE PATELLAR TENDON

Occasionally untreated cases of long duration are encountered. Adequate management of these lesions is made difficult because of shortening of the quadriceps muscle, a sequel which invariably occurs. In some instances in order to effect a repair some preliminary lengthening procedure must be done on the quadriceps muscle. Some workers advocate stretching of the muscle by skeletal traction; a Kirschner wire is passed transversely through the upper portion of the patella and traction is applied (3 to 5 pounds) for 2 to 4 weeks. In 2 cases in the author's series the lesion had existed untreated for  $1\frac{1}{2}$  and 2 years respectively. On exploration of the affected areas the second case disclosed complete disintegration of the patellar ligament; a large irregular mass of heterotopic bone occupied the interval between the inferior pole of the patella and the tibial tubercle (Fig. 167).

In both these cases a repair was performed in the same manner. The region was exposed by a hockey-stick skin incision in the median parapatellar region beginning 2 inches above the base of the patella (Fig. 168 A). The incision extended distally to a point below the tibial tubercle, then curved laterally to the lateral margin of the tibial crest. The skin was reflected outward and the patella, the infrapatellar region and the tibial tubercle were exposed. All scar tissue and heterotopic bone were excised. A strip

of fascia lata  $2\frac{1}{2}$  by 5 inches was obtained from the opposite thigh. From this a new patellar ligament was constructed. The proximal end of the fascia lata strip was placed over the patella and anchored to its periphery by silk sutures passing through drill holes previously made in the bone (Fig. 168 B). The distal end of the strip was divided longitudinally into 2 halves. Next the tibial tubercle was prepared to receive the two strips of fascia lata. A bony ledge  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch deep was cut out of the upper portion of the tubercle; its upper surface lay in the horizontal plane. Two drill holes were made in the long axis of the tubercle beginning below and directed backward and upward so that the exit was on the raw surface of the ledge (Fig. 168 C). The two fascial strips were passed through the drill holes, tied and sutured to each other; the ends also were sutured to the periosteum of the tibia. Interrupted cotton sutures were employed for this purpose. While the two fascial strips were being anchored, moderate downward traction was made on the patella with a towel clip.

The result in both cases was surprisingly good. At the end of 8 months in the first case and 1 year in the second active extension was possible to  $180^\circ$  and flexion to  $70^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$  respectively. The postoperative management was the same as that described under rupture of the quadriceps tendon.

### RUPTURE OF ISOLATED CROPS OF FIBERS OF COMPONENTS OF QUADRICEPS MUSCLE

This lesion is usually the result of violent contraction of the affected muscle or of direct trauma to the part with sufficient intensity to divide the underlying muscle fibers. It is encountered frequently in muscular young individuals participating in strenuous competitive athletics (football, basketball, etc.).

Frequently the vastus internus is traumatized by direct force. One patient ob-



FIG 167 Old rupture of the patellar tendon. Note heterotopic bone in the tendon and high position of the patella

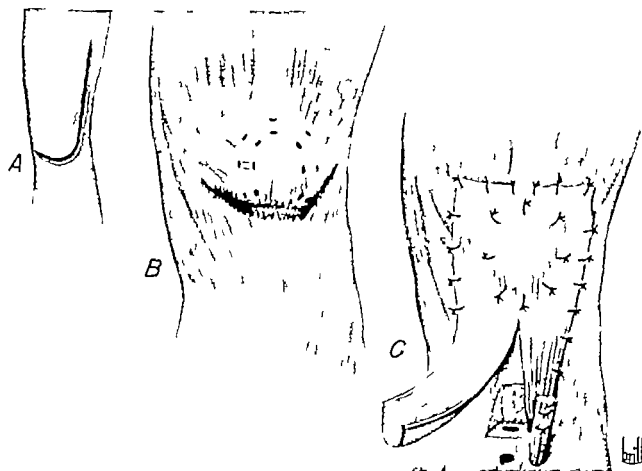


FIG 168 Reconstruction of patellar tendon for old rupture in which the tendon has undergone complete degeneration



thoroughly with normal saline solution, and all blood clots are removed. Repair of the defect is achieved in the same manner as that described for rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Tears in the medial and the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle are closed with interrupted cotton sutures. A wide strip of fascia lata swung from the lateral aspect of the thigh may be used to reinforce the repair.

### OLD RUPTURES OF THE PATELLAR TENDON

Occasionally untreated cases of long duration are encountered. Adequate management of these lesions is made difficult because of shortening of the quadriceps muscle, a sequel which invariably occurs. In some instances in order to effect a repair some preliminary lengthening procedure must be done on the quadriceps muscle. Some workers advocate stretching of the muscle by skeletal traction; a Kirschner wire is passed transversely through the upper portion of the patella and traction is applied (3 to 5 pounds) for 2 to 4 weeks. In 2 cases in the author's series the lesion had existed untreated for  $1\frac{1}{2}$  and 2 years respectively. On exploration of the affected areas the second case disclosed complete disintegration of the patellar ligament; a large irregular mass of heterotopic bone occupied the interval between the inferior pole of the patella and the tibial tubercle (Fig. 167).

In both these cases a repair was performed in the same manner. The region was exposed by a hockey-stick skin incision in the median parapatellar region, beginning 2 inches above the base of the patella (Fig. 168 A). The incision extended distally to a point below the tibial tubercle, then curved laterally to the lateral margin of the tibial crest. The skin was reflected outward and the patella, the infrapatellar region and the tibial tubercle were exposed. All scar tissue and heterotopic bone were excised. A strip

of fascia lata  $2\frac{1}{2}$  by 5 inches was obtained from the opposite thigh. From this a new patellar ligament was constructed. The proximal end of the fascia lata strip was placed over the patella and anchored to its periphery by silk sutures passing through drill holes previously made in the bone (Fig. 168 B). The distal end of the strip was divided longitudinally into 2 halves. Next the tibial tubercle was prepared to receive the two strips of fascia lata. A bony ledge  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch deep was cut out of the upper portion of the tubercle. Its upper surface lay in the horizontal plane. Two drill holes were made in the long axis of the tubercle, beginning below and directed backward and upward so that the exit was on the raw surface of the ledge (Fig. 168 C). The two fascial strips were passed through the drill holes, tied and sutured to each other; the ends also were sutured to the periosteum of the tibia. Interrupted cotton sutures were employed for this purpose. While the two fascial strips were being anchored, moderate downward traction was made on the patella with a towel clip.

The result in both cases was surprisingly good. At the end of 8 months in the first case and 1 year in the second active extension was possible to  $180^\circ$  and flexion to  $70^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$  respectively. The postoperative management was the same as that described under rupture of the quadriceps tendon.

### RUPTURE OF ISOLATED GROUPS OF FIBERS OF COMPONENTS OF QUADRICEPS MUSCLE

This lesion is usually the result of violent contraction of the affected muscle or of direct trauma to the part with sufficient intensity to divide the underlying muscle fibers. It is encountered frequently in muscular young individuals participating in strenuous competitive athletics (football, basketball, etc.).

Frequently the vastus internus is traumatized by direct force. One patient ob-



FIG 167 Old rupture of the patellar tendon. Note heterotopic bone in the tendon and high position of the patella.

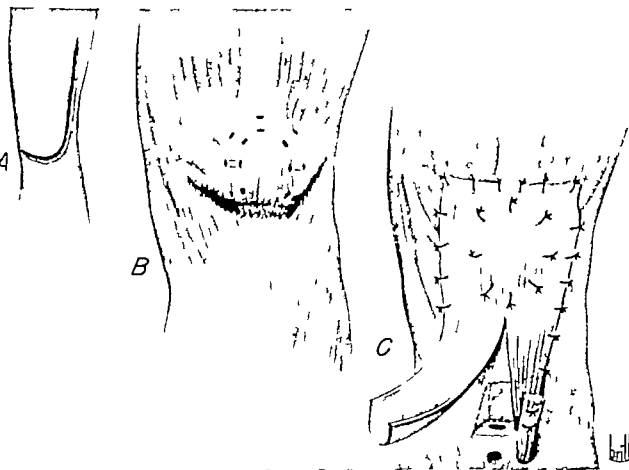


FIG 168 Reconstruction of patellar tendon for old rupture in which the tendon has undergone complete degeneration

thoroughly with normal saline solution and all blood clots are removed. Repair of the defect is achieved in the same manner as that described for rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Tears in the medial and the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle are closed with interrupted cotton sutures. A wide strip of fascia lata swung from the lateral aspect of the thigh may be used to reinforce the repair.

### OLD RUPTURES OF THE PATELLAR TENDON

Occasionally, untreated cases of long duration are encountered. Adequate management of these lesions is made difficult because of shortening of the quadriceps muscle, a sequel which invariably occurs. In some instances in order to effect a repair some preliminary lengthening procedure must be done on the quadriceps muscle. Some workers advocate stretching of the muscle by skeletal traction, a Kirschner wire is passed transversely through the upper portion of the patella, and traction is applied (3 to 5 pounds) for 2 to 4 weeks. In 2 cases in the author's series the lesion had existed untreated for  $1\frac{1}{2}$  and 2 years respectively. On exploration of the affected areas the second case disclosed complete disintegration of the patellar ligament, a large irregular mass of heterotopic bone occupied the interval between the inferior pole of the patella and the tibial tubercle (Fig. 167).

In both these cases a repair was performed in the same manner. The region was exposed by a hockey-stick skin incision in the median parapatellar region beginning 2 inches above the base of the patella (Fig. 168 A). The incision extended distally to a point below the tibial tubercle then curved laterally to the lateral margin of the tibial crest. The skin was reflected outward and the patella the infrapatellar region and the tibial tubercle were exposed. All scar tissue and heterotopic bone were excised. A strip

of fascia lata  $2\frac{1}{2}$  by 5 inches was obtained from the opposite thigh. From this a new patellar ligament was constructed. The proximal end of the fascia lata strip was placed over the patella and anchored to its periphery by silk sutures passing through drill holes previously made in the bone (Fig. 168 B). The distal end of the strip was divided longitudinally into 2 halves. Next the tibial tubercle was prepared to receive the two strips of fascia lata. A bony ledge  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch deep was cut out of the upper portion of the tubercle. Its upper surface lay in the horizontal plane. Two drill holes were made in the long axis of the tubercle beginning below and directed backward and upward so that the exit was on the raw surface of the ledge (Fig. 168 C). The two fascial strips were passed through the drill holes, tied and sutured to each other, the ends also were sutured to the periosteum of the tibia. Interrupted cotton sutures were employed for this purpose. While the two fascial strips were being anchored moderate downward traction was made on the patella with a towel clip.

The result in both cases was surprisingly good. At the end of 8 months in the first case and 1 year in the second active extension was possible to  $180^\circ$  and flexion to  $70^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$  respectively. The postoperative management was the same as that described under rupture of the quadriceps tendon.

### RUPTURE OF ISOLATED GROUPS OF FIBERS OF COMPONENTS OF QUADRICEPS MUSCLE

This lesion is usually the result of violent contraction of the affected muscle or of direct trauma to the part with sufficient intensity to divide the underlying muscle fibers. It is encountered frequently in muscular young individuals participating in strenuous competitive athletics (football, basketball, etc.).

Frequently the vastus internus is traumatized by direct force. One patient ob-



FIG 167 Old rupture of the patellar tendon. Note heterotopic bone in the tendon and high position of the patella

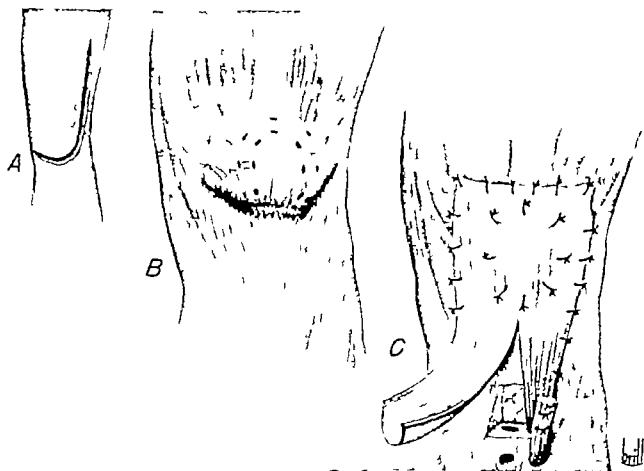


FIG 168 Reconstruction of patellar tendon for old rupture in which the tendon has undergone complete degeneration.



FIG. 169 Early myositis ossificans in the upper thigh following severe direct trauma to the part 4 weeks prior to the taking of this roentgenogram.

served by the author was struck on the anterior aspect of the thigh by a baseball bat. Essentially the local pathology comprised rupture of fibers of the muscle and hemorrhage. In the case noted above a few hours after the injury the thigh became uniformly enlarged and tense, and the knee was flexed 160°. An attempt to increase the degree of flexion initiated excruciating pain.

Injury to the vastus internus is of particular importance because of the predilection of myositis ossificans traumatica to develop in this muscle. Especially in children the possibility of this unfavorable sequela must be anticipated, and treatment instituted accordingly.

Immediate treatment comprises bedrest, uniform compression of the entire limb from the toes to the groin and application of ice bags to the thigh. After 2 to 4 days swelling diminishes, indicating cessation of active bleeding and beginning of absorption of the

hematoma. Now radiant heat may be applied to hasten absorption, and mild exercises may be instituted to restore flexion and extension at the knee joint. Surgical evacuation of the hematoma is never indicated, in fact, any surgical trauma may encourage the development of myositis ossificans (Fig. 169). For the same reason forceful therapeutic measures such as kneading massage and passive "pump-handle" motions of the leg in an attempt to increase flexion are contraindicated. In the event that this complication occurs the extremity must be guided on a course of treatment in which extreme gentleness is the cardinal feature. Surgical intervention never is justified in its early stage. As a rule the process progresses to a certain stage then retrogresses, the newly formed bone being absorbed spontaneously. Removal of the bone is indicated only when the process exhibits no further tendency to progress and when the bone interferes with normal function of the limb. Many months must elapse before this quiescent phase is reached and before the contemplated surgery can be performed with assurance that the pathologic process will not be reactivated. It was noted under the discussion of bone tumors that in the early stages of development myositis ossificans may be diagnosed erroneously as osteogenic sarcoma.

The anatomic position of the vastus lateralis situated under the tough fibrous iliotibial tract affords it considerable protection from direct violence. However one case a laborer came under observation with a history of direct violence to the upper part of the thigh which caused a large herniation of the vastus lateralis. The initial findings were consistent with hemorrhage and trauma to the vastus lateralis; the upper lateral region of the leg was swollen enormously. The patient was treated conservatively along the lines outlined for ruptures of the fibers of the vastus internus. Three months later the patient appeared with a mass on the upper lateral aspect of

the thigh measuring 5 cm wide and 8 cm long. It was soft and slightly tender on pressure, and a distinct defect was palpable in the fascia lata. The pertinent clinical features were a sense of instability in the extremity and pain on walking or standing. Because of the severity of the symptoms, the patient was unable to return to his work. A repair was effected by overlapping the edges of the defect in the fascia lata. Several muscle hernias have been observed following the removal of strips of fascia lata; none of these gave rise to functional disorders of the limb. However, some observers have recorded that disability may occur.

Traumatic severance of the fibers of the vastus medialis occurs more frequently than is generally realized. It is invariably a concomitant feature of primary traumatic dislocation of the patella. As previously recorded, the lesion per se and its significance relative to the future functional capacity of the quadriceps mechanism are frequently overlooked at the time of the injury. The management of this disorder has been discussed under the treatment of primary dislocations of the patella.

Severe direct trauma to the muscle while it is contracting forcefully is capable of inflicting major tears in the muscle. One such case was encountered in a patient whose thigh was trapped between the side of a ship and a launch which was being lowered into the sea. The muscle was crushed and divided against the shaft of the femur. As has been pointed out by Smillie, immediate operative repair of freshly traumatized muscle fibers is likely to fail. A better repair is achieved if sufficient time is allowed to elapse in order that firm scar tissue may form; subsequently the scar tissue is excised and the defect is approximated by sutures of fascia lata. Such a plan was carried out in the aforementioned case; the patient attained an excellent functional result.

Minor tears of the fibers of the rectus femoris muscle are encountered frequently

in youths engaged in strenuous sports. Many of the tears are too small to change the general configuration of the muscle mass; they parade under the diagnosis of contusion or intramuscular hematoma. Occasionally, a sufficient number of fibers is involved to allow the formation of a visible, palpable defect. The mechanism is either one of violent contraction of a group of muscle fibers or direct violence to the muscle during the stage of contraction. On occasion a large portion of the muscle may be severed by a heavy falling object which crushes the muscle against the femoral shaft.

In fresh injuries the severity of the symptoms and the amount of disability depend upon the size of the rupture and the intramuscular hemorrhage. Generally, some swelling of the affected region is demonstrable; pressure over the area elicits tenderness and contraction of the rectus femoris is painful. Later, larger rents in the muscle exhibit a visible, palpable defect with its size and borders accentuated by contraction of the muscle.

As a rule, the intensity of the symptoms in recent injuries is not severe; simple measures such as rest, compression bandage and ice bags on the part suffice to relieve the discomfort and reduce the swelling. Even in major ruptures the extent of the residual disability is minimal in degree and does not require surgical intervention. Moreover, repair of a defect in muscle tissue is difficult, and recurrence of the lesion is a frequent sequela. In the light of the knowledge that operative measures provide little or no improvement in the functional capacity of the muscle, the procedure is not warranted except in isolated cases.

## FRACTURES OF THE PATELLA

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Fractures of the patella are relatively frequent lesions. In general they can be categorized into two major groups: (1) fractures produced by direct force and (2) fractures

resulting from indirect force. No hard and fast rules can be laid down for the treatment of either group. Each individual case presents problems which must be analyzed and evaluated carefully before an adequate plan of management can be formulated for the case in point. Critical assessment of long term follow up studies and proper regard for the role that the patella plays in the over all efficiency of the extensor apparatus are factors which are responsible for the evolution of the methods of treatment commonly employed at the present time. Nevertheless there still exists a wide diversity of opinion relative to the most efficacious methods, especially as to the advisability and the indications of patellectomy.

Many of the controversial opinions and the resulting confusion can be traced to the publication of Brooke in 1937 who launched the premise that the patella was not a functional structure but a phylogenetic inheritance. He further contended that the organ was a sesamoid bone (a belief still widely accepted by many workers) and did not develop in response to any functional demand and that the extensor mechanism functioned more efficiently without the patella. Study of the embryologic development of the knee joint and comparative anatomy of the patella, analysis of the functional mechanism of the extensor apparatus and critical studies of a series of patients with patellectomies fail to provide data supporting the theories noted by Brooke. The patellofemoral joint develops along lines paralleling those of the femorotibial joint; this is definite proof that the organ is not a sesamoid bone. Studies conducted on the comparative anatomy of this bone reveal that in the erect position the patella plays an even greater role in the mechanics of the knee joint than in animals holding the articulation in a flexed or a semiflexed position. From the viewpoint of function the patella increases the strength of the quadriceps muscle by improving leverage. This is accomplished by deflecting the line of pull

of the motor force necessary to extend the joint anterior to the center of the articulation so that it acts at an angle instead of in a straight line to the bony elements of the articulation. This arrangement provides for greater stability of the femur and the tibia at the knee joint and for maintenance of equilibrium. It must be conceded that many individuals in whom the patella has been removed can extend the knee with good power, and the joint is sufficiently stable to meet the ordinary functional demands of locomotion and the upright position. However these observations do not justify the premise that the patella does not add to the mechanical efficiency of the knee joint and that an otherwise normal joint would function as efficiently or even better without a patella. The clinical observations noted by the author in a series of patellectomies performed for varied reasons support those of Haxton. Haxton showed conclusively that in patients with and without patellae the power of extension of the knee increased progressively as the arc of extension approached  $180^\circ$  for example greater force is exhibited at  $160^\circ$  than at  $140^\circ$  and more force is produced at  $140^\circ$  than at  $120^\circ$ . The knees of patients with patellectomies, when compared with the normal side, disclosed an increase in power considerably less than that on the unaffected side during extension of the joint. This observation points to the significant role that the patella plays in the efficiency of the extensor mechanism. It is common clinical knowledge that the loss of volume of the quadriceps is greater in cases of patellectomy than in those in which all or part of the bone is left in situ. Also the period for return to normalcy is greater in the former group and in many instances in spite of intensive exercises the quadriceps exhibits permanent diminution in volume as compared with the normal muscle. This feature per se is sufficient reason for impairment of extension power and stability of the knee joint. An other important function of the patella com-

monly overlooked, is its protective action to the anterior aspect of the joint. In man the knee joint occupies a very vulnerable position, loss of the protection afforded by the patella predisposes the knee to repeated minor traumata with the cumulative effect producing varying degrees of osteo-arthritis.

Formation of heterotopic bone following excision of the patella is not an infrequent occurrence. According to Wass and Davies, this complication is responsible in a large measure for the pain and the impaired motion at the knee joint. They noted that small areas of calcification and ossification may cause no interference in function, however larger areas may reduce the elasticity of the quadriceps tendon, thereby decreasing the range of flexion of the joint (Fig 170). Patellectomy changes considerably the external configuration of the joint. When the knee is flexed the abnormality is very striking. Some patients, particularly women, look at the disfigurement with disfavor.

In spite of the many points discrediting the advisability of patellectomy, there are specific indications which justify the procedure. However, the instances justifying the procedure are few, and indiscriminate removal of the patella should be condemned.

#### MECHANISMS

It was recorded previously that fractures of the patella are sustained either by direct or indirect violence. They are frequent in adults but are observed only rarely in children and adolescents. The mechanism of indirect force is encountered most commonly in middle aged individuals. In elderly people this mechanism usually results in rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Generally indirect force produces a transverse fracture. The mechanism is one of stumbling down steps or an incline, the quadriceps muscle contracts violently as the entire weight of the body is thrown on the extremity with the knee semiflexed. In this position the patella rides high on the femoral condyles and is fixed and subjected to the tension



FIG 170 Note evidence of calcification and ossification in quadriceps tendon following patellectomy. This reduces the elasticity of the tendon, hence decreasing the range of flexion of the joint.

of the patellar tendon below and the quadriceps muscle above. Sudden forceful contraction of the quadriceps snaps the patella transversely over the condyles of the femur. Occasionally, transverse fractures are sustained in running and falls or jumping from a height, here the same mechanism is active. The patellae are fractured before the knees strike the ground. However, one can conceive readily how a transverse fracture with wide separation of the fragments may be sustained with both an indirect and a direct force acting. This occurs when a direct blow is delivered to the anterior surface of the kneecap with the extremity in motion and semiflexed. Case B C illustrates this point. The patient, a young lady, was engaged in a hockey game, while skating across the rink she was struck on the patella by a hockey stick. She felt a loud snap in the knee and fell instantaneously to the ice. Examination revealed a transverse laceration of the skin measuring 4 cm immediately over the patella. The bone was severed transversely into two almost equal segments.



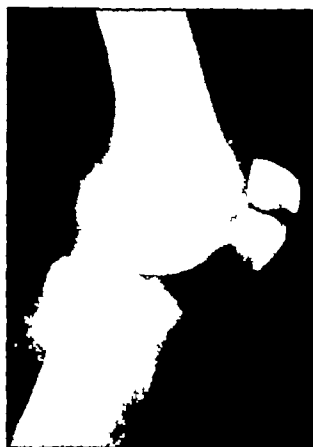


FIG 171 Transverse fracture resulting from indirect force. There is some comminution of the lower segment. In this case separation of the main fragments is minimal.

Direct forces applied to the anterior surfaces of the patella usually result in comminuted fractures; the acting forces are usually kicks or blows on the outer surface of the bone. Several cases have been observed in which the patient's knees were pushed forcibly against the dashboard when the automobile in which he was riding came to a sudden unexpected stop.

TABLE 6 TYPES AND INCIDENCE OF PATELLAR FRACTURES

Transverse fractures		34
Fragments of equal size	9	
Small upper fragments	6	
Small lower fragments	19	
Comminuted fractures		17
Polar fractures		7
Vertical fractures		4
Total cases		62

#### ASSOCIATED PATHOLOGY

Adequate comprehension of the pathology associated with the two groups of fractures is essential in order to choose the method of treatment which will produce optimum function of the knee joint. Also understanding of the severity of the pathology provides the surgeon with valuable data on which the results of treatment and the future status of the joint may be determined.

The pertinent difference between the pathology encountered in the two groups of fractures is the varying severity of disruption of the quadriceps extensor mechanism sustained at the time of injury. As described previously, indirect forces usually produce a transverse fracture of the patella. In most cases the fracture line traverses the distal half of the bone. Frequently, the lower segment may be broken up into two or more fragments (Fig 171). Invariably, this type of fracture exhibits separation of the principal fragments and more important tears of the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi and of the anterior portion of the fibrous and the synovial capsules of the joint. The extent of the tears depends upon the severity of the force expended to produce the fracture; occasionally they extend laterally and medially to the anterior margins of the collateral ligaments. Also the fascioperiosteal covering of the patella is shredded and torn, and fragments of it may be found interposed between the main bony elements. It becomes apparent that in the event of such trauma bleeding in variable amounts ensues. Hence the joint cavity is filled with blood clots and serosanguinous fluid. Much of this fluid and blood escapes into the surrounding soft tissues. Also it is obvious that this fracture communicates with the joint cavity in all instances. Occasionally fractures produced by indirect trauma reveal little or no separation. In such instances the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle may be stretched or even frayed slightly, but its integrity is not interrupted.

In all fractures of the patella the quadri-



FIG 172 Fracture of the patella with wide separation of the fragments due to upward displacement of the proximal fragment. Here there is extensive tearing of the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi



FIG 173 Fracture of the patella due to direct violence. Note comminution and minimal separation of fragments.



FIG. 171 Transverse fracture resulting from indirect force. There is some comminution of the lower segment. In this case separation of the main fragments is minimal.

Direct forces applied to the anterior surfaces of the patella usually result in comminuted fractures; the acting forces are usually kicks or blows on the outer surface of the bone. Several cases have been observed in which the patient's knees were pushed forcibly against the dashboard when the automobile in which he was riding came to a sudden unexpected stop.

TABLE 6 TYPES AND INCIDENCE OF PATELLAR FRACTURES

Transverse fractures		34
Fragments of equal size	9	
Small upper fragments	6	
Small lower fragments	19	
Comminuted fractures		17
Polar fractures		7
Vertical fractures		4
		—
Total cases		62

#### ASSOCIATED PATHOLOGY

Adequate comprehension of the pathology associated with the two groups of fractures is essential in order to choose the method of treatment which will produce optimum function of the knee joint. Also, understanding of the severity of the pathology provides the surgeon with valuable data on which the results of treatment and the future status of the joint may be determined.

The pertinent difference between the pathology encountered in the two groups of fractures is the varying severity of disruption of the quadriceps extensor mechanism sustained at the time of injury. As described previously, indirect forces usually produce a transverse fracture of the patella. In most cases the fracture line traverses the distal half of the bone. Frequently the lower segment may be broken up into two or more fragments (Fig. 171). Invariably this type of fracture exhibits separation of the principal fragments and, more important, tears of the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi and of the anterior portion of the fibrous and the synovial capsules of the joint. The extent of the tears depends upon the severity of the force expended to produce the fracture; occasionally they extend laterally and medially to the anterior margins of the collateral ligaments. Also the fascioperiosteal covering of the patella is shredded and torn and fragments of it may be found interposed between the main bony elements. It becomes apparent that in the event of such trauma bleeding in variable amounts ensues. Hence the joint cavity is filled with blood clots and serosanguinous fluid. Much of this fluid and blood escapes into the surrounding soft tissues. Also it is obvious that this fracture communicates with the joint cavity in all instances. Occasionally, fractures produced by indirect trauma reveal little or no separation. In such instances the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle may be stretched or even frayed slightly, but its integrity is not interrupted.

In all fractures of the patella the quadri-



FIG 172 Fracture of the patella with wide separation of the fragments due to upward displacement of the proximal fragment. Here there is extensive tearing of the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi



FIG 173 Fracture of the patella due to direct violence. Note comminution and minimal separation of fragments



FIG. 174 Aseptic necrosis of the proximal fragment. Most probable cause is impairment of the blood supply at the time of injury. Note the incongruity of the articular surfaces of the wired fragments.

iceps muscle tends to pull the proximal fragment upward while the distal fragment remains stationary. occasionally the latter may exhibit a forward tilt. The distance that the proximal fragment travels upward is governed by two factors: (1) the severity of the tears in the patellar retinaculi and the joint capsule and (2) the intensity with which the force acts after the continuity of the patella is severed. In severe lesions the proximal fragment may be displaced upward from 6 to 8 cm. above its normal anatomic position; the displacement is even greater in old untreated cases. All fragments tend to maintain a mid line position; there is rarely any appreciable lateral displacement discernible (Fig. 172).

Fractures resulting from direct force usually exhibit only minimal displacement of the fragments; the patellar retinaculi and the joint capsule remain intact (Fig. 173).

Exceptions to this are found when a combination of forces produces the lesion; then some separation occurs. As a rule the patella is broken up into 3 or more fragments; the fracture lines may extend in any direction. On rare occasions a portion of the periphery of the patella may be fractured; often this lesion is described as a marginal fracture. Even more rare are single fractures through the long axis of the patella or through the coronal plane.

Whereas in the first group of fractures the external coverings of the knee rarely are implicated, in the latter group varying severity of damage usually is noted in the skin and the subcutaneous tissue. Occasionally the skin wound communicates with the fracture and hence must also communicate with the joint cavity.

Frequently loose particles of bone are encountered lying free in the joint cavity and the suprapatellar pouch or attached loosely to the larger fragments of the patella. Osteochondral fractures implicating the articular surface of the patella or the patellar surface of the femur may occur. Very rarely, there is complete disruption of the blood supply of one of the main fragments; this may not be manifested until several months have elapsed. Roentgenographic studies reveal uniform increased density of the involved fragment, indicating the true nature of the lesion (Fig. 174). Finally, trauma of varying intensity may be inflicted upon the opposing articular surfaces of the patella and the femur, predisposing the patellofemoral articulation to osteoarthritis.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

One should have no difficulty in establishing a diagnosis of fractures of the patella. Overlooking the lesion is an indication of either gross negligence or inexperience. The diagnosis is arrived at readily by the history, the subsequent disability, the physical examination and finally the roentgenographic studies. The usual history in cases of indirect violent trauma is one of stumbling or

falling followed by sudden pain and a snap in the knee joint. The patient falls to the ground and immediately becomes aware that his leg cannot be extended actively and will not support the body weight without buckling. In cases of direct trauma there is a history of a blow to the anterior surface of the patella.

In fractures with separation of the fragments physical examination reveals varying degrees of swelling, usually immediately over the anterior surface of the bone giving it a domelike appearance. The tissues of the knee do not appear to be under great tension, such as one observes in traumatic synovitis or hemarthrosis. Great tension of the joint is never attained because the synovial fluid and the blood escape through the defect in the quadriceps apparatus and are dispersed throughout the surrounding soft tissues. The swelling immediately over the patellar region results from localized accumulation of blood in the tissues in the immediate vicinity of the fracture. A sulcus can be demonstrated readily by palpation of the anterior patellar region. Occasionally the upper and the lower poles of the patella may be grasped between the index fingers and the thumbs and displaced laterally in opposite directions, indicating a break in the continuity of the bone. The most significant clinical manifestation is loss of active extension of the leg on the thigh; all attempts to execute this movement are accompanied by excruciating pain.

Fractures with little or no separation of the bony fragments exhibit a different clinical picture. Swelling of the knee is not too concentrated on the anterior surface of the kneecap but is more or less uniform in nature (except for a small local swelling immediately over the patella) resembling that of traumatic synovitis and hemarthrosis. Although the maneuver is associated with pain, the patient is able to extend the knee actively. No abnormality in the configuration of the patella is demonstrable by palpation; however pressure over the anterior

surface of the bone elicits severe pain. In this group of cases the diagnosis can be determined only by roentgenographic investigation. Roentgenograms should be taken in the anteroposterior, the lateral and the vertical views. The vertical or axial view may provide information which is not attainable by routine anteroposterior and lateral views. It is of especial value in depicting longitudinal fractures and congenital malformations of the patella.

#### CONSIDERATIONS GOVERNING TREATMENT

Critical assessment of reported series of long term follow up studies of fractures of the patella reveals that many methods of treatment employed at the present time need revision, and others should be discarded except in occasional cases. A recent survey by the author of 62 fractures of the patella from 1 to 6 years after treatment brought to light some interesting observations which support the findings of Scott. This worker reported a comprehensive review of 196 cases from different sources. From the aforementioned investigations it becomes apparent that the patella is a very essential component in the extensor mechanism and must not be sacrificed indiscriminately. After removal of the patella very few extremities return to normalcy; they exhibit permanent loss of volume in the quadriceps muscle and diminished extensor power and the anterior surfaces of the condyles are subjected to repeated traumata which under normal conditions would have been absorbed by the patella. In Scott's series only 5 per cent of the patients believed that they had a normal knee. The most common complaints are a deep-seated ache in the knee joint, a constant feeling of fatigue throughout the entire extremity and a sense of instability often associated with actual buckling of the joint. As previously noted, these findings do not substantiate the opinions of some sources. In the light of this information primary total excision of the patella should be reserved for cases with



FIG 175 Wired fractured patella. Note incongruity of the articular surface the wire is broken and causes pain on motion.

such severe comminution of the bone that no single fragment remains of sufficient size which can be utilized to preserve the normal mechanics of the joint

When the patella is broken up into two large fragments of approximately the same size the surgeon experiences a natural urge to restore the bony elements to their anatomic position this also applies to fragments of unequal size and in rare instances to comminuted fractures Numerous operations have been designed to achieve this goal and many and varied materials are utilized as sutures some workers employ vitallium screws plates or bone pegs to maintain the reduction of the fragments Although restoration of bone fragments to their normal position is a sound principle in the treatment of fractures of all bones the patella is the exception to the rule Follow up studies reveal that regardless of

how meticulously the fragments are approximated some displacement recurs resulting in incongruity of the articular cartilage of the patella (Fig 174) This feature leads to chondromalacia and varying intensities of osteoarthritis in the patellofemoral joint The factors responsible for displacement of the fragments are (1) continuous distraction by the quadriceps muscle at the fracture site and (2) loss of fixation caused by absorption of some bone at the line of fracture It is common knowledge that the patella exhibits relatively poor power of osteogenesis for this reason and the ones enumerated above fibrous union and nonunion are more common than is generally realized In the author's series there were 3 cases treated by a circumferential wire loop and 10 by a wire loop passing through both fragments in the manner described by Magnuson.

TABLE 7 COMPLICATIONS FOLLOWING TREATMENT OF PATELLAR FRACTURES BY APPROXIMATION OF THE FRAGMENTS

Refracture	1
Quadriceps tear	1
Wires broken	4
Fibrous union	3
Nonunion	2
Total cases	13

It was interesting to note that in the majority of these cases some malpositioning of the articular surfaces of the patellar fragments was demonstrable by postoperative roentgenographic studies this was true even in those cases in which the fragments appeared to be in their true anatomic position at the time of operation indicating that it is extremely difficult to achieve perfect restoration of the fragment Of the 13 cases the wire loop broke in 4 cases with further subsequent displacement of the fragments (Fig 175) fibrous union occurred in 3 and nonunion in 2 Failure to attain bony union results in marked inefficiency of the extensor mechanism which is reflected in

the loss of volume of the quadriceps muscle and the instability of the affected knee joint. In addition, malunion and inadequate bony union predispose the patient to recurrent traumatic synovitis and osteoarthritis of the patellofemoral joint. Also, one case of malunion in this series had a second fracture of the patella and one case, rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Undoubtedly, the last two complications were the result of quadriceps inefficiency which allowed the knee to give way, inflicting undue stress on a weakened patellar or quadriceps tendon. In view of the high incidence of unsatisfactory results recorded above, it becomes apparent that operations designed to restore and maintain the integrity of the patella fall short of the goal desired by both the surgeon and the patient. Internal fixation of fractures of the patella is justified in the exceptional cases. The ideal fracture for this method is one in which the fragments are equal in size or almost so, and can be approximated with perfect anatomic alignment. Any comminution of the fragments should preclude the use of this method.

Much can be said in favor of the method of treatment that retains one large fragment of the patella: this may occupy either a superior or an inferior position. The normal configuration of the knee joint is preserved; this feature is particularly desirable in women. There is no alteration in the functional mechanics of the extensor apparatus; the remaining fragment is still capable of displacing the line of pull of the quadriceps muscle anterior to the center of the knee joint. The capsular structures on the anterior portion of the joint and the anterior portions of the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles still are afforded protection by the remaining fragment. Furthermore, Thomson pointed out that the procedure is concerned primarily with union between tendinous structures and bone, thereby eliminating the possibility of non-union or of fibrous union between fragments which naturally possess poor powers of



FIG. 176 Healed fracture of the patella of the same case depicted in Figure 173 treated by nonoperative measures.

osteogenesis. Also, he noted that the method permits early restoration of function to the extremity, hence reducing to a minimum the period of disability and the possibility of refracture. Comparative end result studies of the different procedures employed emphasize that permanent dysfunction of the knee is considerably less when one fragment of the patella is retained than when the bone is excised in toto or all fragments are preserved and reassembled in an attempt to restore normal anatomy.

#### PREFERRED METHODS OF TREATMENT

In the light of the aforementioned observations it becomes apparent that each case of fracture of the patella presents specific problems which must be analyzed carefully before treatment is instituted. Failure to do so jeopardizes the end result and may lead to great disability and perhaps to a second operation. Regardless of the method of management chosen, the patient's period of disability is shortened, and less dysfunction of the knee results if definitive treatment is undertaken immediately. Scott recorded that the average time of postoperative disability in 195 cases varied from 3.6 to 5.3 months and that the time was appreciably less when operation was performed before the fourteenth day than when





FIG 175 Wired fractured patella. Note incongruity of the articular surface the wire is broken and causes pain on motion

such severe comminution of the bone that no single fragment remains of sufficient size which can be utilized to preserve the normal mechanics of the joint

When the patella is broken up into two large fragments of approximately the same size the surgeon experiences a natural urge to restore the bony elements to their anatomic position this also applies to fragments of unequal size and in rare instances to comminuted fractures. Numerous operations have been designed to achieve this goal and many and varied materials are utilized as sutures some workers employ vitallium screws plates or bone pegs to maintain the reduction of the fragments. Although restoration of bone fragments to their normal position is a sound principle in the treatment of fractures of all bones the patella is the exception to the rule. Follow up studies reveal that regardless of

how meticulously the fragments are approximated some displacement recurs resulting in incongruity of the articular cartilage of the patella (Fig 174) This feature leads to chondromalacia and varying intensities of osteoarthritis in the patellofemoral joint. The factors responsible for displacement of the fragments are (1) continuous distraction by the quadriceps muscle at the fracture site and (2) loss of fixation caused by absorption of some bone at the line of fracture. It is common knowledge that the patella exhibits relatively poor power of osteogenesis for this reason and the ones enumerated above fibrous union and nonunion are more common than is generally realized. In the author's series there were 3 cases treated by a circumferential wire loop and 10 by a wire loop passing through both fragments in the manner described by Magnuson.

TABLE 7 COMPLICATIONS FOLLOWING TREATMENT OF PATELLAR FRACTURES BY APPROXIMATION OF THE FRAGMENTS

Refracture	1
Quadriceps tear	1
Wires broken	4
Fibrous union	3
Nonunion	2
Total cases	13

It was interesting to note that in the majority of these cases some malpositioning of the articular surfaces of the patellar fragments was demonstrable by postoperative roentgenographic studies this was true even in those cases in which the fragments appeared to be in their true anatomic position at the time of operation indicating that it is extremely difficult to achieve perfect restoration of the fragment. Of the 13 cases the wire loop broke in 4 cases with further subsequent displacement of the fragments (Fig 175) fibrous union occurred in 3 and nonunion in 2. Failure to attain bony union results in marked inefficiency of the extensor mechanism which is reflected in

the loss of volume of the quadriceps muscle and the instability of the affected knee joint. In addition, malunion and inadequate bony union predispose the patient to recurrent traumatic synovitis and osteoarthritis of the patellofemoral joint. Also, one case of malunion in this series had a second fracture of the patella and one case, rupture of the quadriceps tendon. Undoubtedly, the last two complications were the result of quadriceps inefficiency which allowed the knee to give way, inflicting undue stress on a weakened patellar or quadriceps tendon. In view of the high incidence of unsatisfactory results recorded above it becomes apparent that operations designed to restore and maintain the integrity of the patella fall short of the goal desired by both the surgeon and the patient. Internal fixation of fractures of the patella is justified in the exceptional cases. The ideal fracture for this method is one in which the fragments are equal in size or almost so and can be approximated with perfect anatomic alignment. Any comminution of the fragments should preclude the use of this method.

Much can be said in favor of the method of treatment that retains one large fragment of the patella, this may occupy either a superior or an inferior position. The normal configuration of the knee joint is preserved; this feature is particularly desirable in women. There is no alteration in the functional mechanics of the extensor apparatus; the remaining fragment is still capable of displacing the line of pull of the quadriceps muscle anterior to the center of the knee joint. The capsular structures on the anterior portion of the joint and the anterior portions of the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles still are afforded protection by the remaining fragment. Furthermore, Thomson pointed out that the procedure is concerned primarily with union between tendinous structures and bone thereby eliminating the possibility of non-union or of fibrous union between fragments which naturally possess poor powers of



FIG. 176 Healed fracture of the patella of the same case depicted in Figure 173, treated by nonoperative measures.

osteogenesis. Also, he noted that the method permits early restoration of function to the extremity, hence reducing to a minimum the period of disability and the possibility of refracture. Comparative end result studies of the different procedures employed emphasize that permanent dysfunction of the knee is considerably less when one fragment of the patella is retained than when the bone is excised in toto or all fragments are preserved and reassembled in an attempt to restore normal anatomy.

#### PREFERRED METHODS OF TREATMENT

In the light of the aforementioned observations it becomes apparent that each case of fracture of the patella presents specific problems which must be analyzed carefully before treatment is instituted. Failure to do so jeopardizes the end result and may lead to great disability and perhaps to a second operation. Regardless of the method of management chosen, the patient's period of disability is shortened and less dysfunction of the knee results if definitive treatment is undertaken immediately. Scott recorded that the average time of postoperative disability in 195 cases varied from 3.6 to 5.3 months and that the time was appreciably less when operation was performed before the fourteenth day than when

it was performed later. The author has established a policy that all fractures of the patella necessitating operative procedure are operated upon in the first 24 hours after the injury, provided that no contraindications to surgery exist. In general, the treatment of all fractures of the patella falls into one of two groups: (1) nonoperative treatment or (2) operative treatment.

#### NONOPERATIVE TREATMENT

Conservative measures are employed in fractures showing no separation of the fragments and in which the continuity of the quadriceps apparatus is intact. These fractures comprise incomplete or fissure fractures of the patella resulting from indirect force and fractures sustained by direct force which exhibit multiple fissures or even comminution of the fragments but no displacement or incongruity of the articular cartilage (Fig. 176).

It was noted previously that in these fractures blood accumulates in the joint cavity, producing diffuse swelling of the knee, not unlike that observed in traumatic synovitis. The first step in the treatment is aspiration of the blood with a wide bore needle. This is done under aseptic conditions with the knee extended. Local anesthesia is adequate for this purpose. A pos-

terior molded plaster splint is applied, extending from above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh, and bags full of ice are placed over and on either side of the knee. Within 2 or 3 days the knee begins to approach normalcy. On rare occasions aspiration of blood from the joint cavity must be repeated. Next a skintight plaster cylinder is applied, with the knee fully extended from 2 inches above the malleoli to the upper portion of the thigh (Fig. 177). The next day weight bearing on crutches is permitted. Also quadriceps exercises to preserve muscle tone and volume are instituted. At this time they comprise rhythmical contractions of the quadriceps muscle in the cast and active straight leg raising. Depending upon the severity of the fracture the cast is removed after 4 to 8 weeks. This is followed by a regimen of intensive exercises designed to obtain maximum quadriceps power and to restore normal joint function.

#### OPERATIVE TREATMENT

In general fractures of the patella requiring surgical intervention are treated by one of three methods: (1) the bony fragments are replaced in their normal anatomic position and made secure by some form of internal fixation; (2) one large fragment is



FIG. 177 Plaster cylinder extending from above the malleoli to the upper one third of the thigh. The knee is in the extended position.



FIG 178 Fracture of the patella treated by excision of the upper fragment and reattachment of the quadriceps tendon to the lower fragment.

retained to which is sutured the opposing tendon, and all other fragments are excised and (3) all patellar fragments are removed.

It is essential to emphasize that the incision utilized for the operation should give adequate exposure of the entire patellar and parapatellar regions in order to evaluate properly the severity of the injury both to the patella and to the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle. In cases with separation of the bony fragments the interior

of the joint should be inspected meticulously all blood clots and loose fragments of bone must be removed. Finally, tears in the medial and the lateral retinaculi of the patella and in the capsule and the synovialis must be repaired carefully with interrupted sutures. Occasionally, the lateral expansions of the quadriceps are shredded and frayed severely, making the repair extremely difficult in such instances the suture line may be reinforced with a strip of



FIG 179 Fracture of the patella. Treated by excision of the smaller lower fragment and reattachment of the patellar tendon to the upper fragment.

fascia lata. The author has found this necessary in several cases in elderly patients.

#### RETENTION OF ONE LARGE PATELLAR FRAGMENT

In the hands of the author this method has given the best long term results; this has been the experience of other workers. In transverse fractures with fragments of equal size showing any appreciable separation, the lower fragment is excised and the opposing tendon is sutured to the upper fragment. If the fragments are of unequal size, the smaller of the two is enucleated. In comminuted fractures with displacement, if one fragment is sufficiently large, the large fragment is retained and all others are excised (Figs. 178 to 180). In all polar fractures, if the displacement or comminution is present, the separated fragment or fragments are removed (Fig. 180). Finally, in ununited transverse fractures or cases of fibrous union producing symptoms in the patellofemoral joint, the smaller fragment

may be excised and the remaining fragment is remodeled to receive the opposing tendon.

**Technic** (Figs. 181, 182) Usually the operation designed by Thomson is employed. Exposure of the patella may be achieved either through a median parapatellar incision or an inverted U incision; the author prefers the latter. The use of a tourniquet facilitates the operation.

A U skin incision is made with its base over the distal portion of the patellar tendon. The upper flap comprising skin and subcutaneous tissue is reflected upward, exposing the patella and the parapatellar region (Fig. 181 A). At this time the severity of the lesion can be established fully. Particular attention should be paid to the limits of the tear in the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle; occasionally they extend to the anterior margins of the lateral collateral ligaments (Fig. 181 B). Blood clots and loose bony fragments and spicules are flushed out and curetted from between

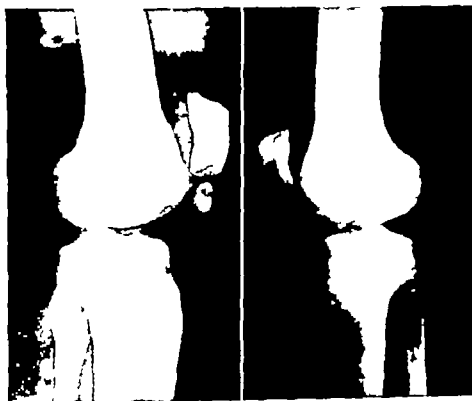


FIG. 180 Fracture of lower pole of the patella. The lower fragment was excised.

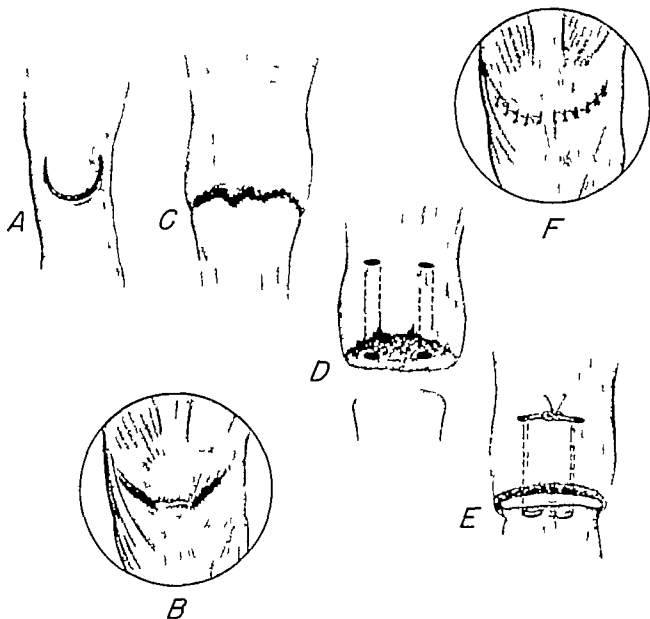


FIG 181 The larger upper fragment is retained and is approximated to the opposing tendon by a mattress suture. The tears in the medial and the lateral retinaculi are repaired by interrupted sutures (Thomson)

the larger attached fragments, and all blood clots are flushed out of the joint cavity and the suprapatellar pouch. Care should be taken not to traumatize the synovial lining; the use of rough dry gauze should be avoided. If the superior fragment (which is usually the largest) is to be retained, all other fragments are excised (Fig 181 C). Then the fractured surface is made ready to receive the opposing tendon by trimming its margins and creating a flat surface which is at right angles to the long axis of the pa-

tella. This is achieved best by using a sharp bone biter with flat broad blades. Two parallel holes are drilled in the bone. They are directed downward and slightly posteriorly, opening on the fractured surface just anterior to the articular cartilage (Fig 181 D).

Now the tendon is prepared for suturing to the bone: all loose devitalized strands of tissue are cut away. Numerous suture materials may be used to anchor the tendons; the author prefers braided silk or

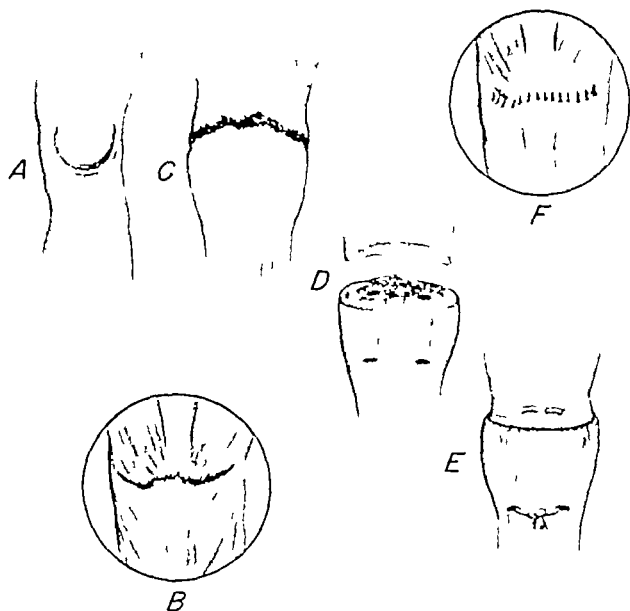


FIG. 182 The larger lower fragment is retained and approximated to the opposing tendon by a mattress suture (Thomson)

ainless steel wire. First a mattress suture is passed through the tendon taking several good bites of tissue; then each end of the suture is passed upward through its respective drill hole in the bony fragment and drawn taut so that the end of the tendon makes firm contact with the raw surface of the bone (Fig. 181 E). Next the ends are tied on the anterior surface of the fragment; then the tears in the lateral expansions are repaired. Beginning laterally and proceeding toward the patella, the edges

of the rents are approximated with interrupted sutures of No. 30 cotton (Fig. 181 F).

The same technic is employed when the proximal fragment is removed or when the poles of the patella are excised (Fig. 182). In comminuted fractures the fragments which are suitable to receive the opposing tendons usually are smaller than those retained in transverse fractures.

**Postoperative Management.** At the completion of the operation a plaster cylinder is applied from 2 inches above the

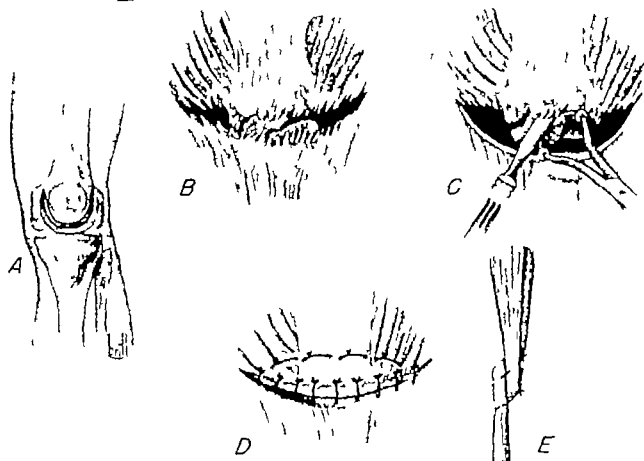


FIG. 183 Method of excision of all patella fragments. The ends of the tendon and the edges of the lateral expansion are overlapped by mattress and interrupted sutures

malleoli to the upper region of the thigh. After 10 days rhythmical contractions of the quadriceps muscle are instituted on a regulated regimen. Assisted straight leg raising is started at the end of 3 weeks, and weight bearing is permitted on crutches. The cast is removed at the end of 4 weeks, and graduated exercises are performed to restore quadriceps power and knee motion.

#### EXCISION OF ALL PATELLAR FRAGMENTS

Patellectomy is a justifiable procedure in extensively comminuted fractures of the patella which do not possess a fragment sufficiently large to provide a bony anchorage for the opposing tendon. As previously pointed out it is the operation of choice in persistent and recurrent dislocation of the patella in which advanced osteo-arthritic changes have occurred in the patello-

femoral joint and in malunited or ununited fractures of the patella associated with gross incongruity of the articular surface of the patella and profound secondary degenerative changes in the patellofemoral articulation. It should not be done in chondromalacia of the patella if the adjacent articular surface of the femur is not seriously implicated by osteo-arthritic changes. In such cases a plastic procedure on the articular surface of the patella will give a better long term end result than patellectomy, the same is true in cases of osteochondral fractures of the patella.

Duncan McKeever employs a patellar prosthesis of his own design for severely comminuted fractures of the patella or for lesions which would justify excision of the patella. The author has been impressed by the results obtained by this method and



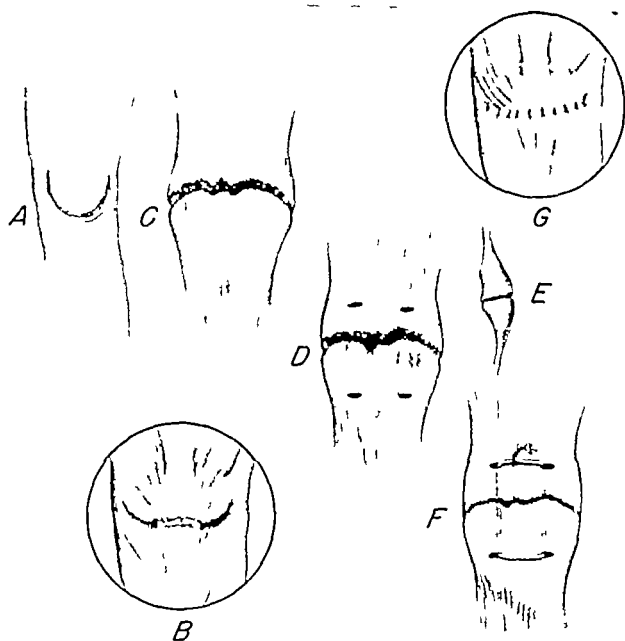


FIG. 184 Wiring of the patella (Magnuson technic)

predicts that the use of a patellar prosthesis will achieve great popularity.

**Technic (Fig. 183)** The patellar and the parapatellar region are exposed by a U skin incision (Fig. 183 A). By reflection upward of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue the entire interior region of the knee joint is visualized. The severity of the injury is scrutinized carefully, noting particularly the damage sustained by the lateral expansions of the quadriceps muscle (Fig. 183 B). All fragments are excised by sharp dissection

from the quadriceps and the patellar tendons and loose shredded fragments of the tendons are trimmed away. Blood clots and loose particles of bone are flushed out of the joint cavity and the suprapatellar pouch (Fig. 183 C).

Simple approximation of the ends of the tendons and the margins of the rents in the lateral expansion results in lengthening of the extensor mechanism. This causes loss of the last 10° or 15° of extension, hence greatly reducing the efficiency of the quad-

muscle as a stabilizer of the knee. In order to prevent this complication tendons and the edges of the torn lateral expansions are overlapped and plicated with mattress sutures to take up the slack caused by the loss of the patella. The reconstructed tendon should be shortened so that it is not unduly tense (Fig 183 D, E). Some surgeons use stainless steel wire or strips of flat metal for suture material. The author uses mattress sutures of double strands of 30 cotton.

In old fractures of the patella or other fractures necessitating excision of this bone the ends should be enucleated from its tendons by sharp dissection through a transverse incision. The ends of the tendons are treated in the manner described.

**Postoperative Management.** After completion of the operation a plaster cylinder is applied from above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh. Rhythmical quadriceps contractions gradually increasing in intensity are started on the second or the third postoperative day. At the end of 2 weeks assisted straight leg raising is commenced and at the end of 3 to 4 weeks the cast is removed and protected weight bearing is permitted. Progressive exercises are instituted to develop maximum quadriceps strength and flexion motion at the knee joint are instituted.

#### WIRING OF PATELLAR FRAGMENTS

The author restricts the use of this method to transverse fractures of the patella with no displacement or only minimal displacement in which accurate apposition of the articular surface is achieved readily. The anastomosis technic is employed: a wire is passed through both fragments. The technic (Fig 184 A to G). Exposure of the patella is attained by a U skin incision with its apex over the inferior fragment. The skin flaps are reflected upward and outward until the base and the apex of the patella are exposed. After the fracture is

identified the fragments are brought in accurately and firm contact by towel clips placed at either end of the fracture line.

By flexing the knee about  $10^{\circ}$  or  $15^{\circ}$  the large margins and the poles of the patella are made more accessible. With a long drill two parallel holes are made in the long axis of the patella. They enter the superior fragment slightly to the inner side of the medial and the lateral margins of the quadriceps tendon, and their sites of exit in the inferior fragment are close to the lateral and the medial borders of the patellar tendon. The course of the drill holes should be as close as possible to the center of the antero-posterior dimension of the patella. Then a piece of stout stainless steel wire is passed down the medial drill hole and up the lateral hole. Next, the ends of the wire are drawn taut and twisted together, they are cut short and buried in the substance of the quadriceps tendon.

**Postoperative Management.** A plaster cylinder is applied, and rhythmical contractions of the quadriceps are instituted the following day. At the end of 2 weeks straight leg raising and protected weight bearing are allowed. The cast is removed at the end of 4 to 6 weeks, and progressive exercises are instituted to develop maximum quadriceps power and joint motion.

#### FRACTURES OF PATELLA WITH SUPERFICIAL LACERATIONS

On occasion, fractures caused by direct violence exhibit abrasions and lacerations of the skin overlying the patella. In such an event preoperative measures must be carried out in order to minimize the danger of postoperative infection. If the case is seen early (within 6 to 8 hours after the injury) operative intervention is justifiable, provided that first the wounds are cleansed thoroughly with sterile green soap and water. This is followed by copious irrigation of the wounds with solutions of normal saline. Gentleness must be executed in this phase of the preparation of the skin. Too

often the tissues are traumatized further by the use of a stiff brush or a rough gauze. The author prefers to cleanse the wound with balls of cotton.

Under aseptic technic the skin edges of the lacerations are excised and the wounds are closed loosely with interrupted cotton sutures. Surgeon assistants and nurses now change into sterile gowns and gloves, the region is redraped and the fracture is treated in the manner described for fresh closed fractures. At the termination of the operation an aqueous solution of penicillin is injected into the operative wounds (the solution contains 250 units of penicillin per cc. 10 cc. of this solution is injected routinely). Antibiotics also are administered postoperatively until it is established definitely that no infection is present. As a rule antibiotics are given for 5 to 7 days.

If the tissue damage is extensive and gross contamination is evident or if more than 8 hours have elapsed since the injury, the wounds are cleansed gently and irrigated as described above. All devitalized tissue is trimmed away and the skin edges are approximated loosely with interrupted sutures, but no definite surgery is attempted. The limb is placed at complete rest in a posterior splint, and continuous hot wet soaks of a mild boric acid solution are applied. In addition antibiotics are administered locally and systematically. Usually within 8 to 10 days the wounds are clean and healed sufficiently to allow surgical repair of the fracture. It may be necessary to change the course of the skin incision in order to avoid cutting through damaged skin.

#### OPEN FRACTURES OF THE PATELLA

Severe direct violence to the kneecap may produce extensive ragged lacerations of the skin which communicate with the fracture and hence the joint cavity. It becomes obvious that the first concern of the surgeon in these cases is to prevent contamination of the joint by pyogenic organisms. This is

achieved best by converting an open fracture to a closed fracture before infection occurs. In cases seen within 6 to 8 hours the limb from mid thigh to mid-calf is cleansed thoroughly under aseptic technic with sterile green soap and water. Care must be taken to prevent dirty fluid from entering the wound. This is achieved by placing several sponges of sterile gauze in the wound. Cleansing of the skin is done up to the edges of the wound. After the surgeon believes that the skin is cleansed thoroughly, the soap is removed by pouring sterile water over the skin.

Now the wound itself is ready for cleansing. After the sterile gauze has been removed the wound is scrubbed thoroughly with sterile green soap. Balls of cotton are used for this purpose. While this is being done the wound is irrigated constantly with a stream of sterile saline. This is continued until the surgeon is satisfied that the wound is clean. Finally, the wound is irrigated by sterile saline to wash out the soapy fluid. From 1,000 cc. to 1,500 cc. of the solution is used for this purpose.

Next the limb is now draped for debridement of the wound. The surgeon and the assistants put on sterile gowns and gloves. Under a continuous stream of sterile saline a block excision of the edges of the wound is done. The incision traverses the full thickness of the skin, the subcutaneous tissue and the superficial fascia and reaches the aponeurosis of the quadriceps muscle and the fascial covering of the patella. All devitalized tissues and loose fragments of bone are excised with a curet the fractured surfaces of the patellar fragments are scraped free of blood clots and other debris. This phase of the operation is done slowly and meticulously. It terminates only when the surgeon is convinced that the wound is free of all undesirable materials and its sterility cannot be improved by further surgery and irrigation. At this point a decision must be made concerning subsequent treatment of the lesion.

Primary definitive surgery, such as that described under the treatment of closed fractures of the patella, is permissible in wounds seen within 6 to 8 hours after the injury, provided that there is no evidence of gross contamination. Lesions encountered 8 hours after the accident and showing definite marks of contamination must be treated more conservatively. The synovial capsule is closed, but no repair is done in the extensor mechanism. The skin is approximated loosely and the limb is put to complete rest. Penicillin solution is injected into the joint and the wound and also is administered systemically. Repair is attempted only when the wound is healed and no local or systemic evidence of infection is present. This may require an interval of 2 to 3 weeks.

Old frankly infected cases are treated similarly in every feature to cases with gross contamination. It is essential to close the synovial capsule in all instances after debridement of the wound is completed. The skin and the subcutaneous tissues are not approximated. The extremity is put to complete rest on a posterior splint, and continuous hot wet soaks are applied. Antibiotics are applied locally and administered systemically in large doses. After the infection has been eliminated and healing by scar tissue is complete a secondary operation is done in the extensor apparatus along the lines described for closed fractures of the patella.

#### MARGINAL FRACTURES OF THE PATELLA

These lesions are the result of direct violence to the margins of the patella, shearing away a fragment of its periphery. There is only minimal displacement of the fragment and the quadriceps mechanism remains intact. The fractures are of special importance because they are prone to give rise to pain and disability resulting from secondary degenerative changes in the patellofemoral joint. Two factors are responsible for the degenerative alterations: (1) the

initial force may traumatize the articular cartilage and the subchondral bone of the patellar fragment and that of the opposing anterior surface of the femoral condyle sufficiently to institute development of secondary degenerative changes, and (2) the blood supply to the peripheral fragment is inadequate to allow satisfactory healing and abort degenerative changes. In many instances nonunion or fibrous union occurs regardless of the type of conservative measures employed. Immobilization of the limb in plaster does not ensure bony union.

With or without nonoperative treatment the immediate results are good after the acute symptoms subside. Normal function of the knee joint is attained. After some months or even years symptoms referable to the patellofemoral joint arise, increase progressively in severity and are associated with dysfunction of the joint. Pain is increased by activity; there is a feeling of stiffness in the joint and the patient is conscious of scraping of one bone against another as the knee is flexed and extended actively. Rough crepitus is readily demonstrable by making firm pressure downward on the patella and moving it about on the anterior surface of the femur. This maneuver is accompanied by pain. Recurrent swelling of the knee resulting from an associated synovitis, is not uncommon. The author has encountered one case of old marginal fracture with symptoms and disability of the joint lasting 8 years. The outstanding clinical feature was persistent swelling. At operation a diffuse villonodular synovitis was noted. In addition to removal of the fragment of the patella a total synovectomy was performed.

Roentgenographic studies disclose the fracture. Vertical or axial projections of the patella give the most information. In old cases the lesion must be differentiated from congenital anomalies of the patella, especially bipartite patella. The margins of the supernumerary bone and the main bone are usually smooth and even in density. The

often the tissues are traumatized further by the use of a stiff brush or a rough gauze. The author prefers to cleanse the wound with balls of cotton.

Under aseptic technic the skin edges of the lacerations are excised and the wounds are closed loosely with interrupted cotton sutures. Surgeon assistants and nurses now change into sterile gowns and gloves, the region is redraped and the fracture is treated in the manner described for fresh closed fractures. At the termination of the operation an aqueous solution of penicillin is injected into the operative wounds (the solution contains 250 units of penicillin per cc. 10 cc. of this solution is injected routinely). Antibiotics also are administered postoperatively until it is established definitely that no infection is present. As a rule antibiotics are given for 5 to 7 days.

If the tissue damage is extensive and gross contamination is evident or if more than 8 hours have elapsed since the injury, the wounds are cleansed gently and irrigated as described above. All devitalized tissue is trimmed away, and the skin edges are approximated loosely with interrupted sutures but no definite surgery is attempted. The limb is placed at complete rest in a posterior splint and continuous hot wet soaks of a mild boric acid solution are applied. In addition antibiotics are administered locally and systematically. Usually within 8 to 10 days the wounds are clean and healed sufficiently to allow surgical repair of the fracture. It may be necessary to change the course of the skin incision in order to avoid cutting through damaged skin.

#### OPEN FRACTURES OF THE PATELLA

Severe direct violence to the kneecap may produce extensive ragged lacerations of the skin which communicate with the fracture and hence the joint cavity. It becomes obvious that the first concern of the surgeon in these cases is to prevent contamination of the joint by pyogenic organisms. This is

achieved best by converting an open fracture to a closed fracture before infection occurs. In cases seen within 6 to 8 hours the limb from mid thigh to mid-calf is cleansed thoroughly under aseptic technic with sterile green soap and water. Care must be taken to prevent dirty fluid from entering the wound. This is achieved by placing several sponges of sterile gauze in the wound. Cleansing of the skin is done up to the edges of the wound. After the surgeon believes that the skin is cleansed thoroughly, the soap is removed by pouring sterile water over the skin.

Now the wound itself is ready for cleansing. After the sterile gauze has been removed the wound is scrubbed thoroughly with sterile green soap. Balls of cotton are used for this purpose. While this is being done the wound is irrigated constantly with a stream of sterile saline. This is continued until the surgeon is satisfied that the wound is clean. Finally, the wound is irrigated by sterile saline to wash out the soapy fluid from 1 000 cc. to 1,500 cc. of the solution is used for this purpose.

Next, the limb is now draped for débridement of the wound. The surgeon and the assistants put on sterile gowns and gloves. Under a continuous stream of sterile saline a block excision of the edges of the wound is done. The incision traverses the full thickness of the skin, the subcutaneous tissue and the superficial fascia and reaches the aponeurosis of the quadriceps muscle and the fascial covering of the patella. All devitalized tissues and loose fragments of bone are excised with a curet the fractured surfaces of the patellar fragments are scraped free of blood clots and other debris. This phase of the operation is done slowly and meticulously. It terminates only when the surgeon is convinced that the wound is free of all undesirable materials and its sterility cannot be improved by further surgery and irrigation. At this point a decision must be made concerning subsequent treatment of the lesion.

Primary definitive surgery, such as that described under the treatment of closed fractures of the patella, is permissible in wounds seen within 6 to 8 hours after the injury, provided that there is no evidence of gross contamination. Lesions encountered 8 hours after the accident and showing definite marks of contamination must be treated more conservatively. The synovial capsule is closed but no repair is done in the extensor mechanism; the skin is approximated loosely, and the limb is put to complete rest. Penicillin solution is injected into the joint and the wound and also is administered systemically. Repair is attempted only when the wound is healed and no local or systemic evidence of infection is present. This may require an interval of 2 to 3 weeks.

Old frankly infected cases are treated similarly in every feature to cases with gross contamination. It is essential to close the synovial capsule in all instances after débridement of the wound is completed. The skin and the subcutaneous tissues are not approximated. The extremity is put to complete rest on a posterior splint, and continuous hot wet soaks are applied. Antibiotics are applied locally and administered systemically in large doses. After the infection has been eliminated and healing by scar tissue is complete a secondary operation is done in the extensor apparatus along the lines described for closed fractures of the patella.

#### MARGINAL FRACTURES OF THE PATELLA

These lesions are the result of direct violence to the margins of the patella shearing away a fragment of its periphery. There is only minimal displacement of the fragment and the quadriceps mechanism remains intact. The fractures are of special importance because they are prone to give rise to pain and disability resulting from secondary degenerative changes in the patellofemoral joint. Two factors are responsible for the degenerative alterations: (1) the

initial force may traumatize the articular cartilage and the subchondral bone of the patellar fragment and that of the opposing anterior surface of the femoral condyle sufficiently to institute development of secondary degenerative changes, and (2) the blood supply to the peripheral fragment is inadequate to allow satisfactory healing and abort degenerative changes. In many instances nonunion or fibrous union occurs, regardless of the type of conservative measures employed. Immobilization of the limb in plaster does not ensure bony union.

With or without nonoperative treatment the immediate results are good; after the acute symptoms subside, normal function of the knee joint is attained. After some months or even years symptoms referable to the patellofemoral joint arise, increase progressively in severity and are associated with dysfunction of the joint. Pain is increased by activity; there is a feeling of stiffness in the joint, and the patient is conscious of scraping of one bone against another as the knee is flexed and extended actively. Rough crepitus is readily demonstrable by making firm pressure downward on the patella and moving it about on the anterior surface of the femur. This maneuver is accompanied by pain. Recurrent swelling of the knee, resulting from an associated synovitis, is not uncommon. The author has encountered one case of old marginal fracture with symptoms and disability of the joint lasting 8 years. The outstanding clinical feature was persistent swelling. At operation a diffuse villonodular synovitis was noted. In addition to removal of the fragment of the patella a total synovectomy was performed.

Roentgenographic studies disclose the fracture: vertical or axial projections of the patella give the most information. In old cases the lesion must be differentiated from congenital anomalies of the patella, especially bipartite patella. The margins of the supernumerary bone and the main bone are usually smooth and even in density. The

two bony elements depict the pattern of normal healthy bone the abnormality is usually bilateral (Fig 144) This is in contrast with the findings noted in old marginal fractures Here the opposing margins are irregular or even serrated the fragment exhibits areas of irregular densities approaching the appearance of cystic degeneration of bone and its articular surface is thin and uneven

#### TREATMENT

In view of the observations noted above it becomes apparent that the treatment of choice in marginal fractures is excision of the fragment. This is achieved readily by a small vertical incision made directly over the fragment. The fragment is enucleated by sharp dissection from the fascioperiosteal tissues of the patella and from the capsule. The edges of the main fragment are made smooth and the remaining defect is closed by interrupted cotton sutures.

#### OSTEOCHONDRAL FRACTURE OF THE PATELLA

Fractures of the osteochondral surface of the patella occur more frequently than is generally realized. A survey of the literature reveals that this lesion may be one source of "loose bodies" in the knee joints. First reference was made to this lesion by Kroner (1905). He reported a case of lateral dislocation of the patella in which the patella was split into two frontal sections. Of particular interest was the position of the two fragments the deeper fragment with the articular cartilage remained displaced reduction being prevented by the lateral condyle of the femur the outer fragment reduced itself. Since this first report other isolated cases were recorded in the literature. Some of the earlier contributors were Villar (1921) Kleinberg (1923) Stewart (1925) Krida (1928) Meekison (1937) and more recently cases have been reported by Chaklin (1939) Vilgram (1943) Harmon (1945) and Coleman (1948). Usually the lesion is encountered in children and adolescents but may occur

in young adults. In most of the abnormal knock knee deformity

#### MECHANISM OF FRACTURE

Study of the surgical pathologic lesions leads one to conclude that force in a tangential direction is to cause the fracture. Essentially anism is one of indirect violence. The patella slips over the lateral femoral condyle for varying distance usually is sufficient to traverse the articular surfaces of the femur and the patella. In some instances complete dislocation occurs and the border of the patella engages the prominent edge of the lateral femur. Instantaneously, the muscle contracts forcefully in return the patella to its normal position. The anterior surface of the femur doing, a shearing force is applied to the patella which tears the trapped articular surface from the femur. The severed segment comprises articular cartilage and subchondral bone the most common lesion is in the inferior medial of the articular surface. Cases in which resulted from a direct blow to the inner side of the patella forcing it. The author has encountered 15 cases in which a young Marine was struck on the medial side of the right knee with a rifle a complete lateral dislocation ensued requiring manual reduction under general anesthesia. Postoperative roentgenograms exhibited a loose body in the lateral compartment. Subsequent dissection of the knee joint disclosed an osteochondral body which fitted into a fresh defect noted on the lateral aspect of the articular surface of the patella.

On occasion the aforementioned mechanism of indirect force may not be a portion of the articular surface of the patella instead trauma is inflicted

region of sufficient severity to produce a local area of aseptic necrosis not unlike that encountered in osteochondritis dissecans. Subsequently the affected portion of the articular surface becomes detached. With healing of the original site the origin of the loose body is difficult to determine unless the undersurface of the patella is visualized. If a healed defect is discernible in the cartilaginous surface, it is impossible to differentiate the lesion from one of healing following osteochondritis dissecans or one resulting from traumatic avulsion of cartilage and bone. Coleman's series is of special interest because it emphasizes that a recent osteochondral fracture may be superimposed upon the site of an old fracture. He recorded that in one case the second injury scraped off a portion of the fibrocartilage which had partly repaired the defect in the patella.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

As previously noted, usually the disorder is encountered in children and adolescents, but occasionally it occurs in young adults. There is a history of twisting the knee, accompanied by an audible snap and severe pain in the joint. It may follow direct trauma to the inner aspect of the patella forcing it laterally into a position of dislocation. Also the lesion may be a complication of recurrent dislocation of the patella. Complete disability and marked swelling ensue. After a period of several weeks the swelling subsides. Upon walking, the patient may feel a "catch" in the knee joint, or the knee actually may lock. Occasionally the patient offers the information that the loose body can be felt and displaced manually. As a rule in recent cases some diffuse tenderness is elicited by palpation over the medial expansion of the quadriceps muscle. Invariably blood can be aspirated from the joint cavity. In late cases the clinical course parallels that of osteochondritis dissecans with a loose body in the joint.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

Routine anteroposterior and lateral views may fail to disclose the defect in the articular surface of the patella, vertical or axial views usually disclose some irregularity of the articular cartilage. The presence of a loose body is not detected by roentgenographic examination in all instances, particularly if the fragment consists entirely of cartilage. The body may be depicted as a thin flake of bone (Fig. 185). Because the body comprises mostly cartilage the shadow it casts in roentgenograms is no indication as to its true size. Such a shadow, together with a hemarthrosis in young people, should make one highly suspicious of an osteochondral fracture of the patella.

#### TREATMENT

The joint cavity is exposed by a medial parapatellar incision. The inside of the joint is inspected, and the loose body is removed. By rotating the patella outward on its longitudinal axis the entire articular surface comes into view. The roughened irregular edges of the defect in the cartilaginous surface are made smooth with a scalpel. In view of the observations that the mechanism of the lesion is primarily a subluxation or a dislocation of the patella, means to prevent a recurrence of the injury are deemed advisable. Coleman recommends plication of the medial capsule as a preventive measure.

#### CASE REPORT

The case of E. K. is typical of this entity. A male 22 years old was admitted to the orthopedic service of the Jefferson Hospital with a painful swollen right knee joint. According to the patient's statement, 1 week prior to admission he slipped on a pebble and twisted the knee. The joint immediately became swollen and painful and he was unable to straighten the knee completely. Further questioning elicited that for the past 4 or 5 years the knee had a tendency to give way on several occasions it had become markedly swollen. Physical examination of the part revealed the presence of a hemarthrosis. Pressure over the patella elicited severe pain, the knee could be





FIG. 185 (Left) Case E. K. Note thin flake of bone in the lateral joint compartment. (Center) The body was removed and photographed note its size in relation to that depicted in the roentgenogram (Right) Case A. K. A loose body is seen in the infrapatellar region note the corresponding defect in the inferomedial aspect of the articular surface of the patella.

extended passively to  $180^{\circ}$  and in the relaxed position marked relaxation of the quadriceps apparatus was demonstrable. Roentgenographic examination disclosed the presence of a thin flake of bone in the anterior aspect of the knee joint in the lateral compartment. A diagnosis of an osteochondral fracture was made (Fig. 185).

On the following day the knee was exposed through a medial parapatellar incision. Considerable blood was encountered in the joint cavity; this was sucked out, and the joint was irrigated with a solution of normal saline. A large loose body, comprising mostly cartilage with a thin flake of bone, was found lying free in the lateral compartment. A corresponding defect was observed in the lower medial aspect of the articular surface of the patella. Figure 185 center depicts the loose body removed from the joint. Note that no roentgenographic evidence of a defect is evident in the lateral view.

#### FRACTURES OF TIBIAL TUBERCLE MECHANISM OF PRODUCTION AND CLINICAL FEATURES

This is a relatively rare lesion. It is pro-

duced by excessive contraction of the quadriceps muscle with the knee in varying degrees of flexion. It differs from avulsion of the patellar tendon in that only the central osseous portion of the insertion of this structure is avulsed; the tendinous portion of the insertion which is attached to the lateral tuberosities of the tibia remains intact. The difference in the severity of the two lesions is reflected in the clinical picture. Although in general the signs and the symptoms of fracture of the tibial tubercle are similar to those of rupture of the patellar tendon, the patient does not lose completely the power to extend the leg actively. Also swelling and tenderness are localized directly over the tibial tubercle. If the avulsed portion of the tubercle is large, it may be readily palpable under the skin. When the knee is flexed the fragment tends to be pulled upward. On rare occasions the tibial tubercle may be fragmented by direct violence. The author has encountered two such cases; one was struck accidentally

on the anterior surface of the bony prominence by a steel bar, and the other fell from a height landing on the tubercle with the knee flexed. In these two instances active extension was not impaired but was painful. The lesions are depicted readily by roentgenograms

#### TREATMENT

Fracture of the tibial tubercle is treated by replacement and fixation of the fragment to its natural anatomic position. After routine preparation of the skin the patellar tendon and the tubercle are exposed by a short lateral parapatellar incision which curves inward at the distal end of the tubercle crossing the anterior tibial crest. With the leg extended the fragments are replaced and maintained in position by sutures of chromic catgut or braided silk passing through the surrounding fibrous tissue and periosteum. As a rule, sufficient soft tissue is available around the fracture site to anchor the fragment into place. If firmer fixation is desired, a screw or autogenous bone pegs may be employed, or the sutures may be passed through drill holes made below the crest of the tibia. The author never has found this to be necessary. After the operation the limb is placed in a plaster cylinder extending from above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh. Rhythmic active contraction of the quadriceps may be started within 24 to 48 hours after the surgery. Weight bearing is permitted at the end of 3 weeks and the cast is removed at the end of 8 weeks.

#### SEPARATION OF THE UPPER EPIPHYSIS OF THE TIBIA

This is an exceedingly rare lesion, it usually occurs in young children between the ages of 3 and 10. The natural configuration of the epiphysis (narrow and broad) and the broad lateral insertion of the patellar tendon into the tuberosities of the tibia are factors which protect the epiph-

ysis from undue shearing forces. The mechanism of separation of the epiphysis is similar to that recorded for ruptures of the patellar tendon namely, forceful contraction of the quadriceps muscle against resistance with the knee partially flexed. The epiphysis as a whole usually is displaced forward and laterally. Injury to the popliteal vessels and nerves may occur. Displacement of the epiphysis is followed by active bleeding into the joint cavity, producing marked swelling of the joint, the capsular tissues are under severe tension. All active and passive motion at the knee joint causes severe pain, the disability is complete. The author has encountered one such case in a child 11 years old. The injury was sustained when the patient jumped from a high fence. Swelling was so severe that it obscured any alteration in the normal configuration of the knee joint. Roentgenograms revealed that the epiphysis had slipped forward and slightly laterally approximately  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm. No fracture was discernible in the portion of the epiphysis forming the tibial tubercle.

#### TREATMENT

An attempt should be made to reduce the displacement as soon as possible after the injury. In cases with marked swelling of the joint aspiration is indicated before reduction is attempted. In the above case 200 cc. of blood was aspirated from the joint cavity. With the patient under a general anesthesia reduction is achieved by traction on the lower leg in the long axis of the femur with the hip and the knee flexed from  $30^\circ$  to  $45^\circ$ . While traction is being maintained by an assistant, the lateral displacement is corrected by making firm pressure on the lateral surface of the epiphysis with the heel of the hands. Then the limb is immobilized in a plaster cylinder with the knee extended. The cast is removed after 6 to 8 weeks and weight bearing is permitted. Physical therapy is instituted to restore joint function.

### COMPLETE AVULSION OF THE EPIPHYSIS OF THE TIBIAL TUBERCLE

Avulsion of the tibial tubercle is not a common lesion. The mechanism of production is similar to that of rupture of the patellar tendon and fracture of the tibial tubercle. The signs and the symptoms noted in this disorder are in every respect like those encountered in the above lesions except that active extension is not lost completely. The extent and the type of the avulsion is governed by the severity of the indirect force and the anatomic peculiarities of the proximal tibial epiphysis. This growth center may be observed in one of two forms: (1) the tibial tubercle may be continuous with the superior portion of the epiphysis, appearing as a flat triangular prolongation of the main mass of the epiphysis on the anterior surface of the tibia; or (2) the tibial tubercle may arise from a separate distinct center of ossification which unites at the fifteenth or the

sixteenth year with the upper tibial epiphysis (Fig 186).

If the mechanism of excessive contraction of the quadriceps muscle with the knee flexed is applied to epiphyses in the first category, the anterior prolongation of the tibial epiphysis may be pulled away from the anterior surface of the tibia without a break in its continuity, or it may be detached completely from the main body of the epiphysis. If the same mechanism is applied to cases in the second category, the small separate epiphysis of the tibial tubercle is torn away from its anchorage on the tibia. In each case the clinical features are the same.

#### TREATMENT

In cases exhibiting complete avulsion of the tibial tubercle, replacement of the fragment by open operation is indicated. The technic of the operation and the postoperative management are the same as those described for fractures of the tibial tuber-



FIG. 186 (Left) The tibial tubercle may be continuous with the superior portion of the epiphysis or (Right) it may arise from a separate center of ossification.

cle The use of internal fixation, such as bone pegs and screws, is rarely justified because the fragment can be anchored readily in its anatomic position by sutures of chromic catgut, cotton or silk passing through the surrounding soft tissues

### OSGOOD SCHLATTER'S DISEASE

The etiologic factor responsible for this disorder is still a controversial subject. Most observers favor the traumatic theory which is based on the observation that before the tibial tubercle unites with the shaft of the tibia it is a weak link in the extensor apparatus. During adolescence, when more activity is expended than at any other period of life repeated stresses applied to the tibial tubercle produce minor avulsion of fragments of the tubercle or the entire ossification center. Complete avulsion is prevented by the lateral insertion of the patellar tendon into the tibial tuberosities. Although this is a plausible premise there are some features of the lesion which it does not explain, particularly the frequent bilateral occurrences. In the same age period, similar changes may be noted at the site of insertion of the tendo achillis into the epiphysis of the os calcis and at the point of insertion of the peroneus brevis into the base of the fifth metatarsal bone and at the upper and the lower poles of the patella. The last two sites often are referred to as Larsen Johansson disease.

Recently Ferguson set forth an explanation of the condition which is attracting much attention. He is of the opinion that Osgood-Schlatter's disease is not the result of minor avulsions of portions or of the whole tibial tubercle but that the bony changes noted are secondary to swelling, hemorrhage and degenerative changes in the patellar tendon near its attachment. These changes interfere with the circulation of the underlying bone and cause irregular ossification within it. The pathologic process is designated tenostosis. It is encoun-



FIG 187 Case of bilateral Osgood Schlatter's disease

tered in mid adolescence and is caused by stress developed by rapid growth and expended on the patellar tendon near its attachment. According to Ferguson the changes at the poles of the patella described by Larsen and Johansson are the result of this same mechanism. The irregular ossification in the tibial tubercle appears some months after swelling of the tendon subsides, it tends to undergo repair after a few years. Unfortunately, it often is interpreted erroneously as a fracture or an avulsion.

The author has encountered many cases which substantiate the aforementioned premise. It is not uncommon to observe an adolescent with all the clinical features of Osgood-Schlatter's disease, yet the only positive finding is swelling of the patellar tendon being more pronounced near its insertion into the tibial tubercle. In these cases the roentgenograms fail to reveal any bone changes. However, later in the disease irregular ossification is demonstrable roentgenographically. On several occasions the tendon was explored; it was found to be thickened, edematous and markedly tense.

### CLINICAL FEATURES

The condition is observed in adolescents; boys are affected more frequently than girls. Frequently, it is bilateral (Fig 187)



FIG 188 Irregular ossification in tendon and irregularity of the tibial tubercle often encountered in late stages of Osgood-Schlatter's disease.



FIG 189 Islets of bone encountered in the patellar tendon close to the tibial tubercle. This patient gave a history from his adolescence consistent with Osgood-Schlatter's disease. The islets of bone have failed to fuse with the tibia.

As a rule the onset is insidious—the patient becomes aware of some pain and tenderness over the tibial tubercle. The symptoms are accentuated by exercises or by direct trauma to the region. A limp may be discernible and in more acute cases pain is felt when the leg is extended forcefully or against resistance. Occasionally, the symptoms appear suddenly, usually after some form of strenuous activity. Examination of the patient discloses varying degrees of swelling over the tibial tubercle and also some swelling and thickening of the distal end of the patellar tendon. Pressure over the tubercle and the tendon near its insertion invariably elicits tenderness.

Roentgenologic study in the early cases may reveal only a thickened patellar tendon anterior to the tibial tubercle and swelling of the overlying skin and subcutaneous tis-

sue. Later irregular ossification is observed in the tibial tubercle and some calcification may be demonstrable in the substance of the patellar tendon (Fig 188). Irregular ossification may exist without symptoms; frequently it is encountered accidentally in roentgenograms of knees of adolescents. However, in these cases the tendon is normal; the irregular ossification is the result of multiple ossification centers and not tenostosis.

The duration of the condition varies; it may persist from a few months to 2 or 3 years. Invariably after all tenderness subsides the affected tubercle remains larger than normal. Occasionally adults are en-

countered who have some discomfort and disability of varying severity over the tibial tubercle. Roentgenograms may disclose islets of bone in the patellar tendon close to its insertion into the tibial tubercle and some irregular hypertrophy of this structure (Fig 189). These findings lead one to conclude that a condition comparable with Osgood-Schlatter's disease existed during adolescence, and that the irregular islands of bone failed to fuse with the anterior surface of the tibia. Close interrogation of the patient may substantiate this conclusion.

#### TREATMENT

In most instances the symptoms are not of sufficient intensity to warrant immobilization of the limb or surgical intervention. Most cases can be treated by avoiding sports when there is a flare up of symptoms or by a simple protective dressing over the tubercle when tenderness increases. A piece

of felt or sponge rubber with a hole in its center is placed over the tubercle and held by an elastic bandage. The bandage should not be worn continuously. The author has observed several cases in which the symptoms were of unusual severity. All motions of the knee were acutely painful and the tubercle exhibited marked swelling and acute tenderness. In such cases bed rest until the acuteness of the symptoms subside is justifiable. Also, immobilization in a plaster cylinder affords rapid relief. Generally a period of 10 to 12 weeks of immobilization in a plaster cylinder effects a cure; however, this is rarely indicated.

As previously indicated, surgical management is rarely required. However, cases of long duration and with symptoms of sufficient severity to interfere with the active life of the adolescent period may be relieved by surgical intervention. Several methods may be employed: (1) splitting

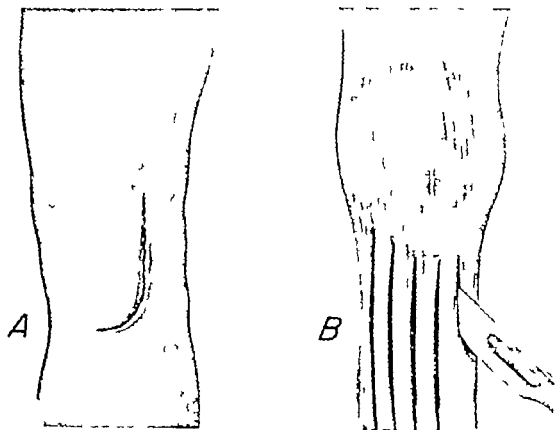


FIG. 190 Method of making parallel longitudinal cuts in the patellar tendon (4 to 6 suffice) for resistant cases of Osgood-Schlatter's disease. The cuts traverse one half the thickness of the tendon.

the tendon (2) multiple drilling of the tibial tubercle (3) pegging with autogenous bone grafts and (4) excision of the loose fragments beneath or in the patellar tendon. The author has utilized all these methods and is convinced that splitting the patellar tendon is the procedure of choice. It is a simple operation and produces the desired results. Drilling of the tubercle and insertion of autogenous bone pegs give the same immediate results but may prove to be harmful, especially if performed before complete skeletal growth is attained. Premature fusion of the anterior portion of the tibial epiphysis may result in a deformity of the upper end of the tibia. In adults with loose fragments beneath or in the patellar tendon simple excision suffices.

#### TECHNIC OF SPLITTING THE PATELLAR TENDON

The tendon and the tubercle are exposed by a J-shaped incision placed to one side of the mid line and extending from the level of the apex of the patella to the distal end of the tubercle (Fig. 190). From 4 to 6 parallel longitudinal cuts are made in the tendon penetrating approximately one half of its thickness. At the termination of the operation a plaster cylinder is applied. Inasmuch as the continuity of the extensor mechanism is not interrupted, weight bearing is allowed at the end of 7 to 10 days. The cast is removed at the end of 3 weeks. The same postoperative management is carried out for excision of loose fragments in adults.

#### OSTEOCHONDRITIS OF THE POLES OF THE PATELLA (LARSEN JOHANSSON DISEASE)

Changes similar to those described in *Osgood Schlatter's disease* are encountered in the inferior pole of the patella and less frequently in the superior pole. As previously noted Ferguson is of the opinion

that the alterations especially irregular ossification, are secondary to swelling hemorrhage and degenerative changes in the patellar tendon (tenostosis) resulting from stress developed by rapid growth. Others believe the abnormalities are the result of the accumulative effect of repeated minor strains at weak points of attachment of the patellar tendon or if the superior pole is implicated at the attachments of the quadriceps tendon. The lesion is often bilateral.

The condition is observed in adolescents between the ages of 10 and 14. Boys are affected more frequently than girls. Generally the cardinal clinical features are pain, limp and soft tissue swelling localized over the involved pole of the patella. Extension of the leg against resistance may produce pain. Pressure over the affected regions invariably elicits tenderness. Increased activity accentuates the symptoms.

In the early stages no bony changes may be demonstrable by roentgenographic study, however swelling of the tendon is always discernible. Later irregular ossification appears near the insertion of the tendon into the pole of the patella, some calcification may be present in the substance of the tendon (Fig. 191).

#### TREATMENT

The average case is not of sufficient severity to demand immobilization of the limb. Measures such as those described for mild cases of *Osgood Schlatter's disease* suffice to carry the patient until the symptoms subside. More severe cases and those which fail to respond to simple measures may be treated by immobilizing the extremity in a plaster cylinder extending from above the malleoli to the upper region of the thigh. A cure is usually effected in 6 to 8 weeks.

#### CHONDROMALACIA PATELLAR

##### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Chondromalacia patellae now is established as a distinct clinical entity charac-

terized by localized areas of degeneration of the articular cartilage of the patella. The severity of the degenerative alterations varies from softening and fibrillation of the cartilage to fissure formations, erosion of the cartilage and formation of bony excrescences. To Budinger goes the credit for the first description of this lesion. Other early observers to record the entity were Aleman and König; the latter designated the disorder as *chondromalacia patellae*. Although this entity is widely recognized abroad its true significance in disorders of the knee joint is not appreciated fully in this country. However, the recent work of Soto-Hall has focused the attention of the American observers on the disorder.

#### ETIOLOGY

It is generally conceded that repeated minor traumas or acute severe trauma are the etiologic factors responsible for chondromalacia of the patella in the majority of the cases. Nevertheless many cases are encountered in which no evidence of minor or severe injuries can be elicited. Hennricson reviewed 604 cases; he concluded that trauma was the initiating factor in only two thirds of the cases. The investigations of other workers lead one to conclude that some individuals possess a natural predisposition for the development of the lesion; also the functional mechanism of the knee joint is such that the articular cartilage of the patella and the opposing surface of the femur are subjected to undue stresses during normal joint function. The author has observed a case of bilateral chondromalacia patellae in a child 15 years old; trauma played no part in the etiology of this case. It was interesting to note that the patient's mother was under treatment for the same disorder.

Clinically close relationship exists between degenerative abnormalities of the patella and degenerative arthritis of the knee joint. Some observers are of the opinion that the lesions of the patella are pre-

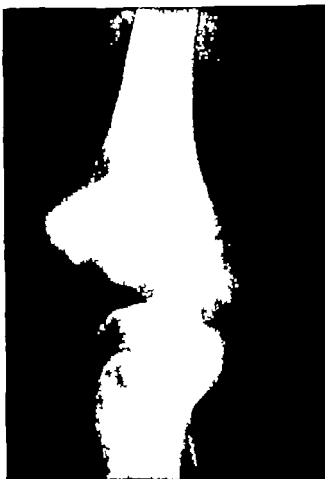


FIG 191 Osteochondritis of the inferior pole of the patella. Note the irregularity of the tip of the bone.

cipitating factors in arthritis of the joint and if these are eliminated the joint may be spared; this observation has not been substantiated by the work of other investigators (Erb). It was recorded in Chapter 6, "Disorders of the Extensor Apparatus of the Knee Joint," that degenerative alterations of the osseous and the cartilaginous components of the knee joint and the synovials occur naturally with advancing age, that they increase in severity from decade to decade and that the changes are more pronounced in those areas subject to the greatest stresses, such as the articular surface of the patella and the unprotected surfaces of the femoral and the tibial condyles.

Many other theories of the etiology of the conditions have been advanced. Sundt (1938) recorded that degenerative abnor-



malities of the patella make up a constitutional disease and was of the opinion that the prime etiologic agent was injury to the synovial membrane. According to this worker the affected synovial membrane produced abnormal synovial fluid which was responsible for nutritional disturbances and degenerative changes in the articular cartilage. Hirsch (1944) noted some of the physiologic features of cartilage. He observed that cartilage had the faculty of adapting itself to increased pressures and still recovering its elasticity almost completely. This was possible only when the pressure per unit did not exceed the tensile strength of the cartilage and was sustained for only brief periods of time. If such pressures lasted for longer periods, impairment of elasticity resulted. He concluded that the normal elasticity of cartilage and its pumping action played a major role in the nutrition of the tissue and that defective loading of the cartilage resulted in nutritional disturbances such as those seen in chondromalacia patellae. In contradiction to Hirsch's premise Cox (1945) expressed the belief that basic pathologic alterations occurred in the subchondral bone; the changes in the articular cartilage being secondary manifestations.

From the above brief survey it becomes apparent that considerable disagreement still prevails concerning the causative agents of chondromalacia of the patella. Nevertheless, there is sufficient evidence to lead one to conclude that constitutional factors may play a part in the development of this disorder; that trauma is a common precipitating factor; and that natural wear, tear, and aging also play a part in its development. The lesion also has been found to be associated with other derangements of the knee joint, such as bipartite patella, arthritis, osteochondritis, and recurrent dislocation of the patella.

#### INCIDENCE AND AGE

Chondromalacia patellae exists more fre-

quently than is generally recognized. This is substantiated by the statistics recorded in some of the more recent investigations of this problem. Soto-Hall (1945) recorded that 18.5 per cent (12 cases) of 65 arthrotomies performed in a military hospital for chronic knee complaints exhibited implication of the patella. Cave, Rowe and Yee (1945) observed 9 cases in 124 arthrotomies in which degenerative alteration of the patella was the sole lesion responsible for the symptoms. Anderson (1944) was able to demonstrate the disorder in 10 cases of 50 arthrotomies.

The highest incidence is encountered in young adults. Hinricsson made a clinical diagnosis of the condition in a girl 10 years old. In Soto-Hall's series the average age was 29, the age of the oldest patient being 36.

#### PATHOLOGY

The early lesions usually involve the medial facet and occasionally the lateral and central areas are implicated. In advanced cases all regions of the articular surface may exhibit some degree of involvement. The relationship of the articular surface of the patella to that of the opposing surface of the femur during flexion and extension of the knee joint affords an explanation for the frequent involvement of the medial facet of the patella. Wiberg demonstrated clearly that from the fully extended position when the knee is flexed from 20° to 50° all the surface areas of the lateral facet and a small area of the medial facet articulate with the condyles of the femur. During this stage of flexion the central longitudinal ridge bears the greatest stress which diminishes gradually as flexion is increased. At 90° flexion the pressure on the ridge is zero because the patella now settles into the intercondylar notch of the femur; contact between the patella and the condyles of the femur is maintained solely by the lateral and the medial facets. Of great significance is the

incongruity that exists between the convex surface of the medial facet of the patella and the convex surface of the medial femoral condyle, their surfaces make some contact throughout the entire arc of motion from  $90^{\circ}$  to  $180^{\circ}$ . This relationship is in contrast with that between the lateral facet and the lateral condyle of the femur; their articular surfaces disclose good congruence during flexion and extension of the knee.

The alterations observed in chondromalacia patellae are similar to the degenerative changes in cartilage described by Bennett and Bauer (1931), Keyes (1933), Parker, Keefer, Myers and Irwin (1934), Nichols and Richardson (1909) and the author (1950). Macroscopically, the normal bluish white, glistening resilient delicate articular cartilage is replaced by a yellowish opaque tissue which possesses little or no elasticity. Simultaneously, small distinct furrows, fibrillation and softening of the superficial layers of the cartilage appear. As the lesion progresses the above alterations increase in severity; one can readily demonstrate thinning, fibrillation of the cartilage and loss of compact tissue. Small irregular scalloped ulcerated areas are discernible; the subchondral bone may become exposed and thickened, assuming a polished surface. In far advanced cases the entire articular surface of the patella may be implicated and the formation of irregular marginal excrescences may be a prominent feature. This is true especially in chondromalacia patellae resulting from recurrent or permanent dislocations of the patella (Fig. 192). Marginal proliferations or large pieces of degenerated cartilage may become detached and displaced into the joint cavity; this is one source of loose bodies encountered in the knee joint.

Generally varying degrees of implication of the synovialis are demonstrable. In early and mild cases the extent of involvement of the synovial membrane may be limited to a small area surrounding the periphery of the patella. In more advanced cases the

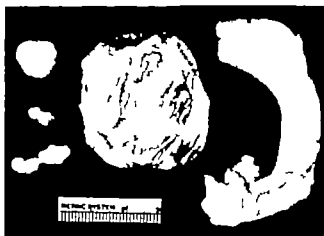


FIG. 192 Advanced chondromalacia of the patella. Note the furrows, the fibrillation and the softening of the articular cartilage. Several loose bodies were found also in the joint. In addition a tear of the posterior horn of the medial meniscus is demonstrable. The patient was a male aged 24.

synovial lining of the entire suprapatellar pouch is thickened and reddened and may disclose diffuse villous formation simulating villonodular synovitis.

As previously recorded, the articular surface of the femoral condyle opposing the affected medial facet may exhibit changes similar to those described in the patella. Also, the femoral surface may be the site of the origin of loose bodies; this is true especially in severe direct trauma to the patellofemoral joint. This lesion is comparable with an osteochondral fracture of the femoral condyle. Degenerative changes over the lateral femoral condyle may be present in cases of recurrent subluxation of the patella or in cases in which some weakness of the vastus medialis permits the vastus lateralis to draw the patella outward. Areas of degeneration in the femoral condyles opposing similar areas in the patella have been designated as "mirror image" by Soto-Hall (Fig. 193).

Tearing of the internal meniscus may be a concomitant pathologic finding. The lesion may occur at the time of the initial trauma or subsequently. The author has

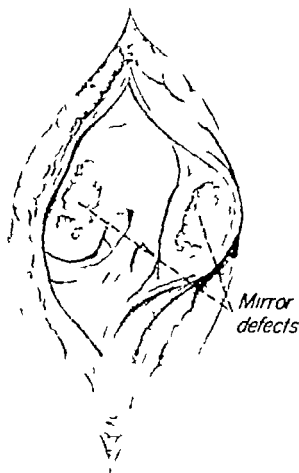


Fig 193 Schematic drawing showing degeneration in the femoral condyle opposing a similar area in the patella—"mirror image."

encountered 3 such cases all were young men in the armed forces (Fig 192)

Microscopic examination of representative patellae showing degenerative changes of varying degrees of severity discloses the progressive nature of the disorder. Normally the superficial stratum of hyaline articular cartilage reveals many tightly packed spindle-shaped cartilage cells in a dense matrix. Early lesions disclose fibrillation of the superficial layers of the cartilaginous matrix; later fibrillation extends beyond the transitional and the calcified zones of cartilage to the subchondral bone thereby exposing it. Cartilage cells in the vicinity of the fibrillated matrix demonstrate evidence of degeneration. The cells

are fewer in number and appear to be swollen and their nuclei stain abnormally. The normal pattern of the cartilage cell in the various layers is lost; those in the transitional and the calcified layers are arranged in groups of varying size. The superficial layers of cartilage are worn away gradually. As the process in the cartilage increases in magnitude alterations are demonstrable in the subchondral bone; the bony trabeculae become hypertrophied, dense and compact and the marrow spaces are small and contain rich vascular tissue. Endosteal cells (osteoblasts) are found in great numbers lining the trabeculae and exhibiting evidence of multiplication and proliferation of endosteal tissue. This process increases the thickness of the trabeculae by adding newly formed osteoid tissue upon their surfaces. The above connective tissue issues from the marrow spaces and covers the denuded bony surface of the patella; also it gives rise to irregular tags of fibrous tissue which may undergo hypertrophy and even calcification.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

Approximately three fourths of the patients with chondromalacia of the patella give a history of having sustained some form of direct violence to the anterior aspect of the knee joint. In the remaining patients no history of injury is obtainable; hence one must conclude that other factors must play a role in the development of this lesion. Degenerative abnormalities of the patella with symptoms are frequent concomitant findings in recurrent and persistent dislocation of the patella. In this group changes are found invariably in the articular cartilage of the medial femoral condyle.

In the cases with a history of injury a period of total disability usually ensues immediately after the incident. This is followed by almost complete recovery; however the patient experiences some discomfort in the affected knee particularly after

increased activity After some months or even several years there is a gradual increase in the intensity of the symptoms and the degree of disability The course of the disorder may be hastened and the symptoms accentuated by additional trauma.

The earliest, most significant feature is crepitation in the patellofemoral joint however, it must be pointed out that chondromalacia of the patella may exist in the mild forms without crepitation Crepitation varies from a soft velvetlike sensation of roughness to a creaking crunching grating sound It is elicited best when the patient assumes the supine position with the hip and the knee flexed, then he extends and flexes the knee, holding the hip in a flexed position If the examiner places the palm of his hand on the patella while the patient executes the above movements, crepitation is readily palpable and frequently it is audible Crepitation often is very disconcerting to patients especially females One young lady avoided going up and down stairs because she sounded like a rusty hinge"

Pain is a variable symptom In early cases the patient is aware of a vague discomfort in the knee joint and has difficulty in trying to localize it. In more advanced cases pain is deep-seated and intense, being accentuated by activity and minimized by rest It is associated with a sense of weakness and instability in the joint Frequently the patient experiences sudden momentary locking of the joint these episodes may be followed by some pain and effusion into the joint True locking does not occur unless loose bodies or a torn meniscus is present As a rule, downward pressure made directly over the patella elicits varying intensities of pain particularly when the knee is slightly flexed ( $30^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$ ) With the knee extended fully and the quadriceps muscle relaxed exquisite pain may be produced by making firm pressure on the patella and thus forcing it

against the medial femoral condyle Also, with the knee in the same position and maintaining gentle downward pressure on the patella the bone can be displaced up and down or from side to side, producing varying grades of palpable crepitation Invariably, this last maneuver is associated with pain

Severe lesions of long duration may reveal some pericapsular thickening due to hypertrophy of the synovial lining and varying amounts of synovial effusion Also, swelling may be demonstrable in the subpatellar region, resulting from hypertrophy of the infrapatellar fat pad Some atrophy of the quadriceps muscle may be discernible

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

Roentgenograms are of little diagnostic value in this area, this is true also of the special projections that may be made such as axial views However, in far advanced lesions axial views may reveal some irregularity and thinning of the articular cartilage of the patella. Axial views are of special value in determining the course of the patella in relation to the femoral condyles during varying degrees of flexion of the knee joint.

#### TREATMENT

Conservative measures are reserved for the group of patients in which the symptoms are mild and the disability is minimal In this group the degenerative changes in the patella are in the earliest stage of development and are more or less quiescent Much can be achieved if the patient is made to move within the capacity of his knee joint, avoiding undue stress to the patellofemoral articulation and protecting it from additional injuries He should not participate in strenuous activities More important is a regimen of progressive exercises designed to restore the quadriceps mechanism to optimum power and function By attaining this goal the gliding mechanism of the patella functions without

inflicting undue stresses on the femoral condyles

Surgical intervention is the treatment of choice in cases in which the symptoms are constant severe and markedly disabling. Several operative procedures have been designed to meet this problem. They are (1) resection of the degenerated cartilage (2) total resection of the articular surface of the patella and (3) patellectomy. The author has employed all these methods from time to time. A survey of the long term end results (1 to 10 years) of 18 cases of chondromalacia of the patella reveals that complete resection of the articular surface of the patella gives the highest incidence of poor results. In fact in this series the incidence of poor results in 8 cases was 100 per cent. The best results were obtained in the group treated by resection of the deteriorated cartilage. Patellectomy never should be performed in cases in which the degenerative changes are not severe and are limited to the articular surface of the patella. It is reserved for cases with far advanced involvement of the patellar articular surface or of the entire patellofemoral joint and for cases with pronounced hyper-

trophic osteoarthritic changes of all the components of the knee joint. In cases showing severe implication of the synovial membrane the author does not hesitate to perform a synovectomy in addition to a patellectomy. The choice of operation often is determined by the severity of the pathologic processes observed after the joint is exposed. The author feels that in the future a patellar prosthesis such as the one designed by D. C. McKeever will supplant all other operative procedures (Fig. 194).

#### TECHNIC OF PARTIAL CHONDRECTOMY

Adequate exposure of the joint is essential in order to evaluate the extent of the disorder and the absence or the presence of concomitant lesions such as loose bodies or a torn meniscus (Fig. 195). A median parapatellar incision provides this exposure; moreover in cases with increased laxity of the medial patellar retinaculum and the capsule this approach facilitates operative measures such as plicating or reefing to correct this defect in the affected structures.

The patella is rotated outward on its vertical axis thereby exposing the articular

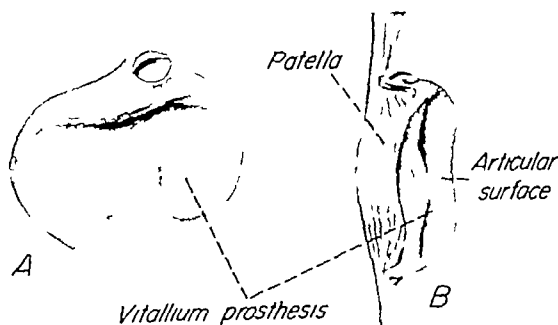


FIG. 194. Patellar prosthesis designed by D. C. McKeever. It is of special value in advanced cases of chondromalacia patellae.

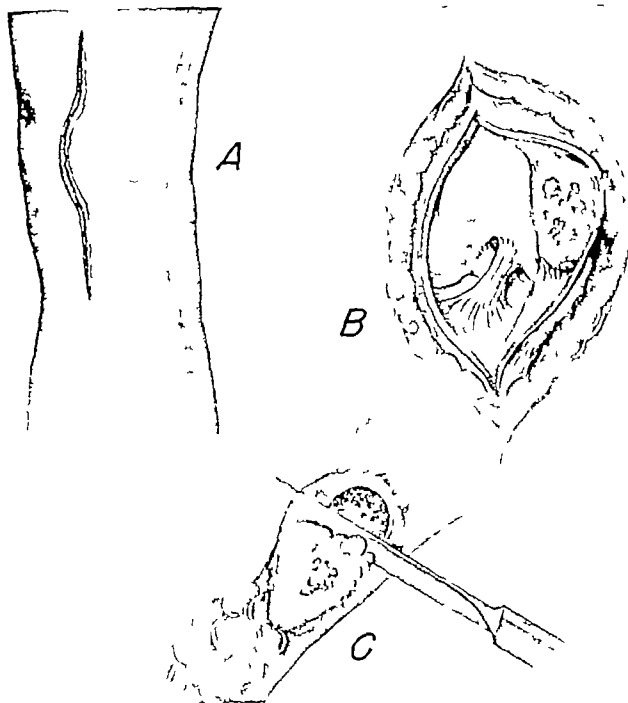


FIG 195 Method of shaving off layers of defective articular cartilage from the surface of the patella (partial chondrectomy)

surface. The degenerated area in the cartilage is identified and with a scalpel the soft fibrillated tissue is removed in thin layers until only a thin smooth transparent stratum of cartilage remains. If the opposing articular surface of the femoral condyle is involved, it is treated in the same manner.

Chondromalacia patellae observed in cases of recurrent dislocation of the patella is treated in the same fashion described above except that operative measures are added to stabilize the patella. These have been described in a previous section, 'Recurrent Dislocation of the Patella' (see pp 187-196).

ACUTE OSTEOMYELITIS OF  
THE PATELLA

Hematogenous osteomyelitis of the patella is an exceedingly rare lesion. A survey of the literature reveals only the report

of isolated cases. The author has encountered 2 cases, both in children under the age of 10. It was interesting to note that in both the systemic reaction was relatively mild. Failure to recognize the entity in its early stages may be followed by rupture of

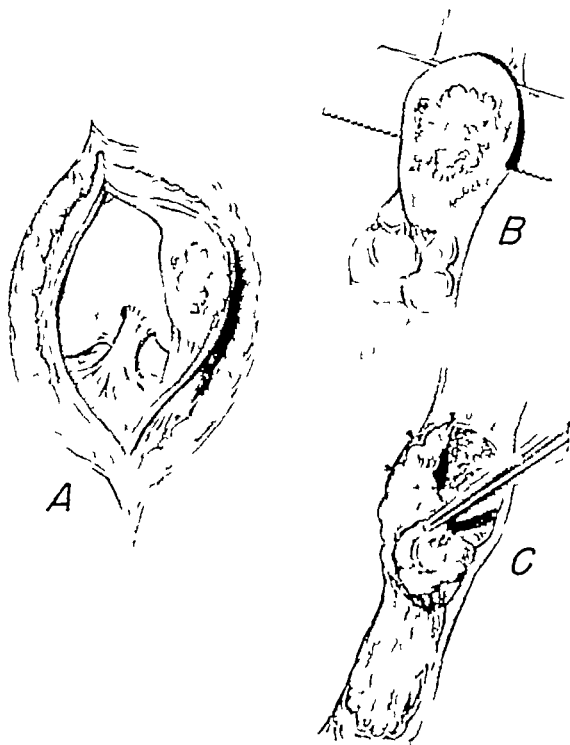


FIG. 196. Technic of excision of the articular surface of the patella. The raw surface is covered with fat.



FIG 197 (A, Left) Case A. W., 8 years old. Note diffuse swelling of the left knee joint resulting from osteomyelitis of the patella. A patellectomy and a synovectomy were done in this case. (B, Right) Roentgenogram of the same case. Observe fragmentation of the patella and distention and thickening of the capsule.

the local infected area into the joint cavity producing a pyarthrosis. In both instances a fulminating response was noted in the synovial membrane of the knee joint, large amounts of synovial fluid formed distending the capsule. A relatively wide arc of free painless motion was demonstrable in both cases; there was 20° restriction of flexion in one and 35° in the other case. Aspirations of the joint revealed a yellowish flaky turbid fluid in one patient's knee and thick yellowish mucoid material in the other's. Cultures of the synovial fluids in each case showed no growth of organisms. It must be admitted that both patients had received large dosages of antibiotics before the joints were aspirated; this may explain the negative cultures. However, cultures made from foci within the substance of the patellae after their removal yielded *Staphylococcus aureus*.

The patellae were excised in toto, in ad-

dition a synovectomy was done in each case. Only the synovial lining of the suprapatellar pouch and the anteromedial and the anterolateral recesses of the joint was removed; the synovial membrane in the posterior aspect of the joints was not excised. Both cases made a prompt and uneventful recovery; there has been no recurrence. Over 18 months have elapsed since the last operation and an acceptable range of motion has been attained in each instance.

Case A. W., an 8-year-old Negro boy complaining of pain and swelling in the left knee joint, was admitted to the hospital. One and one-half months prior to his admission he fell and scraped the skin overlying the knee cap; the knee became slightly swollen. This subsided gradually and except for some stiffness within 2 weeks the patient had no pain and engaged in all activities. Again he fell about 3 weeks after the first injury, once more injuring the same knee. Within a few days the knee became hot, swollen and painful, he



### ACUTE OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE PATELLA

Hematogenous osteomyelitis of the patella is an exceedingly rare lesion. A survey of the literature reveals only the report

of isolated cases. The author has encountered 2 cases both in children under the age of 10. It was interesting to note that in both the systemic reaction was relatively mild. Failure to recognize the entity in its early stages may be followed by rupture of

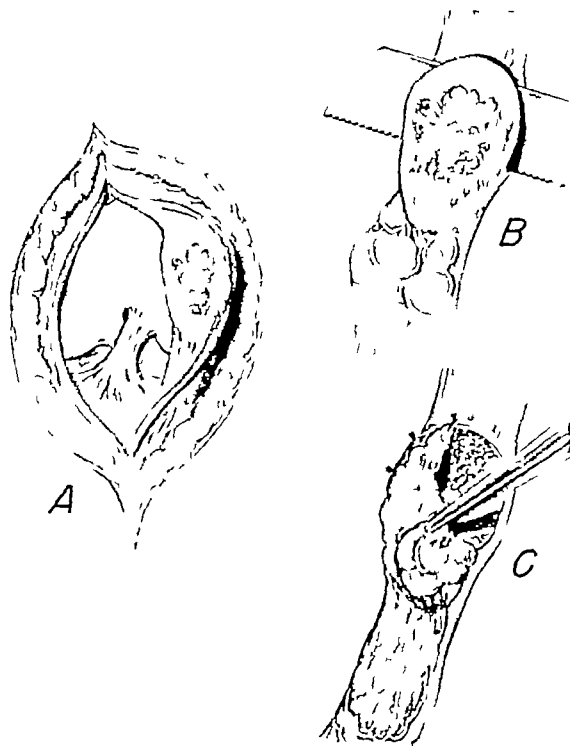


FIG. 196. Technic of excision of the articular surface of the patella. The raw surface is covered with fat.



FIG 197 (A, Left) Case A W, 8 years old. Note diffuse swelling of the left knee joint, resulting from osteomyelitis of the patella. A patellectomy and a synovectomy were done in this case. (B, Right) Roentgenogram of the same case. Observe fragmentation of the patella and distention and thickening of the capsule.

the local infected area into the joint cavity, producing a pyarthrosis. In both instances a fulminating response was noted in the synovial membrane of the knee joint: large amounts of synovial fluid formed, distending the capsule. A relatively wide arc of free painless motion was demonstrable in both cases: there was 20° restriction of flexion in one and 35° in the other case. Aspirations of the joint revealed a yellowish flaky turbid fluid in one patient's knee and thick yellowish mucoid material in the other's. Cultures of the synovial fluids in each case showed no growth of organisms. It must be admitted that both patients had received large dosages of antibiotics before the joints were aspirated; this may explain the negative cultures. However, cultures made from foci within the substance of the patellae after their removal yielded *Staphylococcus aureus*.

The patellae were excised in toto in ad-

dition a synovectomy was done in each case. Only the synovial lining of the suprapatellar pouch and the anteromedial and the anterolateral recesses of the joint was removed; the synovial membrane in the posterior aspect of the joints was not excised. Both cases made a prompt and uneventful recovery; there has been no recurrence. Over 18 months have elapsed since the last operation, and an acceptable range of motion has been attained in each instance.

**Case A W**, an 8-year-old Negro boy, complaining of pain and swelling in the left knee joint, was admitted to the hospital. One and one-half months prior to his admission he fell and scraped the skin overlying the kneecap; the knee became slightly swollen. This subsided gradually, and except for some stiffness within 2 weeks the patient had no pain and engaged in all activities. Again he fell about 3 weeks after the first injury, once more injuring the same knee. Within a few days the knee became hot, swollen and painful, he

was unable to bear weight on the affected limb

On admission the patient did not appear to be toxic or dehydrated. The knee was markedly swollen, some restriction of flexion was discernible (Fig 197 A). Pressure over the patella elicited severe tenderness. Aspiration of the joint yielded 150 cc of a turbid yellow fluid; after aspiration the patient had less discomfort and flexed and extended the knee with

ease. Smears and cultures of the fluid proved to be negative.

Further studies within the next few days disclosed a low septic temperature range, an increased sedimentation rate and a high leukocyte count (16,000). Roentgenographic studies of the knee revealed the joint capsule to be markedly distended and the patella presented a moth-eaten appearance from irregular fragmentation (Fig 197 B). A diag-



FIG. 197 (C Top) Patella of same case. On the right the superior surface is depicted; on the left the inferior or articular surface. Note the perforation of the articular cartilage in the latter. (D Bottom) Roentgenograms taken 18 months postoperatively. Motion in the affected knee was possible from 80° to 180°; no recurrences of the infectious process had occurred.

nosis of osteomyelitis of the patella was made. The limb was immobilized on a posterior splint, and continuous hot fomentations were applied, the knee was aspirated on two more occasions. Intensive antibiotic therapy also was instituted. In spite of these measures no local change in the knee joint occurred; however, the patient's general condition improved although he maintained at all times a slightly elevated temperature. Two weeks after admission to the hospital a decision in favor of surgical intervention was made.

The knee joint was exposed through a median parapatellar incision, thick turbid fluid was encountered when the joint capsule was opened. Both surfaces of the patella had large cavitations containing necrotic material. Severe cavitations on the anterior surface had extended to and perforated the articular layer of cartilage (Fig. 197 C). The synovial lining was thickened and red and formed numerous folds and villi. It was studded with flakes of fibrin. The patella was excised in toto and a total synovectomy was performed. The joint

cavity was flushed with a solution of normal saline and closed in layers without drainage. Penicillin was instilled into the joint, and a posterior splint was applied. Systemic antibiotic therapy was continued for 2 more weeks. In this period the temperature returned to normal. Some postoperative swelling occurred; this subsided gradually. Quadriceps exercises were commenced on the tenth postoperative day, and weight bearing on crutches 2 weeks later. When the patient was last examined (18 months postoperatively) no swelling was demonstrable and motion was possible from  $180^{\circ}$  to  $80^{\circ}$ ; the quadriceps muscle still showed slight atrophy when compared with the normal side. Roentgenographic studies disclosed a normal joint space, healthy bone trabeculae and no evidence of reformation of the patella (Fig. 197 D).

**Case M. V.** a white boy aged 9 years injured the right knee while playing football. The following day the knee became swollen, hot and painful. He was put to bed, and cold

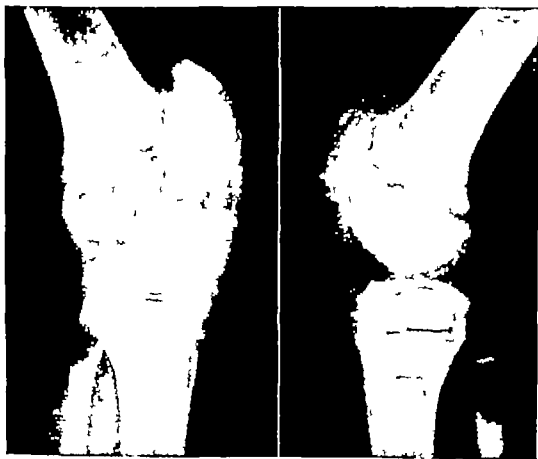


FIG 198 (Left) Observe the advanced fragmentation of the patella and the distention of the capsule. Case M. V. male, 9 years old, osteomyelitis of the patella. (Right) Roentgenograms of same case 6 months postoperatively. Two years later the range of motion was from  $70^{\circ}$  to  $180^{\circ}$ .

applications were applied to the part. After a week of bed rest in spite of some pain and swelling he was allowed to bear weight. The knee again became very painful, distended and hot. A diagnosis of a suppurative knee joint was made by the attending physician and he was referred to the hospital for further care.

Upon admission 10 days after the onset of symptoms the patient exhibited a markedly swollen, hot and tender knee joint. Although some motion was possible without precipitating pain, extension beyond 160° and flexion beyond 90° could not be achieved actively or passively. The temperature was 102.5° F. Aspiration yielded a slightly turbid, yellowish fluid which showed no organisms on smears or growth on cultures. Roentgenographic studies disclosed pronounced distention of the capsule and fragmentation of the patella (Fig. 198). A diagnosis of osteomyelitis of the patella was made. The limb was elevated and immobilized by 10 pounds of skin traction. Hot compresses were applied and antibiotic medication was commenced. The patient continued to run a septic course without local improvement. Aspiration was performed on two other occasions and each time copious amounts of thick mucoid material was withdrawn.

Ten days after admission the anterior surface of the patella was explored through a short curved incision along its medial border. When the skin was reflected two cavitations were encountered in the proximal portion of bone which extended directly into the joint cavity. The incision was converted into a median parapatellar incision and the entire joint cavity was exposed.

As in Case A W the patella was perforated by several cavities which contained pus and other tissue debris. Its upper one half was broken up into three irregular fragments lying loose in the soft tissue bed of the extensor tendon. The synovialis was almost purple in color and thickened to such a degree that the entire suprapatellar region was obliterated by this edematous tissue.

A combined patellectomy and synovectomy was performed and after flushing the wound with normal saline solution it was closed loosely without drainage. Penicillin (250 units per cc, 10 cc) was instilled into the joint cavity and the limb was immobilized on a posterior splint. Postoperative management was identical with that described in Case A W. This patient attained an excellent result. Two years later he had power of extension to 180° and flexion was possible to 70°. No recurrence

had occurred and no evidence of a patella was yet demonstrable clinically or roentgenographically.

## RESTORATION OF NORMAL QUADRICEPS FUNCTION

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Both internists and surgeons are keenly aware of the rapid deterioration of the quadriceps muscle following systemic diseases and diseases and injuries affecting the knee joint. In spite of this knowledge there is a serious lack of understanding in the profession as a whole of the basic principles governing restoration of the extensor mechanism to normalcy. Too many physicians are prone to delegate the responsibility of redevelopment of this important apparatus to a technician in the department of physical medicine without designating specific instruction designed to achieve maximum function in the shortest time. This is a serious trend because it delays prompt restoration of function and it predisposes the patient to unfavorable sequelae which may progress to irreversible stages.

In order to prescribe an adequate program for redevelopment of the quadriceps apparatus one must know the anatomic and functional peculiarities of this mechanism. It was pointed out in Chapter 4 "Mechanics of the Knee Joint" that from an anatomic viewpoint the quadriceps comprises the rectus femoris and the three vasti muscles. Functionally the components of the muscle mass differ: the rectus femoris working alone is unable to achieve complete extension of the leg, but the vasti working as a unit readily perform this function. The last 15° of motion are accomplished by the vastus medialis which is the most powerful of the vasti. Although the vastus medialis contracts throughout the entire range of extension its most powerful contractions occur toward the end of the movement forcing the leg in the fully extended position. This can be demonstrated readily on oneself. If one assumes a sitting position, holds the hip

in a fixed position of flexion and then extends the leg, one will note that all the components of the quadriceps contract throughout the entire arc of extension, however, contraction in the rectus femoris and the vasti lateralis and intermedius is more pronounced than in the vastus medialis in the beginning of the movement. This difference in power of contraction (evidenced by the size and the firmness of the individual muscle masses) is demonstrable up to approximately  $165^{\circ}$  of extension, then powerful contraction of the vastus medialis ensues, completing the last  $15^{\circ}$  of extension. If the test described is performed against resistance e.g., a 5 pound weight on the dorsum of the foot, the aforementioned observations are discernible more readily than when the quadriceps works without added resistance.

Study of the comparative anatomy of the knee joint reveals that the size and the function of the vastus medialis in man are recent acquisitions and they parallel in development the assumption by man of the erect position and the development of a free bipedal gait. The erect posture in man is made possible by the faculties of the quadriceps especially of the vastus medialis to produce powerful and complete extension of the leg on the thigh, to stabilize the knee joint during varying degrees of flexion and to maintain equilibrium. These functions have been acquired recently by the quadriceps which is designed primarily to motorize the knee in the plantigrade position. That the functions of the quadriceps are late acquisitions in man's progress from a plantigrade to an orthograde status is reflected in the ease with which the intrinsic mechanism of this muscle mass is unbalanced by trivial injuries diseases interfering with normal function of the knee joint or systemic diseases enforcing a period of disuse upon the muscle. This disorder is manifested in the progressive loss of muscle volume the diminishing power of contraction and the dis-

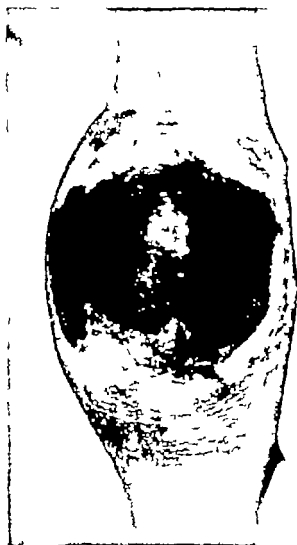


FIG. 199 Massive hemorrhage in the knee joint of a hemophiliac, resulting in total necrosis of the overlying tissues and the vastus medialis muscle

orientation of the muscle mass. The severity of the derangement varies. In advanced cases the clinical features are similar to flaccid paralysis of the muscle. An inadequate quadriceps or "quadriceps insufficiency," produces a sense of instability in the knee joint. It fails to provide sufficient stability and equilibrium particularly when the patient descends stairs the knee tends to buckle or give way. The vastus medialis is by far the most important component of the quadriceps in the execution of complete extension and in the maintenance of stability and equilibrium. The derangements resulting from wasting of the muscle impose

undue strains on the ligaments the capsule and the synovial lining of the knee joint this in turn is responsible for synovial effusion, relaxation of the aforementioned supporting elements of the joint and further increase in disability. The disorder increases progressively and can be terminated only when the quadriceps muscle particularly the vastus medialis has recovered sufficiently in volume and power to interrupt the cycle. Permanent loss of full extension regardless of the causative factor is responsible for profound disability. This is encountered occasionally in advanced wasting or destruction of the vastus medialis. A case in point is that of a boy 13 years old. The patient a hemophiliac sustained a massive hemorrhage in the left knee joint following a trivial injury. In spite of active therapy the anterior capsule of the joint the overlying skin and the vastus medialis underwent total necrosis necessitating wide excision of the necrotic tissue (Fig 199). The defect was covered with a skin graft (Fig 200 *Left*). Considering the severity of the complication the end result must be considered to be excellent however the loss of the greater portion of the vastus medialis (unfortunately this included the important distal insertion of the muscle) has resulted

in a loss of the last 15° of extension (Fig 200 *Right*) which predisposes the patient to repeated trauma. Now he is denied the protective and the stabilizing features provided by the vastus medialis. This has added greatly to the difficulties of management of the patient.

### PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF MUSCLE

Comprehension of the properties of muscles which govern their functional mechanism is essential in order to administer a program of muscle redevelopment intelligently. Nicoll has set forth in a masterly manner the features peculiar to muscle and has emphasized the significance of each one. These comprise (1) power of contraction (2) velocity or speed of contraction (3) co-ordination and (4) endurance.

#### MUSCLE POWER

Power or strength of normal muscle can be preserved only by unrestricted activity. Any factor which inhibits muscle function in the slightest degree initiates diminution of power. Immobilization of an extremity exemplifies this point. If exercises are performed while a limb is in plaster regardless

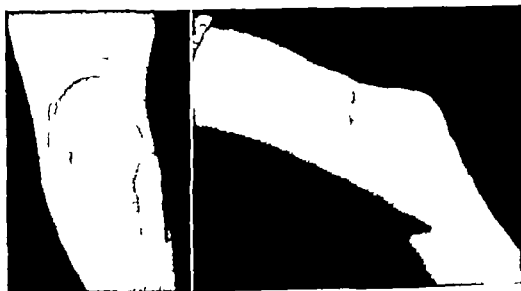


FIG. 200 (*Left*) Following excision of soft tissue the defect was covered by a split thickness graft. (*Right*) Note the lack of complete extension resulting from loss of the insertion of the vastus medialis muscle.

of the intensity of the exercises some loss of muscle power and volume ensues. It is an established fact in the physiology of muscle that each contractile unit contracts to its fullest extent or not at all (Sherrington). Hence, the adaptation of power output to load can be achieved only by varying the number of units working at any given moment. Also the efficiency of a muscle fiber is influenced by the extent to which it is stretched, as it shortens it becomes mechanically less efficient. Nicoll further pointed out that the accurate method of measuring power of muscle is to determine the maximum load at which the muscle is capable of working. It becomes apparent that diminished power or strength and loss of volume of muscle following immobilization of a limb in plaster result from failure of all the contractile units to function efficiently. Exercises performed with the limb in plaster call on a limited number of units to work; these do not perform at their maximum efficiency because the position of the limb places the muscle fiber in a relatively shortened position.

The above observations are of special significance in the choice of exercises designed to restore volume and tone. It becomes obvious that graduated resistant exercises are mandatory in order to attain this goal. This is substantiated by the massive hypertrophy of certain groups of muscle used against resistance in certain occupations and athletic activities. In these cases unusual development occurs in order to meet the functional demands made on the muscle groups over a long period. As will be discussed more fully subsequently, some workers have demonstrated that high resistance exercises tend to develop power while low resistance exercises develop endurance, which is another property of muscle not related to power.

#### VELOCITY AND SPEED OF CONTRACTION

This property of muscle together with co-ordination permits one to perform work requiring "agility, dexterity" and

"timing." It is in part inherent and in part acquired. Together with power, it protects joints and ligaments from injury; this is readily demonstrable in the knee joint. Stretching of the tibial collateral ligament initiates a stretch reflex to which the vastus medialis responds by rapid powerful contraction. It becomes apparent that if this reflex mechanism is executed with great speed on the part of the vastus medialis the joint and its ligaments are protected from injury; the time period may be a matter of split seconds. Redevelopment of velocity, or speed of contraction of muscles should be an essential facet of every program designed to restore atrophied and wasted muscles to normalcy; this can be achieved readily by intensive training.

#### CO-ORDINATION

This highly specialized property of muscle concerns the synergic and antagonistic action of a muscle as opposed to its function as a prime mover. Unfortunately, it tends to disappear rapidly during periods of inactivity and immobilization. However, this feature can be minimized by exercises; hence much is to be gained by insisting that exercises be performed during a period of immobilization in plaster and that general exercises be maintained by the recumbent patient. By such a regimen the proprioceptive mechanisms and other related complicated reflexes are in constant training. As previously noted, co-ordination, together with velocity or speed of contraction, is the basis for that important quality, "timing." It also can be regained and developed to a high degree by training. The importance of adequate consideration of "co-ordination" in outlining a plan for muscle redevelopment becomes obvious.

#### ENDURANCE

This property is in no way related to power of muscle; essentially, it is the ability of muscles to continue "working at a high efficiency over a prolonged period." It is not concerned with bulk, which is de-



pendent on the number of working contractile units in muscle rather it depends upon the respiratory and circulatory efficiency in muscles. Work produces waste products in muscle. Endurance is associated with the ability of muscle to eliminate waste products sufficiently rapidly to prevent fatigue. Many workers and more recently Delorme have demonstrated that muscles subjected to low resistance high repetition exercises develop endurance but not power. On the other hand high resistance low repetition exercises develop power and bulk but not endurance. The logical approach to this problem is first to restore power to a weakened muscle and then develop endurance.

### PRINCIPLES OF EXERCISES

As indicated by Nicoll in 1943 exercises in a well regulated program must be (1) both focal and general (2) administered with careful consideration of dosage (3) rhythmic in regard to contraction and relaxation (4) progressive in range power and time and (5) variable in form.

#### FOCAL AND GENERAL EXERCISES

The goal of specific or focal exercises is to concentrate attention on a particular muscle or group of muscles for the purpose of selective development. Such exercises require the affected muscle to work as a prime mover. This is an essential feature in restoration of the patient as a whole because if neglected the patient shows a natural tendency to avoid movements producing pain. He develops compensatory or "trick" movements replacing normal functional movement. In so doing weakened or painful muscles are disregarded. Focal exercises together with general exercises properly executed expedite restoration of muscles to normalcy and facilitate attainment of functional movement.

When applying the above principle to the quadriceps one must be familiar with the intricate mechanism of the muscle mass. It

is not enough to concentrate on the releveling of the quadriceps muscle per se rather it is more important to design exercises to restore the vastus medialis to full power. It must be emphasized that the vastus medialis is endowed with a selective action of its own. Although it works in unison with the rectus femoris and the other two vasti muscles throughout the entire range when working against resistance it is solely responsible for the last 15° of extension and under normal conditions comes forcefully into play only within this small range. It becomes obvious that exercises failing to take into consideration the small but very important last 15° of extension neglect the vastus medialis totally. Unfortunately many exercises in common use fall into this category such as cycling running and ascending and descending stairs. Patients may learn to perform these exercises without extending the knee completely hence the vastus medialis is cut out of the exercises. Moreover it is impossible to exercise the vastus medialis adequately while the limb is in plaster with the knee flexed more than 15° this results in progressive wasting of the muscle. Nicoll considered the selective exercises of the vastus medialis of sufficient importance to suggest that the term "quadriceps drill" be abolished and that "vastus internus drill" be instituted.

Selective exercises are evolved primarily to develop an affected muscle as a prime mover however this function alone is not sufficient to restore complete functional movement. This can be achieved only by development of all functions of muscle. In other words the implicated muscle must function again as a fixator a synergist and an antagonist in addition to being a prime mover. All functions must be integrated into a smooth working unit. By so doing the muscle becomes once more a functional unit in the entire locomotor system. This goal is attained best by general exercises designed to incorporate the injured muscle in the functional mechanism of the body as a

whole. Occupational therapy and group activities provide general exercises for this purpose, also, these methods may include focal exercises.

### DOSAGE

It is common knowledge that weakened and wasted muscles may be injured seriously by overdose of exercises. This may be produced by forcing the muscles to work against loads beyond their optimum efficiency and by permitting the muscles to act for relatively long periods without sufficient rests. The demands (in stress and time) made on an injured muscle should be in proportion to the patient's strength; the weaker the muscle, the less should be the demands.

Abuse of the above principle is observed too often in the management of the quadriceps muscle. Excessive demands made on this muscle are reflected in the unfavorable sequelae noted in the knee joint. Weight bearing before the quadriceps has recovered sufficiently to stabilize and protect the knee joint results in repeated strains of the capsular tissues, the synovial lining and the ligamentous apparatus. This in turn is followed by a synovial effusion, pain and instability of the joint. Such a sequence of events induces further atrophy and wasting of the quadriceps. It becomes apparent that weight bearing should be allowed only when the quadriceps, particularly the vastus medialis, has attained sufficient strength to perform its functions without undue stress and fatigue. By adhering to this principle, functional recovery of the muscle and the knee joint is expedited and untoward complications are avoided.

### RHYTHM

Muscle tissue functions at optimum efficiency when its nutritional demands are satisfied and all waste products are removed. This is the basis for complete relaxation of muscle for a sufficient period after each contraction. During this period

the muscle fibers are replenished with blood containing all the nutritional elements, and waste products are eliminated, the muscle is now ready for another contraction. In injured and atrophic muscles the blood and the lymphatic circulation are impaired seriously, this leads to varying degrees of intramural and interstitial fibrosis which further increase the circulatory embarrassment and impede removal of harmful end products of muscle metabolism. It becomes apparent that both specific and general exercises must be evolved which will permit a period of relaxation of sufficient duration to allow maximum restoration of the circulation in an affected muscle and permit sufficient time to clear the muscle of waste products. It has been demonstrated many times clinically that far advanced fibrosis and deterioration of the quadriceps can be overcome relatively rapidly by exercising the muscle with a well regulated program of exercises graduated progressively in intensity but with an adequate rest period between each contraction and between each series of exercises. Exercises characterized by sustained contractions are harmful and fail to produce the desired results.

### PROGRESSION

The principle of progression is one of the most important facets of any correctly designed program of exercises. Progression should include contraction of a muscle against gradually increasing stresses through gradually increasing ranges of movement and over gradually increasing periods of time. Progression must embody power, endurance and range of movement; of these, power is the most important. Clinical experience reveals that once power of muscle approaches normal endurance and range of movement are achieved readily. The work of Delorme substantiates this observation; this investigation will be discussed further under 'Quadriceps Exercises'. It may be exceedingly difficult to institute a plan of progressive exercises in

cases of profound atrophy of the quadriceps. The patient's muscle may be dissociated completely from the patient's control. In such cases contraction may be induced by faradic stimulation. After voluntary contraction is resumed the principle of progression outlined above may be applied. In the course of developing power of the quadriceps particular care must be taken to avoid violation of the principle of overdosage.

#### VARIATIONS

In order to hold the patient's interest and stimulate him to greater effort the exercises must vary in form. A routine comprising the same exercises without variations performed every day tends to become boring and the patient loses enthusiasm. Occupational therapy and group exercises provide means of variations of a monotonous routine; however one must not lose sight of the goal to be achieved when these methods are employed. On the other hand if properly selected the methods provide both focal and general exercises and tend to decrease the patient's mental tension and apprehension.

#### QUADRICEPS EXERCISES

Essentially the types of quadriceps exercises in common use fall into two categories: (1) nonweight bearing exercises and (2) weight bearing exercises. Both types play an important role in rehabilitation of the quadriceps provided that they are instituted at the proper time and are performed with close adherence to the principles governing exercise therapy previously discussed.

Both forms of exercises are capable of increasing power; however weight bearing exercises often are accompanied by pain, synovial effusion and instability of the knee joint; these features may be accentuated by the exercises. This is not true of nonweight bearing exercises. Moreover if the aforementioned associated features exist the nonweight bearing form of exercise therapy tends to alleviate them. As previously

noted, the quadriceps apparatus is an important stabilizer of the knee joint protecting it from undue stresses and strains. Following injury, disease or operation it frequently becomes weakened, wasted and atrophic, hence it loses its protective quality and the knee is predisposed to repeated strains resulting in capsular and synovial thickening, synovial effusion, pain and further instability. This vicious cycle can be interrupted only by returning power to the quadriceps apparatus, particularly the vastus medialis.

Weight bearing exercises performed in cases of instability of the knee following meniscectomy often increase the laxity of the capsular and the ligamentous apparatus, permitting repeated strains which in turn produce traumatic synovitis. Such exercises fail to restore quickly sufficient power in the quadriceps to protect it from further injuries. Instead they are performed by twisting and stretching movements which inflict additional trauma on a relaxed joint. The cruciate and the lateral collateral ligaments and the capsule of the joint with its numerous reinforcing fibrous expansions are not capable of providing sufficient stability to the joint without the aid of a strong quadriceps muscle. Weight bearing before normal power is regained in the quadriceps imposes undue harmful stresses on the aforementioned tissues.

Nonweight bearing exercises strive to develop quadriceps power to a high level of efficiency, thereby restoring the protective mechanism of this muscle which precludes additional injuries to the capsule, the ligaments and the synovialis of the knee joint. In fact swelling of tissues, synovial effusion and pain often disappear rapidly in nonweight bearing exercises. Delorme has noted this observation in his investigation and it has been observed many times by the author. Nonweight bearing exercises can be performed without imposing injurious strains on the soft tissue elements of the articulation and the knee is not under the

strain of the body weight. All these factors favor a rapid return to normalcy of the quadriceps and of the functional mechanism of the knee joint

#### EXERCISES TO RESTORE POWER AND ENDURANCE

Restoration of power in a weakened quadriceps should be the first concern of the surgeon. Most of the conventional exercises fail to attain this requisite; rather, they are designed primarily to develop endurance and normal joint motion. It is erroneous to endeavor to restore increasing ranges of movement in the knee and greater endurance in the quadriceps without first developing power. Clinical experience discloses that wide ranges of motion in the knee without adequate power supplied by the muscular apparatus results in a weakened unstable joint which tends constantly to give way and to buckle.

Power and endurance are two distinct characteristics of muscle and they are not restored to normalcy by the same group of exercises. As pointed out by many observers and particularly by Delorme, failure to discriminate between endurance building and power building exercises has resulted in the high percentage of poor results observed following injuries or diseases of the knee joint. Unfortunately, most of the current methods evolved to redevelop the quadriceps employ exercises which primarily develop endurance and not power. Exercises such as stair-climbing, bicycling and walking are of this nature.

On the other hand, power building exercises are not capable of producing endurance. Endurance building exercises are very important in the over-all program of physical therapy; however, they should not be instituted until the quadriceps has regained its strength and is capable of protecting the knee joint. It is interesting to note that with the attainment of power the range of motion in the knee increases rapidly. This is true in all instances except in cases

in which improvement is impeded by some mechanical barrier.

The author is in complete agreement with the concepts of Delorme and has confirmed his observations many times. In the past 5 years a method of rehabilitation of the extensor apparatus has been evolved based on the principles set forth by Delorme; it has proved to be most satisfactory in all instances and has restored function to normal or almost normal in some far advanced and neglected cases of quadriceps insufficiency which, on the initial examination, appeared to be hopeless. This method is based on the principle that the extent and the rate of development of muscle volume or mass is proportional to the load or the resistance that the muscle must overcome. Heavy resistance, low repetition exercises are employed to develop hypertrophy and strength in the quadriceps muscle; the method forces the muscle to expend all its potential strength. Low resistance and high repetition exercises, such as bicycling, stair-climbing and weight lifting by means of pulleys, develop endurance. The latter group of exercises is instituted when the strength of the affected quadriceps approaches that of the normal limb.

✓ In attaining maximum hypertrophy the muscle acts against the heaviest load when it approaches complete contraction, not when it is stretched. This complies with the principle that the greater the initial stretch of a muscle the greater is its contractile power. In the stretched state a muscle calls upon fewer fibers to act against a maximum resistance than would be called upon to overcome the same load in the contracted state. Hence, when contracted and acting against maximum resistance, the muscle calls upon a greater number of fibers to overcome the resistance. It becomes obvious that by this method a greater number of muscle fibers in a given muscle are stimulated to hypertrophy. This is achieved in exercises by attaching the weight directly to the foot.

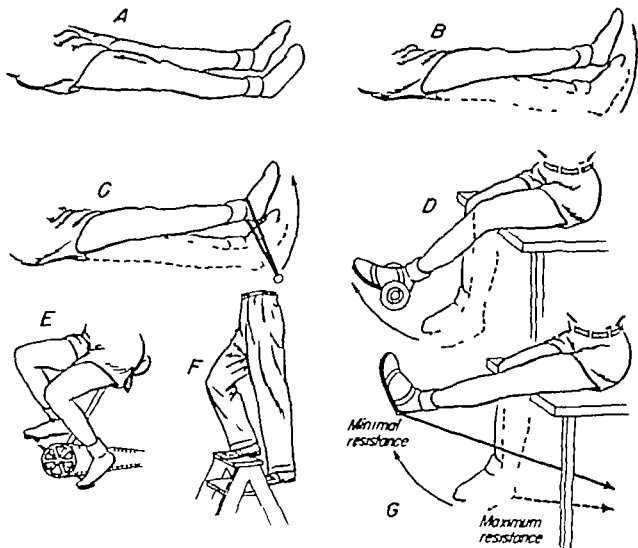


FIG 201 Types of Exercises (A) Quadriceps drill (B) Straight leg raising (C) Elastic resistant exercise (D) Weight is attached directly to the foot. Resistance at the start of the exercise is minimal. It increases steadily as the leg is extended. (E) Bicycling—an exercise designed for increasing endurance and joint function (F) Stairs-climbing exercise (G) Use of pulley. The greater resistance provided by this system is at the start of the exercise. The resistance diminishes progressively as complete extension is achieved.

On the other hand the pulley system so commonly employed in rehabilitation of the quadriceps enforces the maximum resistance when the muscle is in a stretched state; hence it is not adequate in providing heavy resistance exercises so necessary for the development of hypertrophy in this muscle (Fig 201 C). Moreover in the pulley system the vastus medialis works against decreased resistance when the leg is brought into full extension; hence it is neglected

in the terminal stage of the exercise. In order for the vastus medialis to receive the full benefit of the act it should be working against increasing rather than decreasing resistance.

#### METHOD OF HEAVY RESISTANCE AND LOW REPETITION EXERCISES

The program outlined by Delorme is ideal for patients maintained in a center of rehabilitation throughout their entire

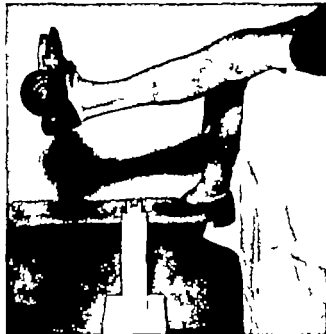


FIG 202 (A, *Left*) Apparatus of Delorme fitted to the foot. The boot alone weighs 5 pounds. Note block used to support the foot. (B, *Right*) After each contraction of the quadriceps and after each series of exercises the foot is brought to rest on the wooden block.

od of treatment, such as in a military vital. However, such a plan is not practical in private or hospital practices. The economic status of most patients will not permit a long period of hospitalization. However, distance in addition to the monetary standards of most patients, precludes daily supervised physical therapy for many weeks. It becomes apparent that the other method comprising the above advantages must be evolved for general use.

The author employs the armamentarium for quadriceps redevelopment described by Delorme; however, the patients are permitted to exercise the affected extremity at home without supervision for 2 or 3 days each week. The patients are provided with the necessary equipment and given detailed instruction in its use. Otherwise the technic is the same as that described by Delorme.

#### APPARATUS

Resistance against the action of the

quadriceps is provided by a series of steel plates graded from  $1\frac{1}{4}$  to 5 pounds. These are fitted over an iron pipe which is attached to a steel boot weighing 5 pounds (Fig 202). The patient sits on a wide table 3 feet high; the edges of the table are raised 3 inches. A pad approximately 4 inches high is placed under the flexed knees. A wooden block is used to rest the limb after each contraction and after each series of exercises.

#### PROGRAM OF EXERCISES

On the initial examination two determinations are made: (1) the maximum quadriceps power, i.e., the maximum poundage that the muscle is capable of raising to the level of full extension of the leg for one repetition (this is designated *one repetition maximum*—(1 R.M.)), and (2) the amount of weight which calls for maximum exertion performed 10 repetitions or 10 repetition maximum (10 R.M.).

The determinations are made in the following manner. The patient sits on the table and with the pad under the flexed knee the boot then is strapped to the foot. Beginning with the weight of the boot and gradually increasing the load on the foot by adding 1½ to 5 pounds the patient raises each load to a point of full extension 10 repetitions. The load requiring maximum exertion is determined and recorded as the 10 R.M. The increase in weights is continued however, with each increase in excess of 10 R.M. the number of repetitions is decreased. Finally the load which can be raised with maximum power for only one repetition is reached this is recorded as 1 R.M.

During the first week the patient never exceeds the load of 10 repetition maximum. He performs from 7 to 10 series of 10 repetitions daily making from 70 to 100 repetitions for the over-all exercise period. At the beginning of the period he uses weights considerably less than the 10 R.M. in each subsequent series the load is increased so that when 10 R.M. has been reached from 70 to 100 repetitions will have been executed. For example at the initial examination the maximum weight that the quadriceps is capable of raising to full extension for 10 repetitions (10 R.M.) is 15 pounds this is designated the maximum weight to be lifted for the first week. The patient begins the exercises by adding 1½ pounds to the load of the boot and performs 10 repetitions. Before each subsequent series he adds 1½ more pounds so that he will have performed 100 repetitions when he reaches 15 pounds.

At the end of the first week it is expected that some improvement in power of the quadriceps has been achieved hence the new 10 R.M. is determined and will constitute the maximum resistance which the quadriceps will be forced to overcome during the exercise periods of the following week. Also at the end of every 7 or 8 days the quadriceps is called upon to raise the

leg to complete extension against the maximum resistance for one repetition (1 R.M.) It is interesting to note the progressive increase in maximum power of the quadriceps from week to week provided that the exercises are performed meticulously.

Some cases exhibiting severe impairment of the quadriceps muscle such as is often seen in cases immobilized for long periods of time following fracture of the femur or as the result of pronounced scarring and fibrosis following severe violence to the soft tissues of the knee are not capable of lifting the weight of the boot to full extension for 10 repetitions. In other words the maximum power of the quadriceps for 10 R.M. is less than 5 pounds. In these cases the boot is not used, but weights of smaller gradations (½ to 1 pound) are strapped to the foot, the weights are increased after each series of 10 repetitions until the 10 R.M. is determined.

Frequently cases are encountered in which the quadriceps lacks the strength to raise the leg to the point of complete extension. In these cases the muscle is severely impaired particularly the vastus medialis. Hence the goal of exercise therapy is to concentrate attention on the vastus medialis in order to restore it to normalcy. Only in this way can complete extension be regained in the knee and power of stability attained in the quadriceps as a whole. This can be achieved by making the vastus medialis work against resistance through the available range of motion. It was pointed out previously that the vastus medialis comes into forceful action only in the last 15° of extension however it works in unison with the other components of the quadriceps when acting against resistance. In this way sufficient power can be built up in the vastus medialis to effect complete extension. The method employed is as follows. The maximum load that the quadriceps is capable of raising for 10 repetitions to the same level of exten-

sion as in acting against no resistance is determined. The resistance is increased gradually and this results in a decrease in the range of motion. The resistance is increased until the quadriceps is capable of working through only a very small arc. By exercising the quadriceps in this fashion hypertrophy and power are built up rapidly to the level at which complete extension is possible.

#### EXECUTION OF EXERCISES

The patient sits on the table with a pad under the knee, which is flexed  $90^\circ$ . The boot with the weights totaling 10 R.M. is strapped to the foot (Fig. 202). A block of wood is placed under the boot at the starting position. The purpose of this is obvious: it precludes any undue stretching and strains on the ligaments and the capsule of the joint resulting from the downward pull of the applied load in the foot. The leg is raised to the level of maximum extension and then lowered slowly to the starting position so that the foot rests on the block. At this point the limb should be relaxed completely for several seconds before the next repetition is commenced. The movements should be performed with precision, smoothness and rhythm. At the end of each series the limb is rested on the wooden block for 1 to 2 minutes before the next series is started. When the limb is raised to the position of maximum extension, the patient should make a concerted effort to contract the quadriceps to the maximum degree; this tends to call into play an increased number of muscle fibers and is most beneficial to the vastus medialis.

The exercise period usually lasts between 30 and 45 minutes; it is performed daily. The patients are given the apparatus and instructed to perform the exercises alone at home 2 or 3 days in the week; the other days they are supervised in the department of physical therapy. As pointed out by Delorme a 2-day rest after each exertion

of the maximum power for one repetition is advantageous. Also, gentle heat and massage to the limb after each daily exercise period afford some comfort and encouragement to the patient. Weight bearing exercises are not allowed until the power of the affected quadriceps approaches that of the normal muscle.

Following the more common surgical procedures in which the continuity of the extensor mechanism is not interrupted, such as meniscectomy, chondrectomy, removal of loose bodies and synovectomy, heavy resistance exercises are not started for 3 or 4 weeks after the operation. At this time effusion and pain on weight bearing should be minimal. Several days before and from 24 to 48 hours after surgical intervention until the time heavy resistance exercises are instituted, quadriceps setting exercises must be performed on a regulated schedule and with concerted concentration on the part of the patient. These constitute a very significant part of the training program designed to restore quadriceps power. They tend to minimize the intensity of quadriceps atrophy and preserve muscle co-ordination. Restoration of normal power is attained usually in 3 to 6 weeks; as a rule cases of meniscectomies respond more rapidly, the average time being approximately 3 weeks. In cases with impairment of the ligamentous apparatus such as a disrupted anterior cruciate ligament and impairment of the tibial collateral ligaments or other combinations of injuries of the cruciate and the collateral ligaments in which instability of the knee is severe, redevelopment of the quadriceps on the affected side must surpass normal power in order that the muscle may be sufficiently strong to stabilize the joint in the face of an inadequate ligamentous apparatus.

#### QUADRICEPS SETTING EXERCISES

This is the simplest form, yet one of the most important of all quadriceps exercises. When initiated before and immediately



after surgery on the knee joint it prevents mental disorientation of the muscle preserves muscle co-ordination and keeps loss of muscle volume to a minimum. The patient must be made aware of the importance of this simple exercise and urged to perform it diligently and with enthusiasm

yet it permits the patient to establish voluntary control of the limb. Occasionally it may be necessary to assist the patient in performing the act. Later it is performed against resistance by placing light sandbags on the dorsum of the foot or by strapping weight on the ankle or against elastic re-

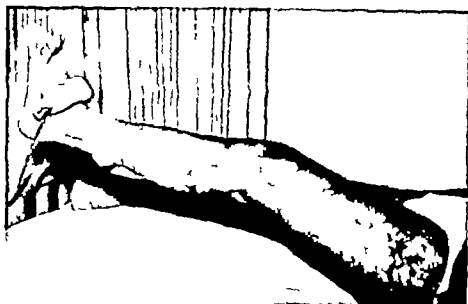


FIG. 203 Straight leg raising against elastic resistance

He should watch the muscle contract and at the end of each contraction should endeavor to expend still more effort. It should be performed 10, 15 or 20 times every hour on the hour depending on the capacity of the patient. When quadriceps setting has been mastered sufficiently the patient may add the next exercise, straight leg raising

#### STRAIGHT LEG RAISING EXERCISE

This too is a simple quadriceps exercise

(Fig. 203). When the patient is ambulatory the exercise may be executed from a sitting position; the loaded leg is extended as completely as possible. The patient should strive to raise the completely extended limb to the horizontal position. Both quadriceps setting and straight leg raising can be and should be instituted while the limb is in plaster, provided that there are no contraindications to the exercises.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Neman Oscar: Chondromalacia posttraumatica patellae. *Acta chir. scandinav.* 63:149, 1928.  
 Anderson E. M.: Arthroscopy of the knee. A review of 50 cases. *U. S. Naval M. Bull.* 42:1314, 1944.  
 Aahausen C.: Über einfache eptische Knochen und Knorpelnekrose Chondritis discans und Arthritis deformans. *Arch. klin. Chir.* 99:410, 1917.  
 ———: Die umschriebenen Knorpel-Knochenläsionen des Kniegelenks. *Klin. Wchnschr.* 56:265, 1919.  
 Bauer Walter and Bennett C. A.: Experimental and pathological studies in the degenerative

- type of arthritis J Bone & Joint Surg 18 1 1936
- Bennett, G. A., and Bauer Walter A systematic study of the degeneration of articular cartilage in bovine joints. Am. J. Path. 7 399 1931
- A study of the repair of articular cartilage and the reaction of normal joints of adult dogs to surgically created defects of articular cartilage "joint mice" and patellar displacement, Am. J. Path. 8 499 1932
- Further studies concerning the repair of articular cartilage in dog joints J Bone & Joint Surg 17 141 1935
- Berkhiser E. J. Excision of the patella in arthritis of the knee joint, J.A.M.A. 113 2303 1939
- Blodgett, W. E., and Fairchild, R. D. Fractures of the patella result of total and partial excisions of the patella for acute fractures J.A.M.A. 106 2121 1936
- Bosworth, D. M. Lesions of the tibial tubercle and their treatment, Am. J. Surg 43 526 1939
- Boyd, H. B. and Hawkins B. L. Patellectomy, a simplified technique, Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 86 357 1948
- Bronitsky Jacob Chondromalacia patellae, J Bone & Joint Surg 29 931 1947
- Brooke, R. The treatment of fractured patella by excision. A study of morphology and function Brit. J. Surg 24 733 1937
- Brown, F. T. Rotation and outward dislocation of the patella Ann. Surg 35 636 1902
- Bruce John and Walmsley Robert Excision of the patella some experimental and anatomical observations, J Bone & Joint Surg 24 311 1942
- ✓Campbell, W. C. Fractures of the patella, South. M. J. 28 401 1935
- Operative Orthopedics St. Louis Mosby 1939
- Cave E. F., Rowe, C. R. and Yee L. B. K. Chondromalacia of the patella, Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 81 446 1945
- Chaklin, V. D. Injuries to the cartilages of the patella and the femoral condyle J Bone & Joint Surg 21 133 1939
- Coleman, H. M. Recurrent osteochondral fractures of the patella J Bone & Joint Surg 30-B 153 1948
- Cooper Astley A Treatise on Dislocations and Fractures of the Joints, p. 178 Philadelphia, Lea, 1844
- Cotton, F. J. Dislocations and Joint Fractures Philadelphia Saunders 1910
- Cox, F. J. Traumatic osteochondritis of the patella Surgery 17 93 1945
- Darrach, William Internal derangements of the knee, Ann Surg 102 129 1935
- Chondritis of knee Ann. Surg., 110 948 1939
- Delorme T. L. Restoration of muscle power by heavy resistance exercises J Bone & Joint Surg 27 645 1945
- Dobbie, R. P. and Ryerson, S. The treatment of fractured patella by excision, Am. J. Surg 55 339 1942
- Duchenne, G. B. A. Physiologie des mouvements démontrée à l'aide de l'expérimentation électrique et de l'observation clinique et applicable à l'étude des paralysies et des déformations, Paris Baillière 1867
- Ely L. W., and Cowan J. F. Bone and Joint Studies, pp. 39 109 Palo Alto Stanford Univ 1916
- ✓Ely L. W. and Mensor M. C. Studies on the immobilization of the normal joints Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 57 212 1933
- Fairbank Sir H. A. T. Internal derangement of the knee in children and adolescents Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. (Sect. Orthop.) 30 427 1936-37
- Fisher A. G. T. A contribution to the pathology and etiology of osteo-arthritis with observations upon the principles underlying its surgical treatment, Brit. J. Surg 10 52 1922 23
- The principles of orthopaedic and surgical treatment in the rheumatoid type of arthritis J Bone & Joint Surg 19 65, 1937
- Goldthwait, J. E. Permanent dislocation of the patella Ann. Surg 29 62 1899
- Harmon, P. H. Intra articular osteochondral fractures as a cause for internal derangement of the knee in adolescents J Bone & Joint Surg 27 703 1945
- Hauser E. D. W. Total tendon transplant for slipping patella a new operation for recurrent dislocation of the patella, Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 66 199 1938
- Haxton H. A. The function of the patella and the effects of its excision Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 80 389 1945
- Hersmark, M. H. Traumatic degenerative fibrillation of the patella J Bone & Joint Surg 19 1089 1937
- Hinrichson, H. Studies on patellar chondromalacia. An attempt to elucidate its etiology Acta orthop. scandinav 10 313 1939
- Hirsch, Carl A contribution to the pathogenesis of chondromalacia of the patella a physical histologic and chemical study Acta chir. scandinav 90 1 Supp 83 1944
- Horwitz T., and Lambert, R. G. Patellectomy in the military service report of 19 cases Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 82 423 1946
- Houkom S. S. Recurrent dislocation of the patella, Arch. Surg 44 1026 1942

after surgery on the knee joint it prevents mental disorientation of the muscle preserves muscle co-ordination and keeps loss of muscle volume to a minimum. The patient must be made aware of the importance of this simple exercise and urged to perform it diligently and with enthusiasm

yet it permits the patient to establish voluntary control of the limb. Occasionally, it may be necessary to assist the patient in performing the act. Later it is performed against resistance by placing light sandbags on the dorsum of the foot or by strapping weight on the ankle or against elastic re-

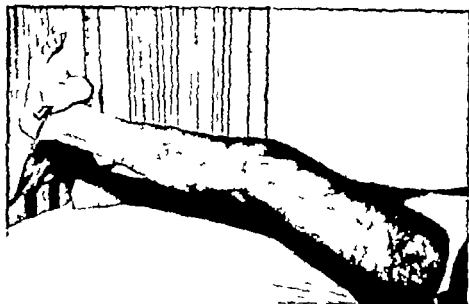


FIG. 203 Straight leg raising against elastic resistance

He should watch the muscle contract and at the end of each contraction should endeavor to expend still more effort. It should be performed 10, 15 or 20 times every hour on the hour depending on the capacity of the patient. When quadriceps setting has been mastered sufficiently the patient may add the next exercise—straight leg raising

#### STRAIGHT LEG RAISING EXERCISE

This too is a simple quadriceps exercise

istance (Fig. 203). When the patient is ambulatory, the exercise may be executed from a sitting position—the loaded leg is extended as completely as possible. The patient should strive to raise the completely extended limb to the horizontal position. Both quadriceps setting and straight leg raising can be and should be instituted while the limb is in plaster provided that there are no contraindications to the exercises.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Aleman Oscar: Chondromalacia posttraumatica patellae. *Acta chir. scandinav.* 63:149, 1928.  
 Anderson E. M.: Arthroscopy of the knee. A review of 50 cases. *U. S. Naval M. Bull.* 42:1314, 1944.  
 Arxhausen G.: Über einfache aseptische Knochen- und Knorpelnekrose Chondritis dissecans und Arthritis deformans. *Arch. klin. Chir.* 99:319, 1912.  
 ———: Die umschriebenen Knorpelknochenläsionen des Kniegelenks. *Klin. Wchnschr.* 56:265, 1919.  
 Bauer Walter and Bennett G. A.: Experimental and pathological studies in the degenerative

- type of arthritis, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 18 1 1936
- Bennett G A., and Bauer Walter A systematic study of the degeneration of articular cartilage in bovine joints *Am. J Path.* 7 399 1931
- A study of the repair of articular cartilage and the reaction of normal joints of adult dogs to surgically created defects of articular cartilage "joint mice," and patellar displacement, *Am. J Path.* 8 499 1932
- Further studies concerning the repair of articular cartilage in dog joints *J Bone & Joint Surg* 17 141 1935
- Berkbesser E J Excision of the patella in arthritis of the knee joint *J.A.M.A.* 113 2303 1939
- Blodgett, W E., and Fairchild, R. D Fractures of the patella result of total and partial excisions of the patella for acute fractures *J.A.M.A.* 106 2121 1936
- Bosworth, D M. Lesions of the tibial tubercle and their treatment, *Am J Surg* 43 526 1939
- Boyd H. B., and Hawkins B L. Patellectomy a simplified technique *Surg Gynec. & Obst.* 86 357 1948
- Bronitsky Jacob Chondromalacia patellae, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 29 931 1947
- Brooke R The treatment of fractured patella by excision A study of morphology and function, *Brit. J Surg* 24 733 1937
- Brown F T Rotation and outward dislocation of the patella *Ann Surg* 35 636 1902
- Bruce, John, and Walmsley Robert Excision of the patella some experimental and anatomical observations *J Bone & Joint Surg* 24 311 1942
- Campbell, W C. Fractures of the patella *South. M. J* 28 401 1935
- Operative Orthopedics St. Louis Mosby 1939
- Cave E F Rowe, C. R. and Yee L. B K. Chondromalacia of the patella, *Surg Gynec. & Obst* 81 446 1945
- Chaklin V D Injuries to the cartilages of the patella and the femoral condyle *J Bone & Joint Surg* 21 133 1939
- Coleman, H M. Recurrent osteochondral fractures of the patella, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 30 B 153 1948
- Cooper Astley A Treatise on Dislocations and Fractures of the Joints p. 178 Philadelphia Lea 1844
- Cotton F J Dislocations and Joint Fractures Philadelphia, Saunders, 1910
- Cox, F J Traumatic osteochondritis of the patella *Surgery* 17 93 1945
- Darrach, William Internal derangements of the knee, *Ann Surg* 102 129 1935
- Chondritis of knee, *Ann. Surg.*, 110 948 1939
- Delorme, T L. Restoration of muscle power by heavy resistance exercises *J Bone & Joint Surg* 27 645 1945
- Dobbie, R. P., and Ryerson S The treatment of fractured patella by excision, *Am J Surg* 55 339 1942
- Duchenne G B A Physiologie des mouvements démontrée à l'aide de l'expérimentation électrique et de l'observation clinique, et applicable à l'étude des paralysies et des déformations, Paris Bailliere 1867
- Ely L. W., and Cowan, J F Bone and Joint Studies pp 39-109 Palo Alto Stanford Univ 1916
- Ely L. W. and Mensor M. C Studies on the immobilisation of the normal joints *Surg Gynec. & Obst.* 57 212 1933
- Fairbank, Sir H A T Internal derangement of the knee in children and adolescents *Proc Roy Soc Med. (Sect. Orthop)* 30 427 1936-37
- Fisher A. G T A contribution to the pathology and etiology of osteo-arthritis with observations upon the principles underlying its surgical treatment, *Brit. J Surg* 10 52 1922 23
- The principles of orthopaedic and surgical treatment in the rheumatoid type of arthritis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 657 1937
- Goldthwait J E. Permanent dislocation of the patella *Ann Surg* 29 62 1899
- Harmon, P H Intra articular osteochondral fractures as a cause for internal derangement of the knee in adolescents, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 27 103 1945
- Hauser E. D W Total tendon transplant for slipping patella a new operation for recurrent dislocation of the patella, *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 66 199 1938
- Haxton H. A. The function of the patella and the effects of its excision *Surg Gynec. & Obst* 80 389 1945
- Hertzmark M. H. Traumatic degenerative fibrillation of the patella *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1089 1937
- Hinncsson H Studies on patellar chondromalacia. An attempt to elucidate its etiology. *Acta orthop. scandinav* 10 313 1939
- Hirsch, Carl A contribution to the pathogenesis of chondromalacia of the patella a physical histologic and chemical study *Acta chir scandinav* 90 1 Supp 83 1944
- Horwitz, T., and Lambert, R. G Patellectomy in the military service report of 19 cases *Surg., Gynec. & Obst* 82 423 1946
- Houkom S. S Recurrent dislocation of the patella, *Arch. Surg* 44 1026 1942

- Johansson S. En forut icke beskriven sjukdom i patella. *Hygien* 84 161 1922
- Karlson Stig. Chondromalacia patellae. *Acta chir scandinav* 83 347 1939
- Keefer C. S. Parker Frederic Jr., Myers W. K., and Irwin R. L. Relationship between anatomic changes in knee joint with advancing age and degenerative arthritis. *Arch. Int. Med.* 53 325 1934
- Key J. A. Experimental arthritis. The changes in joints produced by creating defects in the articular cartilage. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 13 25 1931
- Key J. A. and Conwell H. E. The Management of Fractures Dislocations and Sprains. Ed. 4. St. Louis, Mosby 1946
- Keyes E. L. Erosions of the articular cartilage of the knee joint. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 15 369 1933
- Kleinberg Samuel. Vertical fracture of the articular surface of the patella. *J.A.M.A.* 81 1205 1923
- Kroner M. Ein Fall von Flächenfraktur und Luxation der Patella. *Deutsche med. wchnschr.* 31 996 1905
- Lieberman, H. S. Traumatic fibrillar degeneration of the patellar cartilage. *Bull. Hosp. Joint Dis.* 1 69 1940
- MacAusland, W. R. The treatment of fractures of the olecranon by a longitudinal screw or nail fixation. *Ann Surg* 116 293 1942
- McCarroll, H. R. and Schwartzmann, J. R. Lateral dislocation of the patella. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 27 446 1945
- MacKenzie Sir Colin. The Action of Muscles pp. 180-181 London, Lewis, 1940
- Magnuson P. B. Fractures Philadelphia, Lippincott 1933
- Martini B. Zwei kasuistische Beiträge Blutende Mammabellm Manne. Fest eingeklemmte seitliche Luxation der Patella. *Zentralbl. Chir* 57 130 1930
- Meekison D. M. Hitherto undescribed fracture of the patella. *Brit. J. Surg* 25 64 1937
- Milgram J. E. Tangential osteochondral fracture of patella. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 25 2 1 1943
- Nichols E. H., and Richardson F. L. Arthritis deformans. *J. M. Research* 21 149 1909-10
- Nicoll, E. A. Principles of exercise therapy. *Brit. M. J.* 1 4 1943
- Redevelopment of muscle function. Report of Surgeons Conference of the Miners Welfare Commission 1947. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 30 B 392 1948
- Ober F. R. Fracture of the patella a new operation. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 14 640 1932
- Recurrent dislocations of the patella. *Am. J. Surg* 43 497 1939
- Orsós Eugen. Mit ausserer Torsion komplizierte Kniegelenkverrenkung nach aussen. *Zentralbl. Chir* 53 1506 1926
- Owre A. Chondromalacia patellae. *Acta chir scandinav* 77 1 1936
- Parker F. Jr., Keefer C. S., Myers W. K. and Irwin R. L. Histologic changes in the knee joint with advancing age relation to degenerative arthritis. *Arch. Pathol.* 17 516 1934
- Robertson, George. A method of treatment for habitual dislocation of the patellae. *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 14, 378 1912
- Scott J. C. Fractures of the patella. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 31 B 76 1949
- Shands A. R., Jr. The regeneration of hyaline cartilage in joints: an experimental study. *Arch. Surg* 22 137 1931
- Silfverskiöld, Nils. Chondromalacia patellae. *Monatsschr. Unfallh.* 39 193 1932
- Chondromalacia of the patella. *Acta orthop. scandinav* 9 214 1938.
- Smillie I. S. The quadriceps in relation to recovery from injuries of the knee joint. *Physiotherapy* 35 53 1949
- Soto-Hall, Ralph. Traumatic degeneration of the articular cartilage of the patella. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 27 426 1945
- Speed, Kellogg. A Text book of Fractures and Dislocations Philadelphia, Lea 1928
- Stewart, S. F. Frontal fractures of the patella. *Ann Surg* 81 536 1925
- Thomson, J. E. M. Comminuted fractures of the patella: treatment of cases presenting one large fragment and several small fragments. *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 17 431 1935
- Fractures of the patella treated by removal of the loose fragments and elastic repair of the tendon. study of 554 cases. *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 74 860 1942
- Thornton L. and Sandison C. Fractures of the knee. *Am. J. Surg* 44 178 1939
- Trausner Hanna. Ein Fall von Luxatio Genu mit Einwärtsrotation der Patella um 180 Grad. *Med. Klin* 19 832 1923
- Wass S. H., and Davies E. R. Excision of the patella for a fracture with remarks on ossification in quadriceps tendon following operation. *Guy's Hosp. Rep* 91 35 1942
- Wiberg Gunnar. Roentgenographic and anatomic studies on the femoropatellar joint with special reference to chondromalacia patellae. *Acta orthop. Scandinav* 12 319 1941
- Spontanheilung von Osteochondritis dissecans im Kniegelenk. *Acta chir scandinav* 85 421 1941
- Young H. H. and Regan J. M. Total excision of the patella for arthritis of the knee. *Minnesota Med.* 28 909 1945

# Congenital and Acquired Deformities of the Knee Joint

## CONGENITAL ANOMALIES

Numerous varied and grotesque congenital deformities are encountered in the region of the knee joint. They often exhibit a familial and hereditary distribution. Congenital malformations may involve only the elements of the quadriceps apparatus or they may coexist with deformities of the bony components of the knee joint. Frequently, the deformities coexist with other deformities such as clubfeet, clubhands, congenital dislocation of the hips and aplasia of some of the bones of the extremities (Fig. 204). The knee joint may be absent or dislocated, the entire lower limb may fail to develop, or only the thigh may be absent. The author had the opportunity to examine a male infant with complete absence of the thigh on the right side; the tibia and the fibula were in apposition to the pelvis. Also a congenital dislocation of the left hip was present. Abnormalities of the extensor apparatus comprise malformations of the patella, underdevelopment or absence of one or more of the vasti muscles, especially the vastus medialis, congenital dislocation and recurrent slipping of the patella, congenital genu recurvatum and other congenital contractures about the knee joint (Fig. 205). In addition, atrophic and hypertrophic congenital abnormalities may be encountered.

It is impossible to record a definitive plan of management for any type of congenital anomaly; each case demands in

dividual evaluation, and a plan of treatment is formulated, depending on the requisites of the case in question. Atrophic abnormalities of the lower limb rarely are amenable to surgical measures. However, in properly selected cases, retarding or arresting the growth of the normal limb may minimize in a measure the degree of the deformity. Such procedures also are applicable to hypertrophic anomalies of the lower extremity. In these cases growth of the affected extremity is retarded until equalization of leg length is achieved.

Case G. W., a white female 9 years old, is an example of congenital hypertrophic anomaly implicating the right leg (Fig. 206). The mother noticed immediately after birth a slight enlargement of the limb as compared with the opposite extremity. With growth of the child there was a steady increase in the discrepancy of leg lengths. When first examined by the author the right leg was 7 cm. longer than the left, and the circumference of the right thigh 4 inches proximal to the upper border of the patella was 4 cm. greater than the corresponding level on the opposite thigh. Both the lower femoral epiphysis and the upper tibial epiphysis were stapled, the fibular epiphyseal plate was excised. Two years later the lower limbs were of equal length and the staples were removed. Three years later the right extremity was  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm. longer than the left.

## ABSENCE OF THE FEMUR

Partial or complete absence of the femur occurs more frequently than is realized generally. Of all the long bones the fibula is congenitally absent most often in the

order of frequency the other long bones congenitally absent are the tibia, the ulna and the radius. The author has encountered 6 cases of partial or complete absence of the femur the most recent case exhibited the most interesting findings. The patient is a Negro child born on October 10, 1952, with a deformed right lower extremity

Roentgenographic studies revealed total absence of the femur and the fibula in the right lower limb the left extremity was normal (Fig 207 A). Palpation of the affected thigh disclosed the presence of a round, firm rubbery mass measuring 5 cm by 7 cm. Close observation of the mass during the subsequent 3 weeks revealed

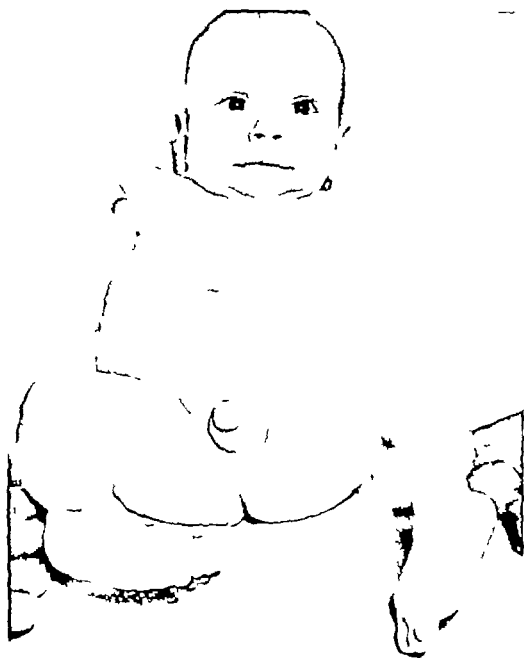


FIG. 204. Congenital absence of both tibiae with absence of both upper extremities. Only the proximal ends of both humeri are present. Both knee joints are dislocated. The head of the fibula on either side is displaced upward.

that it grew in size steadily. This prompted a surgical biopsy of the lesion. microscopic examination of the tissue disclosed that the mass comprised normal cartilage. Roentgenograms taken 4 months later revealed some calcification in the palpable mass (Fig 207 B) however, there was no evidence of the development of a normal femoral shaft or of the femoral epiphyses. Roentgenograms taken when the child was 7 months old exhibited the presence of the upper femoral epiphysis in normal relation to the acetabulum and the presence of the distal half of the femur with a well-developed lower femoral epiphysis (Fig 207 C). The proximal end of the femur distal to the capital epiphysis was still absent. It will be interesting to follow the ultimate development of this extremity.

Another case of interest was a child 6 years of age with a total absence of the left femur. the left lower leg was normal in every feature except that it was markedly underdeveloped. The child was fitted with a prosthesis which accommodated the lower leg and the flail thigh. It was amazing to observe the ease with which the patient was able to move about.

In general, the treatment of these cases like those of other congenital anomalies depends upon the requirements of the individual problem. Management of these cases tests the ingenuity of the orthopedic surgeon in charge.

#### ABSENCE OF THE TIBIA

Congenital absence of the tibia produces marked shortening of the lower leg, which usually assumes a position of extreme adduction on the thigh. Frequently concomitant anomalies of the foot are present such as absence of some of the tarsal bones, the toes or the rays. Generally, the foot exhibits varying degrees of equinovarus deformity. Roentgenographic study discloses the usual arrangement of the upper end of the fibula in relation to the femur and the lower end to the posterior tarsus. The upper end of



FIG 205 Child born with extension contractures of both knees and flexion contractures of both hips and shoulders (a form of myodystrophia foetalis)

the fibula articulates with the lateral aspect of the lateral condyle of the femur and the lower end is in apposition to the lateral aspect of the posterior tarsus (Fig 208). In some instances heredity plays a role in the development of this anomaly. The author has encountered bilateral congenital absence of the tibia in a father and his daughter with severe coexisting deformities of the feet. bilateral amputations through the knee joints were performed in each



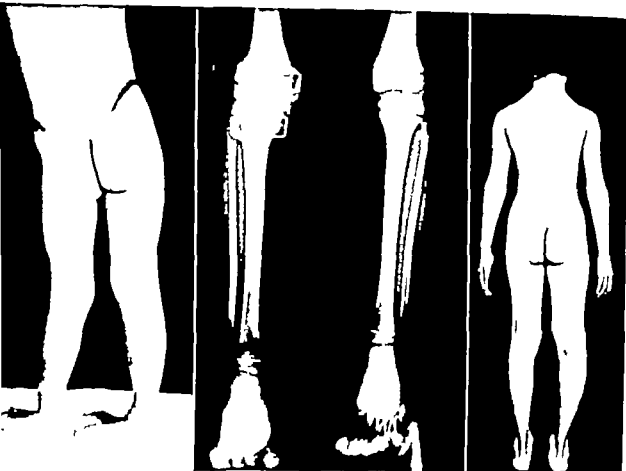


FIG 206 (*Left*) G W aged 9 with congenital hypertrophy of the right lower extremity (*Center*) Both the distal femoral and the upper tibial epiphyses were stapled (*Right*) Same child 2½ years later. The right leg is now only 1½ cm longer than the left.



FIG 207 (*Left*) At birth there is absence of the femur and the tibia in the right lower extremity (*Center*) Four months after birth calcification without any special configuration is noted in the thigh. (*Right*) Seven months after birth. Note the presence of a proximal femoral epiphysis and the development of the lower one half of the femur with a well formed distal epiphysis

instance. By these procedures the distal femoral epiphyses were not disturbed, and lengthening of the femurs progressed normally (Figs 209 and 210)

#### TREATMENT

As a rule, conservative measures produce unsatisfactory limbs and in most instances amputation performed at the optimum time is the procedure of choice when the tibia is absent. In cases with resistant foot deformities, during the first 2 or 3 years of life such methods as manual stretching and wedging casts may be employed to overcome the deformity and place the foot in

position as nearly normal as possible in relation to the longitudinal axis of the lower leg. In a few instances in which the coexisting deformities of the foot are amenable to satisfactory correction the fibula may be transferred into the intercondylar notch of the femur and the distal end mortised in the superior aspect of the astragalus or the os calcis if the former is absent. By this method the bony continuity of the limb is restored, and weight bearing function can begin; this tends to minimize retardation of growth or provides a serviceable stump for a prosthesis if amputation is inevitable in later years. By

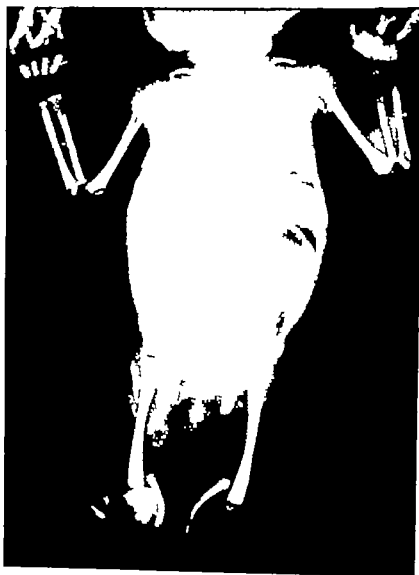


FIG 208 Bilateral absence of the tibia. Observe that the upper ends of both fibulae articulate with the posterolateral aspect of the lateral femoral condyles.

placing the foot in extreme equinus in the longitudinal axis of the limb additional length is added to the extremity. Putti has designed surgical procedures to achieve these aforementioned aims and has reported some satisfactory results.

**Transference of the Fibula (Putti)** (Fig. 211) An oblique incision is made on

the anterolateral aspect of the limb, beginning above the level of the lateral condyle of the femur and extending distally to the juncture of the upper and the middle thirds of the leg. The incision is deepened to expose the condyles of the femur, the intervening capsule between the lateral condyle of the femur and the proximal

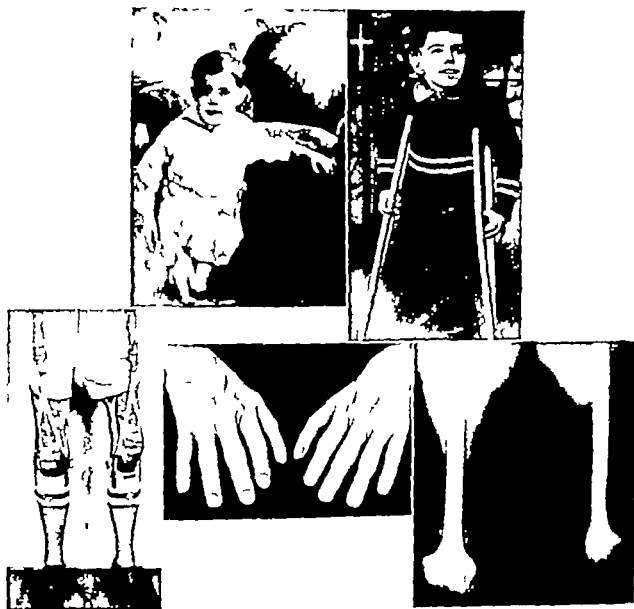


FIG. 209 (Top left) R. F. at the age of 3. Both tibiae are absent; observe that the child stands on the ends of the femurs. (Top right) The same child at the age of 6. A bilateral amputation through the knee joints has been performed. (Bottom left) Same patient at the age of 36 wearing prosthesis. He is able to walk without difficulty and is capable of working every day. (Bottom center) Hands of the same patient. (Bottom right) Roentgenograms of the same patient. No evidence of degenerative changes caused by weight bearing is demonstrable in the lower end of either femur.



FIG 210 (A, *Top*) Roentgenograms of the lower extremities of the daughter of the patient shown in Figure 209. Observe the bilateral absence of the tibia with dislocation of the knee joints; also note the congenital abnormalities of both feet. (B, *Bottom*) Hands of this child. Note that they are identical with the hands of the father.

epiphysis of the fibula is divided. Next, the common peroneal nerve is identified and retracted laterally, and the tendon of the biceps femoris is severed at its point of attachment to the fibular head. The upper third of the fibula is mobilized. In the execution of this step care must be taken not to injure the peroneal nerve. Now the fibula is ready to be transferred to its new anatomic position in the intercondylar notch of the femur. This is accomplished by levering the end of the bone gently into the notch; this step may be facilitated by abduction and flexion of the leg. The shortened soft tissue structures of the thigh may not permit complete extension of the leg on the thigh; in this event the leg is maintained in slight flexion. Complete extension may be achieved later by successive casts.



If the stability of the fibula in the notch is satisfactory, no fixation of the bone in the notch is attempted. On the other hand, if stability is not satisfactory, the surface of the notch may be scarified and the fibula anchored in place with interrupted sutures. The wound is closed in the usual manner.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT** At the termination of the operation a plaster cast is applied extending from the groin to the toes with the knee flexed in the desired position. Every 4 to 6 weeks the cast is removed and another is applied with each change of cast extension at the knee is increased until  $180^\circ$  is attained. Correction at the knee usually is accomplished at the end of 6 months, a leather lacer is fitted extending from the groin to the toes and holding the foot in equinus. Walking on the limb is encouraged.

**Stabilization of Distal End of the Fibula.** Stabilization of the lower end of the fibula is performed approximately 1 year after the first operation. The distal end of the fibula is placed into the tarsus. This is achieved by mobilizing the end of the fibula through an anterolateral incision.

The superior surface of the astragalus is exposed and split longitudinally. If this bone is absent the mortice is made in the os calcis. If an increase in the length of the leg is desired the foot is placed in equinus with the toes at right angles to the metatarsal bones so that the body weight is borne on the metatarsal heads and the toes. The distal end of the fibula is scarified and levered into the defect; the end of the bone is anchored in position by several interrupted sutures.

With the foot in equinus and the knee in complete extension the extremity is immobilized in a plaster cast extending from the groin to the toes. After 3 or 4 months the cast is removed, a leather lacer is fitted to the leg and an elevated shoe is worn on the foot.

Modifications of the aforementioned pro-

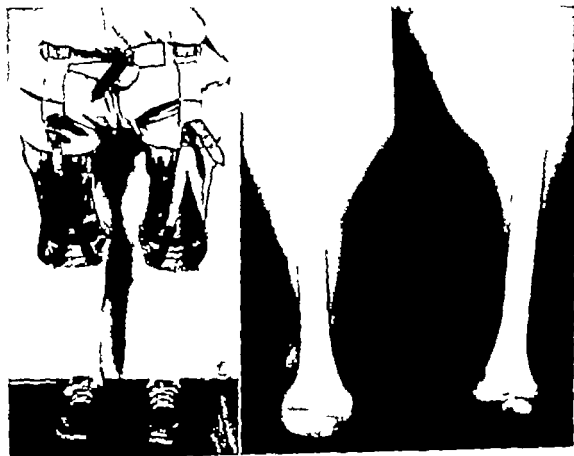


FIG. 210 (C Left) The child wearing prosthesis at the age of 8. Amputations done at the age of 4. (D Right) Roentgenograms showing the adaptation of both femoral epiphyses to weight bearing. (A. Davidson)

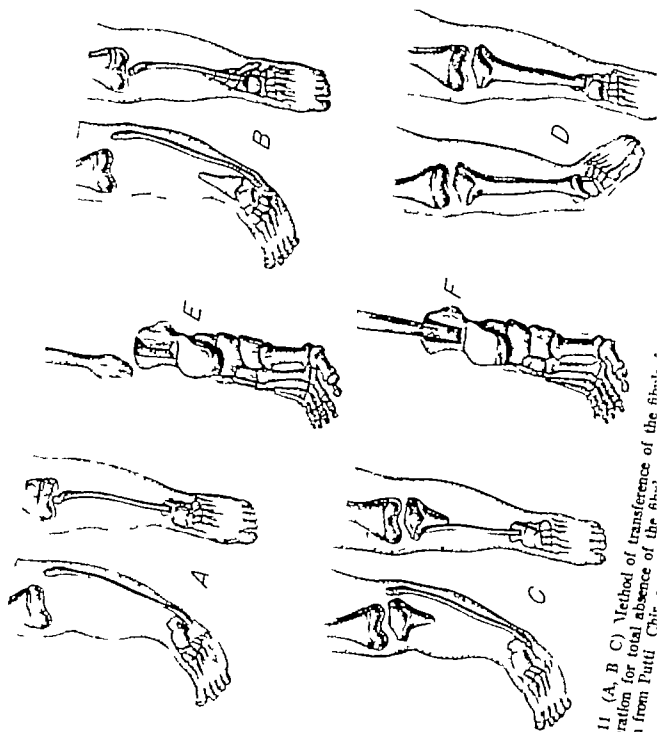


FIG 211 (A, B, C) Method of transference of the fibula.  
 (D) Operation for total absence of the femur.  
 (Redrawn from Putti "Chir."



FIG. 212 Child with absence of the fibula in the left leg. Observe the characteristic position of the foot—it assumes a position of *talipes equinovaginus*. Also note the concomitant deformities of both feet.



FIG. 213 Characteristic anterior bowing of the tibia in the absence of a fibula.

cedure may be employed in cases with partial absence at either end of the tibia. If the proximal end of the tibia is present, the fibula may be fused to its lateral aspect and the distal end of the fibula transferred into the posterior tarsus. If the proximal end is absent, the upper end of the fibula is placed into the intercondylar notch (Fig. 211).

**Amputation Through the Knee Joint.** Although amputations in growing children are looked upon with disfavor in some instances they are justified provided that the amputation is performed through the knee joint and the distal femoral epiphysis is not disturbed. An appliance can be worn to permit walking; function will be a major stimulus in promoting growth of the femur. The author has observed two cases, father and daughter who had bilateral amputations in childhood. In both instances excellent weight bearing stumps were attained and both patients wear prostheses without difficulty.

#### ABSENCE OF THE FIBULA

This anomaly occurs more frequently than congenital absence of the other long bones of the extremities. Complete or partial absence of the bone may occur. The foot characteristically assumes a position of *talipes equinovaginus* and concomitant abnormalities of the foot usually are present (Fig. 212). In addition the tibia exhibits varying degrees of anterior bowing (Fig. 213). Bilateral defects of the fibula also are encountered.

Coventry and Johnson have divided the different varieties of fibular defects into three groups. Type I includes patients with partial unilateral absence of the fibula with minimal or no anterior angulation of the tibia. In this group the affected limb is always shorter than the opposite extremity and the foot exhibits little or no abnormality. The functional handicap is not great.



FIG. 214 (A, *Left*) Child aged 4, with complete absence of the right fibula. Note the amount of shortening in the entire affected limb and the equinus position of the foot which is a secondary deformity to gain in leg length. (B *Right*) Roentgenograms of the same child, showing complete absence of the fibula.

In fact in some instances the lesion is not recognized and is found only accidentally. Treatment usually comprises an elevation of the heel on the shoe worn on the affected limb, and in cases with marked shortening epiphyseal arrest may be employed to equalize leg lengths.

Type II includes cases with complete or almost complete absence of the fibula; the involvement is unilateral. This is the second largest group of cases. As in the first type the characteristic deformity is demonstrable. The tibia presents marked anterior angulation; the foot is in a position of talipes equinovagum and usually discloses other deformities such as absence of rays or tar-

sal bones, and invariably marked shortening of the limb is present (Fig. 214).

Type III is the largest group; it includes all cases of Types I and II with other associated deformities and all cases of bilateral absences of the fibula. Treatment of this group is more complicated than that of Types I and II, also, the prognosis for ultimate satisfactory function is poorer.

Occasionally, congenital absence of the tibia may be diagnosed erroneously as congenital absence of the fibula. The distinguishing features of congenital absence of the tibia are as follows: (1) the foot is in a position of varus, while in congenital absence of the fibula it is in a valgus position,





FIG 212 Child with absence of the fibula in the left leg. Observe the characteristic position of the foot: it assumes a position of talipes equinovaglus. Also note the concomitant deformities of both feet.



FIG 213 Characteristic anterior bowing of the tibia in the absence of a fibula.

cedure may be employed in cases with partial absence at either end of the tibia. If the proximal end of the tibia is present the fibula may be fused to its lateral aspect and the distal end of the fibula transferred into the posterior tarsus. If the proximal end is absent, the upper end of the fibula is placed into the intercondylar notch (Fig 211).

**Amputation Through the Knee Joint.** Although amputations in growing children are looked upon with disfavor in some instances they are justified provided that the amputation is performed through the knee joint and the distal femoral epiphysis is not disturbed. An appliance can be worn to permit walking. Function will be a major stimulus in promoting growth of the femur. The author has observed two cases, father and daughter, who had bilateral amputations in childhood. In both instances excellent weight bearing stumps were attained and both patients wear prostheses without difficulty.

#### ABSENCE OF THE FIBULA

This anomaly occurs more frequently than congenital absence of the other long bones of the extremities. Complete or partial absence of the bone may occur. The foot characteristically assumes a position of talipes equinovaglus and concomitant abnormalities of the foot usually are present (Fig 212). In addition the tibia exhibits varying degrees of anterior bowing (Fig 213). Bilateral defects of the fibula also are encountered.

Coventry and Johnson have divided the different varieties of fibular defects into three groups. Type I includes patients with partial unilateral absence of the fibula with minimal or no anterior angulation of the tibia. In this group the affected limb is always shorter than the opposite extremity and the foot exhibits little or no abnormality. The functional handicap is not great.



FIG. 214 (A, *Left*) Child, aged 4, with complete absence of the right fibula. Note the amount of shortening in the entire affected limb and the equinus position of the foot which is a secondary deformity to gain in leg length (B, *Right*) Roentgenograms of the same child showing complete absence of the fibula

in fact, in some instances the lesion is not recognized and is found only accidentally. Treatment usually comprises an elevation of the heel on the shoe worn on the affected limb and in cases with marked shortening epiphyseal arrest may be employed to equalize leg lengths.

Type II includes cases with complete or almost complete absence of the fibula; the involvement is unilateral. This is the second largest group of cases. As in the first type the characteristic deformity is demonstrable. The tibia presents marked anterior angulation; the foot is in a position of talipes equinovagis and usually discloses other deformities, such as absence of rays or tar-

sal bones, and invariably marked shortening of the limb is present (Fig. 214).

Type III is the largest group, it includes all cases of Types I and II with other associated deformities and all cases of bilateral absences of the fibula. Treatment of this group is more complicated than that of Types I and II; also the prognosis for ultimate satisfactory function is poorer.

Occasionally congenital absence of the tibia may be diagnosed erroneously as congenital absence of the fibula. The distinguishing features of congenital absence of the tibia are as follows: (1) the foot is in a position of varus, while in congenital absence of the fibula it is in a valgus position

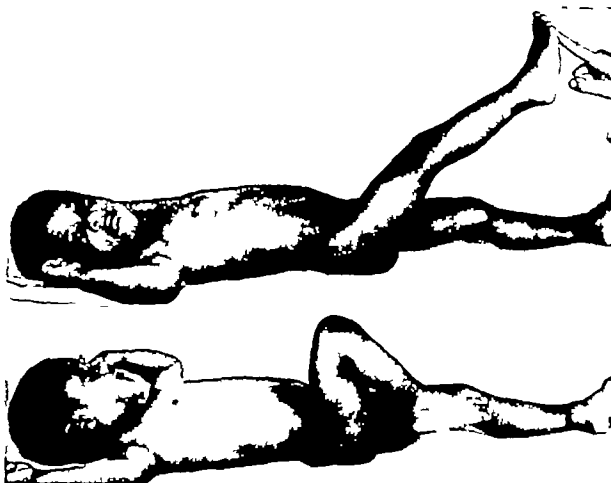


FIG. 214 (C) Showing range of flexion and extension in the affected knee joint. Lateral stability of the knee is surprisingly good

the medial malleolus is not present and the foot is displaced medially at the ankle joint (2) the leg fails to exhibit marked anterior angulation (3) the knee is dislocated and the fibula articulates with the lateral aspect of the lateral femoral condyle

#### TREATMENT

As previously noted no generalized plan of management is applicable to all the different types of anomalies of the lower leg. In cases of absence of the fibula each instance presents problems peculiar to the abnormality. Types II and III require special consideration. Treatment should begin as soon after birth as circumstances permit. In general every effort should be made to encourage weight bearing in order to stimu-

late bone growth. In the early years the deformity of the foot should be corrected by wedging or successive casts and by placing the foot in a position of satisfactory weight bearing. The use of appliances or specially designed shoes or prostheses is employed to maintain the corrected position permitting weight-bearing. Operative procedures such as tendon lengthening, capsulotomy and tenotomy may be necessary to attain the desired correction of the foot in relation to the lower leg.

When skeletal growth is almost completed the foot may be stabilized by the reconstruction of an external malleolus as described by Ashhurst. A free bone graft  $\frac{3}{4}$  in. in width and 4 in. in length is obtained from the opposite tibia. One end of the graft is shaped to conform to the shape

of a normal internal malleolus, the endosteum is removed and the cortical surface is opposed to the lateral surface of the distal end of the tibia so that the end of the graft extends 1 in. beyond the distal margin of the tibia. The graft is fixed to the tibia by several screws.

The limb is immobilized in a plaster cast extending from the toes to the groin, weight bearing in a walking cast is allowed at the end of 8 weeks. Twelve weeks after operation the cast is removed, and the leg is protected by a leather lacer for 6 to 8 months.

Epiphyseal arrest may be employed to equalize leg length, and tarsal arthrodeses to correct the valgus deformity of the foot. Epiphyseal arrest should not be done unless there is some assurance that most of the inequality of length can be corrected. If a patient must wear a prosthesis because of shortening existing even after epiphyseal arthrodesis, then the loss of height produced by the procedure is not justified. Severe bowing of the tibia may require osteotomy to gain some length and also to overcome some of the equinus deformity of the foot. Coventry and Johnson point out that when osteotomy is considered, lengthening or division of the posterior and lateral structures of the leg is necessary in order to achieve the correction. Healing at the osteotomy site usually occurs without delay or complication.

Amputation in some instances is the procedure of choice from the viewpoints of better function and cosmetic appearance. As noted previously when possible the procedure should be delayed until skeletal maturation is attained. However, in some cases it may be justified even in growing children provided that function and weight bearing can be improved in order to avoid extreme loss of growth which is the usual sequel of nonweight bearing. In children the amputation of choice is one performed through the knee joint without disturbing the distal epiphysis of the femur.



FIG. 215 Congenital genu recurvatum. Observe the transverse skin creases in the anterior aspect of the knee, the condyles of the femur project into the popliteal space.

#### CONGENITAL GENU RECURVATUM

This anomaly is characterized by extreme hyperextension of the tibia on the femur, in severe cases a true dislocation of the knee exists, with the tibia lying in front of the femur (Fig. 215). The causative agent responsible for the deformity is not known; however, Middleton has advanced a very plausible theory. He is of the opinion that degeneration of the quadriceps muscle occurs in utero (myodystrophila foetalis), this is followed by contracture

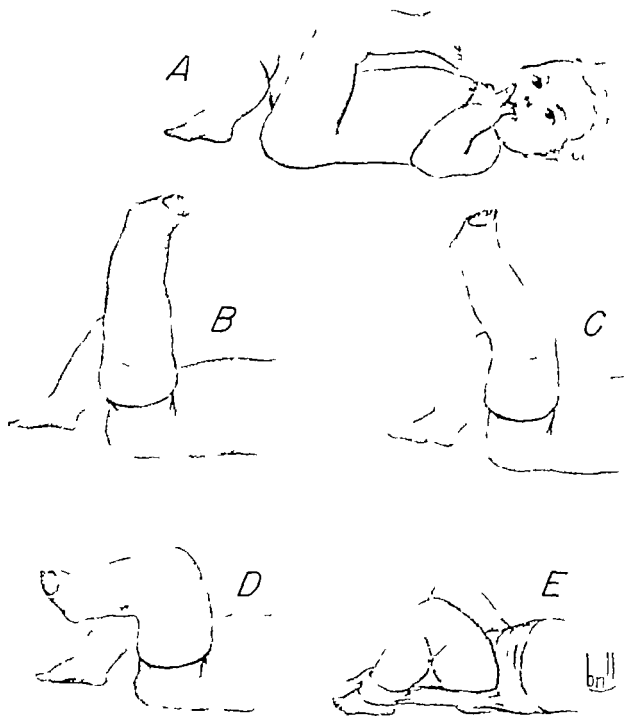


FIG. 216 Correction of genu recurvatum by successive casts and method of maintaining the correction.

of the muscle mass on the anterior aspect of the leg which during intra-uterine growth pulls the knee into a position of recurvation

Physical examination reveals that the knee is fixed in hyperextension attempts

made to flex the joint are opposed by an elastic resistance offered by the extensor apparatus. Several transverse skin creases are discernible on the anterior aspect of the knee joint and the patella may be under developed or absent Palpation of the poste

rior surface of the joint discloses prominent femoral condyles projecting into the popliteal space and taut hamstring muscles. Frequently, the anomaly coexists with other contractures or skeletal deformities, such as congenital dislocation of the hips clubfoot and clubhand

#### MANAGEMENT

The aim of the treatment is to effect sufficient stretching of the quadriceps muscle to permit anatomic repositioning of the articular surface of the tibia in relation to that of the femur. Treatment should begin immediately after birth. In mild cases stretching of the quadriceps may be achieved by successive casts, with the application of each cast the degree of flexion in the knee joint is increased gradually. In the beginning the process should be executed gently and slowly in order to avoid injury to the epiphyses. After maximum flexion is attained, recurrence of the deformity is prevented by a strap extending from an anklet to a pelvic band (Fig 216). This method should be tried in children under 2 years of age.

In severe deformities which fail to respond to manipulative measures or in cases which show a marked tendency to relapse surgical intervention is indicated to overcome the contracture. The quadriceps tendon is lengthened by a Z-shaped incision and the knee is forced into the maximum amount of flexion attainable without inflicting damage to the epiphyses.

Correction is maintained by a plaster cast holding the knee at 90° flexion. After 8 to 10 weeks the cast is removed, and physical measures are instituted to restore active flexion and extension. There is a strong tendency toward recurrence of the deformity. This is prevented by fitting the child with a brace which locks just short of complete extension. The appliance not only prevents recurrence of the recurvatum deformity but also protects the limb from developing a knock knee deformity. The

brace should be employed until there is clinical evidence that a relapse will not occur, this may mean wearing the appliance for several years. Further protection is provided by wearing night splints to maintain the corrected position. At best, the ultimate functional result attained is far from that of the normal limb.

### STIFF KNEE SUBSEQUENT TO INJURIES OF OR ABOUT THE KNEE JOINT

#### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Major injuries inflicted on the knee joint or at a distance to the joint are frequently responsible for varying degrees of stiffness in the articulation. In many instances, particularly in fractures of the femur, the ensuing disability is a serious handicap to the patient. In order to prevent stiffness and to treat adequately existing flexion deformities comprehension of the functional mechanics of the knee joint is essential. Rhythmic normal flexion and extension is possible because of the following prime factors

- 1 During flexion the massive quadriceps apparatus is capable of considerable lengthening, sufficient to allow full flexion of the joint. Also during extension this apparatus exhibits marked powers of contractibility sufficient to achieve full extension of the lower leg even against great resistance. Any interference with this mechanism may restrict the full excursion of the quadriceps, producing varying degrees of limited motion at the knee joint. It becomes apparent that adhesions binding the quadriceps to the shaft of the femur severely impede normal function of this muscle mass. Also intramuscular fibrosis not only binds the muscle to the surrounding tissues but also actually reduces its elasticity, thereby becoming an important factor in causing stiffness of the knee joint.

- 2 Normal function of the quadriceps depends upon the integrity of sliding mech-



FIG 217 (*Left*) Multiple surgical scars of the thigh. The two uppermost incisions are responsible for fixation of the quadriceps in this instance (*Right*) The patient had only  $20^{\circ}$  of motion in the joint (from  $170^{\circ}$  to  $150^{\circ}$ ) The lower scar is properly placed (between the vastus lateralis and the biceps femoris muscles)

anisms in and about the knee joint. The quadriceps is enveloped in a dense fibrous sheath (fasciae of the thigh) which permits the muscle to glide freely within it. Adhesions between this structure and the quadriceps restrict the free movements of the latter. This is observed frequently in cases subjected to surgery with malplaced incisional scars. Scars on the anterior or the anterolateral aspect of the thigh are particularly prone to restrict the normal mobility of the quadriceps (Fig 217). When possible incisions should be made in line with natural muscle planes such as between the vastus lateralis and the biceps femoris muscles. As previously recorded the tibial collateral ligament moves forward on the femoral and the tibial condyles during extension and backward during flexion. Obliteration partial or complete of this mechanism is reflected in restricted motion at the knee joint.

3 The knee joint is endowed with the largest synovial cavity in the body. This is necessary in order to permit it a great arc of motion. Essentially it provides a gliding mechanism for the quadriceps apparatus

especially the patella. The suprapatellar pouch is the most important portion of this synovial cavity. Adhesion formations in the cavity particularly in the suprapatellar pouch and in the medial and the lateral compartments impede the free excursion of the extensor apparatus and hence restrict movements of the joint.

4 The marked laxity of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue about the knee enhances free movements of the joint. Extensive scar formation implicating these structures such as results from burns and infected wounds tends to limit the movements of the joint.

In the light of the aforementioned observations it becomes obvious that in the management of major traumas to or about the knee joint a concerted effort must be made to preserve the integrity of the quadriceps mechanisms and its gliding mechanisms. This is achieved best by measures which will maintain or restore rapidly normal quadriceps power and volume and prevent the formation of adhesions in the gliding mechanisms. In order to achieve this goal one must be familiar with certain

clinical truths. Prolonged immobilization is not the prime factor responsible for stiffness in the knee joint. This is attested by the observation that as a rule fractures of the tibia in which union is delayed for 6 months or more do not result in persistent restriction of flexion. Also, in severe ligamentous injuries of the knee joint without osseous involvement which have been immobilized for 10 weeks or more, restoration of good function is the rule. Sir Robert Jones observed the surprisingly good results attained following major injuries to the ligaments in complete dislocation of the knee joint when treated by plaster immobilization. However, in fractures of the femur lesser periods of immobilization invariably result in pronounced stiffness; return of flexion is slow and permanent dysfunction ensues in a large number of the cases. It becomes apparent that immobilization per se and injuries of the intra-articular and the extra-articular structures without fractures of the femur play only a minor role in producing stiffness and that these obstacles can be overcome readily. On the other hand, fractures of the femur are associated with factors which may resist all known mechanical methods to attain good motion at the knee joint. Essentially this factor is the formation of adhesions within the deep layers of the quadriceps, especially the vastus intermedius which bind the extensor apparatus to the shaft of the femur. Charnley points out that the extent of the fibrosis in the quadriceps and adhesion to the underlying bone is predicated upon the rapidity of union at the site of fracture. If bony union occurs quickly, an excellent range of motion may be anticipated; this is also true in cases treated with the knee immobilized completely. This worker noted some significant observations in a series of 34 fractures of the femur in which movement was not begun until clinical evidence of bony union was discernible. The cases with demonstrable union at or before 8 weeks exhibited

an average range of motion of  $114.1^{\circ}$  6 months after the fracture. Those showing clinical bony union after 8 weeks (average time was 15.3 weeks) disclosed an average range of motion of  $74.5^{\circ}$  6 months after fracture. One year after fracture the average range in the first group was  $129.1^{\circ}$  and in the second  $113.5^{\circ}$ . It is interesting to note in this study that early motion does not ensure restoration of full knee motion; full flexion depends on complete absorption of fibrous tissue situated in the vicinity of the fracture site. With absorption of the binding adhesions, the quadriceps is free to permit full flexion.

The above study allows one to conclude that the "ultimate range of motion depends upon two factors: a mechanical factor related to mobilization by physical processes and a biologic factor relating to the amount of scar tissue produced in the quadriceps." During the reparative process the biologic factor governs the fate and the disposition of the tissues of repair. In some cases bony union progresses rapidly, and bony callus is discernible early (3 or 4 weeks) by roentgenographic study. In these cases, solid, bony union occurs early, and good knee motion is achieved readily. It appears that abundance of bony callus is associated with minimal fixation of the quadriceps to the underlying bone. On the other hand, failure to develop bony callus within the first 6 weeks after fracture indicates that nature is attempting to effect union of the fragments by mature fibrous tissue which implicates the deep components of the quadriceps binding them to the shaft of the femur. The explanation for this frustrated attempt at repair is not understood, but it is reasonable to conclude that it is the same mechanism acting in delayed union. When bony union is ultimately attained in these cases, the larger proportion of them exhibit severe impairment of motion, regardless of whether mechanical measures were employed early in the treatment to mobilize the knee joint.



However, one must not conclude from the above observations that early motion and active exercises are prejudicial to good function. Active muscle contractions are necessary to maintain metabolism of the tissues of the affected limb at an optimum level; also, severe quadriceps atrophy is prevented and the neuromuscular mechanism is not lost. There is sufficient clinical evidence to show that preservation of tone and volume of the musculature of the leg enhances rapid return of knee flexion. Also, active motion at the knee joint during treatment of fracture of the femur keeps the formation of intra-articular adhesions at a minimum and ensures mobility of the patella, a feature essential to attain rapidly full flexion.

#### SAFEGUARDS AGAINST LOSS OF FLEXION

The goal in the treatment of fractures of

the femur, like fractures elsewhere in the body, is to attain bony union and to restore full function of the limb and of the body as a whole in the shortest period of time possible. In the case of fractures of the femur after union is attained, return to normalcy of the lower limb is governed by the extent of motion in the knee joint. A restricted painful arc of motion particularly if full extension is lacking is a serious disability. In turn, knee motion is governed in a large measure by the rapidity of bony union—as noted previously, early bony callus is associated with attainment of rapid and satisfactory range of motion, whereas delayed union invariably is followed by marked restriction of motion. It becomes apparent that a concerted effort should be made to promote the formation of early callus. In a large measure this is influenced by the choice of treatment made

FIG. 218 (*Left*) Fracture of the shaft of the femur at its middle treated by intramedullary nailing. The patient was 32 years old. (*Right*) Observe the range of active extension and flexion 3 weeks postoperatively.



by the surgeon and the avoidance of many pitfalls which tend to favor delayed union

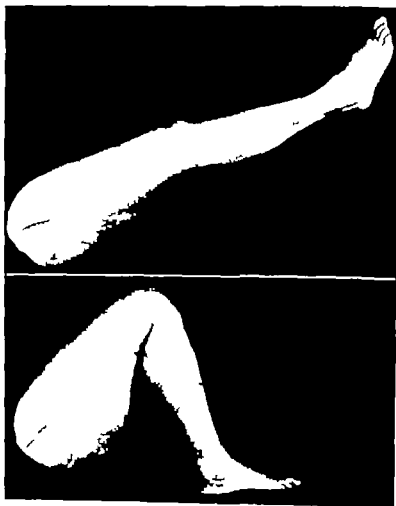
#### CORRECT CHOICE OF METHODS TO TREAT FRACTURES OF THE FEMUR

Every fracture of the femur presents different problems it is of prime importance that the method of treatment chosen meet the requirements of the individual case. In the younger age groups, particularly adolescents and young adults, the powers of osteogenesis are extremely active, and the joints of the affected limb are free of degenerative changes however in patients past middle life and in the elderly, delayed union is not uncommon, and degenerative alterations in the joints are observed frequently. The management of supracondylar and condylar fractures of the femur is

described in Chapter 9, *Fractures and Wounds About the Knee Joint*

Fractures of the middle third of the femur occurring in the young adult are best treated with skeletal traction with the limb balanced in a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment. The author prefers skeletal traction made by a threaded wire passing beneath the tibial tubercle. The efficacy of this method should be determined within the first 10 days. If it becomes obvious that satisfactory alignment and apposition of the fragments is not possible hence precluding the formation of early bony callus then immediate surgical intervention must be considered. Failure to recognize early the inadequacy of one method must be condemned. If several months are allowed to elapse before deciding that another method of treatment is more desirable, much valuable time is lost. Delayed heal-

FIG 219 (*Left*) Upper shaft fracture in a female, aged 69, treated by intramedullary nailing. Observe the callus formation at the end of 6 weeks and the degenerative changes in the hip. Similar changes are present in the knee joint. (*Right*) Range of active extension and flexion 6 weeks postoperatively.



ing and prolonged immobilization ensures varying degrees of permanent restriction of flexion. The above principle is applicable to all types of fractures of the femur. Plating of a femoral fracture in this region is no longer employed by the author; this method not only inflicts considerable surgical trauma to the fracture site but in addition does not eliminate prolonged immobilization. In these cases, if no contra-indications exist, insertion of a Kuntschner nail is more desirable. This method ensures adequate fixation and alignment of the fragments, permits early ambulation of the patient, favors early formation of bony callus and enhances rapid return of knee motion. In properly selected cases and in operations performed by competent surgeons, the value of intramedullary nailing cannot be questioned. In the older age groups it is the method of choice provided that there are no complicating factors (Fig 218). It is amazing how little dysfunction ensues when this method is used, even in patients with moderate degenerative changes in the knee joint. The reason is apparent: the method permits continuance of normal joint function, a factor essential in preventing stiffness and loss of flexion. Clinical experience teaches that immobilization of the knee joint afflicted with degenerative arthritis invariably is followed by restricted motion which in many instances may be permanent.

Fractures of the upper third are notorious for the difficulty they present in attaining and maintaining satisfactory reduction by the orthodox closed methods. In all adults the preferred method is intramedullary nailing. In this category of cases plates are not applied for the same reasons recorded in the discussion of fractures of the middle third of the femur (Fig 219).

The treatment of fractures of the femoral neck and the trochanteric region by internal fixation permits early ambulation of the patient and allows normal motion at the knee joint. These features outweigh those

offered in favor of treatment by continuous traction or immobilization in a plaster spica. Continuance of normal joint motion at the knee is of special significance in these cases because the patients are advanced in years and degenerative abnormalities of varying severity in all joints, especially the knees and the hips, are invariably present. Moreover, this age group tolerates poorly prolonged immobilization whether it be by plaster or continuous traction.

#### EARLY MOBILIZATION OF THE LIMB

Regardless of the method of treatment adopted, active contraction of the muscles of the thigh and the calf should be instituted early and continued on a regulated regimen throughout the entire course of treatment. By so doing extensive muscle atrophy and loss of power in the aforementioned muscles, especially the quadriceps, is prevented; also the gliding mechanism of the patella is preserved. If the treatment chosen makes the patella accessible the patella should be moved passively in all directions by the patient for 3 to 5 minutes on the hour throughout the day.

Certain methods of treatment lend themselves to early knee flexion exercises; this is especially true of intramedullary nailing and the application of a plate. Also after reduction and stabilization of the fragments the Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment allows early mobilization of the knee joint. Flexion exercises always should be started from the extended position and executed conscientiously under direction and supervision until the patient can be trusted to assume the responsibility of the program. At all times the exercises should be performed within the tolerance of the patient and forceful passive maneuvers should be avoided; these tend to precipitate local tissue reactions in and around the knee joint which defeat the aims of the treatment. Passive stretching under anesthesia during the early stage of healing in

variably produces soft tissue damage which is followed by diminution of the arc of motion present prior to manipulation and retards rehabilitation of the patient.

### SURGICAL PROCEDURES

In the event that open reduction and fixation of fractures of the femur are deemed the method of choice, and in cases requiring bone grafting to attain bony healing the surgical procedures should be so conceived that minimal damage is inflicted to the quadriceps apparatus and its gliding mechanisms. It is not uncommon to encounter cases in which the surgeon has violated the very basic principles of surgery in an effort to expose the fracture site or the seat of pathology in the femur. Operations should be so designed that the bone is exposed by separating muscle planes rather than by cutting through muscle bellies. The latter method causes the formation of scar tissue in the muscles fixing these structures to one another and to underlying bone. No surgeon who has the slightest regard for the integrity of the quadriceps will employ an anterior incision to expose the femur. The unfortunate victim of this procedure struggles many months to attain a few degrees of flexion motion in the knee joint, and in most instances the ultimate result is far from acceptable. In such cases if union is delayed demanding prolonged immobilization the resulting dysfunction is permanent and severe (Fig. 217). The posterolateral incision provides adequate exposure of the femur without cutting through muscle masses. The bone is exposed in the interval between the biceps femoris and the vastus lateralis.

Care should be executed to prevent hemorrhage in the muscles. This is best achieved by subperiosteal stripping; on the other hand the extent of periosteal stripping should not be extensive for it impairs the blood supply of the bone ends and favors delayed union. Rough handling and

strong and prolonged traction of muscles is indefensible, such disregard for tissue favors extensive formation of scar tissue.

When possible, the suprapatellar pouch should be preserved and spared unnecessary surgical trauma. Laceration of and hemorrhage into this synovial pouch enhances the formation of intracapsular and extracapsular adhesions which limit the normal excursion of the patella on the anterior surface of the femur. The same precautions noted above should be taken when the femur is exposed for the purpose of eradicating some pathologic process such as a bone cyst or an osteomyelitic area.

If open methods are adopted for treatment of fracture of the femur the means of internal fixation should provide immediately sufficient stability to permit early mobilization of the knee. Intramedullary fixation meets this requirement and should be the method of choice. Also, this method may be employed in combination with bone grafting of the fracture site. As a rule when a decision is made to implant a bone graft across the fracture site, marked loss of flexion at the knee joint is present, resulting from prolonged immobilization of the limb and fixation of the quadriceps to the shaft of the femur. In such cases the ideal method of treatment is intramedullary nailing with application of numerous strips of cancellous bone across the fracture site encircling the entire circumference of the shaft. This method precludes further immobilization and facilitates institution of exercises designed to restore joint function. The numerous excellent results recorded in the literature obtained by this method or a modification of it attests its efficiency.

### MANAGEMENT

Stiffness and restriction of flexion subsequent to minor injuries of the knee joint and following surgical procedures, such as removal of loose bodies, meniscectomy and repair of the collateral ligaments, are usu-

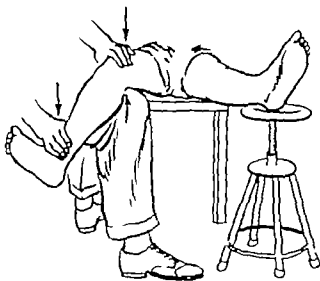


FIG 220 Method employed to manipulate the knee joint.

ally amenable to simple measures designed to maintain good muscle power, tone and neuromuscular co-ordination. The regimen employed to achieve full restoration of knee function in these cases is recorded in Chapter 6 'Disorders of the Extensor Apparatus of the Knee Joint.'

#### MANIPULATION

*Manipulative therapy is recognized as a valuable method to improve joint motion provided that it is performed in properly selected cases. Failure to evaluate adequately the cases subjected to this form of treatment is responsible for the many poor results attained and in some instances for further loss of motion. The procedure is particularly indicated in cases of traumatic lesions with mild or moderate fibrosis of the capsular and the extra articular tissues with minimal formation of scar tissue in the deep components of the quadriceps and with little or no implication of the intra articular tissues. It is of doubtful value in cases with severe scarring of the quadriceps muscle especially the vastus intermedius component which is bound to the shaft of the femur by tough, inelastic adhesions or in cases with the extensive fibrosis in the suprapatellar pouch and in the tissues lat*

*eral to the patella. In the latter instance the patella is fixed firmly to the femur the surrounding adhesions and is capable of very little upward or lateral mobility. In cases previously recorded, manipulation should be considered during the active reparative phase following injury. If employed at this time violent tissue reaction invariably ensues which intensifies fibroblastic proliferation and deters recovery. Roentgenographic studies disclose extensive osteoporosis of the bony elements; manipulative maneuvers are contraindicated. In such instances the strength of the adhesions may be greater than the resistance offered by osteoporotic bones. Fracture of the patella or crushing of the articular surface may occur. Fractures may also occur when the procedure is executed with extreme care.*

*Occasionally synovectomy performed for villonodular synovitis, osteochondritis or chronic synovitis of the knee joint is followed by loss of flexion in spite of adequate measures instituted early to restore joint motion. If no increase is noted in the arc of flexion after a 6-week period of intensive exercises and physical therapy manipulative therapy is indicated. Frequently this is followed by rapid return of flexion.*

#### TECHNIC

*Regardless of the method employed, the maneuvers should be executed gently and always under control of the surgeon. "Pump-handle" methods are indefensible. Complete muscular relaxation is a prerequisite; this is achieved best by a general anesthesia. Pentothol Sodium is a valuable agent for this purpose. The following method is preferred by the author (FIG 220).*

*The patient is placed on a table in the supine position and a general anesthetic agent is administered. The patient is then drawn toward the foot of the table until the lower ends of the femora extend from 6 to 8 in. beyond the end of the table. To man*

ulate the right knee the surgeon places his left thigh with the foot, resting on a low stool, immediately in the popliteal space so that the patient's lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia rest on the anterior surface of his thigh. Next he grasps the anterior surface of the lower thigh immediately above the patella with his left hand and grasps the patient's ankle with his right hand. Flexion of the joint is achieved by making downward pressure on the lower leg at the same time that the femur is protected by downward pressure made by the surgeon's left hand and upward pressure made by his thigh. The pressure at all times should be steady and under control. In some instances the resistance to flexion is suddenly released with an audible snap, and then the knee can be flexed completely with very little force. In other cases a fine crackling is felt and heard throughout the entire manipulation. In the latter cases one must assume that the loss of flexion is due to diffuse intra articular fibrosis. Frequently manipulation of these cases is followed by severe tissue reaction which may terminate in more extensive fibrous tissue formation. Better results are attained in such cases when repeated gentle manipulations are performed at intervals of 6 to 8 weeks. In the former group, one manipulation usually suffices to initiate restoration of knee flexion.

The success of manipulation therapy depends totally on the willingness of the patient to assume the responsibility of the execution of a stringent regimen comprising primarily active exercises designed to increase flexion and quadriceps power. The manipulation per se is only the first step toward attainment of satisfactory flexion. Cases which are not expected to produce severe postmanipulative reactions at the termination of the procedure are treated simply by the application of an elastic compression bandage and active motion on a regulated schedule is started the following day. As a rule repeated manipulations

are not required in these cases. Physical therapy in the form of whirlpool baths, radiant heat and gentle massage to the muscles of the thigh and the calf add to the comfort of the patient. Cases in which a violent tissue reaction is inevitable following manipulation are put at rest for 2 or 3 days. The limb is fixed in a well padded posterior plaster splint, holding the knee within a few degrees short of the range obtained by manipulation, continuous hot fomentations are applied throughout this period of enforced rest. Generally, at the end of 2 or 3 days the acute reaction has subsided sufficiently to institute active motion at the knee joint. Depending upon the tolerance of the patient, active exercises should be increased progressively in frequency and intensity. The management is essentially the same as that described for cases of lesser severity. If after 5 or 6 weeks of intensive therapy the range of motion is still not acceptable and further increase in the range of movement by conservative measures is not likely to occur, the manipulative process may be repeated. Recently, in the severe cases, the author has injected Hydrocortone (1 cc.) into the joint following the manipulation and every fourth day. It appears that the joint reaction is not so severe, and motion returns with greater ease than in cases in which the agent is not employed. Generally, 3 injections suffice.

#### OPERATIVE MEASURES

As noted previously, the most significant factor blocking flexion following severe injuries such as fractures of the femur, is fibrosis in the deep components of the quadriceps. Although, firm adhesions in the lateral expansions of the quadriceps mechanism and in the suprapatellar pouch may bind the patella to the femur, these are of secondary importance. In such cases clinical assessment discloses that conservative and manipulative therapy are futile and that more radical means are necessary to attain a satisfactory range of flexion. The

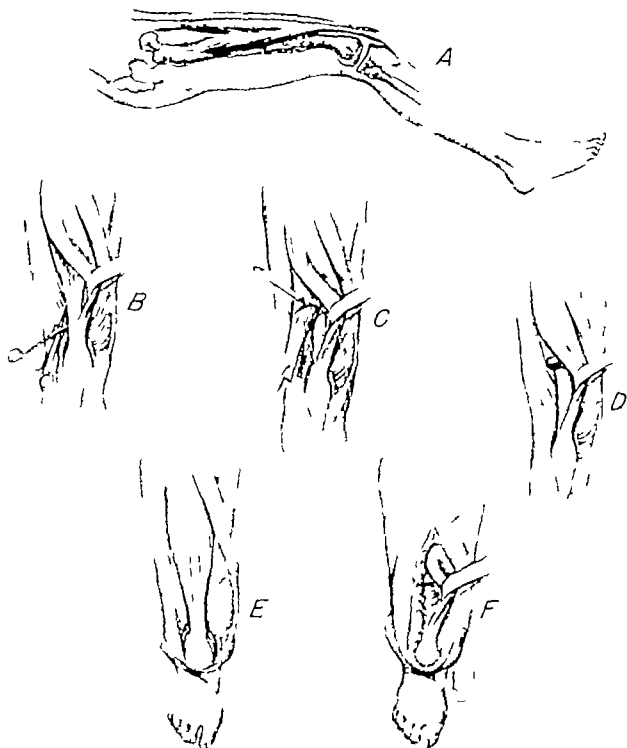


FIG. 221 Thompson's technic of lengthening the quadriceps apparatus

more popular operations to increase flexion are those described by Bennett, Thompson, McKeever and Smillie. McKeever's procedure was designed primarily to prevent formation of adhesions following synovectomy. As with manipulation the aforementioned surgical procedures do not ensure a

satisfactory return of flexion without a concerted effort on the part of the patient to execute diligently a prescribed program conceived to restore an acceptable range of movement in the knee joint. Without the co-operation and determination of the patient the best technically conceived opera-

tion is doomed to failure. For cases with advanced scar tissue formation in the deep components of the quadriceps in which manipulation cannot overcome the barriers to normal flexion the author prefers Thompson's operation to increase flexion.

**Thompson's Quadricepsplasty** Essentially, the procedure consists of excision of the scar tissue in the quadriceps muscle (as a rule the greater portion of the vastus intermedius is removed) and leaving the rectus femoris intact without lengthening it. The procedure frees the remaining normal muscle tissue to function with minimum impediment. The method is designed for cases having sustained severe injuries to the femur (particularly the lower third) or to the muscles of the thigh or to both without implication of the components of the joint. Compound fracture of the femur, especially those resulting from bullet or shrapnel injuries are frequently associated with marked disruption of the muscles and other soft tissues of the thigh. In these cases the extensive scarring in the muscles is the result of the original injury and also of the fibrosis incident to delayed healing and prolonged immobilization of the limb. The presence of infection enhances still further the intensity of the fibroblastic process. Pronounced loss of flexion is the rule in many of these cases. Thompson points out that the degree of success in this operation depends upon an intact rectus femoris muscle, the degree to which it can be mobilized and freed from the scarred nonextensible portions of the quadriceps mechanism, and the extent to which the rectus femoris can be developed by active progressive exercises and normal use.

**TECHNIC (Fig. 221)** The extensor apparatus is exposed by an anterior incision which extends from the junction of the upper and the middle thirds of the thigh to the lower pole of the patella. After the fascia is exposed it is divided on either side of the rectus femoris from the upper third of the thigh downward parallel to

the lateral margins of the rectus femoris. The line of dissection on either side of the rectus femoris is continued deeply in the intervals between the rectus femoris and the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis (Fig. 221 B). This step should mobilize completely the rectus femoris from both vasti; next, the vasti are freed and permitted to fall toward their respective sides. The lateral intermuscular incisions are continued distally on either side of the patella, dividing the contracted capsule and the lateral expansions of the quadriceps aponeurosis (Fig. 221 B). Usually, the vastus intermedius comprises a mass of dense mature fibrous tissue, binding firmly the under surface of the rectus femoris and the patella to the anterior surface of the femur (Fig. 221 A). By sharp dissection the scar tissue is excised completely, this exposes the anterior surface of the femur except for a layer of fibrous and periosteal tissue (Fig. 221 C, D). Occasionally, in cases with extensive fibrosis in the anterior aspect of the thigh resulting from compound wounds, it is necessary to reconstruct a rectus tendon by longitudinal cuts through the scar tissue situated in the distal third of the thigh. At the termination of this step the rectus femoris is mobilized sufficiently and possesses enough elasticity (especially its upper normal position) to permit the leg to flex slightly beyond a right angle by gentle manipulation (Fig. 221 E). The remaining intra-articular adhesions are overcome readily by this last maneuver.

In the event that the vasti are not impaired seriously by scar tissue, they are attached to the margins of the rectus femoris as far distally as the junction of the middle and the lower thirds of the thigh; the capsule of the joint is left open. If the vasti are seriously damaged and scarred they are isolated from the rectus femoris by suturing the subcutaneous tissue and fat to the anterior surface of the femur, on one side or the other of the rectus (Fig. 221 F), this produces a new intermuscular



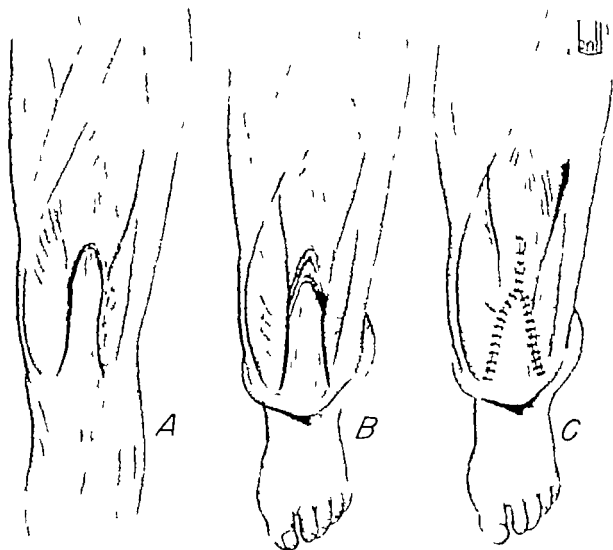


FIG. 222 Bennett's method to lengthen the quadriceps apparatus

septum which separates the scarred muscle from the remaining quadriceps apparatus.

The original technic may be modified at this point by interposing between the femur the scarred muscles and the rectus femoris some material which will preserve the gliding mechanism of the remaining extensor apparatus. Cellophane has been used by some workers; the author has employed nylon in one case which attained an excellent range of flexion. Each case presents its own peculiar problems, and the technic must be modified accordingly. Because the vastus medialis plays such a

pertinent role in the over-all performance of the quadriceps every effort possible should be made to salvage and incorporate this muscle in the ultimate extensor mechanism reconstructed.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT** At the termination of the operation an elastic compression bandage is applied and the limb is suspended in a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment. Active flexion and extension exercises are started immediately. After 48 hours the compression bandage is removed and an Ace bandage is applied next to the skin except for a small sterile

gauze dressing covering the incision. Exercises are performed under supervision on a regulated program and within the patient's tolerance of pain. Many of these patients have as much as 90° flexion at the end of 3 weeks when they are removed from the suspension apparatus. Ambulation is allowed on crutches, but weight bearing on the affected limb is not permitted for at least 3 more weeks. Usually at the end of this period the strength in the extensor mechanism is sufficient to allow protected weight bearing without subjecting the supporting structures of the knee joint to abnormal strains incident to function.

**Bennett's Operation** (Fig 222) In the hands of the author this procedure has not given the satisfactory results attained by the Thompson procedure. Essentially, the quadriceps apparatus is lengthened by releasing the quadriceps tendon from all its muscular attachments and reattached to a lower level.

**TECHNIC** A straight anterior skin incision is made from the junction of the lower and the middle thirds of the thigh to the middle of the patella. The subcutaneous tissue and fascia are divided in the same line. The quadriceps tendon is identified and released by longitudinal cuts on each side of the tendinous portion of the rectus femoris (Fig 222 A). The lateral incisions are deepened to include the tendinous portion of the vastus intermedius and to separate the combined rectus femoris and vastus intermedius from the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis. At the level of the upper portion of the suprapatellar pouch the parallel incisions are joined by a transverse incision (Fig 222 B). By sharp dissection the tendon mass is freed from the underlying tissue until it is detached completely. Next an attempt is made to flex the knee joint; all intra articular adhesions which tend to obstruct flexion are severed. With the knee flexed fully the tendon is reattached to the surrounding muscles at a point approximately 1 inch or more below

its original attachment (Fig 222 C). The postoperative management is similar to that described for Thompson's operation.

**Smillie's Method.** This procedure is primarily designed for cases in which the scar tissue in the lateral expansions and in the suprapatellar pouch is of such a nature that it precludes manipulative methods to increase flexion at the knee joint. Also, the extent of fibrosis which is invariably present in the quadriceps is not of serious proportions. In properly selected cases the procedure should increase the range of flexion from 45° to 90°. Smillie warns against performing the procedure (1) in cases exhibiting an active pathologic process, (2) during the early stages of recovery (the range of motion must be stationary for at least 6 weeks), (3) in a joint still exhibiting local tissue reaction, such as swelling and increased local temperature, (4) in cases with demonstrable roentgenographic evidence of decalcification in the bony elements of the joint and (5) in cases of incomplete bony healing at the site of fracture in the femur.

**TECHNIC** The operation is performed with a tourniquet applied high on the thigh and the extremity is draped separately to permit free manipulation of the leg by the surgeon. With the knee flexed to the limit of passive movement, the surgeon attempts to locate the site of the fibrous bands by manipulation. After putting on a fresh pair of gloves, two parallel incisions are made on either side of the superior pole of the patella. The incisions measure approximately 3½ to 4 cm. The joint capsule is divided, and the index finger is inserted into the joint cavity first through one and then through the other incision, the adhesions extending to the femur and the tibia are localized by the palpating finger and then divided. Next, the finger explores the suprapatellar pouch and adhesions found in this region are also divided. With the completion of the last step usually the joint can be flexed to a right angle or be

yond Small friable adhesions are broken by the manipulation. The wound is closed in layers, and a compression bandage is applied, fixing the extremity in flexion just short of the arc obtained by the above operation. Further immobilization is attained by the application of molded plaster splint to the flexor surface of the compression bandage. Now the tourniquet is released.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT** Essentially, the postoperative treatment is similar to that described after manipulative methods are employed. Smillie points out that the extent of improvement varies from  $10^{\circ}$  to  $90^{\circ}$ , depending upon the nature of the pathologic process and the co-operation and the endurance of the patient. If after a gain of  $30^{\circ}$  or  $40^{\circ}$  of flexion no further progress is attained, the procedure may be repeated.

**McKeever's Method.** Following synovectomy, such as is performed in rheuma-

toid or mixed arthritis or in the cases of villonodular synovitis and osteochondromatosis frequently varying degrees of loss of flexion ensue. In many cases the range of motion finally achieved represents the result of exhausting effort and determination on the part of the patient. The block to flexion is not caused by fibrosis in the deep component of the quadriceps but is due to numerous firm adhesions in the suprapatellar pouch in the lateral compartments of the joint and in the lateral expansions of the quadriceps mechanisms. The patellofemoral gliding mechanism is obliterated by adhesions binding the patella to the anterior surface of the femur. McKeever points out that in such cases the insertion of an interposition membrane between raw surfaces modifies the formation of scar tissue so that adhesions of the two surfaces is prevented. He is of the opinion that the purpose of the membrane is achieved in a few days, and if one desires it may be removed

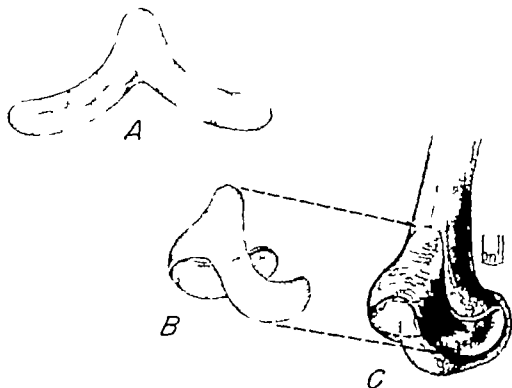


FIG. 223 D McKeever's method of preventing adhesions following synovectomy. Cellophane or nylon may be used as the interposition membrane.

In the series reported by this worker the membrane was left in situ, cellophane was used as the interposition membrane.

**TECHNIC** (Fig 223) The joint cavity is exposed through a medial parapatellar incision, and a synovectomy is performed in the usual manner. A piece of cellophane, previously sterilized in an autoclave, is cut in a pattern to fit the suprapatellar pouch and extends laterally and medially on either side of the femoral condyles beneath the collateral ligaments where they cross the joint space (Fig 223 A, B, C). Fixation of the membrane is not deemed necessary. The wound is closed in layers, and a compression bandage is applied.

A strict postoperative program in rehabilitation was not instituted in McKeever's case. In all cases a rapid and satisfactory restoration of flexion and powerful extension ensued. These results have prompted the author to use nylon as the interposition membrane following synovectomy in the last 8 cases. The membrane is made secure by fine interrupted cotton sutures. A rapid return of painless motion was noted in each instance. The postoperative management in these cases was facilitated by placing the limb in balanced suspension in a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment. In addition, Hydrocortone (1 cc.) was injected into the suprapatellar pouch at the termination of the operation and a regulated regimen of progressive exercises was instituted. Hydrocortone was instilled into the joint every third day following the operation for 3 injections.

#### FLEXION CONTRACTURES FOLLOWING INJURIES TO OR IN THE REGION OF THE KNEE JOINT

Flexion contractures of varying degrees are prone to occur following injuries to the knee joint, fractures in, above or below the knee joint and intra articular surgical procedures. Deformities following surgical procedures such as meniscectomy or expro-

ratory incisions can be prevented by maintaining at all times quadriceps power at a high level of efficiency. It is true that some atrophy and loss of power of the extensor apparatus is inevitable after every operation on the knee joint nevertheless by judicious exercises before and after the operation the amount of power lost is maintained at a minimum, and restoration to normalcy is achieved rapidly. Clinical experience teaches that rapid development of the quadriceps, particularly the vastus medialis, is the prime single factor in prophylaxis of flexion deformities and in cases of short duration before permanent tissue alterations have occurred, this same factor is of utmost importance in overcoming the deformities. Loss of extension is also encountered frequently following synovectomy of the knee joint. Here as above the same factors prevail, except that the subsequent fibrosis in the suprapatellar pouch and the lateral compartments of the knee may restrict the normal excursion of the patella, producing limited flexion and extension short of  $180^\circ$ . Here, as in the case of other operative procedures, early restoration of quadriceps control and power is essential as a preventive and corrective measure. Prolonged immobilization of the knee in varying degrees of flexion for fractures implicating the femur or the tibia is a common causative agent for flexion deformities. As noted in the chapter dealing with the specific fractures, immobilization of the knee must be maintained no longer than is necessary to ensure stability of the fragments. If continued beyond this point, resistance and permanent deformities may be the penalty.

Not infrequently deformities are caused by incorrect positioning of the limb in bed following a surgical procedure of the knee. Placing a pillow under the knee joint is a common error. Also the author has observed many times loss of extension in the knees of elderly people who for some reason not related to the joints are confined to bed.

for several weeks. Most of these patients have varying degrees of degenerative alterations in the knee joint. If through neglect they are allowed to assume positions of flexion contractures of the knees may result.

#### MANAGEMENT OF EARLY FLEXION DEFORMITIES

As previously recorded in the majority of operative cases loss of extension can be prevented by proper management and understanding of the significance of a powerful vastus medialis in the role of the extensor mechanism. When early cases are encountered in which as yet no structural shortening of the posterior tissues and muscles have occurred, often a program of intensive quadriceps exercises against increasing loads will overcome the flexion contracture. Those cases which fail to respond may be corrected by traction of the Buck's extension type; to this is added the aforementioned quadriceps regimen.

Cases of longer duration may not be amenable to these simple conservative measures. The degree of fibrosis and shortening which has occurred in the posterior tissues is sufficient to resist the action of the extensor apparatus and even traction. These cases may be corrected by manipulation under anesthesia followed by the application of a posterior molded plaster splint to retain the correction. After the reaction of the manipulation has subsided quadriceps exercises against increasing resistance are begun. The posterior splint is maintained until the quadriceps is sufficiently strong to preclude a recurrence of the deformity.

#### RESISTANT FLEXION DEFORMITIES

The alterations in the posterior portion of the capsule, hamstring muscles and fascia lata may be advanced to the point that the aforementioned methods may not be effective. When the deformity has existed for a prolonged period, contracture of the biceps

femoris and the tensor fascia lata may increase the normal deviation of the knee and force the tibia into a fixed position of external rotation. In addition, varying degrees of posterior subluxation of the tibia may be present.

Regardless of the causative agent in resistant cases without posterior subluxation of the tibia, the author attempts to regain full extension by the turnbuckle cast described by Kulowski. The method is described on page 568. Flexion deformities with posterior subluxation or those which fail to respond to the turnbuckle cast method are treated by surgical measures. The posterior subluxation is corrected by compound traction. The operative methods are described on page 570; these comprise posterior capsulotomy or Wilson's posterior capsuloplasty.

Yount pointed out the role that contracture of the tensor fasciae femoris muscle plays in the development of flexion deformities of the knee. It may produce abduction and external rotation of the tibia on the femur and abduction and flexion deformities of the hip. These deformities are especially prone to develop in cases of residual poliomyelitis. Except in severe deformities and in those of longstanding, the abduction and the flexion contractures of the hip and flexion deformity of the knee may be corrected by releasing the iliotibial band at the knee. The technic is described on page 330.

#### OSTEOTOMY TO CORRECT FLEXION DEFORMITIES

As previously noted, every effort should be made to restore complete extension of the knee joint by the aforementioned methods recorded. Occasionally a serviceable range of flexion is present beyond the point of the flexion deformity, and yet conditions prevail which preclude correction by stretching or lengthening the soft tissue structures. A typical example would be a child with a flexion contracture following

severe scarring due to extensive burns in the region of the popliteal space. In such instance some type of osteotomy in the supracondylar region of the femur is justifiable. This improves the alignment and the functional capacity of the limb. The various types of osteotomies are discussed subsequently in this section.

#### ARTHRODESIS AND ARTHROPLASTY OF THE KNEE JOINT

Severe trauma to the soft tissues and to the cartilaginous and the osseous elements of the knee joint may result in severe intra-articular changes which preclude useful function—a fibrous or osseous ankylosis may be the ultimate result. Frequently in such cases a choice between arthrodesis and arthroplasty must be made. The indications justifying these procedures and the contra-indications are discussed in Chapter 13 "Surgical Approaches and Procedures."

#### BONY ANKYLOSIS OF THE KNEE IN FLEXION

Bony ankylosis of the knee in a position of flexion may be a complication of severe trauma to the knee joint, rheumatoid arthritis, pyogenic arthritis, osteomyelitis or tuberculosis. The general alignment of the extremity may be improved by performing a supracondylar osteotomy. This procedure does not irradiate the deformity but establishes a compensatory angulation above the knee opposite to the existing angulation at the level of the joint. As will be noted subsequently, this same principle is employed occasionally in flexion contractures following spastic paralysis or poliomyelitis, or in genu varum or valgum deformity caused by rickets or growth disturbances following fractures or osteomyelitis. Supracondylar osteotomies performed in children should be proximal to the epiphyseal plate in order to preserve the integrity of this structure.

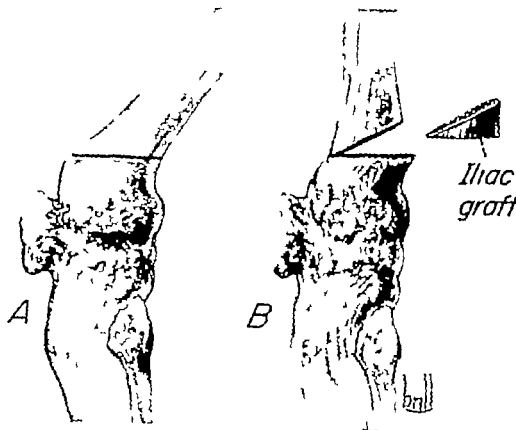


FIG. 224 (A) Open wedge osteotomy to correct a flexion deformity at the knee joint. (B) The triangular piece of bone is obtained from the crest of the ilium and is inserted into the defect.

which, if injured may cause some impairment of growth. The amount of correction permissible is governed by the degree of contracture of the soft tissues. If the resistance offered by these structures cannot be overcome by stretching tenotomy of the hamstring muscles is justifiable. Over stretching of the vessels and the nerves must be avoided. This can be achieved best by performing a type of osteotomy which shortens slightly the extremity. Thompson's telescoping V-osteotomy is such a procedure. Before any type of osteotomy is executed surgically, a careful analysis should be made of the tracings made from teleroentgenograms of the bony components of both extremities. This study should disclose the functional and mechanical axis of the limb, the true and functional shortening of the limb as a whole, the site and the degree of the deformity and the presence of compensatory deformities above or below the primary angulation. From this information one is able to decide the site and the type of the proposed osteotomy, the expected amount of lengthening or shortening of the limb and whether or not the extent of stretching in the soft tissue subsequent to the operation will allow the desired correction. When the soft tissues preclude full correction plans must be made to compromise with a partial correction at the initial operation with the reservation that lengthening of the soft tissues must be achieved at a second operation before the desired correction is attained.

#### OPEN WEDGE SUPRACONDYLAR OSTEOTOMY (Fig 224)

This type of osteotomy tends to put the soft tissues on the posterior aspect of the knee on considerable stretch because it in creases slightly the length of the limb (Fig 224). In deformities exceeding  $135^{\circ}$  to  $140^{\circ}$  release of the hamstring tendons by doing tenotomies prior to the osteotomy facilitates correction of the deformity.

**Technic.** A longitudinal skin incision

2 to 3 inches long is made on the lateral aspect of the thigh beginning just proximal to the lateral femoral epicondyle. The incision is deepened through all layers to the bone. By blunt dissection the periosteum is stripped from the entire circumference of the bone so that an intact periosteal tube surrounds the osteotomy site. With a sharp thin osteotome at the desired site the posterior two thirds of the femur is divided. The deformity is corrected by manual force, which produces a greenstick type of fracture in the remaining anterior third of the femur. In order to retain the desired correction, a triangular graft of full thickness of iliac bone is wedged between the fragments as depicted in Figure 224 B. In adults division of the bone is facilitated by drilling several holes through the lateral and the medial cortex of the femur in the line of the osteotomy. This step prevents shattering of the bone when the osteotome is driven through the shaft of the femur. Also in adults if the surgeon desires rigid fixation of the fragments in order to preclude loss of correction and to ensure rapid bony healing a Blount blade plate may be used to achieve this end. Of course, if a blade plate is employed the wound must be extended proximally and distally in order to provide adequate exposure. The wound is closed in layers. The desired position of the extremity is maintained by a plaster splint extending from the costal cage to the toes on the affected side.

**Postoperative Management.** If roentgenograph studies disclose that a change in position of the fragments is desirable this can be achieved by wedging the cast at the level of the osteotomy. As a rule immobilization in plaster must be continued from 8 to 10 weeks. At the end of this period the cast is removed, and a brace is applied without a joint at the knee. The limb must be protected by a brace until bony healing is sufficient to ensure against recurrence of the deformity. This usually means a period of several months.

### CUNEIFORM SUPRACONDYLAR OSTEOTOMY (Fig 225)

This type is usually employed in adults with severe flexion contractures (90° or less). Some shortening is accepted, but the vessels on the posterior surface of the femur are less likely to be stretched unduly. Also, this method brings into apposition a large surface area of the proximal and the distal fragments.

**Technic.** The desired site of the osteotomy is exposed by a longitudinal incision on the lateral aspect of the thigh, beginning at the level of the external epicondyle of the femur and extending proximally for a distance of 3 to 4 inches. The skin incision is deepened to the bone, and the periosteum is stripped with a blunt elevator. All soft tissues, anteriorly and posteriorly, are retracted from the bone by Bennett retractors, providing adequate exposure of the osteotomy site. A wedge shaped piece of bone is removed from the anterior position of the femur with its base anteriorly and its angle measuring approximately one half that of the flexion deformity (Fig 225 A). By closing the defect, the deformity is cor-

rected, and the raw surfaces of the proximal and distal fragments are brought in apposition (Fig 225 B). As in the open wedge type of osteotomy, rigid fixation may be attained by the use of a Blount blade plate. At the termination of the operation a plaster spica is applied, extending from the costal margins to the toes. The postoperative treatment is similar in every feature to that described following the open wedge osteotomy of the femur.

### CIRCULAR OSTEOTOMY (Fig 226)

A circular osteotomy as described by Codivilla ensures maintenance of the corrected position. This method creates a convex surface on the proximal fragment and a concave surface on the distal, allowing the lower end to swing like a pivot and at the same time permitting apposition of the large areas of the two fragments.

**Technic.** The bone is exposed by a longitudinal incision 3 to 4 in. in length on the lateral aspect of the thigh, beginning at the level of the external femoral epicondyle. The periosteum is stripped from the bone and retracted anteriorly and posteriorly with the surrounding soft tissues. With a

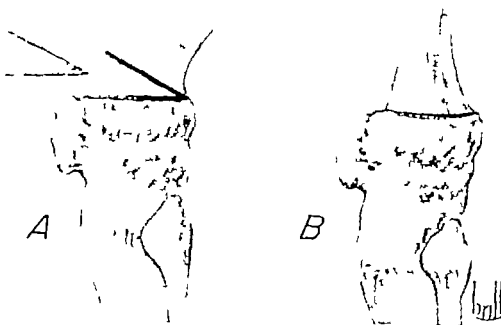


FIG. 225 Cuneiform supracondylar osteotomy.



line osteotomy  $1\frac{1}{4}$  in wide, a circular osteotomy is performed removing a minimal amount of bone (Fig 226 A, B) After the maximum correction is attained without unduly stretching the neurovascular structures a plaster spica is applied from the costal margins to the toes

**Postoperative Management.** If the desired correction ( $10^{\circ}$  to  $15^{\circ}$  short of full extension) is attained, immobilization in the plaster spica is continued from 8 to 10 weeks The subsequent treatment is similar to that recorded following open wedge osteotomy In cases with severe flexion deformities satisfactory alignment may not be attainable without jeopardizing the muscles and the nerves on the posterior aspect of the knee It becomes apparent that supplementary measures are necessary to complete the correction In this event after the operation is completed one must be satisfied with only partial correction of the deformity the limb is encased in a plaster

spica, holding this position From 10 to 14 days later tenotomies and a posterior capsulotomy of the hamstrings are done and a turnbuckle cast is applied After the operative reaction has subsided the deformity is corrected slowly until satisfactory alignment is obtained The turnbuckle cast is maintained for 4 weeks then the limb is fixed in another cast until there is roentgenographic evidence of bony ankylosis this usually means a period of 4 to 6 weeks more The extremity is further protected by a brace without a joint at the knee This is worn until bony ankylosis is sufficiently strong to prevent recurrence of the deformity

Both the cuneiform and the circular osteotomies may be employed at the apex of the flexion deformity which usually corresponds to the level of the old joint line Correction at this level results in more anatomic alignment of the upper and the lower parts of the leg If the operations are

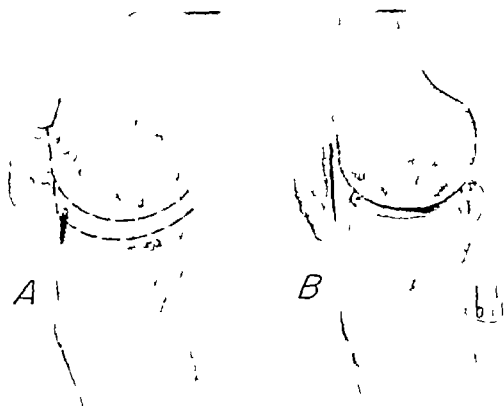


FIG 226 Circular supracondylar osteotomy

performed in children, care must be employed not to traumatize the epiphyseal plates such a complication will result in disturbance of growth. The technics are similar to those described for the supracondylar osteotomies, except that more exposure is necessary to perform the operation. A median parapatellar incision extending proximally along the medial border of the vastus medialis, supplies ample exposure. After the bony fusion between the patella and the anterior surface of the femur is divided, the lower end of the femur is exposed by blunt subperiosteal dissection and the soft tissues are retracted away from the bone by Bennett retractors.

If a circular osteotomy is the operation of choice, the line of division may conform to the outline of the normal configuration of the femoral condyles. This type is especially useful in moderate flexion deformity

because only minimal stretch is put on the neurovascular structures when optimum correction is attained. For more severe flexion deformities, a cuneiform osteotomy is preferred, a wedge of bone is removed with its base anteriorly.

The postoperative management is similar to that described for the supracondylar osteotomies.

#### TELESCOPING V-OSTEOTOMY (Fig 227)

In 1943, V P Thompson described this procedure which was designed to correct angular and rotational disalignment in bone which is conoidal in longitudinal section. It is readily adaptable to ankylosis of the knee in flexion. Essentially, the proximal fragment is telescoped into the cancellous bone of the distal fragment. In severe deformities a small portion of the distal fragment is removed. This results in slight short

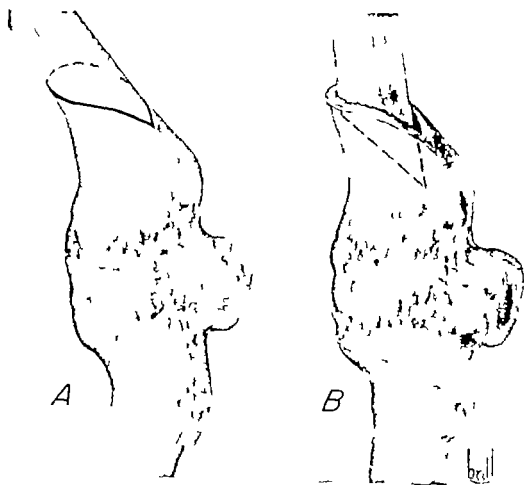


FIG 227 Telescoping V-osteotomy (V P Thompson)



FIG 228 (A *Left*) Male, aged 21 with ankylosis of the right knee in severe recurvatum (B *Right*) Roentgenogram of the knee depicted in A. Note the presence of a wire. The reason for its use was never established.

ening of the limb but the posterior vessels and nerves are not subjected to harmful tension. Telescoping one fragment into the other provides excellent contact of the bone ends and also good stability. Bony healing is assured and prompt.

**Technic.** The anterior surface of the femur is approached by a medial para patellar incision the bone is exposed by blunt subperiosteal dissection and all soft tissues are retracted away from the bone by Bennett retractors. A V-osteotomy is performed on the anterior surface of the femur with the apex directed toward the metaphysis the arms of the V pass obliquely away from the metaphysis the

posterior cortex may be sectioned transversely or in young individuals it may be partially severed and allowed to function as a hinge (Fig 227 A). The pointed fragment is beveled slightly so that it readily telescopes into the cancellous bone of the distal fragment (Fig 227 B). In cases with severe flexion deformities it may be necessary to excavate the metaphyseal fragment in order that it may receive the pointed fragment. Occasionally small wedges must be removed from the pointed end to effect a proper fit this is especially indicated in severe flexion deformity in which some shortening is desirable in order to prevent undue tension on the vessels and the nerves located posteriorly.

The postoperative management is similar to that recorded for other supracondylar osteotomies.



FIG 228 (C) Deformity was corrected by two open wedge osteotomies the wire was not disturbed healing at the osteotomy sites is discernible (6 months postoperatively)



FIG 228 (D) Unusual case of tibia retroversa in a female, aged 11 The deformity followed a fracture through the upper end of the tibia at the age of 7

### BONY ANKYLOSIS OF THE KNEE IN RECURVATUM

Occasionally, bony ankylosis is encountered with the knee joint in varying degrees of recurvatum. The same principles are employed as those discussed in the section dealing with ankylosis in flexion.

The author encountered an unusually severe case of ankylosis in the position of recurvatum in a male 21 years of age. From the patient's story, it was concluded that the deformity developed after a pyogenic infection of the knee joint at the age of 4

years. The deformity gradually increased and on March 5 1952, he presented the deformity depicted in Figure 228. The hip joint of the same extremity was not affected the foot was in  $20^\circ$  of equinus. Because of the severe posterior angulation of the leg it was decided to perform two open wedge osteotomies, one above and one below the site of maximum angulation. By these procedures, complete correction of the limb was achieved. Figure 228 C shows the correction attained.

## ANGULAR DEFORMITIES

Angular deformities in and about the knee joint are encountered frequently. The causative agents are numerous. Some are apparent such as trauma producing closure of a portion of the epiphyseal plate or metabolic and nutritional disorders as rickets which in the past has been responsible for a large majority of acquired deformities of knee joints. Some deformities observed

in infancy or early childhood may be on a hereditary or congenital basis; others are definitely associated with endocrine disturbances or follow in the wake of some infectious process. Static abnormalities of bones and joints play a role in some instances, as does muscle imbalance such as is encountered in spastic paralysis and in infantile paralysis. On the other hand the etiologic factors in a certain group of cases are speculative and highly controversial.

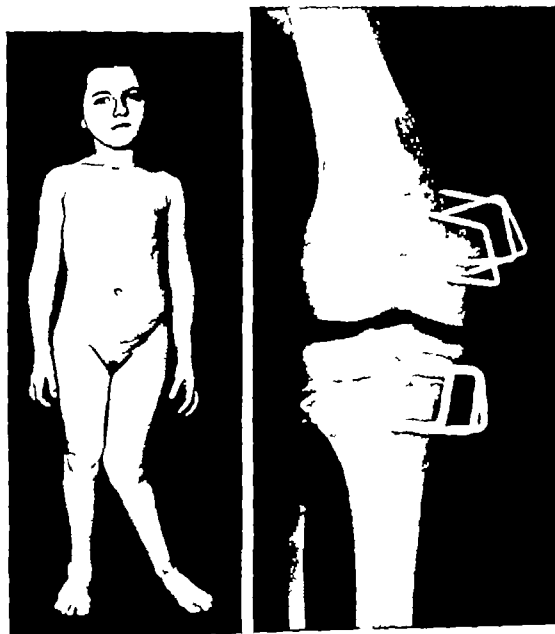


FIG. 229 (A *Left*) Genu valgum of the left extremity. Observe the external rotation of the tibia on the femur due to traction of the biceps femoris and the tensor fascia femoris muscle (etiology is not known). (B *Right*) The patient was treated by stapling the femoral and the tibial epiphyses.

This is especially true in disturbances of growth of the lower femoral and upper tibial epiphysis which resemble in a large measure osteochondrosis tibia vara is an example of these disorders

Although angular deformities can occur in any plane, the majority are either in the coronal or the sagittal planes. Valgus and varus deformities are in the coronal plane, while recurvatum of the knee and the rare tibia retroversa deformity are in the sagittal plane (Fig 228 D). The observations of Milch are helpful guides in choosing the correct site of correction and in the selection of cases amenable to surgical intervention. This observer points out that a deformity can be corrected only when the osteotomy is performed at the site of maximum deformity or the apex, this allows restoration of length of the bone and normal alignment of its articular surfaces. In the normal tibia the

articular surfaces are parallel with each other and perpendicular to its longitudinal axis, in tibia vara the superior and the inferior articular surfaces converge medially, while in tibia valga they converge laterally. The angle of convergence may be larger or smaller than the angle of the deformity, the angle of correction never should be greater than the difference between the angle of deformity and the angle of convergence. This measurement is best attained from tracings of teleoroentgenograms. In uniaxial deformities implicating the tibia regardless of the type the shaft of the bone is concave on the side toward which its articular surfaces converge. As a rule these deformities can be corrected by an open wedge osteotomy on the concave side. This tends to lengthen the bone. The same correction may be ob-

FIG 229 (C *Left*) The correction attained 2 years after stapling (D *Right*) Roentgenogram of the extremity shown in C the staples have been removed



tained by removing a wedge of bone on the convex or longer side of the bone this procedure tends to shorten the length of the deformed bone. In some cases the latter procedure is more desirable than the former because it puts minimal traction on the tissues on the outer side of the knee joint especially on the peroneal nerve.

#### GENU VALGUM

Essentially, the deformity comprises an inward projection of the knee joint and a lateral deviation of the leg in relation to the longitudinal axis of the femur forming an outward angle of varying degrees. In severe cases of longstanding traction of the biceps femoris muscle and the tensor fascia femoris muscles tend to rotate the tibia outward on the femur. In addition, the tibia may develop a compensatory varus deformity also the distal end of the femur may develop an outward twist (Fig. 229 A).

**Etiology** As noted previously numerous etiologic factors may produce this angular deformity at the knee joint. Static abnormalities are frequent causes notably among these are pronated and flat feet and obesity. Although at one time rickets was believed to be frequently responsible for valgus and other deformities of the knee now it is recognized that rickets like all other malacic bone disorders is not the primary causative agent however these lesions are predisposing factors. Congenital and hereditary factors may be responsible for the disorder. Trauma to the epiphyseal cartilage plate may result in disturbance of growth which culminates in varying degrees of deviation at the knee joint.

The work of Abbott and Gill on this deformity resulting from injury to the lower femoral epiphysis has brought to our attention many significant observations relative to the pathogenesis and the treatment of this disorder. These observations are recorded herein. Disturbed growth may be the direct result of crushing injuries to the epiphyseal plate or to the epiphysis. In

young children these injuries usually are produced by a fall from a height. In rare instances shearing injuries may produce fractures of the epiphyseal plate or the epiphysis in older children. The resulting deformity is governed by the area of the epiphyseal plate damaged hence several types of angular deformities have been observed as genu varum, genu valgum, genu recurvatum and even total cessation of growth. Of these genu valgum is encountered most frequently. In this lesion the lateral portion of the epiphyseal cartilage plate of the femur is damaged severely. Several factors are responsible for the higher incidence of valgus deformities over other types of angular deformities. These are the normal deviation of the knee and the vulnerability of the lateral aspect of the knee to trauma. When a child falls from a height and lands on the feet the normal deviation of the knee tends to force the body weight against the lateral portion of the epiphyseal plate thereby crushing this region of the structure. Occasionally a fracture of the femur may also ensue in this event the injury to the epiphyseal plate may not be recognized until a valgus deformity manifests itself.

Subsequent to injury of the cartilage plate healing may terminate with the formation of a bony lock between the lateral portion of the epiphysis and the diaphysis. The bony lock now functions as a fixed point while the medial portion of the plate continues to grow downward and in a circular direction. The severity of the valgus deformity is governed by the location of the bony lock and by the age of the patient. Severe deformities develop in young children while in the age group close to skeletal maturation minimal or no deformities evolve. Of interest is the gradual extension of the bony lock during growth from the lateral to the medial side of the epiphyseal plate so that the medial condyle on the affected side never attains the size of the medial condyle on the normal ex-

tremity. With closure of the medial side of the plate the configuration of the deformity is fixed. Because there is a premature closure of the medial portion of the plate, inequality in leg lengths ensues. Functional length of the limb, which is measured by a straight line from the head of the femur to the medial malleolus, becomes less as the angle of the valgus deformity increases. Children with severe valgus angulations the onset of which dates to early childhood also exhibit a compensatory deformity in the tibia in the opposite direction. This varus deformity in the tibia is the product of abnormal weight bearing stresses created by the severe deviation of the femur.

The range of motion at the knee joint is not significantly impaired. This is explained by the observation that the deformity does not disturb the development of the articular surfaces of the femur, however the plane of motion at the joint in relation to the longitudinal axis of the femur is seriously altered. With the change in alignment of the bony elements at the knee joint there is a concomitant alteration in the functional axes of the muscles crossing the joint. The quadriceps tends to displace the patella laterally. In addition, the soft tissue supportive structures on the medial aspect of the knee are relatively lax, while those on the lateral aspect are shortened; the peroneal nerve is included in the soft tissue alterations. The fibular collateral ligament exhibits some laxity in severe cases; this is due to the effort that the patient makes continuously to adduct the leg on the femur in order to place the foot squarely on the ground when walking.

**Clinical Features.** Mild degrees of genu valgum are observed frequently in children under the age of 5 years; in the majority of cases the disorder is physiologic and not associated with bony endocrine or dietary disorders. If the lesion develops subsequent to trauma to the epiphyseal cartilage plate in young children the deformity manifests

itself 3 or 4 months after the injury, with growth, the angular deformity increases progressively in gradient. The normal child under the age of 5 years stands with the medial femoral condyles and the internal malleoli in close proximity, almost touching. On the other hand, children with knock knees stand with the medial femoral condyles touching and the internal malleoli separated. In walking, the knees rub together. The line of weight-bearing no longer passes through the center of the knee joint but is shifted to the outer side. This is responsible for an awkward lurching gait. During function the supportive tissues of the knee joints are subjected constantly to abnormal stresses which produce laxity of the structures and chronic synovitis. When the knee is fully flexed in nontraumatic cases the deformity disappears because in this position the tibia articulates with the posterior portions of the condyles which are not affected.

**Treatment.** Mild cases in growing children often respond to simple conservative measures. A shoe correction comprising a medial heel and a sole wedge (from  $\frac{1}{4}$  in to  $\frac{3}{4}$  in, depending on the age of the child) tends to restore the normal line of weight bearing and correct the pronation of the feet, which is usually a concomitant disorder. Manipulation enhances improvement. If the right leg is to be manipulated, the distal end of the femur immediately above the condyles is grasped firmly with the left hand, and the right hand grasps the leg just above the malleoli; the leg is then forced repeatedly into adduction. These maneuvers tend to stretch the contracted soft tissue structures in the lateral aspect of the leg and subject the medial femoral condyle to mild intermittent pressure. Night splints may be worn. In more resistant cases knock knee braces are indicated. More severe cases, in which trauma is not a causative factor and no bony lock of the lateral portion of the distal epiphyseal plate of the femur exists, require some form of surgical



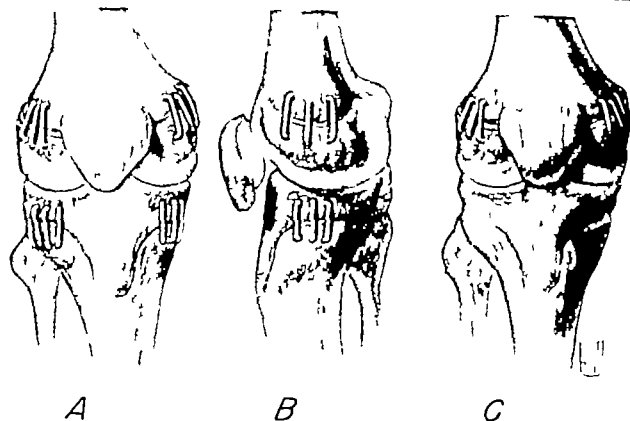


FIG. 230 Position of staples. Three staples comprise a unit (A, B) Both epiphyses are stapled if both the femur and the tibia are too long (C) If the femur is too long only its distal epiphysis is stapled. Note the position of the staples in relation to the undulating epiphyseal plates. (Redrawn from Blount)

intervention. The most efficient procedures to correct angular deformity are stapling and osteotomy at the site of maximum deformity.

**STAPLING.** By this method the growth of the medial hemiepiphysis is retarded for a period sufficiently long to allow correction of the valgus deformity. Hass (1945) was the first to show that temporary retardation of growth was possible by the use of a wire loop. However in 1862 Heuter noted that bone structures under diminished compression exhibited greater growth than those under more compression. Later Volkmann observed that abnormal unequal compression resulted in asymmetric growth of a joint; retardation of growth was more marked on the side subjected to the greater pressure. These observations comprise the basis for epiphyseal stapling. Blount and Clark popularized the use of staples to

correct linear and angular deformities and designed the operative technic employed about the knee joint. The observations of these workers are recorded herein. Stapling should be utilized while sufficient growth potential still remains to allow correction of any inadvertent angular deformity. To obtain almost complete cessation of growth three staples should be used in a unit (Fig. 230). If one staple is inserted on each side of an epiphysis it will bend or break. If two are inserted they will bend and occasionally break. Timing of the insertion and the removal of the staples is important; they should be inserted early enough before growth is completed to permit correction of the deformity to take place but not in children under 8 years of age and they should be removed when correction is achieved. Removal of the staples at the correct time is imperative when they are

inserted to correct angular deformities, failure to do so may result in the formation of inadvertent deformities. The need of careful, frequent follow up evaluations of the affected limb becomes apparent.

#### TECHNIC FOR CORRECTION OF VALGUS DEFORMITY (BLOUNT AND CLARKE)

After a tourniquet is applied at the level of the mid thigh and the limb is draped sandbags or a block are placed under the knee, flexing it from  $30^{\circ}$  to  $70^{\circ}$ . An oblique skin incision 5 to 8 cm long is made on the medial aspect of the distal end of the femur and is centered over the epiphysis; the incision slants from anterior-proximal to posterior-distal. The subcutaneous tissue is divided in the line of the skin incision and the deep fascial layers are split in the direction of their fibers. Retraction on the margins of the fascial layers exposes the vastus medialis, which is now displaced anteriorly while the hamstring tendons are displaced posteriorly; the intervening fascial layers are split in the direction of their fibers. With the knee extended and the vastus medialis displaced anteriorly, the anteromedial segment of the epiphyseal plate becomes accessible by flexing the knee joint acutely the posterior portion of the femoral condyle is reached readily.

The staples may be inserted "blind" however the author prefers to expose the epiphyseal plate. A longitudinal incision, approximately 1 in in length is made through the periosteum and the cartilaginous cap, at each end of this incision short crosscuts are made. With a thin sharp osteotome two longitudinal flaps are elevated under which the epiphyseal cartilage plate is readily discernible. It is essential to center the staples accurately in an anteroposterior direction; failure to achieve this may result in a recurvatum deformity if the staples are placed too far anteriorly or the opposite deformity if they are placed too far posteriorly.

It is important to bear in mind that the

epiphyseal plate of the femur and the tibia undulate. In the femur, Blount and Clarke point out that to ensure maximum efficiency, the center of the crosspiece of the staples should be slightly distal to the epiphyseal plate; the anterior and the posterior staples should be placed slightly proximal to the middle one (Fig. 230). In extreme cases of valgus deformity both the femoral and the tibial epiphyses may be stapled (Fig. 229 B). In this event the oblique incision below the knee slants from posterior proximal to anterior distal splitting the anterior fibers of the pes anserinus. The sartorius and the gracilis are retracted posteriorly in order to reach the anterior and the medial aspects of the epiphysis. The epiphyseal plate is exposed by a longitudinal incision with crosscut at each end; the longitudinal flaps are raised and the plate is exposed. In the tibia the staples are inserted so that the center of the staple is slightly proximal to the epiphyseal plate.

Before the wounds are closed, roentgenograms in both the anteroposterior and the lateral planes are taken. Staples placed in correctly are removed and reinserted. The position of the staples is checked again by roentgenograms. The wound is closed in layers and a plaster cylinder is applied from the groin to the ankle; in young children the foot is also included. All operative reaction usually subsides within 2 to 3 weeks; the patient is now allowed to bear weight on the extremity, either with or without crutches.

Following the principles laid down by Blount and Clarke the author has had some very gratifying results in the treatment of angular deformities about the knee joint and discrepancies in leg lengths by controlling epiphyseal growth by stapling procedures. On the other hand the final word on this method has not yet been written; more information is desired relative to the indications and the contraindications of the method. This knowledge can be attained only by long term follow up studies as

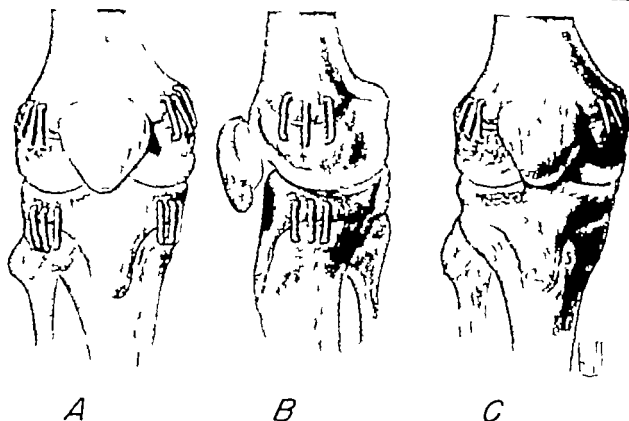


FIG. 230 Position of staples. Three staples comprise a unit. (A, B) Both epiphyses are stapled if both the femur and the tibia are too long. (C) If the femur is too long only its distal epiphysis is stapled. Note the position of the staples in relation to the undulating epiphyseal plates. (Redrawn from Blount)

intervention. The most efficient procedures to correct angular deformity are stapling and osteotomy at the site of maximum deformity.

**STAPLING.** By this method the growth of the medial hemiepiphysis is retarded for a period sufficiently long to allow correction of the valgus deformity. Hass (1945) was the first to show that temporary retardation of growth was possible by the use of a wire loop. However, in 1862 Heuter noted that bone structures under diminished compression exhibited greater growth than those under more compression. Later Volkmann observed that abnormal unequal compression resulted in asymmetric growth of a joint; retardation of growth was more marked on the side subjected to the greater pressure. These observations comprise the basis for epiphyseal stapling. Blount and Clark popularized the use of staples to

correct linear and angular deformities and designed the operative technic employed about the knee joint. The observations of these workers are recorded herein. Stapling should be utilized while sufficient growth potential still remains to allow correction of any inadvertent angular deformity. To obtain almost complete cessation of growth three staples should be used in a unit (Fig. 230). If one staple is inserted on each side of an epiphysis it will bend or break. If two are inserted they will bend and occasionally break. Timing of the insertion and the removal of the staples is important; they should be inserted early enough before growth is completed to permit correction of the deformity to take place but not in children under 8 years of age and they should be removed when correction is achieved. Removal of the staples at the correct time is imperative when they are

inserted to correct angular deformities failure to do so may result in the formation of inadvertent deformities The need of careful, frequent follow up evaluations of the affected limb becomes apparent

#### TECHNIC FOR CORRECTION OF VALGUS DEFORMITY (BLOUNT AND CLARKE)

After a tourniquet is applied at the level of the mid thigh and the limb is draped, sandbags or a block are placed under the knee, flexing it from  $30^{\circ}$  to  $70^{\circ}$ . An oblique skin incision 5 to 8 cm. long is made on the medial aspect of the distal end of the femur and is centered over the epiphysis, the incision slants from anterior-proximal to posterior-distal. The subcutaneous tissue is divided in the line of the skin incision, and the deep fascial layers are split in the direction of their fibers. Retraction on the margins of the fascial layers exposes the vastus medialis, which is now displaced anteriorly while the hamstring tendons are displaced posteriorly. The intervening fascial layers are split in the direction of their fibers. With the knee extended and the vastus medialis displaced anteriorly, the anteromedial segment of the epiphyseal plate becomes accessible by flexing the knee joint acutely the posterior portion of the femoral condyle is reached readily.

The staples may be inserted "blind", however the author prefers to expose the epiphyseal plate. A longitudinal incision, approximately 1 in. in length, is made through the periosteum and the cartilaginous cap at each end of this incision short crosscuts are made. With a thin sharp osteotome two longitudinal flaps are elevated under which the epiphyseal cartilage plate is readily discernible. It is essential to center the staples accurately in an anteroposterior direction failure to achieve this may result in a recurvatum deformity if the staples are placed too far anteriorly or the opposite deformity if they are placed too far posteriorly.

It is important to bear in mind that the

epiphyseal plate of the femur and the tibia undulate. In the femur, Blount and Clarke point out that to ensure maximum efficiency, the center of the crosspiece of the staples should be slightly distal to the epiphyseal plate, the anterior and the posterior staples should be placed slightly proximal to the middle one (Fig 230). In extreme cases of valgus deformity both the femoral and the tibial epiphyses may be stapled (Fig 229 B). In this event the oblique incision below the knee slants from posterior proximal to anterior distal, splitting the anterior fibers of the pes anserinus. The sartorius and the gracilis are retracted posteriorly in order to reach the anterior and the medial aspects of the epiphysis. The epiphyseal plate is exposed by a longitudinal incision with crosscut at each end. The longitudinal flaps are raised and the plate is exposed. In the tibia the staples are inserted so that the center of the staple is slightly proximal to the epiphyseal plate.

Before the wounds are closed, roentgenograms in both the anteroposterior and the lateral planes are taken. Staples placed in correctly are removed and reinserted. The position of the staples is checked again by roentgenograms. The wound is closed in layers and a plaster cylinder is applied from the groin to the ankle, in young children the foot is also included. All operative reaction usually subsides within 2 to 3 weeks the patient is now allowed to bear weight on the extremity, either with or without crutches.

Following the principles laid down by Blount and Clarke the author has had some very gratifying results in the treatment of angular deformities about the knee joint and discrepancies in leg lengths by controlling epiphyseal growth by stapling procedures. On the other hand, the final word on this method has not yet been written more information is desired relative to the indications and the contraindications of the method. This knowledge can be attained only by long term follow-up studies as

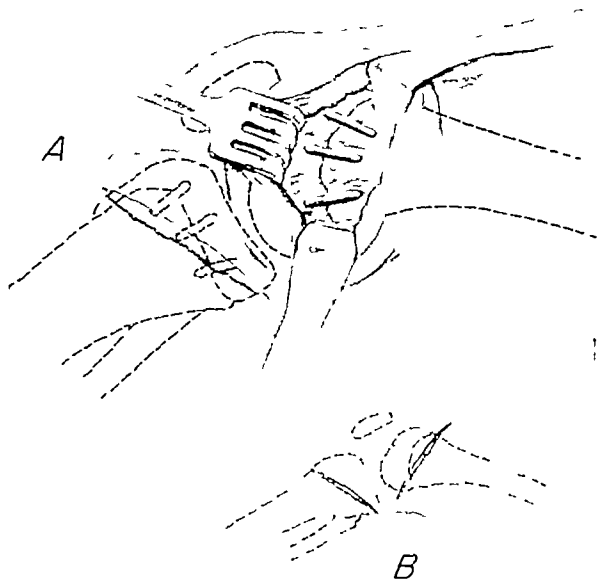


FIG. 231 Incisions (Blount and Clarke) to expose the medial and the lateral aspects of the femoral and the tibial epiphyses (A) medial incisions (B) lateral incisions

yet these are not available hence this method should not be employed indiscriminately and above all should not be preferred to methods which have weathered the test of time. However sufficient evidence is available to indicate that stapling will find a permanent berth in the armamentarium of the orthopedic surgeon for the treatment of inequalities of leg lengths and angular deformities in growing children.

#### STAPLING FOR LINEAR DEFORMITIES

For linear deformities temporary arrest

of growth of the distal femoral and the proximal tibial epiphyses may be achieved by stapling. The staples are retained until the equality of length is attained. The observations recorded previously in discussing the treatment of angular deformities by stapling are applicable to the problems of linear deformities. In some cases due to overgrowth the epiphysis of one bone either the femur or the tibia is stapled. In other cases overgrowth may implicate both bones such as in hemihypertrophy here both epiphyses are stapled (Fig. 206). Of course

instances of an abnormal shortening of one extremity usually necessitates retardation of growth of both the epiphyses in the region of the knee joint of the opposite extremity. As noted previously, a unit of three staples is essential to prevent the development of angular deformities.

The epiphyseal plates are best exposed by 2 medial and 2 lateral incisions (Fig. 231). The 2 proximal incisions are directed from anterior-proximal to posterior-distal; the 2 incisions below the knee joint slant from posterior-proximal to anterior-distal. The exposures of the epiphyseal plates are similar to those recorded in the discussion dealing with angular deformities. In addition, the proximal fibular epiphyseal plate is exposed by subperiosteal dissection on the anterior aspect of the upper end of the fibula, and the peroneal nerve is identified and retracted to one side. One half or more of the epiphyseal plate is excised with a sharp thin osteotome, and the defect is packed with bone chips obtained from above and below.

#### OSTEOTOMY AT SITE OF MAXIMUM DEFORMITY

As recorded previously, correction of valgus deformity is achieved best by performing an osteotomy at the site of maximum deformity, which may be either in the tibia or the femur. An osteotomy at this site ensures correction of the deformity, increases length of the osteotomized bone and in the case of the tibia restores normal relationship of its superior and inferior articular surfaces. The most practical type is the *tuneiform wedge osteotomy*. This may be achieved by one of two methods: (1) a wedge of bone is resected from the medial side of the femur or the tibia, depending on the site of maximum deformity; and (2) a wedge is opened on the lateral side. The former procedure is accompanied by some shortening of the osteotomized bone and may be employed in growing children in whom length is of no particular significance or in cases in which contracture of the soft tissues on the outer side of the deformity jeopardizes the integrity of the peroneal

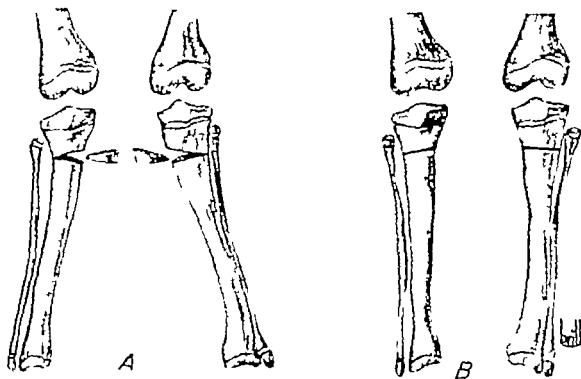


FIG. 232 Correction of bilateral valgus deformity. (A) a wedge of bone is resected from the medial side of the tibia, (B) the deformity is corrected with slight shortening of the tibia.

nerve. The latter method tends to increase bone length and is especially indicated where an increase in length is desirable. In this event, occasionally, it may be necessary to lengthen the soft tissue element on the lateral side and transplant the peroneal nerve to an anterior position. In the femur, unless there are special indications to the contrary, the author prefers an open wedge osteotomy on the lateral side of the bone and in the tibia resection of a wedge of bone on the medial side (Fig. 232).

In all instances before operation it is imperative to emphasize that tracings of teleroentgenograms be made and studied carefully in order to determine the exact site of the osteotomy and the amount of correction desired.

**Open Wedge Osteotomy.** In idiopathic cases of valgus deformity in which the distal end of the femur is implicated a transverse linear osteotomy is made at the site of maximum deformity on the lateral side of the femur and a wedge is opened forcing the distal fragment medially.

A longitudinal incision  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 in. long is made on the lateral aspect of the thigh immediately above the level of the lateral condyle. The incision is deepened to the bone which is exposed subperiosteally. A sharp thin osteotome is driven three fourths of the diameter of the bone. Then the leg is displaced medially thereby opening a wedge at the site of the osteotomy. In order to ensure maintenance of the correction a triangular wedge of bone obtained from the iliac crest or the bone bank is fitted into the defect. Slight overcorrection is desirable. The wound is closed in layers and the limb is immobilized in a plaster spica extending from the crest of the ilium to the toes.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT.** After 6 or 8 weeks of plaster fixation usually sufficient healing has occurred at the osteotomy site to permit removal of the cast. At this time a knock knee brace is applied to prevent recurrence of the deformity. This is worn

until roentgenographic studies reveal that bony union is adequate to preclude recurrence of the angular deformity. This may be a period of 4 to 6 months. Night splints are worn during the sleeping hours.

### SEVERE VALGUS DEFORMITIES

Severe valgus deformities subsequent to extensive crushing injuries to the lateral portion of the epiphyseal plate present more difficult problems. When the injuries occur in young children, the subsequent angular deformity and shortening of the limb are invariably severe, producing pronounced dysfunction (Fig. 233 A and B). Abbott and Gill pointed out that in these cases the goal of any operative procedure must be correction of the deformity and restriction of loss of length to a minimum. After skeletal maturation is attained any residual inequality in length may be corrected by shortening the unaffected leg or lengthening the involved leg. Correction of the deformity is achieved by an oblique osteotomy immediately above the affected condyle and opening a triangular wedge at the site of the deformity (Fig. 233 C). This precludes the creation of a deformity in the opposite direction such as results when an osteotomy is performed at a higher level. A triangular wedge of bone taken from the ilium is placed in the defect on the lateral side of the bone. This procedure restores the anatomic relation of the lateral to the medial condyle and increases the functional length of the limb. In the event that a varus deformity of the tibia is present correction of the femoral angular deformity may result in a bowing of the lower leg. The varus deformity is also corrected by an oblique osteotomy on the medial side of the tibia at the site of the deformity by opening the wedge. The bowing deformity is obliterated (Fig. 233 D). This last procedure will provide additional functional length. Correction of the tibial deformity is performed after union is complete at the site of the femoral osteotomy.

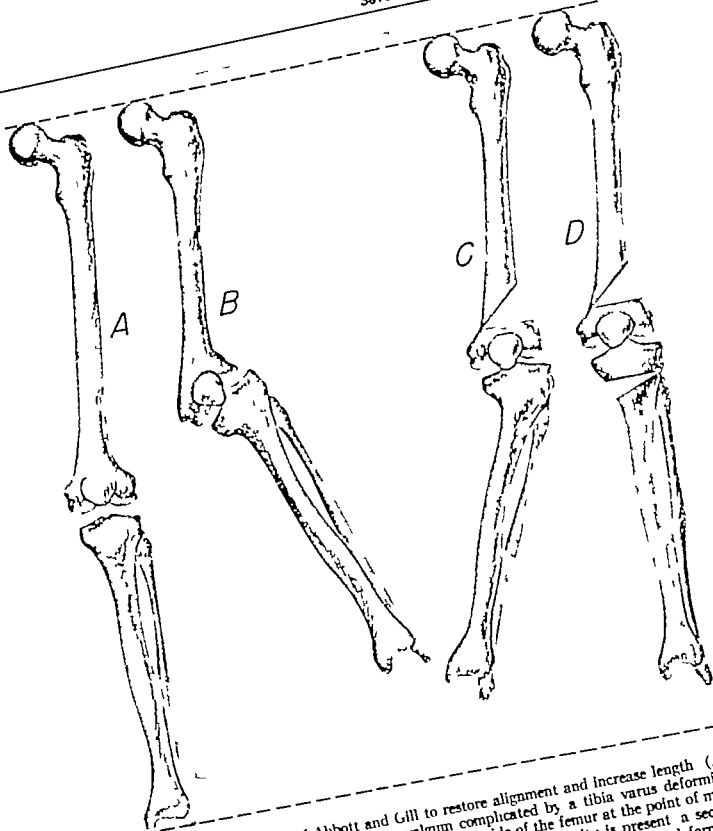


FIG. 233 Technic of Abbott and Gill to restore alignment and increase length (A) The normal limb (B) Severe genu valgum complicated by a tibia varus deformity (C) An oblique osteotomy is done on the lateral side of the femur at the point of maximum deformity (D) In the event that a tibia varus deformity is present a second osteotomy is performed on the medial side of the tibia at the site of the deformity (Redrawn with modifications from Abbott and Gill)

#### TECHNIC FOR CORRECTION

Correction of severe valgus deformities by the aforementioned procedures may be

hindered by the restraining influence of short contracted tissues on the lateral aspect of the thigh the knee the per



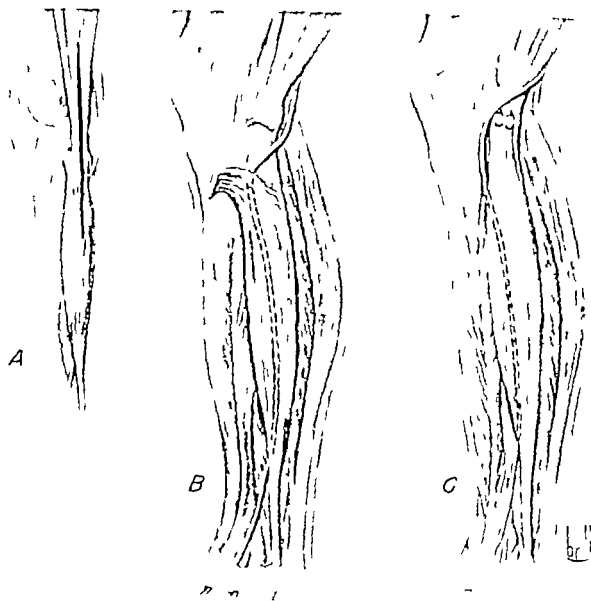


FIG. 234 Transplantation of the peroneal nerve to an anterior position. (A) Note that first the nerve is in relation to the outer margin of the biceps femoris, then hooks around the head of the fibula to an anterior position. (B) The nerve is uncovered by dividing the fibular origin of the peroneus longus and the overlying deep fascia. (C) The nerve is mobilized and transplanted to a more anterior position.

oneal nerve is the most important single structure demanding special consideration. The lateral region of the knee is exposed by a bony J incision beginning 2 or 3 inches above the lateral epicondyle and ending approximately 2 cm below the patella; the deep fascia is divided in the line of the skin incision. If the patella is displaced laterally, it may be mobilized by dividing the lateral quadriceps expansion and dissecting it free from the lateral intermuscular septum. The septum is divided

transversely at the level of the epicondyle and dissected free from the lateral aspect of the femur as high as the level selected for the osteotomy. The tendon of the biceps femoris is divided by a Z-cut and is lengthened later. Occasionally, it may be necessary to divide the iliotibial band transversely; this last step may also be done as a prophylactic measure to prevent recurrence of the deformity. In addition, the lateral head of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle is dissected free from it

point of insertion into the posterior aspect of the lateral epicondyle

The peroneal nerve may be transposed to an anterior position, as described by Milch this may be performed as a prophylactic measure or in the presence of manifestations pointing to implication of the nerve. Palsy following correction of valgus deformities of the knee joint has been observed by many workers. Platt reminds us that severe traction of the peroneal nerve, associated with abduction injuries of the ligamentous structures on the lateral aspect of the knee, may result in peroneal palsy, "ligamentous-peroneal syndrome." Peroneal paralysis may be a complication of extensive treatment of fractures of the leg and leg lengthening is another complication when symptoms of this sequela are manifest, it is important that release of tension be executed immediately.

The anatomic position of the peroneal nerve in relation to the structures on the lateral side of the thigh and the knee renders it vulnerable to traction and abduction mechanisms. It pursues a downward cross behind the outer margin of the biceps femoris and crosses the lateral aspect of the head of the fibula to reach a more anterior position at the point of crossing the nerve hooks sharply around the head of the fibula and it is fixed in this position by the fibular origin of the peroneus longus and the deep fascia of the leg which insert into the fibula (Fig 234). Division of these structures permits transplantation of the nerve to an anterior position.

By retracting the vastus anteriorly the bone is exposed by subperiosteal dissection and the soft tissues are displaced to either side by Bennett retractors. An oblique osteotomy is performed at the site of the deformity and the lateral condyle is levered downward to the level of the medial condyle opening a wedge on the lateral side of the bone. A triangular piece of iliac bone is placed in the defect and the fragments and the iliac graft are stabilized in the cor-

rected position by a long screw or by a screw pin which is left protruding from the skin.

**Management in Growing Children.** In growing children, Abbott and Gill note that the medial portion of the epiphyseal cartilage plate should be permitted uninterrupted growth. If this is allowed, it becomes apparent that recurrence of the deformity is inevitable, in such an event, the operation should be repeated as often as is deemed necessary during the growth period. The osteotomy should be executed before the medial condyle overgrows the lateral by more than 1 in. By such a plan the deformity never assumes extreme proportions, and length is maintained at a minimum, and severe contractures of the knee and the thigh the outer aspect of the knee and the thigh do not occur. If the expected final height of the patient is acceptable, the epiphyseal cartilage plate of the opposite extremity should be closed before the inequality of leg length exceeds 2 in.

## MAXIMUM CORRECTION OF DEFORMITY IN THE UPPER END OF THE TIBIA

Valgus deformities in which the site of deformity is in the upper end of the tibia must be corrected by an attack on the tibia and not by a supracondylar osteotomy. In uncomplicated cases without implication of the upper tibial cartilage plate or epiphysis the deformity is corrected readily by resecting a wedge of bone from the upper end of the medial aspect of the tibia. If any torsion of the tibia is present, it is also corrected at this time. In more severe cases especially in those with marked retardation or cessation of growth in the lateral portion of the epiphyseal cartilage of the tibia a more direct attachment is indicated (Fig 235). Correction of the angular deformity is achieved best by an open wedge osteotomy on the lateral side of the tibia at the site of maximum deformity and the leg is dis-

placed medially. A triangular piece of bone obtained from the patient's ilium or the bone bank is placed in the defect. Further stabilization of the fragments may be obtained by transfixing the fragments with a threaded wire or a crew pin. As in the correction of severe valgus deformities resulting from injuries to the lateral portion of

the femoral epiphyseal cartilage, advanced contractures of the soft tissue structures may be present in angular deformities due to implication of the upper end of the tibia. When present they are treated in the manner described previously in this section. The fibular collateral ligament may be a significant obstacle to correction in these angular

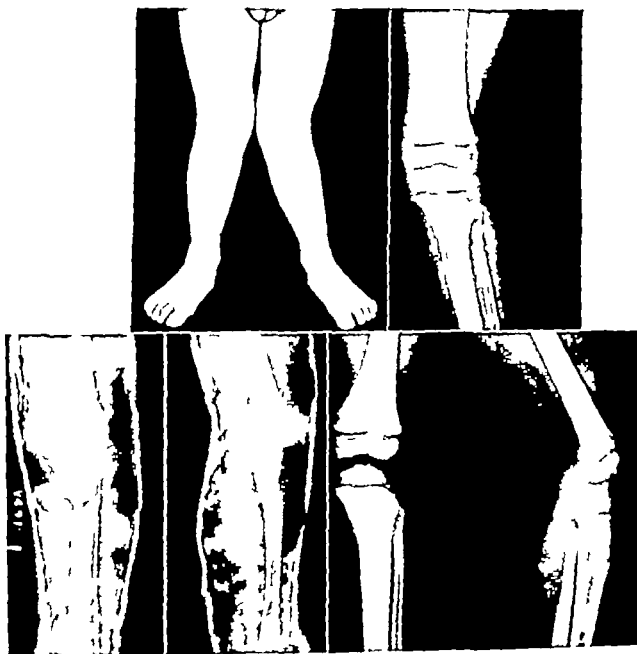


FIG. 235 (Top left) Bilateral genu valgum in a child of 4. (Top right) Observe that the deformity is in the upper end of the left tibia. The roentgenograms clearly localize the lesion in the left extremity. (Bottom left) Correction of the left leg was achieved by an open wedge osteotomy on the lateral aspect of the upper end of the tibia. (Bottom right) Full correction still maintained 3 years later.

deformities. It may be necessary to free the structure from the head of the fibula, and after the desired correction is achieved it is attached to the lateral aspect of the tibial condyle.

### GENU VARUM (BOWLEG)

This deformity is characterized by a lateral displacement of the knee joint so that the joint lies to the outer side of the line of weight bearing dropped from the anterior superior spine of the ilium. Generally, the deformity implicates the tibia or the femur. In addition to an outward bowing the tibia also exhibits an internal twist or torsion from the knee to the ankle forcing

the toes to turn inward. When the child stands with the feet together, the medial borders of both extremities form an O the knees are widely separated.

### ETIOLOGY

Malacia bone diseases, especially rickets, predisposes the patient to development of this angular deformity when static factors are acting. In the face of advanced softening of bones, the effect of body weight is sufficient to produce bending deformities and even stress fractures which may heal in malpositions (Fig 236). With the advent of vitamin D, the incidence of severe deformities associated with rickets has been reduced considerably. Moreover the established custom of periodic examination of supposedly well babies both in private



FIG 236 (Left) Severe case of resistant rickets. Note the anterior bowing of both tibiae. (Right) Roentgenograms reveal advanced osteoporosis and softening of the bones of both extremities. Observe the transverse fracture line in the left femur which is showing evidence of healing. Observe bending of both fibulae.



FIG. 237 (Left) F.W., 14 years old a case of ovarian agenesis. (Center) Roentgenograms reveal that there has been some interference in the normal growth of the medial portion of the upper tibial epiphyseal plates. (Right) Correction attained by open wedge osteotomies on the medial aspect of the upper ends of the tibiae. Maximum correction on the left side has not been obtained.

practice and in institutions brings the ricketic child under care at a very early stage of the disease. Hence, many severe deformities requiring surgical intervention are not encountered. As a rule, children under the age of 4 years respond to non operative measures.

There is evidence that many cases of bow legs which are classified as congenital in origin are caused by the cross-legged position that the child assumed in utero. Faulty postural habits may be causative factors favoring the development of bowlegs. Infants frequently sleep on the abdomen and face with the toes turned in and the knees widely separated. Mild bowing in children under 4 years is observed frequently.

Arrest of growth of the medial portion of the upper tibial epiphyseal plate is another cause producing the deformity. The disturbance of growth may be the result of trauma or as in tibia vara a form of osteochondrosis. Tibia vara is discussed subsequently in this chapter. The deformity may be also observed in cases of enchondral ossification (dyschondroplasia) and in endocrine disturbances. All these entities in some way

interfere with the normal growth of the tibial and the femoral epiphyseal plates particularly medial portions or there may be cessation of growth of these portions of the plates. Also these disorders may produce bowlegs by causing true bowing of one or both bones of the leg (Fig. 237).

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

As noted previously, mild bowing in children under 4 years of age is a common observation. When standing with the feet together the child's knees are widely separated and the inner aspects of the extremities form a symmetrical O. When the child walks the gait exhibited is not unlike the waddle observed in bilateral dislocation of the hips. In the presence of disorders such as malacic bone diseases, dyschondroplasia, endocrine disturbances and rickets the clinical manifestations peculiar to the condition are also manifested.

#### TREATMENT

Generally, mild forms of genu varum in young children under the age of 4 which are not associated with any bone metabolic

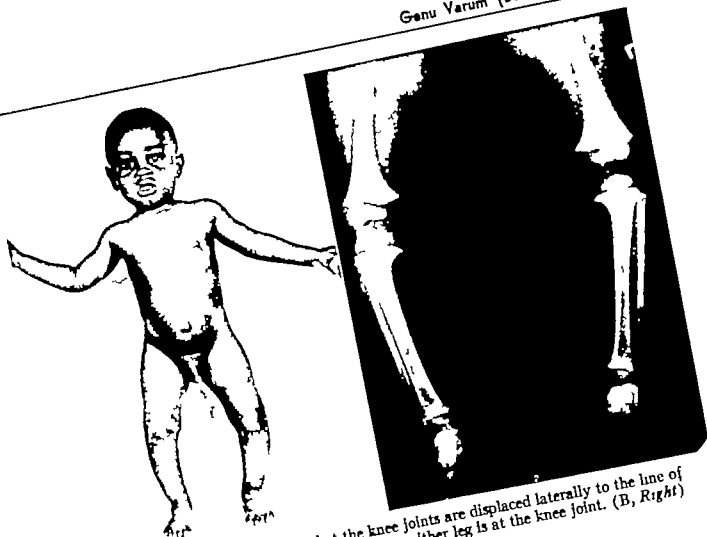


FIG 238 (A, Left) Observe that the knee joints are displaced laterally to the line of weight bearing. The apex of the deformity in either leg is at the knee joint. (B, Right) These features are depicted clearly in the roentgenograms.

or endocrine disorders but are on a physiologic basis will be corrected with or without treatment. In fact it is not uncommon to see a case of idiopathic bowlegs in early childhood become one of knock knees after the age of 4. Correction can be enhanced in these cases (before and after the age of 4 years) by inner wedges on the heel and the sole of the shoes and by manipulative maneuvers which tend to straighten the bowing. Care should be taken not to perform forceful manipulations such measures may inflict damage to the epiphyses. Manipulations should be performed on a regulated schedule 10 or 15 times once or twice daily. If these conservative measures fail to produce the desired results braces may be applied.

Severe residual deformities of rickets in childhood and of latent rickets which is usually manifested about the age of puberty and severe deformities from other causes

require surgical intervention to attain the desired alignment of the affected limb. However, surgery is contraindicated in malacic bone diseases while the process is still active. Correction of the deformity during this period is doomed to failure recurrence is the rule.

**Surgical Correction of Bowlegs.** Careful study of the configuration of the deformity is essential before surgical correction is attempted. A tracing of teleroentgenograms should be made first, then the bone of the leg at fault should be identified, and the site of maximum deformity localized. By studying the problem at hand on a pattern the postoperative configuration of the extremity can be visualized, and the incidence of errors maintained at a minimum. If the apex of the deformity is situated in the shaft of the femur or the tibia an open wedge osteotomy is preferred on the medial aspect of the bone to increase its length

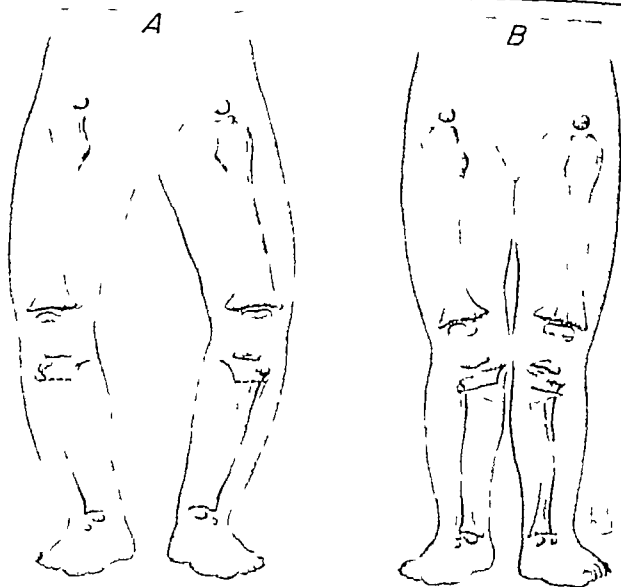


FIG. 238 (Continued) (C) The pattern of the roentgenograms reveals that an osteotomy in the tibia restoring parallelism of its articular surfaces would convert the bowlegs (A) to knock knees (B)

**TECHNIC FOR FEMUR.** A longitudinal incision from 2 to 3 in. in length is made on the inner aspect of the thigh centered over the proposed osteotomy site. The bone is exposed subperiosteally and the soft tissues are protected with Bennett retractors. With a thin sharp osteotome the bone is divided transversely three fourths of its diameter; the remainder of the bone is fractured manually when the lower leg is abducted to the desired position. A triangular piece of iliac bone is inserted into the defect. Slight over

correction of the bowing is desirable. If further stability of the fragments at the osteotomy site is desired the fragments and the graft may be transfixated with a threaded wire or a pin which is cut below the level of the skin and withdrawn when the cast is removed.

At the termination of the operation a plaster pica is applied extending from the costal cage to the toes on the affected side. The cast is removed at the end of 6 weeks and the patient is fitted with bowleg braces.





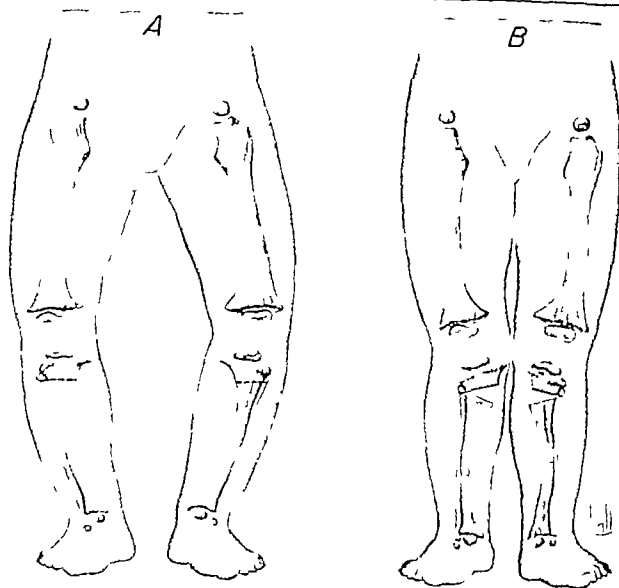


FIG 238 (Continued) (C) The pattern of the roentgenograms reveals that an osteotomy in the tibia restoring parallelism of its articular surfaces would convert the bowlegs (A) to knock knees (B)

**TECHNIC FOR FEMUR.** A longitudinal incision from 2 to 3 in. in length is made on the inner aspect of the thigh centered over the proposed osteotomy site. The bone is exposed subperiosteally and the soft tissues are protected with Bennett retractors. With a thin sharp osteotome the bone is divided transversely three fourths of its diameter; the remainder of the bone is fractured manually when the lower leg is abducted to the desired position. A triangular piece of iliac bone is inserted into the defect. Slight over

correction of the bowing is desirable. If further stability of the fragments at the osteotomy site is desired the fragments and the graft may be transfixed with a threaded wire or a pin which is cut below the level of the skin and withdrawn when the cast is removed.

At the termination of the operation a plaster spica is applied extending from the costal cage to the toes on the affected side. The cast is removed at the end of 6 weeks and the patient is fitted with bowleg braces.

which are worn until bony union is complete during the sleeping hours, night splints are worn.

**TECHNIC FOR TIBIA** If the site of maximum bowing is in the tibia, an open wedge osteotomy is performed on the medial side of the bone at the apex of the bowing and the converging planes of the articular surface of the tibia are restored to a parallel position. The technic and the postoperative management are similar to those described for correction of the deformity in the femur. When the osteotomy is performed in the shaft, the fibula must be fractured also in order to achieve the desired correction.

**TECHNIC FOR APEX AT THE JOINT SPACE.** When the apex of the deformity is at the level of the joint space, such as is observed in the "O" bowlegs, Milch points out that an osteotomy above below or at both sites may convert bowlegs to knock knees. Study of the tracing of such a case depicted in Figure 238 illustrates this point. In this child the apex of the varus deformity is at the joint space, the knee joints are displaced laterally. The tracings demonstrated clearly that an osteotomy above or below the level of the articulation converts the varus to a valgus deformity (Fig 238 C). In such cases better end results may be attained by the use of braces.

## TIBIA VARA

(*Osteochondrosis Deformans Tibiae*)

According to Blount this entity is not unlike other osteochondropathies such as *coxa plana*. The observations of this observer are recorded in this section. The lesion is more common than is generally realized and should be differentiated from other disorders capable of producing deformities of the knee. Essentially, it is a disturbance in growth which implicates the metaphysis, the epiphyseal cartilage and the osseous center of the epiphysis. The alterations are located on the medial side of the proximal



FIG 239 Infantile tibia vara. This child, a female, aged 4 weighed 104 pounds. Observe the sharp angular deformity immediately below the proximal tibial epiphysis. The osseous portion of the epiphysis is wedge-shaped, with the base placed laterally, the medial portion of the metaphysis is beak shaped.

tibial epiphysis and are responsible for an abrupt varus angular deformity just below the epiphysis. In addition, varying degrees of genu recurvatum and internal rotation of the leg are constant concomitant abnormalities. From a clinical viewpoint there are two types—infantile and adolescent.

### INFANTILE TYPE

This lesion is observed after the first or the second year of life in a child exhibiting

normal development up to this time usually, overweight is an associated finding. The child depicted in the roentgenogram in Figure 239 was 4 years of age; the deformities were first noted by the parents at the age of 2; the child's weight was 104 pounds. Usually, most infants exhibit a mild physiologic bowing of the legs. With growth this deformity is converted into a mild form of knock knees. When tibia vara exists, the varus deformity becomes exaggerated with increased growth. In approximately 50 per cent of the cases it is a bilateral lesion. No responsible etiologic factor has been identified; rickets and other malacic bone disorders are not causative agents. There is evidence suggesting that a congenital factor may play a role in the infantile type.

Roentgenographic study points to a common cause. The essential features are: (1) a sharp angular deformity immediately below the proximal tibial epiphysis; (2) the medial portion of the epiphyseal cartilage may be expanded and irregular; (3) the osseous portion of the epiphysis is wedge shaped

with the base placed laterally; (4) the medial portion of the metaphysis is prominent, resembling a beak; (5) irregular cartilage islands are observed in the beaklike projection of the metaphysis; and (6) the prominent position of the metaphysis projecting medially, is covered by hyaline cartilage (Fig. 239). These features eventually grade into those observed in the adolescent type.

**Pathology.** The pertinent features in the infantile type are the abnormal growth of the epiphyseal cartilage plate and retarded ossification of the medial portion of the tibial epiphysis. The metaphysis throws out a beaklike projection which functions as a buttress under the epiphysis. Within this metaphyseal projection are irregular areas of cartilage which are depicted in the roentgenograms as areas of decreased density. The microscopic appearance bears a close similarity to that observed in chondrodysplasia.

#### ADOLESCENT TYPE

This form is encountered between the



FIG. 240 (A) Adolescent tibia vara. Observe that except for the angular deformity immediately below the narrowed epiphyseal plate the bones appear to be normal. The patient was a female aged 13. The deformity had existed 4 years prior to the taking of this roentgenogram.

ages of 6 and 12 years in children who were apparently normal in every respect up to the onset of the disorder. The lesion is usually unilateral. Although the etiologic agent is not known, trauma may be the responsible factor in some, and in others some evidence suggests that chronic infection may play a role. Regardless of the cause, the roentgenographic features are governed by the age at which the lesion develops and not upon the *modus operandi*. If roentgenograms are taken later in life it is impossible to determine whether the lesion was first manifest in the first or the second period of growth.

**Roentgenographic Features.** Essentially, the findings suggest an arrest of



FIG. 240 (B Top) Same case as A. Severe varus deformity of the left extremity. Correction was obtained by an open wedge osteotomy at the maximum site of the deformity. (C, Bottom) Observe the restoration of normal alignment and the range of flexion and extension in the knee joint.



normal development up to this time usually, overweight is an associated finding. The child depicted in the roentgenogram in Figure 239 was 4 years of age; the deformities were first noted by the parents at the age of 2; the child's weight was 104 pounds. Usually, most infants exhibit a mild physiologic bowing of the legs. With growth this deformity is converted into a mild form of knock knees. When tibia vara exists, the varus deformity becomes exaggerated with increased growth. In approximately 50 per cent of the cases it is a bilateral lesion. No responsible etiologic factor has been identified; rickets and other malacic bone disorders are not causative agents. There is evidence suggesting that a congenital factor may play a role in the infantile type.

Roentgenographic study points to a common cause. The essential features are: (1) a sharp angular deformity immediately below the proximal tibial epiphysis; (2) the medial portion of the epiphyseal cartilage may be expanded and irregular; (3) the osseous portion of the epiphysis is wedge shaped

with the base placed laterally; (4) the medial portion of the metaphysis is prominent, resembling a beak; (5) irregular cartilage islands are observed in the beaklike projection of the metaphysis; and (6) the prominent position of the metaphysis, projecting medially, is covered by hyaline cartilage (Fig. 239). These features eventually grade into those observed in the adolescent type.

**Pathology.** The pertinent features in the infantile type are the abnormal growth of the epiphyseal cartilage plate and retarded ossification of the medial portion of the tibial epiphysis. The metaphysis throws out a beaklike projection which functions as a buttress under the epiphysis. Within this metaphyseal projection are irregular areas of cartilage which are depicted in the roentgenograms as areas of decreased density. The microscopic appearance bears a close similarity to that observed in chondrodysplasia.

#### ADOLESCENT TYPE

This form is encountered between the



FIG. 240 (A) Adolescent tibia vara. Observe that except for the angular deformity immediately below the narrowed epiphyseal plate the bones appear to be normal. The patient was a female aged 13. The deformity had existed 4 years prior to the taking of this roentgenogram.

ages of 6 and 12 years in children who were apparently normal in every respect up to the onset of the disorder. The lesion is usually unilateral. Although the etiologic agent is not known, trauma may be the responsible factor in some, and in others some evidence suggests that chronic infection may play a role. Regardless of the cause, the roentgenographic features are governed by the age at which the lesion develops and not upon the *modus operandi*. If roentgenograms are taken later in life, it is impossible to determine whether the lesion was first manifest in the first or the second period of growth.

**Roentgenographic Features.** Essentially, the findings suggest an arrest of



FIG. 240 (B, *Top*) Same case as A. Severe varus deformity of the left extremity. Correction was obtained by an open wedge osteotomy at the maximum site of the deformity. (C, *Bottom*) Observe the restoration of normal alignment and the range of flexion and extension in the knee joint.



growth of the medial portion of the proximal tibial epiphysis which results in the development of varus deformity immediately below the epiphyseal plate. The epiphyseal plate shows some irregularity and may be more narrow on the medial side than on the lateral. In fact in some cases the medial portion of the plate may be obliterated. Below the metaphysis there is an abrupt angular deformity varying in severity with the apex laterally. Except for the alterations noted in the region of the medial aspect of the upper end of the tibia the bones of the leg appear to be normal (Fig. 240 A).

**Clinical Features.** As noted previously the infantile type is bilateral in a large number of the cases whereas in the adolescent it is usually unilateral. The onset is insidious in nature there is a gradual increased development of a varus deformity without clinical evidence of any local or systemic disorder. In bilateral cases of the infantile type spontaneous correction may occur on one side. Bilateral cases exhibit a waddling gait while a limp is present in the unilateral cases. The knee and the foot on the affected side are subject to abnormal stress incident to function and hence may show evidence of strain.

Inspection of the limb reveals a sharp angular deformity immediately below the knee and in all cases varying degrees of genu recurvatum. Internal rotation of the tibia on the femur and pronation of the foot are constant concomitant features. In young children a prominent enlargement of the medial condyle is discernible. Some shortening of the extremity (1 to 2 cm.) is usually demonstrable. The supportive structures on the medial side of the knee joint show increased laxity. Occasionally the abnormal strain on the ligamentous structures produces pain and effusion in the knee joint.

**Treatment.** As in coxa plana and other osteochondroses spontaneous correction may occur. This return to normalcy appears not to be governed by any conserva-

tive measure of treatment. It is essential however to prevent undue strain on the knee joints and to correct existing pronation of the feet by braces and corrective shoes. Such measures may suffice in the mild forms of the disorder and should be continued until there is clinical and roentgenographic evidence that the deformity is stationary. At this time in adolescents and in adults if the degree of dysfunction or the disfigurement is not acceptable surgical intervention is justifiable. Inasmuch as the deformity does not increase after the epiphyseal cartilage plate is closed in adolescent cases in which there is obvious damage of the plate it is advisable to postpone any operative correction until closure of the plate is achieved. If the surgical correction is performed correctly no recurrence is a certainty. The problem is more difficult in the infantile group with damage to the plate. In some cases the lesion progresses for 3 or 4 years and then becomes stationary without becoming reactivated at a later period. In others after a stationary period the deformity continues to increase in severity. Occasionally the grade of the deformity makes surgical correction desirable even in the infantile group. The correction should be performed in the stationary period. If the process remains stationary no recurrence will ensue. However if the process should become reactivated recurrence of the deformity may supervene.

**TECHNIC.** The author's operation of choice is an open wedge osteotomy at the site of maximum deformity on the medial side of the leg. The technic is similar to that described for the correction of genu varum when the angular deformity is primarily in the tibia. In tibia vara the tranverse osteotomy should be immediately below the epiphysis at the apex of the angulation. This method not only corrects the angulation but regains some length of the tibia. Any existing internal rotation of the tibia is also corrected. The limb slightly overcorrected is encased in a plaster spica from

the costal cage to the toes with the knee slightly flexed. Immobilization is continued until there is roentgenographic evidence that bony healing is complete. The subsequent treatment is similar to that recorded following operative correction of genu varum (Fig 240 B).

### GENU RECURVATUM

This angular deformity resulting from trauma to the proximal tibial epiphysis is relatively uncommon when compared with the number of these deformities occurring subsequent to injuries to the distal femoral epiphysis. However, operative procedures on the upper end of the tibia, such as curettage of a bony cyst or removal of a bone graft, occasionally may initiate sufficient disturbance of growth in the anterior half of the tibial epiphysis to produce a recurvatum deformity. The lesion has been observed following advancement of the tibial tubercle in spastic children.

### OPERATIVE CORRECTION

Essentially, the principles in the management of this lesion are the same as those recorded for the correction of other angular deformities. It is important to restore the plane of the upper articular surface of the tibia to a position parallel with that of the lower. Several techniques have been designed to achieve this goal. In all, the desired correction is attained by an osteotomy through the upper end of the tibia, however, the levels of the osteotomies differ.

**Brett's Procedure** (Fig 241) A slightly curved skin incision is made in the anterior aspect of the knee joint, it begins on the inner aspect immediately above the tibial condyle then curves around the anterior surface of the tibia, crossing the patellar tendon slightly proximal to the tibial tubercle. It ends over the outer aspect of the outer condyle. The proximal flap of skin is dissected away from the patellar tendon and retracted upward, an incision is made on

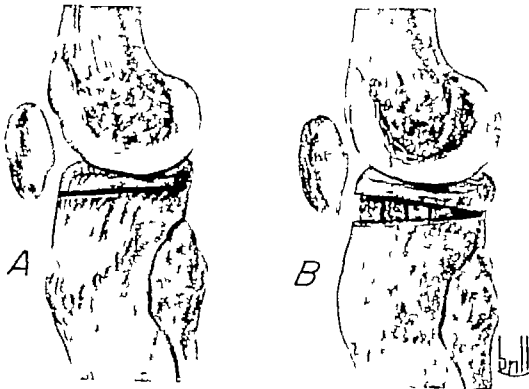


FIG 241 (A) Brett's osteotomy for correction of genu recurvatum. (B) The proximal fragment is maintained in position by cortical bone struts placed in the triangular defect.



each side and parallel with the patellar tendon. These incisions make accessible the entire anterior surface of the tibia including that portion behind the patellar tendon. With a sharp thin osteotome the bone is divided transversely just below the attachment of the capsule into the margins of the tibia; the posterior cortex is left intact. By forcing the proximal segment upward a wedge-shaped space is opened on the anterior surface of the tibia. Cortical bone struts are placed in the defect to maintain the corrected position (Fig. 242). The wound is closed in the usual manner and the limb is immobilized in a plaster cast extending from the groin to the toes with the knee in extension.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT.** The extremity is fixed in plaster for 6 to 8 weeks; at the end of this period the cast is re-

moved and physical measures are instituted to restore joint function. Weight bearing is not allowed before the end of 12 weeks. Braces or cages should not be employed; rather, the quadriceps should be developed sufficiently to provide adequate stability and protection for the knee joint.

**Campbell's Procedure.** The upper end of the tibia is exposed by a 3 inch to 4 inch incision made parallel with the patellar tendon. It ends approximately 1 in. below the tibial tubercle. The bone is exposed by subperiosteal dissection with a sharp thin osteotome the tibia is divided completely at the level immediately below the tibial tubercle. By elevating the upper fragment a wedge-space based anteriorly is opened. The amount of elevation of the anterior portion of the proximal fragment should be sufficient to correct the forward tilt of the artic-



FIG. 242. (A) Severe genu recurvatum of left knee following an old fracture of the upper end of the tibia. The patient is a male 18 years old. (B) Roentgenogram taken

ular surface of the tibia. The desired position is maintained by two wedge-shaped bone grafts. These may be obtained from the anterior surface of the same tibia at a

to see whether or not the deformity is completely corrected.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT** After closure of the wound, a plaster cast is applied



FIG 242 (C, *Top*) Roentgenograms taken following correction by the Brett technic. Note elevation of the articular surface of the tibia. The cortical bone struts are still discernible 8 months postoperatively (D, *Bottom*) Position of the limb 26 months postoperatively. No loss of correction has occurred.



lower level through a separate incision. (The author prefers to use iliac grafts cut to the desired shape rather than cortical grafts taken from the tibia.) The grafts are fitted into slots previously cut on the anterior surface of the opposing osteotomized surfaces—one on the medial side and one on the lateral. The remaining defect is packed with bone chips. Before the wound is closed, roentgenograms should be taken

extending from the groin to the toes immobilizing the limb in 135° flexion at the knee joint the extremity is elevated in a balanced suspension apparatus and bags containing ice are placed around the cast at the level of the operative area. This cast is removed at the end of 3 weeks and replaced by a similar cast fixing the limb in less flexion. Ten to 12 weeks postoperatively bony healing is usually sufficient to permit removal of the cast and protected weight bearing on crutches. At this time an intensive regulated regimen is instituted to restore joint motion and quadriceps power. Unprotected weight bearing is allowed when roentgenograms reveal good bony healing and when the quadriceps is sufficiently strong to stabilize the knee joint adequately.

**Irwin's Procedure** (Fig. 243) This method was designed originally for the correction of genu recurvatum following poliomyelitis; however it can be utilized for correction of the deformity produced by other causes such as injuries to the prox-

imal tibial epiphysis or fractures of the upper end of the tibia which have healed with some backward angulation of the fragments producing forward tilt of the articular surface of the tibia. This method ensures control of the upper fragment in skeletal traction until the desired correction in all planes is attained. Before the tibia is osteotomized the lateral aspect of the shaft of the fibula just below the neck is exposed through a 1 inch incision and then divided obliquely. A segment of the shaft 1 inch in length is removed and broken up into small chips which are replaced in the defect. The periosteum and the overlying soft tissue are closed in the usual manner.

Through a second incision the upper end of the tibia is exposed subperiosteally as the bone is osteotomized in accordance with the pattern shown in Figure 243 A. A fine osteotome is used to cut out from the anterior cortex a tongue-like projection of bone attached to the lower fragment. Before the bone is divided transversely a Kirschner wire is passed through the proximal fra-

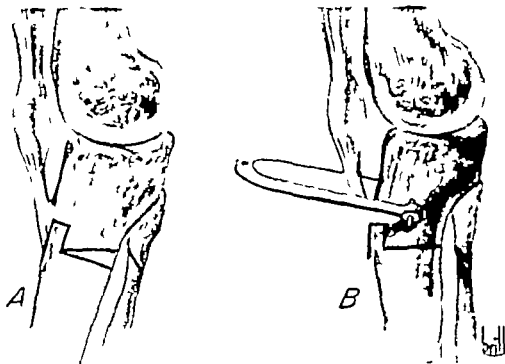


FIG. 243 Irwin's method for correction of genu recurvatum. (A) The pattern of the osteotomy in the tibia. (B) correction is maintained by traction made on a Kirschner wire passing through the proximal fragment.

ment, it traverses the bone at a right angle to the vertical axis of the knee joint. With a thin, broad osteotome the bone is osteotomized completely, and the upper end of the distal fragment is stripped from its periosteal attachments and displaced into the wound. A wedge of bone based posteriorly, the size of which was calculated previously, is removed from the shaft of the distal fragment. The anterior projection of bone is then fitted into the slot in the proximal fragment, and the two raw surfaces are opposed. The wound is closed in layers. At the end of the operation the patient is placed on a fracture table, and the limb is suspended to an overhead crossbar by means of a rope tied to a Kirschner bow attached to the wire in the proximal fragment (Fig. 243 B). Hyperextension of the proximal fragment is achieved by the weight of the extremity while this position is maintained a plaster spica is applied from the costal cage to and including the wire. The cast is allowed to harden. Fixing the pelvis, the femur and the proximal fragment of the tibia. However the distal fragment is still free and can be manipulated in any plane in order to attain complete correction of the existing deformity. This is accomplished with roentgenographic control. Next the cast is extended to the toes. The wire is removed 6 weeks postoperatively. The plaster spica is replaced by a long leg cast extending from the groin to the toes. Eight to 10 weeks postoperatively the second cast is removed, the subsequent management is similar to that described for the postoperative management following the Campbell procedure.

#### DEFORMITIES OF THE KNEE JOINT FOLLOWING POLIOMYELITIS

The most common deformities resulting from muscle imbalance produced by paralysis of muscles which motorize the knee joint are flexion contracture and genu recurvatum. The former may be complicated

by external rotation of the tibia on the femur and varying degrees of posterior subluxation of the tibia. Paralysis of the quadriceps may be complicated with a flexion deformity of the knee joint, this may occur when the hamstrings are not implicated or when they are partially affected. In the event that the inner hamstrings are partially or completely paralyzed and the biceps femoris predominates in power, the flexion deformity may be further complicated by external rotation of the tibia on the femur, varying degrees of increased deviation at the knee joint, and stretching of the ligamentous apparatus on the inner side of the knee joint. In the early stages there is no alteration in the configuration of the articular surfaces in relation to each other, later, if the deformities remain uncorrected, the growing bone ends undergo structural changes, conforming to the existing alterations in the articulation.

It was noted previously in this chapter that early and mild deformities respond to simple corrective measures, such as skin traction and turnbuckle or wedging-casts. More resistant deformities may need surgical intervention as posterior capsulotomy or posterior capsuloplasty, and if a valgus deformity persists after the flexion contracture is overcome supracondylar osteotomy may be required to complete the correction.

The management of the paralyzed quadriceps muscle is considered in Chapter 13 'Surgical Approaches and Procedures'. Yount observed that in cases of poliomyelitis the tensors of the fascia lata are the usual most important factors in producing flexion contracture of the hip. These comprise the tensor fasciae femoris and a portion of the gluteus maximus whose tendinous portions blend with the fascia lata. The fascia lata has a wide base of origin, extending from the coccyx posteriorly to ramus of the pubis anteriorly. Between these two points it inserts into the sacrum the crest of the ilium and Poupert's ligament. Its upper portion comprises two

layers which envelop the gluteus maximus and the tensor fasciae femoris. The iliotibial band is a thickened portion of the fascia along the lateral aspect of the thigh which converges distally. The band is continuous with the lateral intermuscular septum and contributes to the origin of the short head of the biceps femoris. As pointed out by Irwin the iliotibial band lies in a plane lateral and anterior to the axis of the hip joint and in a plane lateral and posterior to axis of the knee joint. The fascia lata band inserts into the lateral aspect of the head of the tibia and the head of the fibula. When in a state of contracture the tensors in addition to producing a flexion and abduction contracture of the hip also are responsible for lateral deviation and external rotation of the leg on the femur producing a classical knock knee. In the presence of flexion deformities the biceps femoris also plays a part in the production of the external rotation deformity of the leg. Based on this observation Yount advocated division of the iliotibial band and the intermuscular septum above the level of the knee joint and if necessary lengthening of the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle in order to correct deformities of the hip and the knee. Occasionally external torsion of the tibia may be a concomitant deformity of the aforementioned alterations. If the torsion is severe it is corrected by an osteotomy of the tibia after the deformities of the hip and the knee are corrected. Failure to correct the deviation of the foot may predispose the patient to recurrence of the valgus deformity at the knee joint. The following surgical procedure was designed for cases with moderate deformities and of relative short duration. In cases with severe and resistant flexion contractures of the hip more radical surgery as described by Irwin may be necessary in addition to this procedure.

#### YOUNT'S PROCEDURE

The lower region of the lateral aspect of the thigh is exposed by a longitudinal inci-

sion from 3 to 4 inches in length. The iliotibial band is identified and divided transversely approximately 1 inch above the upper border of the patella. The cut extends anteriorly dividing the fascia lata as far as the middle of the anterior surface of the thigh and posteriorly to the biceps tendon. In addition the lateral intermuscular septum which lies between the vastus externus and the biceps femoris is also divided. Some surgeons resect a segment of the iliotibial band and of the intermuscular septum (2 to 3 in.). Resistant and severe deformities may require lengthening of the tendon of the biceps femoris. As a rule at the termination of the operation complete correction of the flexion deformity is not possible without force because of the existing contracture in the capsule and internal hamstrings. The remaining deformity is corrected slowly by wedging plaster casts. Wedging begins when soft tissue healing is complete usually 3 weeks postoperatively. The wedging cast is cut circularly immediately below the level of the knee joint during correction of the flexion deformity the leg is forcibly rotated internally 2 or 3 times and the amount of correction secured is maintained by the application of reinforcing plaster bandages.

#### PROCEDURE FOR FLEXION ABDUCTION AND ROTATION DEFORMITIES

The following procedure was designed for severe flexion abduction and external rotation deformities of the knee without an associated flexion deformity of the hip. As a rule in such cases a hip flexion contracture existed prior to the time that the patient becomes ambulatory on crutches. With ambulation the weight of the extremity was sufficient to overcome the contracted structures about the hip. In these cases however the knock knee deformity tends to increase.

The structures on the lateral aspect of the knee are exposed by a curved incision beginning  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches above the level of the joint over the biceps tendon. It curves anteriorly to the lateral border of the patella

and then continues downward and posteriorly, terminating just below the head of the fibula. By retracting the skin flap posteriorly the sites of attachments of the fascia lata and the biceps below the knee joint are exposed. With the knee in complete extension, all the contracted structures are readily discernible. The biceps tendon is lengthened, and by subperiosteal dissection the iliotibial band and all ligamentous structures are stripped from the head of the tibia. The stripping begins at the tibial tubercle and extends proximally to the superior margin of the tibial condyle. The portion of the external lateral ligament attached to the head of the fibula is also released. In addition, the lateral intermuscular septum is identified and detached by sharp dissection for several centimeters from the shaft of the femur. When this last step is completed the knee is extended forcibly and rotated internally. Postoperative management consists of slow correction of the remaining deformity by wedging casts as described previously.

Irwin also emphasizes that numerous deformities of the lower extremity and the lower trunk may be produced by contractions of the fascia lata and the iliotibial band following poliomyelitis. These may occur in the face of adequate conservative management. He lists the deformities as follows: (1) flexion and abduction contracture of the hip, (2) contracture of the thigh in external rotation, (3) genu valgum, (4) short leg, (5) knee flexion deformity, (6) external torsion of the tibia, with or without subluxation on the femur, (7) varus deformity of the foot following attempts to fit a brace on an extremity in which the tibia is rotated externally, (8) external torsion of the femur, (9) pelvic obliquity and (10) exaggerated lumbar lordosis. Correction of these deformities cannot be achieved by manipulative methods or by wedging casts. In all instances regardless of the duration of the abnormalities or the age of the patient surgical methods are mandatory

in order to obtain permanent correction. When the hip is involved, division of the fascia lata according to the method described by Ober is an essential supplementary procedure to the Yount operation. If postoperative correction is deemed necessary, this can be achieved by wedging in a double spica, as described by Irwin.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON KNEE FLEXION DEFORMITIES FOLLOWING POLIOMYELITIS

The observations noted by Hughes in a study of knee flexion deformities following poliomyelitis are significant. This investigation was made on 48 cases treated by open release of ligaments and muscles, 20 cases were treated by supracondylar osteotomy and 3 by tibial osteotomy. The following conclusions were made:

1. Rapid growth was the most important single factor responsible for recurrence of the deformity. The final correction of flexion deformities attained in extremities not growing were better than those obtained in growing extremities.

2. A good foot thrust was an important factor in producing complete extension or hyperextension at the knee joint. The foot thrust was most effective in the presence of a strong soleus muscle or an equinus deformity of the foot without axial rotation of the tibia.

3. Good permanent correction by the aforementioned methods was achieved in the following order: tibial osteotomy, open release, supracondylar osteotomy and stretching.

4. The degree of functional improvement achieved by these methods was in the following order: open release, stretching, supracondylar osteotomy and tibial osteotomy.

5. In corresponding age groups open releases produced better anatomic correction than the other methods. Division of the posterior capsule, fascia lata and iliotibial and lengthening of the biceps were most essential in obtaining these results.

layers which envelop the gluteus maximus and the tensor fasciae femoris. The iliotibial band is a thickened portion of the fascia along the lateral aspect of the thigh which converges distally. The band is continuous with the lateral intermuscular septum and contributes to the origin of the short head of the biceps femoris. As pointed out by Irwin, the iliotibial band lies in a plane lateral and anterior to the axis of the hip joint and in a plane lateral and posterior to axis of the knee joint. The fascia lata band inserts into the lateral aspect of the head of the tibia and the head of the fibula. When in a state of contracture, the tensors in addition to producing a flexion and abduction contracture of the hip, also are responsible for lateral deviation and external rotation of the leg on the femur producing a classical knock knee. In the presence of flexion deformities the biceps femoris also plays a part in the production of the external rotation deformity of the leg. Based on this observation Yount advocated division of the iliotibial band and the intermuscular septum above the level of the knee joint and if necessary lengthening of the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle in order to correct deformities of the hip and the knee. Occasionally external torsion of the tibia may be a concomitant deformity of the aforementioned alterations. If the torsion is severe it is corrected by an osteotomy of the tibia after the deformities of the hip and the knee are corrected. Failure to correct the deviation of the foot may predispose the patient to recurrence of the valgus deformity at the knee joint. The following surgical procedure was designed for cases with moderate deformities and of relative short duration. In cases with severe and resistant flexion contractures of the hip more radical surgery as described by Irwin may be necessary in addition to this procedure.

#### YOUNT'S PROCEDURE

The lower region of the lateral aspect of the thigh is exposed by a longitudinal inci-

sion from 3 to 4 inches in length. The iliotibial band is identified and divided transversely approximately 1 inch above the upper border of the patella. The cut extends anteriorly, dividing the fascia lata as far as the middle of the anterior surface of the thigh and posteriorly to the biceps tendon. In addition the lateral intermuscular septum which lies between the vastus externus and the biceps femoris is also divided. Some surgeons resect a segment of the iliotibial band and of the intermuscular septum (2 to 3 in.). Resistant and severe deformities may require lengthening of the tendon of the biceps femoris. As a rule at the termination of the operation complete correction of the flexion deformity is not possible without force because of the existing contracture in the capsule and internal hamstrings. The remaining deformity is corrected slowly by wedging plaster casts. Wedging begins when soft tissue healing is complete usually 3 weeks postoperatively. The wedging cast is cut circularly immediately below the level of the knee joint during correction of the flexion deformity the leg is forcibly rotated internally 2 or 3 times, and the amount of correction secured is maintained by the application of reinforcing plaster bandages.

#### PROCEDURE FOR FLEXION ABDUCTION AND ROTATION DEFORMITIES

The following procedure was designed for severe flexion abduction and external rotation deformities of the knee without an associated flexion deformity of the hip. As a rule in such cases a hip flexion contracture existed prior to the time that the patient becomes ambulatory on crutches. With ambulation the weight of the extremity was sufficient to overcome the contracted structures about the hip. In these cases however the knock knee deformity tends to increase.

The structures on the lateral aspect of the knee are exposed by a curved incision beginning  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches above the level of the joint over the biceps tendon. It curves anteriorly to the lateral border of the patella

and then continues downward and posteriorly, terminating just below the head of the fibula. By retracting the skin flap posteriorly the sites of attachments of the fascia lata and the biceps below the knee joint are exposed. With the knee in complete extension, all the contracted structures are readily discernible. The biceps tendon is lengthened, and by subperiosteal dissection the iliotibial band and all ligamentous structures are stripped from the head of the tibia. The stripping begins at the tibial tubercle and extends proximally to the superior margin of the tibial condyle. The portion of the external lateral ligament attached to the head of the fibula is also released, in addition, the lateral intermuscular septum is identified and detached by sharp dissection for several centimeters from the shaft of the femur. When this last step is completed the knee is extended forcibly and rotated internally. Postoperative management consists of slow correction of the remaining deformity by wedging casts as described previously.

Irwin also emphasizes that numerous deformities of the lower extremity and the lower trunk may be produced by contractions of the fascia lata and the iliotibial band following poliomyelitis. These may occur in the face of adequate conservative management. He lists the deformities as follows: (1) flexion and abduction contracture of the hip, (2) contracture of the thigh in external rotation, (3) genu valgum, (4) short leg, (5) knee flexion deformity, (6) external torsion of the tibia with or without subluxation on the femur, (7) varus deformity of the foot following attempts to fit a brace on an extremity in which the tibia is rotated externally, (8) external torsion of the femur, (9) pelvic obliquity and (10) exaggerated lumbar lordosis. Correction of these deformities cannot be achieved by manipulative methods or by wedging casts. In all instances, regardless of the duration of the abnormalities or the age of the patient, surgical methods are mandatory

in order to obtain permanent correction. When the hip is involved, division of the fascia lata according to the method described by Ober is an essential supplementary procedure to the Yount operation. If postoperative correction is deemed necessary, this can be achieved by wedging in a double spica, as described by Irwin.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON KNEE FLEXION DEFORMITIES FOLLOWING POLIOMYELITIS

The observations noted by Hughes in a study of knee flexion deformities following poliomyelitis are significant. This investigation was made on 48 cases treated by open release of ligaments and muscles, 20 cases were treated by supracondylar osteotomy and 3 by tibial osteotomy. The following conclusions were made:

1. Rapid growth was the most important single factor responsible for recurrence of the deformity. The final correction of flexion deformities attained in extremities not growing were better than those obtained in growing extremities.

2. A good foot thrust was an important factor in producing complete extension or hyperextension at the knee joint. The foot thrust was most effective in the presence of a strong soleus muscle or an equinus deformity of the foot without axial rotation of the tibia.

3. Good permanent correction by the aforementioned methods was achieved in the following order: tibial osteotomy, open release, supracondylar osteotomy and stretching.

4. The degree of functional improvement achieved by these methods was in the following order: open release stretching, supracondylar osteotomy and tibial osteotomy.

5. In corresponding age groups, open releases produced better anatomic correction than the other methods. Division of the posterior capsule, fascia lata and iliotibial band and lengthening of the biceps were most essential in obtaining these results.



6 Following open release, in legs fully grown 6 weeks of immobilization with the knee in 180° of extension sufficed to prevent recurrences; however, in growing limbs 12 weeks of immobilization with the knee hyperextended was necessary.

7 The functional results in cases treated by open release surpassed those treated by other methods.

8 Tibial osteotomy in recurvatum invariably was followed by an increase in the degree of recurvatum. The causes of apparent subluxation are recurvatum following tibial osteotomy and rotation of the tibia and the fibula. The anatomic and functional results obtained by supracondylar osteotomy were not as good as those obtained by open release; most of the knees showing a good anatomic result by supracondylar osteotomy had also been stretched thoroughly.

9 Tibial subluxation in these cases was only apparent; it was uncommon in cases treated by supracondylar osteotomy and was observed frequently in those treated by open release of which many also had tibial osteotomies in recurvatum. Stability of the joint was not impaired by the apparent subluxation. The three important factors governing the weight bearing function of the knee joint with a partially or completely paralyzed quadriceps and with some power in the hamstrings are recurvatum, gluteus maximus power and foot thrust.

10 In cases treated by supracondylar osteotomy, the functional result was frequently vitiated by lateral relaxation and strain; this rarely occurred after stretching or open release.

#### GENU RECURVATUM FOLLOWING ANTERIOR POLIOMYELITIS

Comprehension of the mechanics responsible for genu recurvatum following poliomyelitis is essential in order to formulate a correct attack on the problem and to be able to prognosticate with some certainty the anticipated result in the individual case. For practical purposes the cases may be cate-

gorized into two groups: (1) genu recurvatum with structural changes in the bony elements of the knee joint, particularly the tibia, and (2) genu recurvatum associated with advanced relaxation of the supporting soft tissue structures on the posterior aspect of the joint without alterations in the bony components. In each type the mechanism of production of the deformity differs and is the prime factor in determining whether or not osseous changes occur. Irwin analyzed the different mechanisms in the following manner:

#### GENU RECURVATUM WITH OSSEOUS ALTERATIONS

The prime causative factor in this group is the inability (because of insufficient power) of the quadriceps apparatus to lock the knee in extension against resistance. A typical example would be one in which the hamstrings are not implicated, are not stretched and may even exhibit some shortening. In addition, the calf musculature also is not involved and usually is contracted and possesses more power than normal. Invariably the Achilles tendon becomes short, and the calf muscles overdevelop because of the altered mechanics of the patient's gait. When weight is borne on the affected extremity, first the heads of the metatarsals are brought in contact with the floor. This point of contact lies in a plane anterior to that of the knee joint, and the interval between the heads of the metatarsal bones and the insertion of the Achilles tendon comprises the arm of lever through which the calf muscles exert their force, producing a resultant force which is directed backward against the posterior structures of the knee joint. This altered gait produces an exaggerated spring in the step; the muscles on the posterior aspect of the thigh and the muscles of the calf, both groups being normal, are resistant to stretching. In these cases the factors responsible for hyperextension are observed in the upper third and in the condyles of the tibia. In the normal

tibia the superior articular surface of the tibia forms an angle of approximately  $90^\circ$  to the shaft. In the affected tibia the architectural pattern is so altered that the normal angle becomes more acute. In addition some posterior bowing of the upper third of the tibia is usually demonstrable and in some instances the tibia exhibits varying degrees of posterior subluxation. The deformity evolves slowly over a relatively long period of time and conforms to Wolff's law "the changes in the static relations of bone lead to changes in structure and physiologic function."

#### GENU RECURVATUM WITHOUT OSSEOUS ALTERATIONS

The prime causative factor in this group is weakness in the calf musculature and in the hamstring muscles. Rapid development of the deformity is the rule, without alterations in the bony components of the joint. Stretching of all the posterior supportive structures permits the joint to assume a

position of hyperextension. The structures involved are the posterior portion of the capsule, the posterior capsular ligaments and the hamstring muscles. As a rule, a cal caneus or calcaneovalgus deformity of the foot on the same side is a concomitant finding. When walking, these patients attempt to lock the knee in extension by an abnormal shift in the body weight, which creates a backward thrust on the posterior structures of the knee joint. Continuous use of the limb in this fashion favors hyperextension of the limb by stretching the supportive soft tissue elements.

#### CORRECTION OF GENU RECURVATUM INCIDENT TO ANTERIOR POLIOMYELITIS

Irwin points out that any form of surgical intervention designed to correct this deformity must fulfill two equally important requisites: (1) restoration of the mechanical alignment of the extremity and (2) following restoration of the mechanical alignment, the responsible factors must be so

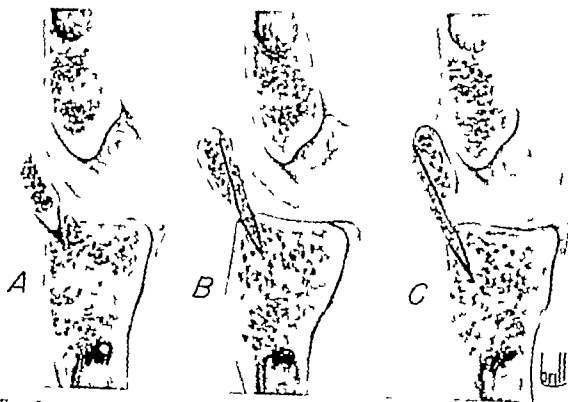


FIG. 244 Types of anterior bone blocks designed to check hyperextension. (A) Campbell (B) Mayer (C) Milch.

altered that the recurrence of the deformity is precluded by the original mechanism. Cases in the first group (showing alterations in the tibia with good power in the calf and the hamstring muscles) can be treated in such a fashion that the aforementioned requirements are fulfilled; hence the prognosis is excellent. This is achieved by restoring mechanical alignment by an *osteotomy of the upper third of the tibia* and later by transplantation of one or more of the hamstrings to the patella. By the latter procedure the patient is able to lock the knee in extension by the action of the transplanted muscles, thereby eliminating the action of a powerful calf to stabilize the joint.

In the second group (genu recurvatum without changes in the bony elements of the joint) the necessary requirements cannot be met; hence the prognosis is poor. No strong muscles on the flexor surface of the thigh exist; therefore the quadriceps mechanism cannot be reinforced by any type of muscle transplantation. It becomes apparent that the causative factors producing the deformity cannot be altered by surgical methods.

As a rule these cases are forced to wear a long leg brace to stabilize the joint and to retain normal alignment of the extremity. Operations on the soft tissues have been designed to check hyperextension of the joint on weight bearing. Notably among these are the operations of Gill and Heyman. However, these methods in most instances have failed to achieve the desired results because the new check ligaments formed eventually stretch, allowing recurrence of the deformity. On the other hand, Gill has reported some excellent long-term results by this method. Campbell and Mayer achieved correction of the hyperextension deformity by creating an anterior bone block: the former fused the patella to the tibia while the latter utilized a free tibial graft to construct the anterior bone block (Fig. 244). Of all the operations that described by Irwin is the most simple and

effective. It was designed for cases of genu recurvatum with alterations in the upper third of the tibia and with good power in the hamstrings and the calf muscles. It comprises (1) an *osteotomy of the upper third of the tibia* performed to restore the mechanical alignment and (2) transplantation of one or two hamstrings into the patella. The second operation is performed after bony healing is attained; it alters the causative factors responsible for the deformity. Irwin's osteotomy is described on page 328; the technic for transplantation of the hamstrings is recorded in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures."

**Gill's Operation for Genu Recurvatum (Fig. 245).** This operation was designed for severe cases of genu recurvatum resulting from relaxation and stretching of the structures posterior to the knee joint. Essentially it reconstructs a check ligament from periosteum and fascia lata with the purpose of preventing hyperextension.

**TECHNIC.** A longitudinal skin incision is made on the lateral aspect of the thigh beginning from just below the head of the fibula and extending upward to the middle of the thigh. A second incision is made on the inner aspect; it extends from the medial condyle of the tibia to the junction of the middle and the lower thirds of the thigh. The underlying fascia lata is divided in the line of the skin incisions and by blunt dissection the wounds are deepened to the femur. On each side the periosteum is cut longitudinally so as to form a posterior one third and an anterior two thirds. The posterior third is stripped by subperiosteal dissection from the femur from above downward until it becomes densely adherent to the bone and blends with the posterior and the lateral ligaments of the knee. The ligaments are split longitudinally in line with the incisions through the fascia lata and the periosteum. By means of a sharp thin osteotome the posterior periosteal flap together with the lateral ligaments is stripped from the condyles of the femur. The stripping is

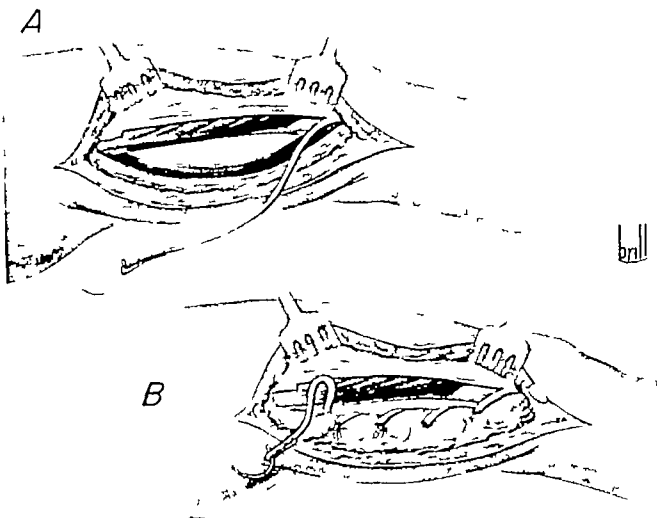


FIG. 245 Gill's operation for correction of genu recurvatum. This method creates posteriorly a strong ligament-checking hyperextension.

continued distally under the lateral ligaments, separating them from the upper aspect of the tibia but leaving them attached to the tibia  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch below the level of the joint line. In addition, the proximal attachment of the posterior ligament of the knee joint together with the periosteum, is separated from the femur. A long strip of fascia lata is cut from the edge of the outer anterior fascial flap leaving its distal end attached; this strip will be utilized as a suture (Fig. 245 A). With the knee flexed, the posterior free edges of the periosteum and the posterior edges of the fascia on both sides are drawn together immediately behind the femur and approximated by the fascial strip which is used as a continuous

suture (Fig. 245 B). The suture should be continued as far down as possible because the farther it is carried distally the greater is the shortening of the newly constructed check ligament. The procedure shortens all the structure on the posterior aspect of the femur and creates a stout check ligament to extension. The wounds are closed in the usual manner, at the termination of the operation the extremity is immobilized in a long leg plaster cast extending from the groin to the toes with the knee slightly flexed. After 6 weeks, the limb is fitted with a brace which locks short of complete extension. This protects the new ligament from any hyperextension strains, the brace is worn for approximately 3 months.

### FLAIL KNEE

Correct management of a paralytic knee is governed by the age and the occupation of the patient and the degree of involvement of the muscles motorizing the hip the ankle and the foot on the same side. In general in the absence of muscles with good power about the knee stabilization of the joint is not possible by tendon transplantation. The only other means of stabilization are a brace or arthrodesis of the joint. There is no doubt that arthrodesis provides the patient with a stable extremity, improves the patient's gait and eliminates a cumbersome brace. On the other hand there are disadvantages, some of which are not acceptable to the patient. In the sitting position the limb projects forward and creates an appreciable handicap. If the patient's occupation is a sedentary one the disadvantages of the sitting position with a stiff knee becomes apparent. In occupations necessitating the standing position or walking it is to the patient's advantage to have a stiff knee in a good position of function and be free of the brace. In growing children arthrodesis for a paralytic knee is rarely indicated. Arthrodesis performed before the epiphyseal plates are closed may result in disturbance of longitudinal growth or predispose the patient to a flexion deformity caused by a gradual epiphyseolysis at the distal end of the femur. When fusion is deemed necessary it should be delayed until the fourteenth year. In adults the decision should be made by the patient after all the advantages and the disadvantages have been considered. In cases with extensive involvement of both lower extremities marked improvement in stability and ambulation can be attained by fusing one knee joint and wearing a brace on the other extremity.

As recorded previously the flail knee may also exhibit other deformities such as flexion abduction and external rotation of the lower leg. When these are mild in nature fusion may be performed without prelimi-

nary correction. In more severe forms it is essential to restore alignment of the limb before fusion is attempted. This usually entails a surgical attack on the posterior structures of the knee joint (capsulotomy or capsuloplasty) and division of the contracted fascia lata. These preliminary procedures minimize the extent of shortening following the arthrodesis by permitting correction with minimal resection of bone. Stabilization of both the foot and the ankle by arthrodesing procedure must not be performed in the presence of a stiff knee; this combination results in a very labored form of ambulation the "rocker" gait. The indications and the contraindications and the different technics of arthrodesis are discussed in Chapter 13, Surgical Approaches and Procedures.

### TORSION OF THE TIBIA AND THE FEMUR

Tibial or femoral torsion is a twisting of the involved bone on its longitudinal axis. In so doing the alignment of the planes of motion at the proximal and the distal articulations are altered. This is especially true of the tibia. Two types of rotational deformities are possible: internal and external. In the normal adult tibia approximately 20° of external rotation are demonstrable. This is determined readily by the method described by Hutter and Scott. The joints of the knee and the ankle for practical purposes function as hinge joints; the position in which the planes are parallel is selected as the base position for measuring torsional abnormalities. Internal torsion occurs when the rotation is in the direction of the internal malleolus, and external torsion when it occurs in the direction of the external malleolus. A line parallel with the proximal articular surface of the tibia is projected through the coronal plane of the tibia; a second line passes through the center of the malleoli. At the point of coincidence these lines establish the angle of torsion (Fig. 246 A and B). The average tibial torsion in

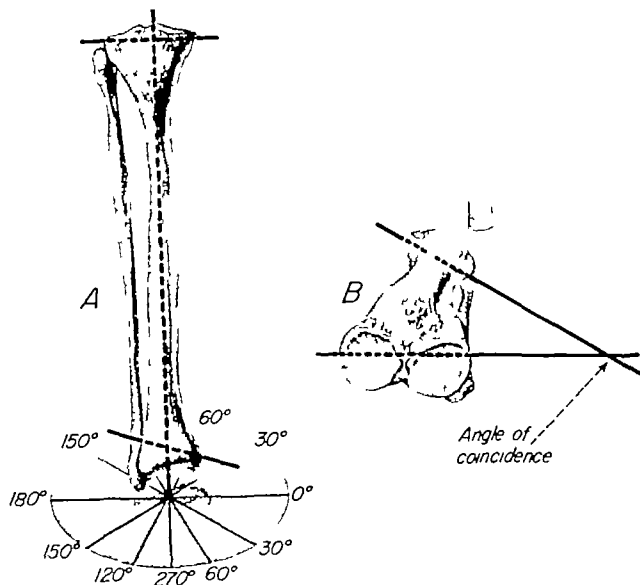


FIG. 246 (A and B) Method of determining tibial torsion. One line passes through the coronal plane of the tibia parallel with its proximal articular surface, a second line passes through the center of the malleoli. At the angle of coincidence these lines establish the angle of torsion. (Redrawn from Hutter and Scott)

the normal adult is  $20^\circ$  a variation of  $20^\circ$  is within normal limits. By this criteria an angle beyond  $40^\circ$  in external rotation and beyond the neutral or base position in internal rotation must be considered unphysiologic and of clinical importance.

Rotation deformities of the tibia and the femur are produced by numerous and divergent causes. Not infrequently they are observed subsequent to anterior poliomyelitis producing muscle imbalance in the lower extremities. The lesions may be evidence of growth disturbances in static or

congenital abnormalities of the bones and the joints or may be caused by malacic bone diseases, endocrine disturbances or infectious processes. It has been pointed out previously that external rotation of the tibia may be a concomitant structural alteration of valgus and flexion deformities of the knee, also not infrequently internal torsion of the tibia or the femur is observed in varus deformities of the knee and dislocations of the hip.

The most common cause of tibial and femoral torsion is some extrinsic mechani-

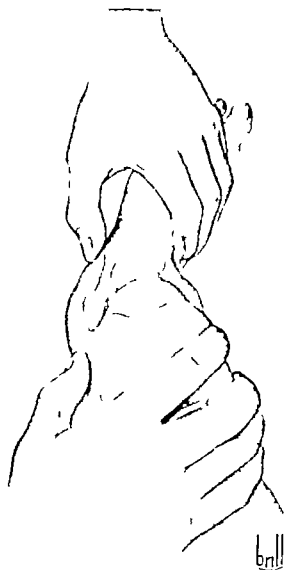


FIG. 246 (Continued) (C) Method of examination for tibial torsion.

cal factor acting during the developmental stage or shortly after birth resulting in either an internal or an external deformity of the bones. The tibia is implicated most frequently. Also there is evidence suggesting that abnormal stresses imposed on the extremities in infancy and early childhood produce internal or external rotation deformities of the tibia. Depending on the direction of the rotary stress applied many children with internal torsion of the tibia develop the habit of sleeping upon the abdomen with the hips and the knees flexed and the feet turned inward. On the other hand many children with external rotation

deformities acquire the habit of sitting on their legs with the knees flexed and the feet widely separated and rotated externally. In the latter group varying degrees of abnormal anteversion of the femoral neck is observed in the cases showing marked external rotation of the femur. Hutter and Scott observed that in Orientals who are accustomed to sitting on the floor with their legs folded under them and their feet pointing inward immediately beneath the buttocks internal torsion deformities of the tibia is a constant finding and is produced by the superincumbent weight of the body forcing the tibia into the position of internal rotation. It is interesting to note that descendants of Orientals who have adopted the mannerisms of the Western civilization fail to show a higher incidence or torsional deformities of the tibia than is found in the American population.

The aforementioned workers noted further that infants and preschool children have less external rotation than adults that normal developmental alterations particularly in school age children fail to correct to any extent severe torsional deformities of the tibia and that relatively little correction of internal torsion deformities of the tibiae occurs after the age of 7 years; this degree of deformity will most likely be present when the child becomes an adult.

For clinical purposes the degree of torsion can be estimated by physical examination by noting the relations of the patella to the malleoli. The patient sits in front of the examiner with the knees flexed 90° and with the patellae pointing directly forward. The left hand of the examiner is placed under the popliteal space and gently supports the leg so that the foot is not making firm pressure against the floor. The thumb and the index finger of the right hand grasp the malleoli. By looking down the longitudinal axis of the tibia the angle of torsion is established by calculating the angle made by a line passing through the bicondylar axis of the tibia and a line passing through the

center of both malleoli. Another method of detecting the presence of torsion is by extending the leg with the patella pointing straight upward, the thumb and the index finger of one hand grasp the ends of the bicondylar axis of the femur, and the thumb and the index finger of the other hand are placed over the internal and the external malleoli, the angle formed by these lines passing through the bicondylar and the bimalleolar axes is the angle of torsion (Fig 246 C)

### TREATMENT

The author has found manipulative measures in combination with the use of night splints forcing the legs in the opposite direction to the existing torsional deformities to be a very effective method of treatment. When in addition to the internal torsional deformity the child exhibits an outbowing of the entire tibia both deformities must be corrected.

**Manipulative Technic.** For internal torsion deformities the child lies on the back and the mother takes her position at the child's feet. One hand is placed over the anterior surface of the knee and grasps firmly the upper end of the tibia, and the other hand grasps the ankle. She firmly and steadily derotates or untwists the leg by forcing the foot outward. This position is maintained for 10 to 20 seconds, and then the limb is released. The maneuver is repeated from 8 to 10 times twice daily. To correct the lateral bowing of the leg the mother stands at the side of the child and grasps the knee and the ankle with one hand above and one below. The palmar surfaces of the thumbs are placed along the lateral aspect of the child's leg. Inward pressure is then exerted by the thumbs over the middle of the leg. As above, the correction position is maintained for 10 to 20 seconds and then released. The maneuver is executed 8 or 10 times twice daily. For external rotation deformities the above procedures are reversed.

During the sleeping hours the child wears

a Dennis Browne splint with shoes attached to the foot plates holding the feet in the desired position of internal or external rotation. At first the plates are so adjusted that in cases of internal torsion the feet are held in  $20^\circ$  of external rotation, this is increased gradually, in severe cases the feet may be forced outward as much as  $40^\circ$  to  $45^\circ$ . In order to prevent development of knock knee deformities the length of the bar must not exceed 8 inches. With the above regimen correction of uncomplicated deformities is usually achieved in from 4 to 6 months. In cases of tibial torsion Hutter and Scott advocate discontinuance of the splint before full correction is attained in order to allow for compensatory alterations in the architectural pattern of the limbs in the subsequent growth period.

**Surgical Correction in Tibial Deformities.** Severe torsional deformities in children which fail to respond to conservative measures and those encountered in adults require surgical intervention. Essentially, this comprises derotation osteotomies of the tibia and the fibula. A distinction must be made between torsion deformities existing as uncomplicated lesions and those which are associated with angular deformities of the knee joint, such as valgus and varus deformities.

In children correction may be attained readily by a torsional osteotomy without losing continuity of the fragments. This method is also applicable to cases of resistant clubfeet with internal torsion of the tibia. Often correction of the varus and the equinus deformity of the foot cannot be attained until the internal torsion element of the deformity is overcome.

**ROTATIONAL OSTEOTOMY.** Kirschner wires are passed through the upper and the lower ends of the tibia, the proximal wire traverses the bone parallel with the center of the articular surfaces of the tibia while the distal wire is placed parallel with the bimalleolar axis. Midway between the two points a skin incision 2 to 3 inches in length



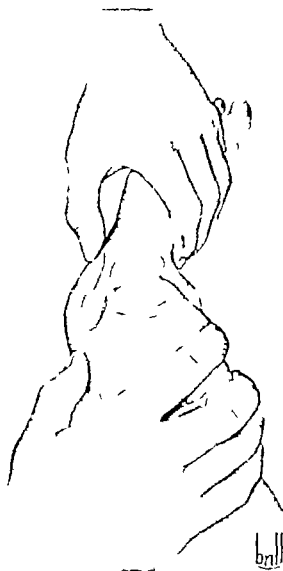


FIG. 246 (Continued) (C) Method of examination for tibial torsion

cal factor acting during the developmental stage or shortly after birth resulting in either an internal or an external deformity of the bones. The tibia is implicated most frequently. Also there is evidence suggesting that abnormal stresses imposed on the extremities in infancy and early childhood produce internal or external rotation deformities of the tibia. Depending on the direction of the rotary stress applied many children with internal torsion of the tibia develop the habit of sleeping upon the abdomen with the hips and the knees flexed and the feet turned inward. On the other

deformities acquire the habit of sitting their legs with the knees flexed and the widely separated and rotated externally. In the latter group, varying degrees of abnormal anteversion of the femoral neck is observed in the cases showing marked external rotation of the femur. Hutter and Scott observed that in Orientals who are accustomed to sitting on the floor with their legs flexed under them and their feet pointing immediately beneath the buttocks internal torsion deformities of the tibia is a confounding and is produced by the superincumbent weight of the body forcing the tibia into the position of internal rotation. It is interesting to note that descendants of Orientals who have adopted the mannerisms of the Western civilization fail to show the higher incidence or torsional deformities of the tibia than is found in the American population.

The aforementioned workers noted further that infants and preschool children have less external rotation than adults, normal developmental alterations particularly in school-age children fail to correct to any extent severe torsional deformities of the tibia and that relatively little correction of internal torsion deformities of the tibiae occurs after the age of 7 years. The degree of deformity will most likely be present when the child becomes an adult.

For clinical purposes the degree of torsion can be estimated by physical examination by noting the relations of the patella to the malleoli. The patient sits in front of the examiner with the knees flexed 90° and the patellae pointing directly forward. The left hand of the examiner is placed under the popliteal space and gently supports the leg so that the foot is not making firm pressure against the floor. The thumb and index finger of the right hand grasp the malleoli. By looking down the longitudinal axis of the tibia the angle of torsion is established by calculating the angle made by a line passing through the bicondylar axis

center of both malleoli. Another method of detecting the presence of torsion is by extending the leg with the patella pointing straight upward, the thumb and the index finger of one hand grasp the ends of the bi-condylar axis of the femur, and the thumb and the index finger of the other hand are placed over the internal and the external malleoli, the angle formed by these lines passing through the bi-condylar and the bi-malleolar axes is the angle of torsion (Fig 246 C)

### TREATMENT

The author has found manipulative measures in combination with the use of night splints, forcing the legs in the opposite direction to the existing torsional deformities, to be a very effective method of treatment. When in addition to the internal torsional deformity the child exhibits an outbowing of the entire tibia both deformities must be corrected.

**Manipulative Technique.** For internal torsion deformities the child lies on the back and the mother takes her position at the child's feet. One hand is placed over the anterior surface of the knee and grasps firmly the upper end of the tibia, and the other hand grasps the ankle. She firmly and steadily derotates or untwists the leg by forcing the foot outward, this position is maintained for 10 to 20 seconds, and then the limb is released. The maneuver is repeated from 8 to 10 times twice daily. To correct the lateral bowing of the leg the mother stands at the side of the child and grasps the knee and the ankle with one hand above and one below. The palmar surfaces of the thumbs are placed along the lateral aspect of the child's leg. Inward pressure is then exerted by the thumbs over the middle of the leg. As above, the correction position is maintained for 10 to 20 seconds and then released. The maneuver is executed 8 or 10 times twice daily. For external rotation deformities the above procedures are reversed.

During the sleeping hours the child wears

a Dennis Browne splint with shoes attached to the foot plates holding the feet in the desired position of internal or external rotation. At first the plates are so adjusted that in cases of internal torsion the feet are held in 20° of external rotation, this is increased gradually, in severe cases the feet may be forced outward as much as 40° to 45°. In order to prevent development of knock knee deformities the length of the bar must not exceed 8 inches. With the above regimen, correction of uncomplicated deformities is usually achieved in from 4 to 6 months. In cases of tibial torsion Hutter and Scott advocate discontinuance of the splint before full correction is attained in order to allow for compensatory alterations in the architectural pattern of the limbs in the subsequent growth period.

**Surgical Correction in Tibial Deformities.** Severe torsional deformities in children which fail to respond to conservative measures and those encountered in adults require surgical intervention. Essentially, this comprises derotation osteotomies of the tibia and the fibula. A distinction must be made between torsion deformities existing as uncomplicated lesions and those which are associated with angular deformities of the knee joint, such as valgus and varus deformities.

In children correction may be attained readily by a torsional osteotomy without losing continuity of the fragments. This method is also applicable to cases of resistant clubfeet with internal torsion of the tibia. Often correction of the varus and the equinus deformity of the foot cannot be attained until the internal torsion element of the deformity is overcome.

**ROTATIONAL OSTEOTOMY.** Kirschner wires are passed through the upper and the lower ends of the tibia, the proximal wire traverses the bone parallel with the center of the articular surfaces of the tibia, while the distal wire is placed parallel with the bi-malleolar axis. Midway between the two points a skin incision 2 to 3 inches in length

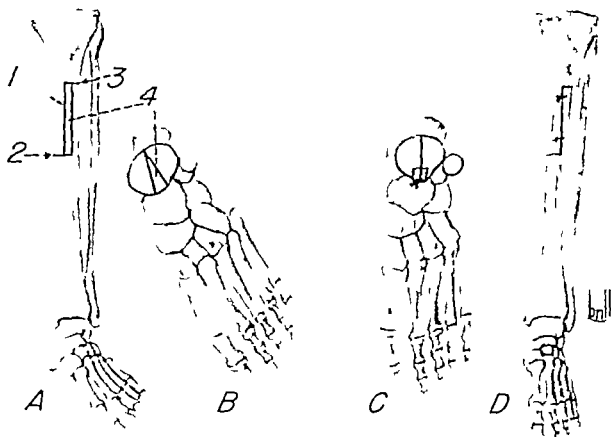


FIG. 247 O'Donoghue's rotation osteotomy of the tibia. (A) The distal horizontal transverse cut of the Z is always on the side of the correction. (B) Depicts the segments of bone removed between the two longitudinal cuts in the tibia. (C and D) The deformity is corrected by rotating the leg inward, and the fragments are fixed by sutures passing through drill holes in both fragments. (Redrawn from O'Donoghue)

is made over the anteromedial aspect of the tibia. The bone is exposed subperiosteally and the soft tissues are protected by Bennett retractors. Five or six linear cuts are made with a motor saw around the circumference of the bone; the desired correction is attained by twisting the leg distal to the osteotomy site in the opposite direction to the existing deformity. The periosteum and the skin are closed in the usual manner. At the termination of the operation the Kirschner wires are used as guides; the leg is twisted until the correct relationship is restored between the upper and the lower articular surfaces of the tibia. While this position is maintained by the surgeon, an assistant applies a circular cast incorporat-

ing the wires; the cast extends from the groin to the toes.

**Postoperative Management.** At the end of 6 to 8 weeks bony healing is usually sufficient to permit removal of the pins and the cast and to start protected weight bearing.

**ROTATION OSTEOTOMY OF THE TIBIA (O'DONOGHUE)** (Fig. 247). This procedure allows excellent control of the fragments and ensures bony healing by bringing into contact large surface areas of raw bone. It should not be used in the presence of compound deformities because this method was not designed to correct angular deformities.

**Technic.** A skin incision 4 to 5 inches long is made on the anterior surface of the tibia

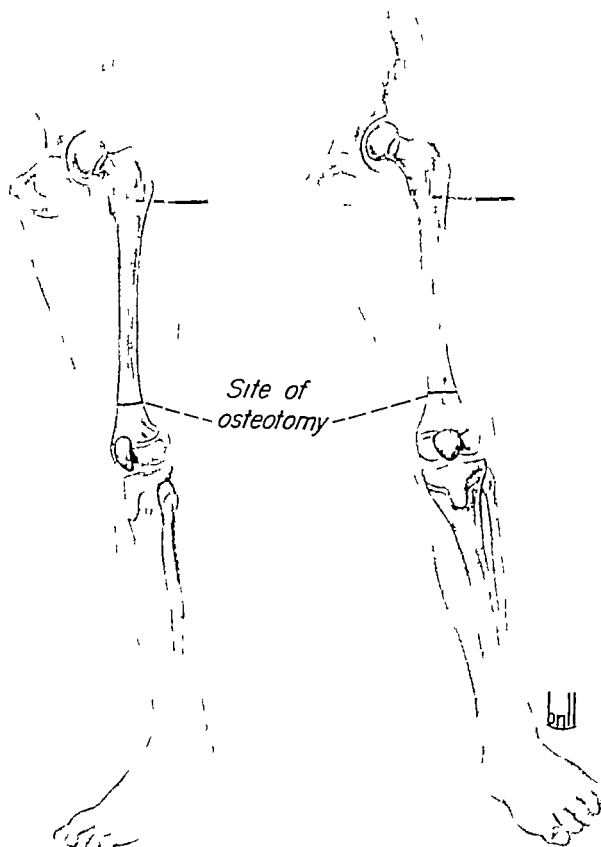


FIG. 248 Derotation osteotomy for torsion of the femur. The Steinmann pin in the greater trochanter is incorporated into the plaster spica. This stabilizes the proximal fragment.

beginning slightly below the tibial tubercle and extending vertically downward. The entire circumference of the tibia is exposed subperiosteally and the soft tissues are protected with Bennett retractors. A longitudinal cut  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 inches in length is made with a motor saw in the anterior cortex of the bone. The cut is made parallel with the tibial crest and 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches medial to it. Two transverse cuts are made at the ends of the linear cut converting the line of osteotomy into the shape of a Z. The distal horizontal transverse cut of the Z is always on the side of the direction of the correction. For example, if the leg distal to the side of the osteotomy is to be rotated inwardly, the distal transverse cut extends from the longitudinal cut to the medial border. On the other hand, if the lower segment of the leg is to be rotated outwardly, the distal transverse cut extends outward and the proximal cut inward. A second longitudinal cut is made in the bone parallel with the first and on its outer side. The width of the strip of bone between the two cuts depends upon the amount of correction desired. The osteotomy is completed by removing the strip of bone and dividing the posterior cortex with a fine sharp osteotome. Care must be taken not to injure the soft tissues on the posterior aspect of the leg. By twisting the leg and closing the anterior edges of the osteotomy, the rotational correction is achieved. The corrected position is maintained by drilling holes through the two bony segments and tying them together with catgut sutures or fixing them with screws. After closure of the periosteum and the skin, the limb is immobilized in a plaster cast extending from the groin to the toes, fixing the knee in  $10^\circ$  to  $15^\circ$  of flexion.

*Postoperative Management.* Plaster immobilization is maintained for 6 to 8 weeks. After this period of time bony healing has progressed sufficiently usually to permit removal of the cast and to allow protected weight bearing.

## SURGICAL CORRECTION IN FEMUR DEFORMITIES

Surgical correction is achieved most readily by a supracondylar osteotomy, in which the line of division in the bone must be proximal to the epiphyseal cartilage plate in order to avoid injury to this structure. The position of the proximal segment is controlled by a Steinmann pin driven into the greater trochanter and incorporated in the plaster cast.

### DEROTATION OSTEOTOMY (Fig. 248)

The extremity is rotated internally so that the greater trochanter assumes an anterior position through a stab wound in the skin. A Steinmann pin is driven deeply into the base of the trochanter, its outer end is allowed to project from the skin.

A vertical skin incision 3 to 4 inches in length is made over the lateral aspect of the lower third of the thigh. The skin flaps are retracted and the fascia lata is divided in the line of the skin incision. A line of cleavage is developed anterior to the lateral intermuscular septum until the shaft of the bone is reached. The periosteum is divided longitudinally and stripped from the entire circumference of the bone. Bennett retractors are placed above and below the shaft of the femur in order to expose adequately the osteotomy site and to protect the soft tissues. With a fine sharp osteotome the bone is divided transversely just proximal to the metaphysis. Then the distal segment and the lower leg are rotated in the opposite direction of the existing deformity—internally for external torsion and externally for internal torsion of the femur. After derotation of the lower segment the patella should point straight forward. The periosteum and the skin are closed in the usual manner. A plaster spica from the costal cage to the toes is applied incorporating the Steinmann pin which holds the proximal segment in the corrected position.

*Postoperative Management.* At the end

of 4 to 6 weeks the pin is removed, the cast is removed at the end of 8 to 10 weeks, depending on the extent of bony consolidation at the osteotomy site shown by roentgenographic examination. A caliper brace should be worn for 6 to 8 weeks to prevent recurrence of the deformity or the development of angular deformities at the site of the osteotomy.

### DEFORMITIES OF THE KNEE INCIDENT TO CEREBRAL PALSY

The revived interest in cases of cerebral palsy has borne fruit, and there are indications that more valuable information is forthcoming. Phelps, Carlson, Fay, Crothers and many other workers have made outstanding contributions. Comprehension, at least in part, of the basic pathology and some understanding of the mechanisms of the intricate neuromuscular disorders in cases of cerebral palsy have been responsible for the present-day methods of treatment which are less pessimistic than they were several decades ago. Surgical procedures performed in properly selected cases must be considered as only a part of the total process of rehabilitation whose prime consideration is to make the patient physically independent and acceptable to society. Physical rehabilitative methods produce the best results; surgery must be considered as an adjunct to these measures by removing barriers to and facilitating the broad plan of therapy.

Essentially cerebral palsy is an impairment of the normal muscular mechanism resulting from lesions situated in the cortex, the basal ganglia or the cerebellum. The location of the intracranial lesion governs the type of peripheral neuromuscular dysfunction. Clinically, the cases may be grouped into five categories: (1) spastic, (2) athetoid, (3) ataxic, (4) rigidities and (5) tremor. In addition mixed types also occur.

### ETIOLOGY

Cerebral palsy may be the result of numerous and unrelated causative factors. Hitherto, birth trauma was considered as the prime etiologic agent responsible for the greater majority of these cases. According to Phelps, only a small percentage (3%) are caused by injury at the time of birth. These injuries may be mechanical in origin, such as cortical hemorrhages or fractures of the skull produced by obstetric forceps or anoxia resulting from the deleterious effects of anesthetics, by an umbilical cord wrapped tightly around the infant's neck or by delayed resuscitation of the infant. It has been pointed out that a sudden change from the high intra-uterine pressure to atmospheric pressure may be a factor in causing rupture of the thin friable, cerebral vessels in infants born prematurely. These mechanisms usually are responsible for the spastic type of cerebral palsy.

Prenatal developmental or congenital defects of the brain are responsible for a certain number of cases; the peripheral neuromuscular dysfunction in these cases is characteristic of the ataxic and the athetoid types. Postnatal causes of cerebral palsy include such lesions as thrombosis, embolism and infectious diseases which may give rise to an encephalitis as pertussis, measles and pneumonia.

### TYPES OF CEREBRAL PALSY

#### SPASTIC TYPE

In this type the cerebral cortex is implicated primarily. As noted previously, most frequently it is the result of intracranial trauma. Characteristic of this type is the involvement of groups of muscles, rather than a single muscle and, depending on the location of the lesion in the cortex, the muscles may exhibit spasticity, flaccidity or both. The true spastic muscle elicits hyperirritability and hypercontractability on stretching. This phenomenon, designated

the stretch reflex is readily discernible in a spastic quadriceps muscle. Attempts on the part of the hamstrings to flex the knee initiate a powerful contraction of the quadriceps, blocking flexion of the knee. Also, a spastic muscle may overpower and stretch its antagonists to the point that they become weak and ineffective. This mechanism is the basis of muscle imbalance about joints, resulting in the formation of fixed deformities of the involved joints. The deep reflexes are exaggerated, the superficial reflexes are diminished, and in some instances ankle clonus is demonstrable. Only in rare instances is the lesion isolated to that portion of the cerebral cortex producing complete flaccidity of the affected limb. If only one extremity is implicated the lesion is designated monoplegia, hemiplegia. Indicates involvement of one side of the body. paraplegia applies to involvement of both lower extremities, diplegia designates implication of either both lower or both upper extremities, and quadriplegia implicates all four extremities. Approximately 40 per cent of all cases of cerebral palsy are of the spastic type.

#### ATHETOID TYPE

In this group the abnormality resides in the basal ganglia, which normally possess the faculty of selecting impulses from cortical levels. This intricate mechanism is impaired and involuntary impulses are released giving rise to bizarre unpredictable unco-ordinated involuntary movements. The types of movements vary greatly, they may be constant or intermittent, slow or rapid, or they may be manifest only with effort. The muscles supplied by the cranial nerves as well as any or all of the extremities may exhibit these abnormal manifestations. Implication of the muscles of facial expression and the muscles of speech are responsible for the characteristic grimacing and constant twitching of the athetoids, often these features have been interpreted erroneously as evidences of mental defi-

ciency. In uncomplicated cases of this group (in which the cortex is not damaged seriously) the mentality may not be affected seriously. Cases in this group are further classified as tension, nontension, tremor, flail and dystonic. The spasticity is more apparent than real, however, some muscles may exhibit increased tone or tension which is an expression on the part of the athetoids to bring under control the involuntary motions. The reflexes usually are not increased, there is no ankle clonus and the Babinski test is negative, the stretch reflex is also absent. Tension in the athetoid will disappear if repeated passive flexion and extension movements are executed rapidly. This type of cerebral palsy comprises approximately 30 per cent of the cases.

#### ATAXIC TYPE

The predominant lesions involve the cerebellum, although other portions of the brain may be affected. Most cases are of congenital origin, but in a small number hemorrhage sustained at birth may be the causative factor. The characteristic clinical features are ataxia and impairment or loss of kinesthetic sense. Ataxia is manifest by loss of balance and postural sense. As a rule there are varying degrees of speech defects and in addition dizziness and nausea may be present. In contrast with the spastic type, the muscles of the ataxic exhibit lack of tone and diminished deep reflexes, the tendons and the capsular tissues may be hypermobile. Children in this group show evidence of greater spontaneous improvement than those in the other groups. Voluntary balance control may be achieved through re-education of the motor pathways.

#### TREMOR AND RIGIDITY TYPES

Less is known in regard to the rigidities and the tremors than the other types of cerebral palsy. They are rarely of congenital origin. Tremor most frequently is an unfortunate sequel of postnatal encephalitis, while rigidity may be the ultimate result of

prolonged postnatal anoxia, producing wide spread brain damage. A high degree of feeble-mindedness is characteristic of these types, particularly in the constant rigidities. In the rigidities loss of muscle elasticity is a predominant feature. When stretched, the muscles offer considerable resistance. As a rule, the muscles disclose no hyperactivity, and the stretch reflex is absent. Two types of rigidities are recognized clinically the intermittent and constant. In the former periods of muscular relaxation occur, alternating with periods of rigidity.

#### PROGNOSIS

In cerebral palsy the many obstructions encountered to the progress of the patient render the outlook for complete rehabilitation relatively poor. The tendency to emotional instability, impairment of speech development and intellectual retardation all are factors which preclude rapid advancement toward the desired aims of any comprehensive plan of therapy. As noted previously, in many instances intellectual retardation is not the result of poor mentality but rather of retarded development because these patients are unable to compete in the environment of normal children. It becomes apparent that correct evaluation of the child's mental capabilities is the prime requisite before any plan of treatment is formulated. Even in children with mental acumen progress is slow nevertheless it is gratifying to note the effort that some of these patients expend in trying to overcome their physical handicaps. The ultimate result is dependent upon the potentialities of the patient and the execution of a regulated preconceived plan of physical and mental rehabilitation.

#### TREATMENT

It is not within the scope of this book to deal with the treatment of the different types of cerebral palsy. However, some mention should be made of the methods employed in a broad plan of treatment. Cor-

rect evaluation of each individual case is essential, this demands the combined studies of pediatrician, neurologist, psychiatrist, psychologist and orthopedic surgeon. Treatment embodies the efforts of trained physical therapists, occupational therapists and speech therapists. In addition, full co-operation of the parents is an essential part of the plan. The role of the orthopedic surgeon is to remove obstructions to the physical rehabilitative program by improving prehensional function and locomotion by selected surgical procedures. The over all plan is complex and spans many years of concerted effort.

In the spastic group, treatment is directed toward the prevention of contractures and the acquisition of fundamental motions by constant repetition. Because passive motions initiate the stretch reflex they should be avoided as much as possible. In addition, the weakened and stretched antagonists should be strengthened. Braces are useful adjuncts to permit the patient to assume the upright position and to control voluntary motions and to develop a sense of balance. Also, braces are utilized to correct and prevent contracture. The spastic type is most amenable to surgical procedures, provided that the patients are selected carefully. The operative procedures found most useful are neurectomies, transposition of tendons, lengthening of shortened tendons and arthrodeses.

The athetoid cases present even more difficult problems. Before voluntary motions can be taught, it is imperative to eliminate involuntary movements which interfere with the rhythmical performance of a single voluntary motion. This can be achieved only by training the patient to attain complete relaxation. After this obstruction is overcome voluntary co-ordinated motions can begin. Except for postural contractures of joints, the athetoid is not likely to develop contractures. When they occur braces may be employed to advantage. Braces may also be used especially on the lower ex-



limbs to control involuntary motions

The aims in the treatment of the ataxic group are to improve muscle tone develop a sense of balance and to teach the patient to sit stand and walk As in the previous two types braces are useful valuable adjuncts to the treatment Surgery in these cases has nothing to offer and therefore is contraindicated

The methods of physical rehabilitation employed in the spastic and the athetoid groups are of little value in tremors and rigidities In these cases the intracranial damage is usually extensive Except for release of severe contractures in the rigidities surgery is not justified Medicinal therapy plays the major role in the management of these cases

#### SURGERY

Except in rare instances the spastic form of cerebral palsy is the only type which is amenable to surgical procedures provided that certain criteria are fulfilled According to Green and McDermott the following basic criteria must be established before surgery is considered

- 1 The patient must be thoroughly evaluated and the type of paralysis and the degree of motor dysfunction must be classified as correctly as possible

- 2 The patient's sense of balance should be established in order to determine whether or not it is sufficient to permit the anticipated result Patients unable to maintain a sitting position because of lack of sense of balance certainly cannot be expected to walk regardless of the type of operations performed on the lower extremities

- 3 The mental status of the patient must be established Cross mental deficiency is a contraindication to operative procedures on the extremities On the other hand even in the presence of feeble-mindedness operations are justified if it is felt that the patient can be made to walk

- 4 In patients with low mental status the operation of choice is one which does not

require a long and intensive program of muscle training

- 5 It is of prime importance to recognize not only the spastic muscles but also the power of and control of all muscles of the extremities particularly the antagonists of the spastic muscles. The antagonists exhibit marked weakness and for practical purposes a complete flaccid paralysis noted previously flaccidity may result from a cerebral lesion In the presence of flaccid muscles the difficulty of the patient will be eliminated by relieving spasticity On the other hand a muscle weakened by constant stretching will regain power when the stretching element is removed

- 6 Age is a delimiting factor certain operations are permissible in young patients in order to eliminate deformities and enhance function. However this must be considered as a temporary measure because subsequent surgical procedures may be necessary when the child is older

#### CORRECTION OF DEFORMITIES OF THE KNEE IN SPASTIC PARALYSIS

Flexion contracture is the usual deformity encountered in the knee joint It is the result of impaired balance between the extensor and the flexor muscles however occasionally the deformity may be a concomitant feature of adduction flexion deformities at the hip joint The operations usually employed to overcome this deformity comprise lengthening of the hamstring tendons displacement of a high patella to a lower level in cases of a stretched and contracted quadriceps and division of the patellar ligament In some cases improvement of knee extension in walking may be obtained by transference of the hamstring tendons to the femoral condyles or by neurectomies and transference of the iliotibial bands to the patella have failed to achieve the desired results and hence are rarely employed

In the spastic group hyperextension

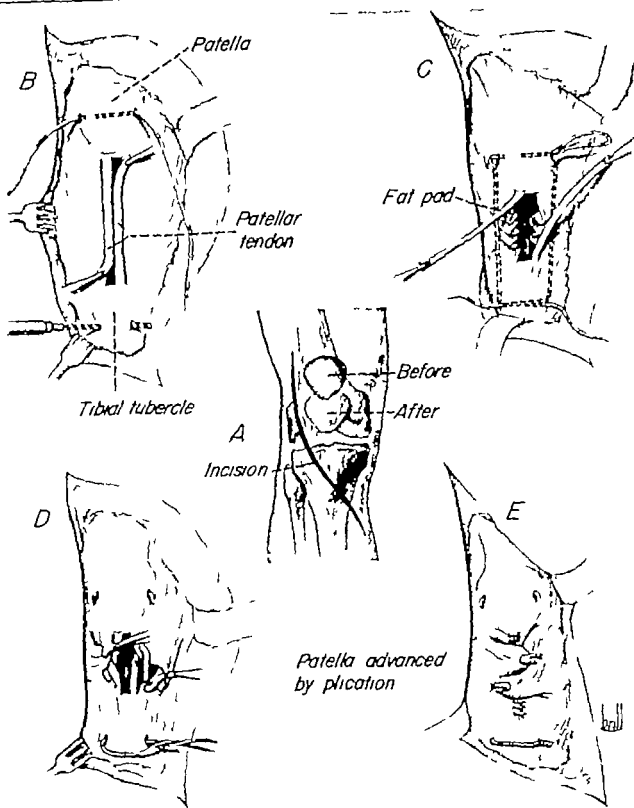


FIG. 249 Chandler's operation for advancement of the patella. (Redrawn from Chandler J Internat. Coll Surgeons 3 434)

formities of the knee are usually the result of an equinus deformity of the foot with a short tendo achillis associated with imbalance between the extensor and the flexor

muscles of the knee. This deformity may also arise subsequent to operative procedures such as tenotomy or lengthening of the hamstrings or as a complication to dis-

turbance of growth of the proximal epiphyseal plate of the tibia following trauma or operative procedures in this region.

#### ADVANCEMENT OF PATELLA IN SPASTIC PARALYSIS (CHANDLER)

In the small group of cases of spastic paralysis with flexion contractures of the knee joint the usual surgical measures such as lengthening or tenotomy of the hamstrings neurectomy of the flexors or posterior capsulotomy of the knee joint will not correct the deformity. In these cases the patient stands and walks with the knee partially flexed. Active extension of the knee is possible to  $160^\circ$  although the knee in some instances can be extended passively to a position of complete extension. Examination of the extensor apparatus discloses that the patella occupies a position opposite the lower shaft of the femur proximal to its normal anatomic location. Also upon flexing the knee the patella rides high on the femoral condyles producing an angular configuration of the knee joint. The patellar tendon is abnormally long and prominent anteriorly. In the presence of these abnormalities the mechanics of the quadriceps are so altered that the last few degrees of extension cannot be attained even when the posterior structures offer no resistance.

To obtain complete and active extension Chandler devised an operation to advance the patella to a lower level by reattaching the tibial tubercle with the patellar tendon attached to a lower level on the anterior surface of the tibia. This procedure reestablishes normal leverage and permits the quadriceps to extend the knee joint completely. In the event that the posterior structures offer resistance to correction this obstruction must first be overcome by stretching by wedging casts by lengthening of the hamstrings or by posterior capsulotomy of the knee joint. Although this procedure produces the desired results the ante-

rior portion of the proximal tibial epiphysis may be disturbed sufficiently to cause an arrest of growth resulting in genu recurvatum. Hence the originator redesigned the method wherein the patella is advanced without disturbing the bony parts of the upper end of the tibia. The operation comprises shortening the patellar tendon by reefing and plication.

#### TECHNIC (Fig. 249)

A curved skin incision exposes the patellar tendon. It begins on the lateral side of the patella 1 inch proximal to its upper border and curves distally and medially crossing the distal portion of the tendon. It ends on the anteromedial aspect of the tibia 1 inch below the tibial tubercle. After the superficial fascia is divided the flaps are retracted to either side bringing into view the patella and the patellar tendon. The center of the patella is drilled transversely and a stainless steel wire is inserted. A second transverse drill hole is made through the crest of the tibia immediately below the tibial tubercle (Fig. 249 B). A curved cannula is inserted beneath the aponeurosis opposite the lateral opening of the tibial drill hole and is forced proximally under the aponeurosis to emerge opposite the lateral opening of the drill hole in the patella. The lateral segment of the wire is inserted into the lumen of the cannula and then the cannula is withdrawn. A similar procedure is executed on the medial side and both ends of the wire are then passed through the hole in the tibia (Fig. 249 C). A vertical incision is made in the mid line of the patellar tendon and narrow strips of tendon are cut from its free margins. One strip retains its attachment to the patella and the other to the tibia (Fig. 249 C). By drawing on its ends the wire is made taut and the patella assumes a normal anatomic position in relation to the joint line. This position is maintained by twisting the ends of the wire (Fig. 249 D). Using a fascia needle the strips of tendon are passed through the redundant

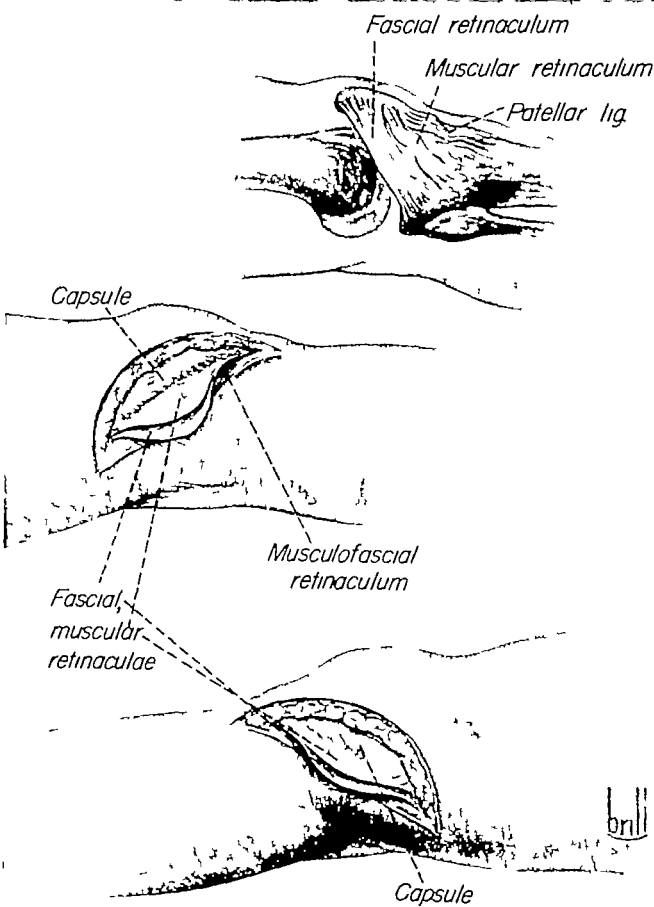


FIG. 250 Division of the patellar retinacula (Eggers) (Top) Contracted structures limiting extension. (Center) Division of the lateral retinaculum (Bottom) Division of medial retinaculum.

patellar tendon and then fixed to the opposite portion of the tendon. The plicated tendon is fixed with interrupted silk or cotton sutures (Fig 249 E)

At the termination of the operation an elastic compression bandage is applied, and the limb is immobilized in a posterior plaster splint. After the surgical reaction subsides (4 to 5 days) the splint is removed and active motion is commenced. After 8 to 10 weeks the wire is withdrawn.

### DIVISION OF THE PATELLAR RETINACULA (EGGERS)

According to Eggers, division of the patellar retinacula has some distinct advantages over transference of the tibial tubercle distally or shortening the patellar tendon. The author's experience with this method has been most gratifying. The advantages are the simplicity of the procedure, the short period of healing, physiologic shortening of the quadriceps and early ambulation. In addition, damage to the upper tibial epiphysis is avoided. The operation is based on the anatomic arrangement of the patellar retinacula on the medial and the lateral aspects of the knee joint. Immediately above the knee joint the fibers of the fascia lata extend to the medial and the lateral borders of the patella. On the lateral side these fibers are also continuous with the iliotibial band and ultimately gain attachment to the lateral condyle of the tibia in front of the proximal tibiofemoral joint. Distally the fascia lata blends with the deep fascia and the intermuscular septa and inserts into the tibia and the fibula and blends with the tendons crossing the knee joint. On the medial side the fascia lata blends with the tendons of the gracilis, the sartorius and the semitendinosus muscles. In addition the fascia lata blends with the tendinous slips of insertion of the vasti.

Under normal conditions extension of the knee is accomplished primarily by pull of the quadriceps on the tibial tubercle through

the patellar tendon and secondarily through the retinacula, which comprises fibers from the fascia lata and fibers of insertion of the vasti. These fibers insert into the tibia and the fibula. It becomes apparent that the lateral expansions of the extensor apparatus play a significant role in extension of the knee joint. In the flexed knee of the spastic the patellar ligament becomes elongated and the degree of stretching in the lateral and the medial retinacula becomes progressively less as the radial center is approached. Hence the retinacula medial and lateral to the mid line preclude complete extension of the knee joint. When extension of the knee is attempted, contraction of the quadriceps does not exert its final pull on the tuberosity of the tibia but rather on the retinacula which are contracted and prevent complete extension. It becomes obvious that division or elongation of the medial and the lateral retinacula should permit full extension by physiologically shortening the quadriceps. The procedure should be done in combination with transference of the hamstring tendons to the femoral condyles in order to improve extension of the hip joint.

### TECHNIC (Fig 250)

After the hamstrings are transplanted to the femoral condyles the patient is placed in a supine position with the knees in extension. One half inch lateral to the outer margin of the patella a skin incision 3 inches in length is made beginning at a point midway between the distal end of the patella and the tuberosity of the tibia. It extends upward paralleling the lateral border of the patella. The skin flaps are retracted to either side exposing the fascial retinaculum which is cut parallel with the patellar ligament and the patella. This incision then curves posteriorly and terminates immediately in front of the femoral attachment of the fibular collateral ligament. In executing this step the iliotibial band is severed. The muscular retinaculum lying immediately beneath the fascial reti-

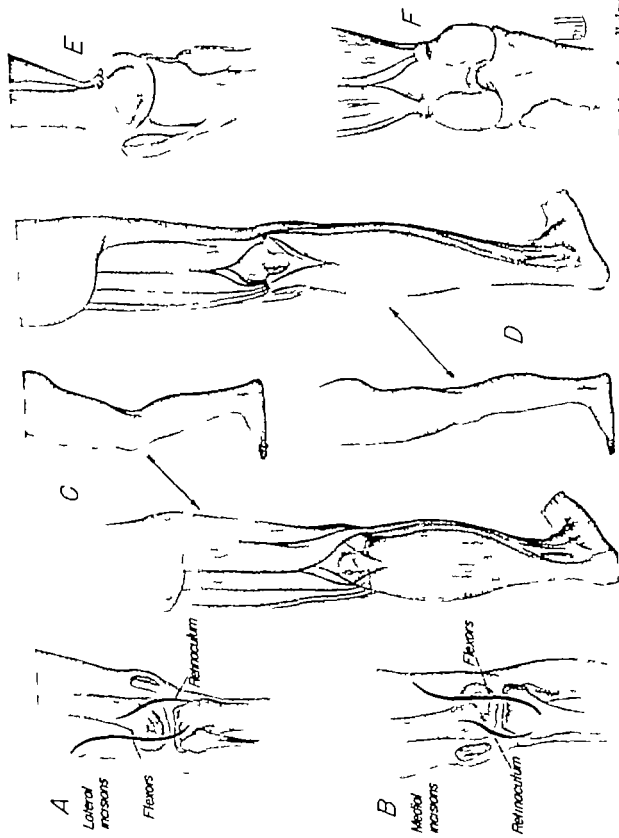


FIG. 251 Transplantation of the hamstrings to the condyles of the femur (Eggers) (A, B) Incisions for division of the patellar retinacula and exposure of the hamstring tendons. (C, D) The hamstring tendons are divided (E, F) The ends of the tendons are anchored in subperiosteal tunnels in the posterior lateral and the posterior medial aspects of the lateral and the medial femoral condyles, respectively

naclum is divided in the same line of incision division of this last structure brings into view the capsule of the joint which is left intact

A second incision similar to the first is made on the medial side of the knee joint it begins  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch medial to the inner border of the patella and continues proximally for a distance of 3 inches The fascial retinaculum is cut parallel with the patellar tendon and the patella and then sweeps posteriorly as far as the point of the femoral attachment of the tibial collateral ligament The muscular retinaculum is divided in the same line of incision as on the lateral side the capsule of the joint is visualized but not divided The incision in the retinacula is left open and the skin edges are approximated by interrupted sutures

#### TRANSPLANTATION OF HAMSTRING TENDONS TO FEMORAL CONDYLES IN SPASTIC PARALYSIS (EGGERS)

This procedure was designed by Eggers to improve walking in cases of spastic paralysis with flexion deformities of the hips and the knees When used in combination with release of the retinacula hip extension is improved and knee flexion is overcome The aforementioned observer points out that when flexion of the knee is corrected without improving extension at the hip the patient exhibits flexion of the hip and the knee in dynamic walking When walking with the hips flexed compensatory flexion of the knees occurs Hence in these cases it becomes obvious that in order to improve the dynamic gait improvement of hip extension in addition to correcting flexion deformities of the knees is essential As noted previously knee flexion can be corrected by release of the patellar retinaculum hip extension can be improved by transference of the hamstring tendons to the femoral condyles By this procedure the hamstring muscles function as extensors of the hip and

indirectly retain extension of the knee By not disturbing the popliteus the gastrocnemius and the sartorius muscles provided that they are functionally active recurvatum of the knee joint is prevented

#### TECHNIC (Fig. 251)

With the patient in a prone position a vertical "S" incision 3 in. long is made over the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle its distal limb curves anteriorly just above the head of the fibula The skin edges are retracted medially and laterally and the tendon of the biceps and the common peroneal nerve are identified the tendon is divided just before it gains attachment to the head of the fibula proximal to its point of bifurcation The tendon is passed through and anchored in a periosteal tunnel made on the posterolateral margin of the lateral femoral condyle It is essential that the medial side of the tendon rests well in the grooves in order to ensure an osseous attachment

A second incision, similar to the first, is made on the posteromedial aspect of the knee joint posterior to the sartorius muscle The medial hamstring tendons the gracilis the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus are severed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch from their insertion into the tibia and are anchored in a subperiosteal tunnel made on the posteromedial aspect of the medial condyle of the femur The ends of the tendons are sutured to the fibrous tissue in this region the tendons should be in apposition to raw bone to permit bony fixation The wounds are closed in the usual manner

At the termination of the operation the extremity is immobilized in a plaster cast extending from the groin to the toes The cast is removed at the end of 3 weeks and walking instructions are instituted The optimum results are usually manifest at the end of 1 year Eggers recommends that release of the patellar retinacula not be done unless the hamstrings are transplanted to the femoral condyles these procedures are interdependent and when used in com-

bination, produce the most satisfactory results. If talipes equinus is present, a neurectomy of the soleus muscles through a lateral approach is advisable. Lengthening of the heel cord is seldom necessary after soleus neurectomy.

### NEURECTOMY OF THE SOLEUS MUSCLE

With the patient in a prone position a slightly curved incision 4 inches in length is made on the lateral aspect of the leg posterior to the head of the fibula, it begins at

the neck of the fibula and extends distally. The common peroneal nerve is identified and protected. The interval between the gastrocnemius and the soleus is developed, and the gastrocnemius is displaced posteriorly, exposing the posterior aspect of the soleus. On the posteromedial aspect of the soleus a triangular mass of fat is visualized; it contains the main muscular nerves to the muscle. These usually comprise two nerves with or without a single trunk. The nerves are divided, or a small segment of each may be resected. The wound is closed in the usual manner.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abbott, L. C. The operative lengthening of the tibia and fibula. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 9: 128-132.
- Abbott, L. C., and Crego, C. H. Operative lengthening of the femur. *South. M. J.* 21: 823, 1928.
- Abbott, L. C., and Gill, G. G. Surgical approaches to the epiphyseal cartilages of the knee and ankle joints. *Arch. Surg.* 46: 591, 1943.
- Anzilotti, Giulio. Contributo alla patologia delle cartilagini interepifisarie (Nota preliminare). *Arch. ortop.* 41: 473, 1926.
- Asplund, G. A few cases of ischio-public osteochondritis. *Acta chir. scandinav.* 67: 1, 1930.
- Baillet, L. C. Déformation du membre inférieur consécutive à une ostéite de l'extrémité supérieure du tibia. *Rev. orthop.* 3: 75, 1912.
- Barr, J. S. Muscle transplantation for combined flexion internal rotation deformity of the thigh in spastic paralysis. *Arch. Surg.* 46: 605, 1943.
- Barr, J. S., Freiberg, J. A., Colonna, P. C., and Pemberton, P. A. A survey of end results on stabilization of the paralytic shoulder: report of the Research Committee of the American Orthopaedic Association. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 24: 699, 1942.
- Beessel-Hagen, Fritz. Ueber Knochen und Gelenkanomalien insbesondere bei partiellem Riesnwuchs und bei multiplen cartilaginären Exostosen. *Arch. klin. Chir.* 41: 420, 1891.
- Bloodgood, J. C. Fractures, dislocations, amputations and surgery of the extremities. *Progressive Med.* 8: 171, 1906.
- Blount, W. P. Chondrodysplasia. An unusual case. *Am. J. Dis. Child.* 40: 32, 1930.
- . The peg leg cast. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 13: 107, 1931.
- . Tibia vara. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 19: 1, 1937.
- . Osteoclasia for supination deformities in children. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 22: 300, 1940.
- Blount, W. P., and Clark, G. R. Control of bone growth by epiphyseal stapling: preliminary report. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 31 A: 464-478, 1949.
- Blount, W. P., and Zeier, Frank. Control of Bone Length. *J.A.M.A.* 148: 541, 1952.
- Bohm, Max. Physiologische Deformitäten des Beins. *Acta chir. scandinav.* 67: 178, 1930.
- . Entstehung der kindlichen Beindeformitäten. *Ztschr. orthop. Chir.* 53: 377, 1931.
- . Das kindliche Genu (crus) varum, *Chirurg.* 4: 913, 1932.
- . Das menschliche Bein. Seine normale Entwicklung und die Entstehung der Wuchsfehler (Hüftluxation, N- und O-Beine, Knick und Plattfüsse, Klumpfüsse). S. 112-125. Stuttgart, Enke, 1935.
- Bosworth, D. M., and Thompson, F. R. Fixation of the transplanted tibial tubercle. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 28: 285, 1946.
- Brett, A. L. Operative correction of genu recurvatum. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 17: 984, 1935.
- Buchman, Joseph. A résumé of the osteochondritides. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 49: 477, 1929.
- Burman, M. S. Spastic intrinsic muscle imbalance of the foot. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 20: 145, 1938.
- Calot, M. L'équation (ostéochondrite-subluxation congénitale) prouvée sur une radio pour laquelle nous avons été consulté par une université allemande qui a adopté notre conclusion. *Extrait Compt. rend. 41. Congrès A. franç. chir.*, 1932.



- Calve Jacques Osteochondritis of the upper extremity of the femur *J Orthop Surg* 3 48 1921
- Campbell W C Operation for the correction and prevention of paralytic genu recurvatum *J.A.M.A.* 71 96 1918
- Bone-block operation for dropfoot: analysis of end results *J Bone & Joint Surg* 12 31 1930
- Operative Orthopedics Vols I and II St. Louis Mosby 1942
- Campbell, W C and Mitchell J I Operative treatment of paralytic genu recurvatum *Ann. Surg* 96 1055 1932
- Carrell W B Sympathetic ramisection in spastic paralysis *J.A.M.A.* 96 849 1931
- Use of fascia lata in knee-joint instability *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1018 1937
- Chandler F A On obturator neurectomy (Personal communication)
- Patellar advancement operation: a revised technic *J Internat Coll Surgeons* 3 433 1940
- Chandler F A Lecture on operative treatment of cerebral palsy *Am Acad. Orthop Surgeons Meet., Chicago* January 1947
- Cleveland, Mather Operative fusion of the unstable or flail knee due to anterior poliomyelitis: A study of late results *J Bone & Joint Surg* 14 525 1932
- Cleveland, M and Bosworth D M Surgical correction of flexion deformity of knees due to spastic paralysis *Surg., Gynec & Obst* 63 659 1936
- Cole W H The treatment of claw foot *J Bone & Joint Surg* 22 595 1940
- Crego C H Jr and Fischer F J Transplantation of the biceps femoris for the relief of quadriceps femoris paralysis in residual poliomyelitis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 515 1931
- Dickson F D The treatment of cerebral spastic paralysis with special reference to the Stoffel operation *J.A.M.A.* 83 1236 1924
- An operation for stabilizing paralytic hips: a preliminary report *J Bone & Joint Surg* 9 1 1927
- Dowman C F and Hoke Michael The treatment of spastic paralysis *Arch. Surg* 9 145 1924
- Dunn Naughton The surgery of muscle and tendon in relation to infantile paralysis *Proc Roy Soc Med Br* 1 22 243 1928
- Durham H A A procedure for the correction of internal rotation of the thigh in spastic paralysis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 20 359 1938
- Egger C W A Surgical dissection of the patella retinacula to improve extension of the knee joint in cerebral spastic paralysis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 32 A 50 1950
- Transplantation of hamstring tendon to femoral condyles in order to improve hip extension and to decrease knee flexion in cerebral spastic paralysis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 34 A 87, 1952
- Erlacher Philipp Deformierende Prozesse der Epiphysengegend bei Kindern *Arch. Orthop u Unfall-Chir* 20 81 1922
- Ferguson A B Thompson, F A and Kling B B A two-stage osteotomy *J Bone & Joint Surg* 21 715 1939
- Forbes A M Clawfoot and how to relieve it *Surg., Gynec & Obst* 16 81 1913
- Forster O Ueber eine neue operative Methode der Behandlung spastischer Lahmungen mittels Resektion hinterer Rückenmarkswurzeln *Ztschr. orthop. Chir* 22 203 1908
- Callie W E. Tendon fixation in infantile paralysis: A review of one hundred and fifty operations *Am. J. Orthop. Surg* 14 18 1916
- Geist E S An operation for the after treatment of some cases of congenital club-foot *J Bone & Joint Surg* 6 50 1924
- Gieckler H Wachstumsstörungen der Tibia epiphyse *Arch. Orthop u. Unfall-Chir* 32 20 1932
- Gill A B Surgery of spastic paralysis *Ann Surg* 67 529 1918
- Operation for correction of paralytic genu recurvatum *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 49 1931
- Gill G G and Abbott L C Varus deformity of ankle following injury to distal epiphyseal cartilage of tibia in growing children *Surg. Gynec & Obst* 72 659 1941
- Gonzales-Aguilar J La osteocondritis de los centros de crecimiento *An. casa de Salud Valde-cilla* 3 231 1932
- Green W T Tendon transplantation of the flexor carpi ulnaris for pronation flexion deformity of the wrist *Surg. Gynec & Obst* 75 33 1942
- Green, W T and Anderson Margaret Experiences with epiphyseal arrest in correcting discrepancies in length of the lower extremities in infantile paralysis: a method of predicting the effect *J Bone & Joint Surg* 29 (C) 1947
- Green W T and McDermott L J Operative treatment of cerebral palsy of the knee *J.A.M.A.* 118 434 1942
- Gundal Zei Fälle von Genu valgum mit etwa eigentümlicher Ätiologie *Acta chir. scandinav* 64 109 1921
- Haas S L Longitudinal osteotomy *J.A.M.A.* 92 1656 1927

- Hass S. L. The treatment of permanent paralysis of the deltoid muscle. *J.A.M.A.* 104 99 1935
- Retardation of bone growth by a wire loop. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 27 25 1945
- Mechanical retardation of bone growth. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 30-A 506 1948
- Hackenbroch M. Da atypische Genu varum. *Acta chir. scandinav.* 67 448 1930
- Harbun Maxwell and Zollinger Robert. Osteochondritis of the growth centers. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 51 145 1930
- Harmon P. H. Anterior transplantation of the posterior deltoid for shoulder palsy and dislocation in poliomyelitis. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 84 117 1947
- Hass Julius. Konservative und operative Orthopaedie 1. Aufl., S. 246 Vienna, Springer 1934
- Henderson, M. S. Reconstructive surgery in paralytic deformities of the lower leg. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 11 810 1929
- Henry A. K. An operation for slung and dropped shoulder. *Brit. J. Surg.* 15 95 1927 28
- Heyman C. H. Operative treatment of paralytic genu recurvatum. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 29 644 1947
- Higbet W. B. and Holmes W. Traction injuries to lateral popliteal nerve and traction injuries to peripheral nerves after suture. *Brit. J. Surg.* 30 212 1943
- Higbet, W. B. and Saunders F. K. The effects of stretching nerves after suture. *Brit. J. Surg.* 30 335 1943
- Hodges J. T. and Francis C. H. Arrest of growth of the epiphyses. *Arch. Surg.* 53 664 1946
- Hughes R. E. Knee flexion deformity following poliomyelitis. Its correction by operative procedures. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 17 627 1935
- Hughes R. E., and Kissler J. C. The correction of knee-flexion deformity after poliomyelitis by wedging plasters. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 16 935 1934
- Hutter C. G., Jr. and Scott Walter. Tibial torsion. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 31 A 511 1949
- Irwin C. E. Genu recurvatum following poliomyelitis. controlled method of operative correction. *J.A.M.A.* 120 277 1942
- Subtrochanteric osteotomy in poliomyelitis. *J.A.M.A.* 133 231 1947
- The iliotibial band and its role in deformity in poliomyelitis. *Orthopedic Correspondence Club letter* March 6 1947
- The iliotibial band as a deforming factor in poliomyelitis. *Am. Acad. Orthopaedic Surgeons Instructional Course Lectures*, 5 212 1948
- Jansen, Mark. The large brain the wide pelvic girdle and the outstanding number of hip anomalies in man (coxa vara coxa fracta coxa plana, coxa valga, slipping epiphysis, malum coxae). *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 11 461 1929
- Jones, F. W. Structures and Function as Seen in the Foot, p. 137 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins, 1944
- Kidner, F. C. Causes and treatment of Perthes disease. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 14 339 1916
- Kirmisson E. Deux cas intéressants d'anomalies de développement du squelette. *Rev. orthop.* 10 372 1899
- Kleinberg S. The transplantation of the hamstring muscles for quadriceps palsy. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 15 512 1917
- Paralytic genu recurvatum. *Bull. Hosp. Joint Dis.* 5 43 1944
- Langenskiöld F. Demonstration eines mit Genuvarum Bildung einhergehenden dunklen Leidens in der oberen Tibiaepiphyse sowie über die Technik der bogenförmigen Osteotomie. *Acta chir. scandinav.* 64 193 1929
- LeDanyan P. La torsion du tibia normale, pathologique expérimentale. *J. anat. et physiol.* 45 598 1909
- Levy A. T. An obscure affection of the hip-joint. *Boston M. & S. J.* 162 202 1910
- Osteochondral trochanopathy of the hip-joint. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 22 307 1916
- Transplantation of tensor fasciae in cases of weakened gluteus medius. *J.A.M.A.* 80 242 1923
- Lewin Philip. Epiphyses Their growth, development, injuries and diseases. *Am. J. Dis. Child.* 37 141 1929
- Lexer Erich. Wiederherstellungs Chirurgie Leipzig Barth 1942
- Looser E. Spatrachitis in *Lehrbuch der Röntgen-diagnostik*, Von Schinz, Baensch und Friedl 2. Aufl., S. 212 Leipzig Thieme 1928.
- Lulsdorf Fritz. Epiphysitis tibiae deformans. *Ztschr. orthop. Chir.* 53 64 162, 1931
- McCarroll, H. R., and Schwartzmann, J. R. Spastic paralysis and allied disorders. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 25 745 1943
- McFarland, B. L. Congenital dislocation of the knee. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 11 281 1929
- McWhorter G. L. Operation on the neck of the femur following acute symptoms in a case of osteochondritis deformans juvenilis coxae (Perthes Disease). *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 38 632 1924
- Magnusson Ragnar. Rotation osteotomy A method employed in cases of congenital club-foot. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 28 262 1946
- Maselli, V. Contributo allo studio dell'epifisite deformante tibiale giovanile in ginocchio valgo. *Chir. org. movimento* 17 267 1932
- Mau, C. Genu varum bedingt durch Tibiaepi-

- sendefekt bei kartilaginärer Exostose *Ztschr orthop. Chir* 44:383 1923-1924
- Mayer Leo Congenital anterior subluxation of the knee *Am. J Orthop Surg* 10 411 1913
- The physiological method of tendon transplantation *Surg Gynec & Obst* 22 182 1916
- Transplantation of the trapezius for paralysis of the abductors of the arm *J Bone & Joint Surg* 9 412 1927
- An operation for the cure of paralytic genu recurvatum *J Bone & Joint Surg* 12 345 1930
- Tendons ganglia, muscles fascia in *Lewis Dean Practice of Surgery Vol. III Hagerstown Md., Prior* 1942
- Melchior E. Die Mädelungsche Deformität des Handgelenks *Ergebn Chir u. Orthop* 6 646 1913
- Milch Henry Juxta articular tibial osteotomy *Surg., Gynec & Obst* 59 3, 1934
- Cortical avulsion fracture of the lateral tibial condyle *J Bone & Joint Surg* 18 159 1936
- Anterior transposition of the peroneal nerve for traction paralysis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 27 608 1945
- Osteotomy of the Long Bones *Spring field Ill., Thomas* 1947
- Miller O L. Paralytic knee fusions *South. M J* 20 82 1927
- Moore J R. Osteotomy-osteoclasts a method for correcting long-bone deformities *J Bone & Joint Surg* 29 119 1947
- Moore R D. Supracondylar shortening of the femur for leg length inequality *Surg Gynec & Obst* 84 103 1944
- Müller E. Ueber die verbiegung des Schenkelhalses in Wachstumsalter ein neues Krankheitsbild. *Beitr klin Chir* 4 13 1885-1889
- Nachlas I W. Common defects of the lower extremity in infants *South M J* 41 302 307 1948
- Nilsson Harald Genu varum mit eigentumlichen Epiphysenveränderungen *Acta chir scandinav* 64 18 1929
- Nusbaum A. Ueber Osteochondritis coxae juvenilis Calve-Legg Perthes *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 49 849 1913
- Ober I R. An operation to relieve paralysis of the deltoid muscle *J A M A* 99 2182 1932
- Transplantation to improve the function of the shoulder joint and extensor function of the elbow joint in *Am Acad Orthop Surgeons Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Ann Arbor Mich Edwards* 1944
- Ober I R. and Barr J W. Brachioradialis muscle transposition for triceps weakness *Surg Gynec & Obst* 67 105 1938
- O'Donoghue D H. Controlled rotation osteotomy of the tibia *South. M J* 33 1145 1940
- Panier C F. A case of transplantation of the biceps femoris tendon *Boston M & S J* 147 381 1902
- Peabody C W. Tendon transposition an end result study *J Bone & Joint Surg* 20 191 1938
- Pels Leusden Friedrich Klinische pathologische anatomische und radiologische Studien über Exostosis cartilaginea multiplex *Deutsche Ztschr Chir* 86 434 190
- Perthes G. Ueber Osteochondritis deformans juvenilis *Arch. klin Chir* 150 79 1913
- Phelps W M. Treatment of paralytic disorders exclusive of poliomyelitis in  *Bancroft I W., and Murray C R. Surgical Treatment of the Motor Skeletal System Vol I Philadelphia, Lippincott* 1945
- Phemister D B. Operative arrestment of longitudinal growth of bones in the treatment of deformities *J Bone & Joint Surg* 15 1 1933
- Phemister D B., Brunschwig Alexander and Day Lois Streptococcal infections of the epiphyses and short bones. Their relation to Köhler's disease of the tarsal navicular Legg Perthes disease and Klenbock's disease of the os lunatum *J A M A* 95 995 1930
- Platt H. Operative treatment of traumatic ulnar neuritis at the elbow *Surg Gynec & Obst* 47 922 1928
- On the peripheral nerve complications of certain fractures *J Bone & Joint Surg* 10 403 1928
- Traction lesions of the external popliteal nerve *Lancet* 2 612 1940
- Putti Vittorio. The operative lengthening of the femur *J A M A* 77 934 1921
- Popliteal capsulotomy in the treatment of flexor retractions of the knee *Chir org movimento* 5 11 1921
- Rapporti statici fra piede e ginocchio nell'arto paralitico Arresto osseo til son trazaleo *Chir org movimento* 6 125 1922
- Osteotomia ed osteoclasti *Chir org movimento* 17 1 1932
- Putti V. and Zanoli R. Forty-seventh report of progress in orthopedic surgery p 1 (*Chir Chir org movimento* 16 1 1931)
- Rall Gerhard Ungewöhnliche Deformität des Kniegelenks (Osteochondropathia deformans juvenilis) *Ztschr orthop Chir* 52 10 1917
- Genu vara wegen Deformierung der Tibiaepiphysen *Ztschr orthop Chir* 61 0 1934

- Regan J. M., and Chatterton C. C. Deformities following surgical epiphyseal arrest J Bone & Joint Surg 28 265 1946
- Riedel, G. Über Epiphysealösung und vorzeitige Verknöcherung der Wachstumsfuge am unteren Femurende Verhandl. deutsch. orthop. Gesellsch (20 Kongress 1925) S 280 Stuttgart
- Enke, 1926 (Ztschr f orthop Chir 57 Beilageheft)
- Rocher H. L., et Roudil, G. Genu varum droit osteogenique par hemiatrophie congenitale de l'epiphyse tibiale superieure Acta chir scan dinav 66 275 1930
- Royle N. D. Treatment of spastic paralysis by sympathetic ramisection, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med (Orthop Sect.) 20 63 1927
- Ryerson, E. W. Cerebral spastic paralysis in children, J.A.M.A. 98 43 1932
- Ryffel, H. Zur Thiemannschen Epiphysealerkrankung Röntgenpraxis 5 423 1933
- Scaglietti O. Ricupero funzionale di un arto poliometalitico Boll. e mem. Soc. Emiliano-Romagnola chir 1 No. IV V 1935
- Selig Seth. Peroneal nerve palsy due to compression by adhesive plaster J Bone & Joint Surg 20 222 1938
- Sell, L. S. Tibial torsion accompanying congenital club-foot, J Bone & Joint Surg 23 561 1941
- Sloane David, Sloane M. F. and Gold, A. M. Dyschondroplastic bowlegs J Bone & Joint Surg 18 183 1936
- Smith S. A. The operative treatment of knee flexion in poliomyelitis Brit. M. J 2 1092 1924
- Soutter Robert. A new operation for hip contracture in poliomyelitis, Boston M. & S J 170 380 1914
- Speed, J. S. End results in transference of the crest of the ilium for flexion contracture of the hip J Bone & Joint Surg 10 202 1928
- Steindler Arthur. Nutrition and vitality of the tendon in tendon transplantation, Am J Orthop Surg 16 63 1918
- Operative treatment of paralytic conditions of the upper extremity Am. J Orthop. Surg 1 608 1919
- Congenital dislocation of the knee Pediatrics 5 420 Philadelphia Saunders 1924
- A Textbook of Operative Orthopedics p 42 New York, Appleton, 1925
- Tendon transplantation in the upper extremity Am. J Surg 44 260 1939
- Muscle and tendon transplantation at the elbow in Am. Acad. Orthop Surgeons Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Ann Arbor Mich., Edwards, 1944
- Stieling R. I. "Derotation" of the tibia Brit. M. J 1 581 1936
- Stoffel, Adolf. The treatment of spastic contracture Am J Orthop Surg 10 611 1912 13
- Straub L. R., Thompson T. C. and Wilson, P. D. The results of epiphyseodesis and femoral shortening in relation to equalization of limb length, J Bone & Joint Surg 27 254 1945
- Thibodeau A. A., Wagner L. C., and Carr F. J. Jr. The evaluation of surgical procedures on bones muscles and peripheral nerves in spastic paralysis, Am J Surg 43 821 1939
- Thompson, T. C. Quadricepsplasty to improve knee function J Bone & Joint Surg 26 366 1944
- Thompson V. P. The telescoping V osteotomy. General method for correcting angular and rotational disalignments Arch. Surg 46 772 1943
- Valentin, Bruno. Über eine eigenartige, bisher unbekannte Form multiples Epiphyseentorum gen Fortschr Geb Röntgenstrahlen 29 120 1922
- Van Gelderen D. N. Een Afwijking in de Bovenste Epiphyse van de Tibia (Deformation of Upper Epiphyses of Tibia) Nederl. tijdschr geneesk. 77 1388 1933
- Venable C. S. and Stuck, W. G. The Internal Fixation of Fractures p 10 Springfield, Ill., Thomas 1947
- Watson Jones R. Styloid process of the fibula in the knee joint with peroneal palsy J Bone & Joint Surg 13 258 1931
- White, J. W. Femoral shortening for equalization of leg length J Bone & Joint Surg 17 597 1935
- A practical graphic method of recording leg length discrepancies South. M. J 33 946 1940
- The present status of the leg length discrepancy problems Ann. Surg 125 662 1947
- White J. W., and Stubbs S. G. Jr. Growth arrest for equalizing leg lengths J.A.M.A. 126 1146 1944
- Wilson P. D. Posterior capsuloplasty in certain flexion contractures of the knee, J Bone & Joint Surg 11 40 1929
- Wilson, P. D., and Thompson T. C. A clinical consideration of the methods of equalizing leg length, Ann Surg 110 992 1939
- Yount, C. C. The role of the tensor fasciae femoris in certain deformities of the lower extremity J Bone & Joint Surg 8 171 1926
- An operation to improve function in quadriceps paralysis J Bone & Joint Surg 20 314 1938

- sendefekt bei kartilaginärer Exostose, Ztschr orthop. Chir 44 383 1923-1924
- Mayer Leo Congenital anterior subluxation of the knee Am J Orthop. Surg 10 411 1913
- The physiological method of tendon transplantation Surg Gynec & Obst. 22 182 1916.
- Transplantation of the trapezius for paralysis of the abductors of the arm J Bone & Joint Surg 9 412 1927
- An operation for the cure of paralytic genu recurvatum J Bone & Joint Surg 12 845 1930
- Tendons, ganglia muscles fascia, in Lewis Dean Practice of Surgery Vol. III Hagerstown Md., Prior 1942
- Melchior E. Die Madelung'sche Deformität des Handgelenks Ergebn Chir u. Orthop 6 646 1913
- Milch, Henry Juxta articular tibial osteotomy Surg., Gynec & Obst 59 8, 1934
- Cortical avulsion fracture of the lateral tibial condyle. J Bone & Joint Surg 18 159 1936
- Anterior transposition of the peroneal nerve for traction paralysis J Bone & Joint Surg 27 608 1945
- Osteotomy of the Long Bones Springfield, Ill. Thomas, 1947
- Miller O L. Paralytic knee fusions South. M J 20 82 1927
- Moore J R. Osteotomy-osteoclasts a method for correcting long-bone deformities J Bone & Joint Surg 29 119 1947
- Moore R D. Supracondylar shortening of the femur for leg length inequality Surg Gynec & Obst 84 103, 1947
- Müller E. Ueber die verbiegung des Schenkelhalses in Wachstumsalter ein neues Krankheitsbild, Beitr klin Chir 4 137 1888-1889
- Nachlas I W. Common defects of the lower extremity in infants South. M J 41 302 307 1948
- Nilsson Harald Genu varum mit eigentümlichen Epiphysenveränderungen Acta chir scandinav 64 18 1929
- Nussbaum, A. Ueber Osteochondritis coxae juvenilis-Calve Legg Perthes Deutsche med Wchnschr 49 849 1933
- Ober F R. An operation to relieve paralysis of the deltoid muscle JAMA 99 2182 1932
- Transplantation to improve the function of the shoulder joint and extensor function of the elbow joint in Am Acad. Orthop Surgeons Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Ann Arbor Mich Edward 1944
- Ober F R. and Barr J W. Brachioradialis muscle transposition for triceps weakness, Surg Gynec. & Obst. 67 105 1938
- O'Donoghue D H. Controlled rotation osteotomy of the tibia South. M J 33 1145 1940
- Painter C F. A case of transplantation of the biceps femoris tendon Boston M & S J 147 351 1902
- Peabody C W. Tendon transposition an end-result study J Bone & Joint Surg 20 193 1938
- Pels Leusden Friedrich Klinische pathologisch anatomische und radiologische Studien über Exostosis cartilaginea multiplex, Deutsche Ztschr Chir 86 434 1907
- Perthes G. Ueber Osteochondritis deformans juvenilis Arch. klin Chir 150 7/9 1913
- Phelps W M. Treatment of paralytic disorders exclusive of poliomyelitis in Bancroft F W., and Murray C R. Surgical Treatment of the Motor Skeletal System Vol I Philadelphia Lippincott 1945
- Phemister D B. Operative arrestment of longitudinal growth of bones in the treatment of deformities J Bone & Joint Surg 15 1 1933
- Phemister D B. Brunschwig Alexander and Dav. Louis Streptococcal infections of the epiphyses and short bones Their relation to Köhler's disease of the tarsal navicular Legg Perthes disease and Klenböck's disease of the os lunatum JAMA. 95 995 1930.
- Platt H. Operative treatment of traumatic ulnar neuritis at the elbow Surg Gynec & Obst 47 822 1928
- On the peripheral nerve complications of certain fractures J Bone & Joint Surg 10 403 1928
- Traction lesions of the external popliteal nerve Lancet 2 612 1940
- Putti Vittorio. The operative lengthening of the femur J.A.M.A. 77 934 1921
- Popliteal capsulotomy in the treatment of flexor retractions of the knee Chir org movimento 5 11 1921
- Rapporti statuci fra piede e ginocchio nell'arto paralitico Arresto osseo tibioastragaleo Chir org movimento 6 125 1922
- Osteotomia ed osteoclastia Chir org movimento 17 1 1932
- Putti V. and Zanoli R. Forty seventh report of progress in orthopedic surgery p 1 (Abstr Chir org movimento 16 1 1931)
- Rall, Gerhard Ungewöhnliche Deformität der Kniegelenke (Osteochondropathia deformans juvenilis) op Chir 52 1 0 1929
- Defo
- Ti
- 1

- Regan J. M. and Chatterton C. C. Deformities following surgical epiphyseal arrest, *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 28 265 1946
- Riedel G. Über Epiphysenlösung und vorzeitige Verknöcherung der Wachstumsfuge am unteren Femurende. Verhandl. deutsch. orthop. Gesellsch. (20 Kongress 1925) S. 280 Stuttgart 1926 (Ztschr. f. orthop. Chir. 57 Beilageheft)
- Rocher H. L., et Roudil G. Genu varum droit ostéogénique par hypertrrophie congénitale de l'épiphyse tibiale supérieure. *Acta chir. scand.* 66 275 1930
- Royle N. D. Treatment of spastic paralysis by sympathetic ramisection. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med. (Orthop. Sect.)* 20 63 1927
- Ryerson E. W. Cerebral spastic paralysis in children. *J.A.M.A.* 98 43 1932
- Ryffel, H. Zur Thiemannschen Epiphysenerkrankung. *Röntgenpraxis* 5 423 1933
- Scaglietti O. Ricupero funzionale di un arto poliomiellitico. Boll. e mem. Soc. Emiliana. Romagnola chir. 1 Nos. IV V 1935
- Selig Seth. Peroneal nerve palsy due to compression by adhesive plaster. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 20 222 1938
- Sell L. S. Tibial torsion accompanying congenital club foot. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 23 561 1941
- Sloane David, Sloane M. F. and Gold A. M. Dyschondroplastic bowlegs. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 18 183 1936
- Smith S. A. The operative treatment of knee flexion in poliomyelitis. *Brit. M. J.* 2 1092 1924
- Soutter Robert. A new operation for hip contracture in poliomyelitis. *Boston M. & S. J.* 170 380 1914
- Speed J. S. End results in transference of the crest of the ilium for flexion contracture of the hip. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 10 202 1928
- Steindler Arthur. Nutrition and vitality of the tendon in tendon transplantation. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 16 63 1918
- Operative treatment of paralytic conditions of the upper extremity. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 1 608 1919
- Congenital dislocation of the knee. *Pediatrics* 5 420 Philadelphia Saunders 1924
- A Textbook of Operative Orthopedics. p. 42 New York, Appleton 1925
- Tendon transplantation in the upper extremity. *Am. J. Surg.* 44 260 1939
- Muscle and tendon transplantation at the elbow. *Am. Acad. Orthop. Surgeons. Reconstructive Surgery of the Extremities* Ann Arbor Mich., Edwards 1944
- Stueling R. I. "Derotation of the tibia, Brit. M. J." 1 581 1936
- Stoffel, Adolf. The treatment of spastic contracture. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 10 611 1912 13
- Straub L. R., Thompson T. C. and Wilson P. D. The results of epiphyseodesis and femoral shortening in relation to equalization of limb length. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 27 254 1945
- Thibodeau, A. A., Wagner L. C., and Carr F. J., Jr. The evaluation of surgical procedures on bones, muscles and peripheral nerves in spastic paralysis. *Am. J. Surg.* 43 821 1939
- Thompson T. C. Quadricepsplasty to improve knee function. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 26 366 1944
- Thompson, V. P. The telescoping V osteotomy. General method for correcting angular and rotational disalignments. *Arch. Surg.* 46 772 1943
- Valentin Bruno. Über eine eigenartige bisher unbekannte Form multiples Epiphysenstomatogen. *Fortschr. Geb. Röntgenstrahlen* 29 120 1922
- Van Gelderen, D. N. Een Afwijking in de Bovenste Epiphyselin van de Tibia (Deformation of Upper Epiphyses of Tibia). *Nederl. tijdschr. geneesk.* 77 1388 1933
- Venable C. S. and Stuck, W. G. The Internal Fixation of Fractures. p. 10 Springfield, Ill. Thomas 1947
- Watson Jones R. Styloid process of the fibula in the knee joint with peroneal palsy. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 13 258 1931
- White, J. W. Femoral shortening for equalization of leg length. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 17 597 1935
- A practical graphic method of recording leg length discrepancies. *South. M. J.* 33 946 1940
- The present status of the leg length discrepancy problems. *Ann. Surg.* 125 662 1944
- White J. W. and Stubbins S. G. Jr. Growth arrest for equalizing leg lengths. *J.A.M.A.* 126 1146 1944
- Wilson P. D. Posterior capsuloplasty in certain flexion contractures of the knee. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 11 40 1929
- Wilson, P. D., and Thompson T. C. A clinical consideration of the methods of equalizing leg length. *Ann. Surg.* 110 992 1939
- Yount C. C. The role of the tensor fasciae femoris in certain deformities of the lower extremity. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 8 171 1926
- An operation to improve function in quadriceps paralysis. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 20 314 1938

## Traumatic Lesions of the Ligamen

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The high incidence of injuries to the ligaments encountered during World War II and the increasing number of cases resulting from organized strenuous athletics and from skiing have been responsible for the crystallization of certain concepts relative to the functional mechanics of the ligaments of the knee joint and of methods of treatment which result in maximum restoration of function. It is becoming more and more apparent that the successful outcome of every case of severe injury to the ligamentous apparatus is governed by (1) immediate and accurate appraisal of the extent of the lesion (2) the institution of a program of treatment which strives to restore completely the normal anatomy of the affected ligaments and (3) the redevelopment of the quadriceps apparatus to the equivalent of or even better than that of the normal limb. Failure to understand the true nature of severe injuries or lack of comprehension on the part of the examiner of the role that the damaged structures play in the over all performance of the knee joint too often leads to inadequate treatment. Usually a plaster cylinder is applied for 4 to 6 weeks believing that complete fixation will allow adequate healing of the implicated soft tissues. Such a program of therapy does no harm in cases with minor sprains of the various components of the ligamentous apparatus and of the capsule; however irreparable harm may be done in cases with severe lesions such as complete ruptures of the tibial collateral ligament which lesion is commonly associated with a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament

and tearing of the internal meniscus. In the author's experience, immediate repair of ligaments extensively damaged is far superior to conservative measures. Surgical intervention in competent hands results in a higher incidence of good functioning knees which are capable of meeting the rigorous demands of youth. Failure to achieve early repair of implicated ligaments too often results in a weak unstable joint which is constantly "giving way" and "letting go." The repeated traumata produced by current effusions and chronic synovitis eventually osteoarthritic all of varying intensity supervene.

Both the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligament act as checkreins against flexion and external rotation of the knee on the fixed femur. The effect of straining force is definitely more pronounced when both ligaments are intact than when they act singly; hence in fresh injuries every effort should be made to restore the continuity of these ligaments. If torn it is wrong to be satisfied with immobilizing only the tibial collateral ligament, believing that this procedure is sufficient to provide adequate stability of the knee in flexion. As noted above stability is enhanced further if both ligaments are restored; this should be the goal of the surgeon who assumes the responsibility for the treatment of ligamentous lesions of the knee joint. The added surgical difficulties involved in achieving this aim should not be considered as factors.

Some brilliant results have been achieved in the military service by the use of conservative measures in cases of severe ligamentous damage. This has not been

perience of the writer or the experience of some other workers who find themselves in a position to observe and treat a sufficient number of cases to qualify them to express an opinion based on clinical experience. It was the author's good fortune to be assigned in World War II to a Marine training base where the recruits were imbued with a high esprit de corps. The preliminary training was unusually severe, and numerous ligamentous injuries were encountered, this in valuable material, together with cases encountered in civilian practice, permitted the author to arrive at the views presented here in these views are in agreement with such workers as Abbott, Saunders, Bost and Anderson and O'Donoghue.

The anatomy and the functional mechanism of the ligaments of the knee joint have been recorded previously in Chapters 3 and 4 respectively. It was pointed out that all the components of the knee joint work in harmony to produce a smoothly functioning unit. This comprises the bony elements, the ligaments, the muscular apparatus, the capsule and the synovialis. Impairment of one of the ligaments does not produce severe dysfunction of the joint, provided that the muscular apparatus possesses sufficient tone and power to compensate for the defect. Nevertheless, such a joint is far from normalcy and is vulnerable to minor traumata. It is essential to emphasize that the ligaments like the synovialis, the capsule and the muscles motorizing and crossing the knee joint are endowed with a highly specialized sensory innervation which permits them to work in unison. The meticulous works of Payr and Hilton are monumental contributions elucidating this close interrelationship. The synchronous function of the many ligaments and muscles of the knee joint is the result of afferent nerve impulses arising in the ligamentous apparatus which are conducted to the brain where they initiate efferent impulses which are relayed to the muscles stabilizing and activating the joint. In addition this same

mechanism protects the joint structures from abnormal stresses and strains and in the event of injury is responsible for the resulting muscle spasm which is nature's method of guarding and splinting the joint from further damage.

It was pointed out previously that during normal joint motion the intricate mechanism of the ligaments function in such a manner that certain ligaments or portions of ligaments are tense, while others are less tense or more relaxed, allowing at the same time free motion and stability of the joint. In addition, the structure, the strength, the method of attachment and the direction of the course of the ligaments stabilize the joint passively and by acting as checkreins determine the plane of motion of the bony elements of the joint. All the ligaments are tense only in the position of hyperextension, if lateral motion or more hyperextension is superimposed while the joint is in this position varying degrees of ligamentous damage will ensue, depending upon the severity of the force applied.

In the light of this information it becomes apparent that any form of man made ligament lacking the sensory innervation described previously is a poor substitute for the normal structure. Hence, a normal joint must not be anticipated. Such a replica may improve stability and function, but it will not perform as a live integral element of the knee joint. This explains why early repair of disrupted ligaments produces better joints than late reconstruction of the implicated structures.

#### MECHANISMS RESPONSIBLE FOR INJURIES OF THE LIGAMENTS

During normal joint function the ligaments provide passive stability to the knee joint. Also, the cruciate ligaments guide the paths of motion of the femoral condyles. Abnormal forces which tend to alter the normal relationship of the femoral condyles to the tibia subject the capsule and the liga-



ments to stresses and strains of varying intensity depending upon the nature and the violence of the acting force. Palmer has deciphered and described four abnormal mechanisms which are capable of producing specific types of injuries to the ligamentous apparatus.

#### ABDUCTION, FLEXION AND INTERNAL ROTATION OF THE FEMUR ON THE TIBIA

This constitutes the most common mechanism encountered on the football field and

may result in severe damage to the ligaments. It is also the type of violence responsible for skiing injuries. The fixed knee is in varying degrees of flexion and the body weight is forward with great impetus at the same time the femur is rotated medially and is forced into a position of abduction (Fig. 252). This mechanism tends to stress the knee joint. The severity of the injury to the ligaments depends upon the intensity of the subluxating force. Forces of



FIG. 252 Mechanism of injury of the ligaments by abduction, flexion and internal rotation of the femur on the fixed tibia. Note that the foot is fixed to the ground and the knee is unable to rotate in either direction. The knee is flexed slightly and the patient's body weight is thrust inward.

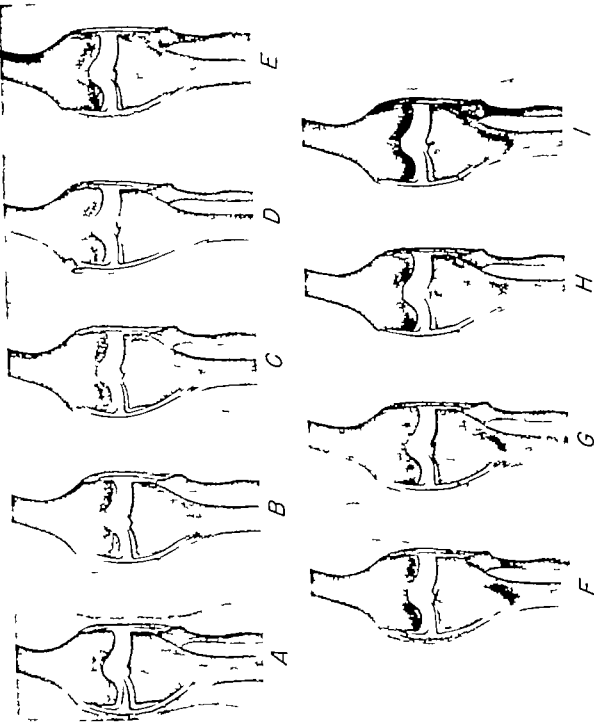


FIG 253 Isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament. Note that both the superficial and the deep portion of the ligament may be avulsed either from the femoral or the tibial insertions. Occasionally, a flake of bone is avulsed from the condyle of the femur at the site of the insertion of the superficial fibers.

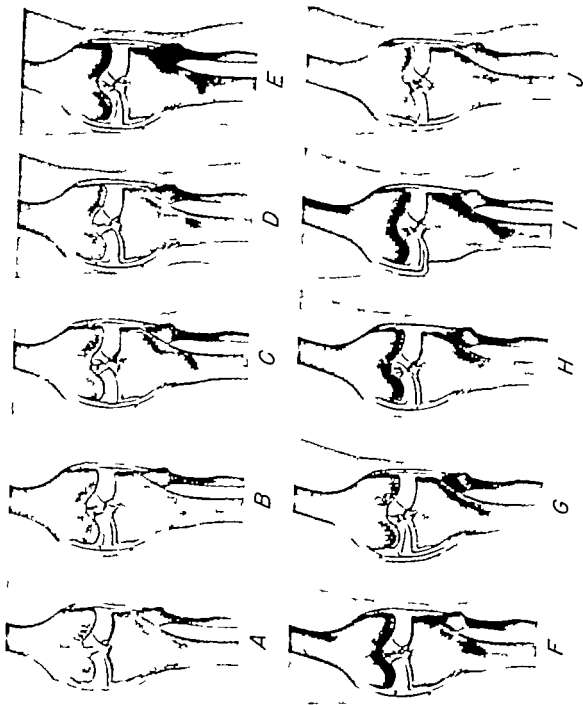


FIG. 254 The various types of combined lesions encountered by the author. The severity of the lesion depends upon the intensity of the force applied. Note that the lesions of the tibial collateral ligament may be associated with the lesions of one of the menisci or one or both of the cruciate ligaments.

intensity may implicate only the long anterior fibers of the superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament and the vertical fibers of the deep portion, the fibers may be stretched or shredded, but the continuity of the ligament remains intact (Fig 253). Greater violence may result in disruption of the superficial and the deep portions of the tibial collateral ligament and rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament, either this structure may be torn from its femoral attachment or its fibers may be shredded and frayed as the interval between its femoral and tibial insertions is increased (Fig 254). Frequently, in addition to injuries to the tibial collateral and the anterior cruciate ligaments, the medial meniscus is injured. Such a mechanism has been reported as also producing a tear of the posterior cruciate ligament (Fig 254). Occasionally this mechanism may produce a compression fracture of the outer tibial condyle in such instances the intensity of the forces acting

on the ligaments is diminished appreciably hence these structures are rarely damaged severely (Fig 255).

## ADDUCTION, FLEXION AND EXTENSION ROTATION OF THE FEMUR ON THE TIBIA

Injuries resulting from this mechanism are exceedingly rare occasionally, adduction injuries occur when the knee is in position of full extension. As in the adduction injuries, so in the adduction lesion, the tibia is fixed, and the knee is flexed. Force is applied to the inner side of the knee driving the femur into external rotation. The first structure to suffer the brunt of violence is the fibular collateral ligament which ruptures if the force continues to act. The anterior cruciate ligament and occasionally the tendon of the popliteus muscle are also ruptured. The proximity of the common peroneal nerve to the joint on the outer aspect of the knee makes this structure very vulnerable and may



FIG 255 Occasionally the ligaments may escape injury when the force is expended by the tibial plateau resulting in fracture of the lateral condyle of the femur such as is depicted in this case. In such instances the extent of the ligamentous damage is usually minimal.

stretched or torn in adduction injuries (Fig 256)

#### HYPEREXTENSION

It was pointed out previously that all

ligaments and the posterior portion of the fibrous capsule are tense when the knee is in a position of hyperextension. If the knee is driven into further hyperextension usually as a result of a direct force applied to

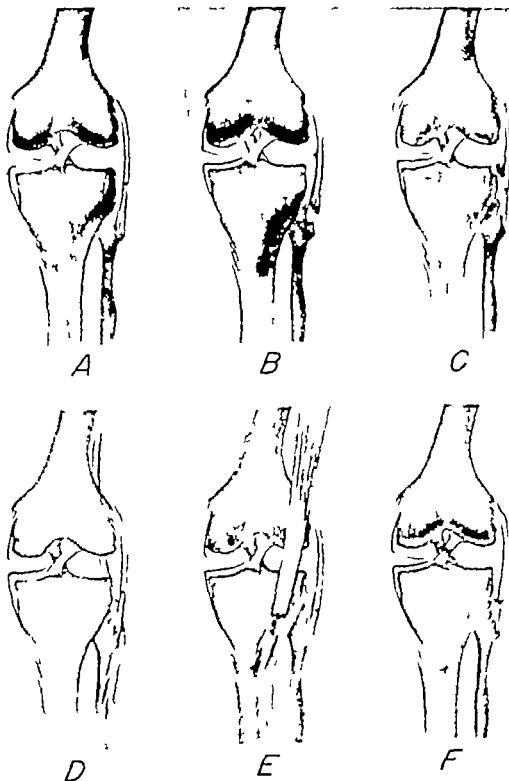


FIG. 256 Types of lesions encountered when the fibular collateral ligament is implicated. Occasionally a flake of bone is torn from the head of the fibula by the distal insertion of the fibular collateral ligament.

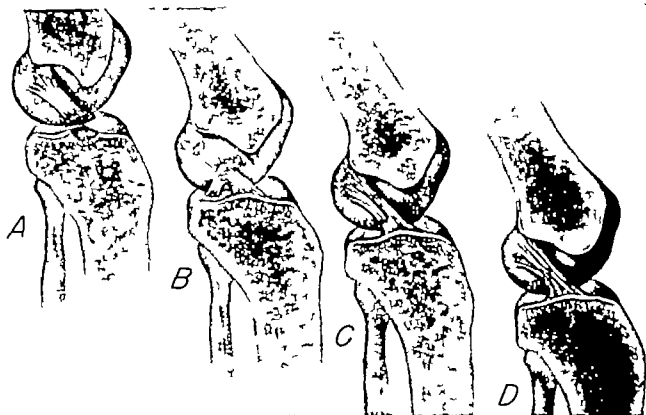


FIG 257 Types of ruptures of the anterior cruciate ligament described by Palmer. Hyperextension forces may produce (A) Avulsion of the bony tibial insertion of the ligament. (B) Rupture of the ligament at its femoral insertion. (C and D) Shredding and stretching of the ligament.

the anterior surface of the fixed leg the posterior portion of the capsule is stretched or even torn. If the force continues, rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament may ensue. This may be in the form of avulsion of the bony tibial insertion of the ligament or shredding of its fibers (Fig 257). Occasionally, this mechanism may produce stretching or tearing of some of the fibers of the posterior cruciate ligament.

#### ANTEROPosterior Displacement

The posterior cruciate ligament prevents abnormal posterior displacement of the tibia on the femur. If the tibia is driven backward or the femur forward while the knee is flexed, a tear of the posterior cruciate ligament occurs. Generally, the lesion is an avulsion of the tibial bony insertion of the ligament. The detached bony fragment may be drawn into the posterior region of the intercondylar space. Occasionally, the tear may occur at the femoral attachment of the ligament (Fig 258).

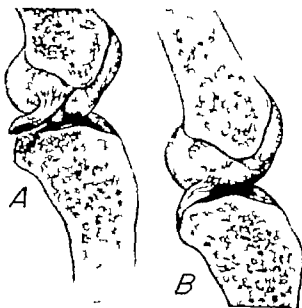


FIG 258. (A) The posterior cruciate ligament may be avulsed with a small piece of bone from the superoposterior aspect of the tibia, or (B) the ligament may be ruptured at its femoral attachment.

Forceful backward displacement of the femur with the tibia fixed and the knee flexed may result in a lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament. The classical lesion is avulsion of the tibial insertion of the ligament, comparable with a fracture of the spine of the tibia.

## RECENT TRAUMATIC LESIONS OF THE COLLATERAL LIGAMENTS

### INJURIES OF THE TIBIAL COLLATERAL LIGAMENT

This structure is injured most frequently by abnormal forces driving the slightly flexed knee into varying degrees of abduction and at the same time rotating the femur medially on the fixed tibia. As pointed out previously in this mechanism the tibial collateral ligament is the first line of defense against such subluxating violence, and the severity of the injury it sustains is dependent upon the intensity of the violence. Generally the force is of minor intensity, resulting in stretching or partial avulsion of the fibers; more forcible violence causes complete tearing of the ligament and often produces concomitant lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament and the internal meniscus. In most instances the pronounced disability associated with severe lesions leads to an accurate evaluation of the injury; however, in minor lesions frequently the true nature of the lesion is not understood; this failure is responsible for inadequate treatment which frequently is followed by the development of calcification and later new bone formation in the ligament usually in the region of its femoral attachment (Pellegrini Stieda disease).

**Incomplete Ruptures (Uncomplicated)**  
These lesions are commonly encountered in football, baseball or ski. The violent force, abduction and me-

**SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS** Although may be severe at the time of the injury, frequently its intensity subsides so that the immediate disability may be slight. The patients often continue to participate in the endeavors in which they are engaged. Pain is localized over the aspect of the knee joint, and the knee is held in a few degrees of flexion from 15° to 20°. Some swelling is discernible in the regions of the tibial femoral attachments of the ligament. Tenderness can be elicited along the course of the long anterior fibers of the ligament; however, invariably the tenderness is located at the site of the lesion. Which in this type of lesion is frequently at the femoral attachment of the fibers. If some protective spasm of the hamstring muscles exists, the patient will hold the knee slightly flexed and resist any active extension of the joint. In complicated lesions this reflex arc can be interrupted readily by the injection of 1 cc of procaine at the site of maximum tenderness; now the knee can be extended completely.

Because the continuity of the ligament is intact, abnormal abduction is resisted while the knee is in 15° to 20° of flexion. However, with the knee extended, attempts at abduction of the leg cause severe pain at the site of the lesion. Lateral rotation of the leg, which would place the whole ligament on a stretch produces no result.

As a rule isolated incomplete tears of the tibial collateral ligament are not associated with dislocation or hemarthrosis, usually indicative of other complications. Occasionally, however, the joint may be swollen but implies no dislocation or the

the flexion was not caused by a displaced meniscus. In the absence of abnormal lateral motion, a positive drawer sign and mechanical blocking to full extension, one can conclude that the lesion is an incomplete tear of the tibial collateral ligament but one is unable to eliminate the possibility of a tear of the internal meniscus without displacement. Only time will enable one to make the final diagnosis.

Roentgenographic studies provide no information of value in arriving at a diagnosis unless an abduction force is acting while the roentgenograms are taken. This is achieved best with the patient relaxed completely by a general anesthesia, Pentothal Sodium given intravenously is a suitable agent for this purpose. A pillow is placed under the knees, flexing the joints from  $15^{\circ}$  to  $20^{\circ}$  then the knees are bound firmly together with a canvas strap or a linen bandage. The feet are forced apart by sandbags hence, an abducting force is created at each knee joint. Roentgenograms of each knee are taken in the true anteroposterior view comparison of the two roentgenograms will reveal any difference in the width of the inner joint spaces. An increase in the interval between the articular surface of the medial femoral condyle and the corresponding tibial articular surface over that present in the unaffected knee is indicative of a complete tear of the tibial collateral ligament no increase points to a sprain of the ligament with its continuity remaining intact (Fig 259)

**MANAGEMENT** Simple sprains of the tibial collateral ligament without effusion or hemarthrosis are treated most effectively by the application of a snug fitting nonpadded plaster cylinder extending from above the malleoli to the groin with the knee in the extended position. If pain is severe from 3 to 5 cc. of procaine may be injected into the site of maximum tenderness before the plaster cylinder is applied. Weight-bearing can be started immediately a wedge on the inner side of the heel tends to shift the body weight to the outer side of the knee joint.

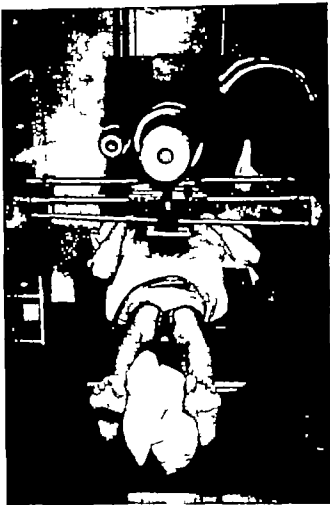


FIG 259 A method of x ray examination when lesions of the medial ligament are suspected. The knees are bound together and flexed from  $15^{\circ}$  to  $20^{\circ}$ . The feet are wedged apart by sandbags. An increase of the medial joint space on the affected side is indicative of a tear of the medial collateral ligament wide separation indicates rupture of both the medial collateral and anterior cruciate ligaments.

Quadriceps drill and weight lifting exercises are commenced immediately. The cast is worn for 4 weeks further protection, if deemed necessary can be provided by an elastic bandage. Exercises are continued until the quadriceps of the affected limb is equal in power to that of the opposite side.

In cases with an associated effusion or hemarthrosis the joint is aspirated and then enveloped in a compression bandage in order to prevent recurrence of the swelling. First, the knee is wrapped in sheet cotton, over this a snug elastic bandage is applied, ex



tending from the middle of the leg to the mid thigh. No weight bearing is permitted, however quadriceps exercises and straight leg raising against elastic resistance are instituted at once. After the effusion has subsided a plaster cylinder is applied and weight bearing is permitted. The treatment from this point is the same as that described for sprain of the ligament without effusion or hemarthrosis. In the latter group of cases one must bear in mind that a lesion of the meniscus may exist. If clinical features consistent with internal derangement of the knee such as buckling or "giving way," and recurrent effusions appear after the cast has been removed and the patient has resumed his normal activities an injury of the meniscus occurring at the original injury becomes apparent.

**Complete Ruptures.** Depending upon the severity of the rotary force acting on the slightly flexed knee with the tibia fixed numerous isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament are encountered. The pathology of these lesions is understood readily if the ligament is visualized shortly after injury. The most frequent alteration is a tear of the femoral insertion of the superficial long anterior fibers of the ligament; next in frequency is tearing of the tibial insertion of these fibers and occasionally in the former instances a flake of bone may be avulsed from the medial aspect of the femur (Fig. 253). Also the long fibers of the superficial ligament may be found shredded, stretched and attenuated. Frequently lesions of the deep portion of the ligament are associated with those of the superficial portion; this deep structure may exhibit a tear at its tibial or femoral attachments or at its center in proximity with the periphery of the internal meniscus (Fig. 253).

**CLINICAL FEATURES.** The injury always is accompanied by severe pain at the time of the accident; however in many instances it decreases rapidly in intensity so that the individual is capable of continuing his participation in the activity at hand; later the intensity of the pain increases. The trau-

matized ligament initiates a reflex mechanism protective in nature, which forces the patient to hold the knee slightly flexed at this time. Involuntary spasm of the hamstring muscles precludes any active or passive attempts to straighten the knee joint. This mechanism is not active immediately after the injury, and swelling resulting from effusion or hemorrhage into the joint or a local hematoma have not as yet developed, so that examination at this time may reveal some pertinent information not obtainable after muscle spasm has set in and swelling of the joint has occurred. One is able to localize with considerable accuracy the exact location of the lesion in the ligament; this is achieved by determining the area of maximum tenderness by digital pressure (Fig. 260). Abnormal abduction, rocking and abnormal anteroposterior displacement of the tibia on the femur are readily discernible; finally the absence or the presence of any mechanical blocking to full extension can be determined.

The site of maximum tenderness along the course of the ligament early or late after the injury invariably points to the site of the lesion. Also attempts at abduction, rocking invariably project pain along the inner aspect of the knee. After muscle spasm has set in any abnormal motion is difficult to elicit. In order to demonstrate such motion it becomes necessary to attain complete muscular relaxation; this is accomplished best by a general anesthetic. The author prefers Pentothal Sodium. With complete rupture of the tibial collateral ligament varying degrees of abnormal lateral motion at the knee joint are demonstrable both manually and by roentgenographic examination. Roentgenograms are taken with the patient under general anesthesia and the knee flexed from 15 to 20° as depicted in Figure 259. Roentgenogram of both knees should be made for comparative study; rupture of the ligament is indicated in the increase in width of the medial joint as compared with the normal side. It was recorded previously in the mechanism of

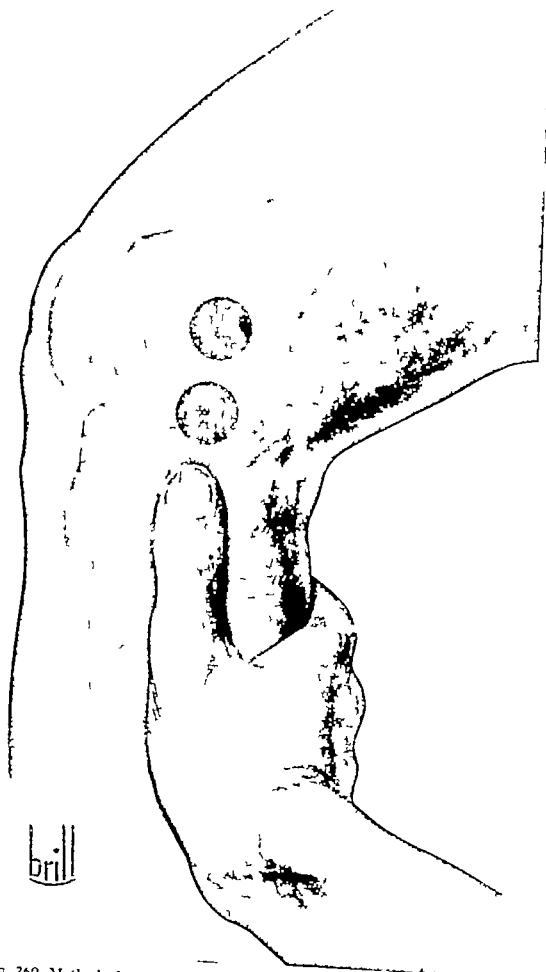


FIG. 260 Method of examination of the tibial collateral ligament. The site of maximum tenderness usually indicates the portion of the ligament involved.

the knee joint that no abduction rocking is possible with the knee in hyperextension because the intertwining of the cruciate ligaments and the increased tension in these ligaments preclude such abnormal motion; this is true even when the tibial collateral ligament is divided. It becomes apparent that if lateral motion exists with the knee in the hyperextended position a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament must exist as a concomitant lesion of rupture of the tibial collateral ligament. Such abnormal motion is not possible in isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament.

Careful palpation of the medial aspect of the knee joint may reveal if present a small particle of bone comprising the femoral insertion of the ligament; also a palpable irregular tumefaction along the course of the ligament may indicate curling up of the ruptured end of either the superior or the inferior segments of the long anterior portion of the tibial collateral ligament.

Some cases of isolated lesions first seen from 12 to 24 hours after the injury may reveal swelling of the joint resulting from an effusion or a hemarthrosis. These features invariably indicate some implication of the deep fibers and tearing of the synovialis above or below the superior rim of the internal meniscus. Intra-articular fluid adds to the difficulty of the diagnosis relative to the presence or the absence of injuries to the meniscus or the anterior cruciate ligament. Synovial effusions, blood or a mixture of both per se may prevent complete extension of the joint both actively or passively; also they may initiate a reflex mechanism in which spasm of the hamstring muscles precludes voluntary extension of the joint, thereby making it impossible to eliminate the possibility of a displaced meniscus as the causative factor responsible for blocking complete extension. Aspiration of the joint or examination of the limb with the patient under a general anesthesia usually clarifies the situation. In the absence

of blood or synovial effusion in the joint cavity, the joint can be extended readily following infiltration of the area of maximum tenderness with procaine provided that a mechanical block caused by a displaced meniscus does not exist.

It must be emphasized at this point that isolated ruptures of the tibial collateral ligament produce only a minimal spread of the medial articular surfaces of the tibia and the femur when examined by the aforementioned methods or by roentgenographic study. Marked abduction rocking of the tibia with the knee in slight flexion and a positive drawer sign are findings consistent with a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

**Complete Rupture with Coexisting Lesions.** Concomitant lesions with complete rupture of the tibial collateral ligament are encountered frequently; the structures usually implicated are the anterior cruciate ligament and the internal meniscus. Of all the numerous varieties of combined lesions of the ligaments of the knee joint this triad constitutes the most common disorder. The mechanism responsible for the combined injury is similar to that described for isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament; however, the subluxating force is of much greater violence. After dissolution of the tibial collateral ligament (both the superficial and the deep portions) continuation of the force results in stretching or complete rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament. Frequently the meniscus is torn from its peripheral attachment to the fibrous capsule and the deep fibers of the tibial collateral ligament or it sustains a tear in its substance; it may be displaced toward the center of the joint causing true locking. As pointed out by O'Donoghue, occasionally the semitendinosus and the sartorius tendons may be avulsed from their tibial insertions and retract to a more proximal position. The author has encountered 3 cases with tearing and retraction of the aforementioned tendons. Routine visualization of

these lesions usually discloses the pathology to be more extensive than one generally realizes. The tibial attachment of the long fibers of the superficial portion of the tibial collateral may be torn from its insertion and sucked into the joint, lying beneath the meniscus, the meniscus may be completely detached from its peripheral capsular attachments and may be displaced into the center of the joint or it may exhibit a large longitudinal tear traversing its substance as far as its anterior segment, with the central portion displaced into the center of the joint. All types of combined lesions of the superficial and the deep portions may be encountered (Fig 254). This same mechanism may be responsible for dissolution of both the anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments.

**CLINICAL FEATURES** Generally the immediate disability is greater in combined lesions than in isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament. If the patient is examined immediately after the injury before spasm of the muscles and swelling of the joint occur the true nature of the disorder may be determined. Pain is localized over the inner aspect of the joint and digital pressure readily localizes the area of maximum tenderness which usually corresponds to the site of greatest damage to the tibial collateral ligament. Abnormal abduction rocking with the knee extended and extensive lateral motion with the knee in slight flexion indicate a tear of both the tibial collateral ligament and the anterior cruciate ligament.

At this time it is difficult to evaluate the status of the internal meniscus unless the structure is torn and displaced into the center of the joint thereby causing a mechanical block to full extension. While per-

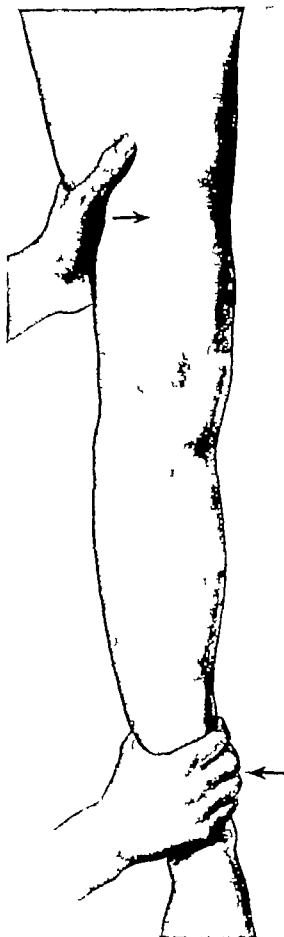


FIG. 261 Clinical maneuvers permitting diagnosis of combined lesions of the tibial collateral ligament. (A) Maneuver to elicit abnormal abduction rocking with the knee extended. This is indicative of a lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament.

the knee joint that no abduction rocking is possible with the knee in hyperextension because the intertwining of the cruciate ligaments and the increased tension in these ligaments preclude such abnormal motion; this is true even when the tibial collateral ligament is divided. It becomes apparent that if lateral motion exists with the knee in the hyperextended position a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament must exist as a concomitant lesion of rupture of the tibial collateral ligament. Such abnormal motion is not possible in isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament.

Careful palpation of the medial aspect of the knee joint may reveal, if present, a small particle of bone comprising the femoral insertion of the ligament; also a palpable irregular tumefaction along the course of the ligament may indicate curling up of the ruptured end of either the superior or the inferior segments of the long anterior portion of the tibial collateral ligament.

Some cases of isolated lesions first seen from 12 to 24 hours after the injury may reveal swelling of the joint resulting from an effusion or a hemarthrosis. These features invariably indicate some implication of the deep fibers and tearing of the synovialis above or below the superior rim of the internal meniscus. Intra-articular fluid adds to the difficulty of the diagnosis relative to the presence or the absence of injuries to the meniscus or the anterior cruciate ligament. Synovial effusions, blood or a mixture of both *per se* may prevent complete extension of the joint, both actively or passively; also they may initiate a reflex mechanism in which spasm of the hamstring muscles precludes voluntary extension of the joint, thereby making it impossible to eliminate the possibility of a displaced meniscus as the causative factor responsible for blocking complete extension. Aspiration of the joint or examination of the limb with the patient under a general anesthesia usually clarifies the situation. In the absence

of blood or synovial effusion in the cavity the joint can be extended following infiltration of the area of maximum tenderness with procaine; if that a mechanical block caused by a displaced meniscus does not exist.

It must be emphasized at this point that isolated ruptures of the tibial collateral ligament produce only a minimal spreading of the medial articular surfaces of the tibia on the femur when examined by the aforementioned methods or by roentgen study. Marked abduction rocking of the tibia with the knee in slight flexion, a positive drawer sign, are findings associated with a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

**Complete Rupture with Concomitant Lesions.** Concomitant lesions with rupture of the tibial collateral ligament are encountered frequently; the structurally implicated are the anterior cruciate ligament and the internal meniscus. The numerous varieties of combined lesions of the ligaments of the knee joint, the most common of which is the dislocation, constitute the most common disorder of the knee joint. The mechanism responsible for the combination of these lesions is similar to that described for isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament; however, the subluxating force is of greater violence. After dissolution of the tibial collateral ligament (both the superficial and the deep portions) continued application of the force results in stretching or rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament. Frequently the meniscus is torn from its peripheral attachment to the fibrous capsule and the deep fibers of the tibial collateral ligament or it sustains a tear in its substance. It may be displaced toward the anterior or posterior of the joint, causing true locking, as pointed out by O'Donoghue; occasionally the semitendinosus and the sartorius tendons may be avulsed from their tibial attachments and retract to a more proximal position. The author has encountered this condition with tearing and retraction of the aforementioned tendons. Routine visualization

these lesions usually discloses the pathology to be more extensive than one generally realizes. The tibial attachment of the long fibers of the superficial portion of the tibial collateral may be torn from its insertion and sucked into the joint, lying beneath the meniscus. The meniscus may be completely detached from its peripheral capsular attachments and may be displaced into the center of the joint or it may exhibit a large longitudinal tear traversing its substance as far as its anterior segment, with the central portion displaced into the center of the joint. All types of combined lesions of the superficial and the deep portions may be encountered (Fig. 254). This same mechanism may be responsible for dissolution of both the anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments.

**CLINICAL FEATURES** Generally, the immediate disability is greater in combined lesions than in isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament. If the patient is examined immediately after the injury before spasm of the muscles and swelling of the joint occur, the true nature of the disorder may be determined. Pain is localized over the inner aspect of the joint, and digital pressure readily localizes the area of maximum tenderness which usually corresponds to the site of greatest damage to the tibial collateral ligament. Abnormal abduction rocking with the knee extended and extensive lateral motion with the knee in slight flexion indicate a tear of both the tibial collateral ligament and the anterior cruciate ligament.

At this time it is difficult to evaluate the status of the internal meniscus unless the structure is torn and displaced into the center of the joint thereby causing a mechanical block to full extension. While per-

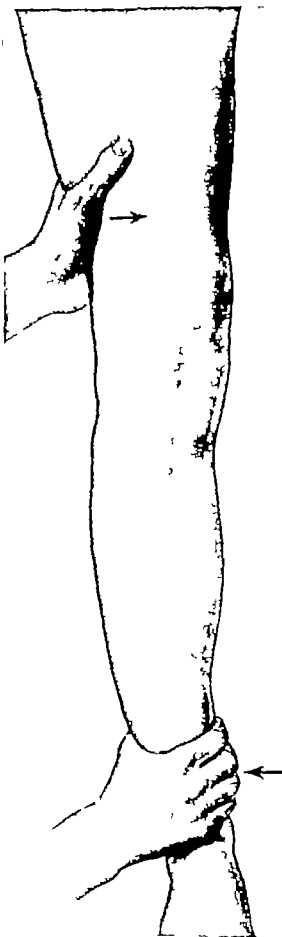


FIG. 261 Clinical maneuvers permitting diagnosis of combined lesions of the tibial collateral ligament. (A) Maneuver to elicit abnormal abduction rocking with the knee extended. This is indicative lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament.

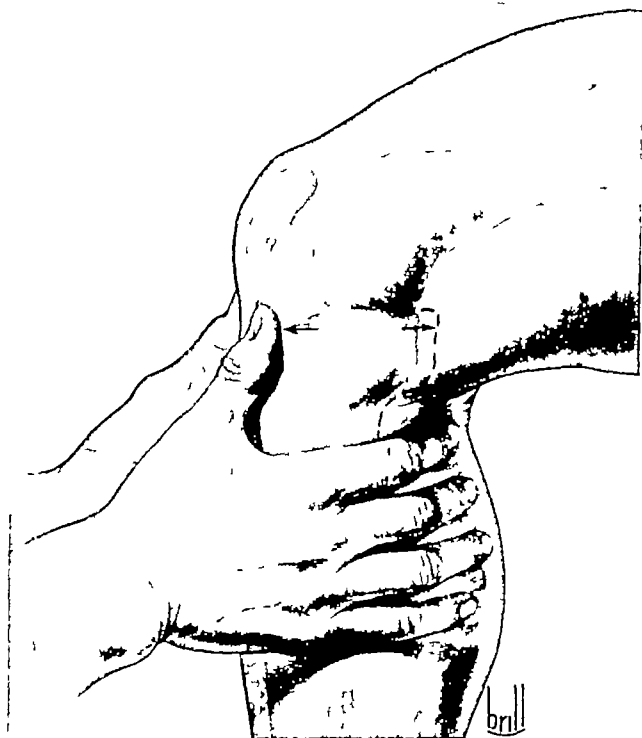


FIG. 261 (B) Method of examination of the knee joint for the presence of the "drawer sign." With the knee flexed at 90° and the femur fixed, anterior displacement of the tibia indicates a positive anterior draw sign; posterior displacement indicates a positive posterior draw sign. The former indicates a lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament, and the latter a lesion of the posterior cruciate ligament.

forming the abduction tests, severe pain always is elicited on the inner aspect of the knee. A positive drawer sign is clinical evidence of a stretched or ruptured anterior

cruciate ligament (Fig. 261). As noted previously, in the presence of an effusion and blood within the joint, the above examination of the limb is performed best under

general anesthesia. Roentgenograms taken in the anteroposterior position with the knees bound together and flexed from 15° to 20° and the legs abducted by wedging a sandbag between the feet will exhibit widening of the medial joint space on the affected side.

**MANAGEMENT** The author has encountered too many knees with severe permanent dysfunction resulting from conservative and inadequate surgical methods of treatment following injuries to the ligamentous apparatus of the knee joint. As noted previously, it is impossible to evaluate correctly the exact extent of the damage suffered by the tibial collateral ligament in isolated lesions of this structure and in some instances it is impossible to rule out with certainty coexisting lesions of the internal meniscus. In combined injuries the pathology is so extensive that it is impossible to determine the true nature of the lesion by clinical or roentgenographic studies alone. Moreover, long period follow up surveys reveal conclusively that immediate repair of the implicated structures yields far better results than reconstruction of the structures at a later date. It becomes obvious that every case of complete rupture of the ligament with or without coexisting lesions should be investigated surgically; the severity of the pathology should be evaluated and an attempt should be made to restore the continuity of all the ligaments involved.

Some observers are of the opinion that in instances of rupture of both the tibial collateral and the anterior cruciate ligaments repair of the tibial collateral ligament alone will suffice provided that the quadriceps is developed sufficiently to compensate for the defective anterior cruciate ligament. All agree that in such instances a good stable knee can be anticipated; however, one must not underestimate the role of the anterior cruciate ligament in the functional mechanics of the knee joint. Clinical experience reveals emphatically that joints in which both ligaments are restored function more

efficiently than in those in which only the tibial collateral ligament is repaired. Many young men in the former group resume their athletic pursuits, this is rarely achieved in the latter group. It is true that in some cases of severe ligamentous injuries treated by surgical repair a perfect result is not obtained; nevertheless, the goal of every surgeon should be anatomic restoration of all the torn structures in all cases, only by this method can one hope to raise the incidence of good long term results. The added surgery to achieve this goal should not be a determining factor in the choice of methods of treatment. In the hands of competent surgeons the repair of one or both cruciate ligaments and removal of the internal meniscus in addition to repair of the tibial collateral ligament is not a formidable procedure, and the additional operating time is not excessive.

In the absence of complicating factors, the operation should be performed as soon after the injury as circumstances dictate. Deferment of the procedure for several days or a week alters the physical status of the local tissues to such an extent that the normal anatomic feature of the individual structures may be lost. The tissues become edematous and laden with blood and tissue fluids; they become friable and are covered with organizing blood clots and granulation tissue. Sutures in such tissues tend to pull out. All these factors add to the technical difficulties of the operation. The application of a tourniquet around the upper one third of the thigh after the limb has been emptied of blood by an Esmarch bandage will provide a dry surgical field and facilitate identification of the structures on the medial aspect of the joint.

**Repair of Tibial Collateral Ligament (Isolated Lesions)** In order to visualize the total extent of the damage the entire ligament should be exposed by an adequate incision. The incision described herein permits the surgeon to expose the structure without undue traction of tissues which already have been traumatized severely. The



tissues should be handled with meticulous care in order to prevent further vascular impairment.

The limb should be positioned properly and draped so that it may be manipulated freely without fear of contaminating the wound by exposing unsterile parts. The patient lies in the supine position with a small sandbag under the knee to flex it from 15 to 20°. After the skin has been prepared the entire leg is enclosed in sterile stockinet, extending from the toes to the groin which is fastened by several layers of sterile gauze wrapped tightly around the upper one third of the thigh. The skin incision is made through the stockinet; the cut edges of which are fastened to the corresponding wound edges by Michel skin clips.

An 'S'-shaped skin incision is made on the anteromedial aspect of the knee. It begins 2 cm above the medial femoral epicondyle and terminates on the anteromedial

surface of the tibia approximately 8 cm below the articular margin of the inner tibial condyle. The investing deep fascia is now exposed and divided by a vertical incision extending the full length of the skin incision (Fig. 262). Retraction of the edges of the fascia brings into view the entire collateral ligament; now the severity of the injury can be fully understood. Careful inspection of the entire ligament is the next step. Invariably, the discoloration of the fibers resulting from the existing hematoma provides a clue to the site of the tear; generally it is at the femoral insertion but it may be at the tibial insertion. Occasionally at the former site a fragment of bone may be avulsed from the femur; the superior end of the ligament still attached to this fragment lies free directly under the investing fascia. At this stage of the operation the superficial portion of the ligament is gently retracted medially and the deep portion is

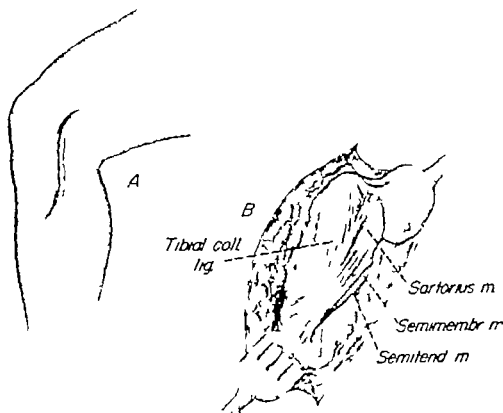


FIG. 262 (A) Skin incision employed to expose the tibial collateral ligament throughout the entire length. (B) Note the relation of the medial ligament to the insertion of the sartorius muscle.

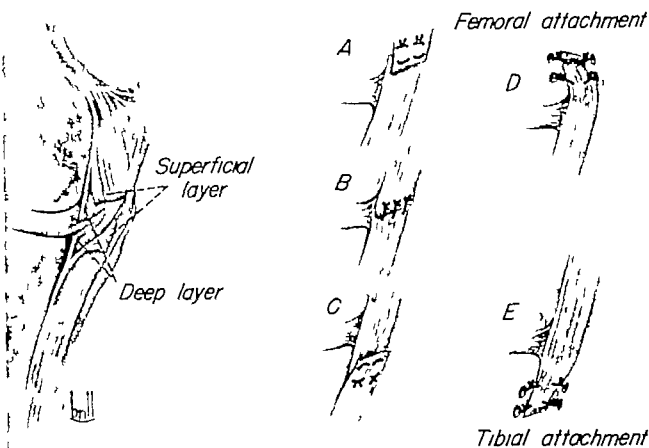


FIG. 263 Method of repair of lesions of the deep portions of the tibial collateral ligament. At levels A, B, C The continuity of the ligament may be restored by interrupted sutures approximating the torn ends. (D) The femoral attachment may be anchored for a slot in the femur (E) The tibial attachment may be sutured in a slot end in the tibia.

inspected the entire width of the ligament should be scrutinized both the anterior and the posterior portions of the structure. Lateral rocking of the tibia on the femur facilitates the localization of the tear, when this maneuver is performed if a tear exists in either the superficial or the deep portions of the ligament a gap is readily discernible between the torn edges. Frequently the deep portion exhibits an irregular oblique tear beginning anteriorly on the anteromedial aspect of the femur and extending obliquely downward and backward across the joint to the posteromedial aspect of the tibia.

In the event that both portions of the ligament are torn the deep layer is repaired first (Fig. 263) A ragged tear across the joint line can be closed readily by approxi-

imating the edges with interrupted cotton sutures. However, if the ligament has been avulsed from either its femoral or tibial insertion, a new bony anchorage should be provided for the detached end. This is best achieved by cutting out of the side of the femur or the tibia at the new site of attachment of the ligament a slot measuring 1 by 2 cm. small drill holes are made on both sides of the slot. The ligament is laid in its new bony bed and fastened to its sides by interrupted cotton sutures passing through the ligament and the drill holes.

Reattachment of the femoral or the tibial insertion of the superficial layer is accomplished by fastening the torn end to its anatomic position with interrupted cotton sutures passing through the soft tissue and the periosteum. If this type of repair ap-

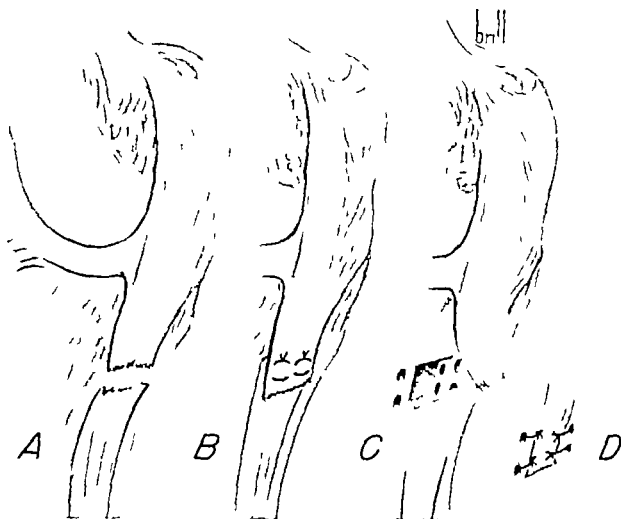


FIG. 264 Method of repair of lesions of the superficial fibers of the tibial collateral ligament (A B) The ends of the ligament may be approximated by interrupted sutures. (C D) The end of the ligament may be given a new bone attachment

appears to be insecure the end may be anchored to the adjacent bone in a similar manner as that described for the repair of the deep layer of the ligament. Occasionally it may be necessary to tighten the ligament by imbrication in order to achieve the desired degree of tautness. Care should be taken in all instances not to obliterate the gliding mechanism between the long anterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the tibia and the femur. Destruction of this gliding mechanism will lead to impairment of flexion of the knee joint. If a large fragment of bone has been avulsed by the femoral attachment it is replaced in its anatomic position and fixed in situ by a

single screw. If the fragment is small it is excised and the end of the ligament is anchored to the adjacent bone by the procedure described previously (Fig. 264).

**Operative Repair in Combined Lesions.** The skin incision is similar to that described for repair of isolated lesions of the tibial collateral ligament (Fig. 265 A B). After the entire extent of the tibial collateral has been explored thoroughly and the severity of the damage has been evaluated the interior of the joint is inspected. This is accomplished by reflecting the outer skin flap until the parapatellar region is exposed; then a parapatellar incision is made through the capsule and the synovialis thereby gain

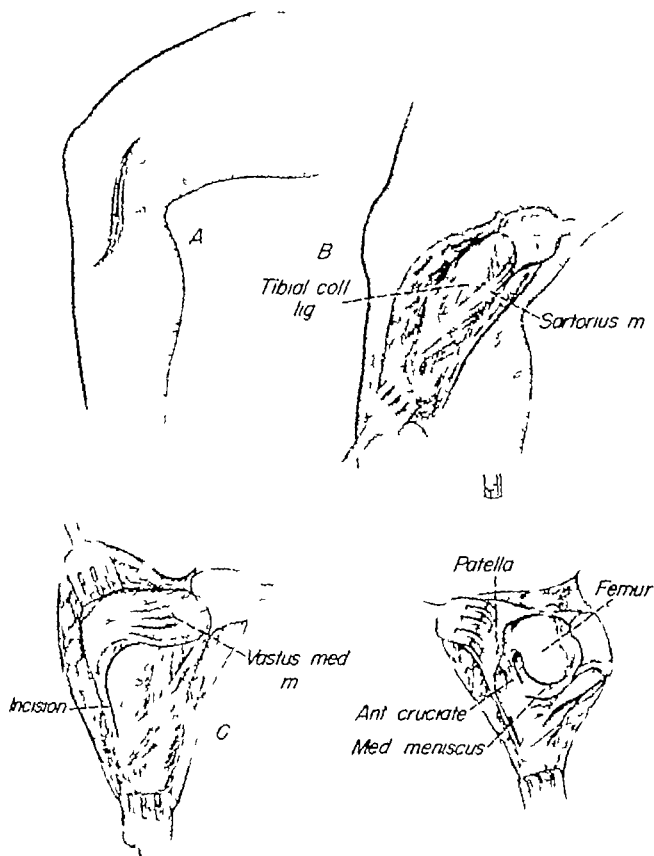


FIG. 265 Exploration of the tibial collateral ligament and method of exposure employed to visualize lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament and the medial meniscus.

ing access to the interior of the joint cavity (Fig 265 C D) Through this capsular incision the anterior and the posterior cruciate ligaments and the medial meniscus are visualized and the degree of damage that they have suffered is determined. The structures are disposed of in the following order: the

medial meniscus, the anterior cruciate ligament, the deep layer and, lastly, the superficial layer of the tibial collateral ligament.

If the medial meniscus is detached from the deep ligament and the capsule, or if it exhibits a tear in its substance, it is excised in toto. If the anterior cruciate is torn from

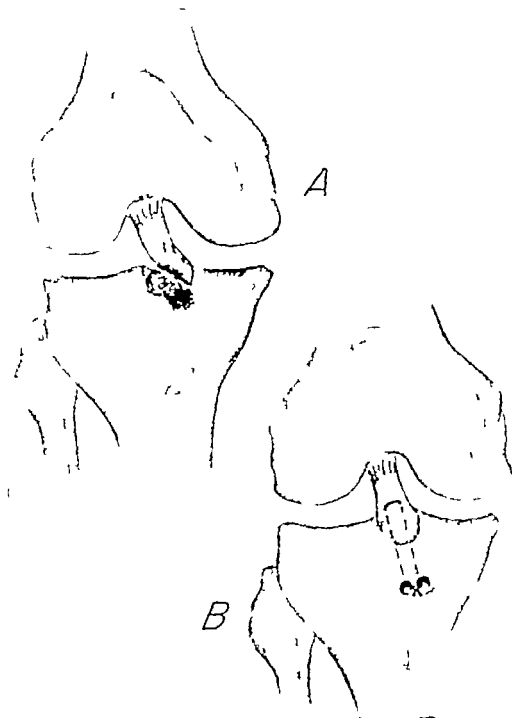


FIG. 266 (A and B) A method of attachment of the tibial insertion of the anterior cruciate ligament

the tibia, it is restored to its anatomic position by the following procedure. Two drill holes are made obliquely through the medial condyle of the tibia, the drill holes pass upward backward and inward, beginning on the anteromedial surface of the tibia approximately 4 cm. below the tibial brim

and issuing from the superior surface of the tibia through the raw area of the anterior spine from which the ligament has been avulsed (Fig 266) A mattress suture using stout silk or stainless steel wire, is passed through the free end of the ligament, the ends of the suture are passed through sepa

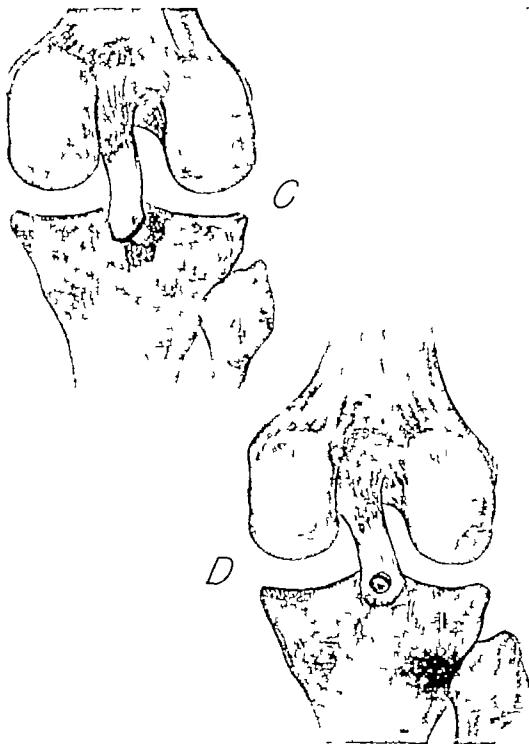


FIG 266 (C and D) A method of attachment of the tibial insertion of the anterior cruciate ligament

rate drill holes by a wire loop. The ends are pulled tightly so that the ligament fits firmly in the raw bony bed and then tied. In the event that the femoral attachment of the ligament is avulsed a similar procedure is executed (Fig. 266 E, F). A vertical skin incision 2 in. in length is made on the

lateral aspect of the femur immediately above the lateral epicondyle of the femur. The incision is carried down to the bone and the periosteum is stripped off the bone for a short distance. Two drill holes are made through the lateral femoral condyle; they begin at the epicondylar ridge and pas

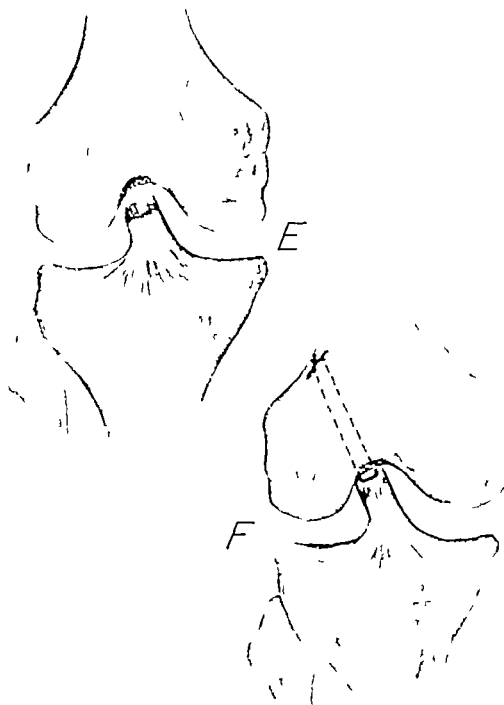


FIG. 266 (E and F) A method of attachment of the femoral insertion of the anterior cruciate ligament

downward and inward they emerge in the intercondylar notch, the ligament is reattached to its anatomic position by the same method described for reattachment of the tibial insertion of the ligament (Fig. 266 A B). If the ligament is shredded and elongated but its continuity remains intact, first the structure is imbricated and then its tibial attachment is pulled snugly onto a roughened area on the tibia by the same procedure employed to anchor a torn tibial attachment of the ligament.

Tears of deep and superficial layers of the tibial collateral ligament are next repaired; the method of repair in combined lesions is similar to that described for isolated lesions of the structure. Finally, the capsule in front and behind the ligament is inspected carefully, and all defects are closed by interrupted sutures. Every attempt should be made to repair the implicated structures in such a fashion that their physical structure and their performance approach the normalcy. The edges of the investing layer of fascia and the skin are approximated in separate layers by interrupted cotton sutures.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT.** At the termination of the operation the limb is enclosed in a well padded plaster cylinder extending from the groin to above the malleoli with the knee in full extension. At the end of 3 weeks the cast is replaced by a snug fitting skintight plaster cylinder weight bearing is now permitted. The total length of immobilization must be governed by the judgment of the surgeon who is familiar with the severity of the lesion and knows the effectiveness of the repair that he performed. Generally from 6 to 8 weeks of immobilization will suffice.

Quadriceps setting and loaded straight leg raising are commenced immediately after the removal of the first plaster cylinder. More vigorous exercises are instituted which are designed to restore maximum power to the quadriceps and normal stability and motion to the knee joint. If an effusion into the joint cavity should occur after

the removal of the second plaster cylinder (6 to 8 weeks after operation), an elastic bandage may be worn around the knee. It is of utmost importance to restrict unprotected weight bearing until the quadriceps has attained sufficient power to stabilize the knee joint adequately. Failure to understand the significance of this precaution can lead only to repeated effusions, delay in the convalescent period and permanent laxity of the ligamentous extensor apparatus. Exercises ever increasing in intensity may require from 4 to 6 months before optimum power is achieved by the extensor group of muscles.

**Conservative Management of Combined Lesions.** It was pointed out previously that conservative management is indicated in severe sprains of the tibial collateral ligament, in these cases the continuity of the ligament remains intact. Occasionally, in combined lesions the presence of severe soft tissue damage, such as extensive abrasions and lacerations, precludes immediate surgical intervention. Also in some cases with associated fractures of the lateral femoral condyles conservative measures suffice because in these instances the violence of the force is expended by the tibial condyles and the ligaments sustain only minor injuries.

In cases exhibiting marked swelling, first the joint is aspirated and then a compression elastic bandage is applied over voluminous sheet cotton extending from mid thigh to mid-calf. Further immobilization is provided by a long posterior plaster splint extending from the tuberosity of the ischium to above the malleoli; it is fastened to the extended limb by elastic bandages. Ice bags applied around the knee joint add to the comfort of the patient. The limb should rest on the bed without a pillow under the knee joint. If bleeding into the joint cavity continues aspiration of the joint is repeated. As a rule after 8 to 10 days the swelling subsides sufficiently to allow the application of a skintight plaster cylinder reaching



from the groin to above the malleoli. The cast is applied directly over a single layer of stockinet or a single layer of elastic adhesive bandage (elastoplast). No exercises except quadriceps setting are executed before the plaster cylinder is applied. After immobilization the patient is put on a regulated regimen of quadriceps exercises comprising first straight leg raising against elastic resistance and, later, exercises of the extensor apparatus in which the muscles work against progressively increasing loads. If no fractures of the tibial condyles are present weight bearing may be resumed after application of the plaster cylinder. The length of the period of immobilization is governed by the severity of the injury to the ligamentous apparatus; in the absence of fractures it varies between 6 and 8 weeks. If a fracture exists weight-bearing is not allowed before 10 or 12 weeks; however during this period exercises designed to restore normal power to the quadriceps are performed. After the removal of the plaster some support may be provided by an elastic bandage. Then exercises to restore normal flexion to the knee joint are added. Conscientious performance of the exercises on the part of the patient and careful guidance on the part of the attending surgeon enhance rapid restoration of power and stability of the limb and shorten the period of rehabilitation.

#### Case Report of an Incomplete Lesion of the Tibial Collateral Ligament.

Case A. D., a white male 20 years old sustained a twisting injury of the right knee while playing basketball. Although he had considerable pain he was able to finish the game after the knee was strapped with adhesive tape. He was seen the day following the injury.

Physical examination of the limb disclosed considerable swelling particularly in the suprapatellar region. The knee was held in 20° of flexion and the patient resisted any passive attempts to extend the knee. There was considerable tenderness along the course of the entire tibial collateral ligament, the area of maximum tenderness being at the tibial attachment. Forceful abduction of the leg

elicited severe tenderness on the inner aspect of the knee. Further examination was conducted with the patient under intravenous Pentothal Sodium. Now the limb could be fully extended; aspiration of the joint yielded 60 cc. of blood. No abnormal abduction rocking or abnormal motion of the tibia on the femur in the sagittal plane could be demonstrated. Anteroposterior roentgenograms taken with the knees bound together and a sandbag wedged between the feet failed to show an increase of the inner joint space of the affected limb. A diagnosis of an incomplete tear of the tibial collateral ligament was made and conservative treatment, as outlined previously, was instituted.

Examination of the patient 8 weeks later revealed a stable painless knee with normal function. The young man was ready to resume his athletic pursuits. This case presents the classic features of incomplete lesions of the tibial collateral ligament except for one feature, namely the presence of a massive hemarthrosis. The presence of blood in the joint cavity leads one to believe that a tear of the synovials must have occurred at the time of the injury; this premise was confirmed by the absence of injury to other ligaments; however, a tear of the peripheral attachments of the meniscus must also be considered. Failure of subsequent development of clinical features consistent with internal derangement of the knee joint eliminates this last possibility.

#### Case Report of Complete Rupture of the Tibial Collateral Ligament (Isolated Lesion)

Case S. F., a white male 17 years of age. He was injured while playing football; he was carrying the ball when suddenly he was "clipped" from the outside by an opposing player. He felt immediate excruciating pain in the left knee joint and had a feeling as if something snapped on the inner side of the joint. He was unable to continue the game. A diagnosis of a sprained ligament was made by a local physician and bed rest and cold packs were prescribed.

Examination 3 days later revealed marked swelling of the knee joint which was held in slight flexion. Some local tissue swelling and ecchymosis were discernible on the inner aspect of the knee. Pain and muscle spasm precluded any active or passive extension of the joint. Digital pressure elicited tenderness along the course of the whole tibial collateral ligament; the area of maximum tenderness

was located in the region of the femoral attachment of the ligament. Forceful abduction of the tibia produced severe pain on the inner aspect of the joint, the drawer sign was negative.

Next, the patient was examined under general anesthesia. Aspiration of the joint produced 45 cc. of blood. In the extended position no abnormal lateral instability was demonstrated; however, with the knee slightly flexed, marked abduction rocking was observed readily. A diagnosis of a complete rupture of the ligament was made, and surgical repair was recommended. Roentgenographic studies disclosed widening of the medial joint space on the injured side.

Exploration of the inner aspect of the knee disclosed a complete rupture of the femoral attachment of the superficial portion of the ligament; a small stump of the ligament still remained attached to the femur. In addition, the femoral origin of the deep layer, together with the capsule, was avulsed from the bone and had retracted to the level of the joint line. The meniscus and the anterior cruciate ligament were intact.

Repair of both layers of the ligament was effected as described previously. Immobilization in a plaster cylinder was continued for 6 weeks. Four months later examination revealed a stable, painless joint with a normal range of motion. The patient had resumed participation in all school athletic activities.

This case exemplifies an isolated lesion of the tibial collateral ligament in which both layers were ruptured completely. Early and adequate repair of the affected structures ensured the patient a normal extremity.

#### Case Reports of Combined Lesions.

Case I R., a white male 19 years old. While running across a football field he was "struck from behind" by one of his own teammates. His left knee buckled and he fell to the ground; the impact was accompanied by severe pain on the outer side of the knee joint, and the patient felt a sensation of "something tearing in the joint." He was unable to extend the knee. One of the trainers attempted to straighten the knee by steady traction, but the knee remained in the flexed position.

He was examined about 6 hours after the



FIG. 267. Roentgenograms of Case I R. showing wide separation of the medial joint space of the left knee joint. Such marked displacement could be produced only by a combined lesion of the tibial collateral ligaments and the anterior cruciate ligament. In this instance the anterior cruciate ligament was found detached from its femoral insertion.

accident. The knee was held in 20° of flexion and exhibited marked swelling particularly in the suprapatellar region. Even without anesthesia considerable lateral rocking and a positive anterior drawer sign was demonstrable in the partially flexed joint. Pressure over the tibial collateral ligament elicited marked tenderness particularly in the region of the femoral attachment of the ligament. Forceful abduction of the tibia on the femur accentuated the pain. Roentgenographic studies with the flexed knees bound together and the lower legs wedged apart exhibited marked widening of the medial joint space on the affected side (Fig. 267). A presumptive diagnosis was made of complete rupture of the tibial collateral and anterior cruciate ligaments and a displaced medial meniscus.

The operative findings confirmed the clinical diagnosis. The superficial portion of the collateral ligament was avulsed from its femoral insertion leaving a raw bony surface; the femoral attachment of the deep portion was also completely detached from its bony insertion and had been pulled in the joint space so that it lay like a curtain on the superior surface of the medial meniscus. In

addition the medial meniscus had sustained a complete bucket handle tear and its central portion was displaced into the intercondylar notch. The anterior cruciate ligament was avulsed from the femur and lay curled up on the intercondylar surface of the tibia.

Repair was achieved by excision of the torn meniscus; next the torn anterior cruciate was reattached to its anatomic position through 2 drill holes in the lateral femoral condyle; the deep portion of the ligament was fastened to its normal position by interrupted cotton sutures and the superficial portion of the ligament was anchored in a slot cut on the side of the femoral condyle. Plaster fixation was maintained for 8 weeks.

Examination 4 months after operation disclosed slight atrophy of the quadriceps muscle with no lateral instability in extension but slight abduction rocking in flexion; the anterior drawer sign was negative. Ten months later the patient resumed his athletic pursuits; at this time the volume and the power of the quadriceps was equal to that of the normal side; no abnormal lateral instability was demonstrable with the knee in flexion.



Fig. 268 Roentgenograms of Case C. K. Note the widening of the medial joint space and the detachment of the femoral insertion of the tibial collateral ligament. The ligament has pulled off a small fragment of bone from the epicondyle of the femur. The fragment has been displaced distally. In this instance there was also a tear of the anterior cruciate ligament.

Case C K., a white male 46 years of age. He was struck on the outer side of the knee by the front bumper of an automobile. One hour later he was admitted to the hospital. Examination revealed some local swelling and discoloration on the outer aspect of the joint. Some swelling in the parapatellar and the suprapatellar regions was discernible. The knee could be extended readily to 180°. Lateral rocking of the tibia on the femur with the femur fixed was demonstrable in both the extended and the flexed positions. The anterior drawer sign was positive. Digital pressure over the femoral attachment of the ligament elicited excruciating tenderness. Roentgenograms disclosed marked widening of the inner side of the medial joint space, also a small fragment of bone was seen detached from the medial surface of the femur (Fig. 268). These findings permitted one to make a diagnosis of a complete rupture of both the tibial collateral ligament and the anterior cruciate ligament.

Exploration of the inner aspect of the knee revealed that the femoral attachment of the superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament with a small piece of bone was avulsed from the medial surface of the femur. By abducting the tibia a wide gap in the deep portion of the ligament was seen immediately above the upper border of the medial meniscus which was completely detached from its peripheral attachments and lay loosely in the joint. The anterior cruciate ligament was avulsed from its tibial attachment.

In the repair of the implicated structures the medial meniscus was excised in toto. The anterior cruciate was approximated to its area of insertion into the tibia by a suture passing through two drill holes in the inner tibial condyle. The two ends of the deep portion of the ligament were first imbricated and then sutured together, the free fragment of bone still attached to the femoral end of the superficial portion of the ligament was excised and the end of the ligament was anchored in a slot cut out of the side of the inner surface of the medial condyle of the femur. At the termination of the repair a plaster cylinder was applied with the knee extended 180°. It was removed at the end of 3 weeks and another plaster cylinder was applied. Total plaster immobilization was maintained for 8 weeks.

At the end of 6 months the patient had no abnormal abduction rocking with the knee in the extended or flexed position, however he did have slight increased anterior displacement of the tibia on the femur in the sagittal plane (positive drawer sign). The quadriceps

had achieved volume and power comparable with that of the normal side. He was able to perform all activities which he was capable of doing before the accident.

#### INJURIES OF THE FIBULAR COLLATERAL LIGAMENT

The anatomic location of the fibular collateral ligament renders it less vulnerable to injury than the medial ligament. The opposite limb protects it from adduction subluxating forces. In addition it is strengthened by the iliotibial band, the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle, the tendon of the popliteus muscle and the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle. Because the structure is relaxed in all positions of flexion, it is rarely injured by rotary forces except in cases of severe subluxation or dislocation of the knee joint. The mechanism whereby the fibular collateral ligament is ruptured is usually one of forceful adduction of the leg on the femur. Rarely is the lesion an isolated one; usually concomitant lesions are produced by the above mechanism: these comprise tearing of the lateral portion of the fibrous capsule and its synovial lining, fraying or severance of the popliteus tendon, the lateral head of the gastrocnemius and the iliotibial band and stretching or rupture of the common peroneal nerve. The nerve lesion is the most important associated lesion because frequently it is followed by permanent paralysis resulting in loss of dorsiflexion of the foot. Occasionally the cruciate ligaments are implicated.

As noted previously the fibular collateral ligament is a stout cord of connective tissue fibers whose distal insertion is located in the head of the fibula. In most instances severe adduction forces result in rupture of the inferior attachment of the ligament; often a fragment of bone is avulsed from the head of the fibula. If the force is continued the deeper portion of the ligament, which blends with the capsule, is ruptured at its middle. In rare instances rupture of the ligament may be associated with an avulsion of a

piece of bone of the outer aspect of the lateral condyle of the femur

As noted above, the peroneal nerve may be stretched or torn in both types of lesions. The prognosis is grave. By early surgical intervention it may be possible to perform some type of repair to bring together the healthy ends of the nerve; however, stretching and fraying of the nerves invariably indicates severe laceration of the nerve bundles and vascular impairment of a large segment of the nerve. Repair in these cases is difficult and often impossible.

**Clinical Features.** In all instances there is a history of severe force to the inner aspect of the knee driving the tibia into varying degrees of adduction. Pain is localized to the outer aspect of the joint. Some local swelling is usually discernible in this region. In isolated lesions without injury to the intra articular structures or the synovialis no effusion or hemorrhage into the joint ensues. However, if rupture of the ligament is complicated by tearing of the capsule or cruciate ligaments, varying degrees of swelling occurs. Palpation along the course of the ligament invariably elicits maximum tenderness at the site of the lesion. In isolated

lesions abnormal adduction rocking is demonstrable with the knee in the extended position; however, the drawer sign is negative. Roentgenograms taken of both knees in the same position while forceful adduction is made on the tibiae reveal widening of the lateral joint space on the affected side.

Combined lesions exhibit clinical manifestations which point to the true nature of the pathology present. Rupture of the deep portions of the ligament and of the fibrous capsule results in hemorrhage into the joint. This also occurs when the cruciate ligaments are traumatized. If a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament exists, the drawer sign is positive and adduction rocking is increased considerably, both in extension and flexion. Implication of the common peroneal nerve is evident by both sensory motor manifestations. Complete paralysis of the muscles supplied by the nerve distal to the injury produces a "drop foot."

**Treatment.** Both isolated ruptures and combined lesions of the fibular collateral ligament should be explored first and evaluated by direct visualization of the pathology present and then repaired by surgical means.

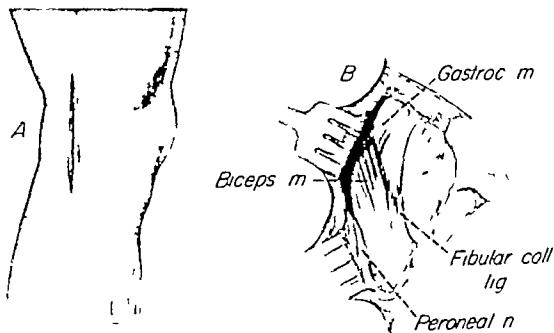


FIG. 269 Method of exposure of the fibular collateral ligament

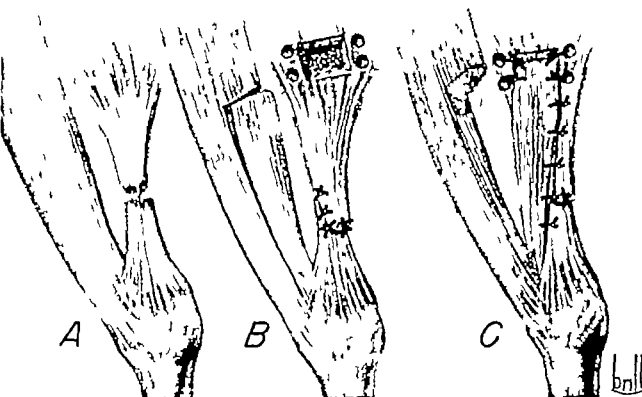


FIG 270 (A and B) Repair of the fibular collateral ligament by utilizing a segment of the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle. (C) Note that the tendon is attached to the remaining portions of the external fibular lateral ligament

oids (Fig 269) Generally, the ends of the torn ligament and the edges of the gap in the capsule can be approximated and even imbricated by interrupted cotton sutures. In the event that the anterior or the posterior cruciate ligaments are ruptured repair is effected in the same manner as that described previously. The superficial and the deep (capsular) portions of the ligament should be repaired separately, in addition, the author reinforces the ligament by utilizing a segment from the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle. This should be sufficiently long to reach the femoral attachment of the fibular collateral ligament it is left attached to the neck of the fibula, and its proximal end is anchored in a slot made on the lateral aspect of the lateral femoral condyle. Then the new ligament is fastened to the fibular collateral ligament by interrupted sutures (Fig 270) If fragments of bone have been detached from the head of

the fibula or the lateral margin of the tibia, they may be either replaced in their original site or excised, depending upon their size. The methods of reattachment of the ruptured distal end of the ligament are depicted in Figure 271.

In all instances the external popliteal nerve should be explored. Early and meticulous repair of a ruptured nerve provides a better chance of recovery than late repairs. At best traction lesions of the type encountered with tears of the fibular collateral ligament are difficult to repair and, as noted previously, the prognosis is poor.

**Postoperative Management.** This phase of the treatment is similar to the postoperative management following repair of ruptures of the tibial collateral ligament. In the event that a repair of the external peroneal nerve has been performed, after the cast is removed the patient is fitted with a brace having a drop foot stop. Elec

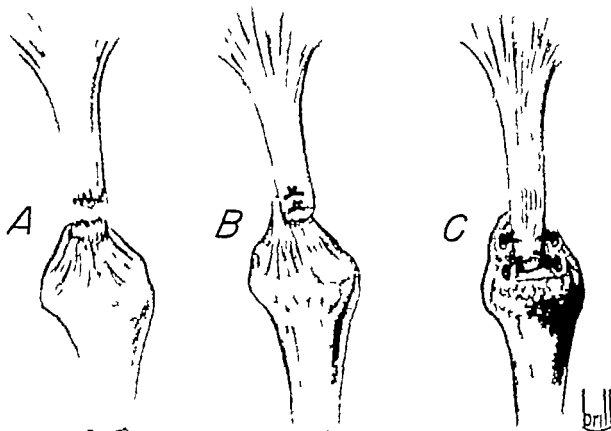


FIG. 271 Methods of reattachment of the ruptured distal end of the fibular collateral ligament. (A) Suture of the fibular ligament (B) Reattachment of the severed ends of the ligament by interrupted sutures (C) Method of anchorage of the detached end of the ligament into a slot made in the head of the fibula

trical stimulation of the paralyzed muscles should be employed to maintain tone and volume. If after repair of the nerve and the lapse of a reasonable period of time it becomes apparent that the paralysis is permanent, then some type of operation on the ankle joint must be contemplated in order to hold the foot in the desired position in relation to the tibia, such as arthrodesis of the ankle joint or a posterior bone block.

The following case represents a typical example of complete rupture of the fibular collateral ligament.

**CASE R. 1.** a white male 19 years of age. While playing football he was struck on the inner side of the left knee by a blocker of the opposing team. He experienced immediate pain on the outer aspect of the joint, however he continued to play ball until the end of the period. His knee was strapped by the trainer and cold packs were applied to the outer

aspect of the joint. he was seen the following day in the hospital.

Examination at this time disclosed considerable swelling of the entire knee joint and some local swelling over the outer aspect of the knee. The limb was held in slight flexion; the patient resisted any attempt to extend the knee. The joint was aspirated and 30 cc of blood tinged fluid was obtained. Palpation elicited maximum tenderness over the inferior attachment of the ligament; this area was infiltrated with 5 cc. of procaine. Then extension of the knee was possible. Abnormal adduction rocking was readily demonstrable with the knee in extension. Roentgenograms revealed widening of the outer joint space; the drawer sign was negative with no neurologic manifestations implicating the external popliteal nerve.

Immediate exploration of the fibular collateral ligament disclosed complete rupture of its inferior attachment close to the head of the fibula. Also a transverse tear of the deep fibers of the ligament and of the fibrous cap-

sule at the level of the middle of the joint space was demonstrable, adduction rocking opened up the defect in the capsule so that the popliteus tendon came into view, this structure and the external meniscus were intact. The external popliteal nerve was explored and found to be undamaged.

Repair was achieved by closure of the defect in the capsule and deep portion of the ligament by interrupted cotton sutures the inferior end of the superficial portion of the ligament was reattached to the head of the fibula. The entire structure was reinforced by a segment from the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle by the method described previously. A plaster cylinder was applied holding the knee extended and abducted the cylinder was worn for 6 weeks, and the usual postoperative regimen to restore normal quadriceps power was instituted. This patient resumed his position on the football squad the following season.

#### RECENT INJURIES OF THE ANTERIOR CRUCIATE LIGAMENT

The important role of the anterior cruciate ligament in the functional mechanics

of the knee joint has been stressed in Chapter 5. It was pointed out that this structure not only helps to stabilize the joint in both the extended and flexed positions by preventing abnormal motion in the lateral and the sagittal planes but it also guides the path of motion of the lateral femoral condyle in relation to the tibia. Also together with certain other supporting structures (particularly the capsule the medial collateral ligament and the posterior cruciate ligament) it governs the arc of rotation of the tibia on the fixed femur in both extension and flexion. Finally it is one of the factors controlling both hyperextension and hyperflexion. As pointed out by Goodsir and re-emphasized by Smillie, one of the chief functions of this structure is control of outward rotation of the tibia in the last few degrees of extension which comprises the screw home movement. Derangement of this mechanism results in the production of the more common lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament.



FIG. 272 (*Left*) Avulsion of the anterior cruciate ligament, together with the anterior tibial spine. Displacement is minimal hence, treated by conservative measures. (*Right*) Roentgenogram taken 8 weeks later showing healing at fracture site. The knee is stable.



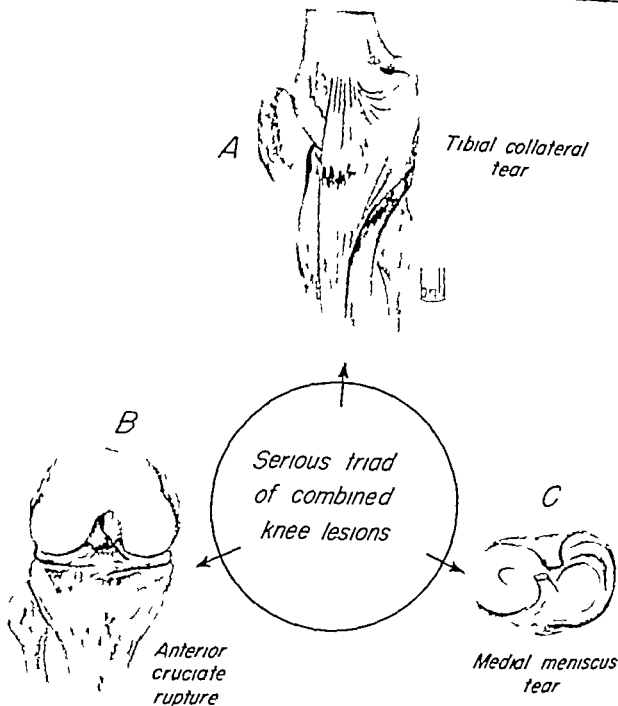


FIG. 273 Diagrammatic representation of the triad of lesions frequently encountered following injuries forcing the knee into abduction and flexion while the femur is rotated medially on the fixed tibia

#### MECHANISM OF INJURY OF THE ANTERIOR CRUCIATE LIGAMENT

**Isolated Lesions.** These lesions are encountered less frequently than lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament complicated by associated ligamentous or meniscal damage. They occur in one of several forms: the

ligament may be avulsed together with a fragment of bone from the upper surface of the tibia; this lesion is comparable with a fracture of the tibial spine (Fig. 272); the superior attachment may be avulsed from the lateral femoral condyle; or one or both ends may be partially ruptured but some

bers of the ligament retain continuity of the structure. This may occur within the synovial sheath of the ligament, so that the structure may appear to be stretched or attenuated. Generally, the above lesions are produced by violent hyperextension of the knee joint or a direct blow on the anterior surface of the femur with the knee flexed driving it backward while the tibia is fixed in young individuals, particularly in the adolescent period, avulsion of a portion of the tibial spine with the ligament attached is observed more frequently than the other two types of lesions mentioned (Fig 257).

**Combined Lesions.** These lesions are usually the result of abnormal rotary forces or forceful abduction of the tibia. It was pointed out in the study of the mechanics of the knee joint (Chap 5) that the entire tibial collateral ligament is taut in extension also that during the entire phase of flexion some of the long anterior fibers remain taut. Hence it becomes apparent that the integrity of the anterior cruciate be assured so long as the tibial collateral ligament remains intact. However rupture of the tibial collateral ligament makes the anterior cruciate ligament vulnerable, and if the abduction force continues rupture or stretching of the cruciate ligament ensues. The abduction mechanism is responsible for the most serious type of injury of the knee joint, because it usually results in rupture of both the tibial collateral and the anterior cruciate ligaments a combination which is accompanied invariably by severe dysfunction of the knee joint. This same mechanism may produce rupture of the tibial collateral and the anterior cruciate ligaments and also a fracture of the lateral condyle of the tibia. As noted in the discussion of lesions associated with complete rupture of the tibial collateral ligament, the most frequent triad produced by abduction flexion and medial rotation of the femur on the tibia is rupture of the tibial collateral ligament, rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament and tearing of one of the menisci

as a rule the medial meniscus (Fig 273).

Rotation mechanism may result in tears of both the medial meniscus and the anterior cruciate ligament at the time of the initial incident. On the other hand, as pointed out by Smillie, the mechanism may result in a longitudinal tear of the meniscus without involvement of the cruciate ligament, however, if the torn displaced meniscus produces a permanent mechanical block to normal lateral rotation of the tibia when the knee is extended, forced extension of the joint tends to stretch and eventually rupture the anterior cruciate ligament. If the obstruction to lateral rotation of the tibia results suddenly by a displaced central segment of the torn medial meniscus and at the same moment the knee is extended forcefully such as may occur on the football field acute rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament may ensue. It becomes obvious that repeated incidences of locking cause gradual stretching and eventually rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament also weight bearing on a truly locked knee joint produces the same result. This provides an explanation for the high incidence of attenuated or ruptured anterior cruciate ligaments encountered in cases with lesions of a menisci which are capable of producing recurrent episodes of locking the medial meniscus is implicated more often than the lateral.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

**Isolated Lesions.** Uncomplicated ruptures of the anterior cruciate ligament are exceedingly rare, however, they do occur and the mechanisms producing the lesions have been recorded the most common type is forcible hyperextension of the joint. The lesions as noted previously are encountered more frequently in young individuals, particularly in the adolescent period of life. In all instances there exists a history of some form of violence to the knee joint. Rupture of the ligament or avulsion of a portion of the upper surface of the tibia invariably is

accompanied by hemorrhage and synovial effusion into the joint cavity. At the time of the accident the patient frequently experiences a sensation of something tearing within the joint and immediately thereafter he is aware of a feeling of instability in the knee joint on weight bearing when the knee moves into a position of flexion. Large amounts of blood and synovial effusion may distend the joint markedly; this is followed invariably by pain, reflex spasm of the hamstrings holding the joint in varying degrees of flexion and restriction of normal flexion and extension of the joint.

In the presence of the aforementioned features it becomes apparent that adequate examination of the part becomes difficult and at times impossible unless the intra-articular tension is reduced by aspiration of the blood and the synovial effusion. At times even after aspiration of the joint satisfactory examination is not possible; in these cases it is justifiable to administer a general anesthetic agent, preferably Pentothal Sodium, in order to diminish pain and abolish the reflex spasm of the hamstring muscles.

The most important single clinical feature always present when dissolution of the continuity of the anterior cruciate ligament has occurred is the "positive anterior drawer sign." If the patient is examined immediately after the injury before the joint cavity becomes distended with blood and synovial fluid it may be possible to elicit the abnormal forward gliding of the tibia on the fixed femur. In most instances the patient is rarely available for examination at this time; hence the aspiration of the joint and a general anesthetic become imperative if an accurate evaluation of the existing lesion is to be made.

The maneuvers comprising the "drawer sign" demonstrate the presence or the absence of abnormal forward or backward displacement of the tibia on the fixed femur in the sagittal plane; the test is performed with the knee flexed 90° (Fig. 261 B). Dis-

solution of the continuity of the anterior cruciate ligament permits abnormal forward gliding (positive anterior drawer sign) of the tibia while rupture of the posterior cruciate allows abnormal backward gliding (positive posterior drawer sign). There is present some anteroposterior motion in the normal joint; therefore, the unaffected knee always should be tested in order to estimate what is the normal amount of motion for the patient. In the absence of a concomitant lesion, rupture of the anterior ligament permits only a minimal amount of abnormal forward gliding of the tibia. If the tibial collateral ligament is stretched or ruptured the amount of displacement is increased considerably, and if a rotary element is added to the maneuver the displacement is maximal.

Roentgenographic studies should be made of all cases; however, the findings are of significance only when a spiral fracture of the tibial spine or a fracture of the lateral tibial plateau are visualized.

**Combined Lesions (Of the Medial Meniscus and the Anterior Cruciate Ligament)** The medial meniscus and the anterior cruciate ligament may be torn by the same mechanism at the time of the original accident, which as a rule is produced by violent rotation mechanism usually on the football field. As pointed out by Smillie, it is the event that the meniscus alone is torn and the tear is of such a nature that it is capable of locking the joint; the anterior cruciate is vulnerable to injury. With each episode of locking any attempt to extend the joint stretches the anterior cruciate ligament because the displaced meniscus prevents normal external rotation of the tibia on the femur. If these incidents are repeated the attenuated ligament eventually ruptures. Such findings are observed frequently in knee joints with old meniscal tears which caused recurrent locking and finally come to surgery (Fig. 274).

It is often difficult to make a correct diagnosis when both lesions are produced

by the same injury mechanism. If locking of the joint occurs, the lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament may be overlooked. However, in the event of a hemarthrosis, injury of the anterior cruciate ligament must be suspected and a careful examination should be made to establish or eliminate the presence of the lesion. One must bear in mind that hemarthrosis may also be the result of laceration of the synovial lining, tearing of the peripheral attachment of the meniscus from the capsule or a fracture of the tibial spine or the tibial plateau. If a definite mechanical block to extension exists and it can be established that the obstruction is not the result of a displaced fragment of the tibial spine, one must assume that the meniscus is torn and a segment of the structure is displaced into the center of the joint, causing the locking.

In the event that locking is not present at the time of examination, it is difficult to determine the presence of a meniscal lesion. Stretching or tearing of the anterior cruciate ligament is established by a positive drawer sign. As in isolated lesions, an adequate examination can be performed only when the muscles about the joint particularly the hamstrings are completely relaxed and the joint cavity has been evacuated of blood and synovial fluid. This may entail repeated aspirations and a general anesthetic agent. Roentgenographic studies are essential to determine the presence or the absence of a fracture of the tibial spine or the tibial surface.

**Combined Lesions (Of the Anterior Cruciate Ligament, the Tibial Collateral Ligament and One of the Menisci)** This triad has been considered in the discussion



FIG. 274. This patient discloses forward displacement of the tibia on the fixed femur with the knee at right angles. In this case 2 lesions were found: a longitudinal tear of the medial meniscus and the complete destruction of the anterior cruciate ligament. This figure depicts the amount of anterior displacement of the tibia present 6 months after meniscectomy. This patient was able to do ordinary activities; however, he was unable to participate in any athletic pursuits. (Left) The flexed knee before forward traction is made on the tibia. (Right) Forward traction on the tibia produces a positive drawer sign indicative of a torn anterior cruciate ligament.

dealing with lesions associated with a complete rupture of the tibial collateral ligament

#### MANAGEMENT OF LESIONS

Considerable controversy exists relative to the advisability of surgical repair of a torn anterior cruciate ligament when it exists as a single lesion. It is common knowledge that a knee with a ruptured anterior cruciate ligament and a powerful extensor apparatus is capable of meeting the ordinary demands of function however it is not capable of performing arduous activity such as is needed on a football field. It is the author's opinion that if no contraindications exist every attempt should be made to restore the joint to normalcy. The operative procedures outlined should not be deterring factors. This is particularly true when the lesion is encountered in young athletically inclined individuals.

Two varieties of ruptures of the anterior cruciate ligament lend themselves admirably to repair. These are avulsion of a portion of the tibial spine to which the inferior end of the ligament is attached and rupture of the superior attachment of the ligament. Cases in which the ligament is stretched, frayed and attenuated are more difficult to repair and sometimes the laceration of the ligament is so extensive that repair is impossible.

**Avulsion of a Portion of the Tibial Spine.** The choice of treatment is governed by the degree of displacement and in the event of displacement, whether or not the fragment can be perfectly restored to its normal anatomic position. Occasionally a sprain fracture is observed without displacement. In such instances the ligament retains its normal length and surgical intervention is not justified (Fig. 272). Such cases can be treated by conservative methods. First the joint cavity is aspirated re-



FIG. 275 Note a fracture of the tibial spine with displacement into the intercondylar notch of the femur. This patient was treated by operative measures as depicted in Figure 266 A B.

moving as much blood and synovial fluid as is attainable, then a nonpadded plaster cylinder with the knee in extension is applied. If the detached fragment of bone is relatively large, including a portion of one of the tibial plateaus, it may be possible to restore the bone to its normal site by hyperextension of the knee joint. By this maneuver the femoral condyle will make pressure on the large bone fragment and force it into its normal position. If roentgenograms reveal that when the joint is brought to the neutral position ( $180^\circ$  extension) no redisplacement of the fragment occurs, a nonpadded plaster cylinder is applied from above the malleoli to the groin immobilizing the limb in  $180^\circ$  extension at the knee joint. Before reduction is attempted the patient is given a general anesthetic, and the joint is evacuated of blood and synovial fluid by aspiration. No weight bearing is allowed for a period of 3 weeks. At the termination of this period the plaster cylinder is removed, and another cylinder is applied; now weight bearing is allowed. Quadriceps exercises are performed during the entire period of immobilization. At the end of 6 to 8 weeks the cast is removed, and measures are instituted to restore joint function. In the event that perfect reposition of the fragment is not achieved or the detached fragment is too small to be replaced by manipulation, surgical intervention is indicated (Fig. 275).

**OPERATIVE TECHNIC** In all instances a tourniquet is applied around the upper third of the thigh. A medial parapatellar incision is employed to expose the intercondylar region of the tibia. In recent lesions upon incising the synovial membrane large quantities of blood and synovial fluid may be encountered; this is aspirated from the joint cavity. The fragment is identified and the defect in the upper surface of the tibia is prepared to receive the fragment by curetting out organized blood clots and loose strands of tissue. The fragment must fit perfectly in its bed; otherwise the ligament will not be restored to

its normal length. Occasionally, it may be necessary to deepen the defect by removing some of the bone with a curet or a gouge. This allows the detached fragment to sit deeply in its bed, thereby taking all slack out of the ligament. This step is especially desirable in neglected cases in which sufficient time has elapsed since the accident to allow the formation of callus or even bone in the defect. In such an event it becomes apparent that the original defect in the tibia becomes shallow or even obliterated and must be deepened in order to receive the detached fragment of bone.

About 4 cm. below the brim of the articular surface of the tibial condyle two parallel drill holes 1 cm. apart are made in the medial condyle of the tibia. They begin on the anteromedial surface and are directed upward and inward; their exit is in the base of the defect located in the intercondylar region of the tibia. If the fragment is large it is perforated by two small holes. A stout silk or stainless steel suture is passed through the holes in the bone fragment; then the ends of the suture are passed from within outward through the holes in the medial tibial condyle. This last step is facilitated by the use of a wire loop which guides the ends of the suture to the outer surface of the tibia. If the fragment is small the suture is passed through the inferior end of the anterior cruciate ligament close to the surface of the detached bone. By pulling on the ends of the suture the fragment is seated snugly in its bed; then the ends are tied over the intervening bone. The wound is closed in layers in the usual manner (Fig. 266 A, B).

After the knee is wrapped in several layers of sheet cotton uniform compression is made with an elastic bandage. The compression dressing extends from the middle of the calf to mid-thigh. At this point the tourniquet is removed. The limb is immobilized on a posterior plaster splint, extending from the ankle to the upper region of the thigh.

As a rule within 10 to 14 days the post

operative reaction will have subsided sufficiently to allow the application of a non padded plaster cylinder extending from above the malleoli to the groin. Weight bearing is allowed from 3 to 4 weeks after operation. However quadriceps exercises are commenced immediately after the cast is applied. Plaster immobilization is continued for 6 to 8 weeks after the plaster cylinder is removed. Exercises are instituted on a regulated regimen designed to restore normal power to the extensor mechanism and complete joint function.

**Dissolution of the Anterior Cruciate Ligament Without Fracture of the Tibial Spine.** This is an exceedingly rare lesion. The author never has encountered one except in combination with rupture of the tibial collateral ligament and tearing of one of the menisci or associated with a tear of one of the menisci alone. In the event that the lesion is encountered and recognized it should be repaired particularly in young individuals who are athletically inclined.

**OPERATIVE TECHNIC (Fig. 266 E F)** The joint is exposed through a medial parapatellar incision and a stout silk or stainless steel suture is passed through the proximal end of the anterior cruciate ligament. A vertical incision 2 inches long is made on the lateral aspect of the femur immediately above the epicondyle of the lateral condyle of the femur. Two parallel drill holes 1 cm apart are made in the condyle. They are directed downward and inward so that their exit lies in the area of the inner surface of the condyle which normally provides attachment of the superior end of the ligament. The two ends of the suture previously passed through the ligament are drawn through the drill holes from within outward using a wire loop. The ends are made taut and then tied over the intervening bone thereby pulling the detached end of the ligament snugly against its normal site of insertion.

The postoperative management is similar

to that described for detachment of the inferior end of the anterior cruciate ligament.

**Rupture of the Anterior Cruciate Ligament Associated With a Tear of the Medial Meniscus.** When this combined lesion is observed shortly after the accident the choice of management comprises excision of the medial meniscus in toto and restoration of the normal anatomy of the anterior cruciate ligament. The ligamentous lesion is either a rupture of the femoral attachment or a sprain fracture of the tibial spine. Repair in each case is effected by the operative technics described previously (Fig. 266).

Postoperative management however, differs from that of a simple meniscectomy. At the termination of the operation a compression elastic bandage is applied extending from mid-calf to mid thigh. Quadriceps exercises are commenced at once. No weight bearing is permitted for 3 weeks. At the end of this period a plaster cylinder is applied holding the limb in the extended position (180°). Weight bearing is now permitted. The plaster cylinder is removed approximately 6 to 8 weeks after the operation. The period of total fixation is governed by the judgment of the surgeon, who knows the severity of the lesion and the type of repair that he effected.

Although every effort should be made to restore the normal anatomy of the anterior cruciate ligament particularly in fresh lesions occurring in young individuals frequently during the course of a meniscectomy a torn or attenuated ligament is encountered in which a satisfactory repair cannot be effected. Such lesions usually comprise rupture of the femoral attachment of the ligament or severe stretching fraying and elongation of the entire structure its continuity being maintained by the synovial sheath. In these cases no attempt is made to achieve anatomic restoration of the ligament. After the involved meniscus is excised a concerted effort is made to

redevelop the extensor apparatus to its maximum level of efficiency in order to compensate for the loss of the stability resulting from a defective ligament. If a sprain fracture of a portion of the tibial spine with the inferior attachment of the ligament intact is encountered every effort should be made to replace the fragment in its normal anatomic position and restore the function of the ligament.

**Other Combined Lesions** Rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament associated with a tear of one of the menisci and dislocation of the tibial collateral ligament or associated with lesions of the medial ligament alone are considered in the section dealing with associated lesions of rupture of the medial ligament.

## RUPTURE OF THE POSTERIOR CRUCIATE LIGAMENT

Isolated lesions of this structure are relatively rare and usually are the result of direct force driving the tibia posteriorly while the foot and the femur are fixed and the knee is flexed. This mechanism is observed frequently when in an automobile accident the occupant of the front seat is suddenly thrust forward, striking one of the tibias against the dashboard. Two varieties of ruptures of the ligament are observed: (1) a sprain fracture of the posterior portion of the upper end of the tibia; the distal end of the ligament retains its attachment to the avulsed fragment; and (2) a rupture of the femoral attachment of the ligament (Fig. 258).

### CLINICAL FEATURES

The pertinent clinical manifestations are a history of severe violence driving the tibia backward while the knee is flexed; an extensive hemarthrosis; and a positive posterior drawer sign. Immediately after the injury there is considerable dysfunction and the knee tends to "buckle" when weight is borne on the flexed joint. Gen-

erally, the knee joint is markedly distended with blood and synovial fluid. In cases with avulsion of a fragment of bone from the upper surface of the tibia the posterior capsule may be ruptured, allowing extravasation of blood into the popliteal fossa; pressure in the popliteal space elicits severe tenderness. Before spasm of the muscles crossing the knee joint occurs, the posterior drawer sign can be elicited readily; later, pain and spasm precludes a satisfactory demonstration of the backward mobility of the tibia on the femur. Roentgenographic studies are of significance only when a detached fragment of bone is demonstrable. In the absence of positive roentgenographic findings an adequate examination is possible only after the joint cavity is evacuated of blood and synovial fluid and the patient is relaxed completely by a general anesthetic. In addition to the mechanism described, rupture of the posterior cruciate ligament may be an associated lesion of total disruption of the ligamentous apparatus encountered in dislocation of the knee joint.

### MANAGEMENT

As in recent lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament ruptures of the posterior ligament should be repaired as soon after the accident as circumstances permit. In cases of avulsion of a portion of the superoposterior surface of the tibia, the detached fragment should be restored to its anatomic position.

**Operative Technique (Fig. 276)** The fracture site is exposed through a vertical "S" shaped incision centered over the posterior joint line. After the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle is divided it is displaced medially together with the neurovascular structures in the popliteal fossa. The posterior portion of the capsule now comes into view. If a defect in the structure is present, it is visualized readily by hyperextending the knee joint. The loose fragment is identified, and the site on the tibia



from which it was avulsed is curetted free of blood clots and other tissue debris

In the event that the fragment is relatively large it may be anchored to its normal position in the tibia by a screw, or occasionally it may be held in place by interrupted cotton sutures fastening it to

the surrounding capsular tissue. The writer prefers the former technic when it can be executed. If the fragment is too small to hold a screw, or if it cannot be stitched securely to the surrounding tissues, a stout silk or stainless steel suture is passed through the end of the ligament and the

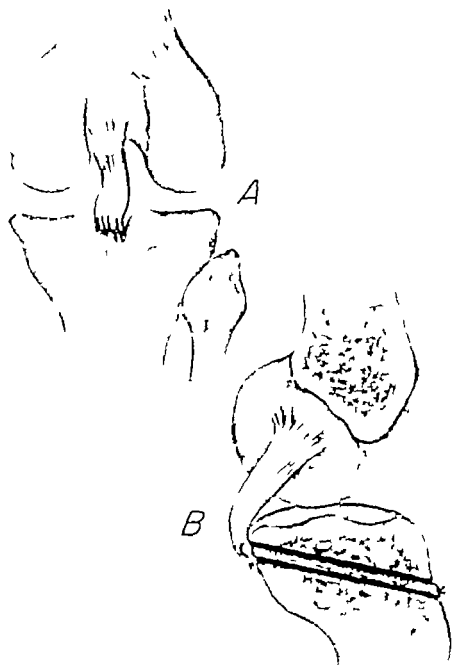


FIG. 276. Methods of repair of lesions of the posterior cruciate ligament. (A) Torn tibial attachment of the ligament. (B) Reattachment of the ligament by a suture passed through the ligament and the ends passed through drill holes in the medial tibial condyle.

ends are passed through parallel drill holes, 1 cm. apart, from within outward, which were made previously through the medial tibial condyle, beginning on its anteromedial surface 2 inches below the articular surface, a wire loop is employed to guide the ends of the suture through the holes then the ends are tied tightly on the inter

vening bone. After the ends are tied the inferior end of the ligament should fit snugly in its normal anatomic position on the tibia (Fig 276 A, B) The author has employed the last procedure in only two cases, as a rule, the end of the ligament can be made secure to the surrounding capsular tissue

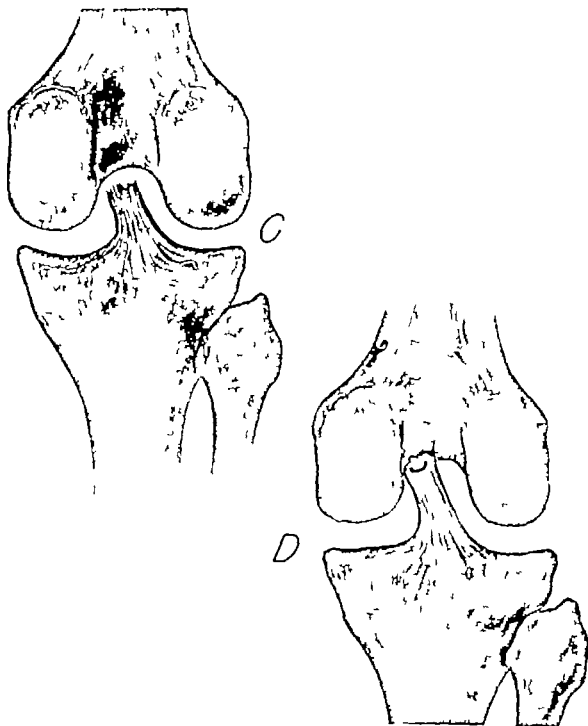


FIG 276 (C) Rupture of the femoral attachment of the posterior cruciate ligament. (D) Reattachment of the ligament by a suture passing through the ligament and the ends of the suture passing through drill holes in the medial femoral condyle

Repair of rupture of the femoral attachment of the ligament is effected with little difficulty because the ligament can be approximated readily to its normal site of insertion. The same posterior incision as mentioned above is utilized to expose the structure. A silk or wire suture is passed through the distal stump of the ligament and the ends are drawn from within out through two parallel drill holes previously made in the medial condyle of the femur. The holes are drilled from immediately above the medial epicondyle to the area of attachment of the ligament on the lateral aspect of the condyle.

After closure of the wound, a compression elastic bandage is applied and the limb is immobilized in a posterior plaster splint extending from the ankle to the groin and holding the knee flexed about 15 or 20°. Quadriceps setting and drill are commenced immediately. At the end of 10 to 14 days a nonpadded plaster cylinder is applied from above the malleoli to the groin; now the leg is placed in 180° extension. Weight bearing is allowed 3 or 4 weeks after the operation; plaster immobilization is maintained for 6 to 8 weeks.

In the event that roentgenograms reveal a sprain fracture of a portion of the supero-posterior surface of the tibia but no displacement of the fragment is present, operative intervention is not indicated. First the knee is evacuated of blood by aspiration and then a plaster cylinder is applied. The treatment is similar to that described for sprain fractures of the anterior segment of the tibial spine consistent with a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

#### PELLEGRINI STIEDA DISEASE (PARA ARTICULAR CALCIFICATION AND OSSIFICATION OF THE KNEE JOINT)

This entity is characterized by the formation of discrete calcareous deposits or bone adjacent to the adductor tubercle of

the femur. Generally the deposits are disk shaped conforming to the external surface of the medial condyle of the femur; they vary in size and exhibit a constant pattern of development from the formative to the stage of maturity. Since the report of Pellegrini in 1905 and that of Stieda in 1908, numerous cases have been recorded in the literature. There still exists considerable controversy relative to the etiology and the pathogenesis of the lesion. In spite of this disagreement the disorder pursues a course which is punctuated by specific pertinent clinical manifestations and pathognomonic roentgenographic findings, rendering the lesion readily recognizable.

#### ETIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Of the numerous etiologic factors which have been conceived as the agents responsible for this disorder, trauma is the most likely cause. It may be in the form of direct violence to the medial aspect of the knee or in the form of indirect forces resulting from severe rotary and abduction strains that implicate the upper attachment of the tibial collateral ligament. Some of the other theories are avulsion of a piece of bone or periosteum from the adductor tubercle and injury to the bursa located immediately over the tubercle. Also Nachlas and Olpp recorded that a membrane lines the fascia and invests the medial femoral condyle; this membrane glides back and forth over the tubercle during normal joint motion. Friction between the tubercle and the membrane produces degeneration and necrosis in the tissues; this in turn forms the basis for the subsequent calcification and ossification characteristic of the disease. As noted previously, the evidence at hand indicates that the lesion is the result of injury to the femoral attachment of the tibial collateral ligament produced by direct or indirect violence. As in myositis ossificans, the resulting tissue damage is accompanied by extravasation of tissue fluids, blood and death of connective tissue cells, all of which form the basis for the development of cal-



FIG 277 Note the elongated calcareous amorphous deposit in the substance of the medial longitudinal ligament in the region of the medial femoral condyle. Note further that there is a definite interval between the deposit and the surface of the femoral condyle.

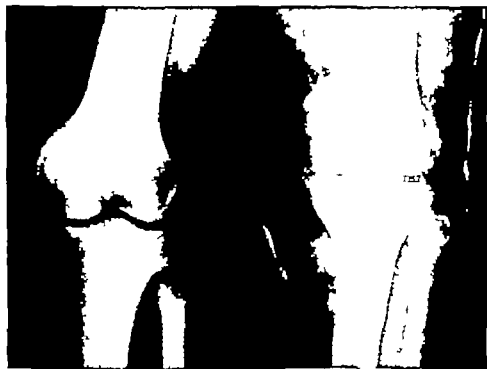


FIG 278 (*Left*) Note the formation of heterotopic bone in the region of the epicondyle of the femur and also some irregular amorphous deposits of calcium at the level of the joint space. The ossified ligament is attached to the epicondyle of the femur. At this time the patient was having considerable pain, and the process was still in an active state. (*Right*) Depicts the amount of bone and calcareous material excised from the substance of the ligament. Although this patient showed considerable improvement, some residual limitation of flexion was apparent.

Repair of rupture of the femoral attachment of the ligament is effected with little difficulty because the ligament can be approximated readily to its normal site of insertion. The same posterior incision as mentioned above is utilized to expose the structure. A silk or wire suture is passed through the distal stump of the ligament and the ends are drawn from within out through two parallel drill holes previously made in the medial condyle of the femur. The holes are drilled from immediately above the medial epicondyle to the area of attachment of the ligament on the lateral aspect of the condyle.

After closure of the wound, a compression elastic bandage is applied and the limb is immobilized in a posterior plaster splint extending from the ankle to the groin and holding the knee flexed about 15° or 20°. Quadriceps setting and drill are commenced immediately. At the end of 10 to 14 days a nonpadded plaster cylinder is applied from above the malleolus to the groin; now the leg is placed in 180° extension. Weight bearing is allowed 3 or 4 weeks after the operation; plaster immobilization is maintained for 6 to 8 weeks.

In the event that roentgenograms reveal a sprain fracture of a portion of the superior posterior surface of the tibia but no displacement of the fragment is present operative intervention is not indicated. First, the knee is evacuated of blood by aspiration and then a plaster cylinder is applied. The treatment is similar to that described for sprain fractures of the anterior segment of the tibial spine consistent with a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

#### PELLEGRINI STIEDA DISEASE (PARA ARTICULAR CALCIFICATION AND OSSIFICATION OF THE KNEE JOINT)

This entity is characterized by the formation of discrete calcareous deposits or bone adjacent to the adductor tubercle of

the femur. Generally the deposits are disk shaped conforming to the external surface of the medial condyle of the femur, they vary in size and exhibit a constant pattern of development from the formative to the stage of maturity. Since the report of Pellegrini in 1905 and that of Stieda in 1908 numerous cases have been recorded in the literature. There still exists considerable controversy relative to the etiology and the pathogenesis of the lesion. In spite of this disagreement, the disorder pursues a course which is punctuated by specific pertinent clinical manifestations and pathognomonic roentgenographic findings, rendering the lesion readily recognizable.

#### ETIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Of the numerous etiologic factors which have been conceived as the agents responsible for this disorder trauma is the most likely cause. It may be in the form of direct violence to the medial aspect of the knee or in the form of indirect forces resulting from severe rotary and abduction strains that implicate the upper attachment of the tibial collateral ligament. Some of the other theories are avulsion of a piece of bone or periosteum from the adductor tubercle and injury to the bursa located immediately over the tubercle. Also Nachlas and Olpp recorded that a membrane lines the fascia and invests the medial femoral condyle; this membrane glides back and forth over the tubercle during normal joint motion. Friction between the tubercle and the membrane produces degeneration and necrosis in the tissues; this in turn forms the basis for the subsequent calcification and ossification characteristic of the disease. As noted previously the evidence at hand indicates that the lesion is the result of injury to the femoral attachment of the tibial collateral ligament produced by direct or indirect violence. As in myositis ossificans the resulting tissue damage is accompanied by extravasation of tissue fluids, blood and death of connective tissue cells, all of which form the basis for the development of cal-



FIG 277 Note the elongated calcareous amorphous deposit in the substance of the medial longitudinal ligament in the region of the medial femoral condyle. Note further that there is a definite interval between the deposit and the surface of the femoral condyle

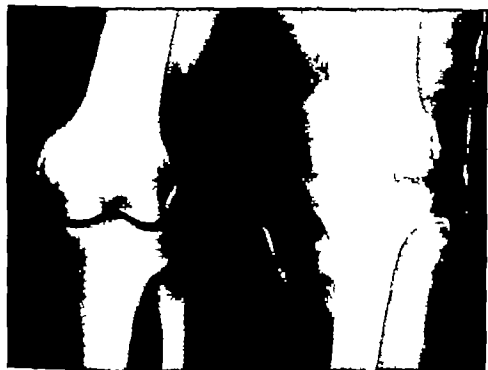


FIG 278 (*Left*) Note the formation of heterotopic bone in the region of the epicondyle of the femur and also some irregular amorphous deposits of calcium at the level of the joint space. The ossified ligament is attached to the epicondyle of the femur. At this time the patient was having considerable pain and the process was still in an active state. (*Right*) Depicts the amount of bone and calcareous material excised from the substance of the ligament. Although this patient showed considerable improvement, some residual limitation of flexion was apparent

cification and ossification in and about the medial ligament. Lesions of this nature are found in other sites in the body which are subjected to strains, producing the aforementioned tissue damage. Besides the medial ligament of the knee joint some of the other sites of predilection of this lesion are the upper attachment of the medial ligament of the elbow joint and the medial ligament of the ankle joint. The author has also encountered the disorder in the fibular collateral ligament.

Traumatic degeneration and necrosis of tissue together with a localized collection of blood and tissue fluids initiate the pathologic processes which culminate first in the precipitation of calcium salts and ultimately in ossification. The calcareous mass varies in size from a thin crescent-shaped lesion to one measuring several centimeters in width and length. In the formative stage a space usually separates the lesion from the medial aspect of the condyle of the femur; this is especially true of thin elongated lesions (Fig. 277). In the late stages the mass may fuse with the medial surface of the condyle; this feature is encountered more frequently in large lesions which as a rule are the result of direct violence to the inner side of the knee joint (Fig. 278). In the early stages of development the lesion is usually amorphous in nature and poorly defined; later, it is replaced by heterotopic bone which is dense, discrete and sharply delineated.

#### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Generally the patient gives a history of some form of direct trauma to the inner aspect of the knee or a rotary strain which at first is considered of little importance but after 3 or 4 weeks the persistence and the gradual accentuation of the symptoms forces the patient to seek medical advice. Occasionally the patient is seen by a physician immediately after the injury and the lesion is treated inadequately as a contusion or a sprain of the knee joint. At this

stage of the clinical course the pertinent clinical features are (1) more or less constant pain over the region of the femoral attachment of the medial tubercle, (2) accentuation of the pain by activity and (3) varying degrees of dysfunction resulting chiefly from limitation of flexion of the knee joint.

Examination may reveal some slight localized swelling on the inner aspect of the knee; palpation discloses that the tissues in the region of the adductor tubercle are slightly thickened; pressure over this area invariably elicits severe tenderness. In all instances observed by the author limitation of flexion was an outstanding feature and in some cases loss of the last few degrees of extension was also discernible. When the knee was forced beyond the arc of free motion the patient experienced sharp excruciating pain. The acute symptom signs conforming to this pattern are manifested for 10 to 12 weeks after the initial injury; during this period unwise attempts at treatment such as passive manipulation of the knee joint forcing the patient to exercise the limb in spite of pain and rough kneading massage tend to stimulate the proliferative process rather than promote its recession. In fact the potential danger of enhancing and prolonging the evolutionary process is present up to the time when maturity of the lesion is definitely established as evidenced by a decrease in the intensity of the symptoms and the formation of a discrete dense bony mass.

Generally after a period of 10 to 12 weeks the intensity of the process begins to subside; the symptoms are less severe and although flexion is still demonstrable motion is associated with less pain. A firm bony hard tumefaction is now palpable in the region of the adductor tubercle. If it has fused with the medial condyle it is immobile; otherwise some motion is demonstrable. Pressure over the mass gives rise to tenderness and flexion of the joint is restricted; the extent of the restriction is

governed by the degree of implication of the medial ligament which interferes with the gliding mechanism of the ligament

### ROENTGENOLOGIC FEATURES

As a rule, when the true nature of the lesion is recognized, usually after the third or the fourth week, a thin amorphous elongated semilunar-shaped calcareous deposit is readily demonstrable between the medial surface of the condyle and the lesion (Fig 277) The mass may retain this configuration except, that as it passes into the stage of maturity it becomes more dense and sharply demarcated No appreciable change may occur up to the time that partial or complete absorption occurs On the other hand, proliferation of the lesion may be the outstanding feature. This is particularly true in lesions caused by severe direct violence (Fig 278) At first, the entire growing mass may exhibit a granular ill-defined amorphous character, later, when ossification predominates, it becomes sharp and dense occasionally, bony trabeculae are noted in the roentgenograms Such lesions usually fuse with the medial condyle and are rarely absorbed completely, but usually partial absorption of the mass occurs

### MANAGEMENT

The most effective treatment is prevention. This goal can be achieved only by being constantly aware of the potentialities of minor sprains or severe direct trauma to the inner aspect of the knee joint Adequate treatment at this time in the form of complete immobilization of the limb in a plaster cylinder for a period of 4 to 5 weeks, depending upon the severity of the trauma will prevent the process and in very early cases will abort further developments Immediately after the injury overzealous treatments in the form of massage and forced activity must be condemned because such measures may initiate the processes responsible for para-articular calcification and ossification

After the lesion is recognized clinically, usually 3 to 4 weeks following the initial trauma, a nonpadded plaster cylinder is applied from above the malleoli to the mid thigh although weight bearing, quadriceps drill and straight leg raising are permitted on a regulated regimen, strenuous exercises are prohibited. The cylinder is maintained for 4 to 6 weeks, as a rule at the end of this period most of the calcareous mass is absorbed. Subsequent exercises to restore joint motion are performed, always within the painless arcs of motion Forceful passive manipulation or vigorous activity must be avoided throughout the entire formative period Surgical intervention never is justified at any time during this period Failure to adhere to this line of treatment invariably leads to stimulation of the pathologic processes resulting in deposition of calcareous material which eventually culminates in heterotopic bone

Recently, the author has treated 4 early cases with injection of 2 cc. of Hydrocortone into the site of maximum tenderness and resumption of activity without fixation of the limb in plaster In all instances the symptoms subsided within 24 to 48 hours and rapid absorption of the calcareous deposits ensued as demonstrated by roentgenograms Restoration of normal function was achieved in 10 to 14 days The number of cases is too small to permit any conclusions relative to the efficacy of this form of treatment however the results suggest further investigation Some cases, particularly those that are treated unwisely and occasionally even some which have been treated correctly from the onset of the lesion, progress to the stage of maturity in which a large mass of heterotopic bone remains showing little or no evidence of absorption The mass forms a mechanical obstruction to the gliding mechanism of the tibial collateral ligament When the pathologic process is stabilized completely surgical excision of the heterotopic bone is justified



**Technic.** A shallow S-shaped incision is made over the inner aspect of the knee beginning slightly above the adductor tubercle and ending 4 to 5 cm below the articular brim of the tibia. The bony mass is excised from the ligament by sharp dissection and if it is fused to the medial condyle of the femur its site of attachment is divided with a sharp thin blade osteotome. At this time gentle manipulation is performed, carrying the tibia through a complete range of motion on the femur. Pump-handle movements are avoided. At the termination of the operation an elastic compression bandage is applied and quadriceps exercises are started at once. After the acute reaction of the tissues has subsided—usually 3 to 5 days postoperatively—exercises to restore normal flexion are added; they should not be performed vigorously and always should be executed within the patient's tolerance of pain.

#### Case Report of Injudicious Management of a Contusion to the Inner Aspect of the Knee.

C. R., a Negro male 46 years of age, was struck by a piece of falling timber on the medial aspect of the left knee joint. Although he had some pain on the inner aspect of the knee, he was able to continue with his work. Several hours later he noticed some localized swelling on the inner aspect of the joint but considered the lesion to be a simple contusion so he applied home remedies and an elastic bandage. He continued to work for 4 weeks, during which time pain was constant and intense; he walked with the knee slightly flexed. A consulting physician made the diagnosis of sprain of the knee joint and prescribed diathermy and knee-bending exercises. At the end of 2 months the knee was manipulated for "adhesions" under a general anesthesia. Because no improvement ensued the knee was manipulated again approximately 6 weeks after the first manipulation. After the first manipulation the patient was unable to return to work; after the second manipulation treatment consisted of radiant heat, massage and exercises.

The patient was seen in the Jefferson Hospital approximately 8 months after the initial injury. Examination at this time revealed pro-

nounced atrophy of the quadriceps muscle; the knee was held in 30° of flexion and the patient walked on his toes. A firm mass was palpable over the adductor tubercle which was painful on pressure, free flexion was possible only within the arc from 150 to 100°. Attempts to increase the arc of flexion elicited severe pain, spasm of the hamstring muscles precluded any increase in extension. Roentgenographic study revealed the presence of a large, dense semilunar shaped mass overlying the medial condyle; the heterotopic bone had fused with the upper end of the condyle. At the level of the joint several amorphous granular deposits were observed. It became apparent that the upper limits of the lesion were more or less stabilized and had reached maturity, while the lower portion was still in a proliferative state (Fig. 278 left).

The patient was given a general anesthesia (Pentothal Sodium) with relaxation of the flexor muscles of the affected limb; the extremity spontaneously assumed the position of complete extension. A plaster cylinder was applied and mild quadriceps drill was commenced at once; only protective weight-bearing was permitted. The cast was removed at the end of 6 weeks at which time the pain had completely subsided; the tumefaction on the inner side of the knee was smaller but firm and not particularly tender. Flexion was still restricted but some of this was due to the period of fixation. Quadriceps exercises were increased in intensity but no manipulative measures were employed and flexion exercises were not encouraged. After 2 more months (almost 13 to 14 months) after the accident the heterotopic bone was excised from the quadriceps ligament and divided from its attachment to the medial condyle (Fig. 278 right). In addition the knee was gently put through a full range of motion. Now quadriceps and flexion exercises were increased slowly in intensity. Within 3 months the patient had no pain; the knee was stable and he had returned to his former employment. However 6 months after the operation he still had 15 to 20° restriction of flexion; extension was complete.

#### OLD LESIONS OF THE LIGAMENTS OF THE KNEE JOINT

##### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Old lesions of the ligaments sufficient to produce pronounced dysfunction are rarely observed as isolated lesions. Old ruptures

of the anterior cruciate ligament without implication of other structures are encountered more frequently than isolated lesions of the remaining components of the ligamentous apparatus. When rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament is present in a joint whose function is impaired markedly, invariably examination will disclose a lesion of the medial meniscus or relaxation or rupture of the tibial collateral ligament or both. Also there may be advanced relaxation of the capsule and the extensor apparatus and loss of quadriceps tone and volume. Old ruptures of the tibial collateral ligament are rare as isolated lesions, generally, a torn or attenuated anterior cruciate ligament and a tear of one or both of the menisci are concomitant findings. This triad is responsible for the most severe form of dysfunction encountered, the severity of quadriceps atrophy and capsular relaxation, which are invariably associated with this disabling combination add, in a large measure, to the extent of the impairment of joint function.

Surgical intervention is rarely justified in cases of isolated injuries because in most instances the extensor apparatus can be developed to a high level of efficiency sufficient to compensate for the defective structure. Although these joints are not capable of meeting the demands of rigorous athletic activity they can meet the requirements of everyday normal activity. Moreover because the musculature of the thigh plays such an important role in the over all performance of the knee and is the chief stabilizing factor of the joint, no operative procedure should be undertaken without first giving due consideration to the redevelopment of the extensor mechanism. At best, accepted reconstructive procedures, together with a quadriceps developed to the level of maximum efficiency produce a knee joint which is far from normal but decreases the extent of the disability and provides the patient with a limb capable of performing the average daily tasks. On the other hand the most meticulously executed

procedure is doomed to failure if the extensor apparatus has been neglected. Development of muscle power must not be concentrated on the quadriceps alone but also on the muscles of the hip and the calf, all of which have a specific and pertinent role in the stabilization of the knee joint.

Management of old ruptures presents more intricate and serious problems than treatment of recent ruptures. In the latter restoration of the normal anatomy can be achieved in most instances, whereas in old lesions the "golden period" of repair has long passed, and the only alternative remaining is the reconstruction of substitutes for the disrupted structures. Man is not able to reconstruct ligaments which possess the inherent intrinsic mechanism of the normal structures. For example, the arrangement of the fibers of the cruciate ligaments which permits shifting of the tension from one group of fibers to another group during flexion and extension cannot be reproduced by the most dexterous surgeon. This is also true of the tibial collateral ligament. In addition, the replicas lack the important sensory innervation which makes the entire ligamentous apparatus and capsule a living part of the knee joint. This feature protects the joint from abnormal stresses by calling into play the protective mechanism of the muscles crossing the joint. In long neglected cases repeated incidents of giving way which are associated with an unstable joint may result eventually in irreparable damage to all the joint structures. Traumatic arthritis is a frequent sequela in these cases. The damage may be so profound that the only recourse which will provide a painless and useful limb is arthrodesis of the joint.

In the light of this information, when a surgeon assumes the responsibility of reconstructing old ruptured ligaments he should do so with the mental reservation that at best he can only lessen the existing disability and that this can be achieved only after the quadriceps has been redeveloped to maximum efficiency. Also, the patient

should be made aware of this fact in order that his expectations may not be too great otherwise, disappointment is inevitable

#### PATHOGENESIS AND CLINICAL FEATURES OF OLD RUPTURES

Rupture of the Tibial Collateral Ligament. In the section dealing with acute injuries of this ligament it was pointed out that acute complete ruptures are often associated with rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament and in some instances also a tear of one or both menisci a combination which invariably produces profound disability if early repair is not effected. However, isolated lesions are relatively common and, if treated inadequately will give rise to varying degrees of disability. Failure to achieve normal anatomic restoration of the structure by surgical measures immediately after the accident and disregard for the importance of the extensor mechanism in the presence of this lesion are the chief factors for the impairment of function which ensues. Depending upon the extent of impairment of the extensor mechanism varying degrees of lateral instability of the joint are discernible. This instability is responsible for recurrent episodes of buckling and giving way of the joint on weight bearing with the knee in varying degrees of flexion and also makes the medial meniscus vulnerable to recurrent trappings between the condyles of the femur and the tibia. For this reason in old cases in addition to severe quadriceps atrophy capsular relaxation and lateral instability a longitudinal tear of the medial meniscus may be an associated finding. The presence or the absence of this meniscal lesion always must be determined before one can treat intelligently a supposedly isolated lesion of the medial ligament.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS. Cases of sufficient severity to cause patients to seek medical aid invariably give a history of some form of severe abduction or rotary injury to the knee joint. Subsequent

individuals note a sense of instability and a tendency for the knee to buckle inward particularly when the patient is caught off guard with the knee flexed. Frequently the incidences are accompanied by swelling of the knee joint and pain along the inner aspect of the joint. There is a tendency for the severity of each incident to progress in intensity this is also true of the degree of dysfunction after each episode. Although the patients in most instances are capable of performing ordinary daily activities, they find themselves unable to participate in athletic pursuits.

In the event that a tear of the anterior cruciate ligament exists, the aforementioned symptoms and the extent of the impairment of function are greatly exaggerated. If one of the menisci is implicated momentary locking or even complete locking of the joint may occur. In very old cases the amount of effusion following each locking may be insignificant. In one instance the author reduced a displaced medial meniscus in the same patient on three different occasions within a period of 3 weeks. After each episode the joint tissues showed little or no reaction.

Examination in uncomplicated ruptures of the medial ligament causing marked dysfunction always reveals advanced quadriceps atrophy and varying degrees of laxity of the extensor mechanism, the ligamentous apparatus and the capsule. With the knee in slight flexion abnormal abduction rocking is demonstrable. Often this maneuver is accompanied by an audible click as the joint surfaces snap back into position. Abnormal rotation of the flexed tibia on the femur is readily discernible and is the result of general laxity of the tissues. Some abnormal anterior displacement of the tibia on the femur is demonstrable. Defects in the long vertical portion of the ligament may be palpated while the knee is held in extension and abduction.

All clinical signs are keenly exaggerated in combined cause of dis-

solution of the anterior cruciate ligaments and laxity of the supporting structures, forward displacement of the tibia is now maximal the test for abduction rocking produces wide separation of the articular surfaces of the tibia and the femur on the medial side of the joint in the flexed, the extended and the hyperextended positions. In the flexed position, rotation of the femur is increased in both the medial and the lateral directions, lateral rotation is increased because of the dissolution of the medial ligament and laxity of the other supporting structures, and abnormal medial rotation is permitted chiefly by the rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

Roentgenograms taken with the knees flexed (15 to 20°) and bound and the legs wedged apart with sandbags exhibit widening of the medial joint space, in the event that rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament takes the form of a sprain fracture of the tibial spine, the displaced fragment is visualized.

**Old Rupture of the Anterior Cruciate Ligament.** Old isolated ruptures of this structure are encountered more frequently than old isolated lesions of the medial ligament. Fortunately, the extent of joint impairment associated with this disorder is less than that produced by lesions of the medial ligament. If the extensor apparatus compensates for the defective structure the degree of dysfunction is minimal nevertheless most of the individuals affected possess enough disability to preclude participation in strenuous pursuits. Those patients who seek medical advice usually exhibit varying degrees of quadriceps inefficiency and laxity of the other supporting components of the knee joint, which is the true factor responsible for impaired joint function. In the latter instances recurrent episodes of giving way of the joint followed by effusion and periods of inactivity predispose the medial meniscus and the medial ligament to repeated injuries. As pointed out previously, rupture of the anterior cru-

ciate ligament and tearing of the medial and the lateral menisci may occur at the time of the original accident, being produced by the same mechanism. On the other hand, the initial lesion may have been a tear of the meniscus, usually the medial repeated incidences of locking may result in stretching and even rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament. The mechanism whereby this occurs is recorded by Helfet. This observer points out that the prime function of the cruciate ligaments is to act as guide ropes for the path of the tibia during rotation at the knee joint. This rotation occurs in the last 30° to 40° of extension and in the final degrees of flexion. The configuration of the articular surfaces of the medial condyle determines the course of the tibia during flexion and extension, but the ligaments guide the tibia in its paths. During the last phase of extension (screw home movement), some portion of the anterior cruciate remains tense at all times, guiding the lateral rotation of the tibia on the femur. However, if lateral rotation of the tibia is resisted while extension of the joint continues, the tension in the anterior cruciate ligament increases and at the same time hooks over the lateral margin of the medial condyle of the femur. It becomes apparent that any obstruction to normal lateral rotation of the tibia during the terminal phase of extension may stretch or tear the anterior cruciate ligament.

The posterior cruciate ligament guides the tibia on its path in relation to the femur in the last degrees of flexion. During this phase of flexion some portion of the posterior cruciate is tense. If medial rotation of the tibia is obstructed and flexion continues the posterior ligament may be stretched or torn. It becomes obvious that the synchronous rotation of the tibia on the femur is essential for normal extension and flexion of the joint. Any form of obstruction to this rotary motion may result in a rupture of one of the cruciate ligaments.

The above mechanism affords an explanation for the high incidence of rupture or stretching of the anterior cruciate ligament encountered as a concomitant finding with tears of the medial meniscus. Repeated momentary lockings and weight bearing on the flexed knee joint, when true locking exists as a result of a displaced meniscus, prevent normal lateral rotation of the tibia on the femur in the terminal phase of extension. When these conditions prevail at attempts at extension of the joint stretch the anterior cruciate ligament.

The anteroposterior instability resulting from rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament and atrophy of the extensor apparatus may cause stretching and weakness of the medial ligament. This may occur in the presence or the absence of a tear of the medial meniscus. In the latter instance, the medial meniscus is extremely vulnerable to injury because of the pronounced instability which is usually present.

**CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS** In cases with uncomplicated tears of the anterior cruciate ligament and in which the extensor mechanism is capable of performing at maximum efficiency, the extent of joint disability is for practical purposes insignificant. These patients have a history of an original injury with few or no incidents of giving way of the knee joint. They know that the affected knee cannot meet the demands of strenuous activity required in basketball or football.

If repeated episodes of anteroposterior instability occur and are accompanied by effusions and muscular inactivity the quadriceps muscle shows varying degrees of loss of volume, tone and power. Laxity of the remaining supporting structures of the joint may ensue. Even without stretching or rupture of the medial ligament isolated lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament allow some abnormal forward gliding of the tibia on the femur (positive anterior drawer sign). The amount of displacement may be increased if marked laxity of the support-

ing structures exists. If it is maximal then suspicion must be directed to a lesion of the medial ligament. In cases with marked laxity of all the soft tissue elements of the joint but without rupture of the medial ligament, forward displacement of the tibia is always present and it may be difficult to determine the presence or the absence of a lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament. The amount of displacement noted always should be compared with that observed on the unaffected side.

In combined lesions the signs and the symptoms indicating implication of one or both menisci or the medial collateral ligament are present. These have been discussed fully in the section dealing with ruptures of the tibial collateral ligament.

**Old Ruptures of the Posterior Cruciate Ligament.** Old isolated lesions of this structure are extremely rare; however, when they do occur they are capable of producing marked instability of the knee joint, provided that there is laxity of the supporting elements of the joint. The extensor apparatus discloses loss of volume and power. The author has encountered 4 cases who sought medical advice because of the existing disability. In one the lesion comprised an avulsion of a portion of the superoposterior surface of the tibia.

These cases exhibit varying degrees of quadriceps inefficiency resulting from muscle atrophy, loss of tone and power. With the knee flexed the posterior drawer sign can be elicited. Some of the patients can produce voluntarily the characteristic features of a posterior drawer sign. With the knee flexed and the foot held firmly on the floor, forceful contraction of the hamstring muscles pulls the tibia backward in relation to the femur. If there is extreme laxity of the posterior supporting structures of the joint abnormal hyperextension of the knee joint is demonstrable. These patients are aware of a sense of instability on weight bearing when the knee is in varying positions of flexion. The instability may

be in the lateral, the anteroposterior or both directions and is primarily the result of failure of the tibia to rotate medially when the knee is bearing weight in flexion. As recorded previously, the tibia is guided on its path of medial rotation on the femur by the posterior cruciate ligament; this function is lost when dissolution of the ligament occurs.

**Old Lesions of the Fibular Collateral Ligament.** Old isolated lesions of this structure requiring treatment must be extremely rare, the author never has encountered one. However he has observed one old lesion of the fibular collateral ligament associated with a tear of both cruciate ligaments. In this case there was marked instability of the joint; the tibia exhibited abnormal anteroposterior gliding on the femur (anterior and posterior drawer signs) and abnormal adduction rocking with the knee in both extension and flexion. The external popliteal nerve was not involved.

#### MANAGEMENT OF OLD RUPTURES OF THE LIGAMENTS

As so often pointed out in this work, the quadriceps apparatus is the most important stabilizer of the knee joint. Also ruptures of one ligament, such as the anterior cruciate or the medial without the presence of internal derangement, particularly a tear of one of the menisci are compatible with good function provided that the quadriceps is developed to that level of performance sufficient to compensate for the defective structure. In the light of this information it becomes apparent that uncomplicated lesions of any one of the ligaments of sufficient severity to produce marked disability should be treated by conservative measures designed to redevelop the extensor apparatus to its maximum level of efficiency; this is particularly applicable to lesions of the anterior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligaments.

**Medial Ligament.** In the event that this form of therapy fails to achieve the desired

result in cases of old ruptures of the medial ligament, surgical intervention is justifiable. However, both the surgeon and the patient should be fully cognizant of the extent of the benefits to be derived from reconstructive procedures. As recorded previously, at best the replica will enhance the stability passively but the overall performance of the joint will not be comparable with that of the normal side. As will be noted subsequently, the operations of Helfet are the only procedures that attempt to replace ruptured ligaments with "living" substitutes. In other procedures the reconstructed ligaments are merely complements to the stabilization effected by a redeveloped extensor mechanism; this is true not only of reconstruction of the medial ligament but also of all the other components of the ligamentous apparatus.

In uncomplicated ruptures of the medial ligament, conservative measures which comprise essentially progressive quadriceps exercises must be continued as long as improvement continues; it may require from 2 to 5 months to achieve the desired results. If at the end of this period, the quadriceps fails to provide adequate stability to the joint reconstruction of the ligament must be considered. No case should be subjected to surgery until every effort has been expended to develop the quadriceps to its level of maximum efficiency.

Occasionally cases are encountered in which attainment of this goal is deterred by the presence of some form of internal derangement, such as a tear of one or both menisci. It is obvious that the meniscal lesion must be eliminated before embarking on a long regimen of conservative treatment. In such cases the author removes the involved meniscus and reinforces the medial ligament by transplantation of the tendon of the semitendinosus muscle according to the technic of Helfet. This procedure is also performed in combination with medial displacement of the tibial tu-

bercle when both the medial and the anterior cruciate ligaments are impaired. Likewise, combined lesions of the medial and the anterior cruciate ligament without implication of one of the menisci must not be submitted to reconstructive measures until it becomes apparent that progressive quadriceps exercises have failed to produce sufficient stability of the joint compatible with good function and to safeguard the joint from further disintegration.

**Anterior Cruciate Ligament.** The author never has encountered an isolated old rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament which has required surgical intervention. In such cases that come to the attention of the surgeon the dysfunction is the result of laxity of the capsule and the extensor mechanism; they respond readily to intensive resistant exercises that restore volume control and tone to the quadriceps muscle. However the problem is not so simple when a meniscal lesion complicates the picture and such cases are relatively frequent. If the meniscal lesion is responsible for recurrent incidences of giving way which hinder the enforcement of the conservative regimen and are prone to enhance deterioration of the supporting structures of the joint, then removal of the offending cartilage is imperative before quadriceps exercises are instituted.

It was recorded previously that rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament renders the medial collateral ligament vulnerable to repeated traumata resulting in stretching of the structure. Again if quadriceps redevelopment fails to produce the desired stability and protection necessary to preclude further damage to the joint, reconstruction of the impaired elements is imperative.

**Posterior Cruciate Ligament.** Conservative measures are also indicated in isolated lesions of the posterior cruciate ligament producing undesirable clinical manifestations. In the author's experience of the 4 cases which failed to be benefited

by these measures one revealed avulsion of a fragment of bone from the superoposterior aspect of the tibia; this was replaced; the remaining 3 were benefited sufficiently to decrease their disability by transplantation of the intact tendon of the semitendinosus muscle to the medial femoral condyle in the line of the medial ligament. As pointed out by Helfet this procedure permits active internal rotation of the tibia in flexion which is the chief function of the posterior cruciate ligament. The operative procedures must be followed by an intensive program of progressive quadriceps and hamstring exercises.

#### RECONSTRUCTION OF THE LIGAMENTS OF THE KNEE JOINT

The indications for reconstruction of the different ligaments singly or in combination have been discussed in the previous section. Here it is necessary only to record the types of operative procedures which are most likely to produce the highest incidence of satisfactory results. In 1917 Hey Groves recorded a method of reconstruction of the anterior cruciate ligament by using a strip of fascia lata; this procedure was modified later by Smith (1918) who added a method of repair of the medial ligament. Since these two operations were recorded numerous other techniques have been conceived using either fascia lata or tendons to substitute for the ruptured structures. A survey of the literature discloses that the success or the failure of many of these methods varied in the hands of different surgeons. However certain observations become very apparent. (1) All inarticular procedures are technically difficult. (2) Most of these methods entail extensive exposure of the joint and of its supporting tissues. (3) Although the successful execution of the procedures depended on the dexterity of the surgeon, many of the methods failed to produce the desired results even in the hands of the most skillful. (4) Cases unwisely selected were doomed to failure. (5) The methods

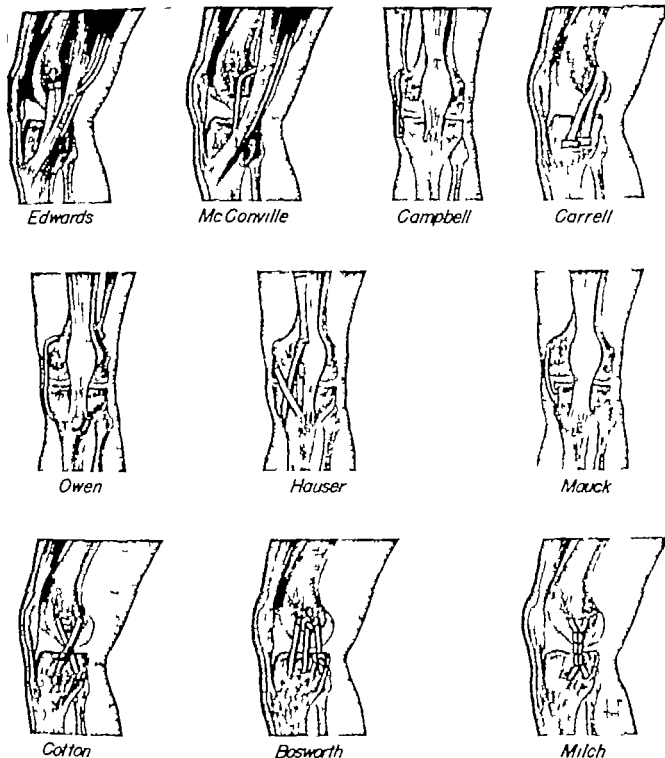


FIG. 279 Some of the methods of reconstruction of the ligaments of the knee joint described by different writers.

which utilized living structures to reconstruct the ligaments invariably produced more satisfactory results than those which utilized fascia lata and completely detached segments of tendons (6) Regardless of the methods employed, redevelopment of the

quadriceps muscles played a major role in the success of the operation.

The author has employed many of the methods recorded and finally has come to the conclusion that in properly selected cases, the procedures which are followed by



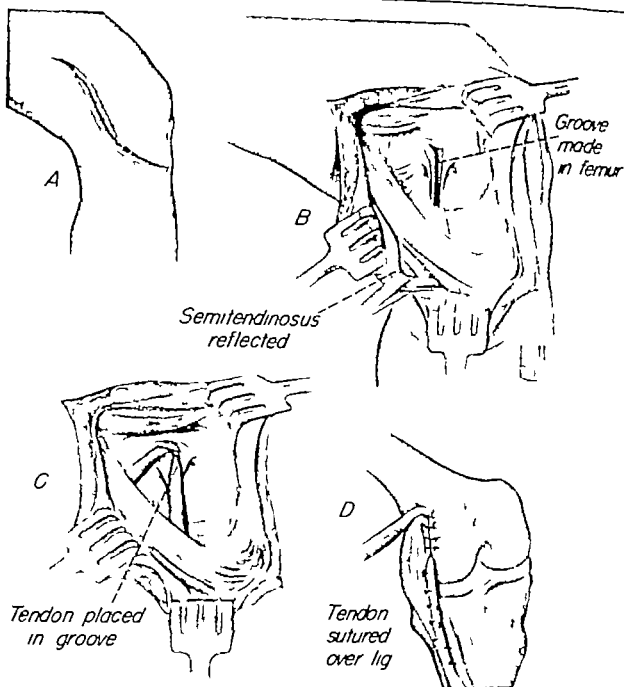


FIG 280 (A B and C) Transplantation of the tendon of semitendinosus muscle to the lateral aspect of the medial femoral condyle (D) Note that the tendon is in line with the tibial collateral ligament. This operation is performed to replace the function of a torn posterior cruciate ligament and to reinforce a torn or weakened medial collateral ligament.

the highest incidence of satisfactory results both to patient and surgeon are those which are performed with minimal surgery and utilize living structures to replace the ruptured ligaments. Other workers have reached this conclusion notably among these are Helfet, Hauser, Blair and Smillie. For the sake of completion and for accu-

demic and historical interest some of the many methods conceived are depicted in Figure 279. The operative procedures described herein are the ones which the author now employs.

**Reconstruction of Tibial Collateral Ligament.** In the author's hands the operation of Helfet which is a modification of

the McMurray procedure, has proved to be the most effective method of reconstruction of the medial ligament. Essentially, it is a transposition of the tendon of the semitendinosus muscle. In the operation described by McMurray the tendon was anchored in two grooves—one was made on the medial aspect of the tibia and the other on the femur. Helfet placed the tendon in one tunnel situated in the femoral condyle; the tendon is free in the tunnel and acts as a live ligament. It is a substitute for the posterior cruciate ligament and also reinforces the medial collateral ligament. The position of the new ligament permits the semitendinosus to function as an active internal rotator of the tibia when the knee is in different positions of flexion; this is primarily the function of the posterior cruciate ligament.

**OPERATIVE TECHNIC** (Fig. 280) A shallow S-shaped incision is made on the medial aspect of the knee beginning 2 cm above the medial femoral epicondyle and terminating on the medial aspect of the tibia 6 cm below the articular brim of the tibia. The fascia is divided by a vertical incision, exposing the medial ligament throughout its entire length. The inner skin flap is dissected from the fascia, and the tendon of the semitendinosus is identified; it lies posterior to the tendons of the sartorius, the gracilis and the semimembranosus muscles. By sharp dissection the tendon is freed from the surrounding structures distally as far as its site of insertion. Care must be taken not to injure the saphenous nerve in the proximal end of the wound. The fascia and the periosteum on the medial aspect of the femoral condyle are divided vertically in the line of the medial ligament and then are reflected on each side, exposing the raw bone. A groove extending from the upper border of the femoral condyle to the reflection of the synovium of the knee joint 1 cm wide and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm deep is cut out of the inner condyle with a thin sharp osteotome. The groove is

directed slightly inward and backward, this direction minimizes the tendency of the tendon to dislocate; the maximum depth of the groove is at its center. Next, the long fibers of the anterior portion of the medial ligament are divided longitudinally. With the knee flexed  $30^\circ$ , the tendon is brought forward between the bone and the tendons of the semimembranosus, the gracilis and the sartorius muscles and levered into the groove. The edges of the fascia and the periosteum are carefully approximated over the groove by interrupted cotton sutures, creating a tunnel in which the tendon can glide freely. The tendon distal to the lower aperture of the tunnel is placed between the split fibers of the medial ligament and fastened to the fibers on each side by interrupted sutures. At this point, particular care should be taken not to anchor the new and the old ligaments to the surrounding tissues; the gliding mechanism of the medial ligament should be preserved. If it is obliterated, restriction of flexion will ensue.

In the event that a tear of the meniscus is a concomitant lesion, the joint can be exposed by an oblique incision anterior to the long anterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament. This incision provides ample exposure for excision of the affected meniscus.

The wound is closed in layers in the usual manner, using interrupted cotton sutures. At the termination of the operation an elastic compression bandage is applied from mid-calf to mid-thigh, and the limb is placed in a posterior molded plaster splint holding the limb in the extended position. Quadriceps exercises and straight leg raising are commenced at once, but no flexion of the knee is permitted for two weeks. At the end of this period, flexion exercises are added and quadriceps exercises are intensified. Weight bearing is permitted after 5 to 7 weeks, depending upon the degree of quadriceps power and control that has been achieved during this period.



FIG. 281 Smille's method of transplantation of the tibial tubercle to the anteromedial aspect of the tibia. This procedure is employed when there is a tear of the anterior cruciate ligament also. It is used to enforce the ligamentous apparatus on the medial side of the joint. (A) Skin incision employed. (B) Line of incision for detachment of the tibial tubercle and elevation of the patellar tendon (C) A rectangular slot is cut out of the anteromedial aspect of the tibia (D) Method of implanting the tubercle in the slot.

**Substitution for the Anterior Cruciate Ligament.** As pointed out previously isolated lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament do not require surgical intervention satisfactory stability of the joint can be attained by redevelopment of the extensor apparatus. When the lesion is encountered in combination with a stretched or torn medial ligament satisfactory stability and function can be achieved by transplantation of the tibial tubercle to the anteromedial aspect of the tibia. Helfet points out that this procedure permits the quadriceps muscle to rotate the tibia outwardly when the knee is extended and hence re-establishes normal function of the defective anterior cruciate ligament. In combined lesions this procedure is performed in addition to transposition of the tendon of the semitendinosus to the medial aspect of

the femur which reinforces the medial ligament. The new direction of the transplanted patellar tendon is downward and inward crossing the joint line. Contraction of the quadriceps during joint motion makes the tendon tense hence it now acts as an active medial ligament in addition to an active external rotator of the tibia. If a lesion of the medial meniscus is present the fibrocartilage may be excised in the manner described in the section dealing with reconstruction of the medial ligament. All three procedures may be done at the one operation.

**OPERATIVE TECHNIC (Smille) (Fig. 281)**  
On the medial aspect of the knee joint an S-shaped incision is made beginning 2 cm proximal to the femoral epicondyle and just distal to the tibial tubercle. The lower limb of the incision

extends outward to the crest of the tibia. The entire tibial tubercle, with the patellar tendon attached, is removed with a thin blade sharp osteotome. This segment of cortical bone is rectangular in shape and measures  $1\frac{1}{4}$  by  $\frac{1}{4}$  inches. A defect corresponding in size to that of the cortical bone removed is outlined and made on the inner and anterior aspect of the tibia at a slightly lower level than its original location. The long axis of the slot is placed at an angle of  $45^\circ$  with the vertical axis of the tibia. With a curet the slot is deepened also, cancellous bone is removed from beneath cortical bone proximally and distally so that the bony plate to which the patellar tendon is attached can be rotated in its new bed and locked beneath the edges of the slot. The detached tibial tubercle is next placed deeply in the defect and rotated into position so that now it lies below the level of the cortical bone, and its longitudinal axis coincides with that of the quadriceps muscle.

The postoperative management is similar to that described following the transplantation of the tendon of the semitendinosus muscle.

Although these procedures increase lateral stability of the joint, anteroposterior displacement of the tibia can still be demonstrated passively. However during active motion the transplants restore normal rotation of the tibia; hence the patient has active control of the leg and with redevelopment of the quadriceps and the hamstring muscles stability is improved. The author has performed the aforementioned procedures in the last 8 cases of old combined lesions. In all the end results were satisfactory to the point that the patients were all able to return to gainful employment and had limbs which were capable of meeting the ordinary demands of daily life (Fig. 282).

Smillie has recorded an ingenious method of restoration of the anterior cruciate ligament in which he utilizes the peripheral



FIG. 282 Note the position of the transplanted tibial tubercle to the anteromedial aspect of the tibia. In this instance the tibial tubercle was transplanted to restore external rotation of the tibia in extension and to reinforce a stretched and weakened tibial collateral ligament.

half of the medial meniscus. The fibrocartilage is dissected free except at its anterior attachment; the concave portion of the meniscus is excised and the peripheral segment is passed through a drill hole in the lateral femoral condyle. He recommends this procedure in cases in which a torn anterior cruciate ligament is an associated feature of a tear of the medial meniscus requiring surgical intervention or it may be combined with other procedures in which a lesion of the medial ligament is present and needs reconstruction. He suggests that it may be used in combination with transplantation of the patellar tendon or the operation of Blair which is an extra

articular method of reconstructing the collateral ligaments.

**Old Rupture of the Posterior Cruciate Ligament.** As noted previously 4 such cases have been encountered. In one a fragment of bone was avulsed from the supero-posterior aspect of the tibia. This was exposed by a posterior incision and anchored

to its normal site by suturing it to the surrounding capsular tissue as in recent lesions. The remaining 3 cases were treated by transplantation of the semitendinosus muscle as described previously. Intensive quadriceps and hamstring exercises are essential to produce satisfactory results.

**Old Rupture of the Fibular Collateral**

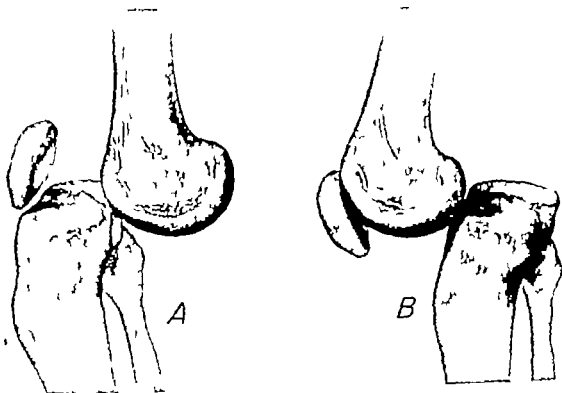


FIG 283 The different types of dislocations. (A) Anterior dislocation. (B) Posterior dislocation. (C) Lateral dislocation. (D) Medial dislocation.



**Ligament.** If such an occasion should arise, the ligament can be reconstructed readily by utilizing a segment of the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle. The distal end is left attached to the head of the fibula while the proximal end is anchored in a long groove in the lateral condyle. The technic is similar to that described for recent tears of the fibular ligament (Fig. 270).

### TRAUMATIC DISLOCATION OF THE KNEE JOINT

The combined strength of the supportive elements of the knee joint is sufficient to render dislocations a very rare lesion. When they occur great direct violence must be applied which invariably results in profound disruption of the supportive tissues of the joint and at times fracture of the upper end of the tibia. Occasionally the injury is produced by severe rotary forces or a force applied through leverage.

**Varieties of Dislocation (Fig. 283)**  
Generally the direction of the acting force determines the type of dislocation. The dis-

location may be partial or complete, the tibia may be displaced in relation to the femur anteriorly posteriorly, internally or externally, or it may be rotated inwardly or outwardly on the femur. Any of the types enumerated may be complicated by a fracture of the tibia, usually implicating its upper end. The most frequent variety encountered is the anterior dislocation which results from forceful hyperextension of the knee joint. A violent force applied to the anterior surface of the upper end of the tibia when the femur is fixed produces a posterior dislocation. Medial and lateral dislocations may be produced by direct violence or by severe abduction or adduction strains.

**Pathology** In order to permit complete dislocation of the massive ends of the femur and the tibia, of necessity the soft tissue structures must undergo severe stretching and tearing. As a rule, complete lesions result in rupture of both cruciates, both collateral ligaments and the posterior portion of the capsule. In addition, the hamstring muscles, the popliteus, both heads of

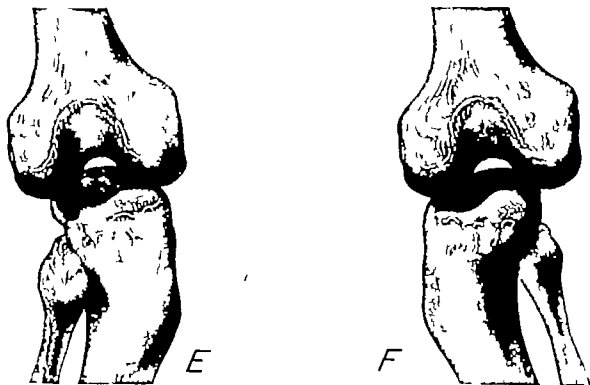


FIG. 283 (E and F) Rotatory dislocations.

the gastrocnemius muscle and the quadriceps may suffer varying degrees of laceration. Lateral dislocations may inflict irreparable damage to the external popliteal nerve. The neurovascular structures in the popliteal fossa may be traumatized, resulting in gangrene of the lower leg and necessitating amputation. Inasmuch as the joint is relatively superficial, the overlying soft tissues may be severed completely, thereby establishing direct communication between the joint cavity and the exterior. As noted previously, fracture of the upper end of the tibia may be a concomitant finding.

**Clinical Features** The superficial position of the joint makes the diagnosis of complete dislocations a simple matter. Inspection reveals immediately the gross deformity present and the relation of the upper end of the tibia to the femur. Pronounced soft tissue swelling may obscure

the true nature of the deformity in partial dislocations. However, gentle palpation of the bone landmarks of the knee joint reveals the abnormal position of the condyles of the tibia in relation to the condyles of the femur and the patella. Gentle manipulation discloses the extent of abnormal motion at the joint resulting from rupture of the cruciate and the collateral ligaments. Damage to the external popliteal nerve is manifest by paralysis of the anterior tibial muscles and loss of sensation on the anterolateral aspect of the leg and the foot. The circulatory status of the leg should be determined at this time. A cold, blanched lower leg with absence of pulsation in the dorsal pedal and posterior tibial arteries points to injury of the popliteal artery. Roentgenologic studies disclose the true nature of the dislocation and establish the absence or the presence of fractures of the



FIG. 284 A case of complete anterior dislocation in a male 21 years old. This patient was treated by conservative measures. Although there was considerable residual restriction of flexion, the patient did attain a relatively stable knee, and his condition did not necessitate surgical intervention.

condyles or the spines of the tibia (Fig 284)

**Management.** A general anesthetic agent should be administered before any attempts at reduction are made. Generally, the extensive soft tissue disruption associated with the lesions facilitates the reduction of the dislocations. Reduction should be achieved as soon after the accident as conditions warrant. In most instances it is accomplished by simple straight traction on the leg and countertraction on the thigh, while the traction is maintained the tibia is forced manually into its normal anatomic position. In anterior dislocations the above method may fail and it may be necessary to hyperextend the knee, making direct pressure on the anterior surface of the upper end of the knee so that the tibial condyles engage the femoral condyles; then reduction is achieved by flexing the knee joint. This method should be executed with great care and only after other methods have failed, because the procedure may traumatize the nerves and the vessels on the posterior aspect of the knee joint.

In some medial and lateral dislocations the capsule may be drawn into the joint, precluding complete reduction by closed methods; these cases require surgical measures to remove the barriers to reduction. Another type of dislocation which resists reduction by the aforementioned manipulative maneuvers is a lateral dislocation in which the medial hamstring muscles and the sartorius and the gracilis muscles are displaced into the intercondylar notch of the femur. In this type it is necessary first to flex the knee to a right angle before the

tibia is forced manually into its normal position in relation to the femur.

After reduction has been achieved, the joint is aspirated, usually, large quantities of blood and synovial fluid are removed. An elastic compression bandage is applied extending from mid thigh to mid-calf, and the extremity is immobilized on a molded posterior plaster splint, extending from the toes to the groin, holding the foot dorsally flexed 90° and the knee flexed 20°. The limb is elevated and the circulation of the toes is watched carefully. A second aspiration of the joint may be necessary after 2 or 3 days. Usually, at the end of 7 to 10 days the swelling has subsided sufficiently to allow the application of a nonpadded plaster cylinder from the groin to immediately above the malleoli; now progressive quadriceps exercises are instituted. A more snug fitting plaster cylinder is applied at the end of 3 weeks, and weight bearing on crutches is permitted. Immobilization is continued for 10 to 14 weeks; during this period a concerted effort is made to redevelop the quadriceps to its level of maximum efficiency. After the last plaster cylinder is removed (12 to 14 weeks after the injury), crutches should be used until the extensor apparatus has regained sufficient power and control to provide the desired stability and protection to the knee joint.

Even in the most competent hands these knee joints exhibit some residual dysfunction. Varying degrees of restriction of flexion is the usual sequela, however, this may be desirable because greater ranges of motion may be accompanied by more in stability.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abbott, L. C. Saunders J. B. D. M. Bost, F. C. and Anderson C. E. Injuries to the ligaments of the knee joint. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 26: 503 1944.  
Allen H. R. Fractures of the spine of the tibia (Discussion). *J.A.M.A.* 77: 857, 1921.

- Annandale Thomas. An address on internal derangements of the knee joint and their treatment by operation, *Brit. M. J.* 1: 319 1887.  
Bennett G. E. The use of fascia for the reinforcement of relaxed joints. *Arch. Surg.* 13: 655, 1926.



- Blair H C. A simple operation for stabilization of the knee joint *Surg., Gynec. & Obst* 74 855 1942
- Böhler L. The Treatment of Fractures, 4th Eng. ed., Trans. by E. W. Hey Groves Baltimore Wood, 1935
- Bost J R. Reconstruction of the internal ligament of the knee *Texas State J. Med.* 20 381 1924-25
- Bosworth D M. Transplantation of the semitendinosus for repair of laceration of medial collateral ligament of the knee *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 34-A 196 1952
- Bosworth D M., and Bosworth, B M. Use of fascia lata to stabilize the knee in cases of ruptured crucial ligaments *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 18 178 1936
- Brantigan O C., and Voshell A. F. The mechanics of the ligaments and menisci of the knee joint *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 23 44 1941
- The tibial collateral ligament its function its bursae and its relation to the medial meniscus *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 25 121 1943
- Caan Paul. Ueber Kreuzbandverletzungen *Med. Klin* 25 904 1929
- Campbell W C. *Operative Orthopedics* Ed. 2 Vol. I p. 25. Ed. by J S Speed & Hugh Smith, St. Louis Mosby 1949
- Carrell W B. Use of fascia lata in knee joint instability *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1018-1026 1937
- Christopher F. Avulsion of the tibial spine by the anterior crucial ligament *S. Clin. North America* 12 185 1932
- Costa Alberto. Arrancomiento de la espiña de la tibia en la insercion del ligamento cruzado anterior *Bol. Soc. cir. Chile* 5 288 192
- Cotton F J., and Morrison G M. Artificial ligaments at the knee a technique *New England J. Med* 210 1331 1332 1934
- Courty. Fracture de l'épine du tibia—arthrotomie Extraction du fragment fracture *Bull. et mém. Soc. nat. Chir.* 50 10 5 1924
- DeLorme T L. Restoration of muscle power by heavy resistance exercises *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 27 645-66 1945
- Edwards A H. Operative procedure suggested for the repair of collateral ligaments of the knee joint *Brit. J. Surg* 8 266-2 1 1920-21
- Fairbank Sir H A. T. Rehabilitation of the injured in this war and the last *Lancet* 2 131 134 1944
- Fick R. A. *Anatomie und Mechanik der Gelenke unter Berücksichtigung der beweglichen Muskeln* Band II Teil III S. 521 in von Bardeleben Karl. *Handbuch der Anatomie des Menschen* Jena Fischer 1911
- Goetjes H. Ueber Verletzungen der Ligamenta cruciata des Kniegelenks, *Deutsche Zeitsch. Chir.* 123 221 1913
- Goodsir John. *Anatomical Memoirs of John Goodsir* Ed. by Wm. Turner Vol. II Edinburgh, Black 1868
- Groves E. W. H. Operation for repair of the crucial ligaments *Lancet* 2 6 4 191
- The crucial ligaments of the knee joint their function, rupture and the operative treatment of the same *Brit. J. Surg* 7 505 1919-20
- Hauser E. D. W. Extra articular repair for ruptured collateral and cruciate ligaments *Surg. Gynec. & Obst* 84 339 194
- Helfet A. J. Function of the cruciate ligaments of the knee joint *Lancet* 1 665 1945
- Hughes W B., and Holmes, W. Traction injuries to the lateral popliteal nerve and traction injuries to peripheral nerves after suture *Brit. J. Surg* 30 712 1943
- Kulowski J. Post traumatic para-articular ossification of the knee joint (Pellegri-Stieda's disease) *Am. J. Roentgenol.* 47 392 1942
- Kurlander J. J. Fracture of the spine of the tibia *J.A.M.A.* 77 855 1921
- Lagomarsino E. H. Reconstrucción anatomica de los ligamentos laterales de la rodilla autoplastia tendinosa *Rev. ortop. y traumatol.* 4 290 1935
- Lee H G. Avulsion fracture of the tibial attachments of the crucial ligaments treatment by operative reduction *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 19 460 1937
- Leriche R. and de Girardier J. Traitement chirurgical immédiat des entorses du genou avec lesion osseuse radiographiquement visible ou cliniquement decelable *J. chir.* 34 1 1929
- Lord C D. and Coutts J W. A study of typical parachute injuries occurring in two hundred and fifty thousand jumps at the parachute school *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 26 54 1944
- McConville B E. Repair of the collateral ligaments of the knee *Surg. Gynec. & Obst* 90 291 1950
- McMurray T P. The operative treatment of the ruptured internal lateral ligament of the knee *Brit. J. Surg* 6 37 1913-19
- Mauck, H P. A new operative procedure for instability of the knee *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 18 954 1936
- Milch, Henry. Injuries to the crucial ligaments *Arch. Surg.* 30 805 1935
- Cortical avulsion fracture of the lateral tibial condyle *J. Bone & Joint Surg* 18 169 1936
- Fascial reconstruction of the tibial collateral ligament *Surg.* 10 411 1941
- Moorthead J J. Knee joint injuries *S. Clin. North America* 1 150 1921

- Nachlas, I. W., and Olpp J. L. Para articular calcification (Pellegrini Stieda) in affections of the knee, Surg., Gynec & Obst 81 206 1945
- Palmer Ivar On injuries to the ligaments of the knee joint a clinical study Acta chir scan dinav 81 3 (Supp 53) 1938
- Peterson L. T. The quadriceps in Am. Acad Orthop Surgeons Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities, pp 391-420 Ann Arbor Mich Edwards 1944
- Platt, Sir Harry The peripheral nerve complications of certain fractures, J Bone & Joint Surg 10 403 1928
- Traction lesions of the external popliteal nerve, Lancet 2 612 1940
- Platt Sir Harry and Woods R. S. Discussion on injuries of peripheral nerves Proc. Roy Soc. Med. 30 863 1937
- Ritvo M. and Resnik, J. Pellegrini-Stieda's disease (post traumatic calcification of the collateral tibial ligament of the knee) Am J Roentgenol. 32 189 1934
- Roth, P. B. Fracture of the spine of the tibia J Bone & Joint Surg 10 509 1928
- Smith, S. A. The diagnosis and treatment of injuries to the crucial ligaments Brit. J Surg 6 176 1918-19
- Stieda, A. Ueber eive typische Verletzung am unteren Femurende Arch. Klin Chir 85 815 1908
- Swett P. P. McPherson, S. H. and Pike, M. M. Fracture of the tibia into the knee joint, Tr New England S Soc. 13 164 1930
- Terhune S. R., Eddleman T. S., Thompson S. B., and Read, B. S. The care of the knee following excision of a meniscus J Bone & Joint Surg 25 663 1943
- Tobin, W. J. Parachute injuries, Army M Bull pp 202 221 April 1943
- Umansky A. L. The Milch fasciodesis for the reconstruction of the tibial collateral ligament, J Bone & Joint Surg 34-A 202 1952
- Watson Jones, R., and Roberts R. E. Calcification decalcification and ossification Brit. J Surg 21 461 1934
- West, F. E. Diagnosis and treatment of internal derangements of the knee, S Clin. North America 25 111 1945
- Wilson J. C. Reconstruction of the internal lateral ligament of the knee joint J Bone & Joint Surg 4 129 1922



FIG. 286 Unusual type of supracondylar fracture. The distal fragment is displaced anteriorly the proximal fragment, posteriorly.

becomes apparent that the chosen method of treatment must not in itself be an obstacle to restoration of maximum function.

It is true that each case is peculiar unto itself nevertheless clinical experience permits making some generalizations. Early and repeated aspirations of blood from the joint cavity tend to minimize unfavorable reactions on the part of the synovialis and tend to prevent the formation of intra articular adhesions. Closed methods are preferred to open methods except where

closed methods fail to produce the desired reduction. Prolonged immobilization favors the formation of intra articular adhesions and loss of muscle power and volume hence early mobilization of the limb is desirable.

#### SUPRACONDYLAR FRACTURES

##### POSITION OF FRAGMENTS

As recorded previously supracondylar fractures usually are caused by violent di-



FIG. 287 Supracondylar fracture with anterior displacement of distal fragment. There is some comminution at the fracture site.

rect trauma and occasionally by torsion forces. Generally, the line of fracture is transverse and slightly irregular or it may be slightly oblique from before backward. Occasionally, varying degrees of comminution of the distal fragment occur while the proximal end is pointed like a projecting spike. In some instances the proximal fragment may be impacted into the supracondylar fragment, this is not unusual in children. As a rule, the fracture line occupies an intra-articular position, and the joint capsule is severely lacerated so that a massive hemarthrosis ensues.

In most instances the fragments are displaced completely and assume a characteristic deformity in response to the pull of muscles which cross the joint line (Fig 285). The distal fragment is tilted into the popliteal space by the gastrocnemius muscle while the hamstrings and the quadriceps muscle tend to shorten the length of the femur. This action forces the distal fragment upward so that there is overriding of the two fragments, also the distal end of the proximal fragment is forced under and at times through the quadriceps muscle. This displacement may be severe if the patient has fallen from a height. Some lateral displacement of the upper fragment may also be present usually it is displaced inward resulting from the action of the adductor muscles. Rarely, the direction of the responsible forces are such that the distal fragment assumes an anterior and the proximal a posterior position (Figs 286 and 287).

#### DIAGNOSIS OF FRACTURE AND SOFT TISSUE INJURY

As a rule diagnosis of a fracture of the distal end of the femur offers no difficulty. There is always a history of severe violence followed by complete loss of function of the limb, pain, swelling in and around the knee and in many instances a visible deformity. Abnormal motion at the fracture site is readily demonstrable and of course

associated with severe pain. Shortening of the femur may also be evident and in many instances palpation discloses the bone ends in the popliteal space and under the quadriceps muscle. The severity of the fracture cannot be determined with accuracy by clinical examination except in cases of intercondylar fractures with wide separation of the condylar fragments, which can be brought together by lateral pressure, when the pressure is released they tend to spring away. However, if the proximal fragment is wedged between the condylar fragments, floating of the fragments is not demonstrable but broadening of the condylar region of the femur is clearly evident. Roentgenographic studies reveal the nature of the fracture.

Examination of the limb should be conducted gently without causing pain to the patient and without traumatizing further the soft tissues. The neurovascular structures in the popliteal space are vulnerable to injury in the presence of a fracture in the supracondylar region. Examination should include evaluation of the status of the structures in the popliteal space, impairment of the circulation of the limb and sensory and motor abnormalities indicate implication of the neurovascular structures. A large pulsating hematoma in the posterior aspect of the knee points to rupture of the popliteal artery.

#### MANAGEMENT

Most supracondylar fractures can be reduced by manipulative procedures, maintenance of the reduction is achieved by plaster fixation, continuous traction and, in rare instances internal fixation. The author's choice of treatment is reduction by manipulation and fixation by a plaster spica. If this fails, continuous traction is employed. If both the above methods fail, open reduction and internal fixation is performed.

**Manipulation and Plaster Fixation.** Reduction of a supracondylar fracture is

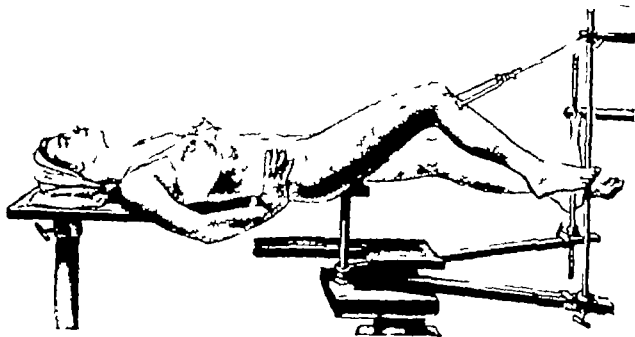


FIG 288 Method of making mechanical traction to reduce supracondylar fractures. The threaded wire is inserted, and the tautener is attached to the elevated foot piece of the table now mechanical traction can be applied readily to the flexed limb

difficult to attain by unaided manual manipulation it is achieved best with the patient on a fracture table and by the aid of skeletal traction, as described by Griswold and Wood. Injection of 20 to 30 cc. of 1 or 2 per cent procaine solution into the hematoma facilitates positioning of the patient on the fracture table. While the patient is being moved from the bed or the carriage to the fracture table an assistant grasps the ankle and makes steady manual traction. Then a general anesthesia is administered or a spinal anesthetic agent is used since complete muscular relaxation is essential in order to effect a satisfactory reduction. The patient is now ready to be positioned on the fracture table. While manual traction is maintained on the affected side the patient is pulled down against the perineal post, which fits snugly against the ischium of the opposite side; the foot of the sound limb is bound firmly to the footplate of the table.

As a rule the joint cavity is distended with blood which must be aspirated under strict aseptic technic as described on page

498. After aspiration is completed the skin is carefully prepared, the limb is draped and made ready for the insertion of a pin through the tibia immediately below the tibial tubercle. The author prefers to use threaded wires; these take a firm grip on the tibia and permit no motion between the protruding ends of the wire and the soft tissues; hence the hazards of wound infection are reduced. A small stab wound is made in the skin at the point of entrance and exit of the wire. A drill holder that accommodates a Jacob chuck is employed to insert the threaded wire through the tibia. Next a wire tautener is fixed to the wire and the manual traction is transferred to the spreader. Now the stage is set to execute the maneuvers that will effect reduction of the fracture.

An assistant makes steady continuous traction on the spreader in the line of the long axis of the femur at the same time the spreader is raised slowly in a vertical direction until the hip is flexed from 45 to 60. The lower leg with the foot in plantar flexion remains free. By means of a stout

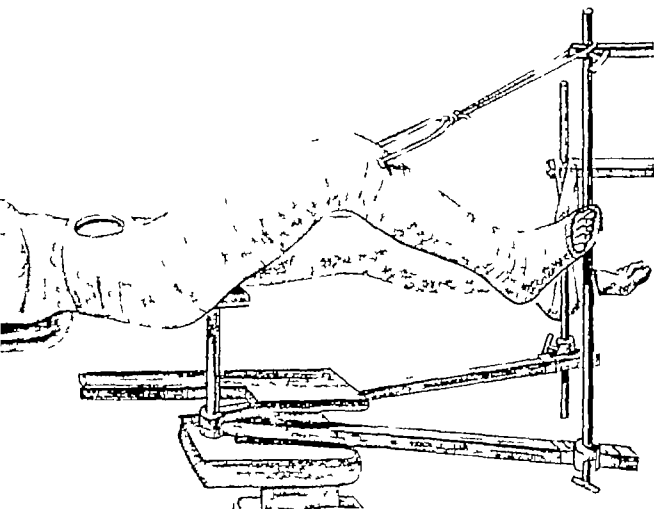


FIG 289 After reduction is achieved a plaster spica is applied holding the knee in flexion and incorporating the ends of the threaded wire.

cord, the spreader is attached to the elevated footpiece of the table (Fig 288). Mechanical traction is now made until normal length of the femur is restored; usually, the free, flexed lower leg creates a downward force on the distal fragment sufficient to correct the deformity. The operator may perfect the reduction by manipulation, forcing the lower end of the upper fragment downward and the proximal end of the distal fragment upward and correcting any medial displacement by lateral pressure. After length is restored and the deformity is corrected the traction is reduced slightly in order to permit engagement of the fragments. The final position is checked by roentgenographic studies, and, if found to be satisfactory, a plaster spica is applied extending from the toes on

the affected side to the costal margin, holding the knee in the flexed position necessary to maintain the reduction (Fig 289). The protruding ends of the threaded wire are incorporated in the plaster; mechanical traction is not released until the plaster is set. Generally, the wire is removed at the end of 4 to 6 weeks, and the plaster spica at the end of 6 to 8 weeks.

**Treatment by Manipulation and Traction.** Occasionally, supracondylar fractures are encountered in which it is impossible to maintain the reduction by plaster fixation. This group comprises supracondylar fractures with severe comminution and those with fracture lines of such obliquity that the fragments cannot be engaged. Continuous traction must be applied in order to ensure maintenance of the reduction; this

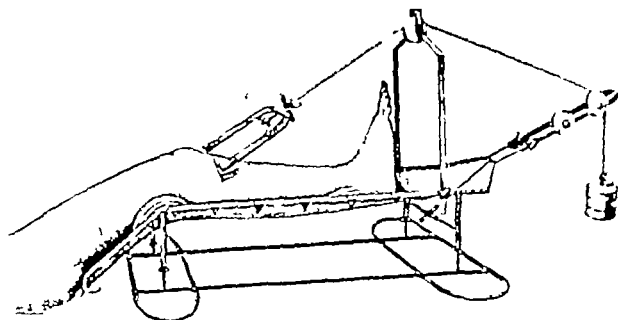


FIG. 290 Position of patient in a Bohler Braun splint. Note that the angle of the splint is behind the site of fracture and not at the knee joint. A pad may be necessary to make pressure on the medial aspect of the lower end of the proximal fragment to overcome the pull of the adductor muscles and to correct a valgus deformity.

is achieved best by skeletal traction. Traction alone is not sufficient to restore anatomic reposition of the fragments; manipulation is necessary to reduce the fracture and skeletal traction is employed to maintain the desired position until healing has progressed sufficiently to preclude redisplacement of the fragments. The author has found the technic described by Smillie to be an efficacious method. Essentially the fracture is reduced under anesthesia and continuous skeletal traction is made on a Böhler Braun splint; the position of the limb in the splint is such that the angle of the splint is slightly behind the site of fracture and not at the knee joint (Fig. 290).

**TECHNIC.** Under general anesthesia a pin is inserted below the tibial tubercle; here again the author employs a threaded wire for the reasons recorded previously; then a wire tautener is attached to the pin. While steady traction is made on the leg, the patient is transferred to a fracture bed and

the affected extremity is placed in a Bohler Braun splint which is attached firmly to the foot of the bed. Reduction is achieved by the following method. One assistant makes steady traction on the spreader in the line of the femur while a second assistant makes countertraction by pressing backward on the iliac crests. After length of the femur has been restored the operator grasps the distal fragment with both hands and elevates it forward so that it assumes its normal relation to the upper fragment. Then traction is reduced slightly to allow the fragments to engage and the extremity is adjusted to the splint. Loss of position of the fragments is prevented by placing a large pad of soft wool or cotton immediately behind the distal fragment and by adjusting the limb to the splint so that the angle of the splint is behind the site of fracture (Fig. 290). After reduction is achieved the direction of the traction force which tends to maintain the desired position of the fragments is determined and is

secured by adjusting the height of the pulley. Several attempts may be necessary before satisfactory alignment of the fragments is attained. Roentgenographic control is essential in order to determine the true position of the fragments. Once reduction is attained and the limb is adjusted to the splint as described previously, from 10 to 12 pounds of traction usually suffices to maintain the desired position. Countertraction is made by elevating the foot of the bed from 8 to 10 inches.

Occasionally, a case is encountered in which manual traction fails to stretch the long muscles of the thigh sufficiently to permit reduction of the fracture. Unless the normal length of the femur is restored, it is impossible to disengage the lower fragment. Such cases are best treated by a preliminary period of skeletal traction from 20 to 25 pounds of traction is employed for 24 to 48 hours. No pad is placed under the distal fragment. As pointed out by Smillie, this procedure usually results in full length of the femur, and with the patient anesthetized manipulative reduction is achieved readily. From 10 to 12 pounds of traction now suffices to maintain the corrected position.

**Postreduction Management.** The traction apparatus and the position of the limb must be checked daily until healing has progressed sufficiently to ensure against re-displacement of the fragments. Even with continuous traction there is a tendency for the lower fragment to tilt backward and for a valgus angulation to develop at the level of the fracture. For the first few days daily roentgenographic supervision is essential; thereafter roentgenograms should be taken every 2 or 3 days until consolidation has rendered the fracture stable. Traction pad of wool correctly placed beneath the lower fragment and maintenance of the angle of the splint at the level of the fracture site all tend to prevent backward tilting of the lower fragment. If the pull of the adductor muscles is strong enough to

produce a valgus deformity, the angulation can be corrected by a pad's making pressure on the medial aspect of the lower end of the proximal fragment, a Cole type pressure pad serves this purpose well. Throughout the period of immobilization the soft tissues of the limb, particularly on the posterior aspect of the knee, should be inspected constantly in order to prevent pressure areas. Repeated adjustments and replacements of the wool roll may be necessary. If the pad becomes compressed and firm, it is apt to produce necrosis of the skin or paralysis of the lateral popliteal nerve.

Immobilization of the limb in the flexed position favors rapid and pronounced loss of quadriceps tone and volume, moreover the flexed position precludes execution of effective exercises designed to restore maximum function and power. Powerful contractions of the vastus medialis are possible only in the last 10° of extension. Hence, it becomes apparent that the flexed position must be maintained no longer than is necessary to preclude redisplacement of the fragments. As a rule, most supracondylar fractures exhibit sufficient consolidation in 4 to 6 weeks to permit reduction of the amount of flexion, this is determined by clinical and roentgenographic study. When this stage of healing has been reached, the skeletal traction is replaced by adhesive traction to the lower leg and the limb is placed in balanced suspension in a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment. The bulk of the padding under the knee is gradually reduced to allow increasing extension at the knee joint. This apparatus permits the patient to exercise effectively the quadriceps, especially the vastus medialis and also to commence mild knee flexion exercises. Quadriceps setting exercises should be performed while the patient is in skeletal traction; these tend to keep the patella free and in a measure allay formation of adhesions. All exercises should be performed on a regulated regimen, every hour on the



hour under supervision if possible, and always executed within the patient's tolerance without being prejudicial to the stability of the fracture. As consolidation increases the exercises are intensified. Daily physical therapy in the form of radiant heat and massage to muscles of the thigh and the calf is beneficial. Depending upon the rapidity of restoration of function in the knee joint the limb is maintained and exercised in the balanced suspension apparatus for 2 to 4 weeks. When complete and powerful extension is achieved and clinical and roentgenographic studies have disclosed firm consolidation of the fracture, protected weight bearing is commenced using a Thomas walking caliper splint. The caliper is worn until the supportive structures of the knee especially the quadriceps are strong enough to provide adequate stability for the knee joint and a solid bony union of the fracture is demonstrable in the roentgenograms. As a rule this period is from 6 to 12 weeks.

Regardless of the method of fixation after reduction whether it is a plaster spica or traction the patient as a whole in addition to the affected limb must be considered. If the patient is in plaster, active setting exercises of the quadriceps and the hamstrings of the affected limb should be commenced early and performed regularly every hour by the clock starting with 5-minute periods which are increased gradually as power and control are restored to the muscles in question. In a similar manner muscles about the hip and the ankle are exercised actively. The unaffected limb and the upper extremities also should be put through a daily course of supervised active exercises. This not only improves the tone of the muscular system and maintains normal joint function of the unaffected parts but it also improves the patient's morale. Patients in traction are treated in a similar manner because these patients enjoy greater freedom than those in plaster. The general body exercises and those performed by the injured limb

are by far more effective. As noted previously, consolidation usually has progressed to the point that the pin incorporated plaster spica may be removed at the end of 4 to 6 weeks, and the spica may be removed at the end of 6 to 8 weeks. After removal of the plaster spica, the author places the limb in balanced suspension, this permits the patient to perform intensified active exercises of the quadriceps and flexion-extension exercises of the knee joint. Usually at the end of 2 to 4 weeks powerful complete extension of the knee joint and adequate healing of the fracture are achieved. Now the patient is fitted with a Thomas walking caliper splint and protected weight bearing is instituted. The caliper splint is worn for 6 to 12 weeks.

The rapidity of restoration of function and the extent of the residual disability governed by several factors: these comprise the age and the general physical condition of the patient, the severity of the osseous and the soft tissue lesions, the impaction of the intra-articular surfaces of the femur, the ultimate position of the fragments, the healing, the length of immobilization, the co-operation of the patient. In the younger age groups the powers of osteogenesis are greatly diminished when compared with the younger age groups; hence bone healing is slow and immobilization must be maintained for longer periods. This favors formation of intra-articular adhesions, atrophy and fibrosis of the muscles of the thigh. It becomes apparent that under such conditions varying degrees of residual disability must be anticipated. Severely comminuted fractures of the supracondylar region are generally associated with extensive soft tissue damage particularly to the tensor mechanism and the suprapatellar pouch. Massive hemarthrosis is the rule in these cases. Such fractures usually heal slowly and the soft tissues may be injured by numerous small pieces of bone of power of the

factors also tend to prolong the immobilization period and result in some degree of permanent dysfunction. If the fragments heal with some backward angulation or valgus deformity the normal mechanics of the knee are altered. A recurvatum deformity at the knee joint following malunion of a supracondylar fracture presents difficult problems, the stability of the joint is jeopardized, and the quadriceps is lengthened and weakened. Correction in cases producing severe impairment of function may be attained by a supracondylar osteotomy, the subsequent immobilization period may result in further loss of motion at the knee joint. Both the surgeon and the patient must be prepared to accept this hazard before the operation is performed. Valgus deformities predispose the joint *per se* to abnormal stresses which invariably lead to the formation of varying degrees of degenerative arthritis. If the deformity is severe and correction by osteotomy is desirable,

the same considerations noted above for correction of recurvatum deformities are applicable to correction of valgus deformities. Incongruity of the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia and the patella following supracondylar or intercondylar fractures is another important factor responsible for the development of degenerative arthritis. All the above considerations must be taken into account when an attempt is made to anticipate the prognosis in cases of supracondylar or intercondylar fractures. For practical purposes, maximum restoration of function is obtained in 6 to 12 months, provided that the lesions are managed correctly.

**Open Reduction.** Uncomplicated supracondylar fractures rarely necessitate open procedures to effect reduction, however, in rare instances the conservative methods described previously fail. Under such circumstances the fragments are exposed and realigned under direct vision. Some form of internal fixation is usually employed. The

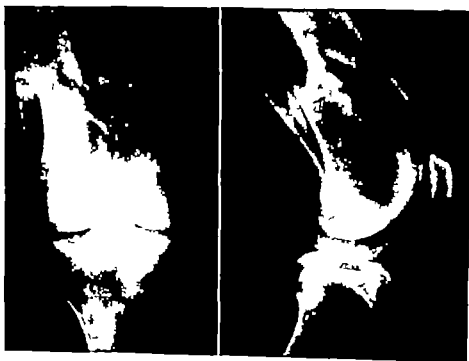


FIG 291 Intercondylar fracture of the femur. Note the severe comminution and the posterior displacement of the distal condylar fragments. The sharp fragments projecting into the popliteal space jeopardize the vessels in this region. The patient was treated adequately by the closed method described herein.

hour under supervision if possible, and always executed within the patient's tolerance without being prejudicial to the stability of the fracture. As consolidation increases, the exercises are intensified. Daily physical therapy in the form of radiant heat and massage to muscles of the thigh and the calf is beneficial. Depending upon the rapidity of restoration of function in the knee joint, the limb is maintained and exercised in the balanced suspension apparatus for 2 to 4 weeks. When complete and powerful extension is achieved and clinical and roentgenographic studies have disclosed firm consolidation of the fracture, protected weight bearing is commenced, using a Thomas walking caliper splint. The caliper is worn until the supportive structures of the knee, especially the quadriceps, are strong enough to provide adequate stability for the knee joint and a solid, bony union of the fracture is demonstrable in the roentgenograms. As a rule, this period is from 6 to 12 weeks.

Regardless of the method of fixation after reduction, whether it is a plaster spica or traction, the patient as a whole, in addition to the affected limb, must be considered. If the patient is in plaster, active setting exercises of the quadriceps and the hamstrings of the affected limb should be commenced early and performed regularly every hour by the clock, starting with 5 minute periods which are increased gradually as power and control are restored to the muscles in question. In a similar manner muscles about the hip and the ankle are exercised actively. The unaffected limb and the upper extremities also should be put through a daily course of supervised active exercises; this not only improves the tone of the muscular system and maintains normal joint function of the unaffected parts but it also improves the patient's morale. Patients in traction are treated in a similar manner, because these patients enjoy greater freedom than those in plaster; the general body exercises and those performed by the injured limb

are by far more effective. As noted previously, consolidation usually has progressed to the point that the pin incorporated in a plaster spica may be removed at the end of 4 to 6 weeks, and the spica may be removed at the end of 6 to 8 weeks. After removal of the plaster spica, the author places the limb in balanced suspension; this permits the patient to perform intensified active exercises of the quadriceps and flexion and extension exercises of the knee joint. Usually at the end of 2 to 4 weeks, powerful and complete extension of the knee joint and adequate healing of the fracture are achieved. Now the patient is fitted with a Thomas walking caliper splint and protected weight bearing is instituted; the caliper splint is worn for 6 to 12 weeks.

The rapidity of restoration of function and the extent of the residual disability are governed by several factors: these comprise the age and the general physical condition of the patient, the severity of the osseous and the soft tissue lesions, implication of the intra-articular surfaces of the femur, the ultimate position of the fragments after healing, the length of immobilization, and the co-operation of the patient. In the older age groups, the powers of osteogenesis may be greatly diminished when compared with younger age groups; hence bone healing is slow and immobilization must be maintained for longer periods. This favors formation of intra-articular adhesions and atrophy and fibrosis of the muscles of the thigh. It becomes apparent that under such conditions, varying degrees of residual dysfunction must be anticipated. Severely comminuted fractures of the supracondylar region are generally associated with extensive soft tissue damage, particularly to the extensor mechanism and the suprapatellar pouch; massive hemarthrosis is the rule in these cases. Such fractures usually heal slowly and the reparative process in the soft tissues may terminate in the formation of numerous adhesions and fibrosis and loss of power of the implicated muscles; these

factors also tend to prolong the immobilization period and result in some degree of permanent dysfunction. If the fragments heal with some backward angulation or valgus deformity, the normal mechanics of the knee are altered. A recurvatum deformity at the knee joint following malunion of a supracondylar fracture presents difficult problems, the stability of the joint is jeopardized, and the quadriceps is lengthened and weakened. Correction in cases producing severe impairment of function may be attained by a supracondylar osteotomy. The subsequent immobilization period may result in further loss of motion at the knee joint. Both the surgeon and the patient must be prepared to accept this hazard before the operation is performed. Valgus deformities predispose the joint per se to abnormal stresses which invariably lead to the formation of varying degrees of degenerative arthritis. If the deformity is severe and correction by osteotomy is desirable

the same considerations noted above for correction of recurvatum deformities are applicable to correction of valgus deformities. Incongruity of the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia and the patella following supracondylar or intercondylar fractures is another important factor responsible for the development of degenerative arthritis. All the above considerations must be taken into account when an attempt is made to anticipate the prognosis in cases of supracondylar or intercondylar fractures. For practical purposes, maximum restoration of function is obtained in 6 to 12 months, provided that the lesions are managed correctly.

**Open Reduction.** Uncomplicated supracondylar fractures rarely necessitate open procedures to effect reduction, however, in rare instances the conservative methods described previously fail. Under such circumstances the fragments are exposed and realigned under direct vision. Some form of internal fixation is usually employed. The

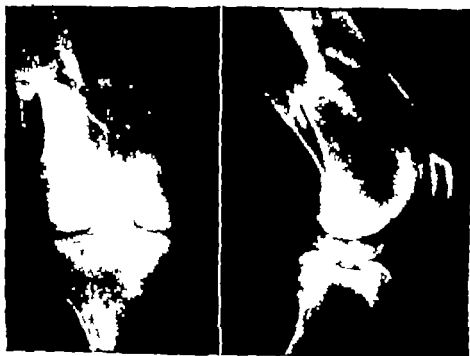


FIG. 291 Intercondylar fracture of the femur. Note the severe comminution and the posterior displacement of the distal condylar fragments. The sharp fragments projecting into the popliteal space jeopardize the vessels in this region. The patient was treated adequately by the closed method described herein.

technic and the postoperative management are similar to the procedures employed for intercondylar fractures treated by open methods.

#### INTERCONDYLAR FRACTURES (T AND Y FRACTURES)

The mechanisms producing these fractures are the same as those producing supracondylar fractures except that as a rule the violence is more severe fractures implicating the condyles are relatively uncommon. The soft tissue injuries are extensive particularly the damage sustained by the suprapatellar pouch and the extensor mechanism hemorrhage into the joint cavity is always massive. The major fractures comprise a break in the supracondylar region which is usually roughly transverse and one or several vertical splits through the condyles producing the classical T or Y fractures (Fig 291). Severe comminution of the supracondylar region may be present making the fracture extremely unstable and also increasing the difficulty of attaining and maintaining reduction. The position of the fragments is governed by the direction of the fracturing forces and by muscle pull. Not infrequently the lower end of the proximal fragment is driven into the cancellous bone of the condylar region acting like a wedge between the two condyles.

#### MANAGEMENT

Before definitive treatment is instituted the joint is aspirated. If after reduction of the fracture hemarthrosis has recurred aspiration should be repeated. Essentially treatment of intercondylar fractures is the same as that described for supracondylar fractures except that in addition to restoring normal alignment between the condylar region and the shaft of the femur the condyles must be restored to their normal anatomic position in relation to each other and to the articular surfaces of the tibia. This last feature is of first importance since

surface in a weight bearing joint so the knee will lead inevitably to degenerative alterations and pronounced disability.

The author prefers to reduce these fractures by skeletal traction and the manipulative maneuvers described for reduction of the supracondylar fractures. Reduction is maintained by continuous traction. The length of the femur and the normal relation between the condyles and the tibia are restored next while an assistant maintains steady traction the condyles are replaced in relation to each other by lateral compression. If manual compression fails to achieve the desired position, a screw clamp such as that recommended by Böhler, Forrest, or Scudder may be employed. The sides of the condyles are protected by a layer of padding the clamp is applied and tightened quickly and the fragments are squeezed into position. Then the pressure is released quickly to avoid necrosis of the skin and the underlying soft tissues. It is important that forward or backward tilting of one of the condyles be corrected usually this can be achieved manually. A rough estimate of the amount of compression to make may be determined by applying the clamp to a sound knee and measuring the distance between the faces of the clamp. If the roentgenograms show satisfactory repositioning of the fragments the limb is adjusted to Böhler Braun splint and from 10 to 15 pounds of traction is applied to the leg.

The postreduction management is similar in every feature to that recorded for supracondylar fractures. In some instances in order to maintain the desired position of the fragments the knee must be in the extended position. Under such circumstances a Thomas splint is employed however Pearson attachment is added later when healing has progressed sufficiently to allow flexing exercises at the knee joint.

Reduction and Fixation by Surgical Intervention. Open reduction is justified in cases in which the aforementioned conservative

tioning of the fragments. A common cause for failure is severe comminution of the supracondylar region with displacement and rotation of some of the small bony fragments which are wedged between the major condylar fragments, holding them apart (Fig 292). This is usually determined at the time that closed manipulative reduction is attempted. Occasionally, subsequent roentgenographic studies of a fracture reveal that the redisplacement of the fragments has occurred in spite of adequate continuous traction, such an event is an indication for surgical intervention. When reduction under direct vision becomes necessary, following failure to achieve a satisfactory manipulative reduction, the patient is transferred to a fracture table. The pin is left in the tibia. When operation is performed because of subsequent redisplacements of the fragments, the patient is taken out of the traction apparatus and placed on the fracture table. During the transference an assistant makes steady traction on the yoke attached to the pin in the tibia. The pin is not removed, it is covered with sterile drapes which also envelop the lower leg. This permits the surgeon to use the pin for traction and to flex and extend the leg during the operation.

**TECHNIC** The fracture site is exposed through an anterolateral incision between the rectus femoris and the vastus lateralis, the vastus intermedius is divided parallel with the longitudinal axis of the femur. The distal end of the incision extends slightly below the joint line and then curves gently anteriorly; it divides the lateral aponeurotic expansion of the quadriceps and the joint capsule, bringing into view the intra articular portion of the femur. By subperiosteal dissection the distal third of the femur and the fracture site are exposed. If possible the suprapatellar pouch should be stripped from the bone fragments without laceration since an attempt should be made to restore the pouch after the reduction of the fragments is achieved. At this point a careful

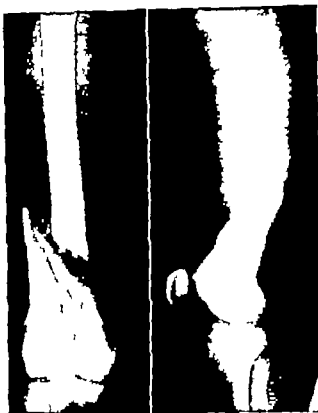


FIG 292 Intercondylar fracture of the femur with gross comminution. Observe the long pointed fragment wedged between the proximal and the distal fragments, this piece of bone prevented adequate correction. Reduction was achieved by open methods similar to that depicted in Figure 294 C.

inspection of the joint is made, and the extent and the nature of the fracture are determined. All blood clots and loose fragments of bone are flushed out of the wound and the supracondylar region with normal saline solution. Attention is first directed to the condylar fragments; they are restored to their normal anatomic relation to each other and secured by threaded pins inserted through stab wounds made posterior to the incision; then the pins are cut below the level of the skin so that they are readily accessible when the time arrives to remove them. Some surgeons use long screws, bolts or blade plates for fixation of the condylar fragments. Now the fracture is converted from an intercondylar to a supracondylar fracture; next, the proximal and the distal

fragments are approximated (Fig 293) In some instances after reduction of the supracondylar fracture, the stability of the reduction is such that no additional internal fixation is required In others the reduction is not stable, and further fixation is essential Under these circumstances the author prefers to use two Rush nails one is passed through each condyle and into the medullary canal of the proximal fragment (Fig 294 C) These provide adequate stability and tend to prevent angulation at the fracture site In the event that there is severe comminution of the supracondylar region more rigid fixation is desired in order to ensure adequate contact between the distal end of the upper fragment and the proximal end of the lower fragment This is achieved best by a blade plate, preferably one that conforms to the lateral surface of the condyle

of the femur It is important to emphasize that the condylar fragments must be fixed firmly by one of the methods noted previously before the blade is driven home because the blade tends to separate them If a blade plate is used it should be placed subsynovially and subperiosteally in order to preclude unfavorable joint reactions

After satisfactory reduction and stability of the fracture are attained the wound and the joint cavity are flushed again with normal saline solution and the edges of the suprapatellar pouch are approximated with fine cotton sutures Then the wound is closed in layers and the limb is immobilized in a plaster spica incorporating the threaded wire through the tibia the spica extends from the toes to the lower margins of the costal cage As a rule after 3 to 5 weeks the spica can be removed and the limb

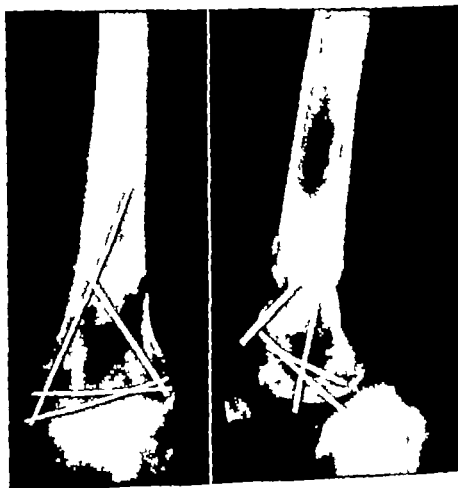


FIG 293 Fixation of severely comminuted Y fracture by pins.

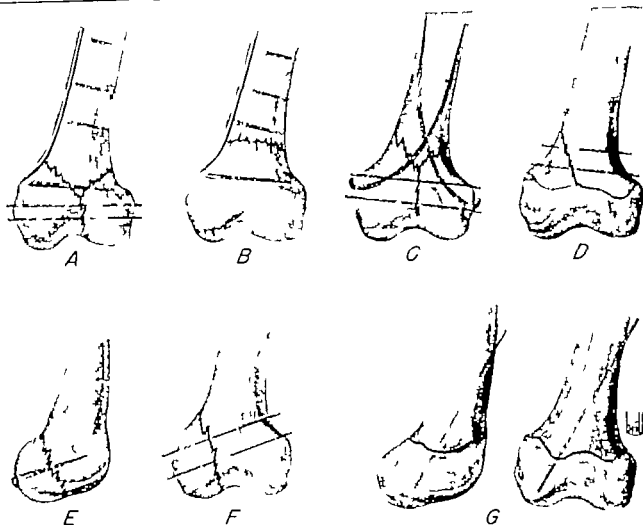


FIG 294 Different methods of internal fixation for condylar and intercondylar fractures of the femur (A) Y fracture fixed by a Blount blade plate and 2 threaded wires (B) Supracondylar fracture fixed by a Blount blade plate. (C) Comminuted intercondylar fracture fixed with a threaded wire and 2 Rush nails (D) Separation of the epiphysis, including a triangular segment of the metaphysis fixed by 2 threaded wires. (E) Vertical fracture of the posterior position of one of the femoral condyles fixed by a single screw (F) Fracture of a single condyle fixed by 2 threaded wires (screws may be used) (G) Separation of the femoral epiphysis immobilized by a single wire, this is permissible if closed methods fail to maintain the reduction

placed in balanced suspension without jeopardizing the position of the fragment. From this point on the treatment is similar in every feature to that described for supracondylar fractures. If threaded wires are employed, they are removed at the end of 4 to 6 weeks under local anesthesia through small stab wounds made immediately over the pins which are readily palpable under the skin. The time of withdrawal of the pins usually corresponds to the time of removal of the plaster spica.

#### FRACTURE OF A SINGLE CONDYLE OF THE FEMUR

The mechanisms responsible for this fracture are essentially those producing fractures of the corresponding tibial condyles. The lesions usually result from direct violence to the side of the knee forcing the joint into valgus or varus producing a fracture of the lateral or the medial condyle (Fig 295). Generally, the fracture line is vertical and in the sagittal plane, if the



force is applied with the knee slightly flexed the fracture line may be roughly transverse in an oblique anteroposterior plane rarely, the forces are applied to the knee in moderate flexion splitting off the posterior portion of the condyle in the

frontal plane In most instances displacement of the fragments is not marked since the tibia retains its normal anatomic position in relation to the opposite sound femoral condyle and the collateral ligament and the capsule on the affected side usually



FIG 295 Fracture of the medial femoral condyle The line of fracture is roughly in the vertical and sagittal plane the condylar fragment is tilted slightly posteriorly



FIG 296 The reduced fragment in Figure 295 is immobilized by 2 screws



FIG. 297 Method of reduction of fracture of the lateral femoral condyle. Traction is made in a lateral direction, after reduction, while traction is maintained a plaster spica is applied, holding the knee in a position of varus

remain intact and tend to prevent marked separation of the fragment. Of course this is not true of the fractures in the frontal plane implicating the extreme posterior portion of the condyles, these fragments may not be controlled by ligamentous attachments and the degree of separation is governed by the severity of the fracturing force. The fragments may be displaced as a free body into the joint cavity. Because the knee joint is forced into varying degrees of abduction or adduction at the time of the injury the contralateral collateral ligaments are invariably stretched or torn partially or

completely. The intra articular nature of the fracture is responsible for the massive hemorrharthrosis always present.

**Management.** Correct treatment of these fractures is governed by the knowledge that restoration of the fragments to their anatomic position in relation to the intact femoral condyle and the tibial plateau is most essential in order to avoid incongruity of the articular surfaces and preclude degenerative alterations which are inevitable in a malaligned intra-articular fracture in a weight-bearing joint. Also loose small fragments of bone must be removed.

CONDYLAR FRACTURES IN THE  
SAGITTAL PLANE

In this type of fracture the fragment is displaced upward and may be tilted posteriorly (Fig 295). Before reduction is performed, the condition of the contralateral collateral ligament must be determined, if ruptured completely, the ligament must be repaired and the fragment reduced and fixed under direct vision. The methods of repair of the ligaments are described in Chapter 8.

**Traumatic Lesions of the Ligaments.** The fracture site is exposed through a medial or lateral incision depending on whether the medial or the lateral condyle is involved. The fragment is levered into position and secured by screws or threaded pins (Fig 296). A plaster spica is applied from the costal cage to the toes. After 4 to 5 weeks the pins and the cast are removed, the limb is placed in balanced suspension and quadriceps and flexing exercises of the knee joint are instituted. This apparatus is discarded after 10 to 14 days and the patient is allowed up on crutches. Weight bearing is permitted at the end of 10 to 12 weeks depending on the severity of the lesion and the progress of osseous union demonstrable by roentgenographic study.

If the continuity of the contralateral collateral ligament is not broken the fracture is reduced by traction and manipulation. The intact collateral ligament on the affected side is used to pull the fragment downward into position. Manipulation corrects any posterior or anterior tilt of the fragment. This method is executed best on a fracture table. The patient's feet are fastened to the foot plates and moderate mechanical traction is made on the affected side. After the knee joint is aspirated a 4 inch strip of muslin bandage is passed around the knee joint and an assistant makes steady traction in a medial or lateral direction depending on the condyle involved. For a fracture of the lateral condyle traction is in the lateral direction producing genu varus; for a fracture of the medial

condyle, traction is in the medial direction producing genu valgus (Fig 297). Any displacement of the fragment in the anteroposterior plane is corrected manually. If traction and manual compression fail to approximate the condyles a screw clamp is employed. While lateral or medial traction is maintained a plaster spica is applied from the costal cage to the toes. The plaster is molded and compressed uniformly around the condyles to maintain the corrected position. The cast is removed after 4 or 5 weeks and the extremity is placed in balanced suspension. From this point the treatment is similar to that described above. As an alternative to plaster fixation reduction may be maintained by continuous skeletal traction with 10 to 12 pounds, using a threaded wire below the tibial tubercle. This is achieved best with the extremity in a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment or in a Böhler Braun splint. Any persisting medial or lateral angulation of the knee is corrected by a Cole type of pressure pad applied to the lower third of the femur on the side opposite the fracture.

Occasionally it is impossible to attain satisfactory realignment of the fragments by closed methods. If such is the case open reduction and fixation as described previously is justified (Fig 294 F).

CONDYLAR FRACTURES IN THE  
FRONTAL PLANE

Fortunately this type of condylar fracture is rare. When the fragment is relatively large it may be reduced by traction and manipulation. Reduction is maintained by the same methods as those described for fractures in the sagittal plane. Occasionally the fragment may be displaced and rotated backward so that manipulative method combined with traction fail to obtain anatomic reposition of the fragments. Such fractures are reduced by open methods. The fracture site is exposed through a posterior incision (medial or lateral depending on the condyle involved). The fragment is

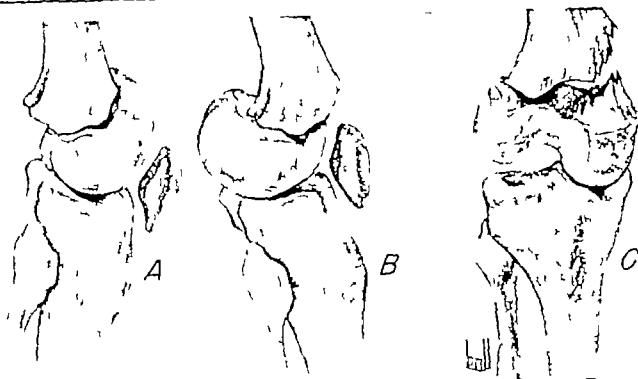


FIG. 298 Types of displacement of the lower femoral epiphysis. (A) The epiphysis is displaced forward B is rare type the epiphysis is displaced backward and tilted toward the popliteal fossa. (C) The epiphysis is displaced lateralward

levered into its normal position and made secure by a screw (Fig 294 E) Subsequent treatment is the same as that described for sagittal fractures Small completely detached fragments of the posterior portion of the femoral condyles are removed.

#### SEPARATION OF DISTAL EPIPHYSIS OF THE FEMUR

Traumatic separation of the lower epiphysis of the femur is a relatively rare lesion usually occurring in boys between 8 and 14 years of age Most cases are the result of violent hyperextension or torsion injuries, but some are produced by direct violence The heads of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle, the posterior capsule and the reinforcing ligaments shear the epiphysis off the diaphysis and displace it to an anterior position The distal fragment may comprise the entire lower epiphysis or it may comprise the epiphysis and a triangular portion of the metaphysis

The epiphysis is usually displaced an

teriorly and upward so that it lies on the anterior surface of the diaphysis, the degree of separation varies, in some it is incomplete, in others it is complete (Fig 298) In cases of complete separation, the distal end of the shaft of the femur protrudes into the popliteal space, jeopardizing the neurovascular structures In rare instances depending on the direction of the fracturing force, the epiphysis is displaced backward and tilted toward the popliteal fossa or it may be displaced laterally (Fig 298) Posterior displacement of the distal end of the shaft or, in the reverse deformity, backward displacement of the lower epiphysis, may compress or inflict serious injury to the vessels and the nerves in the popliteal space (Fig 299) Should examination of the extremity reveal any impairment of its circulation, immediate reduction is imperative Evidence of laceration or rupture of the vessels is an indication for immediate surgical exploration of the popliteal region Cyanosis and coldness of the leg absence of pulsation in the dorsalis pedis and anterior tibial

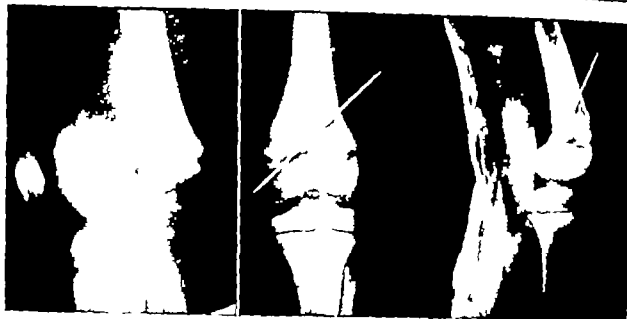


FIG. 299 (Left) Complete separation of the distal femoral epiphysis showing typical deformity. In this case (B. R. female aged 9), a satisfactory reduction could not be attained by closed methods. (Right) Reduction was achieved by open operation; the epiphysis was immobilized by transfixing the lower end of the femoral shaft and the epiphysis with a wire.

vessels are findings pointing to vascular impairment of the limb.

#### MANAGEMENT

In all instances replacement of the epiphysis must be performed without delay. A few days of procrastination not only jeopardizes the vessels in the popliteal space but also renders the reduction difficult because the reparative process in the first two decades of life is unusually active.

Reduction in all instances should be performed under general anesthesia in order to obtain complete muscular relaxation; the manipulative maneuvers and subsequent fixation of the extremity in plaster are facilitated if a fracture table is used. After the patient is placed on the table and receives a general anesthetic agent, the foot of the unaffected limb is fastened to the foot plate. Under aseptic technic, the involved knee joint is aspirated before reduction is executed. When the lower epiphysis is displaced anteriorly, reduction is accomplished by grasping the lower leg with the knee flexed

from 30° to 45° and making strong manual traction in the long axis of the thigh. This maneuver disengages the fragments; reduction is completed by pulling the epiphysis downward over the lower end of the shaft and at the same time the knee is flexed to 90°. As this last step is executed, an assistant elevates the proximal fragment by making upward pressure on the under surface of the lower end of the thigh. Occasionally the knee must be flexed beyond a right angle to obtain the desired reduction. However, the degree of flexion maintained when the limb is immobilized in plaster depends upon the amount of swelling in the posterior aspect of the knee and the status of the circulation of the limb. Any lateral displacement of the epiphysis is corrected by pressure on the shaft and the epiphysis in opposite directions; this is an important step in order to avoid any varus or valgus deformity at the knee joint. The final position is checked by roentgenograms. If the reduction is satisfactory, the extremity is immobilized by a long anterior plaster

splint, extending from the groin to the ankle joint, holding the knee acutely flexed, the position of the plaster splint is ensured by plaster bandages passed around the calf and the thigh (Fig 300). The popliteal space must be protected by adequate padding and the circulation of the leg must be checked carefully at regular intervals until it is certain that the circulation of the limb is out of danger.

As a rule, after 3 to 4 weeks the original plaster splint can be removed, flexion is decreased to  $30^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$ , and a new plaster splint is applied. The new position in flexion is governed by the progress of the healing process determined by clinical and roentgenographic examination. Care must be taken not to decrease flexion too rapidly, because redisplacement of the epiphysis may occur. The second plaster splint is removed at the end of 3 or 4 weeks; at this time consolidation is sufficient to allow unrestricted motion at the knee joint. Exercises are commenced to restore quadriceps power and joint motion. When complete extension of the joint is attained, protected weight bearing on crutches is permitted; unprotected weight bearing is allowed when the quadriceps apparatus has regained sufficient power to stabilize the knee joint adequately and to protect it from abnormal stresses incident to joint function.

Posterior displacements of the epiphysis are reduced by traction to restore length of the femur followed by forward displacement of the epiphysis to restore its anatomic position and extension of the knee to retain the corrected position. A plaster cast is applied extending from the costal cage to the toes; this is retained for 6 to 8 weeks depending upon the progress of consolidation at the site of separation.

**Management of Irreducible Distal Femoral Epiphyseal Separations.** Occasionally cases are encountered in which sufficient time has elapsed since the injury before treatment is instituted to allow some union between the epiphysis and the an-

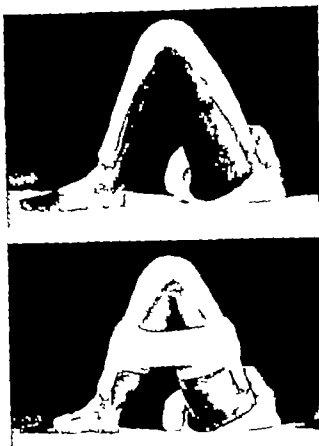


FIG. 300 Type of immobilization of limb after reduction of lower femoral epiphysis.

terior surface of the femur. In such cases the manipulative methods described above may fail, necessitating more radical methods. The author has employed the method described by Griswold and Wood in two cases and has succeeded in getting an adequate reduction in both. This method is reserved for cases in which there is no clinical evidence of injury to the neurovascular structures in the popliteal fossa requiring exploration of this region. A Steinmann pin is passed through the upper third of the tibia (the author prefers to use threaded pins and a spreader). Care must be taken not to injure the proximal epiphyseal plate of the tibia. The patient is placed in a fracture bed and the hip of the affected side is flexed  $90^{\circ}$ . From 25 to 30 pounds of traction is applied to the pin in a vertical direction. Generally after 24 to 48 hours of traction the fragments are disengaged suffi-

ciently to allow an attempt at reduction by the manipulative methods described previously this is performed under general anesthesia. After reduction is achieved the post reduction management is similar in every feature to that described for recent and reducible separations of the femoral epiphysis.

Although adequate repositioning of the epiphysis is desirable and should be the goal of every reduction, occasionally this cannot be achieved by manipulative methods. One must remember that the initial violence inflicts severe injury to the epiphyseal plate and disrupts in varying degrees the blood supply to the epiphysis. Repeated unsuccessful manipulations and surgical procedures jeopardize further the normal growth of the epiphysis and may enhance processes leading to bizarre growth disturbances, premature closure or even aseptic necrosis of the epiphysis. It has been estimated that under the most favorable conditions approximately one third of these cases exhibit some alteration in the subsequent growth of the epiphysis (Fig. 301). On the other hand clinical experience re-

veals that in many instances some displacement of the epiphysis is tolerated well especially by children who still have several years before full skeletal growth is achieved. In infants and very young children there is an inherent tendency to re-establish normal alignment of the displaced epiphysis during the subsequent years of growth; this tendency is less evident in adolescence. Hence in young children if accurate replacement of the epiphysis is not possible by closed methods some displacement may be accepted if it does not exceed more than one third the total detached surface of the epiphysis. In the event that gross displacement of the epiphysis persists in spite of the methods described above then surgical intervention and replacement under direct vision are justifiable. These principles are also applicable to acute cases in which manipulative reduction fails (Fig. 299).

In the event that one must resort to open methods in recent or late cases the operation should be performed with the minimal amount of trauma. Periosteal and capsular stripping should be avoided as much as pos-

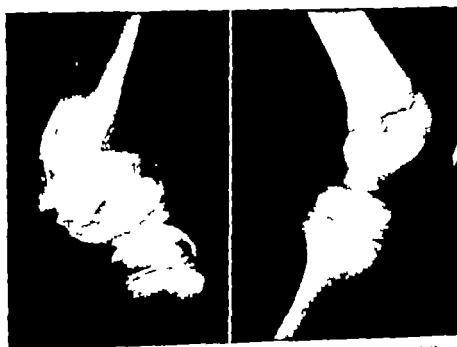


FIG. 301 (Left) Growth disturbance of distal end of femur following separation of the lower femoral epiphysis. (Right) Normal right limb used for comparison.

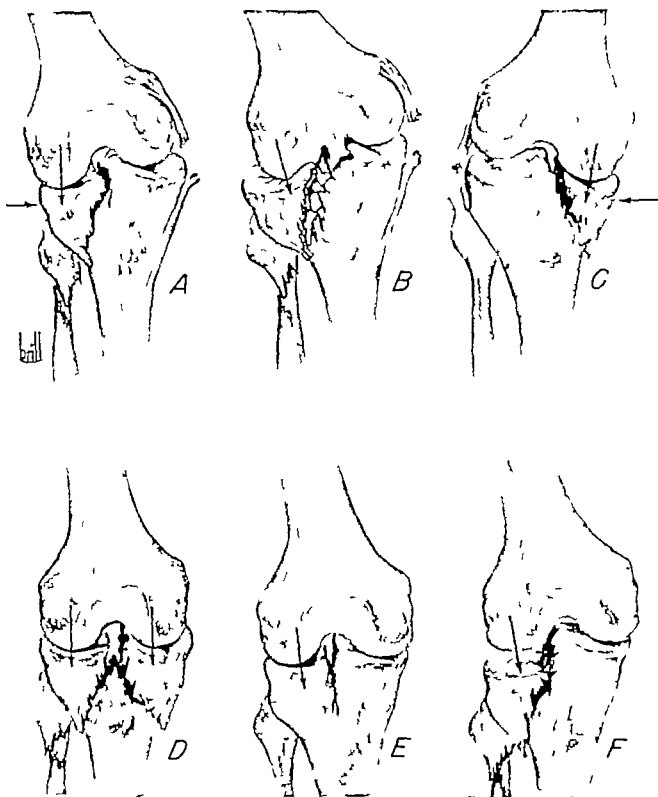


FIG. 302 Mechanisms and types of fractures of the upper end of the tibia. Severe abduction of the knee forces the lateral femoral condyle downward and inward. Depending on the force, different types of fractures of the lateral condyle of the tibia ensue. (A) Oblique fracture with minimal or no displacement. (B) Wide separation and depression of the condylar fragments with comminution and impaction of the central portion of the lateral tibial plateau. (C) Adduction forces produce similar fractures of the medial tibial condyle. (D) When the vertical force predominates, Y or T fractures are sustained. (E) With minimal abduction or adduction in addition to the major downward force, fractures such as that shown are sustained. (F) With more abduction or adduction, marked downward displacement of the corresponding tibial condyle occurs.



ciently to allow an attempt at reduction by the manipulative methods described previously this is performed under general anesthesia. After reduction is achieved the post reduction management is similar in every feature to that described for recent and reducible separations of the femoral epiphysis.

Although adequate repositioning of the epiphysis is desirable and should be the goal of every reduction occasionally this cannot be achieved by manipulative methods. One must remember that the initial violence inflicts severe injury to the epiphyseal plate and disrupts in varying degrees the blood supply to the epiphysis. Repeated unsuccessful manipulations and surgical procedures jeopardize further the normal growth of the epiphysis and may enhance processes leading to bizarre growth disturbances, premature closure or even aseptic necrosis of the epiphysis. It has been estimated that under the most favorable conditions approximately one third of these cases exhibit some alteration in the subsequent growth of the epiphysis (Fig. 301). On the other hand, clinical experience re-

veals that in many instances some displacement of the epiphysis is tolerated well especially by children who still have several years before full skeletal growth is achieved. In infants and very young children there is an inherent tendency to re-establish normal alignment of the displaced epiphysis during the subsequent years of growth; this tendency is less evident in adolescence. Hence in young children if accurate replacement of the epiphysis is not possible by closed methods some displacement may be accepted, if it does not exceed more than one third the total detached surface of the epiphysis. In the event that gross displacement of the epiphysis persists in spite of the methods described above then surgical intervention and replacement under direct vision are justifiable. These principles are also applicable to acute cases in which manipulative reduction fails (Fig. 299).

In the event that one must resort to open methods in recent or late cases the operation should be performed with the minimal amount of trauma. Periosteal and capsular stripping should be avoided as much as pos-

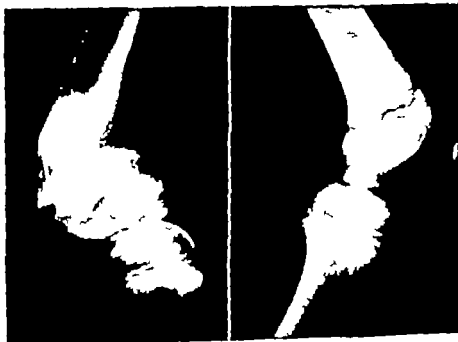


FIG. 301 (Left) Growth disturbance of distal end of femur following separation of the lower femoral epiphysis. (Right) Normal right limb used for comparison.

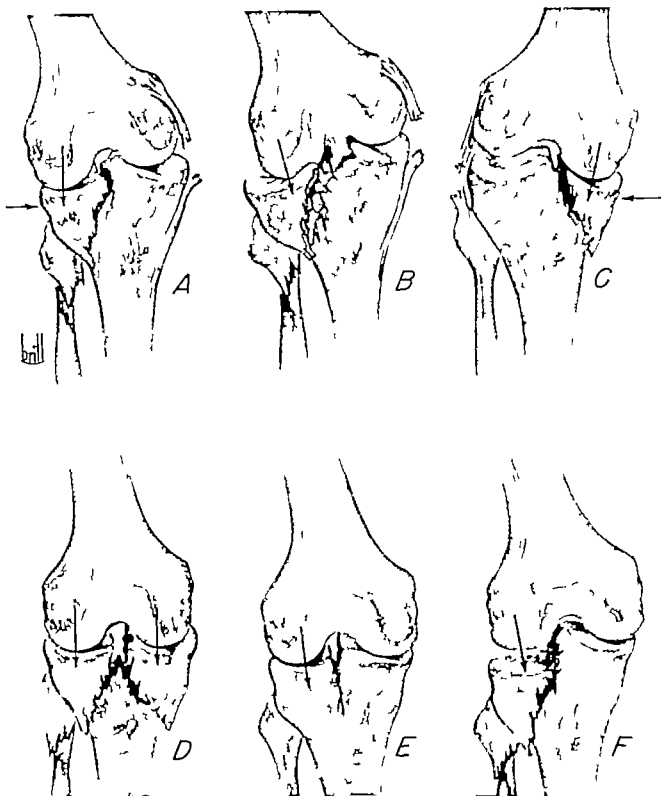


FIG. 302 Mechanisms and types of fractures of the upper end of the tibia. Severe abduction of the knee forces the lateral femoral condyle downward and inward. Depending on the force different types of fractures of the lateral condyle of the tibia ensue. (A) Oblique fracture with minimal or no displacement. (B) Wide separation and depression of the condylar fragments with comminution and impaction of the central portion of the lateral tibial plateau. (C) Adduction forces produce similar fractures of the medial tibial condyle. (D) When the vertical force predominates, Y or T fractures are sustained. (E) With minimal abduction or adduction in addition to the major downward force, fractures such as that shown are sustained. (F) With more abduction or adduction marked downward displacement of the corresponding tibial condyle occurs.

sible in order to preserve the blood supply to the epiphysis care should be taken to avoid crushing the epiphyseal plate or traumatizing the epiphysis per se. If possible the reduction should be performed by manipulative maneuvers and not by levering the fragments into place by instruments. Foreign materials should not be used for internal fixation unless this is unavoidable. Case B R is an example of an epiphyseal separation that could not be retained without some form of internal fixation (Fig. 299). If internal fixation must be used a fine threaded wire transfixing the two fragments, provides sufficient stability until adequate consolidation occurs.

The parents should be made aware of the unpredictable long term end results in both recent and old cases. Throughout the entire growth period roentgenographic studies should be made at regular intervals preferably every 6 months. Shortening of the limb because of premature closure of the epiphyseal plate may be balanced by epiphysiodesis of the normal side at the appropriate time. Partial closures may result in varying degrees of varus or valgus deformities before cessation of growth correction may be attained by stapling the open portions of the epiphysis after skeletal growth is complete correction may be effected by osteotomy. In addition to deformities in the coronal plane of the knee joint such as valgus and varus deformities partial closures may produce deformities in the sagittal plane the methods of correction are similar to those described above (Fig. 301).

#### FRACTURES OF THE UPPER END OF THE TIBIA

The configuration of the bony architecture of the upper end of the tibia are responsible for the frequency of fractures of this region. Essentially the upper end of the tibia comprises two large overhanging bony eminences the lateral and the medial condyles which are composed of cancellous

bone the lateral margins are buttressed by their cortical bone which is continuous with the shaft of the tibia. The cortical layer of bone spanning the interval between the lateral margins of the condyles and the shaft of the tibia is a weak connecting link and particularly in adults is responsible for the high incidence of fractures that implicate the condylar regions of the tibia.

#### MECHANISM AND ASSOCIATED LESIONS OF CONDYLAR FRACTURES OF THE TIBIA

Two mechanisms are primarily responsible for these lesions (1) violent abduction or adduction of the knee joint produced by forces applied to the outer and the inner aspects of the extremity and (2) by forces acting in a vertical direction on the tibial plateaus such as forces produced by falls on the feet (Fig. 302). In many instances both mechanisms are acting in some degree however the ultimate type of fracture produced depends upon the force that is predominant. In addition to the above mechanisms, fractures of the upper end of the tibia may result from severe direct violence such as direct impacts or crushing injuries. A relatively common mode of direct violence is striking the upper end of the tibia by an automobile bumper (bumper fracture). Indirect violence that forces the knee in abduction or adduction generally produces fractures of a single condyle. The abduction mechanism is by far the most common resulting in injuries of the tibial collateral and the cruciate ligaments varying from a strain to complete rupture. The lateral condyle of the femur is forced downward and inward the amount of lateral and downward displacement of the tibial condyle is governed by the severity of the forces expended. The types of fractures of the lateral condyle vary. The lesion may comprise a vertical split in the condyle with minimal displacement on the other hand the condyle may be widely separated and depressed if a severe compressing force is also acting marked comminution and im-

paction of the central portion of the lateral tibial plateau may result, and, frequently fracture of the neck of the fibula is a concomitant lesion. Often this same abduction mechanism is responsible for laceration and crushing of the lateral meniscus, which may be projected into the joint cavity or may come to lie between the bony fragments.

If falls from a height the predominant acting force may be one acting vertically downward. If the lateral side of the joint sustains the brunt of the force the lateral femoral condyle drives the lateral tibial tuberosity directly downward with minimal or no fragmentation of its articular surface if the force is applied to the medial side of the joint, the same type of fracture of the medial tibial tuberosity ensues (however this lesion is rare). If, in addition to a violent compression force, moderate abduction of the knee occurs, the lateral tuberosity as a whole or in part depending upon the extent of abduction, is driven downward and outward; however, again the degree of implication of the articular surface is minimal when compared with the disruption of the plateau that occurs when the predominant force is one of abduction. Falling from a height and landing on the feet may result in fracture of both condyles; the condyles may be driven downward and away from the shaft producing the Y or the T fractures. Injuries resulting from direct violence may produce severe comminution of the upper end of the tibia or may produce a roughly transverse fracture at the level of the juncture of the tuberosities and the shaft of the tibia; a fracture through the neck of the fibula may also be present.

As recorded previously ligamentous lesions are invariably associated with severe fractures produced by violent abduction mechanisms and to a lesser degree in fractures produced by a predominant compression force. The tibial collateral ligament always is implicated in some degree and in many instances lesions of the anterior cruciate ligament and the lateral meniscus

occur, the usual lesion of the anterior cruciate ligament comprises a fracture of the tibial spine. Fortunately, lesions of the tibial collateral ligament are never severe because much of the acting force is expended in producing the fracture in the lateral tibial tuberosity; hence, in most instances the concomitant lesions of the ligaments are amenable to conservative treatment and are rarely responsible for instability of the knee joint, provided that the quadriceps apparatus is restored to normalcy.

Inasmuch as condylar fractures of the tibia are intra articular fractures, the joint invariably is distended with blood. If a massive hemarthrosis exists, aspiration of the joint is an essential preliminary step in the treatment of these lesions. Also, in recent injuries varying degrees of swelling of the pericapsular tissues occurs, particularly in the region of the femoral attachment of the tibial collateral ligament.

**Diagnosis.** In the majority of the cases there is a history of some form of severe injury followed by pain, complete disability and swelling of the knee joint. Both active and passive motion elicits pain. In the event that the lateral condyle is depressed, valgus deformity of the knee joint is discernible; however the deformity may be hidden by generalized swelling of the soft tissues around the knee joint. Wide separation of one or both condyles produces broadening of the tibial condylar region; however, this feature may be masked by the swelling. If a subcondylar fracture is present and the lower fragment is displaced upward, some shortening of the lower leg is discernible. With depression and separation of the tibial condyles varying degrees of abnormal mobility may be demonstrated by abduction or adduction of the leg, depending on the condyle involved. On palpation tenderness is most marked over the line of fracture if one condyle is implicated; this maneuver is helpful in localizing the site of fracture in fractures involving the entire circumfer-



FIG. 303 Fracture of the lateral tibial condyle with minimal displacement and a relatively intact tibial plateau except in the region of the tibial spine. The subsequent degenerative alterations in this type are usually minimal in degree.



FIG. 304 Severe comminutions of the lateral tibial plateau. Several fragments of the articular surface are driven into the cancellous bone of the tibia. The outlook in this type of fracture is poor; severe degenerative alterations invariably occur.

ence of the tibial shaft immediately below the expanded upper end of the tibia; tenderness is demonstrable around the entire bone. In widely separated condyles without impaction lateral compression may reveal motion between the two condylar fragments; they may be moved separately forward and backward. Swelling and localized tenderness over the upper end of the fibula should make one suspicious of a fracture in this region.

In some instances the diagnosis is diffi-

cult because there may be little or no displacement of the fragments. However, if blood is aspirated from the joint a fracture should be suspected. Roentgenographic studies with the leg in various positions establishes the true nature of the lesion.

#### MANAGEMENT OF FRACTURES OF THE LATERAL TIBIAL CONDYLE

**General Considerations.** Comprehension of the mechanisms of fractures of the upper end of the tibia is essential in order to formulate an adequate plan of treatment and to be able to prognosticate with some

accuracy the long term results. In lesions with depression of the entire lateral condyle and with minimal separation, the articular surface is usually intact except at the site of fracture in the region of the tibial spine. As noted previously, damage to the tibial collateral and the cruciate ligaments in these cases is not severe (Fig 303). In general, the aims to achieve in this type of lesion are restoration of the displaced condyle to its anatomic position, protection of the fracture until osseous healing is complete, and development and maintenance of quadriceps power to maximum efficiency. With such a regimen, degenerative alterations rarely develop to the extent that they constitute a threat to normal performance of the joint; in fact in most instances the ensuing degenerative changes are minimal in degree.

The outlook is less favorable, and the

management is more difficult in lesions with comminution of the lateral condyle. The downward and inward force of the lateral femoral condyle not only disrupts the articular surface of the tibial condyle and splits off a large marginal segment but it drives the fragments deep into the cancellous bone of the tibia (Fig 304). Many of these fragments are completely severed of all blood supply, hence, avascular necrosis is inevitable which in turn is followed by degeneration of the overlying cartilage. In addition, the displaced fragments may be wedged between the central and the marginal fragments, obstructing satisfactory reduction. Lesions of the tibial collateral and the cruciate ligaments are more severe than those associated with depressed fractures of the tibial condyle. The aims of management in this severe lesion are similar in every feature to those noted for depressed frac-



FIG 305 Fracture of the lateral condyle on the left side and the medial condyle on the right in the same patient. Displacement is minimal and was treated by plaster fixation and early quadriceps exercises. The result was excellent.

tures however they are more difficult to achieve. Moreover because of the severe comminution of the articular surface varying degrees of degenerative arthritis invariably result. After healing it is of prime importance that these joints be protected from abnormal strains incident to normal function if not the degenerative alterations will be accentuated and severe dysfunction will ensue. The only safeguard against such unfavorable complications is a powerful extensor apparatus. Measures to prevent quadriceps atrophy must be instituted immediately after the limb is immobilized and must be continued conscientiously throughout the entire period of treatment.

**Fracture of Lateral or Medial Tibial Condyles Without Displacement (Fig 305)** Although these lesions are characterized by minimal osseous and ligamentous damage the knee joint may be markedly distended by a large hemarthrosis. Under aseptic precautions the joint is aspirated. A snug fitting unpadded plaster cast is applied extending from the groin to the toes and holding the knee in full extension. Quadriceps drill is begun at once on a regu-

lated schedule 5 minutes every hour. This is followed by straight leg raising exercises and next by straight leg raising exercises against elastic resistance. At the end of 2 weeks a new plaster cast is applied and exercises are performed against increasing loads. Now the patient is permitted out of bed with the aid of crutches. The second cast is retained for 2 or 3 weeks then it is removed and flexion movements of the joint are started. Weight bearing is allowed at the end of 10 to 12 weeks. At this time the quadriceps should be sufficiently strong to protect the joint against abnormal strains during normal function and full flexion and extension of the joint should be attained.

**Depressed Fracture of the Lateral Tibial Condyle.** The majority of these fractures can be reduced by traction and manipulation. The patient is placed on a fracture table and a general anesthetic agent is administered. If the knee joint is distended with blood aspiration of the knee is the first step in the treatment. Next both feet are fastened to the foot pieces and moderate mechanical traction is applied to the extended limbs. A wide muslin bandage



FIG. 306. This type of fracture responds readily to traction and manipulative methods.

is passed around the inner aspect of the knee joint, and steady manual lateral traction is made by an assistant. The traction should be strong enough to force the knee into a varus position, the maneuver tenses the fibular collateral ligament and the lateral portion of the joint capsule, which elevates the depressed fracture to its normal anatomic position. The reduction is completed by compressing, with the surgeon's hands, the tuberosities of the tibia, if this fails to attain reposition of the fragment a compression clamp may be employed to squeeze the condyles together. When the latter implement is used, it should be applied and released quickly in order to prevent necrosis of the soft tissues. The amount of compression made is determined by applying the clamp to the normal knee and

measuring the distance between its two faces. Fractures of the medial condyle are treated in a similar manner, except that traction is made in the opposite direction forcing the knee into valgus position and utilizing the tibial collateral ligament and the medial portion of the joint capsule to elevate the depressed fracture (Fig 306). Before the limb is encased in plaster, the position of the fragment is checked by roentgenograms. If the position is satisfactory while an assistant maintains lateral traction a well molded, nonpadded cast is applied from the toes to the groin.

**POSTREDUCTION MANAGEMENT** Quadriceps drill is started immediately on a regulated schedule. As in undisplaced fractures, straight leg raising first aided and then unaided is the next step in the program. As



FIG 307 (Left) Depressed comminuted fracture of the lateral tibial condyle treated by traction manipulation and compression. (Right) The fragments have been realigned satisfactorily.



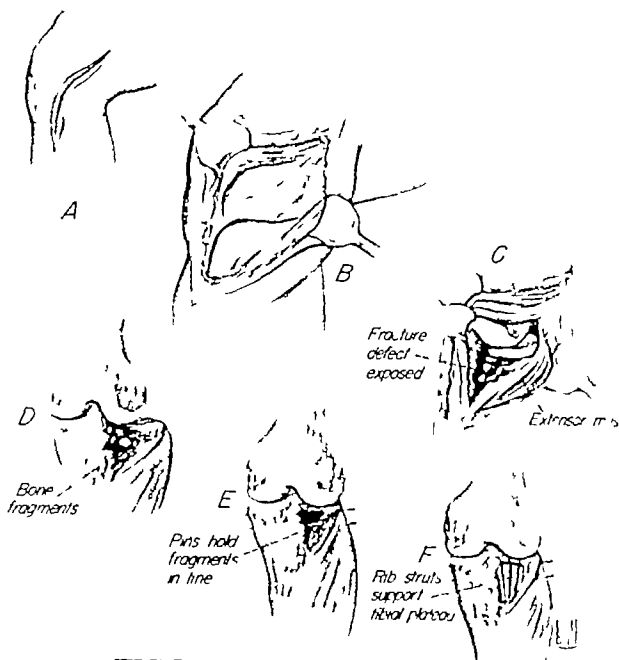


FIG. 308. Replacement of fractures of the lateral tibial condyle under direct vision. Rib bone is used as struts to support the elevated articular fragments. Threaded wires fix the lateral marginal fracture to the opposite tibial condyle. (A) Skin incision. (B) Incision in the capsule. (C, D) Note the lateral displacement of the marginal fragment and the comminution of the tibial plateau. (E) By compression the marginal fragment is restored to its anatomic position and fixed by threaded wires. (F) Rib struts are employed to support the elevated articular fragments.

soon as the patient masters this step straight leg raising against elastic resistances is added. This is followed by exercising the quadriceps with increasing loads. After 3 weeks a new cast is applied maintaining the original position. Ambulation is

started on crutches but no weight bearing on the affected limb is permitted. At the end of 8 weeks the cast is removed and active exercises to restore movement at the joint are started. Weight bearing is allowed at the end of 10 or 12 weeks. At this time the ex-

tensor apparatus should be developed sufficiently so that no brace is needed for support. If the quadriceps is not strong enough to provide adequate protection for the knee, the use of crutches should be continued, and the exercises should be intensified until the quadriceps has regained the desired power and volume. This is far more desirable than depending upon a brace or a knee cage for stability of the knee joint.

#### Comminuted Fractures of the Lateral Tibial Condyle.

**CLOSED METHOD** Satisfactory reduction is difficult to achieve in this type of fracture. As pointed out previously, many small central fragments, some of which are devoid of blood supply, may be driven into the cancellous bone of the tibia. It is impossible to restore these fragments to their normal anatomic position by traction and manipulative methods. Nevertheless, if comminution is not too severe and the marginal fragment is relatively large, by traction, manipulation and compression the latter may be elevated and compressed into a satisfactory position and the small fragments may be crushed in the head of the tibia (Fig. 307). In such instances the restored articular surface of the condyle is sufficient to provide an adequate weight bearing surface. Eventually the central defect in the condyle will be obliterated by fibrous tissue. The technic of the reduction is similar to that described for depressed fractures of the lateral tibial condyle, except that stronger lateral traction and compression are required to obtain satisfactory repositioning of the marginal fragment. The postreduction management is the same as that recorded for depressed fractures.

**OPEN METHOD** If closed methods fail to obtain a satisfactory reduction because a large marginal fragment cannot be elevated and compressed into its anatomic position and in cases with severe comminution with a small marginal fragment, operative treatment is indicated (Fig. 308). After a tourniquet is applied the skin is prepared

adequately, and the lower leg is draped separately in order that the surgeon may manipulate the limb freely. The skin incision is similar to that described for excision of the lateral meniscus, except that its distal end is projected downward on the head of the tibia, paralleling the outer margin of the patellar tendon. The joint capsule is opened in the line of the upper arm of the skin incision in the interval between the iliotibial band and the patellar tendon. After the joint is flushed with normal saline solution to remove clots and loose fragments of cartilage and bone, the lateral meniscus is excised. Frequently, this latter structure is found to be lacerated and wedged between fragments displaced deeply in the head of the tibia. Greater visibility of the central crater is obtained by displacing the marginal fragment outward, with a small curet, the central depressed fragments of the articular surface are elevated to their anatomic position. This frequently leaves a large defect in the tibial head immediately below the elevated fragments. In order to prevent redisplacement of the fragments, cortical bone struts obtained from the bone bank may be packed in the defect; they should be long enough to support the overlying fragments of the articular surface. Next, the marginal fragment is elevated and compressed into its normal position. Frequently, it tends to spring back when compression is released. In such instances the author employs one or two threaded wire pins which pass parallel with the articular surface through the fragment and pierce the cortex of the opposite tibial condyle; the ends are cut below the level of the skin. They are withdrawn at the time that the second cast is removed, usually 8 weeks after operation. Other surgeons employ screws or bolts to maintain the marginal fragment in the desired position. The wound is closed in layers with interrupted cotton sutures. While lateral traction is maintained to hold the knee in a position of varus, the limb is encased in plaster from the toes to the groin.

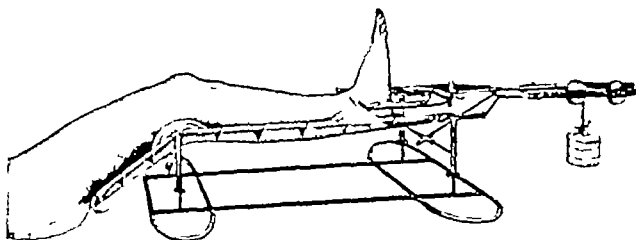


FIG. 309 Method of skeletal traction employed after reduction and manipulation of T or Y fractures of the upper end of the tibia. Threaded wire is passed through the distal third of the tibia.

Postreduction treatment is similar to that described for fractures treated by the closed method.

#### T OR Y FRACTURES OF THE UPPER END OF THE TIBIA

These injuries are usually the result of violent forces acting directly downward in the line of the tibia. Often the history is one of falling from a height and landing on the feet; by this mechanism the condyles are split and driven downward while the shaft of the tibia is forced upward. It becomes apparent that the principles of treatment comprise (1) restoration of length of the tibia by traction, (2) repositioning of the condyles by manipulation and compression and (3) maintenance of the reduction until bone healing occurs. Restoration of length of the tibia and elevation of the tibial condyles are achieved best by mechanical traction and maintenance of the reduction is assured by continuous traction which also permits early motion at the knee joint, a feature desired in these severe fractures.

**Closed Methods.** If no contraindications prevail, such as laceration of the skin or extensive soft tissue swelling, treatment should be instituted at once. The patient is placed on a fracture table; a general anes-

thesia is administered and under aseptic technic the joint is aspirated. After preparation of the skin a threaded pin is inserted at a point well below the fracture site through the lower third of the tibia; the pin is attached to a spreader which in turn is fastened to the foot piece of the fracture table. Mechanical traction is applied to the extended limb in the line of the tibia until full length of the lower leg is regained. The collateral ligaments make strong upward traction on the tibial condyles, elevating them to their normal position. Any separation of the condyles is corrected by manual compression or if this is ineffective by compression made by a Scudder screw clamp or Böhler's redresseur. At the termination of the reduction an elastic compression bandage is applied. If roentgenograms show acceptable repositioning of the fragments, an assistant maintains the traction while the wire spreader is freed from the foot piece. While traction is still maintained the patient is transferred from the fracture table to a fracture bed, and the extremity is adjusted to a Böhler-Braun splint. From 10 to 12 pounds of traction is applied to the leg (Figs. 309 and 310).

**Postreduction Management.** Quadriceps drill is started immediately, but active

motion at the knee joint is not allowed for 4 or 5 weeks depending on the severity of the lesion. Motion at the knee joint is performed with the traction acting, redisplacement of the fragments is inevitable if this rule is disregarded. From 6 to 8 weeks after reduction, skeletal traction is discontinued, and the pin is removed. Now more intensive exercises to regain joint motion and quadriceps power are instituted. Ambulation is permitted on crutches, weight bearing is not permitted for 12 to 16 weeks.

In the event that abrasions or laceration of the soft tissues preclude immediate reduction by the aforementioned method the extremity should be splinted elevated and enveloped in hot dressings. Antibiotics are administered. After 7 to 10 days, the soft tissue reactions usually have subsided sufficiently to allow reduction of the fracture.

**Open Methods.** An attempt to obtain a reduction by traction and manipulation should be made in all cases of T or Y fractures. If this method fails, one is forced to resort to open methods. A tourniquet is applied high on the thigh, and the pin in the tibia with the attached tautener (spreader) is not disturbed. The leg is draped separately so that the surgeon may manipulate it freely and, if necessary, use the pin to apply traction to the lower leg. Two skin incisions are made, one on each side of the knee joint. They are similar to the incisions employed for excision of the menisci but in addition are continued downward on the head of the tibia parallel with the margins of the patellar tendon. The joint capsule is opened between the collateral ligaments and the margins of the patellar tendon. Flexion of the knee joint brings into view the articulating surfaces of the tibia. After all clots and free blood are flushed out of the joint the menisci are inspected and excised. Frequently they are found to be damaged and displaced between the fragments. Removal of the fibrocartilages facilitates replacement of the depressed fragments. By traction and manipulation length of the tibia is restored



FIG. 310 Fracture of both tibial condyles and the shaft of the tibia. This type is treated best by traction, manipulation and compression and then placing the limb in the apparatus depicted in Figure 309.

and by leverage and compression the marginal and depressed fragments are restored to their normal position. As in comminuted fractures of the lateral condyle, the fragments are approximated and squeezed together with a screw clamp. While traction and compression are maintained two threaded wires are passed parallel with the articular surface, starting on the lateral side and traversing the entire width of the condylar region of the tibia. The points of the pin should pierce the cortex of the medial tuberosity. The ends of the pins protruding from the lateral tuberosity are cut short so that they lie directly under the skin and are readily accessible. The author has found



FIG. 311 Advanced degenerative alterations following comminuted fracture of the lateral tibial condyle. The patient has little discomfort and is capable of full extension and flexion of the knee to 80°. He possesses a powerful quadriceps which protects the joint from abnormal stresses incident to function.

threaded wires to be more serviceable than bolts and screws. They should be inserted while the fragments are held together firmly. If necessary, one or more pins may be passed obliquely, fixing the condyles to the shaft of the tibia. The wounds are closed in layers. While traction is maintained the patient is transferred to a fracture bed and the limb is placed on a Bühler-Braun splint. From 10 to 12 pounds of traction is applied to the pin. The postoperative management is similar in every feature to that described for T or Y fractures treated by closed methods.

## ARTHRODESIS AND ARTHROPLASTY OF THE KNEE JOINT

Not infrequently, pronounced degenerative changes develop following severe disruption of the osseous and the cartilaginous elements of the knee joint. In some instances because of failure to achieve normal alignment of the fragments or because of other circumstances that precluded early and satisfactory reduction of the fracture the affected knee joints exhibit varying degrees of deformities in the frontal or the sagittal planes as well as instability and restricted and painful motion. In cases with minimal or no deformity of the knee joint with advanced degenerative alterations much can be done to improve function and alleviate pain by improving the power and the stabilizing effect of the quadriceps apparatus and by removal of factors responsible for internal derangement of the knee joint, such as damaged menisci and loose bodies (Fig. 311). On the other hand the extent of damage may be irreparable and more radical measures must be employed to rehabilitate the patient. A knee joint with only a few degrees of painful motion is a serious handicap particularly in individuals whose occupations demand long hours of standing and walking. The indications and the contraindications for arthrodesis and arthroplasty are discussed in Chapter 13 "Surgical Approaches and Procedures" however at this time it must be pointed out that the decision in a large measure is governed by the sex, the age and the occupation of the patient. In addition the determination of the patient to regain motion after an arthroplasty is performed must be given prime consideration. A well-executed surgical procedure that is mechanically sound is no assurance that a good functioning joint will be the end result. In patients whose work demands long hours of weight bearing an ankylosed knee joint provides a stable useful limb capable of meeting all

strenuous functional demands. The technics of arthroplasties and arthrodeses are described in Chapter 13, *Surgical Approaches and Procedures*.

## FRACTURES OF THE UPPER END OF THE FIBULA

### ISOLATED FRACTURES

These fractures are produced by direct violence to the outer surface of the knee joint. The fracture line may traverse the head or the neck of the fibula in an oblique or transverse plane, as a rule, there is relatively little displacement of the fragments. The diagnosis is readily established by (1) a history of direct violence to the outer aspect of the knee, (2) localized swelling and tenderness in the region of the head and the neck of the fibula, (3) compression of the tibia and the fibula in the middle of the leg projects pain at the site of fracture and (4) rotation of the foot while the knee is flexed also elicits pain in the involved area of the fibula. Roentgenographic study confirms the diagnosis.

**Treatment.** Because there is minimal or no displacement of the fracture, reduction is not necessary. In most instances after the pain of the initial injury has subsided, the patients experience little discomfort except on weight bearing. Such cases need no external fixation; they should be made ambulatory with the aid of crutches. At the end of 3 to 4 weeks weight bearing is permitted and the crutches are discarded. Some patients have considerable pain; this is due to the action of the biceps femoris muscle, which inserts in the upper end of the fibula and tends to distract the fragments, particularly on active flexion of the knee joint. In these individuals a snug fitting plaster cast is applied from the toes to the groin, holding the knee slightly flexed. After 4 weeks the cast is removed but no weight-bearing is permitted on the affected limb for 2 more weeks; however, the patient is able to get about on crutches.

Fractures in the region of the neck of the fibula or its upper third may be complicated by injury to the peroneal nerve; it may be contused or crushed at the time of the injury or it may be incorporated in a mass of callus. In the latter instances, symptoms pointing to implication of the peroneal nerve are manifest slowly several weeks after injury, in the former, paralysis is immediate. Treatment comprises putting the anterior tibial, the peroneal and the extensor muscles of the foot at rest by supporting the foot in a position of dorsiflexion. After healing of the bone is complete, a short leg brace supporting the foot in the desired position should be applied. In the event that no clinical evidence of return of power is evident in the aforementioned muscles within 2 to 3 months, exploration of the nerve is indicated. If it is severed its ends are approximated, if it is caught in callus, it is freed. The method of exposure of the nerve is recorded in Chapter 13, *Surgical Approaches and Procedures*.

In rare instances the proximal fragment of the fibula is displaced upward and backward by the biceps femoris muscle. Flexion of the knee may fail to approximate the fragments. In such cases open reduction and fixation of the fragment to its normal position with sutures is indicated. After operation a plaster cast is applied from the toes to the groin, holding the knee in at least 45° flexion. The cast is removed at the end of 4 weeks and weight bearing without crutches is permitted after 2 more weeks have elapsed.

Forceful adduction of the knee may produce an avulsion of the fibular collateral ligament with a portion of the styloid process of the fibula. This lesion may be accompanied by stretching of the peroneal nerve and rupture of the lateral portion of the capsule of the joint. The treatment is discussed in Chapter 8, *Traumatic Lesions of the Ligaments*. Usually, surgical intervention is required to restore the avulsed frag-



FIG 311 Advanced degenerative alterations following comminuted fracture of the lateral tibial condyle. The patient has little discomfort and is capable of full extension and flexion of the knee to 80°. He possesses a powerful quadriceps which protects the joint from abnormal stresses incident to function.

## ARTHRODESIS AND ARTHROPLASTY OF THE KNEE JOINT

Not infrequently, pronounced degenerative changes develop following severe disruption of the osseous and the cartilaginous elements of the knee joint. In some instances because of failure to achieve normal alignment of the fragments or because of other circumstances that precluded early and satisfactory reduction of the fracture the affected knee joints exhibit varying degrees of deformities in the frontal or the sagittal planes as well as instability and restricted and painful motion. In cases with minimal or no deformity of the knee joint with advanced degenerative alterations much can be done to improve function and alleviate pain by improving the power and the stabilizing effect of the quadriceps apparatus and by removal of factors responsible for internal derangement of the knee joint, such as damaged menisci and loose bodies (Fig 311). On the other hand the extent of damage may be irreparable and more radical measures must be employed to rehabilitate the patient. A knee joint with only a few degrees of painful motion is a serious handicap particularly in individuals whose occupations demand long hours of standing and walking. The indications and the contraindications for arthrodesis and arthroplasty are discussed in Chapter 13. Surgical Approaches and Procedures" however at this time it must be pointed out that the decision in a large measure is governed by the sex, the age and the occupation of the patient. In addition the determination of the patient to regain motion after an arthroplasty is performed must be given prime consideration. A well-executed surgical procedure that is mechanically sound is no assurance that a good functioning joint will be the end result. In patients whose work demands long hours of weight bearing an ankylosed knee joint provides a stable useful limb capable of meeting all

threaded wires to be more serviceable than bolts and screws. They should be inserted while the fragments are held together firmly. If necessary one or more pins may be passed obliquely fixing the condyles to the shaft of the tibia. The wounds are closed in layers. While traction is maintained the patient is transferred to a fracture bed and the limb is placed on a Böhler Braun splint. From 10 to 12 pounds of traction is applied to the pin. The postoperative management is similar in every feature to that described for T or Y fractures treated by closed methods.

strenuous functional demands. The technics of arthroplasties and arthrodeses are described in Chapter 13 "Surgical Approaches and Procedures"

## FRACTURES OF THE UPPER END OF THE FIBULA

### ISOLATED FRACTURES

These fractures are produced by direct violence to the outer surface of the knee joint. The fracture line may traverse the head or the neck of the fibula in an oblique or transverse plane, as a rule, there is relatively little displacement of the fragments. The diagnosis is readily established by (1) a history of direct violence to the outer aspect of the knee, (2) localized swelling and tenderness in the region of the head and the neck of the fibula, (3) compression of the tibia and the fibula in the middle of the leg projects pain at the site of fracture, and (4) rotation of the foot while the knee is flexed also elicits pain in the involved area of the fibula. Roentgenographic study confirms the diagnosis.

**Treatment.** Because there is minimal or no displacement of the fracture, reduction is not necessary. In most instances after the pain of the initial injury has subsided the patients experience little discomfort except on weight bearing. Such cases need no external fixation; they should be made ambulatory with the aid of crutches. At the end of 3 to 4 weeks weight bearing is permitted, and the crutches are discarded. Some patients have considerable pain; this is due to the action of the biceps femoris muscle which inserts in the upper end of the fibula and tends to distract the fragments particularly on active flexion of the knee joint. In these individuals a snug fitting plaster cast is applied from the toes to the groin holding the knee slightly flexed. After 4 weeks the cast is removed but no weight bearing is permitted on the affected limb for 2 more weeks; however the patient is able to get about on crutches.

Fractures in the region of the neck of the fibula or its upper third may be complicated by injury to the peroneal nerve. It may be contused or crushed at the time of the injury or it may be incorporated in a mass of callus. In the latter instances, symptoms pointing to implication of the peroneal nerve are manifest slowly several weeks after injury, in the former, paralysis is immediate. Treatment comprises putting the anterior tibial, the peroneal and the extensor muscles of the foot at rest by supporting the foot in a position of dorsiflexion. After healing of the bone is complete, a short leg brace supporting the foot in the desired position should be applied. In the event that no clinical evidence of return of power is evident in the aforementioned muscles within 2 to 3 months, exploration of the nerve is indicated. If it is severed, its ends are approximated, if it is caught in callus it is freed. The method of exposure of the nerve is recorded in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures."

In rare instances the proximal fragment of the fibula is displaced upward and backward by the biceps femoris muscle. Flexion of the knee may fail to approximate the fragments. In such cases open reduction and fixation of the fragment to its normal position with sutures is indicated. After operation a plaster cast is applied from the toes to the groin holding the knee in at least 45° flexion. The cast is removed at the end of 4 weeks and weight bearing without crutches is permitted after 2 more weeks have elapsed.

Forceful adduction of the knee may produce an avulsion of the fibular collateral ligament with a portion of the styloid process of the fibula. This lesion may be accompanied by stretching of the peroneal nerve and rupture of the lateral portion of the capsule of the joint. The treatment is discussed in Chapter 8 "Traumatic Lesions of the Ligaments." Usually surgical intervention is required to restore the avulsed frag-



ment of bone with the attached ligament to its normal position

### DISLOCATION

This rare lesion may be the result of direct violence, driving the head of the fibula upward backward or outward or it may be due to indirect violence as the result of a fracture of the tibia at a lower level, in which case the head of the fibula may be levered from its attachments and displaced upward in addition to one of the above positions. The diagnosis is not difficult to establish. Inspection and palpation detect the abnormal position of the bone. roentgenograms taken in different views confirm the diagnosis.

**Management.** Reduction is usually achieved by manipulation of the fragment combined with inversion of the foot. If the bone tends to spring out of its normal position it should be strapped firmly in place with adhesive and the leg should be encased in plaster from the toes to the groin with the knee flexed. Care should be taken to avoid injuring the peroneal nerve by the adhesive strapping. The cast is removed at the end of from 4 to 6 weeks and weight bearing is permitted. If redisplacement of the bone occurs in spite of this method then surgical intervention is justified. Under vision the bone is replaced in its anatomic position and sutured to the surrounding tissues. In one case a threaded wire was passed through the fibula and the tibia crossing the proximal tibiofibular joint. the wire was cut below the level of the skin. it was removed 4 weeks later.

### WOUNDS OF THE KNEE JOINT

Penetrating wounds of the knee joint sustained in civil life or on the battlefield must be listed among the most serious injuries that may be inflicted on an individual. The immediate disruption of the components of the joint and the soft tissues as well as the osseous and the cartilaginous elements may

be prejudicial to restoration of normal function, in addition the wounds may introduce into the joint pyogenic organisms which may overcome the natural barriers of the local tissues and initiate a suppurative process which if managed inadequately may cost the patient his limb or life. The literature abounds with material on the management of these injuries. It is interesting to note the divergencies in opinion relative to what is considered to be correct treatment. Some surgeons attack the problems with a sense of defeatism and resort to extreme radicalism, while others pursue a more conservative course and are bolstered by optimism in the knowledge that if certain surgical principles are respected the patient's own resistance and natural defense will band together to abort a potential pyogenic process or if present eradicate the process. During World War I the French were of the opinion that an established pyoarthrosis invariably resulted in loss of limb or threatened life. This belief was responsible for the radical measures instituted in severely damaged joints. primary resection was advocated as a prophylactic measure and if sepsis in a knee joint could not be controlled promptly by adequate drainage and immobilization secondary resection was performed. These methods were carried over into World War II. the Germans and the Russians also advocated early resection in order to prevent sepsis of the knee joint. In 1941 Ogilvie recorded that if sepsis of the joint was not controlled within 4 days, deletion of the limb was usually required to save the patient a life.

It is paradoxical that wars in which limbs and lives are sacrificed needlessly by the thousands must provide the material which permits surgeons to formulate means and methods to save limbs and lives. Even at this enormous price many lessons learned under the most trying circumstances are soon forgotten and must be relearned in the next struggle.

During a 22 month tour of duty in the

Pacific area, the author treated hundreds of fresh casualties, many of which received severe injuries of the knee joints. Some of these were brought aboard within a few hours after the injury was sustained, these soldiers had received no treatment other than the first aid measures given by a corpsman. This usually comprised sprinkling the wound with sulfonamide powder, application of a compression bandage and administration of morphine. Other casualties were first seen several days after they had received their wounds. As a rule, these had no definitive treatment because of the conditions under which the medical personnel on the beaches and in small crafts were working. Most of the casualties were kept aboard several weeks after the definitive surgery was performed so that it was possible to evaluate the methods of treatment employed. Of course, this evaluation applied only to the problem of sepsis. At this time (1943 to 1945) the observations and the recommendations in the management of penetrating wounds and sepsis of the knee joint recorded by Hampton were not known; however, the observations of the author parallel those noted by Hampton, and their adoption is recommended.

#### TREATMENT OF PENETRATING WOUNDS

##### NATURAL RESISTANCE OF THE JOINTS

Now it is generally accepted that articular cartilage and the synovial membrane are endowed with appreciable powers of resistance against pyogenic organisms. In fact this immunity to infection surpasses that possessed by tendons, bones and extra-articular tissues. The articular cartilage is capable of resisting the deleterious effects of proteolytic enzymes and pyogenic organisms for long periods of time before it is severely damaged. This is especially true of the calcified stratum of the hyaline cartilage.

Many observers have noted the bacteriostatic or bactericidal peculiarity of the syn-

ovial fluid. Pool, during World War I, was of the opinion that the poor results obtained in wounds of the knee joints were due in part to the failure of surgeons to understand the powers of resistance to infection possessed by the synovial fluid. This observer recorded that closure of the synovial membrane after complete toilet of the joint cavity had been accomplished was indicated in wounds sustained for as long as 24 hours. After all injuries to the knee joint, copious amounts of synovial fluid are poured into the joint cavity. This is a natural reaction of the synovial membrane in response to noxious irritants. Hence, the synovial fluid that essentially comprises plasma becomes a natural vehicle for the conveyance of antibodies, macrophages and medicinal agents such as sulfa drugs and antibiotic agents.

##### GENERAL MEASURES

Penetrating wounds of the knee joint are often associated with profound shock and hemorrhage. It becomes apparent that before definitive local treatment is administered, the patient's general condition must be improved. This is accomplished by administration of morphine to relieve pain, application of external heat, and transfusions of blood or plasma, hemorrhage is controlled by compression bandages. During this interval the affected limb is splinted, a sterile dressing is placed over the wound, and ice packs are placed around the knee and the lower limb. In addition, the patient is given an adequate dose of tetanus antitoxin and polyvalent gas gangrene antitoxin. When the patient's general condition is improved, roentgenographic studies are made of the affected region, roentgenograms should be taken from different angles in order to localize any metallic bodies that might be present.

**Preparation of Skin and Wound.** A tourniquet is used to obtain a dry field. The wound is exposed by cutting away all articles of clothing and dressings. Thorough

cleansing of a wide area of skin up to the wound edges is the first step in the toilet of the wound. The wound is covered with sterile gauze and the skin is cleansed meticulously with tincture of green soap, then the soap is washed off with normal saline solution. The wound itself is now cleansed with tincture of green soap, using cotton balls so as not to traumatize the raw edges of the wound, this scrubbing procedure is carried out under a constant stream of saline solution that flushes out the wound continuously. Several gallons of solution may be used in the cleansing process, depending upon the severity of the lesion. Strong antiseptic solutions are not necessary and may be harmful by causing further irritation of the tissues that already have sustained severe damage.

**Excision of Soft Tissue.** It is erroneous to excise the skin edges widely. Usually excision of a strip of skin measuring  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch is sufficient. After the skin edges are reflected all devitalized subcutaneous tissue, fascia and muscle must be removed. It may be necessary to enlarge the skin wound in order to obtain adequate exposure of the underlying tissues. In carrying out this step of the débridement the tissues at all times must be handled with gentleness. Strong traction to expose deep tissues must be condemned. The surgeon should work dexterously and thoroughly from the superficial to the deep layers. With sharp scissors all shreds of fascia and portions of devitalized and lacerated muscle are cut away. Segments of muscles which no longer contract when stimulated mechanically or fail to bleed when incised should be removed. The defect in the synovial membrane is inspected and all tags and shreds are excised. At this point the entire wound is flushed again with normal saline and the edges of the soft tissue wounds are protected with warm gauze packs and the interior of the wound is inspected.

**Intra-articular Débridement.** Occasionally little wounds of entry are too small to

permit adequate toilet of the intra-articular structures. In these cases, after the wound is débrided as described above a separate standard incision usually one of the para-patellar incisions is employed to expose the joint. All loose foreign material, unattached fragments of bone and cartilage and all fragmented articular cartilage are removed. If the menisci are lacerated or show other evidence of injury they are excised. Foreign material buried in the cancellous bone of the femoral condyles or the tibial tuberosities is removed, and the margins of the defect are made smooth. Severe comminution of the patella is not an infrequent concomitant lesion. In these cases all the patellar fragments should be excised. However, if only one of the poles is shattered the bone fragments are removed and the main fragment is left behind, however, its raw surface is trimmed evenly. Débridement of the joint is completed by irrigating the joint cavity with copious solutions of normal saline.

Damage to the articular surface may be so extensive that any restoration of function in the knee joint is impossible. In such cases the remaining articular cartilage is removed. It may be necessary to resect the ends of the bones in order to attain good approximation of the bone ends. The wound is now treated as a compound fracture.

**Closure of the Synovial Membrane.** Many controversial views have been recorded relative to the wisdom of closure of the synovial membrane following débridement of penetrating wounds of the knee joint. However, clinical experience reveals that the relatively high immunity of the intra-articular structures to infection is justification for primary closure of the synovial membrane. In addition the experience of many workers indicates that exposed joints, even when chemotherapy and antibiotic agents are employed, invariably are invaded by secondary pyogenic organisms and that the unprotected hyaline cartilage degenerates rapidly. It becomes apparent that every

effort must be made to suture the synovial membrane. In the event that closure is impossible because of the loss of soft tissue, flaps of fascia or skin may be rotated to effect the closure. Also, continuous drainage is not justified in knee joints with evidence of frank infection, except in those cases that exhibit such extensive destruction that any useful restoration of function is impossible to achieve.

**Time Interval.** Some surgeons are of the opinion that wounds adequately treated by débridement and lavage within 6 to 8 hours after injury may be closed by primary suture. After 6 or 8 hours but under 24 the capsule may be closed, but the extra articular tissues should be left open until all dangers of infection have passed. After 24 hours débridement of the wound should not be performed; rather contaminated tissues should be incised freely, and the wound left wide open. Drainage is secured by packing the joint with gauze. This is not in agreement with the experience of other surgeons, including the author who is in agreement with the observations and the recommendations made by Hampton. This observer noted that the time interval between sustaining the injury and the initial operation should not determine the type or the radicalism of the surgical procedure. His experience reveals that the preferred plan of treatment in all cases comprises adequate exposure of the joint, excision of all devitalized soft tissue, removal of cartilaginous and bony debris, copious lavage of the joint cavity, closure of the synovial membrane and capsule and immobilization of the limb in a plaster hip spica or Tobruk splint. This plan of management is also recommended for cases of potential or established suppurative arthritis.

**Closure of Extra-articular Cellular Tissues.** These tissues are more likely to become infected than the knee joint; however, if a period of not more than 6 or 8 hours has elapsed since the time of wound ing, the author does not hesitate after thor-

ough débridement to do a primary closure of all layers. If the soft tissue damage is severe, a small drain may be inserted beneath the subcutaneous layer, the drain is removed at the end of 12 to 24 hours. If more than 6 or 8 hours have elapsed from the time the wound is sustained, these tissues should not be closed at the time of the initial operation. After débridement and closure of the synovial membrane and capsule, the soft tissue wounds are left open, a light gauze packing impregnated with petrolatum is inserted between the wound edges. After 5 to 7 days, secondary closure of the wound is performed, using as little absorbable suture material in the depths of the wound as possible. Through and through sutures of steel wire are preferred.

**Chemotherapy.** Chemotherapy and anti-biotic agents are responsible in a large measure for the excellent results attained in penetrating wounds of joints, particularly the knee joint. However, their use is no substitute for thorough and meticulous débridement, which is the most pertinent feature in the management of these lesions. After closure of the synovial membrane and perhaps the capsule, penicillin (50,000 to 100,000 units) is instilled directly into the joint cavity. Also, penicillin therapy is administered systemically, 100,000 units every 6 hours. Sulfadiazine may be given also. Sulfadiazine is tolerated best. Aspiration of the joint and instillation of penicillin may be performed daily or every second day, depending upon the severity of the wound and the type of case, when performing this procedure the arthrotomy site should not be exposed or disturbed. In contaminated wounds frequent aspiration and instillation of penicillin may not be necessary, however in infected cases local instillation of the antibiotic at frequent intervals is mandatory until the local systemic reactions of the patient indicate that the infection is under control.

**Immobilization and Mobilization of the Limb.** It is now generally accepted that

complete immobilization and elevation of the affected limb are essential in promoting tissue healing and enhancing the power of the local tissues to combat and overcome infection. During World War I Willems advocated forced active motion and drainage of the knee joint. This treatment has fallen into disrepute. It violates all basic principles of sound surgery—clinical experience has confirmed this. It enhances toxic absorption from the infected area and promotes spreading of the infection in the extra articular cellular tissues and along the fascial planes of the extremity. After débridement is complete, the synovial membrane closed, and the joint cavity filled with penicillin solution, a plaster spica should be applied, extending from the costal cage to the toes of the affected limb. A window is cut over the knee joint to permit aspiration of the joint and inspection of this region. The limb should be elevated, and meddlesome handling such as repeated dressings should be avoided. In cases with no evidence of infection, active contraction of the quadriceps muscle is instituted as soon as the local tissue reactions have subsided after 2 to 3 weeks, depending on the extent of the soft tissue damage. The cast is removed and the limb is placed in balanced suspension using a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment. All movements in the joint are started from the position of full extension; this prevents the development of flexion contractures. In infected cases, quadriceps drill is commenced when control of the infection is achieved. As a rule, the patient is ready to be taken out of plaster and transferred to the balanced suspension apparatus at the end of 2 to 4 weeks. In cases with little or no bony or cartilaginous involvement, ambulation on crutches is permitted at the end of 4 to 8 weeks. Unprotected weight bearing is usually possible after 10 to 12 weeks. Cases with extensive bony involvement present more difficult problems. The time to allow weight bearing in these cases is governed by the severity of

the articular damage and the presence or the absence of intra articular fractures implicating the condyles of the femur and the tibia. Nevertheless, active nonweight bearing exercises should be performed diligently to restore maximum quadriceps power and flexion and extension movements of the joint. During the period of rehabilitation there is a persistent tendency of the knee to develop flexion contractures. This can be overcome best by active extension exercises and the use of night splints made of plaster. Braces or cages should not be used except as a last resort. Night splints are worn until all symptoms subside and the extensor mechanism has developed sufficient power to preclude flexion contractures. It is important to emphasize that at all times exercises must be performed within the patient's tolerance. Overenthusiasm on the part of the surgeon or the patient may result in soft tissue reactions, synovitis or hemarthrosis. On the other hand, the program should be so arranged that there is a steady progression in the intensity of the exercises.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF PENETRATING WOUNDS OF THE KNEE JOINT

Penetrating wounds of the knee joint can be grouped into three categories.

Group 1 comprises penetrating wounds with minimal soft tissue damage with no implication of the cartilaginous or the bony elements of the articulation. Such a lesion may be produced by a high velocity bullet falling on a piece of glass or a nail. Foreign material is not deposited in the joint or the extra articular tissues. The management of this type of lesion is relatively simple; it comprises trimming of the wound edges, lavage and closure of the wound. The joint is aspirated and from 50,000 to 100,000 units of penicillin are instilled into the joint. A plaster spica is applied from the costal cage to the toes of the affected limb, also systemic antibiotic therapy and one of the sulfa drugs are administered. The aspirated material should be examined for pyogenic

organisms. Repeated aspiration (every 24 or 48 hours) may be necessary to keep distention of the joint at a minimum, at each aspiration penicillin is instilled locally. After the acute reactions, both local and systemic, have subsided, quadriceps drill is instituted. At the end of 2 or 3 weeks the cast is removed, and the limb is placed in balanced suspension (Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment), now active flexion and extension exercises are started, the exercises must be executed on a regulated program. When the limb is at rest in the suspension apparatus, it lies in the extended position, all flexion exercises begin from this position.

Group 2. In this group the extent of the soft tissue damage is more extensive than in Group 1 but only minimal or moderate damage of the bony and cartilaginous components of the joint is present. The damage may involve the condyles of the femur or the tibia or comprise a fracture of the patella. Foreign material such as bullets, pieces of shrapnel or a splinter of wood, may be lodged in the bone. This group demands excision of the wound edges and thorough intra articular exploration and débridement. After the wound edges are excised and all devitalized soft tissue is trimmed away, all instruments are changed and the surgeon and the assistants put on fresh sterile gowns and gloves. Foreign material previously localized by roentgenographic study must be found and removed (Fig 312). Devitalized intra-articular soft tissues, cartilage and bony fragments must be removed. Although it is desirable to remove all metallic bodies buried in the condyles of the femur and the tibia some may lie deep in the substance of the bone at a distance from the articular surface or joint cavity (Fig 313). Exposure and removal of these bodies would increase the extent of the surgical trauma and necessitate exposure of large areas of cancellous bone in which the powers of resistance to infection is relatively low. In such instances, it is better surgical



FIG 312 Pieces of shrapnel in the knee joint. Intra-articular damage to the bone and the articular cartilage is minimal. Regardless of the time interval the foreign bodies should be removed, the joint cavity flushed, and the synovial membrane sutured (Dr Wiggins)

judgment not to disturb the metallic fragments. Finally, the wound is flushed thoroughly with normal saline solution and the synovial membrane and the capsule are closed, and penicillin is injected into the joint cavity. In the event that loss of soft tissue is extensive and closure of the synovial membrane or the capsule is not possible, closure of the joint cavity should be effected by rotating a piece of fascia or skin to close the defect. If the interval between wounding and operation does not exceed 6 or 8 hours the skin is closed loosely, if the

interval is longer, the superficial layers of the wound are packed lightly with petrolatum gauze. Secondary closure is done from 5 to 7 days later. The postoperative management is described in the preceding section.

In this group the immediate results in terms of joint function are governed by the extent of the damage to the cartilaginous and bony elements of the joint and the degree to which the mechanics of the joint have been altered. In general lesions of the tibial plateaus result in less dysfunction than lesions of the femoral condyles. Varying degrees of degenerative arthritis develop in all cases. The amount of long term disability depends upon the location and the severity of the articular damage, the extent of the alterations in the normal mechanics of the joint and the functional demands made on the joint by the patient.

**Group 3** In this group all components

of the joint are severely disrupted including bone, cartilage, muscles and skin. The severity of the wounds renders these limbs readily vulnerable to infection. If there is a remote possibility of restoring some useful function, the lesions are treated along the lines described in Group 2. If the damage is irreparable, the remaining articular cartilage may be removed, or the ends of the bone may be resected, inducing a primary arthrodesis of the joint. If an attempt is made to salvage some motion, the synovial membrane or the capsule is closed. If in these cases loss of soft tissue precludes closure, a flap of soft tissue is shifted into the defect to effect closure of the joint cavity. The perarticular tissues are sutured at the end of 5 or 7 days. When the destruction of tissue is so severe that any return of useful function is impossible and the soft tissues cannot be approximated, the wounds are packed with petrolatum gauze. The



FIG. 313 Obviously, it is impossible to remove all the metallic particles in this case. The joint should be explored and débrided, and all accessible particles should be removed. The synovial membrane should be closed. (Dr. Wiggins)

packing extends to, but not into, the joint. As noted previously, these lesions are especially vulnerable to infection hence, débridement must be thorough, and all foreign materials must be removed. Failure to achieve this results in infection and the formation of sinuses. Chemotherapy and immobilization of these lesions are the same as indicated in Group 2. In the event that bony ankylosis of the joint is desired, plaster fixation is continued until it is achieved.

Occasionally, the lesions are associated with irreparable damage to the large vessels of the leg. If gangrene of the limb is inevitable amputation must be performed.

#### INFECTED KNEE JOINT

As recorded previously, the author is in agreement with the work of Hampton relative to the management of the infected knee joint. The success of this method of management is based on thorough removal of all devitalized soft tissues, cartilage and bone and foreign material inside or in close proximity to the joint cavity, in addition, local instillation and systemic administration of penicillin plays a major role in overcoming the existing infections. The technic of the treatment is similar in every feature to that described for cases in Group 2, this method is employed regardless of the time interval between wounding and operation. Closure of the synovial cavity is essential if the

degree of joint destruction is not too severe and if some joint motion is anticipated. If the severity of the damage to the joint components precludes any useful function, the joint cavity is not closed. In these cases continued drainage and sepsis may be prevented by resection of the bone ends and excision of a comminuted patella. Although this is radical surgical treatment, the method enhances early healing and ankylosis of the joint with the limb in the position of function. The amount of bone resected is governed by the extent of the bone destroyed as much as 2 to 2½ inches of shortening may be accepted. In chronic sepsis of the knee joint resection is more desirable than amputation, if shortening of the limb is not extreme.

The principles of the treatment of wounds of the knee joint described herein have been crystallized from experiences in the management of war wounds. They are also applicable to wounds sustained in civilian practice. In the latter cases the immediate and long term results should be better than those in the former. In civilian practice, as a rule the wounds are less severe. Intra-articular damage rarely assumes the proportions observed in war wounds. Contaminated foreign bodies are rarely deposited in the joint cavity or in the osseous elements of the joint and initial treatment is administered early and under more favorable conditions.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Ahern G. S., and Lipscomb P. R. Fracture of the tibial plateau. report of case. Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin. 23: 288 1948.
- Babcock W. W. Principles and Practice of Surgery. Philadelphia: Lea, 1944.
- Badgley C. E., et al. Study of the end results in 113 cases of septic hips. J. Bone & Joint Surg. 18: 104, 1936.
- Barr J. S. The treatment of fracture of the external tibial condyle (bumper fracture). J.A.M.A. 115: 1683 1940.
- Bick, E. M. Fractures of the tibial condyles. J. Bone & Joint Surg. 39: 102 1941.
- Böbler Lorenz. Treatment of Fractures. 4th Eng. Ed., p. 129. Trans. by E. W. Hey Groves, Baltimore Wood, 1935.
- The Treatment of Fractures. p. 396. Bristol, Wright, 1936.
- Brackett E. G. and Osgood R. B. The popliteal incision for the removal of "joint mice" in the posterior capsule of the knee joint. a report of cases. Boston M. & S. J. 165: 975 1911.
- Bradford, C. H. Kilfoyle, R. M. Kelleher J. J., and Magill H. K. Fractures of the lateral tibial condyle. J. Bone & Joint Surg. 32 A: 39 1950.



- Brittain H A. Architectural Principles in Arthrodesis pp. 46-52 Edinburgh Livingstone 1942
- Buckner H T. Bumper fractures of the tibia *Northwest Med* 37 102 1938
- Burns B H., Young R. H., and Muller G M. Wounds of the knee-joint *Lancet* 1 551 1945
- Burton S J D. Gunshot wounds of the knee joint (Hunterian lecture) *Lancet* 1 681 1944
- Caldwell E. H. Fractures of the condyles of the tibia *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 63 518 1936
- Campbell W C., and Smith Hugh. Injuries and surgical diseases of joints in *Lewis Practice of Surgery* Vol. II Chap. 5 Hagerstown Md. Prior 1944
- Carnes P W., Fitts W T., Jr and Kirby C. K. Gunshot wounds of the major joints *J Bone & Joint Surg* 28 607 1946
- Cave E F. Fractures of the tibial condyles involving the knee joint *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 86 289 1948
- Clarke H O. Discussion on fracture of the tibia involving the knee-joint *Proc Roy Soc. Med.* 28 1035 1935
- Cotton F J. Disinfection of septic joints, *Boston M & S J* 174 79 1916
- . Infections of bones and joints *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 31 254 1920
- . Disinfection of septic joints *J Bone & Joint Surg* 8 395 1926
- . Fender fractures, *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 62 442 1936
- Cotton F J., and Berg Richard. Fender fracture of the tibia at the knee *New England J Med* 201 950 1929
- Cubbins W R Conley A H., Callahan J J. and Scuderi C S. Fractures of the lateral condyle of the tibia classification pathology and treatment *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 59 461 1934
- Cubbins W R Conley A H. and Seiffert G S. Fractures of the lateral tuberosity of the tibia with displacement of the lateral meniscus between the fragments *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 48 106 1929
- David, S D. Experimental incision on the cadaver for drainage of the ankle joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 5 450 1923
- Delore N. et Kocher. Traitement des plaies pénétrantes du genou. *Presse méd.* 23 473 1915
- Discussion on acute suppurative arthritis of the knee joint *Proc Roy Soc Med* 26 1279 1935-34
- Dohelle Martin. A new method of closed reduction of fracture of the lateral condyle of the tibia *Am. J Surg* 53 460 1941
- Everedge J. A new method of treatment for suppurative arthritis of the knee-joint *Brit. J Surg.* 6 566 1919
- Forkner C E. Shands A R. and Poston, M A. Synovial fluid in chronic arthritis, bacteriology and cytology *Arch. Int Med.* 42 6 5 1928
- Frankau, C. H. S. Gunshot wounds of the joints in *History of the Great War Medical Services* Vol II Chap. 9 London, His Majesty's Stationery Office 1922
- Freiberg J A., and Perlman Robert. Pyrexia abscesses associated with acute purulent infection of the hip joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 18 417 1936
- Ghormley R K. Acute suppurative arthritis in *A Textbook of Surgery* Ed. by Frederick Christopher p 453 Philadelphia Saunders 1945
- Girdleston, G R. Acute pyogenic arthritis of the hip operation giving free access and effective drainage *Lancet* 1 419 1943
- Hamilton J F. Diagnosis and management of gonococcal arthritis with emphasis on the use of ammonium O-toloxymbenzoate *South. M J* 29 91 1936
- Hampton O P., Jr. The management of penetrating wounds and suppurating arthritis of the knee joint in the *Mediterranean Theater of Operations* *J Bone & Joint Surg* 28 659 1946
- . Observations on the management of suppurative arthritis of the knee joint *Am J Surg* 74 631 1947
- Harmon P H. Surgical treatment of the residual deformity from suppurative arthritis of the hip occurring in young children *J Bone & Joint Surg* 24 5 6 1942
- Harmon P H. and Adams L O. Pyogenic coxitis end-results and considerations of diagnosis and treatment *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 78 3 1 1944
- Harris R I. Acute suppurative arthritis in children *J Bone & Joint Surg* 7 449 1925
- Henderson, M S. Posterolateral incision for the removal of loose bodies from the posterior compartment of the knee-joint *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 33 698 1921
- Jolly D W. Field Surgery in Total War London Hamilton 1940
- Jones H T. The treatment of acute purulent arthritis by joint washing and closure *J Bone & Joint Surg* 17 559 1935
- Key J A. Penicillin and ulsoamides in the treatment of osteomyelitis and pyogenic arthritis *Bull New York Acad Med* 21 4 1945
- . Joint infection and arthritis except tuberculosis in  *Bancroft and Murray Surgical Treatment* Philadelphia Lippincott 1945

- Kulowski Jacob Infections (pyogenic) arthritis in Nelson Loose Leaf Surgery Vol III Chap I, Section on Orthopedic Surgery Ed. by R. K. Ghormley New York, Nelson, 1941
- Leadbetter G W., and Hand, F M Fractures of the tibial plateau, J Bone & Joint Surg 22 359 1940
- LeGarde, L. A. Gunshot injuries in Gunshot Wounds of Joints Chap II New York, Wood, 1916
- Maisel Bernard, and Cornell, N W Conservative treatment of fractures of the tibial condyles, Surgery 23 591 1948
- Margolls H M., and Dorsey A H. E. Chronic arthritis bacteriology of affected tissues Arch. Int. Med. 46 121 1930
- Metz, A. R., Householder Raymond, and DePree J F Impaction of fractures by the large pressure tongs Am. J Surg 59 447 1943
- Naegeli, T Ueber Extremitätenkriegsverletzungen Schweiz. med. Wchschr 70 726 1940
- National Research Council, Committee on Surgery Military Surgical Manuals, No 4 Orthopedic Subjects, Philadelphia Saunders 1942
- Ober F R. Posterior arthrotomy of the hip joint. Report of five cases, J.A.M.A 83 1500 1924
- Ogilvie, W H. Wounds of the knee-joint, Lancet 1 471 1941
- Orr T G Operations of General Surgery Philadelphia Saunders 1944
- Palmer Ivar Compression fractures of the lateral tibial condyle and their treatment, J Bone & Joint Surg 21 674 1939
- Phemister D B The pathology and treatment of pyogenic arthritis, Pennsylvania M. J 32 52 1928-29
- Pool, E. H Wounds of joints, in The Medical Department of the U. S. Army in the World War Vol. VI Chap 13 Washington, Government Printing Office 1927
- Principles of War Surgery. Based on the conclusions adopted at the various inter allied surgical conferences Washington Government Printing Office 1918
- Putti V La capsulotomia poplitea nella cura della retrazione flesoria del ginocchio Chir org movimento 5 1 1921
- Reich, R. S Purulent arthritis J Bone & Joint Surg 10 554 1928
- Schöne G Vorbeugende operative Wundbehandlung an der Front Med. Klin. 36 103 1940
- Scudder C L. The Treatment of Fractures Ed. 11 p 9/3 Philadelphia Saunders 1939
- Sever J W Fracture of tuberosities of the tibia, a report of three cases Am. J Orthop Surg 14 299 1916
- Fractures of the tibial spine combined with fractures of the tuberosities of the tibia, Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 35 558 1922
- Smillie, I S. Simple system of splinting for lower limb Lancet 2 304 1941
- Fractures of tibia and femur involving the knee joint, in Injuries of the Knee Joint, Chap 9 Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins 1946
- Speed, J S Campbell's Operative Orthopedics Vol. I Ed. 2 St. Louis Mosby 1949
- Steele P B Suppurative arthritis of the knee joint, Am J Surg 6 805 1929
- Trueta J The Principles and Practice of War Surgery with Reference to the Biological Method of the Treatment of War Wounds and Fractures Chap 23 St. Louis Mosby 1943
- Watson Jones Sir Reginald Fractures and Joint Injuries, Vol. I Ed. 4 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1952
- Willems C. Immediate active mobilization in the treatment of gunshot wounds of the joints M. Rec. 95 953 999 1919
- Treatment of purulent arthritis by wide arthrotomy followed by immediate active mobilization Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 28 546 1919

# 10

## Loose Bodies

The etiology and the pathogenesis of loose bodies of intrinsic origin encountered in the joints have been subjects of much speculation and controversy. Ambrose Paré is credited with the removal of the first loose body from a joint. In 1558 he successfully removed a "stone" from the knee joint. Since this incident keen interest in loose bodies has been manifested by numerous investigators, both on the continent and in this country. Particular attention has been focused on the entities now identified as osteochondritis dissecans and synovial osteochondromatosis. For practical purposes loose bodies in joints arise from (1) the articular surfaces of the ends of the bones (in the case of the knee joint they arise from the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles, the tibia and the patella) (2) from pathologic tissues incident to degenerative arthritis (in this group trauma may be a factor in detaching the body from its site of origin) and (3) from the synovial membrane. However, for the sake of completeness the classification of Mercer is recorded herein; this is a modification of the classification of Fisher.

### CLASSIFICATION OF LOOSE BODIES (MERCER)

- A Fibrinous loose bodies (structureless bodies composed of fibrinous material or of necrotic synovial membrane)
  - Traumatic
    - After hemorrhage
  - Pathologic in association with
    - 1 Tuberculosis
    - 2 Chronic synovitis

- B Fibrous loose bodies (composed of fibrous tissue)
  - Traumatic
    - Organization of hemorrhage into villus
  - Pathologic, in association with
    - 1 Tuberculosis (nodular tuberculosis)
    - 2 Syphilis (gummata)
    - 3 Osteoarthritis
- C Cartilaginous loose bodies (composed entirely of cartilage cells)
  - Traumatic (separation of whole or part of an intra articular fibrocartilage e.g. meniscus)
- D Osteocartilaginous loose bodies
  - Traumatic
    - Displacement of nonarticulating epiphysis
  - Pathologic
    - 1 Detachment of portion of articular surface (osteochondritis dissecans)
    - 2 Detachment of osteophytes (in tabes dorsalis and osteoarthritis)
    - 3 Separation of sequestra (in tuberculosis and acute arthritis)
    - 4 Synovial chondromata
- E Miscellaneous loose bodies
  - 1 Introduced foreign bodies
  - 2 Lipoma
  - 3 Angioma
  - 4 Secondary carcinoma etc.

Of the numerous types of loose bodies enumerated in the aforementioned classification only those which are encountered most frequently are discussed in this section. The etiology and the pathogenesis of some of the other types are apparent and do not require consideration in detail.

## OSTEOCHONDRITIS DISSECANS

This designation is applied to loose bodies in joints arising from the articular surfaces of the ends of the bones. The detachment of the bodies from the host bone occurs slowly over a period of months or even years. This entity differs from that in which loose bodies are the result of violent injury, displacing immediately a fragment of articular cartilage or articular cartilage and subchondral bone into the joint cavity. An example of this latter lesion would be subosteochondral fracture of the patella.

The term was conceived by Koenig in 1887. This is the most frequent entity associated with loose bodies. The knee is involved most often, in the author's series the condition was found in 92 per cent of the cases of loose bodies from all causes. In most instances one loose body is observed; rarely more than 2 or 3 are encountered. In the knee the common site of origin is in the lateral aspect of the medial condyle of the femur, occasionally from the articular surface of the patella and in cases of recurrent dislocations of the patella, the body may arise from the lateral aspect of the lateral condyle of the femur. Next in order of frequency the lesion is observed in the elbow joint, usually implicating the capitellum also. It may occur in the hip, the shoulder and the ankle. Generally, one joint is involved; occasionally the lesion is observed in both knees (Fig. 314).

### ETIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Although some workers believe that trauma in some form is the most plausible causative factor responsible for osteochondritis dissecans, sufficient clinical data is available to discredit this premise. Some of the prevailing theories advanced by different investigators are recorded herein. Essentially the numerous theories propounded attempt to provide an explanation for the separation of a fragment comprising articular cartilage or articular cartilage and sub

chondral bone, from the articular ends of the bones. At all times the traumatic theory has had many supporters.

The traumatic concept received its greatest impetus when Monro (1726) first observed that a loose body found in the knee joint had a corresponding defect in the medial condyle of the femur. A history of severe injury to the affected knee, in some of the cases, lends support to this theory. However, in the absence of a history of sudden violence or even appreciable minor trauma, some other explanation must be provided in defense of the traumatic theory of origin. In 1854 Broca recorded the belief that repeated minor traumata were responsible for impairment of circulation of the affected area; this was followed by necrosis, gradual loosening and eventually sequestration of the area. The frequent absence of a history of trauma in many cases of loose bodies stimulated Koenig to seek another explanation. In 1888 he recorded his views; he was of the opinion that some unknown agent initiated a process of necrosis which in turn caused occlusion of the vascular bed of the affected area with subsequent separation of the area. This pathologic process was a "dissecting osteochondritis" which resulted in separation of the fragment. Before separation occurred fibrous tissue invaded the interval between the fragment and the end of the bone so that both raw surfaces were covered by a layer of fibrous connective tissue. Koenig believed that in some instances the loose bodies were detached by severe trauma; however, in the greater majority of the cases they were detached by the aforementioned pathologic process.

Some observers are of the opinion that trauma in the form of impaction of the adjacent articulating surfaces such as is produced in movements combining flexion and rotation may result in shearing a fragment of bone from one of the articular surfaces. The fragment may be displaced immediately into the joint cavity or it may

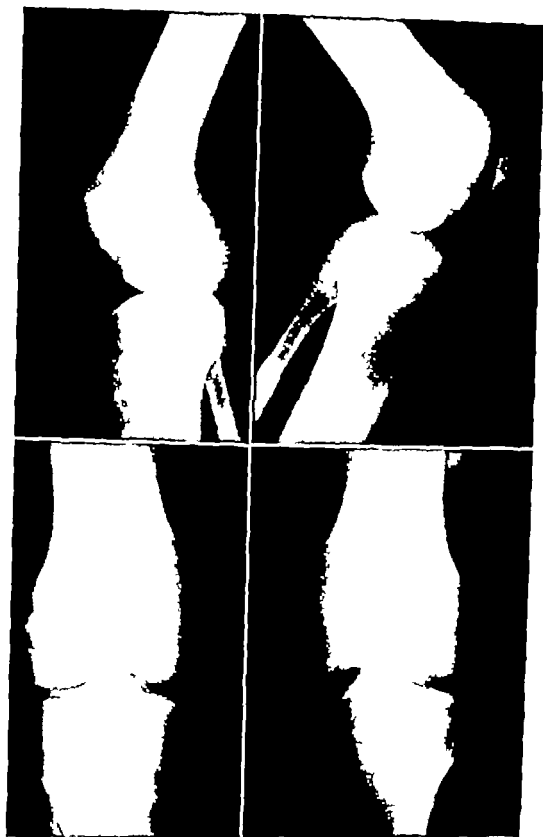


FIG. 314 *Osteochondritis dissecans* of both medial femoral condyles of the same individual aged 18. The defects in both condyles were sharply circumscribed at operation. On the left side 3 bodies were found. 1 was free in the joint and the remaining 2 were attached loosely to their bed in the femoral condyle. On the right 1 body was found. It was attached loosely in its niche. The medial meniscus revealed a longitudinal tear.

remain partly attached in its bed subsequent minor traumas complete the separation. Kappis was an ardent supporter of this theory. He was of the opinion that loose bodies observed in the articular surface of the patella are the result of tangential forces. Furthermore, he pointed out that in cases lacking violent injury a predisposition caused by disease or congenital disturbance of the affected cartilage must exist. This provides an explanation for instances of bilateral joint involvement.

Barth on the other hand believed that the pull of intra articular ligaments detached fragments of bone at their sites of insertion. He recorded that more loose bodies were produced by the pull of ligaments than by impingement of adjacent articular surfaces. This mechanism fails to explain the cause of separation of areas in which no ligaments are attached.

Another interesting mechanism of impingement of adjacent surfaces was recorded by Freiberg. This observer noted that in many cases the tubercles of the tibial spine are unusually prominent, particularly the medial tubercle. He believed that flexion of the knee and external rotation of the tibia caused impingement of the tubercle on the medial condyle in the region of the insertion of the posterior cruciate ligament. He speculated that this impingement may damage terminal blood vessels in this situation and result in impairment of circulation to the area in the end of the bone supplied by the terminal vessels. Roesner believed the lesion was the result of direct impingement of the intercondyloid eminence of the tibia against the lateral aspect of the medial femoral condyle. Smillie also supports the traumatic theory, believing that abnormally prominent tibial spines impinge against the medial condyle of the femur. The lesion may be the result of a single or repeated impingement. He points out that this mechanism is enhanced by laxity of the supporting structures of the knee joint particularly when the ante-

rior cruciate and the tibial collateral ligaments are stretched or torn. When the loose body arises from the center of the articular cartilage of the lateral or the medial femoral condyle, he maintains the view that the lesion is produced by repeated impingement of the affected area against either the anterior extremity of a longitudinal tear of the meniscus or against a pedunculated tab of the meniscus based anteriorly. To explain separation of large portions of the articular surface in areas which could not be affected by the aforementioned modes of trauma, this observer believes that in violent rotary injuries the femoral condyle is impacted against the articular surface of the tibia and the meniscus, twisting a segment of cartilage and subchondral bone out of the articular surface of the femur.

Axhausen (1914) also was of the opinion that trauma played a major role in the development of the lesion. According to this worker, impaction of the opposing articular surfaces resulted in damage to the blood vessels to the area. A partial intra articular fracture may or may not occur; this was governed entirely by the intensity of the violence. Impairment of the circulation leads to necrosis of the area; this is followed by a zone of absorption which causes gradual separation and essential displacement of the fragment into the joint. He maintained that in both partially or completely detached fragments the bony elements exhibited total necrosis while the cartilage components disclosed only partial necrosis. He assumed that trauma was the prime causative agent in the knee joint. He observed that during motion the patella rides continuously over the area where osteochondritis dissecans is more apt to develop. Later in his work, he believed that trauma laid the basis for occlusions of end arteries by bacterial emboli; this led to necrosis of the bone and subsequent displacement of the affected area into the joint. This theory has met much resistance and has not been widely accepted.

Barth supported the traumatic theory and noted that loose bodies regardless of their origin, when associated with arthritis assume features similar to those of arthritic loose bodies

Of interest was the conception of origin of loose bodies in the knee joint proposed by Ludloff. He was of the opinion that the *arteria genu media* was an end artery supplying the region of the medial condyle usually involved in osteochondritis dissecans also that this vessel was injured before it perforated the bone in the region of the insertion of the posterior cruciate ligament. Constant traction on the posterior cruciate ligament was believed to be the agent responsible for injury to the vessel. The circulation to the area normally supplied by the vessel is impaired resulting in necrosis of the bone and overlying cartilage and eventual extrusion of the fragment into the joint cavity.

It has been proved that the *arteria genu*

*media* is not an end artery also injury to a vessel by soft tissue traction is most unlikely to occur. This premise fails to explain the development of the disorder in other sites.

Some observers advanced the theory that some underlying constitutional disorder affecting bone and cartilage may be responsible for the formation of loose bodies in joints. Fromme expressed this view. He assumed that the loose bodies were the product of partial fractures or continued stress on the affected areas. These abnormal forces were responsible for the development of zones of transformation followed by separation of the fragment. Subsequent traumata complete the separation allowing the loose bodies to drop into the joint cavity. Bilateral involvement of the knees is given in support of this concept.

Critical assessment of the varied theories advanced by numerous investigators fails to provide an explanation for the origin of



FIG. 315 (Left) Osteochondritis dissecans of the lateral femoral condyle. (Right) Two bodies were found in the joint and a large defect in the lateral condyle. The suprapatellar bursa was thickened markedly and covered with numerous villi. An incomplete synovectomy was performed.

loose bodies under discussion, which is supported by indisputable clinical and scientific observations. Although most investigators feel that trauma, in some form or manner, plays a significant role, no foolproof mechanism has yet been conceived. Phemister offered the most plausible explanation. He points out that articular cartilage is devoid of nerve supply, and that there is little sensation in the subchondral bone. In the light of this information, it is possible for trauma to produce an incomplete subchondral fracture without clinical manifestation of sufficient severity to focus the attention of the patient on the incident. Most of the cases occur in youth and early adult life when the individuals are exceedingly active and engage in rigorous endeavors, so that it is reasonable to assume that the aforementioned injuries may be sustained without knowledge of the patient or they were considered as insignificant and may be forgotten promptly. Failure of subchondral fractures to unite needs further investigation. It is possible that many do unite and never

come to the attention of the individual. This is purely speculative, on the other hand, some evidence has been offered that osteochondritis dissecans may occur and heal spontaneously.

If the original lesion is an incomplete subchondral fracture resulting from single or repeated traumata, several factors may be responsible for the resulting nonunion and eventual separation and extrusion of the affected area into the joint. Nonunion would be enhanced by the impaired circulation of the incompletely severed segment consisting of cartilage and subchondral bone. In addition, the shearing strains incident to normal joint function would preclude normal healing between the parent bone and the fragment also, subsequent repeated traumata would favor nonunion. Absorption of bone on the opposing surfaces is characteristic of all fractures, in the case in point, any remaining osseous tissue between the two surfaces would undergo dissolution. Both raw surfaces are finally covered by a layer of mature connective tis-



FIG 316 Osteochondritis dissecans of the patella in a boy 16 years old. Note that the loose body still lies in its niche in the articular surface of the patella which already shows some incongruity. (Left) Lateral view (Right) Tangential view of the patella.



sue which takes on characteristics consistent with fibrocartilage. Elimination of some or all of these factors may be responsible for healing of the lesion in some cases treated by complete and prolonged immobilization.

The theory of occlusions of end arteries by clumps of bacteria or fat is untenable because no reasons are advanced to explain why certain end arteries should be the site of predilection and not others.

Some clinical observations have been recorded which suggest the existence of some constitutional disturbance in the cases under discussion. Familial tendencies and instances of bilateral and multiple lesions have been noted. Nevertheless the accumulated clinical and other data are not sufficient to justify acceptance of this concept without further investigation.

#### PATHOLOGY

In the majority of cases the lesion is found in the lateral aspect of the medial

femoral condyle close to or involving the area of insertion of the posterior cruciate ligament. Occasionally, the bodies arise from the articular surface of the lateral condyle of the femur (Fig. 315), the patella (Fig. 316) and in very rare instances from the tibia. As a rule one area in the knee joint is implicated; this may give rise to one or several loose bodies; the number of bodies rarely exceeds three.

If the body is still attached its cartilaginous surface is soft, often fibrillated and exhibits a yellowish color. Usually a line of separation is discernible between the parent bone and the fragment. In such instances the loose body can be shelled out of its bed readily. The author has observed several cases in which no break in the continuity of the articular surface was present; the only gross evidence of the lesion was some softening and slight discoloration of the involved area. In one instance the lesion was demonstrable by roentgenograms but on exploration of the joint the articular cartilage

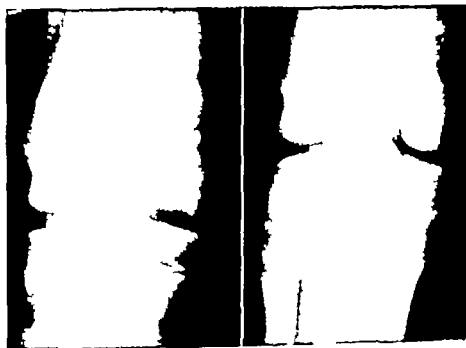


FIG. 317 (*Left*) Osteochondritis dissecans of the medial femoral condyle in a boy 13 years old. In spite of the extensive lesion of the articular surface, exploration of this joint failed to reveal evidence of a pathologic process implicating the area depicted in the roentgenogram. This patient was treated by immobilizing the limb in plaster for 5 months. (*Right*) Note healing shown in roentgenogram taken 9 months later.

appeared to be normal in every respect, there was no external evidence of an active pathologic process (Fig 317) Usually, the raw surface of the fragment is attached to its bed by a pedicle of fibrous tissue. When the body is enucleated, one notes that the opposing raw surfaces are covered with fibrous tissue and fibrocartilage. While the loose body still remains in its niche in the parent bone and still retains some attachment by a pedicle, regenerative processes are active, however some degenerative alterations are also noted.

The regenerative changes comprise (1) varying amounts of new bone formation along the line of separation where cancellous bone is present—the old osseous elements may be completely replaced by new bone—and (2) an abundance of fibrocartilage along the line of cleavage between the main bone and the loose fragment. During this period degenerative alterations in the bone and the articular cartilage may be minimal in intensity.

With complete severance of all attachments, the loose body exhibits marked degenerative abnormalities. The osseous tissue new and old undergoes necrosis also. The articular cartilage exhibits further progression of necrosis and calcification. The connective tissue and the fibrocartilage covering the raw surface draw sufficient nutrition from the synovial fluid to sustain the proliferative process, this results in a gradual increase in size of the loose body. Over a long period of time, the articular cartilage and the bone are replaced slowly by the fibrocartilage. Subsequent calcification of the fibrocartilage produces a bizarre type of new bone. The loose bodies eventually may come to rest in the suprapatellar pouch in the intercondylar notch in front of the anterior cruciate ligament or they may gravitate into the posterior compartment of the joint. Occasionally, they move about in the joint and produce symptoms of internal derangement.

Bodies produced by a single injury which are comparable with complete subchondral

fracture with displacement of the fragments into the joints behave differently than those formed by the process osteochondritis dissecans. In the former, a fresh, raw surface is always present at the line of separation. This facilitates attachment of the fragment to the synovial membrane in a recess of the joint, and here it develops a pedicle which supplies it with nutrition, or it may be enveloped by fibrous tissue or synovialis. In experiments on animals by Phemister and others in which pieces of bone and cartilage were first removed and then reintroduced into the joint of the animal, the loose bodies became reattached in all instances. After a few months they were absorbed and disappeared completely in uncomplicated cases.

The disorder is limited to the affected area of the articular cartilage, the rest of the joint reveals no gross or microscopic evidence of pathology. Frequently a tear of the medial meniscus is an associated finding; this may be responsible for repeated episodes of locking followed by effusion. In such instances a low-grade synovitis may be present and in old lesions varying degrees of osteoarthritic alterations may be observed. This is also true in cases in which free loose bodies produce repeated incidences of giving way and momentary or true locking of the joint.

#### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The disorder usually is observed in late adolescence or in early adult life, only rarely is it encountered past middle life. In the author's series over 90 per cent of the cases were males. Generally one knee is implicated, in a small percentage of cases the lesion is bilateral. The general health of the patient is usually excellent. In some instances a specific history of trauma to the affected knee, either direct or indirect in nature, can be elicited. However, in a large percentage of cases no such history can be obtained.

No specific clinical manifestations are pathognomonic of this lesion; the character

sue which takes on characteristics consistent with fibrocartilage. Elimination of some or all of these factors may be responsible for healing of the lesion in some cases treated by complete and prolonged immobilization.

The theory of occlusions of end arteries by clumps of bacteria or fat is untenable because no reasons are advanced to explain why certain end arteries should be the site of predilection and not others.

Some clinical observations have been recorded which suggest the existence of some constitutional disturbance in the cases under discussion. Familial tendencies and instances of bilateral and multiple lesions have been noted. Nevertheless, the accumulated clinical and other data are not sufficient to justify acceptance of this concept without further investigation.

#### PATHOLOGY

In the majority of cases the lesion is found in the lateral aspect of the medial

femoral condyle close to or involving the area of insertion of the posterior cruciate ligament. Occasionally, the bodies arise from the articular surface of the lateral condyle of the femur (Fig. 315) the patella, (Fig. 316) and in very rare instances from the tibia. As a rule one area in the knee joint is implicated; this may give rise to one or several loose bodies; the number of bodies rarely exceeds three.

If the body is still attached its cartilaginous surface is soft, often fibrillated and exhibits a yellowish color. Usually, a line of separation is discernible between the parent bone and the fragment. In such instances, the loose body can be shelled out of its bed readily. The author has observed several cases in which no break in the continuity of the articular surface was present, the only gross evidence of the lesion was some softening and slight discoloration of the involved area. In one instance the lesion was demonstrable by roentgenograms but on exploration of the joint the articular cartilage



FIG. 317 (*Left*) Osteochondritis dissecans of the medial femoral condyle in a boy 13 years old. In spite of the extensive lesion observed in the roentgenograms, exploration of this joint failed to reveal any evidence of a pathologic process implicating the area depicted in the roentgenograms. This patient was treated by immobilization of the limb in plaster for 5 months. (*Right*) Note healing shown in the roentgenogram taken 9 months later.

appeared to be normal in every respect there was no external evidence of an active pathologic process (Fig 317) Usually, the raw surface of the fragment is attached to its bed by a pedicle of fibrous tissue. When the body is enucleated, one notes that the opposing raw surfaces are covered with fibrous tissue and fibrocartilage. While the loose body still remains in its niche in the parent bone and still retains some attachment by a pedicle regenerative processes are active; however some degenerative alterations are also noted.

The regenerative changes comprise (1) varying amounts of new bone formation along the line of separation where cancellous bone is present—the old osseous elements may be completely replaced by new bone—and (2) an abundance of fibrocartilage along the line of cleavage between the main bone and the loose fragment. During this period degenerative alterations in the bone and the articular cartilage may be minimal in intensity.

With complete severance of all attachments, the loose body exhibits marked degenerative abnormalities. The osseous tissue new and old undergoes necrosis also. The articular cartilage exhibits further progression of necrosis and calcification. The connective tissue and the fibrocartilage covering the raw surface draw sufficient nutrition from the synovial fluid to sustain the proliferative process, this results in a gradual increase in size of the loose body. Over a long period of time the articular cartilage and the bone are replaced slowly by the fibrocartilage. Subsequent calcification of the fibrocartilage produces a bizarre type of new bone. The loose bodies eventually may come to rest in the suprapatellar pouch in the intercondylar notch in front of the anterior cruciate ligament or they may gravitate into the posterior compartment of the joint. Occasionally, they move about in the joint and produce symptoms of internal derangement.

Bodies produced by a single injury which are comparable with complete subchondral

fracture with displacement of the fragments into the joints behave differently than those formed by the process osteochondritis dissecans. In the former, a fresh, raw surface is always present at the line of separation. This facilitates attachment of the fragment to the synovial membrane in a recess of the joint, and here it develops a pedicle which supplies it with nutrition or it may be enveloped by fibrous tissue or synovialis. In experiments on animals by Phemister and others in which pieces of bone and cartilage were first removed and then reintroduced into the joint of the animal, the loose bodies became reattached in all instances. After a few months they were absorbed and disappeared completely in uncomplicated cases.

The disorder is limited to the affected area of the articular cartilage, the rest of the joint reveals no gross or microscopic evidence of pathology. Frequently, a tear of the medial meniscus is an associated finding; this may be responsible for repeated episodes of locking followed by effusion. In such instances a low-grade synovitis may be present, and in old lesions varying degrees of osteoarthritic alterations may be observed. This is also true in cases in which free loose bodies produce repeated incidences of giving way and momentary or true locking of the joint.

#### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The disorder usually is observed in late adolescence or in early adult life, only rarely is it encountered past middle life. In the author's series over 90 per cent of the cases were males. Generally one knee is implicated; in a small percentage of cases the lesion is bilateral. The general health of the patient is usually excellent. In some instances a specific history of trauma to the affected knee, either direct or indirect in nature, can be elicited. However, in a large percentage of cases no such history can be obtained.

No specific clinical manifestations are pathognomonic of this lesion; the character

of the clinical features is governed by the position and the size of the loose body. Most patients are aware of some vague pain in the joint which is accentuated by activity and relieved by rest. Frequently the bouts of pain are accompanied by varying degrees of swelling. These features are usually observed in patients in which the affected area of the articular cartilage still remains in its niche in the parent bone. If a lesion of the meniscus is present the symptoms of giving way or locking of the knee joint manifest themselves and render a diagnosis more difficult. Vague pain accentuated by activity and associated with recurrent effusions in the knee joint of an adolescent male should suggest the possibility of osteochondritis dissecans. The body may be in its niche but may be extremely mobile being held in place by a loose fibrous attachment. In such cases the mobility of the body is sufficient to permit momentary trapping of the fragment between the articular surfaces. This is accompanied by swelling and severe pain in the joint. The episodes tend to increase in intensity until the fragment is extruded into the joint.

The clinical picture is closely associated with the behavior of the loose body. In the event that it becomes detached either spontaneously or by some form of trauma, the patient may complain of giving way or momentary locking of the knee joint followed by effusion. The patient may volunteer the information that something moves about in the knee. If the body becomes trapped between the articular margins of the joint and the capsule a hard bony mass may be palpable at the joint margin. Repeated incidences of this nature occur until the free body becomes attached to the synovial membrane. When this occurs the symptoms disappear. The body may develop a pedicle at its new site of attachment allowing it sufficient mobility to be trapped momentarily between the articular surfaces. On the other hand if the loose body fails to attain an attachment to the lining of the

if it loses its attachment and again becomes freely mobile, the features of internal derangement manifest themselves. The symptoms produced by small loose bodies are more acute and occur more frequently than those caused by larger bodies because the former are more likely to be caught between the articular surfaces. Repeated episodes of giving way and effusion may cause varying degrees of laxity of the quadriceps mechanism, synovitis and in patients past middle life osteoarthritis of varying severity.

Physical examination invariably reveals some atrophy and loss of tone in the quadriceps muscle. If the patient is examined immediately after an episode of locking and effusion swelling is demonstrable particularly in the suprapatellar pouch. On several occasions the author has been able to feel the body at the articular margins of the joint. In the event that the body has been liberated from the articular surface of the patella, soft crepitus can be felt in the patellofemoral joint during flexion and extension of the knee. Occasionally the crepitus is audible. In these cases if the patella is pressed firmly against the articular surface of the femur pain is elicited. As recorded previously the greater majority of loose bodies in the knee joint arise from the medial femoral condyle. In these cases with the knee flexed beyond a right angle firm digital pressure over the end of the condyle produces exquisite tenderness. Occasionally if the fragment has already been extruded into the joint and the defect in the condyle is large the incongruity in the articular surface may be palpable.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC STUDIES

In cases of long standing roentgenographic study invariably establishes the diagnosis. Roentgenograms not only locate the position of the body in the joint but also depict the crater or niche in the femoral condyle or a from which the loose body or very early cases roent to reveal any evidence

of abnormalities in the articular surfaces. In addition, if the detached fragment is composed entirely of cartilaginous tissue without calcification, roentgenograms will not provide information relative to the true nature of the lesion. It is impossible to determine the actual size of a free body by roentgenograms. Not infrequently a large cartilaginous body may reveal only a thin line of calcification. In these cases exploration discloses that the true size of the body is many times that depicted by roentgenograms (Fig. 318). On the other hand the roentgenograms may show a wide zone of absorption in the cancellous bone between the parent bone and the affected overlying area and yet on exploration the cartilage is intact and may exhibit no evidence of pathologic changes (Fig. 317).

#### MANAGEMENT

It is generally accepted that freely mobile bodies in the knee joints should be removed. The optimum time for their removal is before irreparable damage is suffered by the supportive structures of the joint and before alterations consistent with osteoarthritis are manifest. If the bodies are

permitted to remain in the joint for long periods of time, during which repeated incidences of locking, giving way and effusion occur, the complications of chronic villonodular synovitis and eventually osteoarthritis are certain to follow (Fig. 315). In such cases, removal of the bodies will relieve the acute manifestation, but it is not expected to be followed by complete relief of all symptoms resulting from the unfavorable sequelae established. In addition, the presence of mobile bodies is hazardous to the patient not only while executing athletic pursuits but also in the course of his occupation and ordinary daily activities, locking may occur at inopportune occasions. It becomes apparent that removal of the bodies is most desirable.

Many observers are of the opinion that areas of osteochondritis dissecans which have not yet been separated but give rise to symptoms should be excised. This method of management is challenged by some investigators who provide evidence in support of their views. The former group contend that loose bodies even when not completely detached are responsible for repeated incidences of synovial reaction and

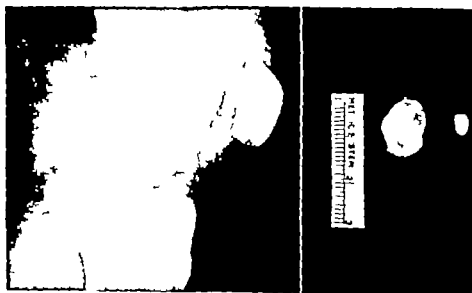


FIG. 318 Osteochondritis dissecans of the knee joint of a male 36 years old. The anteroposterior view fails to show the body (Left). The lateral view reveals a thin flake of calcified material (Right). The true size of the body. A second small body also was found, both originated from the articular surface of the patella.



FIG 319 (Left) Osteochondritis dissecans in an adult male 32 years old. Note the dense sclerotic loose body lying in a crater in the medial femoral condyle. Such bodies should be removed. (Right inset) The loose body removed in this case, showing the articular surface being surrounded by a ridge of fibrous tissue.

tend to weaken the quadriceps apparatus which in turn makes the remaining supporting tissues vulnerable to injury. For these reasons they advocated removal of the affected area before detachment is complete. On the other hand the second group of workers provide evidence to show that not all the joints return to normalcy after the affected areas are excised from the ends of the bones. The crater left behind may be a source of chronic irritation to the joint tissues allowing degenerative changes to progress in intensity. In addition some clinical evidence has been offered which indicates that some cases of osteochondritis dissecans heal spontaneously. Wiberg (1943) reported 6 cases of osteochondritis

dissecans in children in which spontaneous healing occurred. He concluded that conservative measures were indicated and should be instituted in patients up to the age of 16 or 17 years and in some cases up to 20 also that if during the period of treatment the fragment became detached it should be removed. Surgical intervention should be reserved for cases after the age of 20 and only in earlier cases when definite indications were present. Since the report of Wiberg several other workers have recorded revascularization of the undisplaced fragment in growing children when treated by conservative methods. The author has 6 such cases in his files in 2 other cases separation occurred in spite of conservative treatment. However, it must be admitted that in the two latter cases the patients were both over 15 years of age—one was 16 and the other 18. Smillie reports one case in which he first detached the fragment and after drilling the base of the defect and the opposing surface of the fragment he replaced it in the crater revascularization of the body ensued and healing was demonstrable roentgenologically 4 months after the operation.

In the light of the aforementioned observations the author is of the opinion that in growing children in which reparative processes are at a high level, osteochondritis dissecans without separation of the fragment should be given a trial of conservative treatment. In adults usually different circumstances prevail generally the lesions are long standing the loose body is avascular and often sclerotic and covered by dense connective tissue. Likewise the crater in the articular surface is sclerotic and lined by a mature fibrous tissue membrane. Conservative measures in such cases are doomed to failure here surgical intervention whereby the body is excised is the treatment of choice (Fig 319).

**Conservative Management.** This comprises the application of a nonpadded plaster cylinder from above the malleoli to the

groin with the knee extended. The patient is ambulatory and uses crutches. The heel of the shoe of the opposite foot is elevated so that the foot on the affected side does not touch the floor. Throughout the period of fixation the quadriceps muscle is exercised on a regulated regimen. In most instances a new plaster cylinder is applied approximately every 4 to 6 weeks. At the end of 3 months roentgenograms are taken to note the progress of healing. If revascularization is demonstrable but healing is not complete immobilization is continued for 2 to 3 more months. In the author's small series healing was achieved in 4 to 6 months. On the other hand if the body becomes detached during this period surgical intervention is indicated.

**CASE REPORT** Case D. J., aged 10, Negro. The patient was admitted to the hospital because of recurrent episodes of pain and swelling in the left knee joint. This disorder had

existed for 6 months prior to admission, there was no history of injury. The pain was accentuated by activity and was relieved by rest.

Examination of the limb at the time of admission revealed some swelling of the knee joint and moderate atrophy of the quadriceps muscle. Motion was unrestricted in flexion or extension. Pressure over the medial femoral condyle when the knee was flexed past a right angle elicited pronounced tenderness. Roentgenographic study of both extremities exhibited a small rarefied area on the medial aspect of the medial condyle of the left femur consistent with osteochondritis dissecans in the early stage of development (Fig. 320).

The limb was immobilized by a plaster cylinder; no weight-bearing was allowed and quadriceps exercises were instituted. At the end of 4 months, roentgenographic studies disclosed complete revascularization and healing of the affected area (Fig. 320).

**Surgical Management.** Before the knee joint is opened it is essential to establish the precise location of the body. Roentgenograms showing routine anteroposterior and



FIG. 320 (Left) Early stages of osteochondritis dissecans in a male 10 years old (Right) Healing of the affected area after 4 months of immobilization in a plaster cylinder without weight bearing.



lateral views of the knee joint may fail to locate the true position of the defect in the articular condyles of the femur. In addition to the routine lateral views, the lesion is demonstrated best by anteroposterior views taken with the knee in varying degrees of flexion. In cases of osteochondritis of the patella tangential views may be necessary in order to show the lesion. All surgeons who have removed loose bodies from the knee joint know of the elusiveness of these structures; therefore it is important to have roentgenograms taken immediately before the operation is performed. In order to preclude change of position of the loose body, the position of the limb must not be altered after the final roentgenograms are taken. Calcified bodies and those containing some osseous tissue are readily depicted; however one must bear in mind that roentgenographic study may fail to reveal the presence of loose cartilaginous bodies; hence a thorough search should be made of the region of the joint explored. Also, those areas which are most likely to harbor the bodies should be investigated, such as the intercondylar region and the suprapatellar pouch. Small incisions to remove loose bodies without exploration of the defects from which they arose are not justifiable. In many instances portions of the articular cartilage at the periphery of the crater are fragmented and loose; failure to remove this defective tissue may result in the formation and separation of more loose bodies and recurrence of symptoms. On the other hand unnecessary extensive exposure should not be employed routinely. Long parapatellar incisions are not necessary to expose the medial or the lateral compartment of the knee joint when the lesion is localized to one of the femoral condyles. However if coexistent pathology of the synovial membrane is present requiring partial synovectomy in addition to removal of a loose body, then parapatellar incisions are indicated. Before the wound is closed roentgenograms are taken with a portable unit to note

whether or not all radiopaque bodies have been removed.

The affected area of the articular surface demands particular attention; the problems presented and their management vary in each case. In the event that the body lies loosely in the defect it should be removed; this is achieved best by a sharp curved gouge which readily scoops the loose fragment out of the niche. After the main body is excised the articular cartilage bordering the defect often exhibits softening, fibrillation and fraying. The defective material is shaved off carefully in layers until normal cartilage is reached; the edges of the crater are beveled. Next attention is directed to the floor of the crater with a sharp curet; all debris is removed from the floor of the defect until normal bleeding cancellous bone is exposed. In cases of long standing the floor of the crater may be lined with dense sclerotic bone; in such cases the author first removes all loose connective tissue with a sharp curet and then perforates the dense layer of bone with numerous fine drill holes in an attempt to revascularize the sclerotic bone and to allow the crater to fill with blood. It is hoped that this procedure will initiate the formation of fibrocartilage in sufficient quantities to obliterate the cavity.

If the loose bodies lie at a distance from the cavity in the articular surface either free or attached to the synovial lining, their removal is first effected and then the site of their origin is inspected and treated in accordance with the circumstances present. Generally the cavity in the articular cartilage particularly in long standing cases is decreased in depth by the formation of varying amounts of connective tissue, defective bone and fibrocartilage. The articular cartilage immediately around the defect is soft and fibrillated. In such instances the area should be treated in the manner described above.

In youthful patients occasionally a situation is encountered similar to that of Case

E. L. (Fig. 317) in which, in spite of the roentgenographic findings indicating separation of an osteocartilaginous body, visualization of the affected region fails to show grossly any evidence of pathologic alterations in the articular cartilage or only minimal changes may be demonstrable but no line of separation is discernible between the normal and the pathologic articular cartilage. It is the author's opinion that in such instances the articular area supposedly affected should not be excavated but instead it should be left undisturbed, the wound closed, and conservative measures instituted. In Case E. L., revascularization occurred, and healing was complete at the end of 6 months. It has occurred to the author that in such cases fine drill holes transversing the affected articular cartilage and the underlying bone may enhance revascularization and healing. This has been tried in two cases, but sufficient time has not elapsed to determine the ultimate fate of loose frag-

ments in these cases. In adults revascularization of loose fragments is not likely to occur. All affected cartilage and underlying bone must be excised and the bed of the cavity should be curetted until normal bleeding bone is reached or it is perforated with multiple fine drill holes.

#### SURGICAL APPROACHES

*Loose Bodies Arising from the Medial Femoral Condyle* These bodies may lie in the niche in the medial femoral condyle or may be displaced into the anterior compartment of the intercondylar notch into the suprapatellar pouch or occasionally may even migrate to the posterior compartment of the joint (Fig. 321). The bodies in the anteromedial compartment of the joint and in the intercondylar notch are made readily accessible through an anteromedial curved incision. If access to the posteromedial compartment is desirable, this may be achieved by extending the posterior limb of the incision to a point 1 cm. posterior to the medial



FIG. 321 Osteochondritis dissecans of the medial femoral condyle. Several fragments still occupy a position in the crater in the condyle; one body has migrated to the posteromedial compartment. All these fragments were removed through a medial meniscal incision which extended slightly posteriorly to permit an incision into the posterior capsule behind the longitudinal fibers of the tibial collateral ligament.



FIG. 322 A single loose body in the anterolateral compartment. It arose from the articular surface of the patella and was removed through a lateral parapatellar incision.

epicondyle of the femur. A second capsular incision is made behind and parallel with the longitudinal fibers of the superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament. This allows ample exposure of the posterior compartment of the joint; this incision is usually employed to remove the posterior segment of the medial meniscus but it also affords ready access to loose bodies in the posteromedial compartment.

*Loose Bodies Arising from the Lateral Femoral Condyle* The surgical management of these bodies is similar to that of the bodies arising from the medial femoral condyle. An anterolateral curved incision is employed to expose the anterolateral compartment. Extension of this incision posteriorly permits access into the posterolateral compartment.

The suprapatellar pouch should be inspected for the presence of bodies not depicted in the roentgenograms. In order to perform this adequately the limb must be extended at the knee thereby relaxing the extensor apparatus; then a careful digital examination of the pouch is made. Also repeated flexion and extension of the joint are

performed at this time these maneuvers may bring into view loose bodies not demonstrable by roentgenographic studies. Before the wound is closed the joint is flushed thoroughly with a solution of sterile saline; this removes small particles of cartilage, bone and fibrous tissue.

*Loose Bodies in the Suprapatellar Pouch* Bodies in this region are usually accessible through the anteromedial or anterolateral incisions. As a rule, with the knee extended a digital examination will locate the loose body in the pouch or it can be maneuvered into the anterior compartments of the joint. However, in cases accompanied by advanced chronic villous synovitis which necessitates a partial or more extensive synovectomy then a medial parapatellar incision should be utilized.

*Loose Bodies Arising from the Patella* It is desirable to inspect the undersurface of the patella when it is apparent that this is the source of the loose body. The articular surface of the patella is best brought into view by the medial or the lateral parapatellar incisions. Figure 322 depicts a loose body in the anterolateral compartment of the joint which arose from the articular surface of the patella. The body was removed and the patellar surface was inspected through a lateral parapatellar incision. A large crater barely suggested by the roentgenograms was encountered.

*Loose Bodies in Posterior Compartments* As recorded previously the posteromedial and the posterolateral compartments may be exposed through the extended posterior limb of the meniscal incisions. On the medial side the posteromedial capsular incision is made behind the long fibers of the tibial collateral ligament; on the lateral side the posterolateral capsular incision is made behind the fibular collateral ligament. Occasionally it may be desirable to limit the exposure to the posteromedial or the posterolateral aspect of the joint. In such cases the posteromedial and the posterolateral incisions of Henderson will provide the desired

exposure these incisions are especially useful for removal of loose bodies from the posterior compartment. Occasionally, the midline incision on the posterior aspect of the knee may be employed.

**Postoperative Management.** When the anteromedial or the anterolateral incisions are employed the postoperative management is essentially similar to that described for meniscectomy. However, there is some variation. At the termination of the operation an elastic compression bandage is applied extending from the mid-calf to the mid thigh. The limb is put at complete rest in order to preclude filling of the joint with blood from raw bony surfaces. In the event that such filling should occur, aspiration is indicated. Immobilization is continued for 2 to 3 weeks, depending upon the intensity of the joint reaction. At the end of this period quadriceps drill and flexion exercises are instituted. Weight bearing is not permitted before 3 weeks postoperatively. From this point on, the problem is one of redevelopment of the quadriceps mechanism to the maximum level of efficiency.

When simple removal of the bodies was performed through posteromedial posterolateral or posterior mid line incisions, rehabilitation is not delayed but commenced immediately after the operation.

## OSTEOCHONDROMATOSIS

Osteochondromatosis is now recognized as a specific clinical entity in which the synovial membranes of joints and less frequently of bursae and tendon sheaths give rise to cartilaginous and osteocartilaginous bodies. Other designations for this disorder are synovial chondromata, diffuse enchondroma of the joint capsule and joint chondromata. At first the bodies are attached to the synovial membrane by a pedicle. Later they are extruded into the joint cavity, the bursa or the tendon sheath. These bodies differ from those encountered in osteochondritis in that they are formed by the syno-

vial membrane and are in no way related to the articular ends of the bones, moreover, the bodies comprise organized tissues setting them apart from "rice bodies" (*corpora oryzoidea*) which are composed of unorganized tissues.

## HISTORICAL REVIEW AND ETIOLOGY

Loose cartilaginous bodies have attracted the interest of many investigators. Laennec (1813) is credited with the first description of the disorder and was of the opinion that the bodies were the products of the sub-synovial tissues. At this time most observers believed that the bodies arose from coagulated lymph effused from the synovialis, the process involved being one of vascularization of the lymph coagulum.

In 1836 Brodie proposed the theory which is in agreement with the concept held by many observers of the present day. He recorded that the cartilaginous bodies arose on the external surface of the synovialis or within its substance. Macartney (1841) noted that at first the bodies were attached to the synovial membrane by pedicles which contained blood vessels and that rupture of the pedicles set the bodies free in the synovial cavity. At about this time (1848) Rainey proposed the premise that a type of synovial membrane exists containing certain cells which, when influenced by morbid action (inflammation), are capable of secreting cartilage which later may be converted into imperfectly formed bone. The newly formed bodies retain a vascular pedicle which supplies nutrient for their growth and development.

Kolliker in 1851, observed that synovial membrane or outgrowths of this structure contained cartilage cells which gave rise to the cartilaginous bodies. These at first increased in size and later became detached from their pedicles and set free in the synovial cavity. The work of Kolliker was followed by numerous articles in the literature in which some explanation was offered for the formation of the loose bodies by the

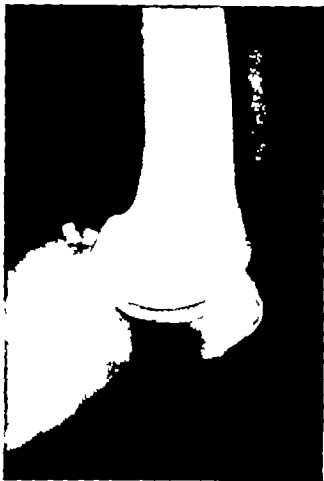


FIG. 323 Osteochondromatosis of the knee joint. The loose bodies have gravitated to the posterior compartment. The synovialis elsewhere in the joint and the articular cartilage were normal grossly and microscopically.

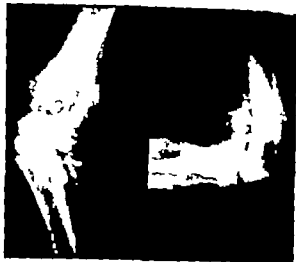


FIG. 324 Osteochondromatosis of the elbow.

opinion that the etiology of this malady was associated closely with the etiology of tumors and pointed out the close relationship which the tissues of the two disorders bear to one another from an embryologic viewpoint.

Freund in 1937 recorded his views on the etiology of osteochondromatosis; he regarded the pathologic process as a metaplasia of the synovial connective tissue similar to myositis ossificans and parosteal ossification and chondrifications. The known potentiality of the mesodermal tissues to form bone and cartilage by the process of metaplasia was the basis for this observer's concept. This view is now in agreement with the more popular theory which places the process in the same category as benign neoplastic lesions.

From this brief historical survey it becomes apparent that the etiology of osteochondromatosis is not definitely established. However, the two most popular theories which prevail at the present time are (1) the concept which proposes that the lesion is comparable with a benign neoplastic process implicating the synovial membrane and (2) the view which attributes the formation of the cartilaginous bodies to a process of metaplasia of the connective tissues of the synovial lining.

synovial membrane, trauma and infection were etiologic factors believed to play a major role in the formation of the cartilaginous structures. The first report in the American literature was recorded by Henderson in 1916; this worker adopted the name synovial osteochondromatosis. Since this report numerous other American writers have recorded their findings and views.

In 1921 Fisher attempted to group cases of synovial osteochondromatosis into those associated with osteoarthritis and those not associated with osteoarthritis. He believed, however, that the bodies in the two groups exhibited similar macroscopic and microscopic features. This observer was of the

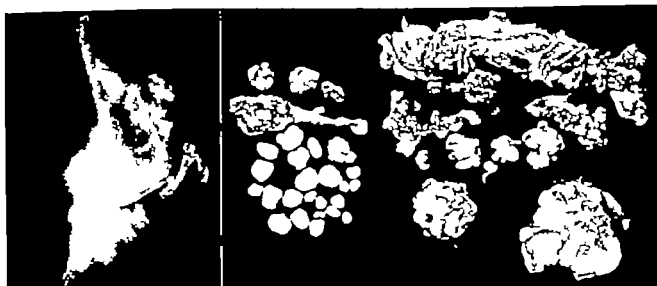


FIG 325 (*Top*) Right knee of a patient 48 years old (*Left*) Note the large coarse bodies in both the suprapatellar pouch and in the posterior compartment. The articular surfaces of the patella, the femur and the tibia exhibit evidence of osteoarthritic alterations. This patient had a similar process with numerous bodies in the left knee joint. (*Right*) Loose bodies and portions of the synovial membrane were removed in this case.

FIG 326 (*Bottom*) Osteochondromatosis in a patient 72 years old Osteoarthritic changes are demonstrable in the patellofemoral and the femorotibial joints.



Likewise, the agents initiating the pathologic process have not been determined trauma, infection and embryonic rests—all have been offered as possible factors

#### PATHOLOGY

The number of bodies vary from a few to several hundred also, they vary considerably in size. Usually they are round or oval exhibiting a smooth or faceted surface some are pitted and irregular in form (Fig 323) Generally, one joint is involved but in rare instances more than one joint may be implicated the disorder is encountered most frequently in the knee joint The elbow joint is involved next in the order of frequency (Fig 324) As noted previously,

bursae and tendon sheaths may be affected, although the incidence is relatively low Males are affected more frequently than females Although trauma as an initiating factor is debatable, it is significant to note that the lesion usually affects those joints most vulnerable to trauma and joints subjected to great stress and strains during normal function this applies particularly to the knee and the elbow joints Mussey and Henderson reported an incidence of 70 per cent in the knees and 22 per cent in the elbows On the other hand, the trauma may serve only to focus the attention of the patient to the affected joint in which the lesion is already long standing. Some of the bodies may become encysted in the synovial



FIG 327 (Top) Osteochondromatosis in a patient 33 years old. The synovial membrane showed proliferative activity—numerous bodies in all stages of formation were found. The synovial membrane was studded with hundreds of cartilage bodies. Note that the amount of calcification in the bodies depicted in the roentgenograms is minimal. (Bottom) Osteochondromatosis. Observe the cartilaginous bodies forming in the synovial membrane, also the hyperplasia and the villous formation of the synovialis.

membrane or may be in a pouch in the membrane. It appears as though the bodies while increasing in size slowly distend the synovial lining and capsule to form out pouchings from the joint cavity. In the knee joint many bodies tend to gravitate into the posterior compartment (Fig 325). However, some are found in the suprapatellar pouch and in the intercondylar region (Fig 326).

The pathologic process in the synovial lining pursues a constant clinical course. It

is self limited and according to Freund the bodies may disappear. This observation has been noted by other workers. It appears that the disease runs a specific cycle at the termination of which the synovial membrane returns to normalcy. In most instances by the time the diagnosis is definitely established and surgical intervention instituted little or no activity is discernible in the synovial membrane. Occasionally a joint is encountered in which part or all of the synovialis exhibits proliferative activ-

ity cartilaginous bodies are observed in all stages of formation (Fig 327) In cases of long standing the synovial membrane appears to be grossly similar to chronic synovitis observed in traumatic or degenerative arthritis In early cases the articular cartilage exhibits no macroscopic abnormalities in more advanced cases evidence consistent with osteoarthritis is manifest (Figs 325 and 326) implicating the articular cartilage The subchondral bone generally discloses no alterations The hypothesis claiming that the disorder is a benign neoplasm is supported by the work of Jones (1927) who observed that the development of these bodies pursues the same stages encountered in the embryonic formation of cartilage previously described by Keibel and Mall This observer noted that the cartilaginous bodies originated in the synovialis directly from the lining cells which are modified fibroblasts Generally the bodies arise in the synovialis *per se* and only occasionally in the subsynovial tissue Subsequently, the growing bodies become calcified or even ossified On occasion, bone may originate directly from the fibroblasts As the bodies form in size they assume a more superficial position and eventually are held in position by a pedicle Finally, with severance of the pedicles the bodies are liberated into the joint The free bodies exhibit living cartilage cells at their peripheries nourishment being obtained from the synovial fluid However the bone in the center of the body which is deprived of all nourishment dies

The microscopic appearance of the loose bodies depends upon the size and the stage of development During the early stages the bodies are small consisting entirely of cartilage cells which exhibit a specific pattern in a hyaline matrix The bodies usually are attached to the synovial membrane by a vascular pedicle As the bodies increase in size calcification is demonstrable in their center later the calcified cartilage is replaced with imperfect bone which may pro-

liferate, provided that the bodies retain their attachment to the synovial lining The bodies are now osteocartilaginous structures Larger bodies which lose their attachment may show some proliferation of the cartilage cells near the surface, while the deeper tissues undergo degenerative alterations These alterations comprise irregular areas of calcification in the cartilaginous elements and necrosis of bone the outer surface of the body may be partly covered by imperfectly formed or degenerating fibrocartilage

### CLINICAL FEATURES

Many of the patients are unable to recall any form of trauma which might be associated with the clinical manifestations of the disease, Mussey and Henderson recorded that only one third of the patients with affected knees recalled trauma Generally, the onset is insidious in nature, or the patient's attention may be focused to the knee by some unrelated trauma At first the patient notices slight discomfort, weakness and some restriction of motion in the affected knee Later these symptoms become more pronounced but rarely are of sufficient intensity to cause great dysfunction Giving way and momentary locking of the joint may occur these incidents may be accompanied by pain, stiffness and swelling of the joint Pain is rarely severe except when locking of the joint occurs Many patients are aware of the presence of loose bodies in the joint and often state that occasionally they can actually palpate the freely movable masses In some cases it is interesting to note the number of bodies that can occupy a joint and still produce only minimal symptoms Case C S (Fig 325) illustrates this point This patient had both knees implicated and numerous bodies of varying size and shape were removed (Fig 325) In addition, moderate osteoarthritis changes were demonstrable in the joint yet this patient exhibited only mild discomfort and minimal dysfunction





FIG. 328 Osteoarthritis and osteochondromatosis of the knee joint. Note the spurring of the patellar poles and the anterior articular surface of the femur. Osteoarthritis may have antedated the occurrence of osteochondromatosis or it may be the result of the mechanical irritation produced by the loose bodies.

Physical findings may not be significant in mild forms of the disease. No swelling or limitation of motion may be discernible. The loose bodies may not be palpable. The only clue to the disorder may be the patient's history of momentary locking or that on occasion he is able to palpate a movable body in the joint.

In more advanced involvement some swelling and pericapsular thickening may be demonstrable. The quadriceps reveals varying degrees of atrophy; some limitation of motion is usually present although the extent of the dysfunction is rarely severe. When large numbers of bodies occupy the suprapatellar pouch the structures are read-

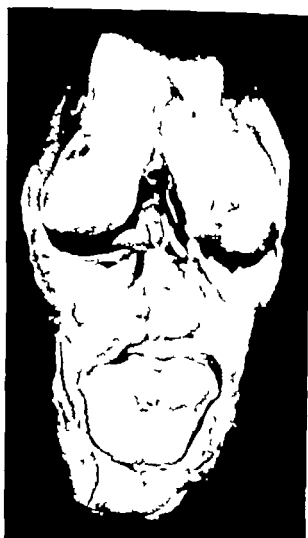


FIG. 329 Advanced osteoarthritic changes implicating all the articular surfaces and the margins of the patella and the margins of the femoral condyles. Note the formation of osteophytes varying in size which may be detached readily by some form of trauma.

ily palpable and can be moved about in the distended synovial cavity.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FINDINGS

In cases of long standing the bodies usually are sufficiently calcified and contain enough osseous tissue to render them visible in the roentgenograms. However, it is generally known that bodies consisting entirely of cartilage are radiolucent. It becomes apparent that in the early stages of development many cartilaginous bodies may be present and still the roentgenograms may

fail to disclose their presence. The size of the bodies cannot be determined by roentgenographic studies because only the calcified and osseous tissues are visible. Mechanical irritation to the joint over a long period of time results in osteoarthritic abnormalities; these, when present, are readily discernible by roentgenographic study (Fig 328).

### DIAGNOSIS

Little difficulty is encountered in establishing a diagnosis when roentgenographic studies disclose the presence of large numbers of bodies. When only a few bodies are present the diagnosis may be more difficult, particularly in the presence of osteoarthritis, because they may be detached osteophytes produced by some form of trauma or they may be the product of osteochondritis dissecans of the articular ends of the bones. Although instances of single bodies resulting from osteochondromatosis have been recorded, this is difficult to establish as a clinical fact because it is generally known that loose bodies from other sources may first become detached and later achieve a secondary attachment to the synovial lining so that they are indistinguishable from bodies arising primarily from the synovial membrane. In some cases of osteochondromatosis the synovial membrane may return to normalcy after the formation of the osteocartilaginous bodies. This observation renders even more difficult the recognition of the true nature of the bodies when they are few in number. However, the presence of features consistent with osteoarthritis or the presence of a defect in the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia or the patella may shed some light on the origin of the bodies (Fig 329).

Occasionally loose bodies may arise from repeated injury to one of the menisci (Fig 330). Here the clinical manifestations of a loose body may be superimposed upon those of a tear of the meniscus. The classical signs and symptoms of a meniscal lesion



FIG 330 Medial meniscus in a male 23 years old. Two bodies were found free in the joint and one was attached to the anterior cruciate ligament. Apparently, all 3 fibrocartilaginous bodies originated from the central segment of the longitudinal tear; repeated trappings of this segment were responsible for the formation of the bodies. (*Left*, superior surface, *right* inferior surface)

are usually present; moreover, bodies arising from this source are usually radiolucent unless secondary calcification has occurred.

Finally, the disorder must be differentiated from rice bodies (*corpora oryzoidea*). These are usually by-products of chronic inflammatory processes of the synovial membrane, such as in chronic synovitis or tuberculosis; they are not radiopaque. As a rule, the history of the case, the clinical features and the microscopic findings establish the diagnosis.

### MANAGEMENT

Loose bodies in the knee joint should be removed because they are capable of producing mechanical derangement of the joint leading to osteoarthritis. When these occupy the suprapatellar pouch or are located

in the intercondylar notch their removal is facilitated by one of the parapatellar incisions. These approaches permit adequate inspection of the suprapatellar pouch and the anterior compartment of the joint. When the bodies are situated in the posterior compartments of the joint the mid line incision on the posterior aspect of the knee or the posteromedial and the anterolateral incisions of Henderson may be utilized. The latter two incisions are particularly valuable when only a limited exposure is desired. If the pathologic process in the synovial membrane is still active or if the synovialis exhibits secondary alterations such as villous synovitis synovectomy should be performed. In the knee a large portion of the synovial lining can be removed however the lining in the posterior aspect of the joint is not readily accessible. Occasionally when bodies are situated in both the anterior and the posterior recesses of the knee joint two approaches are necessary to remove all the bodies. This may be executed at one operation or the posterior compartment may be explored at a second operation. Exploration of the joint may fail to locate some of the bodies visualized by roentgenograms. In such instances the bodies may be located in bursal sacs or diverticuli of the joint cavity or they may be encysted within the synovial membrane. A thorough search must be made in such instances and the bursal sac or pouch should be excised together with the bodies.

In cases in which the synovial membrane exhibits no evidence of a pathologic process and grossly appears to be normal synovectomy is not justifiable. Removal of the bodies alone suffices to effect a cure. Loose bodies are very illusive a roentgenogram taken with a portable machine before the wound is closed will ensure against failure to remove all bodies present.

#### PROGNOSIS

After all the bodies are removed and if the synovial membrane is no longer active

in the production of bodies good results can be anticipated so far as the formation of more bodies is concerned. The amount of residual dysfunction depends upon the absence or the presence of osteoarthritic changes at the time of surgical intervention provided that the pathologic process in the synovialis is no longer active. When the former circumstances exist the results should be excellent. When the latter circumstances prevail the degree of dysfunction is governed by the severity of the osteoarthritic alterations. In these cases removal of the bodies together with partial or complete synovectomy will not only eliminate the chief causes of mechanical derangement of the joint but also will prevent further trauma to an already impaired joint.

When the bodies arise in bursae about the joint, all the bodies together with the bursal sac should be removed. Cases have been recorded in which several bodies have been left in the joint following operation in some no damage resulted particularly if the bodies were large and in others the bodies disappeared subsequently. When surgical intervention is attempted during the active stage of the disorder failure to extirpate the entire affected synovial membrane may result in recurrence of osteochondromatosis.

#### LOOSE BODIES ASSOCIATED WITH OSTEOARTHRITIS

Essentially the pathologic process in the knee joint is degenerative arthritis which as was pointed out previously may be secondary to some mechanical derangement of the joint or may be the result of wear tear and aging. In such joints osteophytes varying in size and consisting of cartilaginous or osteocartilaginous tissue are encountered frequently. The usual sites of origin are at the synovial-chondral juncture of the femoral condyles at the inferior and the superior poles of the patella apices.

of the tibial spines. Usually, no more than 2 or 3 bodies are found in the same knee joint. In addition to detachment of the marginal osteophytes (also designated periarthritic ecchondroses), bodies of similar structures arising from the articular cartilage of the ends of the bones may become detached. This type of loose body was first described by Shattuck. Detachment of the osteophytes is caused by some form of direct or indirect trauma. The liberated body may remain free in the joint cavity or gravitate into one of the recesses of the joint, usually the posterior compartment, and there they attain a secondary attachment to the synovial lining.

Osteophytes detached recently reveal a raw irregular surface where formerly they were attached to the parent bone. They vary in size and configuration. After detachment the raw surfaces are covered by fibrous tissue which soon assumes the characteristics of fibrocartilage. Some portions of the surfaces of the bodies retain the normal covering of hyaline cartilage, while other portions are invested in slowly forming fibrocartilage. In cases of long standing the hyaline cartilage undergoes degenerative changes and eventually is replaced in part, particularly in the superficial strata, by fibrous tissue or imperfectly formed fibrocartilage. The deeper portions of the bodies usually comprise bone which at first retains its normal pattern. Later it undergoes necrosis. This is manifested by fragmentation and atrophy of the bony trabeculae and poor staining qualities of the bone. Some observers (Allison and Ghormley) point out that the bodies fail to produce a foreign body reaction because the cartilaginous layers surrounding the necrotic bony nucleus obtain some nourishment from the synovial fluid and hence retain in part at least their vitality. This aborts the reaction which ordinarily would occur when devitalized bone is placed in a joint.

It was recorded previously that after a period of time it is difficult and at times

impossible to determine the site of origin of loose bodies, especially when many years have elapsed since the time of detachment. During this period reparative processes may have obliterated the source, such as a defect in the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles or the patella, and the mechanical derangement of the joint produced by the bodies may have resulted in the development of varying degrees of osteoarthritic alterations. After a time all bodies, no matter what their origin, tend to approach a similar form of structure.

The clinical manifestations of loose bodies associated with osteoarthritis of the knee joint are essentially those of degenerative arthritis, to which are added the features typical of a loose body, if the body has not attained a secondary attachment. When the body is fixed in some recess of the joint the phenomena associated with freely mobile bodies disappear.

Roentgenographic study reveals the classical features of osteoarthritis: spur formation at the articular margins, the patellar poles and the tibial spines; thinning of the joint space and subchondral sclerosis. In addition, loose bodies are identified in one of the joint recesses, particularly the posterior compartment. Osteoarthritis and osteochondromatosis may be observed in the same joint. This is the usual finding in cases of osteochondromatosis of many years' duration. It is difficult to establish whether or not the osteoarthritis antedated or was initiated by the osteochondromatosis (Figs 325 and 326). A careful history may throw some light on the problem.

#### MANAGEMENT

Loose bodies which cause mechanical irritation should be removed in order to protect the joint from further damage. In cases associated with advanced osteoarthritis in which the synovialis is thickened and hyperplastic and shows evidence of villous formation, synovectomy and general débridement of the joint may be indicated. This proce-

in the intercondylar notch, their removal is facilitated by one of the parapatellar incisions. These approaches permit adequate inspection of the suprapatellar pouch and the anterior compartment of the joint. When the bodies are situated in the posterior compartments of the joint, the mid line incision on the posterior aspect of the knee or the posteromedial and the anterolateral incisions of Henderson may be utilized. The latter two incisions are particularly valuable when only a limited exposure is desired. If the pathologic process in the synovial membrane is still active or if the synovialis exhibits secondary alterations such as villous synovitis synovectomy should be performed. In the knee a large portion of the synovial lining can be removed, however the lining in the posterior aspect of the joint is not readily accessible. Occasionally when bodies are situated in both the anterior and the posterior recesses of the knee joint two approaches are necessary to remove all the bodies. This may be executed at one operation or the posterior compartment may be explored at a second operation. Exploration of the joint may fail to locate some of the bodies visualized by roentgenograms. In such instances the bodies may be located in bursal sacs or diverticuli of the joint cavity or they may be encysted within the synovial membrane. A thorough search must be made in such instances and the bursal sac or pouch should be excised together with the bodies.

In cases in which the synovial membrane exhibits no evidence of a pathologic process and grossly appears to be normal synovectomy is not justifiable. Removal of the bodies alone suffices to effect a cure. Loose bodies are very illusive a roentgenogram taken with a portable machine before the wound is closed will ensure against failure to remove all bodies present.

#### PROGNOSIS

After all the bodies are removed and if the synovial membrane is no longer active

in the production of bodies, good results can be anticipated so far as the formation of more bodies is concerned. The amount of residual dysfunction depends upon the absence or the presence of osteoarthritic changes at the time of surgical intervention, provided that the pathologic process in the synovialis is no longer active. When the former circumstances exist, the results should be excellent. When the latter circumstances prevail the degree of dysfunction is governed by the severity of the osteoarthritic alterations. In these cases removal of the bodies together with partial or complete synovectomy, will not only eliminate the chief causes of mechanical derangement of the joint but also will prevent further trauma to an already impaired joint.

When the bodies arise in bursae about the joint, all the bodies, together with the bursal sac, should be removed. Cases have been recorded in which several bodies have been left in the joint following operation in some no damage resulted particularly if the bodies were large and in others the bodies disappeared subsequently. When surgical intervention is attempted during the active stage of the disorder, failure to extirpate the entire affected synovial membrane may result in recurrence of osteochondromatosis.

#### LOOSE BODIES ASSOCIATED WITH OSTEOARTHRITIS

Essentially, the pathologic process in the knee joint is degenerative arthritis which, as was pointed out previously may be secondary to some mechanical derangement of the joint or may be the result of wear, tear and aging. In such joints osteophytes varying in size and consisting of cartilaginous or osteocartilaginous tissue are encountered frequently. The usual sites of origin are at the synovial-chondral juncture of the femoral condyles at the inferior and the superior poles of the patella and at the apices

of the tibial spines. Usually, no more than 2 or 3 bodies are found in the same knee joint. In addition to detachment of the marginal osteophytes (also designated periarticular ecchondroses), bodies of similar structures arising from the articular cartilage of the ends of the bones may become detached. This type of loose body was first described by Shattuck. Detachment of the osteophytes is caused by some form of direct or indirect trauma. The liberated body may remain free in the joint cavity or gravitate into one of the recesses of the joint, usually the posterior compartment, and there they attain a secondary attachment to the synovial lining.

Osteophytes detached recently reveal a raw irregular surface where formerly they were attached to the parent bone; they vary in size and configuration. After detachment the raw surfaces are covered by fibrous tissue which soon assumes the characteristics of fibrocartilage. Some portions of the surfaces of the bodies retain the normal covering of hyaline cartilage, while other portions are invested in slowly forming fibrocartilage. In cases of long standing, the hyaline cartilage undergoes degenerative changes and eventually is replaced in part particularly in the superficial strata by fibrous tissue or imperfectly formed fibrocartilage. The deeper portions of the bodies usually comprise bone which at first retains its normal pattern; later it undergoes necrosis. This is manifested by fragmentation and atrophy of the bony trabeculae and poor staining qualities of the bone. Some observers (Allison and Ghormley) point out that the bodies fail to produce a foreign body reaction because the cartilaginous layers surrounding the necrotic bony nucleus obtain some nourishment from the synovial fluid and hence retain in part at least their vitality; this aborts the reaction which ordinarily would occur when devitalized bone is placed in a joint.

It was recorded previously that after a period of time it is difficult and at times

impossible to determine the site of origin of loose bodies, especially when many years have elapsed since the time of detachment. During this period reparative processes may have obliterated the source, such as a defect in the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles or the patella, and the mechanical derangement of the joint produced by the bodies may have resulted in the development of varying degrees of osteoarthritic alterations. After a time all bodies no matter what their origin, tend to approach a similar form of structure.

The clinical manifestations of loose bodies associated with osteoarthritis of the knee joint are essentially those of degenerative arthritis to which are added the features typical of a loose body, if the body has not attained a secondary attachment. When the body is fixed in some recess of the joint the phenomena associated with freely mobile bodies disappear.

Roentgenographic study reveals the classical features of osteoarthritis: spur formation at the articular margins, the patellar poles and the tibial spines, thinning of the joint space and subchondral sclerosis. In addition, loose bodies are identified in one of the joint recesses, particularly the posterior compartment. Osteoarthritis and osteochondromatosis may be observed in the same joint; this is the usual finding in cases of osteochondromatosis of many years' duration. It is difficult to establish whether or not the osteoarthritis antedated or was initiated by the osteochondromatosis (Figs 325 and 326). A careful history may throw some light on the problem.

#### MANAGEMENT

Loose bodies which cause mechanical irritation should be removed in order to protect the joint from further damage. In cases associated with advanced osteoarthritis in which the synovialis is thickened and hyperplastic and shows evidence of villous formation, synovectomy and general débridement of the joint may be indicated. This procedure

in the intercondylar notch, their removal is facilitated by one of the parapatellar incisions. These approaches permit adequate inspection of the suprapatellar pouch and the anterior compartment of the joint. When the bodies are situated in the posterior compartments of the joint the mid line incision on the posterior aspect of the knee or the posteromedial and the anterolateral incisions of Henderson may be utilized. The latter two incisions are particularly valuable when only a limited exposure is desired. If the pathologic process in the synovial membrane is still active or if the synovialis exhibits secondary alterations such as villous synovitis synovectomy should be performed. In the knee a large portion of the synovial lining can be removed however the lining in the posterior aspect of the joint is not readily accessible. Occasionally when bodies are situated in both the anterior and the posterior recesses of the knee joint, two approaches are necessary to remove all the bodies. This may be executed at one operation or the posterior compartment may be explored at a second operation. Exploration of the joint may fail to locate some of the bodies visualized by roentgenograms in such instances the bodies may be located in bursal sacs or diverticuli of the joint cavity or they may be encysted within the synovial membrane. A thorough search must be made in such instances, and the bursal sac or pouch should be excised together with the bodies.

In cases in which the synovial membrane exhibits no evidence of a pathologic process and grossly appears to be normal, synovectomy is not justifiable. Removal of the bodies alone suffices to effect a cure. Loose bodies are very illusive a roentgenogram taken with a portable machine before the wound is closed will ensure against failure to remove all bodies present.

#### PROGNOSIS

After all the bodies are removed and if the synovial membrane is no longer active

in the production of bodies, good results can be anticipated so far as the formation of more bodies is concerned. The amount of residual dysfunction depends upon the absence or the presence of osteoarthritic changes at the time of surgical intervention provided that the pathologic process in the synovialis is no longer active. When the former circumstances exist, the results should be excellent. When the latter circumstances prevail the degree of dysfunction is governed by the severity of the osteoarthritic alterations. In these cases removal of the bodies together with partial or complete synovectomy, will not only eliminate the chief causes of mechanical derangement of the joint but also will prevent further trauma to an already impaired joint.

When the bodies arise in bursae about the joint all the bodies, together with the bursal sac should be removed. Cases have been recorded in which several bodies have been left in the joint following operation. In some no damage resulted, particularly if the bodies were large and in others the bodies disappeared subsequently. When surgical intervention is attempted during the active stage of the disorder, failure to extirpate the entire affected synovial membrane may result in recurrence of osteochondromatosis.

#### LOOSE BODIES ASSOCIATED WITH OSTEOARTHRITIS

Essentially the pathologic process in the knee joint is degenerative arthritis which, as was pointed out previously may be secondary to some mechanical derangement of the joint or may be the result of wear tear and aging. In such joints, osteophytes varying in size and consisting of cartilaginous or osteocartilaginous tissue are encountered frequently. The usual sites of origin are at the synovial-chondral juncture of the femoral condyles at the inferior and the superior poles of the patella and at the apices

of the tibial spines. Usually no more than 2 or 3 bodies are found in the same knee joint. In addition to detachment of the marginal osteophytes (also designated periaricular ecchondroses), bodies of similar structures arising from the articular cartilage of the ends of the bones may become detached. This type of loose body was first described by Shattuck. Detachment of the osteophytes is caused by some form of direct or indirect trauma. The liberated body may remain free in the joint cavity or gravitate into one of the recesses of the joint, usually the posterior compartment, and there they attain a secondary attachment to the synovial lining.

Osteophytes detached recently reveal a raw irregular surface where formerly they were attached to the parent bone. They vary in size and configuration. After detachment the raw surfaces are covered by fibrous tissue which soon assumes the characteristics of fibrocartilage. Some portions of the surfaces of the bodies retain the normal covering of hyaline cartilage, while other portions are invested in slowly forming fibrocartilage. In cases of long standing the hyaline cartilage undergoes degenerative changes and eventually is replaced in part, particularly in the superficial strata, by fibrous tissue or imperfectly formed fibrocartilage. The deeper portions of the bodies usually comprise bone, which at first retains its normal pattern. Later, it undergoes necrosis. This is manifested by fragmentation and atrophy of the bony trabeculae and poor staining qualities of the bone. Some observers (Allison and Ghormley) point out that the bodies fail to produce a foreign body reaction because the cartilaginous layers surrounding the necrotic bony nucleus obtain some nourishment from the synovial fluid and hence retain in part at least their vitality. This aborts the reaction which ordinarily would occur when devitalized bone is placed in a joint.

It was recorded previously that after a period of time it is difficult and at times

impossible to determine the site of origin of loose bodies, especially when many years have elapsed since the time of detachment. During this period reparative processes may have obliterated the source, such as a defect in the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles or the patella, and the mechanical derangement of the joint produced by the bodies may have resulted in the development of varying degrees of osteoarthritic alterations. After a time all bodies, no matter what their origin, tend to approach a similar form of structure.

The clinical manifestations of loose bodies associated with osteoarthritis of the knee joint are essentially those of degenerative arthritis to which are added the features typical of a loose body, if the body has not attained a secondary attachment. When the body is fixed in some recess of the joint the phenomena associated with freely mobile bodies disappear.

Röntgenographic study reveals the classical features of osteoarthritis: spur formation at the articular margins, the patellar poles and the tibial spines, thinning of the joint space and subchondral sclerosis, in addition loose bodies are identified in one of the joint recesses, particularly the posterior compartment. Osteoarthritis and osteochondromatosis may be observed in the same joint. This is the usual finding in cases of osteochondromatosis of many years' duration. It is difficult to establish whether or not the osteoarthritis antedated or was initiated by the osteochondromatosis (Figs 325 and 326). A careful history may throw some light on the problem.

#### MANAGEMENT

Loose bodies which cause mechanical irritation should be removed in order to protect the joint from further damage. In cases associated with advanced osteoarthritis in which the synovialis is thickened and hyperplastic and shows evidence of villous formation, synovectomy and general débridement of the joint may be indicated. This proce-



in the intercondylar notch their removal is facilitated by one of the parapatellar incisions. These approaches permit adequate inspection of the suprapatellar pouch and the anterior compartment of the joint. When the bodies are situated in the posterior compartments of the joint the mid line incision on the posterior aspect of the knee or the posteromedial and the anterolateral incisions of Henderson may be utilized. The latter two incisions are particularly valuable when only a limited exposure is desired. If the pathologic process in the synovial membrane is still active or if the synovialis exhibits secondary alterations, such as villous synovitis synovectomy should be performed. In the knee a large portion of the synovial lining can be removed, however the lining in the posterior aspect of the joint is not readily accessible. Occasionally when bodies are situated in both the anterior and the posterior recesses of the knee joint two approaches are necessary to remove all the bodies. This may be executed at one operation or the posterior compartment may be explored at a second operation. Exploration of the joint may fail to locate some of the bodies visualized by roentgenograms. In such instances the bodies may be located in bursal sacs or diverticuli of the joint cavity or they may be encysted within the synovial membrane. A thorough search must be made in such instances and the bursal sac or pouch should be excised together with the bodies.

In cases in which the synovial membrane exhibits no evidence of a pathologic process and grossly appears to be normal synovectomy is not justifiable. Removal of the bodies alone suffices to effect a cure. Loose bodies are very illusive a roentgenogram taken with a portable machine before the wound is closed will ensure against failure to remove all bodies present.

#### PROGNOSIS

After all the bodies are removed and if the synovial membrane is no longer active

in the production of bodies, good results can be anticipated so far as the formation of more bodies is concerned. The amount of residual dysfunction depends upon the absence or the presence of osteoarthritic changes at the time of surgical intervention provided that the pathologic process in the synovialis is no longer active. When the former circumstances exist, the results should be excellent. When the latter circumstances prevail the degree of dysfunction is governed by the severity of the osteoarthritic alterations. In these cases removal of the bodies together with partial or complete synovectomy will not only eliminate the chief causes of mechanical derangement of the joint but also will prevent further trauma to an already impaired joint.

When the bodies arise in bursae about the joint all the bodies together with the bursal sac should be removed. Cases have been recorded in which several bodies have been left in the joint following operation in some no damage resulted particularly if the bodies were large and in others the bodies disappeared subsequently. When surgical intervention is attempted during the active stage of the disorder failure to extirpate the entire affected synovial membrane may result in recurrence of osteochondromatosis.

#### LOOSE BODIES ASSOCIATED WITH OSTEOARTHRITIS

Essentially the pathologic process in the knee joint is degenerative arthritis which, as was pointed out previously may be secondary to some mechanical derangement of the joint or may be the result of wear, tear and aging. In such joints osteophytes varying in size and consisting of cartilaginous or osteocartilaginous tissue are encountered frequently. The usual sites of origin are at the synovial-chondral juncture of the femoral condyles at the inferior and the superior poles of the patella and at the apices

of the tibial spines. Usually, no more than 2 or 3 bodies are found in the same knee joint. In addition to detachment of the marginal osteophytes (also designated periaricular ecchondroses), bodies of similar structures arising from the articular cartilage of the ends of the bones may become detached. This type of loose body was first described by Shattuck. Detachment of the osteophytes is caused by some form of direct or indirect trauma. The liberated body may remain free in the joint cavity or gravitate into one of the recesses of the joint, usually the posterior compartment, and there they attain a secondary attachment to the synovial lining.

Osteophytes detached recently reveal a raw irregular surface where formerly they were attached to the parent bone. They vary in size and configuration. After detachment the raw surfaces are covered by fibrous tissue which soon assumes the characteristics of fibrocartilage. Some portions of the surfaces of the bodies retain the normal covering of hyaline cartilage, while other portions are invested in slowly forming fibrocartilage. In cases of long standing the hyaline cartilage undergoes degenerative changes and eventually is replaced in part, particularly in the superficial strata, by fibrous tissue or imperfectly formed fibrocartilage. The deeper portions of the bodies usually comprise bone which at first retains its normal pattern, later it undergoes necrosis. This is manifested by fragmentation and atrophy of the bony trabeculae and poor staining qualities of the bone. Some observers (Allison and Ghormley) point out that the bodies fail to produce a foreign body reaction because the cartilaginous layers surrounding the necrotic bony nucleus obtain some nourishment from the synovial fluid and hence retain in part at least their vitality. This aborts the reaction which ordinarily would occur when devitalized bone is placed in a joint.

It was recorded previously that after a period of time it is difficult and at times

impossible to determine the site of origin of loose bodies, especially when many years have elapsed since the time of detachment. During this period reparative processes may have obliterated the source, such as a defect in the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles or the patella, and the mechanical derangement of the joint produced by the bodies may have resulted in the development of varying degrees of osteoarthritic alterations. After a time all bodies, no matter what their origin, tend to approach a similar form of structure.

The clinical manifestations of loose bodies associated with osteoarthritis of the knee joint are essentially those of degenerative arthritis, to which are added the features typical of a loose body, if the body has not attained a secondary attachment. When the body is fixed in some recess of the joint the phenomena associated with freely mobile bodies disappear.

Roentgenographic study reveals the classical features of osteoarthritis: spur formation at the articular margins, the patellar poles and the tibial spines, thinning of the joint space and subchondral sclerosis, in addition, loose bodies are identified in one of the joint recesses, particularly the posterior compartment. Osteoarthritis and osteochondromatosis may be observed in the same joint, this is the usual finding in cases of osteochondromatosis of many years' duration. It is difficult to establish whether or not the osteoarthritis antedated or was initiated by the osteochondromatosis (Figs 325 and 326). A careful history may throw some light on the problem.

#### MANAGEMENT

Loose bodies which cause mechanical irritation should be removed in order to protect the joint from further damage. In cases associated with advanced osteoarthritis in which the synovialis is thickened and hyperplastic and shows evidence of villous formation, synovectomy and general débridement of the joint may be indicated. This proce-

ture is performed best through one of the parapatellar incisions preferably the lateral. For removal of the bodies alone, the incisions employed are similar to those utilized to remove loose bodies associated with osteochondritis and osteochondromatosis.

The postoperative management in these cases demands special emphasis. A concerted effort should be made to develop the quadriceps apparatus to its maximum level of efficiency. This protects the joint from added trauma which invariably results from a lax extensor mechanism and laxity of the ligaments and the capsule; these are frequent concomitant features of osteoarthritis. In addition the patient should eliminate excessive and strenuous activities. The demands made on the joint should not exceed its functional capacity.

### LOOSE BODIES OF TRAUMATIC ORIGIN

These include cartilaginous or osteocartilaginous bodies produced by some form of trauma and are comparable with subchondral fractures of the patella or of the femoral condyles and fractures of the tibial spines with detachment. Subchondral fractures of the patella and fractures of the tibial spine have been discussed previously. Immediately after their detachment the bodies present a raw surface at the site of their attachment to the parent bone; they vary in size and configuration. If they contain calcified material and osseous tissue the bodies are readily demonstrable by roentgenographic study. On the other hand large cartilaginous bodies may be radiolucent. In cases of subchondral fractures of the patella a small thin sliver of calcified material may be the only indication of a large cartilaginous body in the joint. In recent cases the defect from which the body originates may be discernible roentgenographically.

The ultimate fate of traumatic loose

bodies, provided that they remain free and fail to attain a secondary attachment to the synovialis, is similar to that of other types of loose-body formation. Also like other types, they may cause sufficient mechanical irritation in the knee joint to stimulate pathologic reactions culminating in osteoarthritis of varying intensity.

Immediately after detachment the diagnosis is not difficult to establish. There is usually a history of some type of violence to the knee joint, followed by effusion, hemarthrosis and dysfunction. Roentgenographic studies uncover the presence of radiopaque bodies in the joint and also may indicate the source of origin of the body. In cases of long standing the clinical features are those of a loose body added to manifestations consistent with osteoarthritis of the knee joint.

Treatment of recent subchondral fractures and fractures of the tibial spines has been considered previously. Management of traumatic loose bodies residing in the knee joint for months or years is similar to that described for other types of loose bodies.

### LOOSE BODIES ARISING FROM MENISCI

These may be considered as another type of traumatic loose bodies (Fig. 330). Comprehension of the pathogenesis of these fibrocartilaginous bodies is facilitated when one realizes that repeated trappings of the central segment of a longitudinal tear may cut off small pieces of fibrocartilage from the main central portion of the meniscus. The clinical manifestations are those typical of a torn meniscus to which are added the features of loose bodies, provided that they are unattached in the joint. Roentgenograms fail to show the bodies unless some calcification has occurred. The goal of the treatment should be excision of the torn meniscus, removal of the loose bodies and restoration of normal tone, power and control of the quadriceps muscle.

## RICE BODIES (CORPORA ORYZOIDEA)

These are small, glistening, whitish bodies usually found in great numbers and have been likened to rice kernels or melon seeds. They comprise unorganized fibrin or necrotic villi of a hyperplastic synovial membrane such as is encountered in chronic arthritis or synovitis and in tuberculosis of joints or tendon sheaths. Occasionally, they may develop after hemarthrosis when they consist principally of unorganized fibrin; the bodies sometimes show a laminated pattern.

The bodies found in chronic synovitis or proliferative arthritis develop differently from those encountered in tuberculosis. In the former, the tissue reaction is reflected in the response of the capsular tissues; these may exhibit extensive cellular proliferation in all strata, including the synovialis, which may display advanced villous formation. The villi may become thickened and bulbous; their vascular channels may become obliterated; the villi now undergo necrosis and are exfoliated into the joint as free bodies. Rice bodies occur in greater numbers in proliferative arthritis and synovitis than in tuberculosis (Fig. 333).

Rice bodies arising in tuberculous joints comprise chiefly unorganized fibrin which is deposited on villi layer by layer. Eventually, the villi are detached and dropped into the joint cavity. As pointed out by Luck, when the joint is in motion fibrin may be rolled up into small oval or rounded bodies.

At first, rice bodies, no matter what their origin, may disclose frayed, irregular peripheries. Later they become smooth, white, glistening and assume a characteristic configuration resembling melon seeds.

## OTHER VARIETIES OF LOOSE BODIES

For the sake of completeness, mention must be made of loose bodies associated with other joint disorders.

1 **Suppurative Arthritis.** Pyogenic infections of the knee joint may result in necrosis of some portions of the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia or the patella. In the wake of this tragedy loose bodies may be found in the joint in the form of segments of articular cartilage varying in size or necrotic pieces of bone covered with devitalized cartilage. In cases of infection of the hip joint extrusion of the whole capital epiphysis may be encountered.

2 **Neuropathic Joints.** Degenerative lesions of the central nervous system, such as those observed in syringomyelia and tabes dorsalis, frequently are accompanied by disintegration of one or more joints. The knee is implicated more frequently than other joints. Loose bodies are formed by severance of osteophytes or develop from synovial fringes. Generally, they are larger than those encountered in other forms of loose bodies; they vary in size in the same joint, are often irregular and may be free or attached to the synovial lining. The diagnosis is readily established by the presence of a large boggy knee joint exhibiting abnormal mobility and giving rise to no pain. The roentgenographic features are typical for this type of joint disorder; these are discussed in the section dealing with neuropathic arthropathies.

3 **Tuberculosis of the Knee Joint.** In advanced lesions sequestration of portions of the articular surface of the bone ends may occur; the end of the femur is affected more frequently.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Allison and Ghormley: *Diagnosis in Joint Disease*. New York, William and Wood Co., 1931.

Arthausen G: *Die Entstehung der freien Gelenkkörper und ihre Beziehungen zur Arthritis deformans*. Arch. klin. Chir. 104: 581, 1914.

- Barth, A. Die Entstehung und das Wachstum der freien Gelenkkörper Arch. klin. Chir. Berl. 56 50, 1898
- Barwell R. Movable bodies in joints Brit. M. J. 1 184 1896
- Berry J. Fifty loose bodies removed from a knee-joint, Tr. Path. Soc. London 42 275 1891
- Multiple loose bodies from the knee-joint Brit. M. J. 1 1081 1894
- Bilbergel E. Chondromatosis des Handgelenkes Ztschr. orthop. Chir. 33 620 1913
- Bland-Sutton, J. Tumours innocent and malignant, Ed. 7 806 pp., New York: Cassell, 1922
- Bloodgood, J. C. Joints Free bodies Progressive Med. 202 203 December 1899
- Fractures, dislocations amputations surgery of the extremities and orthopedics Progressive Med. 4 202 1899
- Bolton, P. S. An analysis of cases of loose body of the knee treated by operation between 1885 and 1895 New York M. J. 63 830 1896
- Brann L. Ueber eine myxomatöse Degeneration der Synovialis des Kniegelenkes Inaug. Diss., Breslau, Neumann, 1869
- Broca Paul Sur la necrose des cartilages articulaires p. 38 Denkschrift zur Feier des 10. Jahr. Stiftungsfester des Vereins deutscher Aerzte in Paris 1854
- Brodie D. Pathological and surgical observations on the diseases of the joints p. 278 London Longmans 1836
- Bryant J. C. So-called "joint derangement" from movable bodies in joints M. Rec. 61 761 1902
- Buchner L. and Rieger H. Können freie Gelenkkörper durch Trauma entstehen? Arch. klin. Chir. Berl. 116 460 1921
- Carothers R. A case of joint mice Lancet Clin. exl. 320 1914
- Colonna P. C. Osteochondromatosis of the knee joint Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 53 698 1931
- Dick E. On loose cartilages in the articulations and a new instrument to extract them, Brit. M. J. 2 274 1866
- Eden, B. Gelenkhondrome Arch. klin. Chir. 104 2, 1914
- Ewing James Neoplastic Diseases A Treatise on Tumors Ed. 3 pp. 25 202 Philadelphia Saunders, 1928
- Faber Alexander Ueber Gelenkhondromatose Ztschr. Orthop. Chir. 58 568 1933
- Fisher A. G. T. A study of loose bodies composed of cartilage or of cartilage and bone occurring in joints With a special reference to their pathology and etiology Brit. J. Surg. 8 493 1920-1921
- Freiberg A. H. Osteochondritis dissecans J. Bone & Joint Surg. 3 13 1923
- Freund, Ernst Chondromatosis of the joints, Arch. Surg. 34 670 1937
- Garre C. Diffuses Sarkom der Kniegelenkkapsel, Beitr. z. klin. Chir. 7 232 1890-1891
- Hagemann R. Gelenkkapselhondrome des Schultergelenkes Med. Klin. 2 1243 1913
- Hahn, L. Ueber die Entstehung der Gelenkkörper bei Arthritis deformans Deutsch. Ztschr. Chir. cxlix 289 1919
- Habstead, A. E. Floating bodies in joints Ann. Surg. 22 327 1895
- Heineck, A. F. Joint bodies free within and from without present in articulations otherwise apparently normal, Illinois M. J. 27 1 1915
- Henderson, M. S. Loose bodies in the knee-joint, Am. J. Orthop. Surg. 14 265 1916
- Osteochondromatosis of the knee-joint, Am. J. Orthop. Surg. 15 351 1917
- Loose bodies in the elbow joint J.A.M.A. 71 177 1918
- Osteocartilaginous joint bodies, Railway S. J. 25 49 1918
- Posterolateral incision for the removal of loose bodies from the posterior compartment of the knee joint Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 33 698 1921
- Henderson M. S., and Jones, H. T. Loose bodies in joints and bursae due to synovial osteochondromatosis J. Bone & Joint Surg. 5 400 1923
- Hildebrand Experimenteller Beitrag zur Lehre von den freien Gelenkkörpern Deutsche Ztschr. Chir. Leipzig. 42 292 1895
- Humphry G. M. Loose bodies in joints Brit. M. J. 2 707 1888
- Ito L. K. The nutrition of articular cartilage and its method of repair Brit. J. Surg. 12 31 1924
- Jones, H. T. Loose body formation in synovial osteochondromatosis with special reference to the etiology and pathology J. Bone & Joint Surg. 6 407 1924
- The histogenesis of cartilage as shown in chondromatosis of the knee joint J. Bone & Joint Surg. 9 310 1927
- Kappis M. Ueber Bau, Wachstum und Ursprung der Gelenkmause Deutsche Ztschr. Chir. 157 214 1920
- Zur Lehre von den Gelenkmausen Deutsche med. Wchnschr. 46 1161 1920
- Keibel, Franz und Mall F. P. Manual of Human Embryology Vol. 1 Philadelphia Lippincott, 1910
- Kienbock R. Ueber Gelenkkapselhondrome und Sarkome Fortschr. a. d. Geb. d. Röntgenstrahlen 24 468 1916-1917

- Ueber Gelenkkapselchondrome Deutsche Ztschr Chir cxli 232 1917
- Kirrmisson M Rapport sur plusieurs faits d'arthrotomie pour corps étrangers articulaires Bull et mém Soc chir Paris 7 183 1886
- Kirrmisson, M Rapport sur deux mémoires de MM Krag Basse et Claudio médecins principaux de l'armée relatifs aux corps étrangers articulaires et à leur traitement, Bull. et mém Soc. chir Paris 14 883 1888
- Kohylinski, T L Abstr., Gelenkchondrome, Zentralbl. Chir 37 12 1910
- Koenig, F Ueber freie Körper in den Gelenken Deutsche Ztschr Chir 27 90 1888
- Kolliker A. Manual of Human Histology 1, 326-329 London Sydenham Soc 1853-1854
- Kopp J W Osteochondromatose van de gewrichtskapsel, Nederl. tijdschr geneesk. 2 1175 1916
- Lamson, O F Movable bodies in the knee joint Surg., Gynec. & Obst 33 490 1921
- Langemak, O Zur Kenntnis der Chondrome und anderer seltener Geschwülste der Gelenke, Arch. klin. Chir 72 55 1904
- Lewis T L., and Stohr F A Textbook of Histology pp 97 98 Philadelphia Blakiston 1913
- Lexer E Gelenkchondrome Deutsche Ztschr Chir 88 311 1907
- Lehrbuch der allgemeinen Chirurgie zum Gebrauche für Ärzte und Studierende ii p. 272 Stuttgart, Enke 1914
- Lichtenberg V Chondromatose München med. Wchnschr 54 390 1907
- Lindem Martin C Fractures of the capitellum and trochlea Ann. Surg 76 78 1922
- Livingston T F Loose bodies in joints with special reference to those found in the elbow joint Internat J Surg 19 335 1906
- Lotsch, F Ueber Chondromatose der Gelenkkapsel, Deutsche med. Wchnschr 46 544 1920
- Ludloff K Zur Frage der Osteochondritis dissecans am Knie, Arch. Klin. Chir 87 552 1908
- Macartney J On the movable cartilaginous bodies found in the synovial and serous cavities Tr Prov M & S A. 9 427 1841
- Mall F P Reference in Prentiss and Arey Textbook of Embryology Ed. 3 p 286 Philadelphia Saunders 1922
- Marsh F H Notes suggested by some of the specimens that have been added to the museum in the course of the year St Bartholomew's Hosp Rep. 4 248 1868
- Marsh H and Watson C G Diseases of the Joints and Spine p. 253 Chicago Chicago M B Co 1910
- Minot, C S Human Embryology p 421 New York, Wood, 1892
- Monro Alexander Microgeologie p 236 Berlin, Billroth, 1856 Quoted by Barth.
- Müller W Ueber diffuses Enchondrom der Gelenkkapsel, Arch. klin. Chir 66 637 1902
- Mussey R. D., Jr., and Henderson, M. S Osteochondromatosis J Bone & Joint Surg 31 A 619 1949
- Nussbaum A. Ueber die Gefäße des unteren femurales und ihre Beziehungen zur pathologie Beitr z klin. Chir 129 244 1923
- Paget, Sir James On the production of some of the loose bodies in joints St. Bartholomew's Hosp Rep 6 1 1870
- Patterson R. G A contribution to the pathology of joint bodies Tr Roy Acad. Med., Ireland 8 362 1890
- Pernster D B The causes of loose bodies in joints arising from the articular surface of the joint, J Bone & Joint Surg 6 278 1924
- Rainey Loose cartilage from elbow joint, Tr Path. Soc. London 2 109 1848-1850
- Rehn, E Gelenkchondrome Beitr z klin. Chir 71 81, 1911
- Reichel, P Chondromatose der Kniegelenkkapsel, Arch. klin. Chir 61 717 1900
- Ruedel Demonstration von Gelenkkapsel-Enchondromen Verhandl. deutsch. Gesellsch. Chir 32 67 1903
- Rumann H Experimenteller Beitrag zur Lehre von der Entstehung der echten, freien Gelenkkörper Arch. f path. Anat. u. Physiol 180 446 1905
- Rixford Emmet Osteochondromatosis Ann Surg 92 673 1930
- Robertson, H. E Class Lectures in Pathology Univ Minnesota M Sch., 1916-1917
- Roesner E. Die Entstehungsmechanik der sogenannten Osteochondritis dissecans am Kniegelenk, Beitr z klin. Chir 127 537 1922
- Rokitansky C A Manual of Pathological Anatomy III pp 43-44 Philadelphia Lea, 1855
- Smith Wallis Osteochondromatosis report of case, J Missouri M A. 30 316 1933
- Strangeways, T S P Observations on the nutrition of articular cartilage Brit. M J 1 661 1920.
- Troell A Ueber Gelenkkapselchondrome Arch. klin. Chir 118 662 1921
- Whitlocke R. H A Loose bodies in the knee With special reference to their etiology and growth, Brit J Surg 1 650 1913-1914
- Wilmoth, C. L. Osteochondromatosis J Bone & Joint Surg 23 367 1941
- Ziegner B Synovia und Gelenkmause Arch. klin. Chir 118 662 1921

## Affections of the Synovialis and the Bursae of the Knee Joint

*The pathologic processes of the synovial membrane observed in proliferative and degenerative arthritis are not discussed herein these changes are considered in the next chapter which deals with arthritis of the knee joint Before we can treat synoviditis intelligently comprehension of the structure, the functions and the peculiarities of the synovial membrane and the synovial fluid is essential*

### SYNOVIALIS

Most joint capsules consist of two layers (1) an outer layer comprising dense fibrous tissue and (2) an inner layer, composed of modified connective tissue, the synovialis. In the knee joint the external fibrous component of the capsule is deficient in the anterior aspect of the joint here the synovialis lies directly on the anterior surface of the femur and then is reflexed to the posterior surface of the quadriceps tendon forming the suprapatellar pouch Kling points out that a layer of fat intervenes between the synovialis and the anterior surface of the femur he designated this the posterior suprapatellar fat pad another similar fat pad is found between the quadriceps tendon and the synovialis (the anterior suprapatellar fat pad) The synovial membrane is more cellular than the outer layer and contains specialized cells which form mucin It terminates at the cartilaginous surfaces and possesses a rich blood supply The blood vessels lie immediately below the synovial lining and normally do

not lie on the surface Also this delicate structure is endowed with rich lymphatic plexuses Fine nerve fibers accompany the blood vessels ending in terminal arborizations or end bulbs or plates In the layer immediately below the surface pacinian corpuscles are invariably present

Several variations of the synovial lining have been described The nature of the structure is determined by the character of the underlying tissues All types may be encountered in the same joint Key recorded these variations the areolar, the fibrous and the adipose

The areolar variation is located on loose connective tissue which is not subjected to strain or pressure and allows considerable mobility of the synovial lining Numerous villi are demonstrable they comprise projections of the areolar tissue which are invested in synovial cells The shape of the villi varies from fine single fingerlike structures to clusters of branching villi Essentially the synovial lining comprises collagenous fibers between which fibroblasts with processes of varying lengths are interspersed The fibroblasts do not form a continuous covering for the loose connective tissue This type is richly supplied with blood vessels lymphatics and medullated and nonmedullated nerve fibers

Those elements of the joints which are subjected constantly to strain during normal function such as tendons and intra-articular ligaments are covered by the fibrous variation of the synovialis. This

lining consists of dense connective tissue of which the outer surface is more cellular than the rest of the membrane. If subjected to unusual pressure and stress, this tissue assumes the characteristics of fibrocartilage.

The adipose form of synovialis covers fatty tissue which projects into joint cavities, such as the fat pads of the knee joint. Normally, it comprises a delicate single layer of cells supported by a thin stratum of loose connective tissue.

The synovial membrane may be thrown into folds when the joint assumes certain positions. This is particularly true of the synovialis that lines the anterior and inferior aspects of the shoulder joint and the posterior aspect of the knee joint. However, these are only temporary folds which are obliterated readily when the joint capsule is put on a stretch. On the other hand, permanent folds may be observed. These comprise villi projecting into the joint cavity, they may be fine fingerlike projections or clusters of branching villi while others are short and clubbed and project from a broad base.

Usually the synovial cells are found in clusters several rows deep, occupying a position on the surface, particularly the surfaces of villi. A fine fibrillar stroma separates the cells so that the surface covering is not complete. Although they exhibit marked polymorphism most of them are cuboid, spherical or polygonal in shape. A Golgi apparatus characteristic of secretory cells has been demonstrated in many of the cells. While the office of some synovial cells is to secrete mucin others function as phagocytes; these usually are situated in the deeper layers and have an affinity for colloidal particles of certain dyes and particularly matter such as carbon particles of India ink.

The synovialis responds promptly to injury or disease. In general, the response is similar to that of all connective tissues, namely by the formation of granulation

tissue. However, this structure has the power to regenerate so that when destroyed by trauma or disease or when removed surgically, regeneration can be anticipated if the causative factors are eliminated and if the pathologic processes have not progressed to irreversible stages.

#### SYNOVIAL FLUID

In general, synovial fluid closely resembles plasma, both from a chemical and a serologic viewpoint. However, its protein and total solids are less than those found in plasma. It is the dialysate of plasma which contains mucin, a product secreted by specific cells in the synovial membrane. Synovial fluid appears first as a filtrate from the subsynovial capillary bed, later, mucin is added in the joint cavity, giving the fluid its gross characteristics, the mucoprotein content is responsible for the high viscosity and the lubricating nature of synovial fluid. It is a clear, slightly yellow tinged fluid with a pH of 8.2 to 8.4. According to Kling, its viscosity ranges from 10.7 to 20, its total solid content from 4 to 4.4 per cent, and it has a specific gravity of 1.040. The cell content varies but in normal fluid it is usually under 60 cells per cu. mm. and rarely exceeds 200 cells per cu. mm. The predominant cells are mononuclear, 95 per cent of them being mononuclear, while 5 per cent are polymorphonuclear, from 30 to 60 per cent of the mononuclear cells are synovial lining cells (Kling), and the rest are monocytes, macrophages and lymphocytes. Meyer recorded that the viscosity is due, to some extent, to hyaluronic acid. Although the viscosity of normal fluid is greater than the pathologic it contains less hyaluronic acid, which in pathologic states may be changed by hyaluronidase. The amount of synovial fluid in a joint is small (0.5 to 3.0 cc. in the knee joint) nevertheless, it performs specific functions. Its two prime functions are (1) to provide adequate lubrication for the articular ends of the bones and (2) to supply nutrients to the articular cartilage. In ad



dition its high alkalinity protects the articular surfaces from noxious acid substances which are by-products of normal metabolism. Normal joint function is essential for the maintenance of an adequate supply of fluid in the joint. The rich vascular bed in the subsynovial stratum makes essential nutrients in the plasma readily accessible while the ample lymphatic plexuses in synovial membranes provide an efficient mechanism for the removal of undesirable by-products of metabolism and those produced by disease. The phagocytic nature of some synovial cells regulates the interchange of colloids between the synovial fluid and the blood and the lymphatic systems and plays a major role in the reaction of the joint to noxious factors. Interference in the normal metabolic interchanges negotiated by the synovial fluid is reflected in the response of the synovial membrane and degenerative changes in the articular cartilage.

The composition and the volume of synovial fluid exhibit alterations from the normal early in any form of inflammation of the joint. The extent of swelling is governed by the amount of free fluid in the joint cavity and the fluid in the periarticular tissue. Concomitant findings are (1) increase in the protein content of the fluid and (2) decrease in the sugar content. Increase in the globulin fraction is chiefly responsible for the rise in the protein concentration. With inflammation fibrinogen and prothrombin appear in the synovial fluid. These substances cause clotting. The mucin content increases and the pH of the fluid shifts to the acid side. Increase in the number of cells occurs immediately with any inflammatory process. Acceleration of the inflammatory process is accompanied by turbidity of the fluid. The predominating cells found vary depending upon the noxious agent and the duration of the synovitis. In acute traumatic synovitis the predominating cells are polymorphonuclear types; in chronic synovitis resulting from repeated

traumas, the mononuclear cells usually predominate.

Mechanical or clinical irritants also initiate a characteristic response in the synovial membrane. The special synovial cells are stimulated to increased activity resulting in increase in the mucin content of the fluid and hypertrophy and increase in the number of cells. The entire synovialis becomes thickened, hyperplastic, hyperemic and edematous. The lymphatic system is unable to remove harmful products and debris produced by the pathologic process; the lymphatic channels become obliterated by increased intra-articular pressure thereby permitting accumulating irritants to stimulate still further the synovial membrane. This same process is observed following extensive hemarthrosis; here additional irritating agents are produced by decomposition of the red blood cells. In the light of the aforementioned observations it becomes apparent that continued irritation of the synovial membrane, no matter what the causative agent may be, results in pathologic alterations in the synovialis which are referred to as chronic synovitis. Chronic synovitis may or may not be associated with changes in the cartilaginous and the osseous elements of the joint since the causative agents and the duration of the malady govern the development of these added features.

#### ACUTE TRAUMATIC SYNOVITIS

This designation is employed to denote a specific clinical manifestation of the synovialis when it is injured; it is not a diagnosis. In most instances the causative factors are readily recognized but occasionally they defy all known diagnostic aids. The most common joint traumas initiating this response of the synovial membrane are those incident to the various types of internal derangements; essentially the response comprises the formation of varying amounts of synovial effusion. Acute traumatic synovitis is a sequel of all types of acute knee injuries. It is of great impor-

tance to establish the agent responsible for the joint reaction, only then can proper steps be taken to eradicate the etiologic factor. Failure to achieve this may predispose the patient to recurrences of traumatic synovitis. This sequence of events is observed frequently in knees in which a segment of a torn meniscus is trapped repeatedly between the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia or when an inefficient quadriceps mechanism fails to stabilize the knee joints and permits giving way or buckling incidents.

Following some form of injury to the knee joint, an increase in the volume of synovial fluid ensues. This increase in volume is accompanied by hyperactivity of the secretory cells of the synovial membrane, thereby increasing the amount of mucin in the joint fluid. Absence of gross blood indicates that only avascular structures are involved such as the semilunar cartilages or the articular cartilage. If gross blood is demonstrable one must assume the presence of a coexisting lesion of the vascular elements, such as the periphery of the menisci, the cruciate ligaments, the synovial membrane and capsule and the osseous components of the joint. The appearance of gross fat droplets in the fluid is suggestive of intra articular fracture.

As noted previously, large amounts of synovial fluid increase the intra-articular tension hence mechanically impairing the normal functions of the synovial membrane, particularly its phagocytic and absorptive actions. The protein content of the fluid increases and the alkalinity of the fluid is decreased and shifts to the acid side. There is a rapid rise in the cell content, the predominating cells being polymorphonuclear in type and the fluid becomes turbid. In addition precipitation of fibrin and prothrombin lays the foundation for the formation of granulation tissue. If these circumstances persist the accumulated noxious elements in the joint fluid overwhelm completely the synovial mem-

brane, which undergoes hypertrophy, thickening and later fibrosis. It becomes apparent that a concerted effort must be made to remove the irritants from the joint cavity so that the synovial membrane can resume its normal activities. Only by so doing can one avert the unfavorable sequelae—chronic synovitis and osteoarthritis. Also the primary etiologic agents must be identified and eliminated.

**Clinical Features** In uncomplicated cases the pertinent clinical manifestations of this disorder are varying degrees of distention of the joint capsule, discomfort and stiffness in the knee joint. The symptoms are the result of mechanical distention of the capsule. Pain is never severe unless a coexisting hemarthrosis exists. Blood irritates the synovial lining and produces intense pain. After the injury several hours elapse before discernible swelling of the joint is manifest. This feature differentiates the lesion from hemarthrosis in which swelling of the joint is demonstrable within 1 to 2 hours after the injury.

When resulting from some form of internal derangement, traumatic synovitis is accompanied by some limitation of motion. This may result from actual mechanical blocking of the joint, from muscle spasm or from both. Some increased local temperature is observed, but rarely is there a general systemic reaction. The regional landmarks of the knee are obliterated by the distended capsule. Most of the swelling is in the suprapatellar region and on each side of the patellar tendon. The patella is forced away from the anterior surface of the femoral condyles. Tapping with the index finger elicits ballotment of the patella and a click as it strikes the anterior surface of the femur. If the synovitis is a concomitant feature of some form of internal derangement, such as a tear of one of the menisci, then the clinical features of the derangement are present.

Roentgenologic study of uncomplicated cases, particularly those with no intra

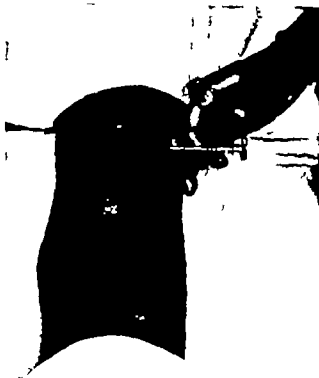


FIG 331 Aspiration of the knee. The procedure should be performed with strict aseptic technic. The preferred site of puncture is on the outer aspect of the knee just above the superior pole of the patella.

articular fracture provides no significant in formation except a wide joint space in some instances Roentgenograms taken to por tray the soft tissues reveal distention of the periarticular tissues Effusion persisting for more than 2 or 3 weeks causes marked stretching of the capsule and the ligaments and relaxation and atrophy of the extensor mechanism Recurrent effusions produce the same results which predispose the pa tient to development of varying degrees of osteoarthritis and severe dysfunction of the knee joint.

**Management.** The immediate treatment is designed to reduce intra articular tension and to preserve quadriceps power and con trol. Later attention is directed toward re moval of the primary causative factor such as some form of internal derangement If one is identified

Small effusions with minimal distention of the capsule need not be aspirated A

snug elastic compression bandage is ap plied This enhances absorption of the fluid and restricts joint motion If possible weight bearing should be prohibited for several days However, in some instances complete rest is not desirable by the pa tient here at least limited weight bearing should be enforced Massive effusion must be aspirated After the joint is decom pressed, a compression bandage is applied and bed rest is instituted If the effusion recurs, aspiration is repeated. In all cases progressive exercises of the quadriceps muscle are instituted immediately Only by this means is rapid and disabling atrophy of the quadriceps muscle prevented First, quadriceps drill is commenced this is fol lowed by straight leg raising against elastic resistance later the muscle is made to raise increasing loads. The importance of restoring the extensor mechanism to nor macy in these cases cannot be emphasized too strongly Allowing cases of simple acute traumatic synovitis to develop pronounced atrophy and relaxation of the capsule and the ligamentous apparatus indicates that the physician in charge has no knowledge of the role that these structures play in the normal mechanics of the knee joint Many neglected cases develop profound dysfunc tion resulting from chronic synovitis and eventually osteoarthritis Occasionally, the damage may be irreparable now the only treatment that can be offered is arthrodesis of the joint With adequate treatment the effusion is absorbed in 1 to 3 weeks if the joint is not subjected to more trauma

If the true etiologic factor responsible for acute traumatic synovitis is recognized such as tears of the menisci loose bodies rup tured ligaments or weakness of the extensor mechanism with or without associated lesions, proper treatment to correct the ex isting disorder should be instituted as soon as circumstances permit Removal of the primary causes will ensure the patient against repeated episodes of synovitis and prevent harmful sequelae

**TECHNIC OF ASPIRATION (Fig 331) As-**

piration must be performed with strict aseptic precautions. After the area is prepared and the knee draped, the site to be punctured is ascertained. The preferred site is on the outer aspect of the knee just above the superior pole of the patella. Here with a fine hypodermic needle, using 1 per cent procaine, an intradermal wheel is raised, the underlying tissues are then infiltrated down to the capsule. After 2 to 5 minutes a large-bore needle is passed at right angles to the skin, it pierces the vastus lateralis muscle and passes behind the quadriceps to enter the suprapatellar pouch. After the joint is evacuated of all accessible fluid an elastic compression bandage is applied.

#### TRAUMATIC HEMARTHROSIS

The amount of free blood in the joint cavity is determined by the severity of the injury and the tissue involved. Massive hemarthrosis is the usual sequel to all types of intra-articular fractures such as fractures of the tibial or the femoral condyles, fractures of the patella which are generally associated with rupture of the medial and the lateral patellar retinaculi, avulsion of the tibial spine and subchondral fractures of the patella. Surgical trauma inflicted on the intra-articular structure during some operative procedure may result in postoperative hemarthrosis. Swelling of the joint occurs shortly after the above injuries. In cases with extensive laceration of the fibrous capsule and the synovialis, much of the blood is dispersed in the periarticular structures; consequently, severe distention of the capsule does not occur.

Other injuries such as maceration or laceration of the infrapatellar fat pad, shredding or rupture of one of the cruciate ligaments usually the anterior ligament, laceration of some area of the synovialis or tears in the vascular peripheral attachment of the menisci usually result in small hemorrhages into the joint cavity. Often the synovial effusion is only slightly blood-tinged. Also the blood is not in sufficient quantities to overcome

the anticoagulant power of the synovial fluid; hence, it remains fluid. This differs from the behavior of blood in a massive hemarthrosis. Here, as pointed out by Smillie, the anticoagulant property of the synovial fluid is overwhelmed completely, permitting intra-articular coagulation. Failure to absorb the clots results in the formation of granulation tissue and ultimately intra-capsular adhesions; hence, varying degrees of joint dysfunction ensue.

Pronounced intra-articular pressure, such as is produced by large effusions or hemorrhages, obliterates the lymphatic channels which normally remove debris and noxious products from the joint cavity. Decomposition of the red blood cells liberates large quantities of hemosiderin which impregnates the synovial membrane. All the aforementioned agents are irritants to the synovialis causing hypertrophy, villus formation and fibrosis of the structure.

**Clinical Manifestations.** As noted previously, hemarthrosis generally accompanies some form of intra-articular trauma. It becomes apparent that it is of the utmost importance to establish early the presence of blood in the cavity of the knee joint. Once the diagnosis is established, concerted effort should be made to find the source of bleeding. By so doing, an intelligent plan of therapy can be instituted. It is essential to remember that hemorrhage is not a concomitant finding of tears of the menisci unless the tears traverse the vascular peripheral attachments. On the other hand, ruptures of the cruciate ligaments invariably result in extravasation of blood into the joint cavity.

Swelling resulting from active bleeding is demonstrable shortly after the injury occurs. This is in contrast with the rate of filling of the joint by traumatic effusion; here several hours elapse before the patient becomes aware of the gradual increase in the size of the joint. Pain is an outstanding feature and is accentuated by motion. Tenderness is readily elicited by applying firm pressure over the suprapatellar pouch; this maneuver increases intra-articular pressure



FIG 332 Tissue obtained from synovectomy in a male 52 years old with chronic villous synovitis. Swelling of the knee had been present 3 years. The entire suprapatellar pouch was obliterated by the hypertrophied and edematous synovialis. Observe the loose bodies encountered in the joint. The cartilaginous and osseous elements of the joint were not implicated.

which intensifies the pain. Gentle palpation of the periarticular tissues reveals a sense of firm resistance to the examining fingers which is characteristic of tissues distended by blood. There is increased local temperature. Usually the knee is held in slight flexion; both flexion and extension may be restricted in varying degrees. The diagnosis is confirmed by aspiration of the joint.

**Management.** From the aforementioned discussion it becomes apparent that the treatment of hemarthrosis is directed primarily toward the lesion responsible for the hemorrhage. This is particularly true in massive hemorrhage associated with fractures of the patella or subchondral fractures of the patella. Grossly blood-stained synovial fluid should make one suspicious of a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament, fracture of the tibial spine or tear of the peripheral attachments of the menisci. Massive hemarthrosis without severe soft

tissue or osseous injury are exceedingly rare but occasionally also occur. Regardless of the cause, large hematomas of joint must be evacuated in order to relieve intra-articular pressure and to evacuate blood which is an irritant to the synovialis. If not removed, blood incites an active inflammatory process. After the joint is aspirated in the manner described previously, an elastic compression bandage is applied, the leg is elevated, and the knee is surrounded by bags containing ice. In cases requiring treatment directed toward the cause of the hemorrhage, aspiration is a desirable preliminary procedure.

In the event that no ligamentous or osseous lesions are demonstrable, aspiration and compression of the joint may be the only treatment indicated. Occasionally, it may be necessary to repeat the aspiration after 1 or 2 days. The limb should be at complete rest for 7 to 10 days in order to avoid recurrence of the bleeding. Then quadriceps exercises and straight leg raising are commenced; this is followed by progressive resistance exercises to restore the extensor apparatus to normalcy.

#### CHRONIC NONSPECIFIC VILLOUS SYNOVITIS

This designation applies to a group of cases which exhibit pronounced proliferation of the synovialis without involvement of the cartilaginous or the osseous elements of the knee joint. The disorder may be observed for many years without simulating the features of rheumatoid arthritis. The etiologic agents are not known; this together with the pathologic process being primarily confined to the synovial membrane, makes classification of the entity extremely difficult. The difficulty of classifying the joints affected by this malady was emphasized by Pemberton who suggested a separate classification such as chronic infectious or chronic traumatic arthritis. Occasionally the form of synovitis may initiate generalized rheumatoid arthritis. Inge records two such cases. In some cases the alterations in the synovialis are eventua-



FIG. 333 Synovial tissue obtained from case J P a female child 26 months old with chronic villous synovialis. Note the numerous rice bodies that were found in the joint cavity many are still attached to the synovialis.



FIG. 334 Photomicrograph  $\times 100$  of chronic villous synovitis. Note the villous formation, the round-cell infiltration in the subsynovial strata and the increased fibrosis.

ally complicated by changes typical of osteoarthritis.

Generally the lesion is monoarticular; however, both knees may be involved. The gross and the microscopic features of the synovialis do not differ from those observed in chronic synovitis associated with rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, infectious arthritis or osteochondromatosis. Macroscopic study reveals that the synovialis is markedly thickened and often forms numerous folds of varying size. It is edematous, congested and studded with numerous fringes and villi. Occasionally in cases of long standing one or more loose bodies may be observed; these may lie free in one of the joint recesses or may be attached to the synovial membrane (Fig. 332). In one case the entire membrane was studded with numerous rice bodies (Fig. 333). Microscopically the essential features are pronounced hyperplasia and hypertrophy of the cells comprising the synovial lining so that numerous villi and folds of varying size are formed. In addition the subsynovial strata exhibit increased vascularity, marked round-cell infiltration and fibrosis (Fig. 334). Pronounced edema of the affected tissues is undoubtedly the result of impairment of the entire lymphatic system

of the region. As noted previously the rise in intra-articular pressure obliterates mechanically the lymphatic channels whose prime function is to remove noxious products. In addition, the phagocytic function of the synovial cells is impaired. These alterations permit accumulation of protein substances which reduce the alkalinity of the synovial fluid and allow precipitation of colloid substances including fibrin. These agents are irritants to the synovialis. This is reflected in hypertrophy and hyperplasia of its cells and marked vascularity and fibrosis in the subsynovial strata.

No convincing evidence has been recorded which might point to some organism as the causative agent. Bacteriologic studies of the fluid and of the tissues obtained at operation provide no significant information.

**Clinical Manifestations.** Most of the patients are past middle life. The author has encountered three patients under the age of 6 years; the youngest was 26 months old. The oldest patient encountered was 62

years of age. Women are afflicted more frequently than men.

The clinical manifestations are insidious in nature. In the early stages there is some pain and swelling in the affected knee which is accentuated by activity but relieved by rest. Some swelling may be more or less constant at all times. Later, pain is more severe and the swelling becomes progressively more pronounced. Not infrequently pain and tenderness may be worse in the medial aspect of the joint. The patient may be aware of some crepitus in the knee joint on motion.

Physical examination reveals some atrophy of the quadriceps muscle in all cases. Varying degrees of swelling are present in advanced cases; swelling is discernible below, above and on either side of the patella. Occasionally, when the knee is extended a compressible swelling is palpable in the popliteal space. This is the result of marked intra-articular pressure which causes distention of the posterior capsule or an accessory pouch in this region. Persistent distention of the capsule and the peri-articular structures causes some laxity of all the supporting structures of the knee joint; particularly the extensor mechanism. Walking on rough ground often causes giving way and buckling incidents. Such incidents favor progression of the pathologic processes implicating the synovial membrane.

Roentgenographic studies fail to provide any significant information; they are of value in eliminating specific lesions.

**Diagnosis.** This entity must not be confused with chronic synovitis associated with mechanical disorder or inflammatory processes. It has been pointed out repeatedly in this text that any mechanical derangement of the knee joint such as insufficient extensor apparatus relaxation or ruptures of the ligamentous structures, lesions of the menisci or loose bodies may produce chronic synovitis. In the early stages this malady may simulate closely nonspecific chronic villous synovitis. Later the inevita-

ble alterations consistent with osteoarthritis become manifest. The true nature of the disorder is revealed when a carefully taken history and physical examination of the knee disclose the basic mechanical derangement responsible for the changes in the synovialis.

Inflammatory processes such as rheumatoid arthritis are rarely limited to one articulation; moreover the clinical features pertinent to this disorder are readily demonstrable. In addition, if the synovitis is the result of systemic or local infection elimination of the focus of origin by antibiotics usually results in a cure. Such therapy has no effect on the nonspecific form of synovitis.

In some instances of chronic synovitis associated with osteoarthritis the proliferative character of the synovial membrane may resemble the alterations observed in the synovialis of rheumatoid arthritis. These findings have led some authorities to believe that a mixed form of arthritis must exist having the features of both atrophic arthritis and osteoarthritis. These cases are difficult to classify.

In the event that tuberculous synovitis or neoplastic disease are suspected a punch biopsy of the synovialis will disclose the true nature of the lesion. Serologic examination will exclude cases of syphilitic synovitis.

**Conservative Treatment.** After the diagnosis has been definitely established all cases of nonspecific synovitis should be given a trial of conservative treatment. Essentially this comprises restriction of activity to within the tolerance of the affected joint. If a large synovial effusion is present aspiration is performed and an elastic compression bandage is applied. Reduction of body weight in the obese and, most important of all, redevelopment of the extensor apparatus to maximum efficiency are encouraged. Failure to respond to these measures justifies surgical intervention which is synovectomy.

**Synovectomy (General Considera-**

tions) Excision of the synovial membrane has proved to be a satisfactory method of treatment in chronic synovitis not only in the nonspecific forms but also in some cases of osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis and synovial osteochondromatosis According to some workers, Volkmann was the first to perform this surgical procedure, having pioneered in 1877 in a case of tuberculous synovitis However, Swett and Ellis Jones both in the same year, 1923, laid down the indications and the contraindications for synovectomy in cases of nonspecific synovitis Also, credit must be given to Goldthwait and John Murphy who reported

cases of synovectomy in 1900 and 1916, respectively According to Inge Swett and Jones laid down the following rules which should govern the selection of cases suitable for synovectomy

- 1 The operation should be restricted to cases of nonspecific arthritis

- 2 The pathologic processes should implicate only the synovialis, the cartilaginous and the osseous elements should not be involved

- 3 If feasible, all foci of infection should be eradicated

- 4 Conservative management should be given a trial in all cases

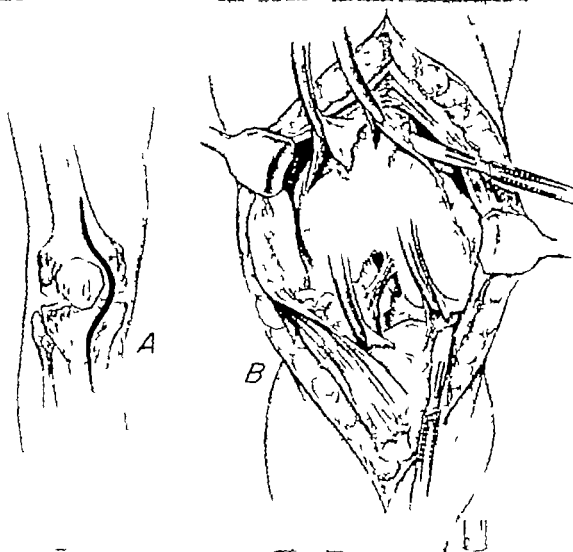


FIG 335 Synovectomy of the knee joint (A) The interior of the joint is exposed through a median parapatellar incision (B) the affected synovialis is removed by sharp dissection





TABLE 8 AUTHOR'S SERIES OF 52  
SYNOVECTOMIES OF THE KNEE  
JOINT OVER ONE YEAR  
POSTOPERATIVELY

Diagnosis	
Chronic nonspecific villous synovitis	12
Traumatic arthritis	3
Hypertrophic arthritis	11
Atrophic arthritis	3
Villonodular synovitis	12
Infectious synovitis (associated with osteomyelitis of patella)	2
Intermittent hydrarthrosis	2
Osteochondromatosis	5
Malignant synovioma	2
Number of patients	46 (6 cases had bilateral involvement)
Age	26 months to 62 years
Females	34
Males	12

old and another in a boy 9 years old in addition to patellectomy, a total synovectomy was performed. These cases are reported in detail later in this chapter. The third case was one of villonodular synovitis in a child (male) 6 years old, this child attained an excellent result following synovectomy. The case is recorded herein. The fourth case was one of chronic nonspecific villous synovitis in a patient (female) 26 months old reported below.

**Case Report** Case J. P., a female, 26 months old was first seen in the outpatient department because of swelling of the left knee. The child did not complain of pain. The swelling appeared insidiously 8 weeks prior to the first medical consultation and increased gradually in size. No history of injury could be elicited from the parents.

Examination of the child revealed a firm swelling of the entire anterior aspect of the knee joint (Fig. 336). No tenderness was noted on palpation. Extension was complete but flexion of the joint lacked 30° as compared with the normal side. After admission to the ward service on March 26, 1951, aspiration of the joint revealed an amber-colored fluid. All the bacteriologic tests were negative. Roentgenograms disclosed nothing more

than distention of the joint capsule. Tuberculin tests were also negative. After 3 weeks of rest and immobilization of the knee joint, the swelling had subsided slightly, but a firm elastic mass was palpable in the suprapatellar region of the joint. A biopsy of the synovial lining disclosed no evidence of a tuberculous process, a diagnosis of chronic synovitis was made.

An exploration of the knee joint was done through a median parapatellar incision. Upon incising the bulging synovial membrane hundreds of tiny rice bodies were encountered which packed the entire joint cavity. These were evacuated. The entire synovialis exhibited a uniform purplish discoloration and was covered with fine villous formations which extended to the margins of the articular cartilage of the condyles of the femur and invested the cruciate ligaments. The membrane was studded with numerous rice bodies which were attached to the synovial villi (Fig. 333).

A total synovectomy was performed in this instance; the menisci were not removed, all tabs of synovial tissue were trimmed away. The joint was closed in the usual manner by interrupted cotton sutures. Microscopic study of the tissue revealed the typical pattern of villous form of chronic nonspecific synovitis (Fig. 336). Numerous fine pigmented villi were observed also, thickening of the sub-synovial strata and round-cell infiltration and fibrosis.

No recurrence of the lesion was found when last examined on January 12, 1953, approximately 2 years later. The child had a complete range of motion in the knee joint (Fig. 336).

#### PIGMENTED VILLONODULAR SYNOVITIS

This disorder implicates the lining membrane of joints and bursae and may occur in one of two forms, namely (1) the circumscribed or (2) the diffuse variety. The pertinent histologic features are hyperplasia of the lining cells, diffuse fibrocellular stroma, giant cells, foam cells and hemosiderin cells. The lesion occurs more frequently than is generally realized in this country since the comprehensive study of De Santo and Wilson and Jaffe et al., workers have been made aware of the frequency of this malady. Frequently it is diagnosed erroneously as chronic villous arthritis or synovitis because the disorder bears a close

tients with bilateral involvement in whom a synovectomy was done will request that the procedure be performed on the opposite side.

**Discussion of Synovectomy** A critical survey of the literature on this topic reveals that synovectomy is indicated in the following disorders affecting the knee joint (1) chronic nonspecific synovitis (2) osteoarthritis (3) traumatic arthritis, (4) atrophic arthritis (5) villonodular synovitis, (6) synovioma and (7) synovial osteochondromatosis. Except in derangement of the joint resulting from neoplastic causes a fair trial at conservative management should be the first treatment of choice. Failure to respond to this method justifies surgical intervention. It is generally accepted that the procedure is contraindicated in tuberculous synovitis. From a practical viewpoint there are two paramount indications for synovectomy in patients afflicted with the aforementioned disorders (1) pain and (2) removal of pathologic tissue to prevent further disintegration of the joint. Age is not a consideration if the patient's general physical condition will tolerate the procedure.

The work of Key which was substantiated by Wolcott and also by Efskind reveals that following removal of the synovial lining a new membrane is formed *in situ* by metaplasia of the underlying connective tissue cells and there is little or no tendency for surface growth from the edges to cover the denuded area. He notes that synovial cells are slightly specialized connective tissue cells, this specialization being acquired by virtue of their location on a free connective tissue surface. From these observations and from the symptomatic and functional improvement in many of these cases it must be assumed that following synovectomy a new synovial lining is formed which approaches the normal. As pointed out by Pardee this tissue responds to noxious agents in the same manner as the original synovialis but to a lesser degree

since in cases of recurrences the symptoms and synovial hypertrophy are less in intensity than they were prior to synovectomy.

In general the best symptomatic and functional results are observed in cases of chronic nonspecific villous synovitis, osteochondromatosis, benign neoplastic disease and traumatic arthritis. Considerable improvement of function and relief of pain can be anticipated in a relatively high percentage of cases of hypertrophic arthritis (60 to 70%). The poorest results have been reported in cases of atrophic arthritis. Nevertheless some workers have observed marked improvement in function, relief of pain, and a tendency to arrest the pathologic process where the procedure was performed in some cases of active atrophic arthritis. The author's experience with synovectomy in this type of arthritis is too limited to justify comments, however in the light of the aforementioned observations further investigation into the possibilities of synovectomy is warranted.

It must be remembered that in addition to eradication of the pathologic tissue—and when possible the etiologic factors—the success of the operation is governed in a large measure by the co-operative response on the part of the patient. Failure is inevitable unless a strong extensor mechanism is redeveloped. This requires work and patience on the part of the patient and encouragement and guidance on the part of the surgeon. The data recorded by Pardee is significant. He noted in a study of 40 cases that regardless of the causative agent including tuberculosis satisfactory results can be expected in 75 to 85 per cent of the cases one year after operation. From 10 to 20 per cent will be benefited by synovectomy, but the result cannot be rated as satisfactory. 5 per cent will be poor results.

In this series there were 4 cases of particular clinical interest. Two were cases of infectious synovitis associated with osteomyelitis of the patella, one in a boy 8 year-

TABLE 8 AUTHOR'S SERIES OF 52  
SYNOVECTOMIES OF THE KNEE  
JOINT OVER ONE YEAR  
POSTOPERATIVELY

Diagnosis	
Chronic nonspecific villous synovitis	12
Traumatic arthritis	3
Hypertrophic arthritis	11
Atrophic arthritis	3
Villonodular synovitis	12
Infectious synovitis (associated with osteomyelitis of patella)	2
Intermittent hydrarthrosis	2
Osteochondromatosis	5
Malignant synovioma	2
Number of patients	46 (6 cases had bilateral involvement)
Age	26 months to 62 years
Females	34
Males	12

old and another in a boy 9 years old in addition to patellectomy, a total synovectomy was performed. These cases are reported in detail later in this chapter. The third case was one of villonodular synovitis in a child (male) 6 years old; this child attained an excellent result following synovectomy. The case is recorded herein. The fourth case was one of chronic nonspecific villous synovitis in a patient (female) 26 months old, reported below.

**Case Report.** Case J P, a female, 26 months old, was first seen in the outpatient department because of swelling of the left knee. The child did not complain of pain. The swelling appeared insidiously 8 weeks prior to the first medical consultation and increased gradually in size. No history of injury could be elicited from the parents.

Examination of the child revealed a firm swelling of the entire anterior aspect of the knee joint (Fig. 336). No tenderness was noted on palpation; extension was complete but flexion of the joint lacked 30° as compared with the normal side. After admission to the ward service on March 26, 1951, aspiration of the joint revealed an amber-colored fluid. All the bacteriologic tests were negative. Roentgenograms disclosed nothing more

than distention of the joint capsule. Tuberculin tests were also negative. After 3 weeks of rest and immobilization of the knee joint, the swelling had subsided slightly, but a firm elastic mass was palpable in the suprapatellar region of the joint. A biopsy of the synovial lining disclosed no evidence of a tuberculous process; a diagnosis of chronic synovitis was made.

An exploration of the knee joint was done through a median parapatellar incision. Upon incising the bulging synovial membrane, hundreds of tiny rice bodies were encountered which packed the entire joint cavity. These were evacuated. The entire synovialis exhibited a uniform purplish discoloration and was covered with fine villous formations which extended to the margins of the articular cartilage of the condyles of the femur and invested the cruciate ligaments. The membrane was studded with numerous rice bodies which were attached to the synovial villi (Fig. 333).

A total synovectomy was performed, in this instance the menisci were not removed; all tabs of synovial tissue were trimmed away. The joint was closed in the usual manner by interrupted cotton sutures. Microscopic study of the tissue revealed the typical pattern of villous form of chronic nonspecific synovitis (Fig. 336). Numerous fine pigmented villi were observed also, thickening of the sub-synovial strata and round-cell infiltration and fibrosis.

No recurrence of the lesion was found when last examined on January 12, 1953, approximately 2 years later; the child had a complete range of motion in the knee joint (Fig. 336).

#### PIGMENTED VILLONODULAR SYNOVITIS

This disorder implicates the lining membrane of joints and bursae and may occur in one of two forms, namely, (1) the circumscribed or (2) the diffuse variety. The pertinent histologic features are hyperplasia of the lining cells, diffuse fibrocellular stroma, giant cells, foam cells and hemosiderin cells. The lesion occurs more frequently than is generally realized in this country since the comprehensive study of De Santo and Wilson and Jaffe et al., workers have been made aware of the frequency of this malady. Frequently it is diagnosed erroneously as chronic villous arthritis or synovitis because the disorder bears a close

tients with bilateral involvement in whom a synovectomy was done will request that the procedure be performed on the opposite side

**Discussion of Synovectomy** A critical survey of the literature on this topic reveals that synovectomy is indicated in the following disorders affecting the knee joint (1) chronic nonspecific synovitis (2) osteoarthritis (3) traumatic arthritis (4) atrophic arthritis (5) villonodular synovitis (6) synovoma and (7) synovial osteochondromatosis. Except in derangement of the joint resulting from neoplastic causes a fair trial at conservative management should be the first treatment of choice. Failure to respond to this method justifies surgical intervention. It is generally accepted that the procedure is contraindicated in tuberculous synovitis. From a practical viewpoint there are two paramount indications for synovectomy in patients afflicted with the aforementioned disorders: (1) pain and (2) removal of pathologic tissue to prevent further disintegration of the joint. Age is not a consideration if the patient's general physical condition will tolerate the procedure.

The work of Key, which was substantiated by Wolcott and also by Efskind, reveals that following removal of the synovial lining, a new membrane is formed *in situ* by metaplasia of the underlying connective tissue cells, and there is little or no tendency for surface growth from the edges to cover the denuded area. He notes that synovial cells are slightly specialized connective tissue cells, this specialization being acquired by virtue of their location on a free connective tissue surface. From these observations and from the symptomatic and functional improvement in many of these cases, it must be assumed that following synovectomy, a new synovial lining is formed which approaches the normal. As pointed out by Pardee, this tissue responds to noxious agents in the same manner as the original synovialis but to a lesser degree

since in cases of recurrences the symptoms and synovial hypertrophy are less in intensity than they were prior to synovectomy.

In general, the best symptomatic and functional results are observed in cases of chronic nonspecific villous synovitis, osteochondromatosis, benign neoplastic disease, and traumatic arthritis. Considerable improvement of function and relief of pain can be anticipated in a relatively high percentage of cases of hypertrophic arthritis (60 to 70%). The poorest results have been reported in cases of atrophic arthritis. Nevertheless, some workers have observed marked improvement in function, relief of pain, and a tendency to arrest the pathologic process where the procedure was performed in some cases of active atrophic arthritis. The author's experience with synovectomy in this type of arthritis is too limited to justify comments; however, in the light of the aforementioned observations, further investigation into the possibilities of synovectomy is warranted.

It must be remembered that in addition to eradication of the pathologic tissue—and when possible the etiologic factors—the success of the operation is governed in a large measure by the co-operative response on the part of the patient. Failure is inevitable unless a strong extensor mechanism is redeveloped. This requires work and patience on the part of the patient and encouragement and guidance on the part of the surgeon. The data recorded by Pardee is significant. He noted in a study of 40 cases that regardless of the causative agent, including tuberculosis, satisfactory results can be expected in 75 to 85 per cent of the cases one year after operation; from 10 to 20 per cent will be benefited by synovectomy, but the result cannot be rated as satisfactory; 5 per cent will be poor results.

In this series there were 4 cases of particular clinical interest. Two were cases of infectious synovitis associated with osteomyelitis of the patella, one in a boy 8 year-

TABLE 8 AUTHOR'S SERIES OF 52  
SYNOVECTOMIES OF THE KNEE  
JOINT OVER ONE YEAR  
POSTOPERATIVELY

Diagnosis	
Chronic nonspecific villous synovitis	12
Traumatic arthritis	3
Hypertrophic arthritis	11
Atrophic arthritis	3
Villonodular synovitis	12
Infectious synovitis (associated with osteomyelitis of patella)	2
Intermittent hydrarthrosis	2
Osteochondromatosis	5
Malignant synovioma	2
Number of patients	46 (6 cases had bilateral involvement)
Age	26 months to 62 years
Females	34
Males	12

old and another in a boy 9 years old in addition to patellectomy, a total synovectomy was performed. These cases are reported in detail later in this chapter. The third case was one of villonodular synovitis in a child (male) 6 years old; this child attained an excellent result following synovectomy. The case is recorded herein. The fourth case was one of chronic nonspecific villous synovitis in a patient (female) 26 months old, reported below.

**Case Report.** Case J. P., a female 26 months old, was first seen in the outpatient department because of swelling of the left knee; the child did not complain of pain. The swelling appeared insidiously 8 weeks prior to the first medical consultation and increased gradually in size. No history of injury could be elicited from the parents.

Examination of the child revealed a firm swelling of the entire anterior aspect of the knee joint (Fig. 336). No tenderness was noted on palpation; extension was complete but flexion of the joint lacked 30° as compared with the normal side. After admission to the ward service on March 26, 1951, aspiration of the joint revealed an amber-colored fluid. All the bacteriologic tests were negative. Roentgenograms disclosed nothing more

than distention of the joint capsule. Tuberculin tests were also negative. After 3 weeks of rest and immobilization of the knee joint, the swelling had subsided slightly, but a firm elastic mass was palpable in the suprapatellar region of the joint. A biopsy of the synovial lining disclosed no evidence of a tuberculous process; a diagnosis of chronic synovitis was made.

An exploration of the knee joint was done through a median parapatellar incision. Upon incising the bulging synovial membrane hundreds of tiny rice bodies were encountered which packed the entire joint cavity. These were evacuated. The entire synovial exhibited a uniform purplish discoloration and was covered with fine villous formations which extended to the margins of the articular cartilage of the condyles of the femur and invested the cruciate ligaments. The membrane was studded with numerous rice bodies which were attached to the synovial villi (Fig. 333).

A total synovectomy was performed in this instance; the menisci were not removed, all tabs of synovial tissue were trimmed away. The joint was closed in the usual manner by interrupted cotton sutures. Microscopic study of the tissue revealed the typical pattern of villous form of chronic nonspecific synovitis (Fig. 336). Numerous fine pigmented villi were observed also, thickening of the sub-synovial strata and round-cell infiltration and fibrosis.

No recurrence of the lesion was found when last examined on January 12, 1953, approximately 2 years later; the child had a complete range of motion in the knee joint (Fig. 336).

#### PIGMENTED VILLONODULAR SYNOVITIS

This disorder implicates the lining membrane of joints and bursae and may occur in one of two forms, namely, (1) the circumscribed or (2) the diffuse variety. The pertinent histologic features are hyperplasia of the lining cells, diffuse fibrocellular stroma, giant cells, foam cells and hemosiderin cells. The lesion occurs more frequently than is generally realized in this country since the comprehensive study of De Santo and Wilson and Jaffe et al., workers have been made aware of the frequency of this malady. Frequently it is diagnosed erroneously as chronic villous arthritis or synovitis because the disorder bears a close

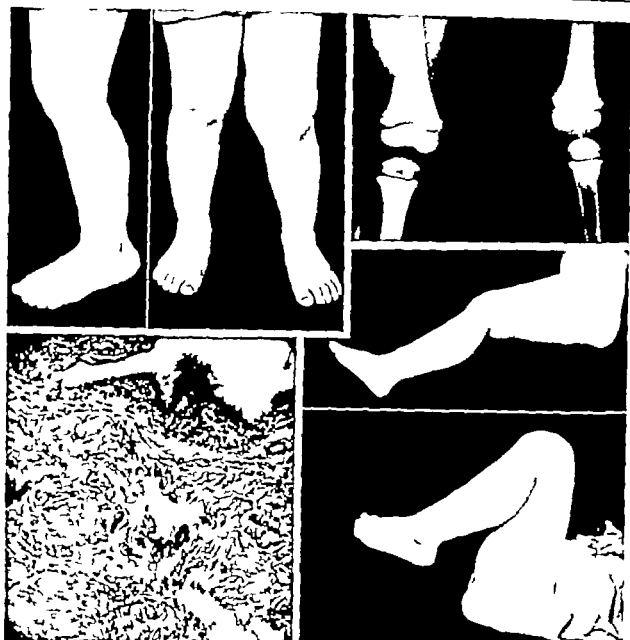


FIG. 336 (*Top left*) Swelling of the left knee in a child 26 months old. It appeared 8 weeks prior to the date on which this photograph was taken. Note the diffuse swelling above and below the patella. (*Top right*) Roentgenograms are essentially negative except for distention of the joint capsule. (*Bottom left*) Photomicrographs  $\times 200$  of the tissue removed from the joint. It exhibits a typical pattern of chronic villous synovitis. (*Bottom right*) Range of motion in the affected knee approximately 2 years after synovectomy. Note that the swelling has not recurred.

resemblance to tumorlike structures particularly the circumscribed or isolated variety many observers believe that it is a true benign neoplasm and it has been described under numerous designations such as xanthoma, xanthogranuloma and giant-cell tumor. Often the diffuse form is referred to as chronic hemorrhagic villous

arthritis or synovitis, giant-cell fibrohemangioma, fibrohemosiderin sarcoma and benign (or malignant) polymorphocellular tumor of the synovium.

In contradiction to the neoplastic theory of origin Jaffe et al. are of the opinion that the disease is the result of an inflammatory reaction, however they admit that they do

not know what the agent initiating the disorder might be, but they are inclined to believe that it is not bacterial. Moreover, they are not of the opinion that local lipoid imbalance or repeated hemorrhage are responsible factors. In addition, these workers hold that the so-called xanthomas and giant-cell tumors of tendon sheaths and bursal linings are modifications of the same inflammatory process involving the synovial lining of joints which they have designated as pigmented villonodular synovitis.

Another theory of interest was set forth by Geschickter and Copeland. They propose that the condition, especially in tendon sheaths, is the result of tumorous proliferation of osteoclasts in sesamoid bones. They fail to provide an explanation of these lesions in sheaths of tendons possessing no sesamoid or for the development of the disorder in synovial membranes of joints or in bursae.

Other observers maintain that the condition is the result of imbalance of cholesterol metabolism; it may be a local or general imbalance. In support of this theory the presence of hypercholesteremia in some cases has been offered; this observation has not been substantiated by the work of other observers. A hypercholesteremia was not observed in the cases encountered by the author. Jaffe pointed out that the accumulation of lipid in the form of cholesterol in these lesions does not necessarily point to cholesterol imbalance as the etiologic factor. He further noted that it is impossible to reproduce the lesion by intra articular injections of cholesterol or cholesterol ester.

This malady has claimed interest for many years. Gustav Simon is credited with describing the first case in 1865. He found a tumor in the knee joint of a male aged 64 years whose macroscopic and microscopic features were consistent with the circumscribed form of pigmented villonodular synovitis or according to De Santo and Wilson to an isolated variety of xanthoma. In 1894 Turner described a pedunc-

ulated tumor in the knee joint, and Dowd in 1912 reported an instance of multiple lesions having histologic features of a xanthoma under the nomenclature 'villous arthritis of the knee'. Many other workers have described lesions which fit into the gross and the microscopic patterns of pigmented villonodular synovitis. Notably among these are Hartman (1922), Harbitz (1927), Sonntag (1930), Hunter (1931), Kling and Slaskin (1953), Lejars and Rubens-Duval (1910) and more recently De Santo and Wilson (1938) and Jaffe et al (1941).

**Pathologic Features.** It is interesting to note that pigmented villonodular synovitis implicating the synovial membranes of joints has been encountered only in the joints of the lower extremities, the highest incidence being in the knee joint. In the series reported by De Santo and Wilson, the knee was implicated in 36 cases, the ankle in 4, and the scaphocuneiform joint in 1. In Jaffe's series the knee was affected in 18 of 20 cases, Galloway, Broders and Gromley observed that the knee was involved in 42 of 48 cases.

The observations of Jaffe et al are recorded in the subsequent section. These observers describe a diffuse and circumscribed form of pigmented villonodular synovitis.

**Diffuse Form.** The appearance of this variety shows considerable diversity. The synovial membrane may be covered entirely with fine villous formation exhibiting a reddish brown color, but in some areas the color may be yellowish brown. The villi usually are long delicate prolongations of the synovial lining, often tangled and matted together. In this form occasionally one or more short stubby villi may be noted whose external configuration is not unlike a nodule. Some areas may disclose folds or pads of tissue which comprise villi matted together and flattened, which on section resemble a coarse meshed sponge.

Microscopic study of the matted areas reveals that the synovialis is covered by





FIG. 337 Pigmented villonodular synovitis—diffuse form. Note the matted and nodular appearance of the synovial membrane. The nodules are packed densely and laden heavily with blood pigment. Two free cartilaginous bodies (left) were found in the suprapatellar pouch. This tissue was obtained from a male G. M. aged 53 with a history of 5 years duration of symptoms.

fine delicate villi which are lined by synovial cells and in their stroma numerous fine thin walled blood vessels and hemosiderin are discernible the pigment is also observed in the lining cells of the villi. Throughout the loose supporting connective tissue stroma of the villi polyhedral or spindle shaped cells containing blood pigment are interspersed these vary in number. Some of the cells bearing pigment appear to have migrated inward from a superficial position others are phagocytic cells formed by the stromal connective tissue. Microscopically the more compact matted areas of the synovialis do not differ from the villous areas.

The cystologic pattern of the stubby short nodular villi occasionally noted in the predominantly villous variety of the disorder comprise densely packed polyhedral cells which exhibit pigment bearing cells foam cells giant cells and varying degrees of hyalinization of the stroma. Essentially they disclose the same cystologic configuration of the nodular variety of pigmented villonodular synovitis.

The extent of fusion and matting of the villi may give rise to a very complex form of the disease the resulting tissue may obliterate completely the synovial cavity and the suprapatellar pouch. Jaffe reported one case which exemplifies this transformation. In a male 18 years of age the first exploration of the affected knee joint revealed uniform villous involvement of the synovial membrane. After 2½ years, recurrence of the lesion necessitated further surgical intervention. At this time the character of the synovial lining had changed completely, now it appeared as a continuous solid mass of tissue obliterating the suprapatellar and joint cavity. It was firm in some areas and spongy in others its color ranged from yellowish to reddish brown and in some areas it was blackish brown. Microscopic study of this specimen disclosed that the tissue was the result of hyperplasia of the polyhedral cells and modification of the basic stromal cells. The tissues were secondarily impregnated with hemosiderin lipid or both. Multinuclear giant cells varying in number and size were also demonstrable these were formed by fusion of the polyhedral cells lacking pigment. Proliferation of the polyhedral cells was reflected in the number of cells showing mitotic figures. Foam cells with or without pigment were also encountered.

Another form of the diffuse variety is one in which nodular formation is the predominant feature. The entire membrane is studded with nodules of varying size and shape generally they are yellowish brown in color and may appear singly or in clus-

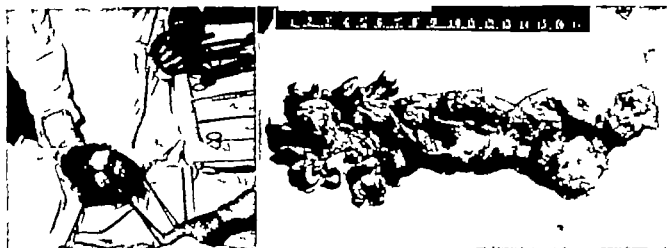


FIG 338 (Left) Case R. G. aged 23. Appearance of the synovial membrane upon the opening of the joint cavity at the second operation. (Right) Tissue obtained from the knee joint. Note the grapelike clusters of nodules. The entire synovial lining is implicated. Both sessile and pedunculated nodules are discernible. This patient had a third occurrence 2 years after the second.

ters. Also scattered between the nodules, pigmented villous areas are demonstrable (Fig 337). In the author's series there were three cases of this nodular variety. Case R. G., a male aged 23, had three recurrences. As shown in Figure 338, some of the nodules are sessile in form; others are pedunculated. It appears that the latter arise from the former; they range in diameter from 0.5 to 2 cm. They possess a fleshy elastic texture and a smooth surface. Fibrin may be found in varying amounts on the surface synovial membrane. Infrequently one or more irregular loose cartilaginous bodies may be present (Fig 337).

Microscopic study of the predominantly nodular form of the lesion reveals that the cytologic pattern is essentially the same as that of the villous variety. The nodules comprise densely packed round or polyhedral cells lined by one or more layers of pigmented synovial cells. Varying numbers of multinuclear giant cells are present. The polyhedral cells contain granules of pigment. Vascularity of the nodules is not as pronounced as in the villous form, and hyalinization in varying degrees is observed in the greater majority of the nodules. Variable numbers of foam cells containing granules of pigment are dispersed through

out the nodules. Fusion and intergrowth of the individual nodules or clumps of nodules may result in very complex synovial

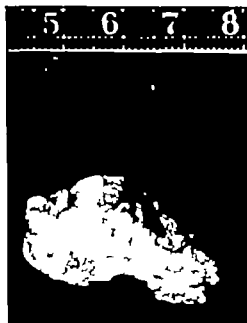


FIG 339 Circumscribed form of villonodular synovitis. This lesion was removed from the inner recess of the knee joint immediately above the medial meniscus. The patient was a male 35 years old; the duration of symptoms was 3 years. A localized swelling was palpable on the inner aspect of the knee.



FIG 340 Circumscribed form of villonodular synovitis. The tissue was obtained from the quadriceps pouch of a female, aged 22. Local excision of the mass effected a cure. Although the general configuration gives the impression that the mass comprises one large nodule, closer scrutiny revealed many nodules matted together and also the presence of small villous areas.



FIG 341 Circumscribed form of villonodular synovitis. A large, fleshy nodular mass found in the suprapatellar pouch of a male 24 years old.

structure nevertheless, the basic microscopic pattern is the same in all forms of the lesion (Fig. 338).

**Circumscribed Form.** This is the most common variety encountered. It implicates a specific area of the synovialis usually in the region of the medial meniscus or in the suprapatellar pouch. The lesion may consist of a single nodule or a large lobulated tissue mass. It may be sessile or stalked. The nodules and the stalks are yellow or yellowish brown, firm, elastic and fleshy in consistency. Generally the synovial membrane surrounding the lesion is normal; occasionally it may reveal areas of villous formation. The author has encountered 3 such cases. In one the lesion was found on the medial aspect of the joint in a male 35 years of age (Fig. 339); the preoperative diagnosis in this case was cystic degeneration of the medial meniscus. In the second case the lobulated mass was found in the suprapatellar pouch (Fig. 340) in a woman aged 22 years; and in the third a male 24

years old, the lesion was in the suprapatellar pouch and was readily palpable (Fig. 341).

Microscopically, this circumscribed form is similar to the villous and nodular forms. Jaffe points out that this variety resembles closely lesions of the tendon sheaths commonly designated xanthomas or giant-cell tumors. Essentially the nodule comprises roundish polyhedral cells and is lined by one or more layers of synovial cells, some of which contain granules of blood pigment. Hyalinization may be demonstrable in the substance of the nodule; the cells comprising the structure may contain varying amounts of hemosiderin or lipid material forming foam cells. Foam cells may also contain hemosiderin. In addition multinucleated giant cells in varying numbers are present.

**Clinical Manifestations** As noted, lesions involving the synovial lining of joint cavities always have been encountered in the lower extremities. By far the most common site is the knee joint, males are affected more frequently than females, in the series reported by De Santo and Wilson, 59 per cent were males, and 41 per cent were females. Generally, they occur in the early age groups. The youngest patient in the author's cases was 6 years old. Many of these cases parade for a long period under erroneous diagnoses, such as chronic villous arthritis, internal derangement of the knee joint and rheumatoid arthritis. Rarely is the diagnosis established before the joint cavity is explored. The survey of the literature reveals that the circumscribed variety is encountered more frequently than the diffuse form. The interval between the onset of symptoms and the time when medical aid is sought ranges from a few months to 5 years. In one series the longest duration of symptoms was 20 years. Circumscribed lesions have been observed in older age periods than the diffuse form, Jaffe records such a lesion in a patient 68 years of age.

The role that trauma plays in initiating the process is difficult to evaluate. Many cases date their symptoms to a specific violence; others give vague histories of some form of trauma antedating the clinical manifestations; while still others give no history of injury. Although violence in one form or another is suggested as a possible etiologic factor, there is no conclusive evidence that it is the causative agent.

The cardinal symptoms are pain and swelling that are accentuated by activity and decreased in severity by rest. Usually they are intermittent in nature. Generally the pain is mild and is associated with some stiffness of the affected knee joint and at times it is sharp and severe particularly when marked distention of the joint is a concomitant feature. Giving way and temporary locking of the joint is not an uncommon manifestation particularly when one

or more loose bodies are present in the joint. Pedunculated nodules which are trapped momentarily and crushed between the articular joint surfaces produce the same effect.

In the circumscribed variety a tumor mass is occasionally palpable in the suprapatellar pouch or on the inner aspect of the knee. Also, in the diffuse and nodular form a palpable mass may be demonstrable, especially after aspiration of the joint. Occasionally, the patient is aware of a movable mass which often suggests the erroneous diagnosis of a loose body. As a rule, swelling is less pronounced in the circumscribed form than in the diffuse variety, but in both it is intermittent and varies in quantity. In the diffuse types swelling resulting from synovial effusion may be pronounced, in fact, the joint may be distended so markedly that severe pain and dysfunction ensue. In some the joint fills rapidly with effusion after aspiration, necessitating repeated evacuation of the joint cavity every 3 or 4 days. The fluid may be amber colored, serosanguineous or even bloody in character. Study of the fluid provides no significant information, some observers have noted a high cholesterol content, others have not. The presence of serosanguineous fluid in a knee joint should make one suspicious of some form of pigmented villonodular synovitis.

Roentgenographic studies do not give specific information that might establish the diagnosis. However, distention of the joint capsule by the effusion and some increased soft tissue density caused by the affected synovial tissue may be demonstrable in the roentgenograms. In cases of long standing varying degrees of demineralization of the bony elements of the joint may be evident.

**Management.** Radical surgical excision of the affected synovial membrane is the treatment of choice. In the diffuse villous or nodular type a total synovectomy should be performed. In the circumscribed variety

the involved tissue, together with a broad base of the surrounding synovial membrane, should be extirpated. A partial synovectomy is justifiable when large lobulated tumors are encountered, such as those depicted in Figures 339, 340 and 341. In the diffuse forms it is advisable to remove both menisci and the infrapatellar fat pad and the synovial membrane in the intercondylar notch should be excised meticulously by sharp dissection.

Irradiation has been recorded as having effected a cure in some of the recurrent cases. This form of therapy as the primary treatment of choice should not be employed because of the severe dysfunction of the knee joint which must ensue.

**Prognosis.** Regardless of the concept of origin of the lesions described in this section be it neoplastic or non neoplastic reactive proliferations most workers are of the opinion that they are benign in nature. De Santo and Wilson recorded no instance of malignant transformation in their series of "Xanthomatous Tumors of Joints" and Jaffe et al. only warn against the possibility of recurrences in which instances the lesion may be more florid than the original one. The author has encountered one case in which there were three recurrences, this patient could not be traced and the true nature of the lesion never was determined. However the increasing numbers of synoviomatous of joints reported in the literature and the clinical observation that many of these lesions had existed for many months or even years prior to the onset of rapid growth leads one to suspect that some of the malignant tumors are the result of malignant transformations in benign synovial lesions. The work of Bennett places strong emphasis on this possibility. This observer pointed out that long term follow up studies of so-called benign synovial membrane lesions in which tissue has been removed should be undertaken in order to throw some light on the future course of these lesions having different or varied



FIG. 342 (A) Case of pigmented villonodular synovitis. J. J., male, aged 6. Note swelling of the right knee. The demonstrable scar is the result of the operation performed to obtain a specimen of synovial tissue for microscopic study.

cytologic and structural patterns. Such information may establish histologic criteria" which would distinguish the truly benign from the malignant lesion and serve to identify those lesions which are most likely to undergo malignant transformations. This knowledge would govern the future management of all synovial lesions.

**Case Reports (Fig. 342).** J. J., a male 6 years old was first seen in the outpatient department. At that time the chief complaint was pain and swelling in the right knee joint. The onset was insidious in nature; a specific history of trauma could not be elicited. The first manifestation of the disorder was noted 4 months prior to his first examination. There had been a gradual increase in the swelling and the pain; the intensity of the pain and

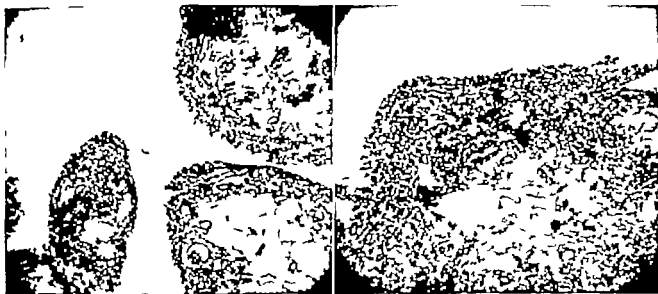


FIG 342 (B) Photomicrograph  $\times 200$  Observe the numerous fine pigmented villi and the presence of foam cells.



FIG 342 (C) Roentgenograms 1 year after synovectomy. Some increased density of the capsular tissues is still present. Also a small spur is formed on the anterior surface of the distal end of the femur.

the extent of swelling were increased by activity and relieved by rest.

Examination revealed marked swelling of the joint. free fluid was readily demonstrable. motion was restricted slightly only in flexion. There was some increase in the local temperature of the knee and also moderate para-

FIG 342 (D) Range of flexion and extension 1 year after synovectomy. No recurrence of swelling or pain has occurred.



patellar tenderness. No systemic reaction was discernible. He was admitted to the ward service and studied further. The temperature range was between 99.5° and 100° F. he exhibited a rapid sedimentation rate. Other wise all other studies including cultures and smears of synovial fluid obtained by aspiration were negative. The synovial fluid was straw colored and slightly turbid. Cytologic study revealed an excess of mononuclear cells. Roentgenographic studies gave no significant findings. A biopsy of the synovial membrane was performed 10 days after admission. The microscopic pathologic alterations were consistent with chronic villonodular synovitis. No evidence of tuberculosis was demonstrable.

A total synovectomy was performed and the infrapatellar fat pad was excised. The entire synovialis was found to be thickened, hyperemic and covered with fine villi. A panus of granulation tissue enveloped the cruciate ligaments and the infrapatellar fat pad. The menisci and the articular cartilage of the femur, the tibia and the patella appeared to be normal. Microscopic studies are depicted in Figure 342 B. The final diagnosis was chronic villonodular synovitis.

Examination one year after operation (Fig. 342 D) revealed motion at the knee joint from 90° to 180° no evidence of swelling was demonstrable and pain had been relieved completely.

R. C. a male 22 years old struck his right "knee cap" while on maneuvers in an Army camp. Immediately after the trauma the knee became swollen, painful and restricted in motion. The knee joint was aspirated three times and a serosanguineous fluid was withdrawn at each aspiration. After 4 weeks of rest he was returned to full duty. Although he was able to carry on his duties he had intermittent swelling every 3 or 4 weeks. He also began to feel a clicking sensation in the knee joint while walking. Six months after the initial injury a diagnosis of internal derangement of the knee joint was made. The medial semilunar cartilage was removed in September 1942. However his symptoms persisted and in June 1944 a biopsy of the synovial tissue was done and a benign giant cell tumor was removed through two lateral incisions. Then the patient was discharged from the service. On October 15 1945 he was admitted to a U. S. Naval Hospital. His complaint was severe pain and swelling in the right knee joint.

On physical examination there was marked swelling of the affected joint and advanced wasting of the muscles of the thigh. The range of motion was from 170 to 110°. There was no lateral instability. Small firm movable masses were palpable in the suprapatellar pouch. The soft tissues about the knee joint were greatly distended. Free fluid was present in the joint and thickening of the synovial tissue was noted.

On roentgenographic examination there was considerable decalcification of the femoral condyles and the patella. The joint space was wider than normal. There was increased density and thickening of the soft tissues about the joint.

Aspiration revealed 250 cc of a dark serosanguineous fluid. Cholesterol content of the fluid was not done.

Two tentative preoperative diagnoses were made:

1. Chronic villous synovitis.

2. Recurrent pigmented villonodular synovitis of the synovial membrane.

The second possible diagnosis was made on the patient's history that a benign giant-cell tumor had been removed in June 1944.

Exploration of the joint was performed on October 19 1945 and the joint was opened through a median parapatellar incision. The entire synovialis was found to be markedly thickened and hypertrophied. It exhibited a deep-brown rusty color and was studded with polypoid masses varying in size from 2 or 3 mm. to 2 or 3 cm. Many of the tumor masses were pedunculated. Others arose from a broad base of synovial tissue. Several grapelike clusters were located in the suprapatellar pouch. Between the tumors the synovial membrane lay in deep folds and was thickly covered by numerous villi not unlike the villi found in hypertrophic villous synovitis (Fig. 338). The joint was full of a serosanguineous fluid and the products of decomposition of red blood cells were very evident over the entire synovialis and the tumor masses. A panus of the above tissue covered the lateral surfaces of the femoral condyles and even extended for several millimeters over the edges of the articular cartilage of the condyles and the patella.

A complete synovectomy was done. The panus extending over the lateral aspects of the femoral condyles and over the articular cartilage was removed meticulously.

Postoperatively the patient made an uneventful recovery. Six weeks after operation



FIG 343 (Left) A case of pigmented villonodular synovitis. F D female, aged 18 years, with swelling of the left knee joint. Her symptoms date back to the age of 5. Observe the atrophy of the quadriceps. (Center) Appearance of the synovialis and the articular cartilage of the patella (left) and the medial femoral condyles (right). Observe the thickened, hemorrhagic synovialis projecting from the suprapatellar pouch above and the intercondylar notch below. Marked softening, fibrillation and erosion of the articular cartilage of the patella and the femoral condyles are demonstrable. (Right) Tissue removed. Note the numerous small bodies that are still attached to the synovialis.

he had a range of motion from  $180^{\circ}$  to  $90^{\circ}$ . The joint was free of pain at this time. Four months after operation he had gained 20 more of motion. There was only a suggestion of some free fluid in the joint. There was no evidence of recurrence.

**Pathologic report.** Gross specimen consists of an elongated, irregular band of tissue 16 cm in length. One side is relatively smooth and very fibrous. The other side is markedly irregular and contains numerous polypoid and pedunculated masses up to 3 cm in length.

**Histologic description.** The synovial membrane is hyperplastic and exhibits many villous reduplications. In some regions there are xanthoid cells but these are in a minority. Inflammatory cells and pigment laden phagocytes are common.

This patient was discharged from the service and was not seen again until September 1946 in a civilian hospital. At that time the knee was again swollen and painful. Motion was possible between  $90^{\circ}$  and  $170^{\circ}$ . He had constant intense pain. Palpation disclosed increased local temperature and a firm elastic tumefaction in the knee joint. Aspiration produced 200 cc of dark serosanguineous fluid. Roentgenograms showed advanced demineralization of the bone ends and a distended joint capsule.

The patient refused further treatment, and

all efforts to trace this patient have failed. From the aforementioned findings it is reasonable to conclude that a recurrence of the lesion had occurred.

**Case F D, female, aged 18 years.** This case is of unusual interest because of the long duration of symptoms and the unusual pathologic alterations found in the synovialis and the articular cartilage of the left knee joint. The onset dated to when the child was 5 years old. The mother noticed some swelling of the knee joint. There was no history of injury and no pain. The intensity of the swelling varied periodically but never disappeared completely. At the age of 6 years the limb was immobilized in plaster for 4 months. It has not been possible to determine the reason for this form of treatment, but one can assume that a diagnosis of tuberculosis of the knee joint was the most plausible reason. Following the period of immobilization the patient regained full motion, but the swelling soon recurred. Aspiration of the knee was performed at this time and pure blood was obtained. Except for slight swelling, the patient was free of symptoms until the age of 14 years, when the joint became painful and markedly distended, and again blood was obtained on aspiration. Recurrent attacks of swelling continued up to the time the author saw the patient.



At that time she complained of pain swelling and giving way incidents in the left knee. Examination revealed profound atrophy of the quadriceps apparatus when compared with the normal side. Motion was unrestricted and no instability of the joint was demonstrable. A definite swelling was discernible in the suprapatellar area. The tissues in this region were thickened and had a doughy feel but they were not painful. Some fullness was also noted on either side of the patellar tendon. roentgenographic studies were negative. All blood studies including cholesterol determination, were within normal limits. A clinical diagnosis of chronic villous synovitis associated with quadriceps weakness was made, and exercises designed to develop the quadriceps muscle were prescribed. This did not change the course of the clinical picture. after 6 weeks the knee became acutely distended and painful on aspiration 40 cc. of fresh blood was obtained. A compression bandage was applied and weight bearing was prohibited. After 2 weeks the swelling had subsided considerably but not entirely. now protected weight bearing was allowed (Fig. 343). Six weeks after the last episode the joint was explored through a median parapatellar incision.

The suprapatellar pouch was distended and thickened when incised bright fresh blood flooded the operative field. Inspection of the entire joint after the patella was displaced laterally disclosed that the suprapatellar pouch was obliterated completely by numerous bulbous hemorrhagic friable villi which bled freely when touched with gauze or instruments. In the infrapatellar region the same type of tissue was encountered (Fig. 343) the entire synovialis was implicated in some degree.

It was interesting to note the extensive alterations in the cartilage of the patella and the femoral condyles. Areas of chondromalacia were observed which were stained varying shades of blue. Grossly the discoloration appeared to be the result of penetration of the cartilage with hemosiderin. In several areas the entire thickness of the cartilage and even the subchondral bone was infiltrated by the blood pigment (Fig. 343).

A total synovectomy and partial chondrectomy were performed. The patient made an uneventful recovery and attained within 3 months a range of motion from 180 to 80. It is now 16 months since operation there have been no recurrences however the case is too recent to classify as a cure.

Microscopic studies reveal findings consistent with pigmented villonodular synovitis the presence of recent hemorrhages and marked vascularity of the synovial membrane were predominant features. No evidence of malignant transformation was detected.

### MALIGNANT SYNOVIOMA

The designation "synovioma" was used first by Lawrence Smith in 1927 other terms commonly employed to identify malignant neoplasms originating in the synovial membrane are synovial sarcoma, mesothelioma, myxosarcoma, synovial sarcoma, villous angiofibroma and perithelioma. The lesion is observed in regions where synovial tissue is found such as joints tendon sheaths synovial prolongations, recesses or pouches and bursae. It is encountered most frequently in the region of the knee joint other common sites in their order of frequency are the foot the ankle and the elbow. Although the tumor is relatively rare it is encountered more frequently than is realized. The tumor has been observed in all age groups the highest incidence being between 20 and 40 years. Bennett observed the lesion in a child 19 days old. It is not generally realized that the lesion develops in tissues adjacent to the joint such as synovial pouches recesses tendon sheaths and capsules it rarely arises from the articular synovial membrane.

Clinical Manifestations. Pain and swelling are the two cardinal clinical features. varying degrees of pain are present in over 50 per cent of the cases (Coley). Swelling is invariably present its duration varies from a few months to several years before a rapid increase in size is noted. In the series reported by Bennett the known duration of the lesion ranged from 1 month to 6 years. This latent period suggests the possibility that some so-called benign lesions of the synovial membrane may undergo malignant transformation. Although a history of trauma is elicited in some cases

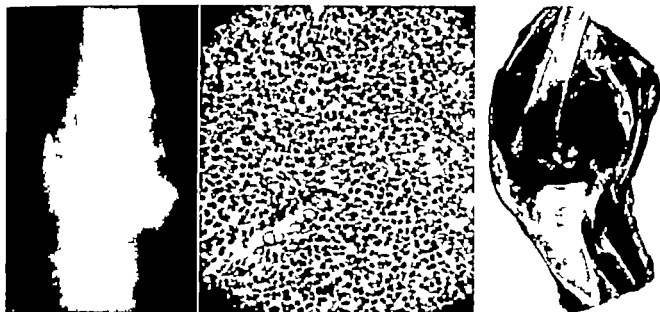


FIG 344 (*Left*) Roentgenogram of a case of malignant synovium. Case G T, aged 44. Observe that the osteolytic process involves the condyles of the femur and the tibia. An oblique fracture through the medial condyle of the femur is demonstrable. (*Center*) Photomicrograph  $\times 200$ . Note the cytologic pattern of the lesion which is consistent with malignant synovium. (*Right*) Sagittal section of the amputated specimen reveals invasion and erosion of the lower end of the femur. Observe the growth of the tumor in the popliteal space and along the anterior surface of the femur. The joint space is obliterated completely by the tumor tissue.

there is not sufficient evidence at hand to believe that trauma is the sole responsible etiologic agent. Osseous elements adjacent to synoviomias may be implicated when these structures are invaded the destructive process stimulates osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma. This process is illustrated in Figure 344. The tumor invaded the entire lower end of the femur, the tibial condyles and the patella, so that no normal osseous tissue remained in the affected bone ends. It also filled completely the entire joint cavity and ruptured through the upper boundaries of the suprapatellar pouch.

Roentgenographic studies made to depict soft tissue planes and densities may disclose the tumor mass. In the event that the adjacent bone is implicated the osteolytic process is readily apparent by irregular destruction of cortical and cancellous bone. In case G T roentgenograms revealed marked demineralization of the lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia. The cortical bone is markedly thinned and the

normal bone pattern is lost. Lewis pointed out that when by roentgenograms calcareous deposits are found scattered throughout a round or lobulated, sharply defined, soft tissue mass one is justified in making a tentative diagnosis of synovium. He observed this feature in 4 of 10 proved cases of synovium.

The lesion tends to recur after excision to invade adjacent bone and to metastasize to the lungs and the regional lymph nodes. Bennett's series discloses the unfavorable outlook in this disease. 11 of 32 patients died of metastasis. Metastatic lesions were present in 2 others and in 3 cases local recurrences of the neoplasm followed excision.

Although it is generally conceded that most cases pursue a protracted course before rapid growth of the tumor is manifest, occasionally a case is encountered which begins as a fulminating lesion and disseminates rapidly to other regions. This is particularly true if the symptoms are initiated by trauma. It may be that the violence is

the inciting agent to a dormant lesion. The following case illustrates this point.

**Case Report.** A male aged 44 sustained a twisting injury to the left knee on September 12, 1952, when he jumped off a platform 4 feet high. In spite of some pain and swelling he continued to work until October 8, 1952, when the knee became greatly swollen and painful. He was taken to the local hospital and a diagnosis of a torn meniscus was made. On November 9, 1952, a lacerated medial meniscus was removed. At the time of the operation the surgeon noted a thickened synovial membrane which was reddish brown in color, but he failed to remove a piece of tissue for microscopic study. Following the operation pain and dysfunction increased progressively in intensity. Finally he was confined to bed; he was unable to bear weight because the knee would not support him. He was admitted to the Jefferson Medical College Hospital on January 1, 1953.

On admission the left knee was markedly swollen; the overlying skin was tense and shiny; the local temperature was elevated. There was abnormal mobility at the knee joint which precipitated intense pain. Roentgenographic studies revealed an osteolytic process involving the lower end of the femur and, in addition, a pathologic fracture was demonstrable obliquely through the medial condyle (Fig. 344). Skeletal survey at this time disclosed no metastatic foci discernible by roentgenograms; the pulmonary fields were also negative. Biopsy of the lesion established the diagnosis. The tumor was a highly malignant synovioma (Fig. 344). Two weeks later metastatic foci were found in the lungs and the sacrum. This case illustrates that malignant synovioma is capable of pursuing a fulminating course since all took place within a period of 5 months.

**Macroscopic Appearance.** Grossly, these tumors are variable in size, texture, color, and configurations. Most are nodular masses, sharply delineated, whose superficial layer comprises densely compressed tissue giving the appearance of a true investing capsule. It is not, however, a true capsule. Usually the lesion is attached firmly at several points to a tendon sheath, a tendon, or some portion of the capsule or the synovial prolongation of a joint. In the region of the knee the most common site is

the popliteal space. Some neoplasms infiltrate the adjacent tissues widely and exhibit no evidence of limiting tissue layers. Usually they are vascular lesions. When sectioned cystic areas and necrosis of tumor tissue are observed frequently in large tumors. The structural texture varies. In some the tissue is firm and elastic, indicating abundance of fibrous tissue, while in others it is friable, cystic, and readily compressible, not unlike glandular tissue. On section the color of the tumor is extremely variable; some are grayish, others blue or pink. Throughout the tumor areas of necrosis are indicated by patches of yellowish discoloration and areas of recent hemorrhage are distinguished by their soft reddish brown appearance. Occasionally calcareous deposits are observed scattered throughout the lesion. Tumors that grow rapidly and invade the surrounding tissues and bone are usually very vascular. In the knee joint they fill the entire joint cavity (Fig. 344). The affected bone is brittle and crumbles readily under pressure.

**Microscopic Appearance.** The cytologic and structural pattern of this lesion is variable. Bennett observed three basic patterns, any one of which may predominate. They resemble closely the normal structural and functional features of the synovial membrane. It was noted previously that the synovialis is endowed with specialized characteristics which control the transportation of certain substances between the articular and the vascular fluids, according to some workers it secretes mucin. In addition it removes colloids and other particulate substances from the joint fluid. Following repeated hemorrhage decomposition products such as hemosiderin and lipoids may overwhelm the function of the synovialis and the ultra-synovial cell, since they accumulate in the aforementioned tissues and act as noxious agents. Repeated stimulation by these agents may result in marked proliferation of the synovialis which may be laden with large quan-



FIG. 345 (A) Photomicrographs (*left*  $\times 75$  *center*  $\times 60$ , *right*  $\times 400$ ) showing a moderately cellular invasive tumor, in which the outstanding characteristic is the formation of clefts and pseudoglandular spaces that are lined by flattened and low cuboidal cells. Small tufts of such cells form small papillary projections into the lumina of the spaces. The resemblance of this lesion to certain benign overgrowths of synovial tissues is apparent. Such similarities are responsible for the difficulties that are frequently encountered in microscopic diagnosis, and point to the need for careful follow up studies in the group of synovial tumors that are believed to be benign. This specimen was an egg shaped mass of soft semicystic tissue, which extended somewhat into the tibial cortex just medial to the tibial tubercle (Armed Forces Institute of Pathology Negatives 90603, 90605 90608, Accession number 117723) (Bennett, G. A. J Bone & Joint Surg 29 259)



right  $\times 500$ ) of the more solid and simplified type of sarcoma derived  
a distinct tendency for tufting and cleft formation are features by  
is tumor was seen to be a firm mass the size of a walnut arising in the  
of Pathology Negatives 90675 90676 90677 Arces kan number 80133)

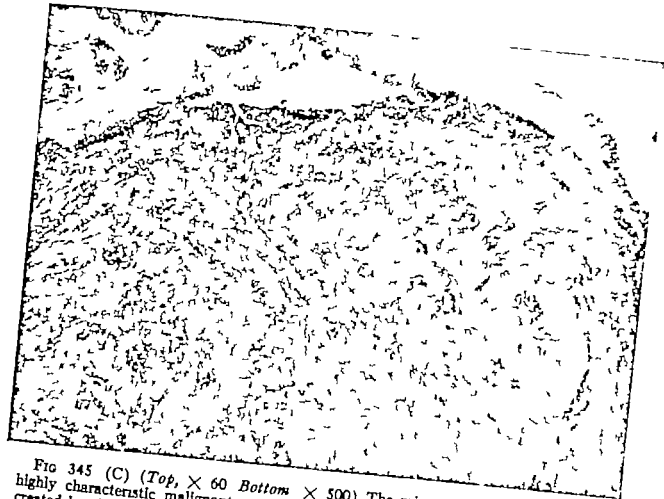


FIG 345 (C) (*Top*,  $\times 60$  *Bottom*  $\times 500$ ) The microscopic appearances of a highly characteristic malignant neoplasm of synovial origin. The complex pattern created by the elements supporting the connective tissue and the epithelial like cells that form the tufts and clefts is well illustrated (Armed Forces Institute of Pathology Negatives 90648 and 90649-A Accession number 93364) (Bennett, G A. J Bone & Joint Surg 29 259)



titles of hemosiderin or lipoid material or both. Bennett points out that tumors arising from the synovial membrane exhibit the above features in varying intensities. The three basic patterns are (1) the formation of tissue spaces which appear as narrow slits or clefts or spaces not unlike those encountered in glandular tissue also serous or mucinous fluid may be contained in the spaces (Fig 345 A) (2) the formation of cell tufts, appearing as areas of tightly-packed oval or polygonal cells or as papillary structures projecting into the tissue spaces (Fig 345 B) and (3) the appearance of epithelial like cells resting on a stroma, comprising elongated cells densely packed with dark staining nuclei (Fig 345 C). This latter pattern is more highly characteristic of the tumor than the other two. Silver reticulum stains will invariably disclose reticulum fibers. The predominating structural architecture varies in each tumor and one pattern may be clearly discernible while the other two may be identified with great difficulty. Likewise mitotic figures are usually demonstrable but their numbers show wide variations. Bennett records that it is doubtful whether the frequency of mitotic figures is a reliable index to the degree of malignancy of the tumor. Metastatic lesions usually disclose the same cytologic and structural design as the primary lesion.

**Diagnosis.** Study of the numerous series reported in the literature reveals emphatically that in most cases the diagnosis is not established before a microscopic examination of the tissue is made. Because the symptoms are mild and the dysfunction minimal most lesions are considered as benign; their true nature is sadly underestimated. Failure to understand the tragic implications when such a lesion is encountered results in inadequate treatment. The numerous recurrences and development of metastatic lesions to regional lymph and lungs indicates that radical excision of the lesion through a wide base of tissue is seldom achieved. Frequent

tumor is mistaken for fibroma, xanthoma, cyst or ganglion. It becomes apparent that all tumors or tissue masses resulting from proliferative processes in the region of joints, tendons, tendon sheaths, bursae and synovial prolongations must be regarded with suspicion. The possibility of the lesion's being a synovioma must be foremost in the surgeon's mind. In each case a meticulous microscopic study should be performed to determine the true nature of the lesion. Occasionally the symptoms are interpreted as the result of some form of internal derangement, especially if a history of recent injury can be elicited.

Biopsy should not be performed in tumors which are movable and readily accessible but instead wide excision of the lesion should be the rule. In large diffuse lesions which do not lend themselves to this form of treatment, aspiration biopsy is justifiable in order to establish the correct diagnosis.

**Treatment.** The goal in the treatment of all localized soft tissue tumors or tumorlike lesions resulting from reactive proliferative processes should be radical extirpation of the lesion. Preliminary biopsy must be condemned when possible, total excision of the mass should be the primary surgical procedure. It is reasonable to assume that the many cases of recurrences recorded by numerous workers result from failure to achieve the aforementioned goal. Too often the seriousness of the lesion is underestimated and the lesion is not removed in toto. Recurrent lesions do not lend themselves to excision; now amputation of the affected limb is justified. As so often occurs even deletion of the limb does not effect a cure since by the time this mutilating procedure is performed pulmonary metastasis has occurred. Local excision is futile in the face of roentgenographic evidence of bone involvement. The primary treatment of choice is amputation. Roentgen radiation is ineffective because the tumor is radio-resistant. Even after radical excision of the tumor

the patient should be under close observation for many years. It is a known clinical fact that dissemination of the neoplasm may not occur until many years have elapsed after removal of the primary focus.

**Prognosis.** In general, from a long term point of view, the prognosis is poor. The number of cures recorded in the literature following the removal of malignant synoviomias are few. Five year follow up studies do not indicate permanent eradication of the lesion. Cases are on record in which metastatic foci become manifest 5 years or more after removal of the primary lesion. Further investigation of this tumor is most essential; such studies should strive to establish histologic criteria distinguishing benign, potentially malignant and obviously malignant lesions in their early stages of development. Such information, as noted by Bennett, may be obtained by long follow up studies of all known synovial lesions regardless of their mode of origin. Once obtained, this information may revise the future management of synovial lesions. Some observers, even now, advocate high amputation or disarticulation of the limb if, after complete extirpation of the tumor, histologic study establishes the diagnosis of malignant synovioloma. However, the cases treated by primary amputation are too few to draw any conclusions. In the series reported by Haagensen and Stout, only 4 of 104 collected cases were treated by early amputation. These workers also recorded that approximately 25 per cent of the cases with metastasis had regional lymph node involvement while nearly all had metastatic pulmonary foci. In the light of this observation, the advisability of groin dissection at the time of amputation or excision is indeed questionable.

#### SYNOVIAL OSTEOCHONDROMATOSIS

This affection implicates the synovial membrane of joints, tendon sheaths and bursae. It is characterized by the formation of cartilaginous and osteocartilaginous bodies. (See Chap. 10 "Loose Bodies")

## BURSAE

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Bursal cavities are lined with synovial tissue that is similar to the synovial membrane of joint cavities. Essentially, the synovial tissue comprises modified connective tissue, having a smooth surface which often is covered by fine prolongations forming villi when it overlies loose areolar or fatty tissue, folds varying in size and number are formed. The structural pattern of synovial tissue of bursae, like that lining joint cavities, is determined by the nature of the underlying tissue, which may be fibrous, areolar or fatty tissue. However, in all three forms the basic cytologic and structural architecture is the same. It consists of surface cells arranged in one or more parallel layers which overlie a stroma of connective tissue cells and fibers and is richly supplied with vascular and lymphatic channels and nerves. Affections which implicate the synovialis of joints may also involve the lining of bursal cavities.

The prime function of bursae is to reduce friction between two surfaces when these surfaces are in motion. Hence, numerous bursae are present in the body, particularly in the region of joints. Most bursae have a genetic origin; however, others are formed in response to functional stimuli. In general, these structures are encountered between bony structures and a tendon or a group of tendons inserting in adjacent areas of the bone, such as the bursa anserina, between a bony prominence and a tendon, such as the bursa between the tendo achillis and the posterior surface of the os calcis, between two muscle masses, such as the subacromial bursa, and between the skin and a bony underlying prominence, such as the prepatellar bursa. Depending upon their location in relation to the body surface, bursae may be divided into two principal groups: (1) superficial bursae and (2) deep bursae. Bursae situated in the region of joints not infrequently communicate with the joint cavity. This is especially





FIG 346 Case of multiple xanthomata. Note the implication of the prepatellar bursa.

true of bursae located about the knee joint.

Many agents are capable of initiating pathologic processes in the synovial lining of bursae in general the most common factors are trauma, occupational strains infections metabolic disorders and neoplasms. Such disorders as villonodular synovitis synovial osteochondromatosis, malignant synovioma and xanthomatous tumors are encountered in bursae (Fig 346).

In the region of the knee joint 18 or more bursae have been described (Fig 45). Of these the ones having special clinical significance are (1) the suprapatellar bursa an extension of the joint cavity beneath the quadriceps muscle (2) the popliteal bursae of which the bursa between the medial head of the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles is the most important (3) the prepatellar bursa occupying a position between the distal half of the patella and the skin (4) the infrapatellar bursa situated between the distal segment of the patellar tendon and the anterior surface of the tibia (5) small bursae usually situated beneath the tibial

and the fibular collateral ligaments (6) the superficial pretilial bursa lying between the anterior surface of the insertion of the patellar tendon and the skin and (7) the bursa anserina located on the medial surface of the tibia between the bone and the tendons of the sartorius the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles and lying superficial to the insertion of the long fibers of the tibial collateral ligament. The popliteal bursa and the suprapatellar bursa usually communicate with the joint cavity. In addition, the following bursae may also communicate with the joint cavity: (1) the bursa between the capsule and the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle (2) the bursa between the capsule and the outer head of the gastrocnemius muscle and (3) the bursa between the tendon of the semimembranosus muscle and the tendon of the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle. Communication between the tibiofibular joint and the knee joint through the popliteal bursa is observed occasionally. These avenues of communication between bursal and joint cavities have special clinical significance because a pathologic process originating in one may extend into the other cavity.

#### FORMS OF BURITIS

**Traumatic Bursitis.** Direct trauma to a bursal sac is followed by distention of the cavity by synovial effusion and occasionally the fluid may be blood tinged. Bursae situated on the anterior aspect of the knee joint like the prepatellar and the pretilial bursae are especially vulnerable to trauma. Generally single injuries do not result in permanent alterations in the bursal sac.

Repeated minor traumas such as are sustained in certain occupations, may cause thickening of the bursal walls and accumulation of fluid. The lining membrane shows evidence of degenerative alterations villi and folds are observed frequently also fibrous septa may divide the sac into compartments varying in size and numbers. In

chronic forms of long duration, rice bodies may form in the synovial cavity, and the accumulated fluid constitutes a bursal hygroma.

Implantation of organisms into a bursal sac may produce a suppurative or non suppurative form of bursitis, depending upon the virulence of the organism. The organisms may be introduced directly into the sac or in the neighboring tissues or they may be brought to the area from a distant focus. Suppurative bursitis implicating the prepatellar or the pretibial bursa is a relatively common entity. Prior to the advent of the antibiotic agents gonococcal bursitis was observed frequently.

Tuberculous bursitis occurs more frequently than is generally realized. The most favored sites are the prepatellar, the subacromial and the trochanteric bursae. Frequently, the true nature of these lesions is not recognized until the disease has existed a long period of time. Incision without extirpation of the entire bursal sac may result in the formation of draining sinuses which may not respond even to extensive anti-

biotic therapy. The author has such a case on hand at this moment.

Acute bursitis resulting from invasion of pyogenic organisms is accompanied by rapid swelling and distention of the bursa, increased local temperature, pain, limitation of motion and spasm of muscles motorizing the neighboring joint. These clinical manifestations are clearly demonstrable when the prepatellar and the pretibial bursae are involved. In addition, the acute inflammatory process is accompanied by a general system reaction, comprising elevation of the body temperature, high leukocyte count and increased sedimentation time.

Lesions of tuberculous origin are more insidious in nature and pursue a more protracted course. Pain is constant but not as intense as in the suppurative varieties. Pressure over bursae of both forms elicits tenderness. Suppurative bursitis discloses all the local signs of local active inflammatory process.

Gouty Bursitis. Implication of bursa may be a concomitant lesion of gouty ar-



FIG. 347. Roentgenograms of a gouty process in the nonarticular surface of the patella, producing manifestations of an acute bursitis not unlike an infectious process.

thrititis Chronic irritation of the synovial lining by chalky deposits in the lumen is followed by pronounced thickening and fibrosis of the bursal walls. Occasionally the process becomes activated suddenly, giving rise to symptoms not unlike infectious bursitis. The author has encountered

one such case in which the patella was involved in the gouty process. The prepatellar bursa suddenly becomes distended and very painful (Fig 347)

Syphilitic Bursitis. Involvement of bursa particularly the prepatellar and the olecranon bursae, have been observed as



FIG 348 Calcification in the prepatellar bursa



FIG 349 Calcification in the infrapatellar bursa

associated lesions of tertiary syphilis. Following effusion into the bursal sac, the soft tissues may ulcerate and give rise to draining sinuses. The diagnosis is established by recognition of other features of this stage of syphilis and serologic studies; the Wassermann test is positive.

**Bursitis Associated With Arthritides.** Occasionally, chronic thickening of the walls and distention of the popliteal bursa is associated with rheumatoid and osteoarthritis of the knee joint. With the knowledge that some of these bursae communicate with the joint cavity, it is reasonable to assume that the pathologic process in the bursa is a direct extension of that involving the articular cavity.

**Bursitis Associated With Calcification.** Calcification in bursal sacs in the region of the knee joint is relatively rare; however, Brantigen and Voshell noted that calcification beneath the tibial collateral ligament may be responsible for certain cases of Pellegrini-Stieda disease. Morley and Bickel reported 8 cases in 1949 which were obtained from the files of the Mayo Clinic. The author has encountered one case of calcification in the prepatellar bursa and one of the infrapatellar bursa (Figs 348 and 349). As yet, no satisfactory explanation has been provided for the formation of heterotopic calcification. Although trauma must be considered, there is no convincing evidence that it is the sole etiologic agent of calcification in bursae. In the aforementioned series, 5 patients had a history of injury; the remaining 3 did not. Microscopic study reveals a chronic inflammatory process involving the synovial membrane and deposition of amorphous calcium.

**Bursitis Associated With Neoplastic and Nonneoplastic Proliferations.** It was noted previously that synovial osteochondromatosis, villonodular synovitis, and xanthomatous tumors may implicate bursae; all these lesions have been observed in bursae about the knee joints (Figs 346 to 350).

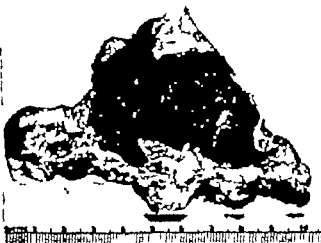


FIG 350 Villonodular synovitis involving the popliteal bursa in a young woman 22 years old.

#### MANAGEMENT OF BURSTITIS

**Acute Traumatic Bursitis.** Usually after the initial inflammatory response to single trauma, the effusion subsides gradually, and the bursa returns to normalcy. Aspiration, followed by compression bandages and restricted activity, enhances recovery. During the early acute stages, cold applications for several days provide considerable comfort; later, heat applications favor absorption of the fluid. Incision or excision of the bursa is not indicated. Recently, hydrocortone injected into the cavity is reported to cure a high percentage of cases.

**Chronic Traumatic Bursitis.** If the causative agent is eliminated and the malady fails to respond to simple conservative measures as noted in the treatment of acute traumatic lesions, excision of the bursal sac is justified. The author never has looked upon sclerosing agents to obliterate the sac with favor. Hydrocortone, 1 or 2 cc., may be tried. In several cases the author has observed diminution in the size of the swelling, decrease in the thickness of the bursal walls, and relief of pain after two or three injections. Following excision, the walls of the remaining cavity should be kept in apposition by a firm compression bandage until healing has occurred. This



FIG. 351. Acute prepatellar bursitis.

precaution is necessary to prevent accumulation of fluid between the tissue layers which may lead to the formation of another sac. After removal of the sac, the tissues may be approximated by sutures obliterating the remaining cavity. The patient must be cautioned against inflicting repeated trauma to the part otherwise an adventitious bursa may form.

**Suppurative Bursitis.** Essentially the treatment comprises rest to the knee joint by application of a posterior splint, continuous hot fomentations and administration of antibiotic agents. Aspiration of the bursal sac and injection of weak antibiotic solutions (250 units of penicillin per cc.) into the sac enhances eradication of the suppurative process. If these measures fail, incision and drainage of the sac are justified in addition to systemic administration of antibiotic drugs.

**Tuberculous Bursitis.** In tuberculous involvement of a bursal sac, surgical intervention is the treatment of choice; the bursa should be extirpated in toto. In addition, the use of streptomycin or one of the isonicotinic acid compounds should be employed; this tends to reduce the incidence of recurrence of the lesion and prevents formation of draining sinuses.

**Bursitis Associated With Neoplasm and Non-neoplastic Proliferations.** Treatment of villonodular synovitis is similar in every respect to that of the lesions implicating the knee joint. In general, it comprises excision of the bursa with its entire contents.

**Bursitis Associated With Calcification.** Excision of the bursal sac is the treatment of choice if the prepatellar or pre-tibial bursae are involved. Calcification of the ligament in the region of the collateral ligament may be treated by needling and injection with hydrocortone. Failure to respond to these conservative measures is an indication for extirpation of the bursal sac. Use of roentgen rays in this disorder is contraindicated since it in no way changes the course of the disease nor does it eradicate the symptoms. The author has encountered several patients with para-articular calcification in which irradiation was used with no effect.

**Prepatellar Bursitis.** This bursa lies in the lower one half of the patella and the proximal one half of the patellar ligament; it is subcutaneous (Fig. 351). Chronic involvement of this structure is encountered frequently in individuals whose occupations require kneeling for long periods. The condition is commonly referred to as "housemaid's knee." All the pathologic processes described previously may involve the bursa; also the treatment in each instance has been discussed. Infectious bursitis must not be interpreted erroneously as a suppurative process in the knee joint and opening the joint will result in pyogenic arthritis. When necessary the bursa should be drained without entering the joint cavity. The bursa is opened by two lateral incisions, one on each side of the patella. After the contents are evacuated, the sac is flushed out with a solution of warm normal saline and packed loosely with a thin strip of gauze impregnated with petrolatum. Postoperative management consists of

of the limb on a posterior splint continuous hot fomentations and antibiotic therapy. Every 2 or 3 days the pack is removed, and a smaller one is inserted until the cavity is obliterated and healing is complete.

When the walls of the bursa are thickened markedly, it is a simple matter to excise the bursa in toto. This is achieved readily through a vertical mid line or a transverse incision  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 inches in length. A line of cleavage is developed anteriorly between the skin and the sac and posteriorly between the sac and the anterior surface of the patella and its aponeurosis. At the termination of the operation a compression bandage is applied, and the limb is put at complete rest on a posterior splint. Hot fomentations are employed until all evidence of inflammation has subsided. Generally after 10 to 14 days healing is complete and weight bearing and quadriceps exercises may be commenced.

**Infrapatellar Bursitis.** This is a small synovial sac between the upper portion of the anterior surface of the tibia and the patellar ligament. The infrapatellar fat pad separates it from the synovial lining of the joint. Implication of this structure causes marked limitation of flexion and extension of the joint. The soft tissues over the tibial tubercle may become thickened and swelling appears on either side of the patellar tendon. It may be the seat of any of the disorders described previously; the treatment is also the same.

One case of special interest was encountered in which there was widespread calcification of this bursa. In fact the process also involved the entire infrapatellar fat pad (Fig. 349). A cure was effected by excision of the entire calcareous mass.

**Anserina Bursitis.** This bursa is involved less frequently than the prepatellar or infrapatellar bursae. As noted previously, it is located between the medial aspect of the tibia and the tendinous insertions of the sartorius, the gracilis and the semi-

tendinosus muscles. It lies anterior to the distal portion of the long fibers of the tibial collateral ligament. Adventitious bursae may form in the vicinity of the anserina bursa and even communicate with it. Repeated minor trauma may produce an effusion in and thickening of the walls of this bursa. Pain and swelling situated in the upper and medial aspect of the tibia should make one suspicious of implication of the anserina bursa. Frequently it is mistaken for tissue changes associated with chronic arthritis for meniscal affections, ganglions and lesions of the tibial collateral ligament. Acute and subacute varieties usually respond to conservative measures such as rest, compression bandages and aspiration. Surgical excision is justified in cases of recurrence, cases resistant to conservative therapy, villonodular synovitis and osteochondromatosis.

#### POPLITEAL BURSAE

**Anatomic Considerations.** The texts on anatomy describe numerous and variable bursae in the popliteal space in relation to the tendons of the hamstring muscles, the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle, the condyles of the femur, the posterior capsule of the knee joint, the condyles of the tibia and the collateral ligaments. Because some of these bursae are frequently implicated by pathologic processes which require excision of the bursal sacs, comprehension of the anatomic location and configuration of these structures is essential. Wilson et al. dissected the popliteal fossae and the medial side of the knee joint of 30 cadavers. They noted that the discrepancies recorded in the degree of fusion or lack of fusion between various members of what we may term the six primary bursae are: (1) the bursa anserina which lies between the tibia and the tibial collateral ligament below and the insertion of the tendons of the sartorius, the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles above.

(2) a semimembranosus bursa located between the tibial collateral ligament and the tendon of insertion of the semimembranosus muscle (3) a second semimembranosus bursa situated between the tendon of the semimembranosus and the medial condyle of the tibia, (4) a bursa lying between the medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle and the capsule immediately over the inner condyle of the femur (5) a third semimembranosus bursa, located between the posterior surface of the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle and the overlying semimembranosus muscle it projects distally and inwardly between the tendon of the semimembranosus and the capsule over the medial condyle and (6) a relatively rare bursa between the tendons of the semimembranosus and the semitendinosus muscles Bursae (2) and (3) frequently communicate and hence are often described as a single bursa

The workers noted that the bursa between the deep surface of the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the capsule over the medial femoral condyle [bursa (4)] and the bursa lying between the superficial surface of the inner head of the gastrocnemius and semimembranosus [bursa (5)] often fuse to form a composite bursa which they have designated gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa They encountered this structure in 26 of the 30 dissected specimens in 4 specimens the bursae did not communicate with each other Of the 26 composite bursae 15 communicated with the joint. In the 4 specimens having 2 separate bursae 2 of the bursae under the inner head of the gastrocnemius communicated with the joint cavity On the other hand none of the bursae between the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus had direct extension with articular cavity When a communication with the joint existed it was located in that portion of the composite bursa comprising the bursa under the inner head of the gastrocnemius The opening in the posterior capsule of the

joint invariably was observed superior and medial to the oblique popliteal ligament and directly under the most proximal portion of the tendon of origin of the inner head of the gastrocnemius, no stalk or pedicle was observed

The gastrocnemio semimembranosus bursa comprises a superficial and deep portion the former is lax and loosely attached to the adjacent areolar tissue It measures approximately 1 to 1½ inches in length and ¼ inch in width its longitudinal axis parallels the course of the outer border of the semimembranosus, the latter fuses with the tendon of the semimembranosus and the inner head of the gastrocnemius Proximally, the bursa projects around the inner head of the gastrocnemius, covering its superficial surface, distally it extends to the inner tuberosity of the tibia When traced transversely, it was noted that the bursa envelops the adjacent margins of the two muscles and is reflected on the posterior portion of the capsule of the knee joint Frequently septa are encountered in the bursa. The anatomic features of this composite bursa are similar to those of the majority of popliteal cysts observed in this region moreover, the cysts found in children do not differ from an anatomic view point from those observed in the adults

**Etiology of Popliteal Cysts.** The origin of cystic masses in the popliteal fossa has aroused much interest and is still a controversial topic. Fortunately the derivation of the lesions is only of academic interest it has no bearing on their recognition and management. Adams is credited with the first description of this entity in 1840 believing it to be a distention of bursa under the inner head of the gastrocnemius which communicated with the articular cavity through a valvular opening Gruber in 1885 described the anatomy of distended bursal sacs and posterior herniae of the capsule of the knee joint Since this period numerous workers have studied these cysts supporting one or the other theory of

origin Baker in 1877, recorded a series of 8 cases and another in 1885. He was of the opinion that they were herniae produced by effusion in osteoarthritic knee joints. A popliteal cyst is most frequently known as Baker's cyst. Other names for this entity are semimembranosus bursitis, medial gastrocnemius bursitis and popliteal bursitis. More recently, Haggart noted that synovial cysts in the popliteal fossa may be the result of posterior herniae of the capsule of the knee joint or hyperplasia of the normal bursae. Wilson et al take a more positive stand believing that most if not all cysts are the result of accumulation of synovial fluid in the composite gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa. In support of their premise these workers point out that (1) the cysts found between the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles occupy a position which corresponds to that of the bursa normally found in this region. (2) at operation an intimate attachment is found invariably between the medial and the lateral walls of the deep portion of the cyst and the tendinous portions of the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles. This relationship is also found in the normal bursa found in this interval. (3) the location of the point of communication between the cyst and the joint cavity corresponds to that between the bursa and the articular cavity. (4) herniations of the capsule can occur only in the presence of increased intra-articular pressure associated with effusions of long standing yet frequently the cysts are encountered in patients particularly children in whom the knee joints are normal in every respect except for the presence of a posterior cystic mass and in which an effusion in the joint never existed. Moreover it is logical to conclude that intra-articular pressure is more likely to distend a communicating bursa than to produce a herniation through the posterior capsule.

**Cause of Effusion in Popliteal Cysts.** There is convincing evidence that some

form of trauma is the causative agent responsible for the formation of effusions in popliteal cysts. Trauma may be in the form of repeated minor injuries produced by forceful contractions of the adjacent muscles some portion of which blend with the bursal walls, or a single violent contraction which may tear a portion of the wall. The presence of hemosiderin in the wall of the bursal sac is evidence in support of this theory. Regardless of the form of injury irritation of the bursa is followed by effusion which distends the sac and renders it more vulnerable to repeated injuries incident to joint motion. The basis for a chronic inflammatory process is now established, soon the walls become markedly thickened and villous formation metaplasia of connective tissue elements forming cartilage and loculation of the bursal cavity, become manifest. Some observers suggest that congenital aberration in the structure of the bursa may initiate the inflammatory process, particularly in children. Gradual distention causes pronounced enlargement of the bursal sac. Although the size is variable, some cases have been recorded in which the sac projected as far as mid-calf.

**Gross Appearance of Hernial Sac.** As noted previously the size varies also its walls vary in thickness and its external surface is usually irregular, exhibiting areas covered with fibrous, fatty or areolar tissue. The cavity may be loculated showing in complete fibrous septa. Usually the bursa is distended by a viscid yellowish fluid which may be clear or slightly turbid because of the presence of fibrin. As a rule, the lining wall is smooth and glistening occasionally coarse rough areas due to hyaline material are discernible.

**Microscopic Findings.** Generally the bursal lining resembles that of the synovialis in the joint cavity however continued distention of the tissues results in the formation of considerable amounts of highly cellular fibrous tissue which com-



prises the greater portion of the bursal walls. This is lined by flattened, modified surface cells comprising connective tissue cells. Generally, the walls are flat but in certain areas the formation of villi and folds projecting into the lumen of the sac is evident. The subsurface stratum exhibits numerous round cells. The outer surface consists essentially of fibrous tissue richly supplied by blood vessels. Metaplasia of the connective tissue into hyaline and fibrocartilage is demonstrable in certain areas of the bursal wall. Also, blood pigment may be discernible.

**Clinical Features.** Popliteal cysts are encountered in all age periods. The author has observed 7 cases in children under 10 years of age. Males are affected more frequently than females. The incidence in the right and the left knees is approximately the same. The intensity of the symptom is variable. In children no pain or dysfunction is noted. The only positive clinical feature is the presence of a cystic, painless mass in the popliteal fossa. In most adults there is some stiffness and discomfort and some have pain of varying intensity which is accentuated by long periods of standing and other activities. In some the symptoms are localized to the posterior aspect of the knee. In others to the entire knee joint. Generally, the patients are aware of fluctuations in the size of the cyst. The length of time that the patients are cognizant of the lesion is also variable. It may range from several months to 4 years. Usually, the lesion is unilateral but it may be bilateral particularly when associated with arthritis of the knee joint.

Physical examination discloses a mass in the posterior aspect of the knee which is not painful. Over it the skin moves freely. On extension of the knee joint the cyst increases in firmness. Often it becomes very tense. On flexion it usually can be displaced from side to side with relative ease. It is significant to note that the greater portion of the mass lies distal to the flexion crease

of the knee, a feature which was noted both by Haggart and Wilson et al. Occasionally, the cystic mass is lax so that it is difficult to distinguish it from the fatty tissue normally found in this region. In large firm cysts fluctuation may be demonstrable. In some patients swelling of the knee joint is a concomitant feature. This is particularly true in cases of osteoarthritis. In some cases of this group when swelling of the knee joint becomes more pronounced, the size of the cyst decreases or disappears. Haggart believes this phenomenon is the result of evacuation of the contents of the cyst into the joint cavity. On the other hand, in no instance has the author been able to reduce the size of the popliteal swelling by compression of the bursal sac. However, it must be admitted that spontaneous interchange of fluid between the joint cavity and the popliteal cyst is possible and must occur in some instance especially when a large patent foramen between the two cavities exists. There must be some explanation why this phenomenon does not occur more frequently. Some observers (Wilson et al.) suggest that the close proximity of the foramen to the femoral condyle creates an obturator in the aperture. Also the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles may compress the deeper portion of the sac sufficiently so that the fluid in the remaining portion of the sac is isolated. Finally, the viscid nature of the effusion and the smallness of the aperture may preclude the interchange of fluids.

Roentgenographic study reveals the presence of a globular mass in the popliteal fossa having greater density than the surrounding soft tissues. Of course when arthritis of the knee joint is an associated feature alterations consistent with this lesion are demonstrable. Roentgenograms made after aspiration of fluid and injection of air into the sac will reveal in some instances air in the joint cavity and the bursal sac establishing the presence of a communication between the two cavities. This

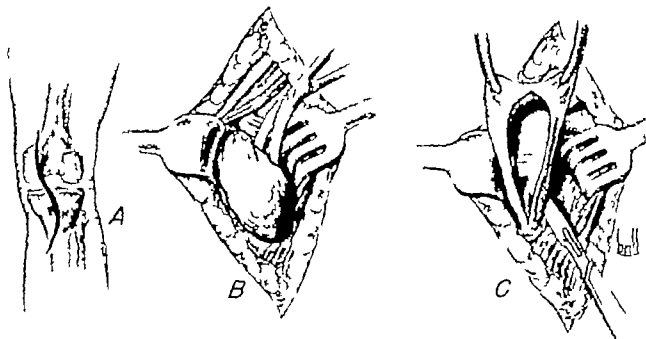


FIG. 352 Removal of popliteal cysts (gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa). The inner head of the gastrocnemius is retracted laterally, protecting the neurovascular structures from injury (A) An S-shaped incision is made in the posteromedial aspect of the joint, (B) the cyst is mobilized by sharp dissection. (C) Opening of the cyst wall facilitates localization of the aperture between the cyst and the joint cavity

can be demonstrated also by injection of air into the joint cavity

Other diagnostic aids are transillumination of the lesion which may exhibit the cystic nature of the swelling and aspiration of the sac which discloses the viscid fluid characteristic of this lesion

**Diagnosis.** Small lesions without swelling of the knee joint may be overlooked, and the vague symptoms may induce one to make a diagnosis of some form of internal derangement of the joint. Meticulous examination of the posterior aspect of the knee before a diagnosis of internal derangement is made precludes such an error. It must be remembered that both lesions may exist in the same knee joint; hence care must be taken to elicit the cardinal clinical features of both entities.

Bursae besides the composite gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa, may give rise to swellings in the popliteal fossa. The semitendinosus bursa lies in the posterolateral region of the fossa, and the semimem-

branosus bursa in the posteromedial region.

Occasionally, aneurysms occur in the popliteal fossa, these must be considered. These are pulsating tumors, a bruit may be demonstrable which is synchronous with the pulsations. Hemangiomas are soft tumor masses, often very painful to superficial pressure. They exhibit increased local heat and dilated superficial vessels. Roentgenograms may disclose small areas of calcification in the tumor.

Varicosities may be responsible for tumorlike masses in the posterior aspect of the knee. These are recognized readily by the presence of large tortuous soft swellings which are compressible and usually not painful. Other varicosities and at times varicose ulcers are observed in the lower extremity distal to the knee joint.

Neoplasms both benign and malignant, may arise in this region. When the diagnosis is in doubt transillumination aspiration and biopsy of the lesion establish the true nature of the lesion. Failure to trans-

prises the greater portion of the bursal walls. This is lined by flattened modified surface cells comprising connective tissue cells. Generally the walls are flat, but in certain areas the formation of villi and folds projecting into the lumen of the sac is evident. The subsurface stratum exhibits numerous round cells. The outer surface consists essentially of fibrous tissue richly supplied by blood vessels. Metaplasia of the connective tissue into hyaline and fibrocartilage is demonstrable in certain areas of the bursal wall. Also blood pigment may be discernible.

**Clinical Features.** Popliteal cysts are encountered in all age periods. The author has observed 7 cases in children under 10 years of age. Males are affected more frequently than females. The incidence in the right and the left knees is approximately the same. The intensity of the symptom is variable. In children no pain or dysfunction is noted. The only positive clinical feature is the presence of a cystic painless mass in the popliteal fossa. In most adults there is some stiffness and discomfort and some have pain of varying intensity which is accentuated by long periods of standing and other activities. In some the symptoms are localized to the posterior aspect of the knee. In others to the entire knee joint. Generally the patients are aware of fluctuations in the size of the cyst. The length of time that the patients are cognizant of the lesion is also variable. It may range from several months to 4 years. Usually the lesion is unilateral but it may be bilateral particularly when associated with arthritis of the knee joint.

Physical examination discloses a mass in the posterior aspect of the knee which is not painful. Over it the skin moves freely. On extension of the knee joint the cyst increases in firmness. Often it becomes very tense. On flexion it usually can be displaced from side to side with relative ease. It is significant to note that the greater portion of the mass lies distal to the flexion crease

of the knee, a feature which was noted both by Haggart and Wilson et al. Occasionally the cystic mass is lax so that it is difficult to distinguish it from the fatty tissue normally found in this region. In large firm cysts fluctuation may be demonstrable. In some patients swelling of the knee joint is a concomitant feature. This is particularly true in cases of osteoarthritis. In some cases of this group when swelling of the knee joint becomes more pronounced the size of the cyst decreases or disappears. Haggart believes this phenomenon is the result of evacuation of the contents of the cyst into the joint cavity. On the other hand in no instance has the author been able to reduce the size of the popliteal swelling by compression of the bursal sac. However it must be admitted that spontaneous interchange of fluid between the joint cavity and the popliteal cyst is possible and must occur in some instance especially when a large patent foramen between the two cavities exists. There must be some explanation why this phenomenon does not occur more frequently. Some observers (Wilson et al.) suggest that the close proximity of the foramen to the femoral condyle creates an obturator in the aperture. Also the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles may compress the deeper portion of the sac sufficiently so that the fluid in the remaining portion of the sac is isolated. Finally the viscous nature of the effusion and the smallness of the aperture may preclude the interchange of fluids.

Roentgenographic study reveals the presence of a globular mass in the popliteal fossa having greater density than the surrounding soft tissues. Of course when arthritis of the knee joint is an associated feature alterations consistent with this lesion are demonstrable. Roentgenograms made after aspiration of fluid and injection of air into the sac will reveal in some instances air in the joint cavity and the bursal sac, establishing the presence of a communication between the two cavities. This

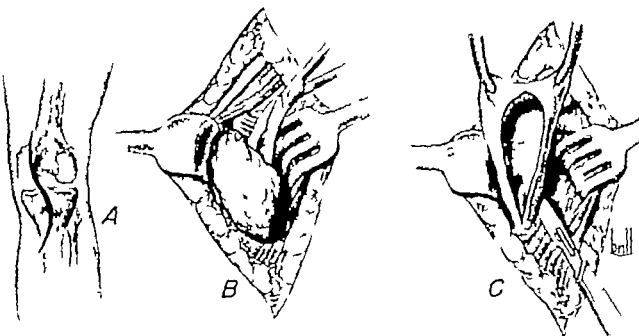


FIG. 352 Removal of popliteal cysts (gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa). The inner head of the gastrocnemius is retracted laterally protecting the neurovascular structures from injury. (A) An S-shaped incision is made in the posteromedial aspect of the joint, (B) the cyst is mobilized by sharp dissection. (C) Opening of the cyst wall facilitates localization of the aperture between the cyst and the joint cavity.

can be demonstrated also by injection of air into the joint cavity.

Other diagnostic aids are transillumination of the lesion which may exhibit the cystic nature of the swelling and aspiration of the sac which discloses the viscid fluid characteristic of this lesion.

**Diagnosis.** Small lesions without swelling of the knee joint may be overlooked, and the vague symptoms may induce one to make a diagnosis of some form of internal derangement of the joint. Meticulous examination of the posterior aspect of the knee before a diagnosis of internal derangement is made precludes such an error. It must be remembered that both lesions may exist in the same knee joint; hence, care must be taken to elicit the cardinal clinical features of both entities.

Bursae besides the composite gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa, may give rise to swellings in the popliteal fossa. The semitendinosus bursa lies in the posterolateral region of the fossa, and the semimem-

branosus bursa in the posteromedial region.

Occasionally, aneurysms occur in the popliteal fossa, these must be considered. These are pulsating tumors; a bruit may be demonstrable which is synchronous with the pulsations. Hemangiomas are soft tumor masses, often very painful to superficial pressure. They exhibit increased local heat and dilated superficial vessels. Roentgenograms may disclose small areas of calcification in the tumor.

Varicosities may be responsible for tumorlike masses in the posterior aspect of the knee. These are recognized readily by the presence of large tortuous soft swellings which are compressible and usually not painful. Other varicosities and at times varicose ulcers are observed in the lower extremity distal to the knee joint.

Neoplasms, both benign and malignant, may arise in this region. When the diagnosis is in doubt, transillumination, aspiration and biopsy of the lesion establish the true nature of the lesion. Failure to trans-

prises the greater portion of the bursal walls. This is lined by flattened, modified surface cells comprising connective-tissue cells. Generally, the walls are flat but in certain areas the formation of villi and folds projecting into the lumen of the sac is evident. The subsurface stratum exhibits numerous round cells. The outer surface consists essentially of fibrous tissue richly supplied by blood vessels. Metaplasia of the connective tissue into hyaline and fibrocartilage is demonstrable in certain areas of the bursal wall also; blood pigment may be discernible.

**Clinical Features.** Popliteal cysts are encountered in all age periods. The author has observed 7 cases in children under 10 years of age. Males are affected more frequently than females. The incidence in the right and the left knees is approximately the same. The intensity of the symptom is variable. In children no pain or dysfunction is noted. The only positive clinical feature is the presence of a cystic, painless mass in the popliteal fossa. In most adults there is some stiffness and discomfort and some have pain of varying intensity which is accentuated by long periods of standing and other activities. In some the symptoms are localized to the posterior aspect of the knee. In others to the entire knee joint. Generally the patients are aware of fluctuations in the size of the cyst. The length of time that the patients are cognizant of the lesion is also variable. It may range from several months to 4 years. Usually the lesion is unilateral but it may be bilateral particularly when associated with arthritis of the knee joint.

Physical examination discloses a mass in the posterior aspect of the knee which is not painful over it. The skin moves freely. On extension of the knee joint the cyst increases in firmness. Often it becomes very tense. On flexion it usually can be displaced from side to side with relative ease. It is significant to note that the greater portion of the mass lies distal to the flexion crease

of the knee, a feature which was noted both by Haggart and Wilson et al. Occasionally, the cystic mass is lax so that it is difficult to distinguish it from the fatty tissue normally found in this region. In large firm cysts fluctuation may be demonstrable. In some patients swelling of the knee joint is a concomitant feature. This is particularly true in cases of osteoarthritis. In some cases of this group when swelling of the knee joint becomes more pronounced the size of the cyst decreases or disappears. Haggart believes this phenomenon is the result of evacuation of the contents of the cyst into the joint cavity. On the other hand in no instance has the author been able to reduce the size of the popliteal swelling by compression of the bursal sac. However, it must be admitted that spontaneous interchange of fluid between the joint cavity and the popliteal cyst is possible and must occur in some instance especially when a large patent foramen between the two cavities exists. There must be some explanation why this phenomenon does not occur more frequently. Some observers (Wilson et al.) suggest that the close proximity of the foramen to the femoral condyle creates an obturator in the aperture also; the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles may compress the deeper portion of the sac sufficiently so that the fluid in the remaining portion of the sac is isolated. Finally the viscid nature of the effusion and the smallness of the aperture may preclude the interchange of fluids.

Roentgenographic study reveals the presence of a globular mass in the popliteal fossa having greater density than the surrounding soft tissues. Of course when arthritis of the knee joint is an associated feature, alterations consistent with this lesion are demonstrable. Roentgenograms made after aspiration of fluid and injection of air into the sac will reveal in some instances air in the joint cavity and the bursal sac, establishing the presence of a communication between the two cavities. This

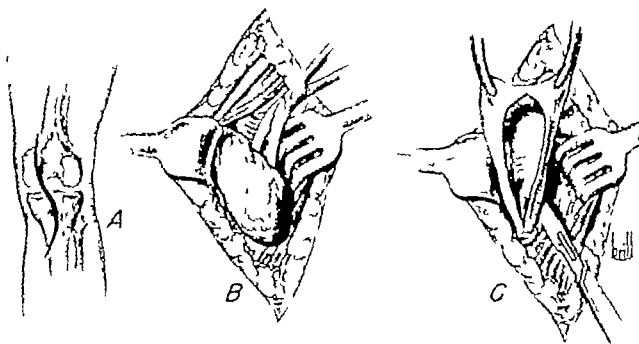


FIG 352 Removal of popliteal cysts (gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa) The inner head of the gastrocnemius is retracted laterally, protecting the neurovascular structures from injury (A) An S-shaped incision is made in the posteromedial aspect of the joint, (B) the cyst is mobilized by sharp dissection (C) Opening of the cyst wall facilitates localization of the aperture between the cyst and the joint cavity

can be demonstrated also by injection of air into the joint cavity

Other diagnostic aids are transillumination of the lesion which may exhibit the cystic nature of the swelling and aspiration of the sac which discloses the viscid fluid characteristic of this lesion

**Diagnosis.** Small lesions without swelling of the knee joint may be overlooked, and the vague symptoms may induce one to make a diagnosis of some form of internal derangement of the joint. Meticulous examination of the posterior aspect of the knee before a diagnosis of internal derangement is made precludes such an error. It must be remembered that both lesions may exist in the same knee joint; hence care must be taken to elicit the cardinal clinical features of both entities.

**Bursae.** Besides the composite gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa, may give rise to swellings in the popliteal fossa. The semitendinosus bursa lies in the posterolateral region of the fossa and the semimem-

branosus bursa in the posteromedial region.

Occasionally, aneurysms occur in the popliteal fossa; these must be considered. These are pulsating tumors; a bruit may be demonstrable which is synchronous with the pulsations. Hemangiomas are soft tumor masses, often very painful to superficial pressure. They exhibit increased local heat and dilated superficial vessels. Roentgenograms may disclose small areas of calcification in the tumor.

Varicosities may be responsible for tumorlike masses in the posterior aspect of the knee. These are recognized readily by the presence of large tortuous soft swellings which are compressible and usually not painful. Other varicosities and at times varicose ulcers are observed in the lower extremity distal to the knee joint.

Neoplasms, both benign and malignant may arise in this region. When the diagnosis is in doubt, transillumination, aspiration and biopsy of the lesion establish the true nature of the lesion. Failure to trans-

illuminate the mass and to obtain viscid fluid on aspiration points to lesions other than popliteal cysts. Occasionally, synovoma and lipoma are encountered in the popliteal space. If biopsy is done, it should comprise total excision of the mass. Fibrosarcoma generally exhibits a firm texture, it is painful, increases progressively in size and is fixed to the surrounding tissues. Transillumination and aspiration are of value only in a negative sense because they eliminate popliteal cysts. Biopsy of the tissue establishes the diagnosis. Primary involvement of lymph nodes such as Hodgkin's disease must be considered. Usually, there are several nodular firm masses of varying size which are fixed to the deep structures. Similar masses may be found in other regions of the body. Biopsy of the lesion is necessary to make the correct diagnosis.

**Treatment.** Popliteal cysts producing symptoms do not respond to conservative measures; the accepted method of treatment is surgical excision. If the operative procedure is executed correctly, recurrence is rare. Involvement of the composite gastrocnemio-semimembranosus bursa and the semimembranosus bursa, when it exists as a separate bursa, produces a palpable swelling on the medial aspect of the popliteal space usually in the interval between the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles. Occasionally a separate semimembranosus bursa may be present on the medial side of the tendon. When a separate medial gastrocnemius bursa is implicated the swelling may be present in the mid line of the popliteal space. In some instances the bursa may extend beneath the inner head of the gastrocnemius and appear between its inner border and the semimembranosus tendon.

**EXCISION OF GASTROCNEMIUM SEMIMEMBRANOSUS AND SEMIMEMBRANOSUS BURSA (Fig. 352)**

A tourniquet is used in all cases unless contraindicated. A lax S-shaped incision 5

to 6 inches in length and centered over the swelling is made on the medial aspect of the popliteal space. The deep fascia is split longitudinally at the completion of this step, the bursal sac comes into view. By sharp dissection the superficial portion of the sac is separated from the surrounding loose tissues. Traction on the cyst reveals the path it follows between the semimembranosus and the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscles. The deep portion of the cyst is fused with the tendinous surfaces of these muscles so that a plane of cleavage cannot be developed. In order to avoid rupture of the bursal walls a thin layer of the tendinous surface of these structures must be removed together with the sac, by sharp dissection. Dissection continues until the neck or the base of the bursal sac is isolated. The neurovascular structures in the middle of the popliteal fossa are protected from injury by the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle which is retracted laterally. In the event that a neck of the cyst is isolated and it is found communicating with the joint cavity it is clamped slightly above its site of attachment to the posterior capsule and then severed. The remaining stump is ligated and inverted by a purse-string suture. In some instances inversion of the stump cannot be achieved; in others no closure of any type can be effected. The author never has observed unfavorable sequelae following failure to obliterate the opening in the posterior capsule.

When no communication is present between the bursa and the joint the base of the sac usually blends intimately with the posterior capsule; hence wide excision of the base is essential in order to preclude recurrence of the lesion. One should not hesitate to open the bursal sac during the course of its delivery. This step facilitates localization of the limits of the sac and finding the aperture between the joint and the bursal cavity.

After excision of the lesion the edges of the deep fascia are approximated by inter

rupted cotton sutures, and the subcutaneous layer and the skin are closed in the usual manner. Before the tourniquet is removed, the knee is enveloped in several layers of rolled sheet cotton, and compression is made with an elastic bandage.

**Excision of Medial Gastrocnemius Bursa.** As noted above, this lesion is usually present in the mid line. An S-shaped incision is made directly over the distended bursa. The skin and the subcutaneous tissue are dissected back, exposing the deep fascia, this is divided longitudinally. Now the bursal sac usually bulges into the incision. The cyst is separated from the adjacent tissues by blunt dissection. The dissection is continued until delivery of the cyst is completed, except for its attachment to the posterior capsule of the joint. Flexion of the joint relaxes the posterior structures and facilitates the procedure. After the pedicle is isolated it is clamped, divided and ligated. Finally it is inverted with a purse-string suture. As pointed out by Meyerling and Van Demark, in some instances the stump is ligated but not inverted. Occasionally wide excision of the base of the cyst precludes closure of the capsule which must be left open.

**Postoperative Management.** Quadriceps exercises are commenced the following day. This is followed by straight leg raising and later by elastic resistance exercises. On the tenth day weight bearing with crutches is permitted. Unprotected weight bearing is allowed when the quadriceps show good volume and power, usually at the end of 3 or 4 weeks.

## INTERMITTENT HYDRARTHROSIS

This disorder is characterized by transitory swelling of a joint recurring at regular intervals. The knee joint is almost always implicated, although rarely the ankle is involved next in the order of frequency. The lesion has been described also in joints of the upper extremity, but these sites are exceedingly rare. Two varieties are recog-

nized: (1) the idiopathic and (2) the symptomatic.

The idiopathic type is considered by some as a form of allergic manifestation, and some cases have been recorded in which the lesion has been controlled successfully by desensitization and elimination measures. However, these therapeutic measures are not uniformly successful, and the evidence is not conclusive that this is an allergic reaction. Schlesinger is of the opinion that the disorder, in some way, is related to angioneurotic edema and points out the similarities in the two maladies. Other workers have observed the disorder as a concomitant finding in urticaria, asthma and migraine. In the light of these observations, one must conclude that some neurogenic factor plays a role in the precipitation of this disease.

The symptomatic variety is associated with some form of arthritis. It is observed more frequently than the idiopathic type. There is clinical evidence at hand to lead one to believe that this form may be an early stage in the development of rheumatoid arthritis. Constitutional manifestations, such as anemia and rapid sedimentation rate, are noted frequently. Study of the synovialis in these cases discloses varying degrees of proliferation.

It is interesting to note the effect of pregnancy. Moore observed that the disorder disappeared in one particular case during three pregnancies; no swelling occurred from the third month of pregnancy until the third month of lactation. Many reports emphasizing this feature have appeared in the literature. The most significant series was recorded by Biering, he noted that in 9 cases in which pregnancy occurred 8 of the patients were free of the malady during this period.

## CLINICAL FEATURES

Although both men and women are affected, it is more prevalent in the latter. The lesion may occur in all age periods but it is seen most frequently in the young and



those past middle age the highest incidence is in the third and the fourth decades. No case has been reported in the colored races. Although intermittent hydrarthrosis has been observed in parent and offspring and in members of the same family, hereditary and familial factors appear to play no role in its causation. Often in women it is associated with menstruation trauma may be an initiating factor.

Characteristic of the disease are episodes of swelling, coming on suddenly and lasting usually for 4 or 5 days. No associated constitutional reactions are discernible, and no local inflammation of the knee is evident. The only positive finding is diffuse swelling of the joint, producing some discomfort and stiffness. The free period between the episodes varies from 5 to 30 days; during these intervals the knee joint returns to normalcy, or only minimal alterations are evident. The maximum amount of effusion is noted on the second or the third day and then it subsides slowly, usually at the end of 4 or 5 days little or no fluid in the knee joint is demonstrable. The regular cycles may continue for many years. In some there is a tendency for the intervals between the episodes of hydrops to become longer and the intensity of the swelling less. In others the free periods shorten, and the joint fails to return to normalcy. Many of these patients eventually develop rheumatoid arthritis. Occasionally the malady may not manifest itself for several years only to recur with its previous cyclical pattern.

#### PATHOLOGIC ALTERATIONS

Macroscopically mechanical distention of the capsule and the ligamentous apparatus by large amounts of synovial effusion causes varying degrees of relaxation of their structures. The synovialis may be injected and shows evidence of proliferation. The synovial fluid has a high specific gravity.

Its cell content is increased from 50 to 100 per cent comprising polymorphonuclear cells, and it invariably exhibits varying amounts of fibrin.

Microscopic study of the synovial lining discloses increased vascularity, some proliferation and villous formation, generalized edema of all the strata of the membrane and cellular infiltration. Although some workers have reported the growth of several organisms in cultures of the synovial fluid, most evidence fails to support the premise that this lesion is the result of a specific infectious process.

#### MANAGEMENT

Numerous and varied measures have been employed to effect a cure. Aspiration of a large amount of fluid relieves the discomfort and the feeling of tightness in an affected joint but by no means changes the course of the malady. Sclerosing fluid of one kind or another has been used without beneficial results. These measures should be condemned because they may initiate a chemical synovitis. Cases have been reported as cured by nonspecific desensitization: typhoid vaccine injected intravenously and foreign protein have been utilized for this purpose. However, as noted previously, desensitizing and elimination measures have not been uniformly successful. The allergic manifestations of this disease justify the use of such antihistamine drugs as pyribenzamine and Benadryl. For the same reason the value of such agents as cortisone and Hydrocortone should be investigated.

In both forms of intermittent hydrarthrosis, synovectomy has been tried and in some cases has effected a cure. Two patients in the author's series treated by synovectomy have had no recurrences of hydrops; the postoperative period now is 4 years in the first case and 3 years in the second.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

Maclure J. Tumeur à myélopiaxes de la synoviale du genou. Tumeur à myélopiaxes de la rotule.

Accessoirement une vieille erreur de pronostic. Bull. et mém. Soc. nat. chir. 54: 341, 1928.

- brikossoff A., and Herzenberg Helene Zur Frage der angeborenen Lipoidstoffwechselanomalien Arch. path. Anat. 274 146 1930.
- Edkins E. W. O., and Davies D. V. Absorption from the joint cavity Quart J Exper Physiol. 30 147 1940
- Illison N., and Brooks, B. The mobilization of ankylosed joints: an experimental study Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 17 645 1913
- Illison, N., and Coonse G. K. Synovectomy in chronic arthritis Arch. Surg. 18 824 1929
- Illison N and Ghormley R. K. Diagnosis in Joint Disease New York, Wood, 1931
- Jacur W. S. Arthroplasty with the aid of animal membrane, Am J Orthop. Surg. 16 1 94 171 1918
- Jaker W. M. On the formation of synovial cysts in the leg in connection with disease of the knee joint, St Bartholomew's Hosp Rep. 13 245 1877
- The formation of abnormal synovial cysts in connection with the joints (Second communication) St. Bartholomew's Hosp Rep. 21 177 1885
- Jacur W., Ropes, M. W. and Walne H. The physiology of articular structures Physiol Rev. 20 272 1940
- Jennett, G. A. Symposium on scientific proof and relation of law and medicine: medical criteria which govern relations of trauma to joint disease Clinica 1 1448 1943
- Malignant neoplasms originating in synovial tissues (synoviomata) J Bone & Joint Surg. 29 259-291 1947
- Jerger Louis Synovial sarcomas in serous bursae and tendon sheaths, Am. J. Cancer 34 501 1933
- Kledermann Wilhelm, and Hofer K. Ergebnisse der Zuchtung von menschlichen Xanthomgewebe in vitro Arch. exper. Zellforsch. 10 93 1930
- Klok, Harmen The fundamental aspects of lubrication Ann. New York Acad. Sc. 53 779 1951
- Konn, R. Xanthom des Kniegelenks als Unfallfolge Arch. Orthop. u. Unfall-Chir. 33 146 1933
- Koon-Itt, S. B. A study of the end results of synovectomy of the knee. J Bone & Joint Surg. 12 853 1930
- Krauthagen, O. C., and Voshell A. F. The tibial collateral ligament: its function, its bursae, and its relation to the medial meniscus, J Bone & Joint Surg. 25 121 1943
- Briggs, C. D. Malignant tumors of synovial origin, Ann Surg. 115 413 1942
- Kajori, F. A., Crouter C. Y., and Pemberton R. The physiology of synovial fluid, Arch. Int. Med. 37 92 1926
- Callander C. L. Surgical Anatomy Ed. 2, Philadelphia, Saunders 1939
- Cheng K. Observations on dye excretion through synovial membrane after lumbo-sacral sympathectomy and circulatory obstruction Quart J Exper Physiol. 35 135 1949
- Chvostek, F. Xanthelasma und Ikterus Wien klin. Wchnschr. 23 1630 1910
- Chutton, H. H. Symmetrical synovitis of the knee in hereditary syphilis Lancet 1 391 1886
- Cravener E. K. Hernia of the knee joint (Baker's cyst) J Bone & Joint Surg. 14 186 1932
- Davies D. V. The staining reactions of normal synovial membrane with special reference to the origin of synovial mucin, J Anat. 77 160 1943
- Observations on the volume, viscosity and nitrogen content of synovial fluid, with a note on the histological appearance of the synovial membrane J Anat. 78 68 1944
- The cell content of synovial fluid J Anat. 79 66 1945
- Davies, D. V. and Edwards D. A. W. The blood supply of the synovial membrane and intra-articular structures, Ann. Roy. Coll. Surgeons England 1 142 1948
- DeSanto D. A., and Wilson, P. D. Xanthomatous tumors of joints J Bone & Joint Surg. 21 531 1939
- Dieterich, H. Die Regeneration des meniscus Deutsche Ztschr. Chir. 230 251 1931
- Dowd, C. N. Villous arthritis of the knee (Sarcoma) Ann. Surg. 56 363 1912
- Duran Reynals F. and Duran-Reynals, M. L. Inactivation of vaccine virus by preparations of hyaluronic acid with or without hyaluronidase Experiments on cell cultures, Science 115 40 1952
- Edlund, T. Studies on absorption of colloids and fluid from rabbit knee joints Acta physiol. Scandinav. 18 5 (Suppl. 62) 1949
- Fisher A. G. T. Chronic (Non-tuberculous) Arthritis p. 120 London, Lewis, 1929
- Injuries and diseases of articulations, Lancet 2 541 1923
- Fisher, H. R. Synovial sarcomas: osteosarcoma (sarcoendothelioma) Am. J. Path. 18 529 1942
- Gangjee S. On the Treatment of Wounds and Fractures, Clinical Lectures ed 2 360 p., London Churchill, 1883
- Gardner E. Physiology of movable joints Physiol. Rev. 30 127 1950.
- Geschickter C. F., and Copeland, M. M. Tumors of Bone (Including the Jaws and

- Joints) Rev. Ed., p. 41 New York, Am. J. Cancer 1936
- Gibney V. P. The Hip and Its Diseases p. 212 New York, Birmingham 1884
- Gray D. J., and Gardner E. Prenatal development of the human knee and superior tibiofibular joints Am J Anat 86 235 1950
- Gray Henry. Anatomy of the Human Body. Ed. 22 Rev. and re-ed. by W. H. Lewis Philadelphia Lea, 1936
- Gruenfeld G., and Seelig M. G. The nature of so-called xanthoma a critical review Arch Path. 17 546 1934
- Haagensen C. D., and Stout A. P. Synovial sarcoma Ann Surg 120 826 1944
- Haggart, G. E. Posterior hernia of the knee joint a cause of internal derangement of the knee J Bone & Joint Surg 20 363 1938
- Harbitz, Francis. Tumors of tendon sheaths joint capsules and multiple xanthoma Arch. Path. & Lab Med. 4 597 1927
- Hartman F. W. Synovial membrane tumors of joints Surg., Gynec. & Obst 34 161 1922
- Hawkes Forbes. Inflammation of the bursa gastrocnemio-semimembranosa with a report of four cases of enlargement and distention of this bursa treated by excision Ann Surg 30 61 1899
- Hersheimer G. Ueber Xanthome und Xanthelasma Arch sc med. 50 201 1927
- Heyman C. H. Synovectomy of the knee joint Surg. Gynec. & Obst 46 127 132 1928
- Hilton John. Rest and Pain A Course of Lectures on the Influence of Mechanical and Physiological Rest in the Treatment of Accidents and Surgical Diseases and the Diagnostic Value of Pain. Ed. 5 p. 156 London and New York, Bell 1892
- Inge G. S. L. Eighty six cases of chronic synovitis of knee joint treated by synovectomy J.A.M.A. 111 2451 1938
- Ingelmark, B. E. The nutritive supply and nutritional value of synovial fluid, Acta orthop. scandinav 20 144 1950-51
- Ingelmark, B. E. and Ekholm R. A study on variations in the thickness of articular cartilage in association with rest and periodical load, an experimental investigation on rabbits Upsala läkaref. förh. 53 61 1948.
- Jaffe H. L. Lichtenstein Louis and Sutro O. J. Pigmented villonodular synovitis bursitis and tenosynovitis Arch Path. 31 731 1941
- Jones Ellis. Synovectomy of the knee joint in chronic arthritis J.A.M.A. 81 15 9 1923
- Jones E. S. Joint lubrication Lancet 226 (1) 1426 1934
- Joint lubrication Lancet 230 (1) 1043 1936
- Jones Sir Robert, and Lovett R. W. Orthopedic Surgery p. 100 New York Wood, 1923
- Joseph, N. R., Reed, C. I., Steck, I. E., Folk F., and Kaplan E. An electrochemical study of the synovialis in dogs Am J Physiol 153 464 1948
- Kelton I. W. and Wright R. D. The mechanism of easy standing by man Australian J Exptl Biol & Med Sc 27 505 1949
- Kev J. A. The reformation of synovial membrane in the knees of rabbits after synovectomy J Bone & Joint Surg 7 93 1925
- The Synovial Membrane of Joints and Bursae Special Cytology Ed by E. V. Cowdry Ed. 2 Vol. 2 p. 1053-1095 New York Hoeber 1932
- King D. The function of semilunar cartilages J Bone & Joint Surg 18 1069 1936
- Klemperer P., Pollack A. D., and Baehr C. Diffuse collagen disease acute disseminated lupus erythematosus and diffuse scleroderma, J.A.M.A. 119 331 1942
- Kling D. H. The nature and origin of synovial fluid Arch Surg 23 543 1931
- The synovial membrane and the synovial fluid, Los Angeles M Press 1938
- Kling D. H. and Sashin David. Hemorrhagic villous synovitis of the knee joint due to xanthoma report of a case Arch Surg 30 52 1935
- Knese K. H. Die Bewegungen auf einer Fuhrungsfläche als Grundlage der Gelenkbewegungen dargestellt am Schultergelenk. Gelenkstudien I Ztschr Anat Entwkl 115 115
- Huft und Ellenbogengelenk 162 223 Kniegelenk 287 322 1950
- Koch, Heinrich. Chronische hamorrhagische Arthritis des Kniegelenks Zentralbl. Chir 54 2892 1927
- Kolaczek. Ueber freie Transplantation von Peritoneum Beitr. z. klin. Chir 78 155 1912
- Kuhns J. G. and Weatherford H. L. Role of the reticulo-endothelial system in the deposition of colloidal and particulate matter in articular cavities Arch. Surg 33 68 1936.
- Kulonen E. Studies on hyaluronidic acid and hyaluronidase in the animal organism Acta physiol. scandinav 24 1 (Suppl 85) 1951
- Larguader H. Ein primäres Sarkom der Kniegelenkscapsel unter dem Bilde des freien Gelenkkörpers Arch. klin Chir 132 480 1924
- Latten W. Seltene Ursache einer Mauseinklemmung im Kniegelenk ein Beitrag zur Klinik der xanthomatösen Riesenzellgranulome Arch Klin Chir 161 416 1930.
- Lazarus J. A. and Marks M. S. Synovial sarcoma with report of two cases Surgery 13 290 1943

- Lejars and Rubens-Duval Les sarcomes primitifs des synoviales articulaires, *Rev chir* 41, 51 1910
- Lindblom K Arthrography of the knee *Acta radiol. Suppl.* 74 1 1948
- Lovett R W Acute Synovitis. Reference Handbook of the Medical Sciences Vol. 7 p 596-601 Wood, 1904
- Lucke Die Aetiologie der entzündlichen Gelenkstellungen, *Deutsche Ztschr Chir* 21 43, 1834 5
- MacConall, M A. The function of intra-articular fibrocartilages with special references to the knee joint and inferior radio-ulnar joints, *J Anat* 66 210 1932
- The movement of bones and joints the synovial fluid and its assistants *J Bone & Joint Surg* 32 B 244 1950
- Magnuson, P B Joint débridement Surgical treatment of degenerative arthritis, *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 73 1 1941
- Mandl, F Über die operative Behandlung chronischer nichtspezifischer Erkrankungen des Kniegelenks *Arch klin. Chir* 151 302 1928
- Mayeda, T Experimentelle histologische studie ueber die Synovialmembran *Mit. a. d. med. Fakult. Univ. Tokyo* 23 393 1920
- Meyer A W Further observations upon use-destruction in joints *J Bone & Joint Surg* 20 491 (N.S. 4) 1922
- The minute anatomy of attrition lesions, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 341 1931
- Chronic functional lesions of the shoulder *Arch Surg* 35 646 1937
- Use destruction in the human body Call fornia & West Med 47 375 1937
- Meyer K and Ragan C Hyaluronic acid and rheumatic diseases. *Mod. Concepts Cardiovasc. Dis* 17 (n.p.) Feb., 1948
- Meyer K., and Rapport, M M The mucopolysaccharides of the ground substance of connective tissue *Science* 113 596 1951
- Meyer L. The biological significance of hyaluronic acid and hyaluronidase *Physiol. Rev* 27 335-393 1947
- Mitchell, A. G M Viscosity and lubrication in The Mechanical Properties of Fluids (A collective work by Drysdale et al.) Chap 3 pp. 96-151 London Blackie 1923
- Morris Henry Human Anatomy Ed. 5 Ed by C M Jackson Philadelphia, Blackiston, 1914
- Moser Ernst Primäres Sakom der Fussgelenk kapsel. Exstirpation. Dauerheilung *Deutsche Ztschr Chir* 98 306 1909
- Muratton G Anastomosi arterovenose e dispostivi vascolari de blocco nel "Pahvinar acetabuli" dell'uomo *Chir org movimento* 30 117 1946.
- Murphy J B Ankylosis arthroplasty clinical and experimental, *J.A.M.A.* 44 1573 16:1 1:49 1935
- Cheilotomy The Clinica of John B Murphy Vol. 4 No 2 pp 239-246 Philadel phia Saunders, 1915
- Murray M R., Stout, A. P and Pogogeff B A. Synovial sarcoma and normal synovial tissue cultivated in vitro *Ann. Surg* 120 843 1944
- Neff J M. Arthroplastv Surg., *Gynec. & Obst* 15 529 1912
- Negrie and Canton Tumeur à myeloplaxes de la synoviale du genou, *Bull. et mém. Soc. nat. chir* 55 617, 1929
- Northrup W P Gonorrhoeal arthritis *Tr A. Am. Physicians* 10 141 1895
- Ogston A. G and Stanier J E. On the state of hyaluronic acid in synovial fluid, *Biochem. J* 46 364 1950
- Parodi S E and Vickerman P Blastoma giganteocelular xantelasmico *Semana méd.* 1 961 1930
- Premister D B., and Miller E. M The method of new joint formation in arthroplasty an experimental study *Gynec. & Obst xxxvi* 406-446 1918
- Physics of Lubrication A Symposium *Brit J Appl. Physics* (Suppl. 1) London, Inst Physics 1951
- Piersol, G A Human Anatomy Ed. 9 Philadel phia Lippincott 1930
- Plewes L. W Nature and origin of the xanthoma cell, *Arch. Path.* 17 177 1934
- Rasemon P., and Blizard, G Les tumeurs primitives des articulations *Rev chir* 50 229 1931
- Reynolds, O On the theory of lubrication and its application to Mr Beauchamp Tower's experiments including an experimental determination of the viscosity of olive oil, *Philos Tr Roy Soc. (Lond.) S A* 40 191 1836.
- Rimington C. Synovial fluid mucin *Ann Rheum Dis* 8 34 1949
- Robson A. W M A case of polypoid growths in the knee-joint removal, *Lancet* 1 934 1891
- Ropes M. W., Bennett G A., and Bauer W The origin and nature of normal synovial fluid *J Clin Investigation* 18 351 1939
- Ropes M W Robertson, W V B Rossmessl, E. C., Peabody R. B., and Bauer W Synovial fluid mucin, *Acta med. scandinav. Suppl.* 196 700 1947
- Ropes M W Rossmessl E. C., and Bauer W The origin and nature of normal human synovial fluid, *J Clin. Investigation* 19 95 1940
- Saaf J Effects of exercise on adult articular cartilage *Acta orthop scandinav., Suppl* 7 1 1950

- Shands A. R., Jr., and Raney R. B. *Handbook of Orthopaedic Surgery* Ed. 2 St. Louis Mosby 1940
- Simon, Gustav. Exstirpation einer sehr grossen, mit dickem Stiele angewachsenen Kniegelenkmass mit glücklichem Erfolge *Arch. klin. Chir* 6 5 3 1864-1865
- Smith L. W. Synoviomata, *Am J Path.* 3 355 1927
- Snodgrass L. E. Compound cystic bursitis of the knee joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 18 229 1936
- Sonntag Über Intraartikuläre Xanthome des Knies *Deutsche Ztschr Chir* 223 346 1930
- Speed J S Synovectomy of the knee joint, *J.A.M.A.* 83 1814 1924
- Steindler A. Synovectomy and fat pad removal in the knee joint *J.A.M.A.* 84 16 1925
- Sumita M. Experimentelle Beiträge zur operativen Mobilisierung ankylosierter Gelenke *Arch. klin. Chir* 99 755 1912
- Swett P P Synovectomy in chronic infectious arthritis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 5 110 1923
- Synovectomy in chronic infectious arthritis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 6 800 1924
- Present status of synovectomy *Am J Surg* 6 807 1929
- Talbot A. Les tumeurs à myeloplaxes primitives des synoviales articulaires *Rev. chir* 66 399 1928
- Tobler T. Zur Kenntnis der Meniscustumoren, *Beitr. z. klin. Chir* 140 545 1927
- Turner A. L. Primary sarcoma of the synovial membrane *Lancet* 2 54 1894
- Valtat, Emile. De l'atrophie musculaire consécutive aux maladies des articulations Etude clinique et expérimentale No 154 p. 54 Paris 1877
- Vaubel E. The form and function of synovial cells in tissue cultures *J Exper Med* 68 63 85 1933
- Walmesley T. The articular mechanisms of the diarthroses *J Bone & Joint Surg* 10 40, 1928
- Watson Jones, R., and Roberts R. E. Calcification decalcification and ossification, *Brit. J Surg* 21 461 1934
- Wegelin C. Ueber falsche und echte Tumoren der Kniegelenkscapsel, *Schweiz. med. Wchnschr* 58 722 1928
- Weil, S. Ueber die sog. Xanthosarkome der Sehnenscheiden und der Gelenke *Beitr. z. klin. Chir* 93 617 1914
- Weir R. F. On fatty and sarcomatous tumors of the knee-joint *M. Rec., New York* 29 25 1886
- Wilson, P. D., Eyre-brook, A. L., and Francis, J. D. A clinical and anatomical study of the semimembranosus bursa in relation to popliteal cyst, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 20 963 1933
- Witzel, Oscar. Die Gelenk und Knochenentzündungen bei acut infektiösen Erkrankungen Bonn, Cohen 1890
- Wustmann O. Beiträge zur frage der xanthomatösen Riesenzellneubildungen *Deutsche Ztschr Chir* 192 381 1925
- Zullig J. Tumoren der Kniegelenkscapsel *Cor. Bl. Schweiz. Aerzte* 47 1363 1917

## Arthritides

It is not the purpose of the author to delve in detail into the etiology, the pathogenesis and the pathology of rheumatic diseases such information is readily available in the numerous monographs devoted to this subject. However, for the sake of completeness, a brief discussion of these problems is mandatory. Also comprehension of the pathologic processes involved in the varied forms of arthritis is essential in order to interpret correctly the clinical manifestations presented and to formulate an effective plan of management. This chapter deals primarily with the chronic forms of arthritis; however, since the knee is frequently the seat of suppurative or pyogenic arthritis this disease is discussed also.

### CLASSIFICATION

Study of the numerous classifications of arthritis encountered in the literature leaves the reader confused and bewildered. This stems from the observation that they lack even the most remote semblance of uniformity. Some are based on clinical manifestations, others on gross pathologic alterations observed in the components of the affected joints, others on roentgenographic findings, others on the causative agents, and still others on a combination of all the aforementioned factors. As a result of this disagreement, many unrelated designations have been coined for the different varieties of arthritis, for example hypertrophic arthritis is synonymous with osteoarthritis, hypertrophic and senile arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis is synony-

mous with atrophic, proliferative and focal infectious arthritis. The most recent grouping of joint diseases is that proposed by the American Rheumatism Association essentially. It is a modification of the classification of Hench.

- 1 Arthritis due to specific infection  
Specify organism
- 2 Arthritis due to rheumatic fever
- 3 Arthritis, rheumatoid. Specify as multiple (peripheral) or of the spine (ankylosing)  
A. Synonyms of peripheral rheumatoid arthritis: atrophic, chronic infectious, ankylosing, chronic proliferative, arthritis deformans, Still's disease, Chauffard's disease
- B. Synonyms of rheumatoid arthritis of the spine: Strumpell-Marie arthritis, von Bechterew's disease, spondylarthritis ankylopoietica
- 4 Degenerative joint diseases due to unknown cause  
A. Synonyms: osteoarthritis, hypertrophic arthritis, arthrosis, menopausal arthritis, arthritis of the aged, malum coxae senilis, Heberden's nodes
- B. Synonyms of degenerative arthritis of the spine: spondylarthrosis, hypertrophic arthritis
- 5 Arthritis due to direct trauma
- 6 Arthritis due to gout
- 7 Neurogenic arthropathy (Charcot joint)
- 8 New growths of joints
- 9 Periarthritic fibrositis
- 10 Diseases frequently associated with arthritis, arthropathy or arthralgia

- A Acromegaly
- B Allergy
  - a. Intermittent hydrarthrosis
  - b. Serum sickness
- C Cyst of meniscus of knee
- D Dermatomyositis
- E Disseminated lupus erythematosus
- F Drug intoxication
- G Erythema multiforme exudativum
- H Erythema nodosum
- I Hemophilia
- J Hysteria
- K Ochronosis
- L Osteochondritis dissecans
- M Osteochondromatosis
- N Periarteritis nodosa
- O Psoriasis
- P Pulmonary osteoarthropathy
- Q Purpura, various types
- R Raynaud's disease
- S Reiter's disease
- T Scleroderma
- 11 Congenital arthropathies

## RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Rheumatoid arthritis is a distinct clinical entity characterized by a proliferative process implicating primarily the synovial membrane and the endosteum of the subchondral bone. The granulation tissue produced by the synovialis forms a panus over the articular cartilage as it grows from the periphery. It is highly destructive eroding and destroying cartilage as it comes in contact with it. The numerous designations that are synonymous with rheumatoid arthritis are listed in the classifications recorded herein. Inasmuch as the causative agents responsible for this disease are not known the nomenclature must be based on the pertinent and distinctive features of the malady as noted by clinical microscopic and roentgenographic investigations.

### CLINICAL TYPES

Numerous varieties of this disorder have been described in all however the joint pathology is essentially the same. From a

clinical viewpoint two types are encountered. The first is ushered in suddenly with severe systemic reactions not unlike rheumatic fever. Many joints are affected simultaneously the clinical course is relatively rapid and fulminating resulting in fibrous ankylosis of the involved articulations. The second type also implicates multiple joints however, its onset is insidious with mild constitutional manifestations. Periods of remissions and renewed activity are characteristic of this form of the disease with each reactivation the disease process usually is manifest in joints not affected previously. Pronounced and progressive dysfunction in all affected joints ensues this is accompanied by advanced muscle atrophy and flexion deformities. In both varieties the disease eventually becomes extinguished often leaving in its wake a mass of humanity hideously distorted decrepit and completely helpless (Fig. 355). No other affliction ravishes the human body and mind to a greater degree. When the joints are immobilized, either by fibrous or bony ankylosis they are no longer painful however, ankylosis often occurs with the joint in a position which precludes useful function of the limb.

Rheumatoid arthritis may occur in childhood. Still was the first to describe it hence it is referred to as Still's disease. In spite of the fact that this malady in every respect resembles closely the form observed in adults some workers regard it as a separate and distinct entity. This belief is not supported by the gross and the microscopic pathology of the affected joints which reveals that the pathologic alterations observed in children and adults are essentially the same.

The relation of rheumatic fever to rheumatoid arthritis is a very controversial subject. Some observers regard rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis and degenerative arthritis as different body manifestations initiated by the same etiologic factors as infection, trauma, allergy and cold. The

different expressions are supposed to be governed in a measure by the age, sex, diet and environment of the individual. From a clinical viewpoint the pertinent difference between the two disorders is the presence of cardiac involvement, which is a constant concomitant finding in rheumatic fever. Cardiac lesions are rarely encountered in rheumatoid arthritis. The presence of subcutaneous nodules is not a distinguishing feature, although they are more numerous and observed more frequently in rheumatic fever, they are also associated lesions in rheumatoid arthritis.

### ETIOLOGY

Numerous and divergent fields have been investigated and are still being studied in attempts to unravel the enigma of the etiologic factor or factors responsible for rheumatoid arthritis. As products of these intensive investigations many theories of causation have evolved. Unfortunately, as yet the true cause has not been discovered but it is safe to state that the results of some of the research are promising and hopeful particularly those dealing with the role of the pituitary hormones and the adrenal cortex.

**Infectious Theory** The clinical manifestations of rheumatoid arthritis suggest that infection in some manner plays an important role in the inflammatory process; nevertheless conclusive evidence acceptable to all workers has not been provided nor has the infectious agent been agreed upon. Up to the present time this premise has been looked upon with favor by numerous workers. Cecil Nicholls and Stainsby found streptococci in the blood and the joints of patients afflicted with rheumatoid arthritis. Organisms believed to be responsible for the disorder were isolated from lymph nodes and synovial fluid by Rosenow, Loeb, Quigley and Moon also by Burbank and Hadjopoulos. On the other hand other workers have failed to recover bacteria from blood, synovial fluid

or the synovial membrane. Filterable viruses have also been incriminated as possible causative agents. Critical assessment of the many reports in the literature leads one to conclude that the evidence in support of the infectious theory is unsatisfactory and inconclusive. According to this hypothesis implications of the joints in rheumatoid arthritis is achieved by one or a combination of the following methods: (1) direct invasion of the joint by bacteria via the blood stream, (2) response of the joint tissues to blood borne toxins which are released from distant foci of infection and (3) the joint reactions are manifestations in response to bacterial allergy. The last mode of causation was supported enthusiastically by Hans Zinsser.

The presence of antibodies and hypersensitization of the patient as disclosed by skin tests are evidences in favor of the infectious theory. A high percentage of cases of rheumatoid arthritis exhibit agglutinins in the serum to various strains of streptococci, particularly the hemolytic streptococci; this observation is noted frequently enough to be significant. Traut showed that arthritic patients give reactions to intradermal injections of streptococcal filtrates more frequently and with greater intensity than do controls. Serum of patients with this disorder shows an increase in the streptococcal precipitins. It may be that sera of afflicted patients are endowed with the power to magnify the action of precipitins normally present.

**Endocrine Theory** Recently, hypersensitization as the cause of rheumatoid arthritis is looked upon with favor by many observers. What part the hypophysis and the adrenal cortex play is still speculative, but evidence is accumulating in support of the hypothesis that a close relation exists between hypersensitization and the aforementioned glands of internal secretions.

Selye records that allergic manifestations are expressions of the general adaptation syndrome (alarm reaction) which is the



body response to noxious influences. The anterior pituitary and the adrenal cortex are involved primarily. The anterior lobe of the hypophysis produces a corticotrophic hormone which induces the adrenal cortex to produce and deliver corticosteroids. According to Rachemann, from a viewpoint of allergy, sensitized patients react differently; some are conditioned to develop allergic manifestations in the form of asthma and others rheumatic disorders.

Rheumatoid arthritis developing in women past middle life and incident to the period of the menopause has been considered by many to be the result of endocrine imbalance. The evidence in support of this theory is not acceptable.

**Metabolic Theory.** According to some authorities rheumatoid arthritis is the result of the inability to utilize carbohydrates adequately. Pemberton was an ardent supporter of this hypothesis. He showed that patients with rheumatoid arthritis exhibited a lowered glucose tolerance and he believed that the disorder at least in part was the result of the ingestion of highly concentrated carbohydrate foods. The aforementioned worker also noted that an alimentary hyperglycemia was invariably demonstrable in patients afflicted with rheumatoid arthritis. A lowered sulfur content has been incriminated as playing a part in the precipitation of rheumatoid arthritis. However, the above premises have not been substantiated with convincing evidence and hence have not been accepted.

Deficiencies in vitamins and various minerals have been considered as possible causative agents of this disorder. Practically all the known vitamins have been indicted at one time or another. This has led to the indiscriminate use of large dosages of vitamins singly or in combination. This practice has accomplished nothing except to increase the financial burdens of many whose disability has already depleted their economic resources. It is common knowledge that an adequate and well balanced diet provides all the essential vitamins.

**Circulatory Disturbances.** Circulatory deficiencies may be contributory factors in the development of pathologic abnormalities in joints of patients with rheumatoid arthritis. De Takats is of the opinion that rheumatoid arthritis is comparable with Sudeck's bone atrophy, since in both lesions abnormal vasomotor reflexes are present and responsible for the pathologic changes. It is common knowledge that many sufferers of this disorder exhibit inferior general circulation characterized by a vasomotor disturbance of the spastic variety; this is particularly true in women. The resulting circulatory alterations are demonstrable in the peripheral circulation of the extremities; the hands and the feet are cold, damp and have a bluish tint. Impairment of the local circulation may be responsible for some of the joint changes. It has been demonstrated that the capillary bed of affected joints is partially occluded. The mechanism of this phenomenon is not clear. It may be the result of spasm of the arterioles, arteriosclerosis or mechanical obliteration of the lumen of the vessels by emboli or thrombi. One must remember, however, that the circulatory abnormalities are not totally responsible for the pathologic changes in the joint, since they are peculiar to the specific type of individuals prone to develop the disease and are often demonstrable before the onset of joint manifestations.

**Neurogenic Disturbances.** Many patients with rheumatoid arthritis exhibit clinical features which are linked closely to the central and the sympathetic nervous systems. Although it has not been possible to indict abnormalities of these systems as the etiologic factors, it is reasonable to assume that they play some part in the pathologic alterations in the joints. Nervous instability and apprehension are observed frequently; mental stress and hardships are known to antedate the onset of the disease in many patients. As recorded previously, de Takats believes that abnormal nutritional reflex initiated by a chronic

inflammation such as that observed in a joint of rheumatoid arthritis is the result of vasomotor and reflex disturbances, and in this respect the disease is similar to Sudeck's bone atrophy. On this basis the capsular and the periarticular swelling in rheumatoid arthritis is due in part to efferent vasodilator stimuli which are conducted by the parasympathetic fibers located in the posterior roots to the spinal cord. This reflex mechanism induces an active inflammation which in turn is followed by hyperemia of adjacent bone and osteoporosis, a finding characteristic of rheumatoid arthritis.

**Predisposing Factors.** There is sufficient clinical evidence to justify the belief that certain factors tend to precipitate the disease. Notably among these are endocrine, metabolic and circulatory disturbances, also prolonged mental stress and physical exertion, debilitating diseases, infectious diseases, focal infections, exposures to cold and inclement weather and malnutrition—all are factors which may initiate the malady. Rheumatoid arthritis is not a hereditary disease; however, evidence is accumulating that the constitutional tendency is inherited. As pointed out by Traut, the hypersusceptibility of the mesenchymal tissue is characteristic of this type. Vasomotor instability which may be a manifestation of endocrine dysfunction is a constant concomitant feature.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

**Age, Sex.** The disease is encountered most frequently between 20 and 40 years; however, it may occur occasionally in the fifth and the sixth decades and in children. Rheumatoid arthritis in children is known as Still's disease. This is a distinguishing feature between rheumatoid and degenerative arthritis; the latter usually develops after middle life. Women are afflicted more commonly than men, some series report ratios of two to one, others of three to one.

**Joints Involved Most Frequently.** The joints of the hands and the feet are impli-



FIG. 353 Rheumatoid arthritis of both knee joints in a male 36 years old. Observe the external capsular thickening, distention of the capsule and atrophy of the thigh muscles. A 20° fixed flexion contracture exists in each knee.

cated most frequently; next in the order of frequency are wrists, ankles, elbows, knees, hips, shoulders, spine and temporomandibular joints. In the greater majority of cases the disease is a polyarticular arthritis, in rare instances it is monoarticular. In cases of multiple joint involvement the joints of the hands and the feet are affected first, then the wrists and the ankles, and finally the elbows and the knees. In some cases all joints are affected, including the spine and the temporomandibular joints.

**Physical Signs.** Generally the patient presents a body type readily recognized, there are exceptions to this rule. The patient is thin, malnourished, pale and apprehensive. These patients complain of constant fatigue which is intensified by any form of exertion. Poor muscle tone, low blood pressure, vasomotor instability, secondary anemia and lowered metabolic rate are other concomitant features. The affected joints are swollen, usually fusiform in shape, and tender. All motion is painful and guarded; muscle atrophy is an outstanding manifestation. The profound muscle atrophy proximal and distal to the pathologic articulation is responsible in a large measure for the spindle-shaped ap-

pearance of the joint. The skin over the joint is drawn tightly and is shiny; local temperature is invariably increased. Palpation reveals a characteristic doughy feel of the periarticular structures; this is the result of thickening of and edema in the capsular and the pericapsular tissues (Fig. 353). In most instances pain, tenderness and limitation of motion are governed by the severity of the inflammatory process; however, occasionally all the earmarks of rheumatoid arthritis are present except pain. The aforementioned physical signs are not pathognomonic of rheumatoid arthritis since they are manifest in all forms of acute and chronic diseases of joints. More diagnostic of the disease is the marked tendency toward flexion contractures of the affected joints. In the early stages of the disease the deformity is the result in a large measure of muscle spasm. Later shortening of tendons, ligaments and muscles and formation of adhesions and structural changes in the bony elements of the joint supervene, all of which permanently fix the joint in the position of flexion.

Pain may be intermittent or constant; however, its intensity is accentuated with each bout of increased activity of the inflammatory process. Immobilization of the joints invariably is followed by relief of pain, suggesting that the strain of capsular tissues, ligaments and muscle attachments may be the prime factor causing pain.

Inclement weather definitely affects patients with rheumatoid arthritis. Exposures tend to accentuate the arthritic symptoms. It appears that changes in the barometric pressure are reflected in blood pressure and peripheral circulation of these patients. According to Pemberton, sudden changes in the weather cause exacerbations of the symptoms because the vasomotor circulatory apparatus fails to make the adaptations necessary to meet the abrupt changes in the environment.

#### COURSE OF THE DISEASE

Rheumatoid arthritis may be ushered in

by one of many ways. Not infrequently the first symptoms are constitutional in nature: the patient tires easily, the appetite is poor, the hands and the feet are cold and clammy, he loses weight and exhibits a pallor. These manifestations may antedate joint symptoms by many months. On the other hand, the patient may have one episode of the disease or exacerbations may occur after months or even years. The disease may assume a subacute or chronic course with periods of exacerbations and forges forward in this fashion, implicating and destroying numerous joints until the patient is a helpless invalid.

The constitutional manifestations in most instances are the predominant clinical features. As noted previously, they may precede the joint symptoms. Usually the onset is insidious; the symptoms often being intermittent in character. In addition to fatigue, loss of weight and appetite, temperature elevations between 97.5° and 101° F are observed; night sweats may occur, confusing the disease with tuberculosis. Stiffness, numbness and tingling in the fingers and the toes may be the first local manifestations, particularly in women. In a small percentage of the cases (according to Traut, 10%) the disease announces itself with abruptness resembling rheumatic fever.

In most cases the small joints of the hands and the feet are implicated first; usually the proximal interphalangeal joints. These become swollen and assume a spindle-shaped configuration. Later the metacarpophalangeal joints are involved. A characteristic feature of the disease is the symmetrical involvement of the peripheral joints. In a small group of cases the disease is monoarticular. Once a joint is affected it produces symptoms of varying intensities which are accentuated periodically. As noted previously, the intensity of the pain varies; it may be initiated only when the joint is moved actively or passively. In other cases it is a prominent feature. In the polyarthritic variety frequently the wrists

are involved. It is interesting to note the alterations that occur in the nails of these patients, the nails are often ridged longitudinally, pitted and lose their normal luster. The nail beds are invariably cyanotic. Concomitant alterations are also noted in the muscles, the tendons and the ligaments of the affected limb. The muscles exhibit rapid and profound atrophy; the muscles, the tendons and the ligaments are sensitive, when firm pressure is made, marked tenderness is elicited. In spite of the advanced atrophy and loss of tone, the muscles are usually hyperexcitable. It is interesting to note that in cases with far advanced multiple deformities, pain may be minimal. Synovial fluid obtained from affected joints is slightly turbid; its specific gravity and protein content are elevated; the polymorphonuclear cells are increased and predominant, especially during exacerbations of the local inflammatory process; the sugar content is decreased. From 10 to 20 per cent of patients with rheumatoid arthritis exhibit subcutaneous nodules, particularly along the ulnar surface of the forearms; usually they are symmetrical and multiple and develop at the sites of previous trauma. The size of the nodules varies; they are firm, not tender, and may be freely movable or fixed to the underlying tissues but firmly attached to the skin. Their duration is also changeable, varying from weeks to years.

#### RELAPSE OF THE DISEASE

Relapses may occur after months or years of inactivity. Specific factors have a tendency to precipitate the relapse, such as fatigue, mental stress and exposures to inclement weather. Fatigue is considered by far the most important single agent. The types and the quantities of food ingested are believed by some to bear a certain relation to the occurrence of relapses. This is, however, questionable; it appears that an allergic phenomenon initiated by specific foods is a more probable factor. Depletion of the body economy by metabolic diseases, repeated respiratory infection and trauma

in some instances may be responsible for reactivation of the disease. It is interesting to note that some hormonal influence during pregnancy tends to improve the general condition of the patient and causes the acute local manifestations to subside. On the other hand, symptoms are often accentuated during the menstrual cycle.

Reactivation is favored by body inactivity, which is responsible in a large measure for loss of muscle volume, poor circulation of blood and lymph and formation of adhesions. Activity is the keynote in avoiding the aforementioned sequelae; it should be enforced on the patient and executed always within the patient's tolerance of pain and endurance. Much can be achieved in restoring general health and preventing relapses by simple measures such as a well-balanced diet, periods of mental and body relaxation and moderate activity.

#### BLOOD STUDIES

In most cases the sedimentation rate is elevated markedly and it becomes more so during periods of exacerbations. It is a valuable index in determining the degree of activity of the disease. However, in rare instances low sedimentation rates are observed in patients whose other clinical manifestations indicate active inflammatory processes; in others, elevated readings are obtained when from a clinical viewpoint the disease is inactive. This feature is in contrast with readings noted in osteoarthritis, which are of lower values, rarely exceeding 30 mm. Secondary anemia is a concomitant finding of rheumatoid arthritis. The polymorphonuclear leukocyte count is usually elevated and hemograms reveal a shift to the left.

Hypoproteinemia is a frequently associated observation with an increase in the globulin and a decrease in the albumin. In well-established active cases of the disease the colloidal gold test may be positive. Some workers believe that a persistent positive test is indicative of a poor prognosis.

## ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

In the early stages of the disease the roentgenograms depict no diagnostic characteristics. The only findings may be some evidence of increased intra-articular fluid as evidenced by distention of the capsule and

some increased thickness of the periaricular tissues. With progression of joint change roentgenograms exhibit a narrow joint space and eroded punched-out areas along the opposing articular margins. Subluxation or dislocation may be demonstrable (Figs 354 and 355). Diffuse demineralization

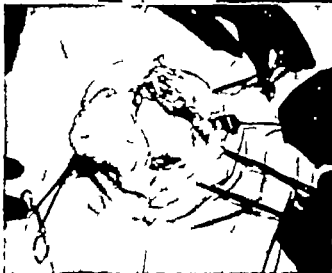


FIG 354 (Top) Rheumatoid arthritis of the right knee joint. Observe the narrow joint space and the spotty demineralization of the distal end of the femur and the proximal end of the tibia. This joint exhibited a flexion contracture of 20° and an external rotation deformity of the lower leg. Compare with the noninvolved left knee joint. (Bottom left) Appearance of the right knee upon exposure of the joint. Note the hyperplastic and thickened synovial membrane; this is even more apparent in the specimen removed. (Bottom right) Tissue removed from the joint depicted in (left). Note the pronounced thickening and the hyperplasia of the synovialis.

of the bony trabeculae is a characteristic finding. Osteoporosis is the result of two factors: (1) hyperemia incident to the inflammatory process present and (2) disuse. Severe loss of mineral salts may render the bony trabeculae invisible in the roentgenograms. It appears as though the osseous tissue had melted away, producing the homogenous ground-glass appearance.

The well-defined articular cortex found in normal joints is not discernible in cases of severe rheumatoid arthritis. Loss of definition of the cortex is an early feature. This results from the destructive and absorptive action of the granulation tissue above and below the articular surface, which rapidly thins and destroys the cartilage. Marginal erosions are also observed frequently. Cases

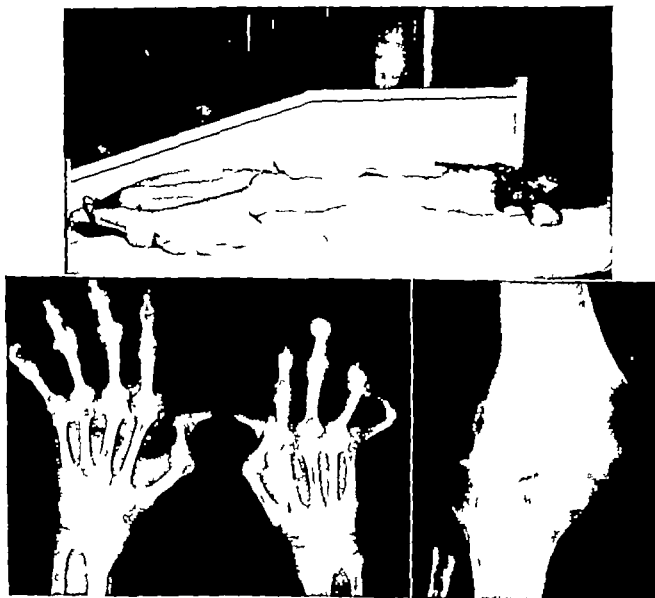


FIG. 355 (Top) Case C. P., male, aged 36 exhibits a severe form of rheumatoid arthritis, implicating all the articulations. The spine is a rigid bony column. Also bony ankylosis has occurred in both hips and knees. (Bottom, left) Observe the osseous ankylosis of the metacarpophalangeal joints of the index fingers, the ankylosis of the wrists, the intercarpal joints and the distal interphalangeal joints and the subluxation of some of the interdigital joints. (Bottom, right) Left knee joint. The tibia is subluxated, rotated externally and flexed on the femur. Bony ankylosis has occurred in the position of deformity.

## ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

In the early stages of the disease the roentgenograms depict no diagnostic characteristics. The only findings may be some evidence of increased intra-articular fluid as evidenced by distention of the capsule and

some increased thickness of the periarthicular tissues. With progression of joint changes roentgenograms exhibit a narrow joint space and eroded punched-out areas along the opposing articular margins. Subluxation or dislocation may be demonstrable (Figs 354 and 355). Diffuse demineralization

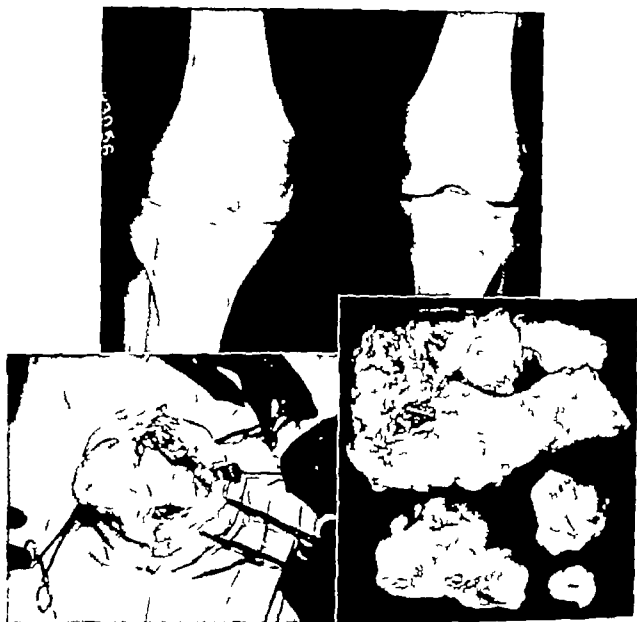


FIG 354 (Top) Rheumatoid arthritis of the right knee joint. Observe the narrow joint space and the spotty demineralization of the distal end of the femur and the proximal end of the tibia. This joint exhibited a flexion contracture of 20° and an external rotation deformity of the lower leg. Compare with the noninvolved left knee joint. (Bottom left) Appearance of the right knee upon exposure of the joint. Note hyperplastic and thickened synovial membrane. This is even more apparent in the specimen removed. (Bottom, right) Tissue removed from the joint depicted herein. Note the pronounced thickening and the hyperplasia of the synovialis.

of the bony trabeculae is a characteristic finding. Osteoporosis is the result of two factors: (1) hyperemia incident to the inflammatory process present and (2) disuse. Severe loss of mineral salts may render the bony trabeculae invisible in the roentgenograms. It appears as though the osseous tissue had melted away, producing the homogenous ground-glass appearance.

The well-defined articular cortex found in normal joints is not discernible in cases of severe rheumatoid arthritis. Loss of definition of the cortex is an early feature. This results from the destructive and absorptive action of the granulation tissue above and below the articular surface which rapidly thins and destroys the cartilage. Marginal erosions are also observed frequently. Cases

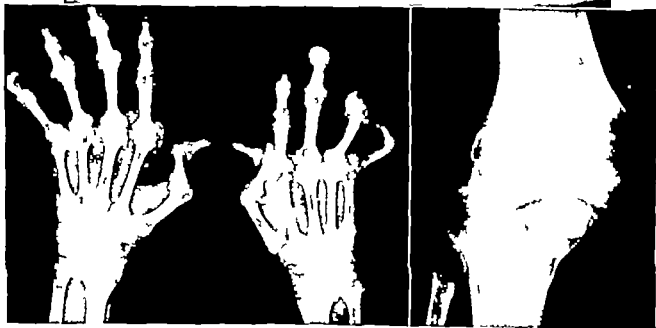


FIG 355 (Top) Case C. P., male, aged 36 exhibits a severe form of rheumatoid arthritis implicating all the articulations. The spine is a rigid bony column. Also, bony ankylosis has occurred in both hips and knees. (Bottom left) Observe the osseous ankylosis of the metacarpophalangeal joints of the index fingers, the ankylosis of the wrists, the intercarpal joints and the distal interphalangeal joints and the subluxation of some of the interdigital joints. (Bottom right) Left knee joint. The tibia is subluxated, rotated externally and flexed on the femur. Bony ankylosis has occurred in the position of deformity.



## ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

In the early stages of the disease the roentgenograms depict no diagnostic characteristics. The only findings may be some evidence of increased intra-articular fluid as evidenced by distention of the capsule and

some increased thickness of the periarticular tissues. With progression of joint changes roentgenograms exhibit a narrow joint space and eroded punched-out areas along the opposing articular margins, subluxation or dislocation may be demonstrable (Figs 354 and 355). Diffuse demineralization

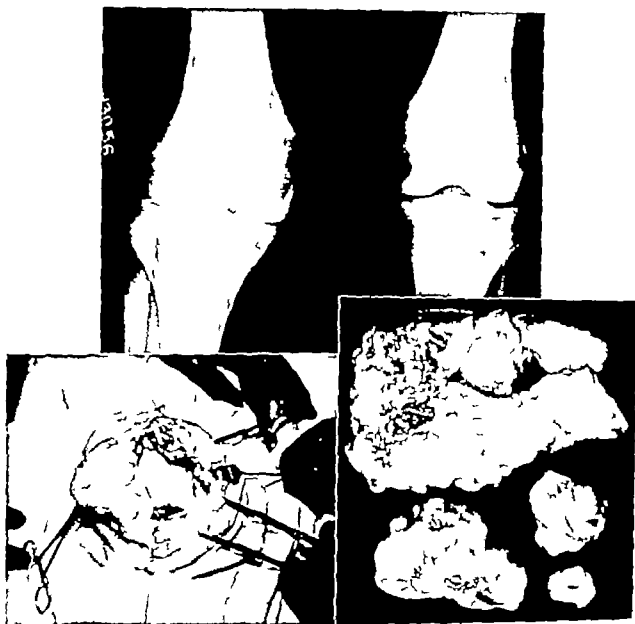


FIG 354 (Top) Rheumatoid arthritis of the right knee joint. Observe the narrow joint space and the spotty demineralization of the distal end of the femur and the proximal end of the tibia. This joint exhibited a flexion contracture of  $20^{\circ}$  and an external rotation deformity of the lower leg. Compare with the noninvolved left knee joint. (Bottom left) Appearance of the right knee upon exposure of the joint. Note hyperplastic and thickened synovial membrane; this is even more apparent in the specimen removed. (Bottom right) Tissue removed from the joint depicted herein. Note the pronounced thickening and the hyperplasia of the synovialis.

producing fibrous ankylosis. The destructive action of the panus above and the proliferation of the narrow connective tissue below the articular surfaces leave in their wake cartilage which is eroded, pitted, frayed and thinned. This destructive process is enhanced by the action of chondroclasts and fibroblasts which arise in the panus and absorb the articular cartilage. The intensity of the activity of the chondroblasts varies with the acuteness of the disease process. The fibrous tissue stretching from one articular surface to the other converts the joint cavity in many intercommunicating pockets.

Some areas of connective tissue, particularly those in the marrow spaces undergo metaplasia, forming osteoid tissue which follows the granulation tissue into the joint cavity, later, the osteoid tissue is converted into cartilaginous and bony trabeculae. Union occurs between the opposing surfaces, which may be cartilaginous or bony. In large joints such as the knee all three varieties of ankylosis may be present concurrently in different areas, namely, fibrous, cartilaginous and bony. In some instances osteoblastic activity is very pronounced, according to Nichols and Richardson, coincident with the aforementioned alterations in the synovialis, the subchondral bone and the cartilage. Perichondral proliferation occurs, producing cartilage and bone. This is challenged by other workers (Allison and Ghormley) who believe that the changes are too widespread to originate in the perichondrium. Moreover, many observers do not believe that the gliding surface of the articular cartilage can be considered as a distinct and separate cartilage layer, designated the perichondrium. To a lesser degree the proliferative reaction of the connective tissue also involves the fibrous capsule which becomes markedly thickened. The capsule is also permeated with plasma and lymphoid cells and numerous capillaries. With maturation of the granulation tissue, the capsule is trans-

formed into a thick, dense, fibrous structure.

Much emphasis has been laid on the presence of numerous round-cell leukocytes comprising lymphoid and plasma cells in the synovialis in cases of rheumatoid arthritis. These appear as diffuse or focal collections or nests which Allison and Ghormley have described as pathognomonic of proliferative arthritis. It has been shown that the foci of round cells are not perivascular and that they tend to collect at numerous areas in the subsynovial stratum, forming follicles of varying size (Fig. 356). Although this is a common finding in rheumatoid arthritis, many workers are convinced that focal collections of lymphoid cells are not diagnostic of the disease. Jordan believes that the lymphocytic reaction is non-specific.

It is interesting to note that the bony trabeculae in the affected extremity when examined microscopically retain their normal size and are not reduced in number. The diffuse loss of mineral observed roentgenographically is generally believed to be the result of disuse and the inflammatory hyperemia. Occasionally, a spotty loss of calcium is demonstrable in the roentgenograms, it is not unlike the bone changes seen in Sudeck's bone atrophy. This observation has led some observers to believe that the bony rarefaction is due to abnormal vasoconstriction caused by local sympathetic activity. It may well be that sympathicotonia, together with disuse, are the causative agents responsible for the profound demineralization so frequently encountered in severe cases of rheumatoid arthritis.

#### Prognosis

Because the true causative factor of rheumatoid arthritis is not known, the prognosis should be guarded in every instance. However, with an intelligent approach to the problem, co-operation of the patient and a well planned therapeutic regimen, a



FIG 356 Photomicrographs (left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ ) of the synovial membrane obtained from a case of rheumatoid arthritis. The synovial and the subsynovial strata are markedly thickened the granulation tissue is rich in lymphoid and plasma cells. Observe the focal collection of these cells forming follicles of varying size

of severe joint involvement may show bony ankylosis of the joint with deformity. In the knee joint ankylosis of the patello-femoral joint may also be discernible (Fig 355)

#### PATHOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Nichols and Richardson noted that the pathologic changes in rheumatoid arthritis were proliferative in nature, implicating the synovialis and the endosteum. This is in contrast with the alterations which they observed in the degenerative arthritis in which the articular cartilage is primarily involved. Marked proliferation of the synovial membrane occurs so that it forms numerous folds and villi giving it a velvetlike appearance. Occasionally the villi are bulbous or branching. If their bases become necrotic due to obliteration of the blood vessels in the pedicles the villi may drop into the joint cavity as free bodies. In some cases numerous rice bodies are encountered.

This inflammatory tissue comprises granulation tissue rich in lymphoid and plasma cells; it extends to the periphery of the articular cartilage from which it advances across the articular surface toward the center forming an irregular panus (Fig

356). Areas of intact cartilage are demonstrable between the prolongations of the panus. Synchronously with the changes in the synovial membrane proliferation of the connective tissue occurs in the endosteum immediately below the articular surfaces; some observers believe that the alterations in the synovial membrane antedate slightly those in the epiphyseal marrow. Formation of a panus over the articular cartilage is a characteristic feature of rheumatoid arthritis. Wherever the panus comes in contact with cartilage, solution of this tissue occurs. This is also true of the granulation tissue which forms in the endosteum; destruction of the cartilage ensues as this tissue advances on its deep surface. The under surface of the cartilage is exposed by the action of osteoclasts which increase in number in the marrow spaces of the subchondral bone and destroy first the articular cortex and then attack the cartilage. Focal collections of round cells are found in great numbers in the proliferating connective tissue of the endosteum. The panus tends to obliterate the joint space by binding together the opposing articular surfaces with granulation tissue which later is converted into dense fibrous tissue thereby

producing fibrous ankylosis. The destructive action of the panus above and the proliferation of the narrow connective tissue below the articular surfaces leave in their wake cartilage which is eroded, pitted, frayed and thinned. This destructive process is enhanced by the action of chondroclasts and fibroblasts which arise in the panus and absorb the articular cartilage. The intensity of the activity of the chondroblasts varies with the acuteness of the disease process. The fibrous tissue stretching from one articular surface to the other converts the joint cavity in many intercommunicating pockets.

Some areas of connective tissue, particularly those in the marrow spaces undergo metaplasia, forming osteoid tissue which follows the granulation tissue into the joint cavity, later the osteoid tissue is converted into cartilaginous and bony trabeculae. Union occurs between the opposing surfaces, which may be cartilaginous or bony. In large joints such as the knee all three varieties of ankylosis may be present concurrently in different areas, namely, fibrous, cartilaginous and bony. In some instances osteoblastic activity is very pronounced, according to Nichols and Richardson coincident with the aforementioned alterations in the synovialis the subchondral bone and the cartilage perichondral proliferation occurs producing cartilage and bone. This is challenged by other workers (Allison and Ghormley) who believe that the changes are too widespread to originate in the perichondrium. Moreover many observers do not believe that the gliding surface of the articular cartilage can be considered as a distinct and separate cartilage layer, designated the perichondrium. To a lesser degree the proliferative reaction of the connective tissue also involves the fibrous capsule which becomes markedly thickened. The capsule is also permeated with plasma and lymphoid cells and numerous capillaries. With maturation of the granulation tissue the capsule is trans-

formed into a thick, dense fibrous structure.

Much emphasis has been laid on the presence of numerous round-cell leukocytes comprising lymphoid and plasma cells in the synovialis in cases of rheumatoid arthritis. These appear as diffuse or focal collections or nests which Allison and Ghormley have described as pathognomonic of proliferative arthritis. It has been shown that the foci of round cells are not perivascular and that they tend to collect at numerous areas in the subsynovial stratum forming follicles of varying size (Fig. 356). Although this is a common finding in rheumatoid arthritis many workers are convinced that focal collections of lymphoid cells are not diagnostic of the disease. Jordan believes that the lymphocytic reaction is non-specific.

It is interesting to note that the bony trabeculae in the affected extremity when examined microscopically retain their normal size and are not reduced in number. The diffuse loss of mineral observed roentgenographically is generally believed to be the result of disuse and the inflammatory hyperemia. Occasionally a spotty loss of calcium is demonstrable in the roentgenograms, it is not unlike the bone changes seen in Sudeck's bone atrophy. This observation has led some observers to believe that the bony rarefaction is due to abnormal vasoconstriction caused by local sympathetic activity. It may well be that sympathicotonia, together with disuse are the causative agents responsible for the profound demineralization so frequently encountered in severe cases of rheumatoid arthritis.

#### PROGNOSIS

Because the true causative factor of rheumatoid arthritis is not known, the prognosis should be guarded in every instance. However with an intelligent approach to the problem co-operation of the patient and a well planned therapeutic regimen, a

great majority of the patients can be relieved of their acute suffering and some correction of deformed limbs can be achieved so that useful function is restored and the general health can be improved. A small number of patients attain excellent results but a patient's hopes must not be elevated too high since such cures are indeed rare. In advanced cases with severe joint alterations restoration of satisfactory function is hardly to be expected since the changes in the cartilage and the osseous elements are permanent, regeneration of the affected tissues does not occur. On the other hand in recent cases with only minimal joint changes deformities can be prevented, and acceptable restoration of function can be anticipated if the correct plan of therapy is instituted. In old cases with residual deformities of the joints treatment is designed primarily to give the patient some relief of pain, only symptomatic measures can be employed.

The prognosis is governed by many factors such as the body type and the general health of the patient, the presence or the absence of active foci of infection, the resistance, the age and the mental stability of the patient, and the intensity and the duration of the disease, the severity of the deformities and finally the co-operation of the patient. More can be anticipated in early cases. Certain factors argue for unfavorable prognosis. These are hereditary, nervous instability, asthenic individuals with poor general health, profound debility of the patient, marked atrophy of muscles and bones, long duration of the disease, structural deformities, allergic manifestations and finally failure to attain the co-operation of the patient. The possibility of relapses of the disease after long periods of inactivity always must be considered when the prognosis is evaluated.

#### TREATMENT

No other human affliction has been treated with more therapeutic agents than chronic joint disease. It is safe to say that

every herb, drug or chemical agent by man, at some time or other administered to the arthritic patient, known modality has been employed. A system of the body has been attacked barring the mind. In spite of all this the over all picture of treatment is unsatisfactory. However, more recent evidence has been produced to bolster morale of the many investigators in this subject.

It is important to remember that in formulating any method of treatment the patient must be considered as a Rheumatoid arthritis primarily is a systemic disease although the joint manifestations predominate. The clinical pictures are usually crippling, they comprise one facet of the disorder. Adequate treatment should embody measures to improve the patient's general physical state, to eradicate the causative agent or to minimize its destructive and debilitating influence to prevent deformities and restore maximum restoration of function to the involved joints. These should be the aims of treatment. Unfortunately, no specific agent has been found that can remove the etiologic factor which is unknown to us. Also even under the most meticulous outline of therapy the results evaluated in terms of useful function of the affected limbs is far from satisfactory. Nevertheless much can be done to improve the lot of these patients.

In the successful execution of any plan of therapy it is highly important to gain the confidence of the patient and to impress upon him the fact that success or failure depends in a large measure upon the co-operation shown and the reliability that he assumes. This means great effort must be expended by the physician in adjusting himself to a new way of life. It may mean that habits which have provided certain pleasures must be discontinued.

**General Measures.** Every effort should be made to improve the patient's en-

ment. His physical and mental activities should be so regulated that minimal stress is inflicted on a debilitated body and mind. This embraces moderation in the intake of foods which should provide a well-balanced diet rich in calcium, vitamins and proteins and low in carbohydrates. Although evidence is lacking that vitamin deficiencies play a role in the etiology of the disease, it is common knowledge that in chronic diseases a deficiency may exist which tends to lower body resistance and favors debilitated status. This can be corrected by simple diets rich in vitamins. Foods such as milk, eggs, meats, whole wheat bread, cereals, citrus fruits, tomatoes, butter, liver and fish will supply the necessary vitamin intake. Ascorbic acid may be given 50 to 200 mg daily to overcome the vitamin C deficiency which is reported to be frequently present in rheumatoid arthritis. The foods that must be eliminated are those which are known to precipitate allergic phenomena in the patient. Excessive use of tobacco or alcoholic beverages must be curtailed; this will tend to improve the general physical status. All bacterial foci of infection should be eradicated. This does not mean that healthy teeth should be sacrificed or that inoffensive tonsils should be extirpated.

As noted previously, physical and mental rest is the most important general measure in the treatment of this disease. Depending upon the severity of the disease this may mean complete bed rest for weeks or months to long hours of night rest which may be supplemented by several hours of rest in the middle of the day. It is interesting to note the rapid decrease in swelling of affected joints following simple bed rest. Pemberton and Scull are of the opinion that this phenomenon is the result of a negative water balance which is induced by the recumbent position. Patients must learn to regulate their activities so that they never become fatigued; they must not be left to their own discretion when to rest but should follow a specific regulated schedule.

They should be taught the most favorable recumbent positions, for instance, a firm mattress is an essential requisite, a low pillow under the head is sufficient, no pillows should be allowed under the knees, since this favors the development of flexion contractures.

In the event that muscle spasm and pain interfere with the patient's rest, light molded plaster splints may be applied to immobilize the painful joints. These should be used also as a prophylaxis against development of deformities. They should be so applied that they can be removed readily in order to permit exercising the joint.

The program should include exercises executed by the body as a whole and by the affected joint. This is a very important facet of the therapeutic plan. Exercising the whole body tends to establish normal metabolism of all tissues and systems and prevents severe atrophy of bone and muscles. Deep breathing and underwater exercises are especially useful. The affected joints should be moved through as great an arc of motion as possible several times a day, preferably, this should be performed actively by the patient. It is important to remember that the patient never must be fatigued, and the exercises must not extend beyond his tolerance of pain. Also, the exercises should be performed on a regulated regimen, preferably under supervision. Exercises to improve body posture and to develop muscle tone and volume should be taken by the ambulatory patient; such measures enhance restoration of good general health.

Microcytic hypochromic anemia is a concomitant feature of rheumatoid arthritis. The most valuable therapeutic measure to correct this deficiency is whole blood. Small transfusions (250 cc. of whole blood) not only supply red blood cells but they also provide other factors which improve the well-being of the patient, raise the body resistance and promote the general health. Such transfusions should be given as frequently as is deemed necessary if there are

no contraindications. Transfusions given at intervals of 7 to 10 days assure the most beneficial effects.

The effect of heat on the vasomotor system is the production of vasodilation which relieves pain and muscle spasm. This beneficial effect of heat in the arthritic patient is common knowledge and has been responsible for the development of numerous measures local and general designed to increase the local or body temperature. General vasodilation may be produced by the administration of such drugs as histamine or niacin, foreign proteins and typhoid vaccine may be given intravenously or the patient may be inoculated with malaria. More recently fever cabinets have been conceived to produce general vasodilation. Sympathectomy, the surgical approach to this problem, has not been effective in rheumatoid arthritis.

**Medicinal Agents.** In spite of numerous medicinal agents employed by man in the treatment of chronic arthritis no specific medication has been discovered. When favorable results are reported and the benefits derived are credited to any one agent or method one must temper this conclusion with the knowledge that chronic arthritis is a disease in which remissions are very likely to occur and that reactivation of quiescent states of the disorder is a common occurrence. One must remember also that the apprehensive, unstable arthritic patient is vulnerable to suggestive therapy and the improvement may be psychologic. Nevertheless by the method of trial and error certain drugs have proved to be useful. Agents which relieve pain and muscle spasm, increase local and general circulation, improve metabolic processes and provide rest of body and mind are useful in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

Salicylates have stood the test of time; they relieve pain and rarely produce any undesirable sequelae. The most common salicylate administered orally is acetyl salicylic acid. Salicylates may also be administered intravenously.

Codaine is an excellent drug to relieve pain; its analgesic effect is enhanced when given in combination with aspirin. Other opiates, such as morphine or Demerol, should be used sparingly in view of their tendency to produce addiction. When hypnotics are desirable, the barbiturates usually suffice.

Procaine given intravenously has been reported to relieve pain and improve the morale of patients with chronic arthritis. It is administered in 0.1 per cent solution in normal saline. The amount advocated by Granbard is 4 mg. of procaine per kilogram of body weight; this worker also gives large doses of ascorbic acid with the procaine. Fraut uses even larger doses of procaine, believing that larger doses give better results. This form of therapy is employed in both degenerative and rheumatoid arthritis; it may be given daily, weekly or as indicated according to some workers the best results are obtained in the degenerative form of chronic arthritis. In rheumatoid arthritis improvement is less pronounced and only temporary. In order to prevent procaine reactions, Nembutal (3 grains) is given 30 to 45 minutes prior to the administration of the procaine. Such reactions always must be anticipated and proper measures such as fluids and oxygen should be in readiness to meet the emergency. This method of therapy is not innocuous; severe vasomotor collapse, cerebral irritation resulting in delirium and convulsions and even cases of death have been recorded.

At one time sulfur in colloidal form was used widely in the treatment of arthritis. Its popularity was based on the belief that it was capable of detoxifying noxious metabolites such as indole. However this drug has failed to produce lasting benefits in the rheumatoid patient and therefore has been discarded. It is interesting to note that following the administration of sulfur the hemoglobin's function to transport oxygen is enhanced greatly. Hence the benefits derived by some patients may be explained

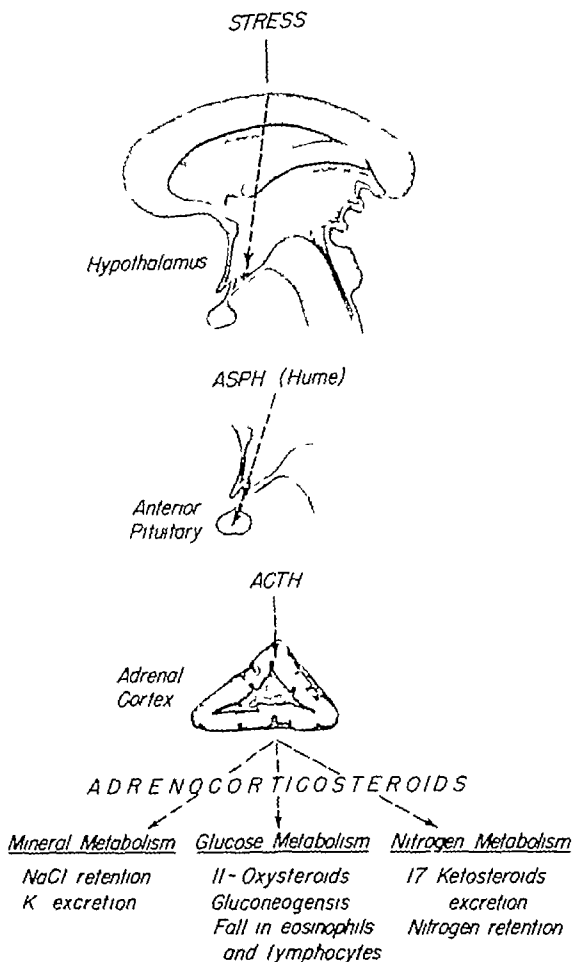


FIG 35. Hypothalamic pituitary adrenal cortex axis (Redrawn from Traut, E. F. Rheumatic Diseases St. Louis, Mosby)



no contraindications. Transfusions given at intervals of 7 to 10 days assure the most beneficial effects.

The effect of heat on the vasomotor system is the production of vasodilation which relieves pain and muscle spasm. This beneficial effect of heat in the arthritic patient is common knowledge and has been responsible for the development of numerous measures local and general designed to increase the local or body temperature. General vasodilation may be produced by the administration of such drugs as histamine or niacin, foreign proteins and typhoid vaccine may be given intravenously, or the patient may be inoculated with malaria. More recently fever cabinets have been conceived to produce general vasodilation. Sympathectomy, the surgical approach to this problem, has not been effective in rheumatoid arthritis.

**Medicinal Agents.** In spite of numerous medicinal agents employed by man in the treatment of chronic arthritis, no specific medication has been discovered. When favorable results are reported and the benefits derived are credited to any one agent or method, one must temper this conclusion with the knowledge that chronic arthritis is a disease in which remissions are very likely to occur and that reactivation of quiescent states of the disorder is a common occurrence. One must remember also that the apprehensive unstable arthritic patient is vulnerable to suggestive therapy and the improvement may be psychologic. Nevertheless by the method of trial and error certain drugs have proved to be useful. Agents which relieve pain and muscle spasm, increase local and general circulation, improve metabolic processes and provide rest of body and mind are useful in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

Salicylates have stood the test of time; they relieve pain and rarely produce any undesirable sequelae. The most common salicylate administered orally is acetylsalicylic acid. Salicylates may also be administered intravenously.

Codaine is an excellent drug to relieve pain; its analgesic effect is enhanced when given in combination with aspirin. Other opiates such as morphine or Demerol should be used sparingly in view of their tendency to produce addiction. When hypnotics are desirable, the barbiturates usually suffice.

Procaine given intravenously has been reported to relieve pain and improve the morale of patients with chronic arthritis. It is administered in 0.1 per cent solution in normal saline. The amount advocated by Granbard is 4 mg. of procaine per kilogram of body weight; this worker also gives large doses of ascorbic acid with the procaine. Traut uses even larger doses of procaine, believing that larger doses give better results. This form of therapy is employed in both degenerative and rheumatoid arthritis; it may be given daily, weekly or as indicated, according to some workers the best results are obtained in the degenerative form of chronic arthritis in rheumatoid arthritis. Improvement is less pronounced and only temporary. In order to prevent procaine reactions, Nembutal (3 grains) is given 30 to 45 minutes prior to the administration of the procaine. Such reactions always must be anticipated, and proper measures such as fluids and oxygen should be in readiness to meet the emergency. This method of therapy is not innocuous; severe vasomotor collapse, cerebral irritation resulting in delirium and convulsions and even cases of death have been recorded.

At one time sulfur in colloidal form was used widely in the treatment of arthritis. Its popularity was based on the belief that it was capable of detoxifying noxious metabolites such as indole. However, this drug has failed to produce lasting benefits in the rheumatoid patient and therefore has been discarded. It is interesting to note that following the administration of sulfur, the hemoglobin's function to transport oxygen is enhanced greatly. Hence the benefits derived by some patients may be explained

are of the opinion that the beneficial results obtained could be duplicated by many other forms of therapy or by simple currently used measures designed to improve the general health, to limit further joint destruction and to improve joint function. In addition, clinical experience reveals that gold is far from a safe agent to use in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. Numerous complications, some of which terminate fatally, are known to occur. Notably among the unfavorable sequelae indicating gold intoxication are pruritus, stomatitis and ulcerative colitis. Less commonly encountered are exfoliating dermatitis, granulocytopenia, nephritis, purpura, hemorrhagic toxic jaundice and multiple peripheral neuritis.

The usual method of administration of gold is the intramuscular route in the form of myochrysine or solganol B oleosum both contain 50 per cent gold. The mechanism of the beneficial effects of gold on body tissues is not understood. Gold like so many other therapeutic agents which were used with great enthusiasm in the past and then discarded, is rapidly falling into disfavor.

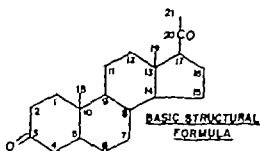
**ACTH and Cortisone.** The work of Hench et al. with cortisone and the pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in the treatment of rheumatic fever and rheumatoid arthritis reveals that the adrenal cortex and the pituitary gland in some way are associated closely with these pathologic states. This may be a direct or in direct relationship. It is now widely known that the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal cortex axis is responsible in a large measure for the ability of the body to respond to stress. This response is designated the adaptation syndrome (Fig. 357). It is clinical knowledge that conditions which stimulate the function of the adrenal cortex in cases of rheumatoid arthritis may induce remissions of the disease process. Notably among these conditions are pregnancy, hepatocellular jaundice, severe trauma and surgical

procedures. This observation leads one to conclude that the same hormonal phenomenon instrumental in meeting situations of stress also is capable of inducing remissions in rheumatoid arthritis. Numerous crystalline steroids (28) have been extracted from the adrenal cortex, and there is evidence for the belief that many more steroids exist which up to this time have not been isolated. The known steroids have profound effects on metabolic processes of the body. Briefly, they can be divided into three groups. The first group is concerned primarily with electrolyte and fluid balance, causing retention of sodium and chloride and excretion of potassium, the principal steroid is 11-desoxycorticosterone. The acetate of this steroid has been synthesized and placed on the market under the trade name Doca or DCA. The second group of steroids govern in a large measure the intermediary metabolism of protein, carbohydrates and fat. They possess an oxygen molecule at carbon eleven in one of two combinations a keto or hydroxy form, and comprise the corticosteroids included in the corticosterone series also referred to as glycocorticoids. In this group are compound E (17 hydroxy, 11-dehydroxycorticosterone) also designated cortisone and cortone, and compound F (17 hydroxycorticosterone, Hydrocortone) (Fig. 358). Other effects of these corticosterones are (1) inhibition of growth in young animals and temporary inhibitory influence on the production of ACTH by the anterior pituitary gland and (2) destruction of lymphoid tissue, the number of eosinophils and lymphocytes in the blood is reduced. Steroids in the third group (etiocholanone) exhibit an androgenic and anabolic function. The adrenal cortex is the chief source of androgens in the male and the female. Albright referred to the androgens derived from the adrenal cortex as a "V" hormone, its influence results in retention of nitrogen, phosphorus, sodium, chloride and potassium also it produces masculinization.

by the improvement of peripheral circulation induced by the sulfur

The diversified reports recorded by many clinics both here and abroad, relative to the value of gold in the treatment of rheuma

toid arthritis lead one to conclude that the use of this heavy metal has failed to produce the desired results. Chrysotherapy has had a long clinical trial, and, in spite of the enthusiastic reports of some most workers



*The added radicals are necessary for physiologic function*

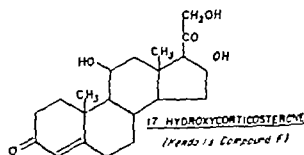
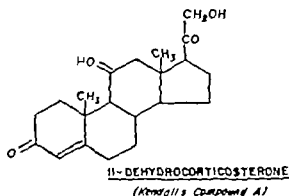
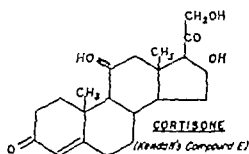
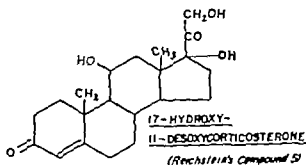
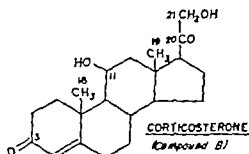
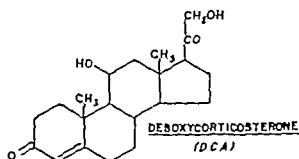


FIG 358 Adrenal steroids compared with corticosterone. Radicals or substances added to corticosterone taken as a basis are in heavy type. Those deleted from the basic corticosterone formula are in dotted lines. (Traut E. F. *Rheumatic Diseases*. St. Louis: Mosby)

are of the opinion that the beneficial results obtained could be duplicated by many other forms of therapy or by simple currently used measures designed to improve the general health, to limit further joint destruction and to improve joint function. In addition, clinical experience reveals that gold is far from a safe agent to use in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. Numerous complications, some of which terminate fatally, are known to occur. Notably among the unfavorable sequelae indicating gold intoxication are pruritus, stomatitis and ulcerative colitis. Less commonly encountered are exfoliating dermatitis, granulocytopenia, nephritis, purpura, hemorrhagic toxic jaundice and multiple peripheral neuritis.

The usual method of administration of gold is the intramuscular route in the form of myochrysine or solganol B oleosum both contain 50 per cent gold. The mechanism of the beneficial effects of gold on body tissues is not understood. Gold, like so many other therapeutic agents which were used with great enthusiasm in the past and then discarded, is rapidly falling into disfavor.

**ACTH and Cortisone.** The work of Hench et al. with cortisone and the pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in the treatment of rheumatic fever and rheumatoid arthritis reveals that the adrenal cortex and the pituitary gland in some way are associated closely with these pathologic states. This may be a direct or indirect relationship. It is now widely known that the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal cortex axis is responsible in a large measure for the ability of the body to respond to stress; this response is designated the adaptation syndrome (Fig. 357). It is clinical knowledge that conditions which stimulate the function of the adrenal cortex in cases of rheumatoid arthritis may induce remissions of the disease process. Notably among these conditions are pregnancy, hepatocellular jaundice, severe trauma and surgical

procedures. This observation leads one to conclude that the same hormonal phenomenon instrumental in meeting situations of stress also is capable of inducing remissions in rheumatoid arthritis. Numerous crystalline steroids (28) have been extracted from the adrenal cortex, and there is evidence for the belief that many more steroids exist which up to this time have not been isolated. The known steroids have profound effects on metabolic processes of the body. Briefly, they can be divided into three groups. The first group is concerned primarily with electrolyte and fluid balance, causing retention of sodium and chloride and excretion of potassium, the principal steroid is 11-desoxycorticosterone. The acetate of this steroid has been synthesized and placed on the market under the trade-name Doca or DCA. The second group of steroids govern in a large measure the intermediary metabolism of protein, carbohydrates and fat. They possess an oxygen molecule at carbon eleven in one of two combinations: a keto or hydroxy form, and comprise the corticosteroids included in the corticosterone series also referred to as glyccorticoids. In this group are compound E (17 hydroxy, 11-dehydroxycorticosterone) also designated cortisone and cortone, and compound F (17 hydroxycorticosterone, Hydrocortone) (Fig. 358). Other effects of these corticosterones are (1) inhibition of growth in young animals and temporary inhibitory influence on the production of ACTH by the anterior pituitary gland, and (2) destruction of lymphoid tissue, the number of eosinophils and lymphocytes in the blood is reduced. Steroids in the third group (etiocholanolone) exhibit an androgenic and anabolic function. The adrenal cortex is the chief source of androgens in the male and the female. Albright referred to the androgens derived from the adrenal cortex as "N" hormone. Its influence results in retention of nitrogen, phosphorus, sodium, chloride and potassium, also, it produces masculinization.

When the adrenal cortex is stimulated by injection of the anterior pituitary hormone ACTH, increased production of the corticosterones ensues which has a dramatic favorable effect on rheumatoid arthritis rheumatic fever and other diseases in this group. The same results are obtainable by the injection of cortisone or compound F (Hydrocortone). It has been shown that these agents influence those diseases of the connective tissues which appear to be responses to body stress and some disorders which are not related to rheumatoid disease. Gouty arthritis is affected favorably by these agents. ACTH used for long periods may cause hypertrophy of the adrenal cortex. On the other hand, elevated blood levels of cortisone have a tendency to cause atrophy of the adrenal cortex and suppress the function of the anterior pituitary, which is reflected by the decreased amounts of ACTH. In some instances the use of compound E or F or ACTH has suppressed completely the activity of rheumatoid arthritis as manifested in the relief of symptoms, disappearance of local swellings, restoration of joint function, improvement of general health and disappearance of laboratory evidence pointing to activity of the disease process. The beneficial response noted after the injection of ACTH in cases with allergic manifestations is in part the result of increased formation of histaminase by the adrenal cortex. If there are no contraindications, the significance of ACTH in such cases is obvious.

Continued clinical and laboratory investigations reveal that cortisone and ACTH have failed to produce the brilliant results anticipated by some workers and in a way have disappointed both the profession and the laity. Nevertheless, ACTH and cortisone are without question the most significant agents isolated by man in the long war against rheumatoid diseases and other disorders of the connective tissue. The amount of improvement derived from the

use of these drugs may be sufficient to transform an individual with complete invalidism to one capable of at least caring for himself, thereby regaining his dignity and usefulness. It is now established that upon cessation of the administration of the hormones, exacerbations of rheumatoid arthritis generally ensue, and in occasional cases the manifestation after stopping the treatment may be more severe than those before therapy was started or increased activity may occur during the period that the drugs are administered. This has occurred even when large doses were given. In most cases the hormones must be administered indefinitely in order to obtain maximum benefits and to prevent relapses. Some workers are experimenting with other agents such as gold or vaccines to maintain clinical remissions after they have been obtained with ACTH or cortisone. In addition, many side reactions have been recorded, most of which can be reversed by cessation of the therapeutic agents. The high cost of the hormones, particularly ACTH, is a factor that must be considered when a plan of therapy is formulated.

In most cases of rheumatoid arthritis, administration of ACTH or cortisone is followed by a prompt beneficial response; however, in spite of intensive and prolonged treatment, some joints exhibit evidences of activity such as swelling, tenderness and painful motion. The psychic improvement in many cases is dramatic: euphoria and a feeling of well-being are characteristic mental states in patients under active treatment; however, in rare instances, mental depression may occur. Changes in the mental state are the first favorable observations noted after treatment is initiated; next, the beneficial alterations in the affected joint are manifest, and lastly, the sedimentation rate begins to approach normal. This laboratory test, together with the extent of depression of the eosinophils, are good indications of the effectiveness of the treatment. Depression of the eosinophil

and lowering of the sedimentation rate are favorable indices. Under treatment the red cell count and the hemoglobin rise, and the globulin levels lower, however, the albumin globulin ratios rise.

The best results with the use of ACTH and cortisone are observed in patients with minimal structural deformities in the affected joints. These drugs do not have the ability to restore degenerative cartilaginous and osseous tissue. Although in many patients with advanced joint changes pain is reduced in intensity, function of the articulation is improved, and the general health is enhanced, yet the structural alterations in the joints are not affected. The mechanism of ACTH and cortisone in producing favorable responses in rheumatic diseases is not known. These drugs must be considered as symptomatic medication. There is no conclusive evidence that there is a deficiency in the production of these hormones in rheumatoid arthritis or other collagen diseases. Clinical observations disclose that the prime action of ACTH and cortisone is suppression of the pathologic process; they do not remove it. It is believed that this phenomenon is brought about by decreasing the ability of mesenchymal tissue to respond to harmful factors. As pointed out by Traut, this concept receives support from the observation that in cases under treatment the ability of hyaluronic acid to react to hyaluronidase is decreased.

Now cortisone may be given in tablet form (Cortone) by mouth. The dosage and the duration of the treatment vary with each patient. In general in severe or moderately severe cases Traut recommends the following course: "The first day 100 mg is given every 8 hours. The second day 100 mg is given every 12 hours. The dose on the third day is 100 mg given at one time or 25 mg 4 times daily. I may then try to reduce the dose to 75 mg daily and after at least 4 days of sustained improvement, I make the dose 50 mg daily. Most patients

with severe rheumatoid arthritis require 100 mg of cortisone daily for an indefinite time. Moderately severe cases have been able to maintain their improvement on 75 mg of Cortone as a daily dose. After several weeks I have been able to reduce the dose in some patients to 50 mg, and even 25 mg. I have never felt justified in reducing the dose further or stopping the drug in severely ill patients with rheumatoid arthritis chosen by me for this type of therapy."

**UNFAVORABLE REACTIONS.** ACTH is more prone to produce undesirable effects than cortisone, most of these are physiologic in nature and should be anticipated. Some of the undesirable effects are hirsutism, rounding of the face (moon face), acne, amenorrhea and pigmentation of the nails and the skin. Cases in which treatment has continued over a long period may develop manifestations of Cushing's syndrome, characterized by hypertension, osteoporosis, diabetes and virilism. The demineralization (osteoporosis) is evoked by the negative calcium balance induced by the hormones ACTH and cortisone have been credited with interfering with normal healing of wounds; this has not been confirmed by other observers. The author has had several occasions to administer cortisone following major surgical procedures. Evidence of delay in the healing of tissues never was manifested grossly. In these cases

**CONTRAINDICATIONS.** ACTH and cortisone are contraindicated in diabetes mellitus, hypertension, heart failure, chronic nephritis, psychoses, infections, peptic ulcers, pregnancy, tuberculosis and septicaemia.

Compound F (Hydrocortone). Instillation of small quantities of this hormone (1 cc.) into painful, swollen joints of individuals with rheumatoid and degenerative arthritis relieves the pain and the swelling in a great majority of the cases. The author has employed this mode of treatment and has been impressed favorably.

ably with the comfort and the usefulness of the limbs that the patients attain

**Vaccines** Although there is no conclusive evidence that rheumatoid arthritis is produced by some forms of bacteria its inflammatory nature suggesting an infectious process cannot be denied. The rationale of the use of vaccines is based on this observation. Streptococci more than any other bacteria have been incriminated as the etiologic factors. The infectious theory of origin is keenly disputed by some authors. Nevertheless skin tests disclose a hypersensitiveness to streptococci for this reason vaccines may be considered as agents employed in allergic treatment essentially they are desensitizing media. Some workers have compared vaccines with other measures producing stress which in many instances are followed by amelioration of the disease process in this category must be placed shock, fever, trauma and ACTH and cortisone. Most rheumatologists employ some vaccine in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. Vaccines in common use today are nonspecific, specific autogenous or stock varieties. They may be in the form of bacterins which are suspensions of dead bacteria as products of bacterial growth obtained by washings of centrifuged bacterial suspensions or as filtrates of the disintegrating bacteria. Before the role of the anterior pituitary and the adrenal cortex in rheumatoid arthritis was understood vaccines were given in the belief that antibodies were formed or the host's resistances were increased against reactions produced by the noxious agents. Now some observers point out that bacterial proteins may initiate a body reaction similar to that observed in shock or fever which may induce the adrenal cortex to increased activity this may be the result of direct stimulation of the adrenal cortex or through the medium of the anterior pituitary. On the other hand failure to depress the eosinophils in the blood is believed by some to indicate that vaccines fail to stimulate the adrenal cor-

tex in any appreciable degree. In spite of the existing controversy most men treating rheumatoid arthritis employ vaccines in rheumatoid arthritis as desensitizing agents in bacterial allergy. Also they are used to prolong the remissions attained with ACTH and cortisone.

**Parathyroidectomy** The osteoporosis of the skeleton so frequently observed in rheumatoid arthritis has been the subject of much speculation. Most workers are in agreement that the demineralization is the result of disuse and, as pointed out by de Takats increased sympathetic tone may play a part. However, some men have interpreted this observation as a manifestation of hyperparathyroidism and have even reported findings of hypercalcemia in cases of rheumatoid arthritis. Consistent changes in the content of calcium phosphorous or phosphatase in cases of rheumatoid arthritis have not been confirmed by other investigators. Nevertheless parathyroidectomies have been performed for ankylosing polyarthritis and Marie-Strümpell spondylitis with subsequent improvement which was attributed to removal of the parathyroid glands. At the present time there is general agreement that hyperparathyroidism plays no part in the pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis and parathyroid therapy is not to be recommended in the treatment of chronic joint diseases.

**Sympathectomy** It is common knowledge that vasodilation is desirable in rheumatoid arthritis this enhances metabolic processes in the affected tissues removes toxic agents and supplies nutrition to the part. Resection of the sympathetic ganglia and rami was conceived to produce this effect. However the procedure has failed to produce lasting results and has been discarded.

**Local Measures.** Massage has long been recognized as the best form of local therapy in patients with chronic joint diseases. The prime objective of this form of mechanical therapy is to improve and maintain the

circulation of the tissues of the affected joint. It is a good substitute for normal motion in stimulating the physiologic processes of the joint structures. Massage tends to overcome the vasoconstriction which is a constant concomitant feature in rheumatoid arthritis. Fluids both intracellular and extracellular, which accumulate in tissues because of lack of normal muscular contraction are dispersed by massage. At the same time, the soothing effect of massage permits some joint motion which is so essential in preventing the formation of adhesions. The form of massage and the duration of the treatment is governed by the physical status of the patient and the intensity of the inflammatory process. Massage should not be given directly over the joint but rather over the soft tissues distal and proximal to the joint. In the case of the knee joint, the quadriceps and the flexors of the thigh and the muscles of the calf should be given particular consideration. Massage should be gentle and not forceful. It should not initiate accentuation of the inflammatory process and it never should fatigue the patient. A valuable form of massage is provided by the whirlpool bath. Members of the family should be taught the technic of the form of massage desired so that the patient may receive daily treatments at home. Numerous materials have been advocated as lubricants; however, one is as good as another, since the benefits derived are the result of the manipulation of the tissues and not the result of the lubricants employed. Massage is more efficacious if heat, particularly radiant heat, is used before and a period of rest is enforced after the treatment.

Exercises should be executed during all stages of the disease; they should be performed within the tolerance of pain, and the patient must not be unduly fatigued. A knee joint should be moved actively and passed through its arc of painless motion several times daily; this is facilitated if heat and massage precede the exercises.

Inflamed joints should not be permitted to bear weight; this induces muscle spasm, pain and swelling. Protected weight bearing is allowed only when swelling and pain have subsided and weight bearing is tolerated without recurrence of these features. The therapeutic pool with its warm water facilitates the performance of active exercises; the water supports the limbs during the exercises, and the warmth enhances muscle relaxation and reduces muscle spasm. Passive exercises should be avoided if possible; they do not stimulate muscle contraction, and the patient expends no effort or will power in their execution. Often they are harmful because they evoke pain and may tear tissues. On the other hand, active exercises are a stimulus to normal physiologic function; they increase general body metabolism and enhance local circulation. In addition, active exercises are usually accompanied by a favorable psychologic response; the satisfaction that accompanies achievement improves the patient's morale.

Patients with rheumatoid arthritis never must be allowed to lose joint motion, even in the early stages of the disease. The joints should be exercised through the full range of motion at least once daily. If the importance of this treatment is explained to the patient, invariably he will co-operate fully. All exercises should be performed slowly and under control of the patient and within his tolerance of pain. Particular attention is paid to the flexor and the adductor muscles, since these are the chief offenders in producing deformities. When acute and sub-acute symptoms subside, the intensity of the exercises is increased; these are always performed below the reaction level of the joint. Occupational therapy provides varied forms of exercises and restores confidence in the patient.

#### PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT OF KNEE DEFORMITIES

The most essential facet of a plan of therapy is prevention of deformities, pre-



vention is achieved more readily than correction of structural deformities which in variably follow moderately severe and severe forms of neglected cases of rheumatoid arthritis. Pain and muscle spasm are the two important factors responsible for deformities in the early stages of the disease. Pain forces the patient to seek a position of comfort which is usually one of flexion; muscle spasm a protective mechanism associated with pain maintains the deformity. If the deformity is not corrected, contraction of the capsule, the ligaments, the tendons and the muscles ensues; now the deformity is fixed and difficult to overcome. It becomes apparent that temporary splinting with the joint in the desired position is a necessary requisite to avoid soft tissue contractures and to relieve pain. The knee joint should be immobilized in full extension. Except in the cases with acute inflammatory reactions the splints should allow some form of active exercise of the limb and the affected joints. This is achieved best by posterior molded plaster splints which are held to the limb by elastic bandages (Vee bandages); the splint may be removed once or twice a day to permit voluntary motion at the knee joint and active contraction of the quadriceps and the flexors of the knee. Contraction of the quadriceps (quadriceps drill) and straight leg raising can be performed throughout the day while the splint is in situ. Exercises not only increase circulation of the part and restore muscle tone but they also prevent the formation of intra-articular adhesions which are the precursors of fibrous and bony ankylosis. Rest of the part is essential between the exercise periods. It must be remembered that treatment of the joints is only a small part of the general treatment and it must be carried out in conjunction with measures designed to treat the body as a whole. Acute cases with severe pain and marked local inflammatory manifestations should be given total rest. A cast may be applied from the groin

to the toes to prevent deformities; this may mean a period of several weeks. After the acute manifestations have subsided the cast is bivalved, and voluntary exercises as described above are begun. Exercises are the only measures that will overcome muscle atrophy, weakness and loss of voluntary control of groups of muscles such as the quadriceps; they should be considered as the most important instruments in the physician's armamentarium. Weight-bearing is permitted only when the acute manifestations have subsided and muscle tone and power have been restored. In the beginning weight bearing should be protected; crutches are far superior to knee cages and braces since the latter tend to induce more atrophy and weakness in the quadriceps. Cages and braces should be worn only when it is apparent that recurrence of the deformity is inevitable without continuous splintage and voluntary exercises are not sufficient to prevent the recurrence. If the simple aforementioned orthopedic measures are carried out deformities can be prevented in all cases; also a useful range of motion may be preserved. In the event that massive destruction of cartilage is evident and fibrous or bony ankylosis is inevitable the knee should be immobilized in a plaster cast holding the joint in the optimum position of function (12° to 15° of flexion). This also applies to all other joints. As a rule deformities can be prevented in cases encountered and treated adequately during the first 6 months of the disease.

#### CORRECTION OF KNEE DEFORMITIES

Once a deformity of the knee joint is established varying degrees of dysfunction ensue depending upon the severity of the contracture. Generally the deformity of the knee is a flexion contracture; in occasional instances it is an extension contracture. The latter is usually the result of immobilization of the limb in full extension or follows forceful correction of a previous flexion contracture. If a knee cannot be

flexed more than  $10^{\circ}$  beyond full extension, the deformity must be considered as an extension contracture. This deformity occurred in 28 per cent of the cases studied by Kuhns. Although some authorities point out that  $10^{\circ}$  of flexion is compatible with good function and rarely leads to significant symptoms, clinical experience discloses that even this amount of contracture puts the knee joint to a mechanical disadvantage because full contraction of the vastus medialis is not possible. Loss of the stabilizing effect of the vastus medialis makes the knee vulnerable to episodes of giving way

moreover, as pointed out by Hollbrook, walking on a limb with  $15^{\circ}$  of flexion or over is followed by a progressive increase in the amount of flexion deformity. It becomes apparent that the goal in treatment of flexion deformities of the knee joint should be restoration of full extension. On the other hand, one must admit that this aim may be difficult to achieve and in some instances impossible. Most of the following observations recorded are essentially those noted by Kuhns in a study of 586 contractures of the knee found in 1,453 patients suffering with chronic arthritis.

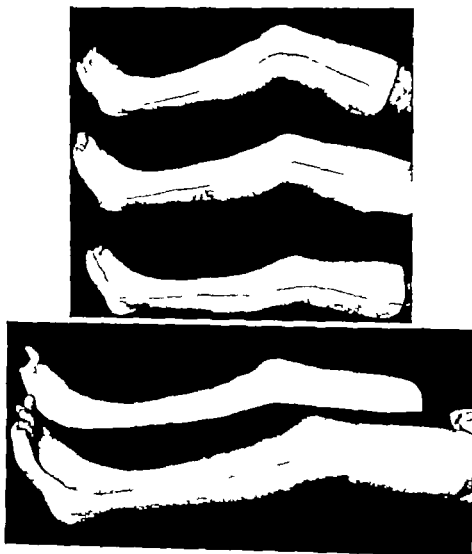


FIG. 359 (Top) A series of casts achieving gradual correction of a flexion deformity of the knee joint. (Bottom) Posterior molded plaster splint to prevent flexion deformity. If more nearly complete immobilization is desired, an anterior splint also may be added. These are held together with elastic bandages.

In all contractures there is shortening of the posterior capsule the muscles and the ligaments which if allowed to persist for several years is complicated by irreversible changes in the muscles. Sixty per cent of the patients exhibit bilateral involvement of the knee joints whereas in 40 per cent one knee is implicated and the opposite knee is free of any deformity. Flexion contractures of  $34^{\circ}$  or over produce the greatest amount of dysfunction symptoms of sprain are precipitated not only in the knee joint but also in hip and ankle joints. In the event that concomitant deformities as subluxation or external rotation of the tibia, are present the disability is increased still further.

**Mild and Recent Contractures.** Cases in which the flexion deformity cannot be corrected passively may be treated by a series of plaster casts this method is far more efficacious than the use of wedging casts or traction. The limb is placed in plaster from the toes to the groin (Fig 359). As the result of complete immobilization of the limb muscle spasm subsides. After 2 days the cast is bivalved and the two halves are removed for short periods during which the limb is given heat, massage and active exercises. Particular attention should be paid to the quadriceps. The author has found hot fomentations most valuable during this phase of the treatment motion always should be within the tolerance of pain. Such a program is carried out daily until  $10^{\circ}$  or more of correction is obtained then a new cast is applied. Maximum correction of the deformities by this method is usually achieved in 1 to 3 months. Weight-bearing should not be allowed until the stabilizing apparatus of the knee joint are sufficiently strong to protect the joint against sprains and traumas incident to instability the most pertinent factor is the quadriceps muscle. If a thigh caliper is deemed necessary when walking because of weak muscles every effort should be made to restore as soon as possible sufficient

quadriceps tone and power to permit the thigh caliper to be discarded.

When no correction is demonstrable after the use of a plaster cast for several weeks one must consider more radical methods in order to overcome the contracture. Usually it is difficult to determine the resistance of contractures when the patient is examined the first time whether or not the plaster cast method is practical can be determined only by several weeks of trial.

**Severe and Old Contractures.** Flexion contractures of long duration present more difficult problems when correction is contemplated. Generally, the shortened fibrotic posterior capsule offers the greatest amount of resistance to any closed method. As pointed out by Kulowski flexion contractures of the knee usually exhibit deviations in three planes. In the sagittal plane there are varying degrees of flexion of the tibia on the femur and in some instances posterior subluxation of the tibia. The subluxation is usually noted in flexion deformities greater than  $20^{\circ}$ . The normal deviation of the knee may be increased by contracture of the tensor fascia femoris and the biceps femoris muscles this component of the over-all deformity is in the frontal plane. The external rotators of the knee (of which the biceps femoris is the most powerful) are stronger than the internal rotators. In addition the biceps femoris is inserted at a more distal point than the internal rotators. Contracture of the external rotators tends to force the flexed tibia into a position of external rotation in the horizontal plane. Other factors favoring this last component of the deformity are relaxation of the ligamentous apparatus and the unwinding action of the cruciate ligaments when the tibia is rotated externally on the femur. It becomes apparent that increased deviation posterior subluxation and external rotation of the tibia can occur only when the knee is fixed firmly and for a long period of time in the flexed position.

Numerous mechanical methods have

been devised to correct the aforementioned flexion deformities. Many of these methods have been credited with good results others with bad. The methods described herein are the ones that have given the author the best results. An attempt is made to correct all flexion deformities without posterior dislocation of the tibia with a turnbuckle cast similar to that described by Kulowski. If this fails or if posterior dislocation of the tibia occurs, a posterior capsuloplasty according to the method of Wilson is employed. Surgical intervention is also utilized in flexion deformities with

posterior subluxation of the tibia. Correction of the subluxation in these cases is achieved by skeletal traction as described by O'Donoghue. The aforementioned procedures are employed in cases which by roentgenographic study exhibit only minimal destruction of the articular surfaces. In the presence of extensive alterations of the opposing cartilaginous surfaces an osteotomy is advocated by some workers believing that this procedure improves the line of weight bearing and reduces the intensity of the pain. In the hands of the author this method has failed to provide sufficient

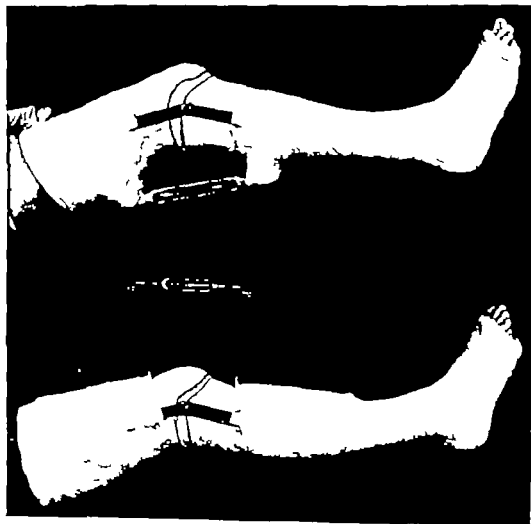


FIG. 360 (Top) The usual method employed to correct fixed flexion contractures (Kulowski's method). Note the tongue-like projection of the proximal segment of the cast covering the anterior surface of the patella. (Bottom) The turnbuckle is placed anteriorly, fixed to steel uprights. This method is utilized to attain the last few degrees of correction in cases offering great resistance at the terminal stages of correction. This method was described by Quengel.

amelioration of symptoms to justify its continued use. In severely damaged joints arthrodesis is a useful procedure if the hip on the affected side and the opposite knee are not involved. However, unilateral involvement of the knees is not encountered frequently also, the possibility always exists that the nonimplicated knee may be affected subsequent to the operation. These factors limit greatly the field of application of arthrodesis. The favorable results that have been reported recently following arthroplasties of knee joints in which nylon was employed as the interposing membrane are convincing enough to justify further investigation. The author's experience in this type of arthroplasty is too limited to express an opinion. However, the procedure as described by Kuhns and McKeever, D. C., is now under consideration and will be tried on cases of chronic arthritis with extensive joint destruction.

**Correction With Turnbuckles and Hinges (Kulowski)** The limb is immobilized in a long leg cast well padded over the patella, the heel and the dorsum of the foot. The cast extends from the toes to the groin. A hip spica is applied when the deformity is long standing and considerable resistance is anticipated. The cast should be light and molded to the configuration of the gastrocnemius muscle. After the plaster is hardened the cast is sectioned at the knee joint in such a manner that a projection is left on the thigh portion which extends over the patella; this tends to distribute evenly the pressure over this region (Fig. 360). In cases with no subluxation of the tibia the hinges and the turnbuckle are incorporated into the two segments of the cast in such a manner that the center of the hinges coincides with that of the knee joint, which for practical purposes can be considered as the center of the femoral condyles. Proper placement of the hinges maintains the center of motion at the joint. Correction by wedging casts without hinges is apt to shift the center of motion at the

joint since when force is applied correction can be obtained only by stretching of the hamstrings. If great resistance is offered by the hamstrings, the center of rotation shifts from the center of the knee joint to the point of insertion of these muscles, thereby producing posterior subluxation of the tibia or increasing the deformity. If it is already present, properly placed hinges tend to maintain the center of motion at the knee joint, however, even with hinges in place if the insertions of the hamstrings offer unusual resistance, posterior displacement may ensue. When great resistance is anticipated, the hinges are placed slightly behind the center of motion of the knee joint; this position creates a forward thrust on the upper end of the tibia which tends to prevent subluxation and to correct an existing subluxation. However, even this last measure may fail to prevent posterior subluxation of the tibia during correction. When this occurs surgical intervention followed by skeletal traction is indicated.

Correction of the deformity should proceed slowly, always within the tolerance of the patient. The author does not allow weight bearing until the knee deformity is corrected at least to 160°. If weight bearing is allowed on knees with flexion contractures greater than 20°, too much strain is imposed on the soft tissue structures of the hip and the knee. During this period nonweight bearing exercises designed to strengthen the extensor apparatus are performed. This comprises quadriceps drill in the cast and straight leg raising against increasing loads. It must be remembered that the vastus medialis can be exercised when the knee is partially flexed if the exercises are performed against resistances. After the maximum amount of correction is achieved the limb is protected by caliper braces. As recorded previously, knee braces tend to promote further muscle atrophy; hence this undesirable feature can be counteracted only by an intensive regimen of progressive muscle exercises. The surgeon

should strive to redevelop muscle power and volume in both the quadriceps and the flexors of the knee to such a level that the braces can be discarded within a few months without fear of recurrence of the contracture. Now the muscular apparatus should be sufficient to stabilize the knee joint. It may take 6 months or more of intensive work by the patient to attain this goal.

Recurrence of flexion contractures may be secondary to disturbances in the mechanics of joints proximal and distal to the knee. Flexion deformities of the hip and pronounced weakness of the gastrocnemius muscle necessitate varying degrees of flexion of the knee during locomotion in order to meet gravitation stresses. It becomes apparent that the aforementioned factors must be evaluated and corrected in order to preclude or minimize the tendency toward recrudescence of the deformity. The range of motion attained by this method of correction is governed by many factors, chiefly the degree of destruction of the opposing articular surfaces in the femur, the tibia and the patellofemoral joint, the amount of correction obtained and the status of the muscular apparatus, particularly the quadriceps muscle.

**Contraindications to Correction by Turnbuckles.** Correction by turnbuckles is not applicable in all cases of flexion deformities of the knee of arthrogenic origin. The pertinent contraindications are (1) severe fixed deformities with posterior subluxation of the tibia (2) deformities of long standing in which irreversible changes have occurred in the hamstrings which will not stretch sufficiently to allow the center of motion during correction with a cast and turnbuckle to be maintained at the center of the joint (3) severe implication and contracture of the posterior capsule (4) pronounced intra-articular damage with fibrous and bony ankylosis (5) intra-articular mechanical obstructions to extension as hypertrophied fat pads (6) lesions of the skin and other soft tissues which preclude appli-

cation of pressure and (7) active joint disease.

The contraindication listed last (active joint disease) is not considered by some authorities as a substantial reason for prohibiting correction of flexion deformities of the knee joint. These workers contend that deformities should be corrected during the acute or the subacute phase of the inflammatory process before the contractures become fixed and irreversible tissue alterations occur. They advocate correction of the deformities by manipulation under anesthesia in those cases which fail to respond to the method of repeated application of casts after a period of relaxation. Some instances may require repeated manipulations. The author has employed this principle in several cases of rheumatoid arthritis in the acute stage exhibiting flexion contractures of the knee. In all, correction was attained and maintained subsequently by plaster splints. Although it is generally accepted that deformities should be corrected during the quiescent stage of the disease, certain selected cases can be corrected during the acute stage with no increase in the intensity of the local process. As a matter of fact, in the aforementioned instances it was interesting to note that after muscle spasm was abolished by deep anesthesia very little force was needed to obtain the desired correction.

The above method may also be utilized following open procedures to improve the amount of correction. It is not to be employed in cases of posterior subluxation. In long-standing cases stretching of the neurovascular structures in the popliteal fossa and the peroneal nerve as it winds around the head of the fibula always must be borne in mind, regardless of the methods employed to achieve correction. The peroneal nerve is particularly prone to injury; any manifestations pointing to involvement of this nerve should be a danger signal to the surgeon warning him of impending trouble. Protracted or permanent paralysis

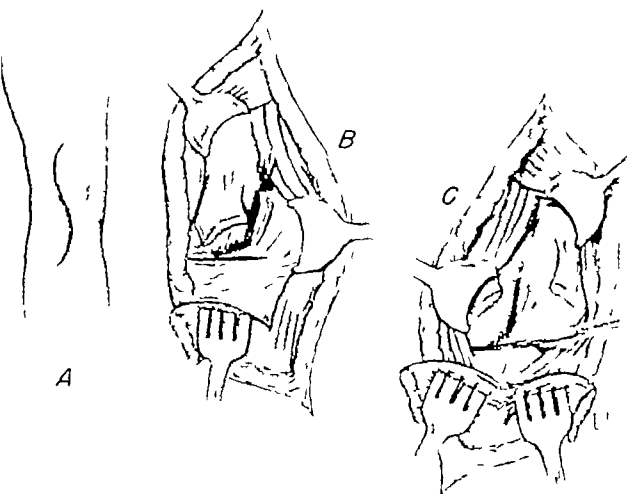


FIG 361 (A) Incision for posterior capsulotomy (B) The lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle the lateral one half of the posterior capsule and the proximal insertion of the posterior cruciate ligament are divided transversely (C) then the medial head of the gastrocnemius and the medial one half of the capsule are sectioned

is not an uncommon complication following correction of severe flexion contractures. It may follow any method of correction but most often closed methods.

**Operative Procedures.** As recorded previously surgical intervention is reserved for cases in which conservative measures fail to correct the deformity also for cases in which posterior subluxation of the tibia occurs during turnbuckle correction or exists prior to any form of treatment and finally in cases of long standing with profound contractures of all the posterior structures particularly the posterior capsule. Two operations to achieve correction are utilized frequently these are posterior

capsulotomy and Wilson's posterior capsuloplasty.

**POSTERIOR CAPSULOTOMY** (Fig. 361) Under a tourniquet a lazy S shaped incision 6 inches long is made in the center of the popliteal fossa. After the skin the subcutaneous tissue and the superficial fascia are divided first the lateral and then the medial aspects of the posterior capsule are exposed. After the deep fascia is identified in the mid line the overlying skin and the subcutaneous tissue are dissected free toward the outer side of the knee exposing the lateral aspect of the popliteal space where the deep fascia is split longitudinally. Through this exposure the biceps tendon

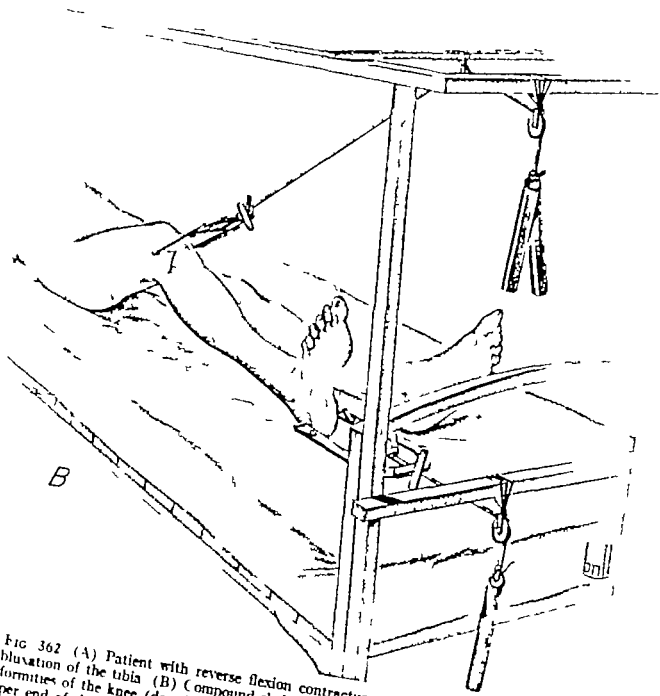


FIG 362 (A) Patient with reverse flexion contracture of the knee and posterior subluxation of the tibia (B) Compound skeletal traction employed to correct flexion deformities of the knee (described by O'Donoghue) Vertical traction is made in the upper end of the tibia and horizontal traction on the lower part of the leg





FIG 361 (A) Incision for posterior capsulotomy (B) The lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle, the lateral one half of the posterior capsule and the proximal insertion of the posterior cruciate ligament are divided transversely (C) then the medial head of the gastrocnemius and the medial one half of the capsule are sectioned.

is not an uncommon complication following correction of severe flexion contractures. It may follow any method of correction but most often closed methods.

**Operative Procedures.** As recorded previously surgical intervention is reserved for cases in which conservative measures fail to correct the deformity, also for cases in which posterior subluxation of the tibia occurs during turnbuckle correction or exists prior to any form of treatment and finally in cases of long standing with profound contractures of all the posterior structures particularly the posterior capsule. Two operations to achieve correction are utilized frequently these are posterior

capsulotomy and Wilson's posterior capsuloplasty.

**POSTERIOR CAPSULOTOMY** (Fig 361) Under a tourniquet a lazy S-shaped incision 6 inches long is made in the center of the popliteal fossa. After the skin the subcutaneous tissue and the superficial fascia are divided first the lateral and then the medial aspects of the posterior capsule are exposed. After the deep fascia is identified in the mid line the overlying skin and the subcutaneous tissue are dissected free toward the outer side of the knee exposing the lateral aspect of the popliteal space where the deep fascia is split longitudinally. Through this exposure the biceps tendon

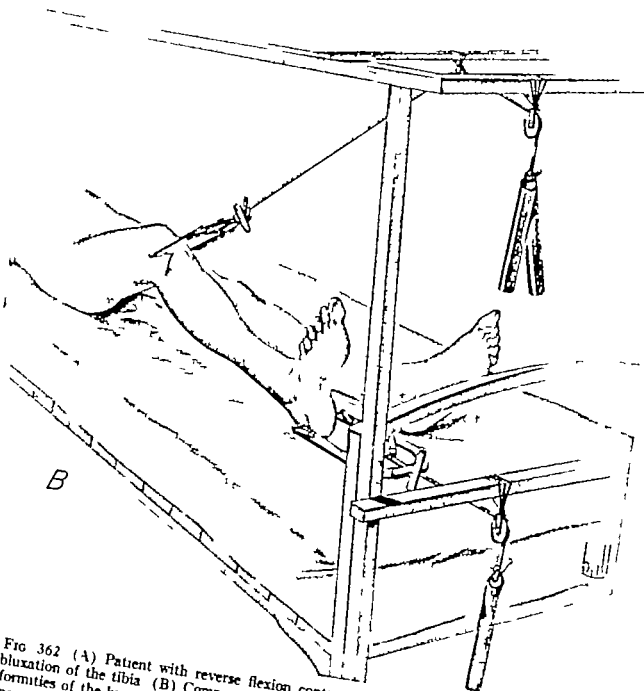


FIG 362 (A) Patient with reverse flexion contracture of the knee and posterior subluxation of the tibia (B) Compound skeletal traction employed to correct flexion deformities of the knee (described by O Donoghue) Vertical traction is made in the upper end of the tibia, and horizontal traction on the lower part of the leg

and the common peroneal nerve are identified and displaced laterally, exposing the lateral head of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle. Next, the neurovascular structures occupying a position in the middle of the popliteal fossa are isolated and retracted medially. This is followed by transverse section of the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle, the lateral half of the posterior capsule and the proximal attachment of the posterior cruciate ligament.

The next step in the operation is development of a line of cleavage between the subcutaneous tissue and the deep fascia on the medial aspect of the popliteal fossa. By dividing the deep fascia on the medial side of the joint longitudinally the semi-membranosus and the semitendinosus are exposed. These structures are displaced medially, and the popliteal vessels and nerves are retracted laterally. Next the medial head of the gastrocnemius and the remaining medial half of the capsule are divided transversely under vision. Following the last step in the procedure the amount of extension possible in the knee joint is dependent upon the resistance offered by the hamstrings. If these structures are not fibrotic and shortened extension can be accomplished by minimal force; great force never must be employed and its use is condemned. Contracture of the hamstrings and the iliotibial band may preclude correction of the deformity. In this event the tendons of the biceps semimembranosus and semitendinosus are lengthened by a Z-shaped tenotomy and the iliotibial band and the lateral intermuscular septum are divided transversely. After completion of the operation the wound is closed in layers in the normal manner.

If complete correction is accomplished by the above procedures the limb is immobilized in the position of full extension by a long leg plaster cast. Quadriceps drill and straight leg raising are started immediately. After 2 weeks the cast is replaced by a caliper brace and protected weight

bearing is commenced. The subsequent postoperative management is similar to that described following turnbuckle correction of flexion contractures.

Failure to obtain complete correction because of undue shortening of the neurovascular bundle can be overcome by the application of a long leg cast, hinges and turnbuckle as described previously. In the event that posterior subluxation of the tibia is present this deformity can be corrected by the use of compound skeletal traction as described by O'Donoghue (Fig. 362). Essentially, this comprises the application of skeletal traction to the upper end of the tibia and to the os calcis so that vertical traction is made on the proximal end of the tibia while at the same time linear traction is made on the leg. Instead of Kirschner wires, the author employs threaded wires; these do not slide back and forth in the osseous tunnels and therefore the possibility of infection is minimized. A threaded wire is passed through the proximal end of the crest of the tibia; a tension bow is attached to the wire and vertical traction is achieved by suspension to an overhead bar. The second wire is passed through the os calcis; this permits the application of horizontal traction to the distal end of the leg. At the beginning of the treatment maximum traction is applied in the vertical direction and less in the horizontal as the deformity becomes less; more pull is applied in the horizontal plane and less in the vertical. The rapidity of correction always should be within the tolerance of the patient and the tissues. As the end of the correction is reached the vertical traction becomes minimal or may be eliminated. This method is employed by O'Donoghue to replace operative procedures; the author finds it an excellent method to supplement operative procedures. It is particularly useful in young individuals.

**POSTERIOR CAPSULOPLASTY (WILSON)**  
(Fig. 363) The operation is performed with a tourniquet placed high around the

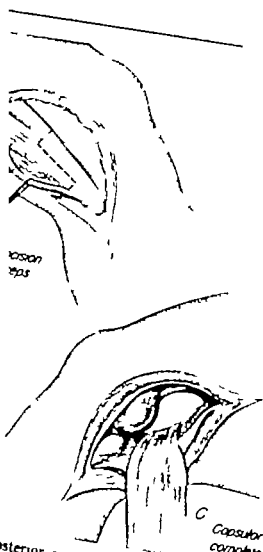


FIG 363 (A) Posterior capsuloplasty of P. Wilson for flexion contracture of the knee joint through a medial and a lateral incision. On the lateral side the peroneal nerve is displaced downward and a Z-shaped tenotomy is performed on the tendon of the biceps femoris. (B) The lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle is divided and the capsule and the periosteum are stripped off the bone for 3 inches proximally as far as the mid line. (C) The same procedure is executed on the medial side of the joint.

thigh. An incision 5 to 6 inches in length is made on the lateral aspect of the knee joint. It begins immediately above the lateral condyle of the femur and extends distally to the head of the fibula. After the iliotibial band is identified it is divided transversely approximately 2 inches above the joint line. Next the biceps tendon is dissected free from the surrounding tissues for a distance of 4 inches proximal to its insertion into the head of the fibula. After the peroneal nerve is retracted downward and outward a Z-shaped tenotomy is performed on the biceps femoris tendon. This step allows visualization of the posterolat-

eral position of the capsule which is divided just behind the posterior margin of the lateral femoral condyle exposing the posterior compartment of the joint. The capsule is stripped upward from the posterior surface of the femur then the capsular incision is projected upward over the lateral condyle of the femur exposing the attachment of origin of the lateral head of the gastrocnemius. This structure is stripped off the bone and the capsule and the periosteum are stripped from the posterior aspect of the femur for a distance of 3 inches proximal to the joint line and as far as the mid line of the femur.

A second incision is made on the medial aspect of the knee joint extending from the adductor tubercle to 1 cm below the joint line. The posteromedial aspect of the capsule is exposed and incised, and the periosteum is stripped from the femur on the inner side as on the outer. A wide piece of gauze is passed between the posterior surface of the femur and the capsuloperiosteal tissues; now the posterior structures can be retracted readily. With the knee flexed acutely and the posterior tissues displaced downward, all tight capsular tissues in the intercondylar notch are mobilized by subperiosteal dissection. The ends of the biceps tendon are approximated and sutured in the lengthened position. Occasionally, the peroneal nerve becomes taut when the knee is extended; this can be relieved by freeing the nerve in its course around the neck of the fibula to a point beyond the neck. The wounds are closed in layers in the usual manner. Postoperative management is the same as that described following posterior capsulotomy. If correction of bilateral contractures is contemplated, the operation should be performed on one knee at a time.

#### ARTHROPLASTY OF THE KNEE JOINT IN CHRONIC ARTHRITIS (KUHN AND POTTER)

As recorded previously, McKeever and Kuhns and Potter have used nylon as an interposition membrane in arthroplasties of the knee joint in cases of chronic arthritis. A single ankylosis of the knee joint in the position of extension is not a serious disability. However, such situations are rarely observed in patients afflicted with rheumatoid arthritis. In these cases multiple ankyloses including the knees may be encountered; such patients would be benefited greatly by mobilization of one knee joint. Many failures have been recorded following arthroplasties performed in chronic arthritis when fascia lata was used as the interposition membrane. The factors are: (1) all the soft tissues at the knee joint are implicated in the pathologic process; (2) the residual deformities usually are encoun-

tered in cases of long standing; the long period of dysfunction and inactivity results in profound demineralization of bones, atrophy of the muscular apparatus and weakness and atrophy of the ligamentous structures and fasciae; and (3) there is similar involvement of the fascia lata which loses its strength and becomes friable. According to Kuhns and Potter, when used as an interposition membrane in arthroplasties of the knee joint, it rapidly undergoes deterioration, enhancing the formation of intra-articular fibrous adhesions. Nylon is a suitable material for interposition between the reshaped articular surfaces of the knee joint; it gives rise to no tissue response; it is thermolabile and resistant to chemicals and moisture; instances of hypersensitivity to nylon are exceedingly rare. The substance has some very durable properties. It is tough and moderately elastic. It is manufactured in strips 12 inches long and 5/100 inch in thickness; it must be sterilized chemically. The aforementioned workers recommend sterilization by immersion of the material in a 1:1000 solution of mercuric chloride for 12 hours. Before it is used, it is placed in a solution of cold normal saline for 1 hour.

A tourniquet is not used; bleeding is controlled with the electrocautery; large vessels are ligated. The knee joint is exposed by a long medial parapatellar incision (Fig. 364 A). In severe cases the different layers of the soft tissues may be adherent to one another and also to the bone; invariably, the patella is fused to the anterior surface of the femur (Fig. 364 B C). With a thin blade osteotome the patella is freed from the femur and then displaced laterally, exposing the anterior aspect of the joint. The capsule is usually adherent to the lateral surfaces of the femoral condyles. It is freed by sharp dissection, taking care to preserve the tibial and the fibular collateral ligaments. Next the intra-articular ligaments and the menisci are excised; these usually exhibit advanced degeneration. The femur and the

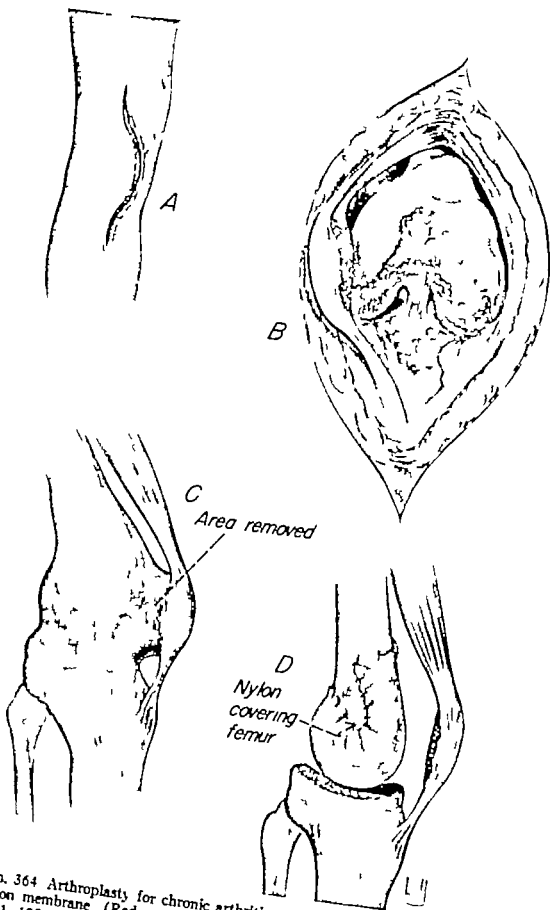


FIG. 364 Arthroplasty for chronic arthritis, employing nylon as the interposition membrane (Redrawn from Kuhns, et al. Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 91 351 1950)

tibia are separated with an osteotome the line of separation usually coincides with the old joint space. Flexion of the knee brings into view the posterior portions of the femoral condyles and the tibial plateaus.

With a thin blade osteotome the distal end of the femur is remodeled from side to side into a rounded wedge and a shallow groove is made in the superior surface of the tibia to receive the reshaped opposing surface of the femur. Approximately 1 inch of the joint is resected; this permits unobstructed motion between the femur and the tibia. With a rasp all roughened areas are made smooth so that the femur moves smoothly over the articular surface. Next the bed for the patella is made by deepening the intercondylar notch. The patella is shaved thin and its articular surface is made smooth; this structure should not be sacrificed by excision.

The bone ends are now ready to receive the interposition membrane. A sterilized strip of nylon is attached first to the oblique popliteal ligament and posterior portion of the capsule by interrupted fine nylon or silk sutures. Then the nylon strip is stitched to the periosteal tissue at the sides of the femoral condyles and finally pleated to fit snugly over the newly shaped bone end. The strip should be long enough to cover the supracondylar portion of the femur hence precluding the formation of adhesions in this region (Fig. 364 D). After all bleeding points are controlled the wound is closed in layers with sutures of fine silk or nylon. A compression dressing is applied extending from the ankle to the groin; no cast or plaster splint is deemed necessary. Lengthening of the rectus femoris tendon is not required. If resection of the opposing bone surfaces fails to provide at least 90° of flexion the attachments of the vasti muscle to the rectus femoris muscle and the patella are sectioned and the scarred distal portion of the vastus intermedius is dissected free and excised according to the method of T. C. Thompson. This procedure permits the desired range of flexion.

At the termination of the operation the leg is elevated on pillows for 48 hours and supportive measures are instituted such as the administration of fluids and blood. Antibiotic medication is also given. The wound is not disturbed for 5 or 6 days; at the end of this period the wound is redressed and active exercises for flexor and extensor muscles are commenced. Antigravity exercises are started as soon as the wound is healed, and weight bearing is allowed in a bivalved plaster cylinder at the end of the third week. Restoration of muscle power, volume and control is achieved by the methods described on page 260. Severe muscle atrophy and bone demineralization may retard weight bearing for several months; usually a caliper brace is required for at least 4 months. As a rule, maximum restoration of muscle function is achieved in 9 to 12 months. In most instances good painless function is obtained in 6 months.

Kubus and Potter point out (1) that arthroplasty on a knee in flexion is not difficult if the articular ends of the bones are resected widely and the capsule is freed from the posterior margins of the femoral condyles. (2) the gliding surface under the quadriceps tendon must be restored by a covering of nylon in order to prevent the formation of adhesions, (3) in cases of multiple ankyloses arthroplasty is justifiable in cases with marked articular damage with intra-articular fibrous adhesions and limited motion. (4) bony ankylosis is not a prerequisite for the procedure. (5) in patients who retained some motion the operation was technically less difficult. (6) if marked hypertrophy of the synovial membrane was present a synovectomy was indicated at operation. (7) usually the operation is not done in patients over 60 years of age. (8) the operation has a wider application in cases of osteoarthritis with profound degenerative alterations in the articular surfaces. They list the following contraindications: (1) the presence of an active inflammatory process; the process should be quiescent at least one year before

arthroplasty is performed, (2) debilitated patients, (3) in children with rheumatoid arthritis no arthroplasty of the knee joint should be contemplated until the epiphyses are closed

**SYNOVECTOMY** In spite of the good results recorded by some, many workers have been disappointed with the results of débridement operations in knee joints crippled by rheumatoid arthritis. This has not been the experience of the author; therefore, this procedure alone is recommended for cases of rheumatoid arthritis, particularly when all evidence of acute inflammation has subsided. The procedure does relieve pain and removes hyperplastic tissue which acts as a mechanical block to free motion and interferes with nutrition of the articular cartilage.

## DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

The synonyms for this entity are listed in the classification found at the beginning of this chapter. As in rheumatoid arthritis, so in degenerative arthritis, the terminology is confusing because the etiologic factors are not known; hence, investigators have employed numerous and various criteria as the basis for their designations. Most of the terms employed endeavor to indicate the osseous and cartilaginous alterations encountered in this malady as well as the roentgenographic features; also, they emphasize the pertinent characteristic clinical feature, namely, the tendency for the lesion to be manifest in individuals past middle life. Degenerative arthritis has been recognized and studied in man and animals by numerous observers, some of which date back many centuries. The lesions in man are comparable with the abnormalities noted in the joints of old animals which are believed to be a physiologic response to wear, tear and aging. It is the belief of some workers that these regressive changes are influenced in a large measure by metabolic disturbances which are governed by altera-

tions in the normal function of glands of internal secretion.

### ETIOLOGY

As recorded previously, the etiology of degenerative arthritis is not established; however, clinical and scientific studies disclose that certain factors play a role in the pathogenesis of the disorder.

**Constitutional Factor** It is recognized generally that changes in the articular cartilage of joints which are consistent with degenerative arthritis may appear in some individuals early, whereas in others they appear late in life and may be only minimal in severity. Also, the malady is encountered more frequently in the sthenic constitutional type than in asthenic individuals. These observations lead one to conclude that the cartilage of one individual is endowed with inherent properties which can withstand wear, tear and aging without undergoing pronounced degenerative alterations, whereas the cartilage of other individuals, when subjected to the same stresses incurred during normal function, is unable to cope with these forces and deteriorates rapidly.

**Trauma** It is acknowledged generally that trauma in some form is active in initiating the changes that culminate in degenerative arthritis. The articular cartilage may be traumatized by numerous forms of mechanical insults; for practical purposes, these can be divided into two groups. Trauma may be the result of physiologic wear and tear associated with normal joint function, such as in walking, standing, running or excessive use of the articulation in certain occupations or athletic endeavors. Essentially, this trauma comprises micro-traumas, the accumulated effect of which is responsible for the regressive changes in the articular cartilage. It has been demonstrated that standing and walking have no effect on the osseous elements of weight-bearing joints but that the cartilage is compressed. Compression of this nature interrupts completely the avenues of circulation



to the cartilage cells. During walking this brief interference in the supply of nutrient materials to cartilage has no deleterious influence; however, the same compression forces acting for long periods, such as in occupations requiring prolonged standing, result in the development of degenerative changes which early in the disease comprise fibrillation, softening and loss of elasticity in the superficial layers of the cartilage. Obesity tends to intensify the microtraumas of normal joint function.

On the other hand, trauma may be solitary and severe, particularly if it produces one or more fractures of the articular surface. Such injuries may cause local areas of degeneration of articular cartilage which is avascular tissue of which powers of regeneration are for practical purposes insignificant. In addition, the local changes may be responsible for the development of incongruous articular surfaces which in turn magnify many times the intensity of microtraumas of everyday life. Other factors capable of inflicting traumas in varying degrees of severity to the cartilage of bone ends are poor posture and faulty weight bearing. All orthopedic surgeons are familiar with the joint changes that accompany genu varum and genu valgum. Disturbance of the normal mechanics in these joints invariably produces degenerative alterations earlier than would be expected in joints without deformity. The same is true of changes in the normal alignment of hips, ankles, spine and feet. The static deviations subject certain areas of the affected joints to increased compression which in turn deprives the cartilage cells of a normal exchange of joint fluid. This disturbance in circulation deprives the amount of available oxygen and favors the accumulation of noxious agents. All these factors enhance the development of degenerative abnormalities in the articular cartilage.

**Senescence.** Although the disease is observed occasionally in the third decade, it is encountered most often after middle life

particularly in the fifth, sixth and the seventh decades. There is a progressive increase in the intensity of the degenerative alterations with each successive decade. These observations were noted by Bennett, Waine and Bauer. The same observations were recorded in the author's study of degenerative lesions of the shoulder joint in various decades; however, changes in non-weight bearing joints are less severe than those encountered in weight bearing joints. All gradations of degenerative arthritis are encountered in individuals of the same age period. An individual in the fifth decade may exhibit advanced alterations in the knee joints while another individual in the seventh decade may exhibit only minimal changes. However, when an attempt is made to establish a norm for each decade, it becomes apparent that the increase in gradient of the degenerative abnormalities is progressive in each successive decade. Study of the numerous causative agents that may initiate degenerative arthritis makes it apparent that regardless of what other agents may be responsible for the disease, aging plays a very significant role.

**Infection.** Infection as a causative agent in degenerative arthritis has been a topic of considerable controversy. However, it is generally accepted at the present time that infection plays no role in the pathologic processes of this disorder. It must be admitted that occasionally an active focus may be coexistent with accentuation of the local manifestations; however, it is difficult to conceive that such a focus is the causative agent responsible for a degenerative process of long standing.

**Vascular Disorders.** It is true that degenerative arthritis is more apt to develop in people who frequently are afflicted by vascular disorders such as degenerative vascular disease, hypertension and arteriosclerosis (sclerotic type). Aseptic necrosis of bone has been compared with massive myocardial infarction. In spite of this observation, there is no conclusive evidence

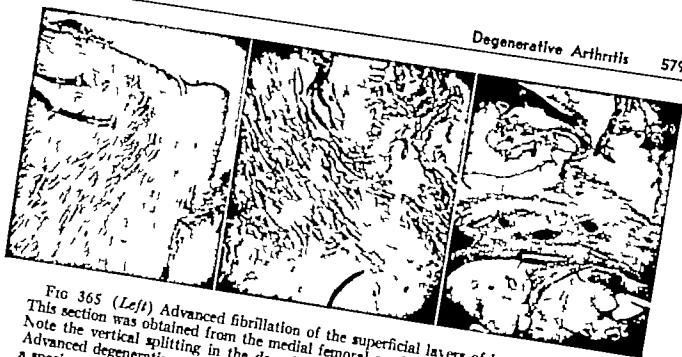


FIG 365 (Left) Advanced fibrillation of the superficial layers of hyaline cartilage. This section was obtained from the medial femoral condyle of a patient 52 years old. Note the vertical splitting in the deep layers (Photomicrograph  $\times 100$ ) (Center) Advanced degenerative alterations of hyaline cartilage in the medial tibial plateau in a specimen of the seventh decade. Observe the areas of fibroblastic activity, the meta-plasia of hyaline cartilage and the defective fibrocartilage. Also note the nest of cartilage cells scattered throughout the deteriorated articular cartilage. (Photomicrograph  $\times 100$ ) (Right) Different area of specimen B. The cartilage is worn away completely. The articular cortex is markedly thickened and dense. The narrowed marrow spaces contain proliferating connective tissue which tends to project to the surface and cover the exposed subchondral bone. (Photomicrograph  $\times 200$ )

on hand which points to disturbances in the vascular system of bone as the prime factors responsible for the disease. Local areas of the bone ends in a joint may undergo aseptic necrosis as is often seen in the head of the femur following injury or fracture of the femoral neck. These produce incongruities of the articular surfaces which lay the basis for development of degenerative arthritis. It must be understood that aseptic necrosis of the bone per se was not the etiologic factor in these instances.

**Endocrine Deficiencies.** The frequent occurrence of generalized degenerative arthritis in women during the climacteric period has been a strong incentive to incriminate dysfunction of the endocrine glands as the prime etiologic factors. In spite of this coincidence convincing evidence establishing disturbances of endocrine function as causative agents is lacking.

**Metabolic Disturbances and Vitamin Deficiencies.** Metabolic factors and vita-

min deficiencies have been accredited from time to time as possible etiologic factors of degenerative arthritis. However there is no evidence to substantiate these premises.

#### PATHOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Numerous investigations concerned with the pathogenesis and the pathology of degenerative arthritis have been recorded in the literature. The studies of Nichols and Richardson and Bennett Walne and Bauer are monumental pieces of work and have contributed much to our knowledge of chronic arthritis. Some of the other investigators that must be mentioned are Virchow, Volkmann Hunter, Welchelbaum Pommer Heine, the Garrods Charcot Heberden Fisher Kangas Schmoral Goldthwait, Allison and Ghormley, Ely, Keefer Freund Erdheim Key and Adams.

The earliest changes in degenerative arthritis implicate the articular cartilage. Macroscopically the first alteration noted

loss of elasticity. The resilient, glistening bluish white cartilage observed in infancy becomes opaque, yellowish firm and compact. These changes are more discernible in areas subjected to great pressure and compression; the normal shock absorbing features of the hyaline cartilage is now lost. Soon the cartilage becomes soft, and fibrillation of its superficial layers ensues, giving the structure a velvetlike or papillary appearance. With increase in gradient of these changes the cartilage exhibits small irregular scalloped, ulcerated areas. In some areas the articular cartilage is completely worn away, exposing the subchondral bone which becomes thickened and compact and assumes a highly polished surface. In the early stages the superficial layers of cartilage lose their affinity for stain; it is believed that the fibrillation noted above is the result, in part, of degeneration of the binding substance of the matrix of the cartilage, permitting the superficial bundles of collagen to be erased and the deep radial bundles to separate (Fig. 365).

According to some workers the formation of Weichselbaum's lacunae is indicative of early degenerative alterations in the hyaline cartilage. Defects noted in the cartilage are believed to be the result of resorption of the defective matrix by cartilage cells which have assumed chondroblastic functions. The process has been designated "lacunar resorption." The lacunae are expanded and may coalesce to form larger spaces which contain primitive connective tissue. Later degeneration of the cartilage cells may occur and with rupture of some of the more superficial lacunae of Weichselbaum the surface assumes a pitted appearance. Cartilage cells adjacent to the fibrillated matrix also exhibit evidence of degeneration. Below the tangential stratum they are fewer in number; they stain abnormally, and the normal pattern of the cells and distinct layers is lost. In the transitional and calcified zones of the cartilage the

number of the cells is reduced, and the cells are arranged in groups varying in size.

Small surface areas of erosion coalesce so that large portions of subchondral bone are exposed; this is particularly noted in the center of the femoral condyles, the tibial plateaus and on the medial and the lateral facets of the patella; these areas are subjected to greater friction during joint motion than the remaining portions of the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia and the patella.

Traut points out that during joint motion two forces act on the articular cartilage—a perpendicular and a diagonal or shearing force. These forces play an important role in supplying cartilage cells with nutrient materials found in the synovial fluid. During normal joint motion the pressure and the shearing forces are applied intermittently; this mechanism pumps nutrient fluid to the cartilage. It becomes apparent that any defect in this mechanism jeopardizes the existence of the cartilage. As noted previously degenerative alterations in the cartilage cause the structure to lose its resiliency; also changes in the hyaline-binding substance (chondroitin-sulfate-protein) are responsible for fibrillation of the cartilage incident to abnormal mobility of the collagenous fibrils.

When the bone ends have lost the protection provided by normal hyaline cartilage the aforementioned pressure and shearing forces act directly on the subchondral bone initiating in the spongiosa proliferative and hypertrophic responses. The pathologic responses differ in various areas of the same joint. In general the calcified zone of the cartilage exhibits increased thickness, most probably due to increased amounts of calcium deposition in the hyaline zone. In such instances Bennett et al. noted that "spotty ossification in the subchondral plate rendered this structure markedly irregular; they proposed that the abnormal calcification stimulated the ossification process." As a rule little alteration is discernible in the

subchondral bone except in cases showing advanced changes in the cartilage. Frequently, deep erosions of cartilage are associated with increased vascularity of the marrow spaces, showing fibrocytic and endosteal proliferation."

Areas denuded completely of cartilage invariably disclose pronounced alterations in the subchondral bone. Areas subjected to pressure forces, such as weight bearing surfaces, exhibit marked increase in density and sclerosis; occasionally the bone is eburnated. Immediately adjacent to these, other areas of decreased density are encountered. Microscopic study of the affected tissues reveals that the subchondral marrow spaces contain a rich, vascular, granulation tissue, the osteoblasts arranged along the adjacent trabeculae lay down abundant osteoid tissue, the process parallels enchondral ossification. Concomitantly osteoclasts in the vicinity of the osteoid matrix resorb channels in the adjacent trabecular bone. It is obvious that this process attempts to readjust the trabecular pattern of the subchondral bone. In denuded areas active trabecular readjustment is a conspicuous feature, this always is associated with diminution in the sizes of the marrow spaces and increased density of the bone ends. Pommer was of the opinion that the degree of subchondral condensation was governed by the intensity of weight bearing stimuli in joints of which the articular cartilage was defective or worn away completely. With this premise many investigators agree.

A constant feature of degenerative arthritis is peripheral proliferations comprising bone and cartilage. These peripheral outgrowths have been given many designations; some of them are spurs or marginal osteophytes on the fingers and the toes they are called Heberden's nodes and marginal exostoses. Many theories of origin have been proposed. Nichols and Richard son Beneke and others maintained that these were physiologic responses of a com-

pensatory mechanism in an attempt to improve the stability of the joint by increasing the dimensions of its articulating surfaces. On the other hand, some workers expressed the view that the marginal excrescences were the result of peripheral displacement associated with compression of defective cartilage (Knaggs, Parker et al.). Bennett and his co-workers point out that as the result of loss of elasticity in degenerating cartilage, weight-bearing imposes additional stress in the form of sustained traction on the peripheral joint margins. This force tends to initiate hyperplasia and hypertrophy in the marginal tissues. The aforementioned investigators were of the opinion that marginal proliferations are not secondary features, since they were able to demonstrate the lesions in joints with no subchondral alterations and only minimal changes in the articular cartilage. They proposed the theory that the connective tissue at the border zone between the articular cartilage and the synovial membrane is more primitive than the cartilage or the synovialis and that this less-specialized tissue is unusually vascular, even in adult life. Furthermore, it is capable of marked proliferation and reparative powers. Pommer and Wehner proposed still another mode of genesis. They claimed that the peripheral outgrowths were the result of endochondral ossification in the subchondral bone; the newly formed tissue advanced into the deteriorated cartilage. Growth of the newly formed tissue is resisted in all directions, except at the periphery of the joint surfaces; this provides an explanation for the predominately marginal process encountered in advanced cases of degenerative arthritis. Axhausen attributed the formation of these excrescences to metaplasia of proliferating synovialis and also to periosteal proliferation with subsequent osteophytic formation.

Subchondral cysts are associated lesions of degenerative arthritis, they vary in size and configuration and are more predomi-



FIG 366 Bilateral degenerative arthritis in a woman 58 years old. The articular surfaces of the femurs are irregular, particularly those of the medial femoral condyles. The medial joint spaces are narrowed. Observe the lipping of the poles of the patellae and on the anterior articular surface of the femurs. New bone formation is also noted on the posterior femoral condyles. Fracture of the excrescences may give rise to loose bodies.

nant in joints exhibiting advanced alterations. Their mode of genesis is not clear and hence their origin is highly debated. Some believe they are encapsulated hemorrhages in the subchondral bone; others claim they are produced by osteoclastic activity. It is interesting to note that they are generally observed in areas of increased density and bony sclerosis. This observation has led to the conclusion that the cysts are products of osteoclasia induced by excessive mechanical stresses. Luck pointed out that mechanical stresses within certain limits favor osteoblastic processes, whereas greater stresses induce osteoclastic activity. Localization of this phenomenon results in formation of cysts.

**Capsular Alterations.** Changes in the synovialis and the fibrous capsule of the joint are not primary manifestations of degenerative arthritis and are not characteristic. As will be shown subsequently, knee joints exhibiting severe abnormalities of the articular cartilage may disclose only minimal changes in the capsular tissues. Generally, with advancing age, the severity of changes in the capsule increases in gradient. Essentially, the changes comprise hyper-

plasia and villous formation of the synovialis; the reaction is more pronounced at the joint edges. The synovial membrane may be thrown into folds and fringes. Villi vary extremely in number, size, and shape; they may appear as fine fingerlike projections or as branching, papillary, or even polypoid structures or grapelike clusters. Metaplasia of tissues may occur, producing osteoid tissue or even bone. The tissues may be infiltrated with fat, producing lipoma arborescens. Mechanical insults to these tissues may cause hemorrhage into the joint, resulting in deposition of varying amounts of hemosiderin in the synovialis. Free bodies in the joint arising from the synovial membrane, the articular cartilage, or by detachment of peripheral excrescences may inflict injury to the synovialis, giving rise to traumatic synovitis with effusion, which in turn produces hydrops of the intra-articular soft tissue.

With progression of the aforementioned alterations in the hyaline cartilage, the subchondral bone, and the capsule, the normal configuration of the joint is altered greatly (Figs 366 and 367). In advanced cases, varying degrees of subluxation may

ensue the capsular tissues are thickened and the pericapsular tissues are distended and weakened these soft tissue changes may appear not unlike those encountered in rheumatoid arthritis however, one must remember that these two entities are in no way related insofar as etiologic agents are concerned Although the joint changes are responsible for varying amounts of dysfunction, deformity and restricted motion, true fibrous or bony ankylosis does not occur in this disease this is a distinctive feature of degenerative arthritis

### LOOSE BODIES ASSOCIATED WITH DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

Frequently loose bodies are encountered in joints affected by degenerative arthritis, these may be single or multiple and may be the products of different modes of genesis They may arise by metaplasia of cells comprising the synovial membrane (oste-

chondromatosis) or by severance of base of a marginal osteophyte or by placement into the joint of loose fragments of articular cartilage. As noted previously regardless of the origin of the free body behavior and fate is the same in all instances Those arising from the synovial lining may remain attached to their site of formation, may become pedunculated or may be displaced into the joint cavity bodies having an osseous nucleus and a capsule of synovial membrane which are sufficient to sustain the body and permit proliferation of the cartilage on its surface that the body shows progressive increase in size On the other hand, the central portion of the body undergoes necrosis and remains in an inert state Microscopic examinations of free bodies exhibit a pattern of nonuniformity of structural formation, consisting of strata of noncalcified car-



FIG 367 Far-advanced degenerative arthritis of the left knee joint in a woman 62 years old. Observe the marked irregularity of the articular surfaces the subchondral sclerosis the loose body in the anterior aspect of the joint the retropatellar arthritis and the advanced marginal lipping of the inner tibial condyle.



FIG 366 Bilateral degenerative arthritis in a woman 58 years old. The articular surfaces of the femurs are irregular particularly those of the medial femoral condyles. The medial joint spaces are narrowed. Observe the hiping of the poles of the patellae and on the anterior articular surface of the femurs. New bone formation is also noted on the posterior femoral condyles. Fracture of the excrescences may give rise to loose bodies

nant in joints exhibiting advanced alterations. Their mode of genesis is not clear and hence their origin is highly debated. Some believe they are encapsulated hemorrhages in the subchondral bone others claim they are produced by osteoclastic activity. It is interesting to note that they are generally observed in areas of increased density and bony sclerosis. This observation has led to the conclusion that the cysts are products of osteoclasia induced by excessive mechanical stresses. Luck pointed out that mechanical stresses within certain limits favor osteoblastic processes whereas greater stresses induce osteoclastic activity. Localization of this phenomenon results in formation of cysts.

**Capsular Alterations** Changes in the synovialis and the fibrous capsule of the joint are not primary manifestations of degenerative arthritis and are not characteristic. As will be shown subsequently knee joints exhibiting severe abnormalities of the articular cartilage may disclose only minimal changes in the capsular tissues. Generally with advancing age the severity of changes in the capsule increases in gradient. Essentially the changes comprise hyper-

plasia and villous formation of the synovialis; the reaction is more pronounced at the joint edges. The synovial membrane may be thrown into folds and fringes. Villi vary extremely in number, size and shape; they may appear as fine fingerlike projections or as branching papillary or even polypoid structures or grapelike clusters. Metaplasia of tissues may occur producing osteoid tissue or even bone. The tissues may be infiltrated with fat producing "lipoma arborescens." Mechanical insults to these tissues may cause hemorrhage into the joint resulting in deposition of varying amounts of hemosiderin in the synovialis. Free bodies in the joint arising from the synovial membrane, the articular cartilage or by detachment of peripheral excrescences may inflict injury to the synovialis giving rise to traumatic synovitis with effusion which in turn produces hydrops of the intra-articular soft tissue.

With progression of the aforementioned alterations in the hyaline cartilage, the subchondral bone and the capsule, the normal configuration of the joint is altered greatly (Figs 366 and 367). In advanced cases varying degrees of subluxation may

ensue, the capsular tissues are thickened, and the pericapsular tissues are distended and weakened these soft tissue changes may appear not unlike those encountered in rheumatoid arthritis however, one must remember that these two entities are in no way related insofar as etiologic agents are concerned Although the joint changes are responsible for varying amounts of dysfunction, deformity and restricted motion, true fibrous or bony ankylosis does not occur in this disease this is a distinctive feature of degenerative arthritis

#### LOOSE BODIES ASSOCIATED WITH DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

Frequently, loose bodies are encountered in joints affected by degenerative arthritis, these may be single or multiple and may be the products of different modes of genesis They may arise by metaplasia of cells comprising the synovial membrane (osteo-

chondromatosis) or by severance of the base of a marginal osteophyte or by displacement into the joint of loose fragments of articular cartilage As noted previously, regardless of the origin of the free body, its behavior and fate is the same in all instances Those arising from the synovial lining may remain attached to their site of formation, may become pedunculated or may be displaced into the joint cavity Free bodies having an osseous nucleus derive nutrient materials from the synovial fluid which are sufficient to sustain the superficial cartilage layers of the body and even permit proliferation of the cartilage cells so that the body shows progressive increase in size On the other hand the central osseous portion of the body undergoes necrosis and remains in an inert state Microscopic sections of free bodies exhibit a pattern lacking uniformity of structural formation comprising strata of noncalcified cartilage



FIG 367 Far advanced degenerative arthritis of the left knee joint in a woman 62 years old. Observe the marked irregularity of the articular surfaces the subchondral sclerosis the loose body in the anterior aspect of the joint, the retropatellar arthritis and the advanced marginal lipping of the inner tibial condyle.



throughout which layers of irregularly ossified cartilage are interspersed. Also, irregular areas of defective bone may be demonstrable through the layers of cartilage. If the body regains attachment to the synovialis it may be perforated by blood vessels which by creeping substitution transform the dead to living bone.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

The disease rarely affects persons under 40 years of age; however, isolated cases have been recorded in patients in the third decade. The incidence in men and women is approximately the same. The joints most commonly implicated are those most vulnerable to trauma: the weight-bearing joints: the terminal interphalangeal joints, the spine, the hips, the knees and the ankles are most frequently involved. Nodules (Heberden's nodes) observed in the terminal phalanges in elderly people, especially women, are manifestations of degenerative arthritis. Of the weight-bearing joints, the knees are most often implicated.

Although the disorder frequently appears as a mono-articular lesion, several joints in the same individual may be involved. Bilateral involvement of the knees, the hips and the ankles is not an infrequent occurrence. When the malady involves the fingers, usually most or all of the terminal interphalangeal joints are affected.

Comprehension of the pathology observed in degenerative arthritis of the knee joint permits one to evaluate adequately the significance of the signs and symptoms noted in the clinical course of the disease. In general, degenerative changes associated with senescence and not aggravated by major traumas develop slowly but progressively from decade to decade. It is interesting to note the extensive changes that are encountered in the late-age periods of life that are compatible with good function and symptoms of minimal intensity. Lesions initiated by severe violent traumas usually give rise to symptoms earlier than those re-

sulting from microtraumas incident to normal joint motion, but even these may not produce severe clinical manifestations for a period of several years. In the knee joint, derangements of the ligamentous apparatus, the extensor mechanism or repeated episodes of synovitis associated with torn menisci or free bodies are frequently the etiologic factors responsible for repeated traumas which culminate in varying degrees of degenerative arthritis producing marked dysfunction and pain.

In many instances, even in the presence of advanced alterations, the only clinical evidence of the disorder is creaking or snapping sensations in the knee joints. With the quadriceps relaxed, one can elicit crepitus in the patellofemoral joint by moving the patella from side to side while pressing it against the anterior articular surface of the femur. Frequently, particularly in obese women, soft swellings are demonstrable on either side of the patellar tendon; these consist of pads of fatty tissue which are often painful and may be the chief complaint of the patient.

Characteristic of the disease is pain and muscle spasm precipitated by excessive exertion of the joint. Generally, these symptoms are relieved by rest. Most joints exhibit a certain level of painless function; if this level is exceeded, symptoms of varying severity ensue. This observation is significant in formulating a plan of therapy, since, if the tolerance of the affected joint is not exceeded, pain and dysfunction are maintained at a minimum. It was noted previously that fusion of the joint, such as occurs in rheumatoid arthritis, does not occur in degenerative arthritis; however, changes in the configuration of the articular surfaces, spasm and contracture of muscles and fibrosis of capsule and ligaments may seriously impede the normal arcs of motion so that restriction of motion to some degree is a constant concomitant finding in the advanced cases. Palpation of the peripheries of the articular surfaces may reveal loos-



FIG 368 (*Left*) Bilateral degenerative arthritis in a female 64 years old. A synovectomy has been performed on the right knee. Observe the pronounced thickening of the capsular tissues. No other joints were involved in this patient. In this case the soft tissue alterations resemble those encountered in rheumatoid arthritis, whereas the osseous and the cartilaginous changes are typical of degenerative arthritis. Occasionally this variety is referred to as a mixed form of arthritis; however, no element consistent with rheumatoid arthritis was present in this patient. (*Right*) Thickened hyperplastic, edematous, synovial tissue removed from the right knee of patient depicted on the left.

projections, particularly at the poles of the patella and at the upper articular margins of the tibia (Figs. 366 and 367)

Relaxation of the capsular and supportive structures renders the articulation vulnerable to sprains incident to instability of the joint. Occasionally, the degree of relaxation is extensive enough to allow varying degrees of subluxation of the articular surfaces. In advanced cases the associated chronic synovitis may be the source of swelling, synovial effusion and pain (Fig. 368). Pronounced hyperplasia of the capsular tissue and intra-articular fat pads may cause some restriction of motion and also give rise to symp-

toms of internal derangements of the joint when tabs of tissues are trapped between the opposing joint surfaces.

A pertinent clinical characteristic is the absence of systemic manifestations in patients with degenerative arthritis. It was pointed out previously that most of the individuals affected belong to the sthenic type and often are obese. The sedimentation rate and most other laboratory tests are within normal range. In some instances, the blood cholesterol may be elevated and the basal metabolism rate low; the creatin secretion in urine may be increased to a marked degree.

## ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FINDINGS

In the early stages of development of degenerative arthritis of the knee joint the roentgenograms may reveal no significant findings because the pathologic process is confined to the superficial layers of the articular cartilage. This is particularly true in early lesions implicating the patellofemoral joint. In spite of the fact that crepitus can be elicited on physical examination and felt and frequently heard by the patient, roentgenograms fail to depict any abnormalities in the patellofemoral joint. With further progression of the disease some spurring may be demonstrable on the tibial spines, at the poles of the patella and at the tibial margins. Also the joint space may be slightly more narrow than that on the unaffected side and some increase in density may be discernible in the subchondral region of the articular surfaces particularly at the sites of maximum weight bearing. Advanced lesions are recognized readily by roentgenographic study. The joint space is narrowed and the articular surfaces may be irregular. Spurring and lipping of the joint margins are prominent features and marginal ecchondroses and osteophytes and subchondral cysts are readily demonstrable (Fig. 367). In addition some cases may exhibit varying degrees of subluxation of the articular surfaces and marked thickening of the capsular tissues. Occasionally one or more loose bodies are seen in the intercondylar notch or in one of the joint recesses. In elderly individuals the disease may be complicated by rarefaction of the shafts of the bone ends, a feature indicating senile osteoporosis.

## CONSERVATIVE MANAGEMENT

**General Measures.** It is generally accepted that pathologic alterations in degenerative arthritis once established are irreversible. However much can be achieved toward relieving the patient of pain and improving function. This can be achieved by removing mechanical factors which tend

to inflict repeated traumas to the joint, by restoring normal alignment in order to remove all abnormal stresses from the articular surfaces and supportive structures of the joint, by restoring to normal the soft-tissue elements particularly the power and the tone of the quadriceps muscle and finally by improving the general health of the patient by correcting those factors which may contribute to enhancement of the arthritic process such as overweight, poor posture and strenuous occupations.

As pointed out many times in this text it is mandatory that all forms of internal derangements of the knee joint be eliminated in order to preclude development of degenerative arthritis. In those cases in which the disease is already established removal of torn menisci or loose bodies and restoration of normal stability of the joint by improving quadriceps power are essential prerequisites to prevent progression of the pathologic changes. Many cases of degenerative arthritis of the knee joint are improved greatly by these measures. Relaxation and loss of power of the extensor mechanism are relatively frequent concomitant findings in advanced cases. Now the stabilizing effect and the protective influence of a normal quadriceps apparatus are lost and the capsular and the ligamentous apparatus are subjected to microtraumas incident to normal function; also these structures are made more vulnerable to abnormal stresses. All these factors contribute to joint injury and progression of the disease. It becomes obvious that the importance of restoring the quadriceps muscle to maximum power can not be overemphasized.

All abnormal body mechanisms which in any way may subject the affected knee joints to harmful stresses should be improved. This includes unfavorable postural habits, pronated feet, flexion deformities of the hips and any abnormalities of the involved knee joint. Particular attention should be given to the correction of flexion deformities of the affected joint. Even minor

flexion contractures of the knee joint place abnormal, deleterious stresses on its supportive structures and enhance development of degenerative changes, such flexion abnormalities must be corrected. The knee functions at its maximum efficiency without strain only when full extension is achieved readily.

It was recorded previously that rest is an essential factor in the regimen of therapy. The patient must be encouraged to perform nonweight bearing, quadriceps muscle exercises against progressively increasing loads but the tolerance of the muscles never must be exceeded. The same principle is applicable to all other forms of activity if the patient's occupation or work habits are considered as sources of repeated traumas to the joint they must be changed or modified. Obesity, particularly in women is a common contributory factor especially if it is associated with increased deviation of the knee joints although frequently difficult, measures must be taken to eliminate this detrimental influence wholly or in part. Except in the cases of gout, no special diet is indicated for the average individual affected with degenerative arthritis. In general, the problem is the quantity rather than the quality of foods ingested. Of course, unbalanced diets too rich in carbohydrate foods should be changed to diets balanced in all the essential foods, including an adequate intake of vitamins. Thyroid in cases showing evidence of deficiency may be given with advantage, it must be administered under constant medical supervision. Some workers believe that some improvement is observed occasionally in patients with menopausal symptoms when estrogens are prescribed. Patients not responding to the female hormones may be given testosterone evidences of excessive growth of hair indicates that the dose must be reduced or the hormone discontinued. In the author's experience estrogens or androgens have not materially affected the clinical manifestations of degenerative arthritis.

**Local Measures** Radiant heat and massage applied to the muscles above and below the knee joint are beneficial also hot fomentations tend to relieve stiffness and give comfort. Daily underwater massage, such as that provided by the whirlpool bath, should be administered whenever possible, this is an excellent form of therapy to increase local circulation, relieve stiffness and improve muscle tone. Exercises in a tub of heated water (92° F) are beneficial.

Within the past year the author has instilled Hydrocortone (1 cc.) into the joint cavities of individuals with degenerative arthritis. The relief obtained in many individuals is dramatic, whereas prior to the injection of the substance severe pain, swelling and pronounced dysfunction were outstanding features. In some knee joints following the instillation pronounced improvement was discernible to the point that the disease was tolerable and the patient's usefulness enhanced. For the first 3 or 4 doses it is given at weekly intervals the next 3 or 4 doses are given every second or third week depending on the rapidity with which distressing symptoms return. In advanced cases most individuals are maintained on a dose given every 3 or 4 weeks. The author has not encountered any unfavorable sequelae following local administration of Hydrocortone however, such complications have been recorded. It must be remembered that this medication is not a substitute for all the other orthodox methods of therapy discussed previously. So far it should be considered as only another therapeutic aid in the physician's armamentarium.

**Medications.** The only drugs of any value are those capable of relieving the patient's pain during acute exacerbations of the disease. Sodium salicylate (5 gr.) or aspirin given with some antacid as aluminum hydroxide-magnesium trisilicate gels (1 dram) suffices to provide sufficient relief in most cases. It may be taken as frequently as the pain dictates. Occasionally, aspirin (5 or 10

gr) is combined with codeine ( $\frac{1}{2}$  gr) to give the desired effect. More powerful drugs are rarely indicated.

### SURGICAL MEASURES

If amelioration of symptoms and improvement of function are not attained by conservative measures one may resort to certain surgical procedures. Among those which have been accepted as worthy of trial are patellectomy, débridement of the joint as described by Magnuson, arthrodesis and arthroplasty.

**Patellectomy and Chondrectomy.** In cases of severe retropatellar arthritis some authorities advocate patellectomy with good results. In the opinion of the author this procedure should be reserved for cases of long standing with severe degenerative arthritis and with subluxation or dislocation of the patella in which it is technically impossible to restore a remodeled patella to its normal anatomic position on the anterior surface of the femur and stabilize it in this position during knee function. The patella enhances the efficiency of the quadriceps apparatus and in its absence the quadriceps works at a definite mechanical disadvantage. If the articular surface is involved sufficiently to deem surgical intervention justifiable, complete chondrectomy and remodeling of the patella are preferable to excision. The technic of patellectomy is described on page 227, that of chondrectomy on pages 246 to 248. In some cases of subluxated or dislocated patellae if it is possible to remodel the patella or if simple chondrectomy is deemed to be sufficient steps must be taken to prevent the recurrences of the deformities. This is achieved best by transplantation of the tibial tubercle to the medial aspect of the tibia and transference of the tendon of the semitendinosus to the medial side of the patella as described on pages 193 to 195. A median parapatellar incision facilitates the execution of these precautions.

**Remodeling of Patella.** This procedure

is indicated when the surgeon is of the opinion that simple chondrectomy is not sufficient to achieve the desired results. The joint is exposed in a similar manner as when chondrectomy is performed using a median parapatellar incision. The entire articular surface of the patella including a layer of subchondral bone is removed with a thin blade saw, now the patella is reduced to one half its original thickness. Next the entire periphery of the patella is trimmed removing all excrescences. Sufficient bone is cut away until the patella will move up and down the intercondylar surface without obstruction. The raw patellar surface is covered with a layer of fat obtained from the infrapatellar region. Frequently, this procedure is employed by the author in combination with synovectomy and débridement of the knee joint.

Recently the author has been impressed by the results obtained following the replacement of the patella with a vitallium prosthesis designed by D. C. McKeever. The prosthesis can be employed in all cases in which chondrectomy (partial or complete) patellectomy and remodeling of the patella are indicated. The results are so striking that the author has decided to utilize this method. The joint is exposed through a median parapatellar incision and the patella is displaced outward with its articular surface facing upward. The margins of the patella, its articular surface and a portion of the subchondral bone are removed so that the remodeled bone fits perfectly the mold depicted in Figure 194. Next the patellar prosthesis is placed over the reshaped patella and fixed firmly in place by a transfixion screw. By turning the prosthesis 180° it can be used either to replace a right or a left patella. The wound is closed in the usual manner and restoration of function is started immediately within the first 24 or 48 hours. The method should be particularly useful in cases of patellofemoral arthritis.

**Arthrodesis.** Obliteration of the joint space by a bony ankylosis is a useful proce-

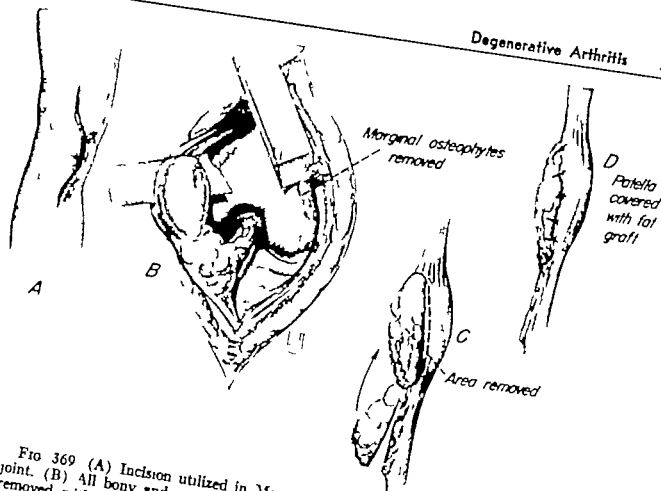


FIG 369 (A) Incision utilized in Magnuson's débridement operation of the knee joint. (B) All bony and cartilaginous excrescences on the femur and the tibia are removed with an osteotome. All diseased cartilage is removed from the femoral condyles and the tibia with a sharp thin blade knife. (C D) The articular surface and part of the subchondral bone of the patella are removed and covered with a layer of fat. If necessary the author also performs a synovectomy and removes the menisci when they are diseased.

dures in cases with severe involvement of a single knee joint particularly when it is essential that the patient be ambulatory or his occupation demands long hours of standing and walking. This method provides a painless useful limb and is recommended in selected cases with profound disintegration of the joint. The many methods of arthrodesis are described in Chapter 13. Surgical Approaches and Procedures the author prefers the compression method.

**Débridement of Knee Joint.** The work of Magnuson and other investigators discloses that the end products of degenerative arthritis particularly peripheral exostosis and echondroses change the mechanics of the affected joint to such a degree that the articulation is constantly subjected to mi-

crotraumas and abnormal stresses. These factors are prone to enhance the pathologic processes already present. In the light of this observation one can conclude reasonably that deletion of the mechanical irritants should result in amelioration of symptoms and improved function. The results obtained by many workers justify this premise. Magnuson in his original article did not recommend removal of the synovialis except in cases of rheumatoid arthritis. However in cases showing advanced proliferation of the synovial lining the author combines Magnuson's procedure with synovectomy. These results have been encouraging; the procedure relieves pain and restores useful motion even in knee joints exhibiting profound destruction of the articular surfaces.

of the femur the tibia and the patella. The denuded articular areas eventually are covered completely with fibrocartilage which forms a smooth gliding surface and permits free unobstructed motion. In addition, deletion of the mechanical irritants deters the progression of the pathologic processes and in some instances stops the progression of the disease.

The author employs this procedure also in cases often designated as "mixed arthritis." These articulations exhibit all the cartilaginous and osseous features of degenerative arthritis and the thickened, hyperplastic synovial membrane encountered in rheumatoid arthritis. These joints may represent the end products of a simple chronic villous synovitis which eventually induced secondary joint changes consistent with degenerative arthritis. The true pathogenesis and the etiologic factors responsible for this lesion are not clear; occasionally the disorder involves both knee joints (Fig. 368).

The operation is performed under a tourniquet; the joint is exposed through a long medial parapatellar incision (Fig. 369). The medial attachment of the quadriceps is detached from the patellar attachment and the patella is displaced laterally. By flexing the knee joint the anterior and inferior aspects of the femoral condyles and the superior surface of the tibia are brought into view. With a thin bladed osteotome all osseous and osseocartilaginous growths are removed from the periphery of the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles. Next with a long thin blade knife all defective cartilage is shaved from the articular surfaces, taking care not to make transverse ridges or furrows in the cartilage which may act as obstructions to free motion. It may be necessary to remove degenerated cartilage as far as the subchondral bone. The articular surface of the patella is removed by a thin blade osteotome or a saw and its length and width are reduced so that it moves freely on the articular surfaces of the femur. The raw surface of the patella is covered with a layer

of fat obtained from the infrapatellar fat pad (It appears to the author that the use of a patellar prosthesis may be a useful addition to this procedure).

All degenerated cartilage on the upper surface of the tibia is excised and the remaining surfaces are made smooth; the menisci are removed only if they show degeneration. Likewise exostoses at the articular margin of the tibia are removed and all rough spicules and projections are leveled off. If the synovial lining is thickened and edematous synovectomy is performed. As much of the synovial lining as is accessible is removed. Generally, it is not necessary to remove the membrane in the posterior recesses of the joint. Débridement is now complete; the wound is closed in layers in the usual manner. A snug compression bandage is applied, holding the knee in extension. The limb is elevated for several days on a balanced suspension frame. Traction to the lower leg may be applied, but the author has not found this precaution to be necessary.

**Postoperative Management.** This is an essential part of the treatment. Quadriceps drill is started on the second or the third day. This is followed by straight leg raising exercises against elastic resistance and later against increasing loads. On the tenth to the fourteenth day weight-bearing is started with crutches. Unprotected weight bearing is not allowed until the quadriceps has attained good power and tone. Physical measures in the form of heat, massage, whirlpool and underwater exercises enhance restoration of function and decrease the period of convalescence. If the patient achieves 90° flexion and complete extension the result from a clinical and functional viewpoint must be considered good.

**Arthroplasty.** It was noted previously that true fibrous or bony ankylosis does not occur in degenerative arthritis except in cases initiated by severe trauma that causes marked comminution of the articular surfaces. knee over the de-

generative alterations in some joints is so severe that little or no healthy articular cartilage remains on the articular surfaces and the marginal exostoses may greatly impede a useful range of motion. In such instances, if there are no contraindications, an arthroplasty may be performed. At this point it must be emphasized again that in unilateral involvement in men engaged in occupations requiring long periods of standing and walking an arthrodesis of the knee joint, if acceptable to the patient, is preferable to arthroplasty. Arthroplasties in general and the different technics are discussed in detail in Chapter 13 "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." The operation described by Kuhns et al. has given good results. These workers use nylon as the interposition membrane. Other workers employing nylon also recommend highly its use for this purpose. The author is impressed with this method and has used it in 3 cases. The operation is described on page 575.

#### ROENTGEN THERAPY IN DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

The literature contains reports of cases of degenerative arthritis benefited by irradiation. In advanced cases of degenerative arthritis of the knee joints, mechanical disalignment caused by marginal exostoses and ecchondroses, loose bodies and incongruity of articular surfaces are the prime factors for propagation of the disease and accentuation of the symptoms. Roentgen therapy offers little toward the correction of these conditions. The author never has been impressed by the results of this form of therapy. However, some observers report a high incidence of good results in properly selected cases; they claim that the treatment has an analgesic effect and is indicated in cases with persistent stiffness and pain.

#### ANKYLOSIS OF KNEE JOINT FOLLOWING SEVERE TRAUMA

In contrast with minor or microtraumas which initiate degenerative arthritis, occa-



FIG. 370 Severe comminuted fracture of the tibial plateau. This patient had no free motion. An arthrodesis was performed, at operation a fibrous ankylosis was encountered.

sionally severe violence may produce so much joint damage that the stage is set for the development of fibrous or bony ankylosis. Such injuries occur more frequently than is generally realized. Essentially, the trauma produces comminution of the articular surfaces of one or both bones comprising the joint; the articular surfaces are often compressed and telescoped into the cancellous bone; such injuries implicate the tibial plateaus more frequently than the femoral condyles. Ankylosis may follow dislocations in which there is severe disruption of the ligamentous apparatus and severe



of the femur, the tibia and the patella. The denuded articular areas eventually are covered completely with fibrocartilage which forms a smooth, gliding surface and permits free unobstructed motion. In addition, deletion of the mechanical irritants deters the progression of the pathologic processes and in some instances stops the progression of the disease.

The author employs this procedure also in cases often designated as "mixed arthritis." These articulations exhibit all the cartilaginous and osseous features of degenerative arthritis and the thickened hyperplastic synovial membrane encountered in rheumatoid arthritis. These joints may represent the end products of a simple chronic villous synovitis which eventually induced secondary joint changes consistent with degenerative arthritis. The true pathogenesis and the etiologic factors responsible for this lesion are not clear; occasionally the disorder involves both knee joints (Fig. 368).

The operation is performed under a tourniquet; the joint is exposed through a long medial parapatellar incision (Fig. 369). The medial attachment of the quadriceps is detached from the patellar attachment, and the patella is displaced laterally. By flexing the knee joint the anterior and inferior aspects of the femoral condyles and the superior surface of the tibia are brought into view. With a thin bladed osteotome all osseous and osseocartilaginous growths are removed from the periphery of the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles. Next with a long thin blade knife all defective cartilage is shaved from the articular surfaces, taking care not to make transverse ridges or furrows in the cartilage which may act as obstructions to free motion. It may be necessary to remove degenerated cartilage as far as the subchondral bone. The articular surface of the patella is removed by a thin blade osteotome or a saw and its length and width are reduced so that it moves freely on the articular surfaces of the femur. The raw surface of the patella is covered with a layer

of fat obtained from the infrapatellar fat pad (It appears to the author that the use of a patellar prosthesis may be a useful addition to this procedure).

All degenerated cartilage on the upper surface of the tibia is excised and the remaining surfaces are made smooth; the menisci are removed only if they show degeneration. Likewise, exostoses at the articular margin of the tibia are removed, and all rough spicules and projections are leveled off. If the synovial lining is thickened and edematous, synovectomy is performed. As much of the synovial lining as is accessible is removed. Generally, it is not necessary to remove the membrane in the posterior recesses of the joint. Débridement is now complete; the wound is closed in layers in the usual manner. A snug compression bandage is applied, holding the knee in extension. The limb is elevated for several days on a balanced suspension frame. Traction to the lower leg may be applied, but the author has not found this precaution to be necessary.

**Postoperative Management.** This is an essential part of the treatment. Quadriceps drill is started on the second or the third day. This is followed by straight leg raising exercises against elastic resistance and later against increasing loads. On the tenth to the fourteenth day weight bearing is started with crutches. Unprotected weight bearing is not allowed until the quadriceps has attained good power and tone. Physical measures in the form of heat, massage, whirlpool and underwater exercises enhance restoration of function and decrease the period of convalescence. If the patient achieves 90° flexion and complete extension the result from a clinical and functional viewpoint must be considered good.

**Arthroplasty.** It was noted previously that true fibrous or bony ankylosis does not occur in degenerative arthritis except in cases initiated by severe trauma that causes marked comminution of the articular surfaces of the knee joint. However, the de-

generative alterations in some joints is so severe that little or no healthy articular cartilage remains on the articular surfaces, and the marginal exostoses may greatly impede a useful range of motion. In such instances, if there are no contraindications, an arthroplasty may be performed. At this point it must be emphasized again that in unilateral involvement in men engaged in occupations requiring long periods of standing and walking an arthrodesis of the knee joint if acceptable to the patient, is preferable to arthroplasty. Arthroplasties in general and the different techniques are discussed in detail in Chapter 13 "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." The operation described by Kuhns et al. has given good results. These workers use nylon as the interposition membrane. Other workers employing nylon also recommend highly its use for this purpose. The author is impressed with this method and has used it in 3 cases. The operation is described on page 575.

#### ROENTGEN THERAPY IN DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

The literature contains reports of cases of degenerative arthritis benefited by irradiation. In advanced cases of degenerative arthritis of the knee joints, mechanical disalignment caused by marginal exostoses and ecchondroses, loose bodies and incongruity of articular surfaces are the prime factors for propagation of the disease and accentuation of the symptoms. Roentgen therapy offers little toward the correction of these conditions. The author never has been impressed by the results of this form of therapy. However, some observers report a high incidence of good results in properly selected cases. They claim that the treatment has an analgesic effect and is indicated in cases with persistent stiffness and pain.

#### ANKYLOSIS OF KNEE JOINT FOLLOWING SEVERE TRAUMA

In contrast with minor or microtraumas which initiate degenerative arthritis, occa-



FIG. 370 Severe comminuted fracture of the tibial plateau. This patient had no free motion. An arthrodesis was performed at operation; a fibrous ankylosis was encountered.

sionally severe violence may produce so much joint damage that the stage is set for the development of fibrous or bony ankylosis. Such injuries occur more frequently than is generally realized. Essentially, the trauma produces comminution of the articular surfaces of one or both bones comprising the joint. The articular surfaces are often compressed and telescoped into the cancellous bone. Such injuries implicate the tibial plateaus more frequently than the femoral condyles. Ankylosis may follow dislocations in which there is severe disruption of the ligamentous apparatus and severe

femur, the tibia and the patella. The articular areas eventually are completely with fibrocartilage which is smooth, gliding surface and permits unobstructed motion. In addition the removal of the mechanical irritants deters the development of the pathologic processes and in many instances stops the progression of the disease.

The author employs this procedure also in the treatment of the knee joint, which is often designated as "mixed arthritis." These articulations exhibit all the characteristics of the articular surfaces and osseous features of degenerative arthritis and the thickened hyperplastic synovial membrane encountered in rheumatoid arthritis. These joints may represent the end products of a simple chronic villous synovitis which eventually induced secondary changes consistent with degenerative arthritis. The true pathogenesis and etiologic factors responsible for this lesion are not clear; occasionally the disorder involves both knee joints (Fig. 368).

Operation is performed under a tourniquet. The joint is exposed through a long infrapatellar incision (Fig. 369). The attachment of the quadriceps is detached from the patellar attachment, and the patella is displaced laterally. By flexing the joint the anterior and inferior aspects of the femoral condyles and the superior surface of the tibia are brought into view. With a thin bladed osteotome all osseous and osseocartilaginous growths are removed from the periphery of the articular surface of the femoral condyles. Next with a thin-blade knife all defective cartilage is shaved from the articular surfaces. Care is taken not to make transverse ridges or grooves in the cartilage which may act as obstructions to free motion. It may be necessary to remove degenerated cartilage as far as the subchondral bone. The articular surface of the patella is removed by a thin osteotome or a saw, and its length and width are reduced so that it moves freely on the articular surfaces of the femur. The raw surface of the patella is covered with a layer

of fat obtained from the infrapatellar fat pad (it appears to the author that the use of a patellar prosthesis may be a useful addition to this procedure).

All degenerated cartilage on the upper surface of the tibia is excised, and the remaining surfaces are made smooth. The menisci are removed only if they show degeneration. Likewise exostoses at the articular margin of the tibia are removed and all rough spicules and projections are leveled off. If the synovial lining is thickened and edematous synovectomy is performed. As much of the synovial lining as is accessible is removed. Generally it is not necessary to remove the membrane in the posterior recesses of the joint. Débridement is now complete; the wound is closed in layers in the usual manner. A snug compression bandage is applied, holding the knee in extension. The limb is elevated for several days on a balanced suspension frame. Traction to the lower leg may be applied, but the author has not found this precaution to be necessary.

**Postoperative Management.** This is an essential part of the treatment. Quadriceps drill is started on the second or the third day. This is followed by straight leg raising exercises against elastic resistance and later against increasing loads. On the tenth to the fourteenth day weight-bearing is started with crutches. Unprotected weight bearing is not allowed until the quadriceps has attained good power and tone. Physical measures in the form of heat, massage, whirlpool and underwater exercises enhance restoration of function and decrease the period of convalescence. If the patient achieves 90° flexion and complete extension the result from a clinical and functional viewpoint must be considered good.

**Arthroplasty.** It was noted previously that true fibrous or bony ankylosis does not occur in degenerative arthritis except in cases initiated by severe trauma that causes marked comminution of the articular surfaces of the knee joint. However, the de-

generative alterations in some joints is so severe that little or no healthy articular cartilage remains on the articular surfaces, and the marginal exostoses may greatly impede a useful range of motion. In such instances, if there are no contraindications, an arthroplasty may be performed. At this point it must be emphasized again that in unilateral involvement in men engaged in occupations requiring long periods of standing and walking, an arthrodesis of the knee joint, if acceptable to the patient, is preferable to arthroplasty. Arthroplasties in general and the different technics are discussed in detail in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." The operation described by Kuhns et al. has given good results. These workers use nylon as the interposition membrane; other workers employing nylon also recommend highly its use for this purpose. The author is impressed with this method and has used it in 3 cases. The operation is described on page 575.

#### ROENTGEN THERAPY IN DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

The literature contains reports of cases of degenerative arthritis benefited by irradiation. In advanced cases of degenerative arthritis of the knee joints, mechanical disalignment caused by marginal exostoses and ecchondroses, loose bodies and incongruity of articular surfaces are the prime factors for propagation of the disease and accentuation of the symptoms. Roentgen therapy offers little toward the correction of these conditions. The author never has been impressed by the results of this form of therapy. However, some observers report a high incidence of good results in properly selected cases; they claim that the treatment has an analgesic effect and is indicated in cases with persistent stiffness and pain.

#### ANKYLOSIS OF KNEE JOINT FOLLOWING SEVERE TRAUMA

In contrast with minor or microtraumas which initiate degenerative arthritis, occa-



FIG. 370 Severe comminuted fracture of the tibial plateau. This patient had no free motion. An arthrodesis was performed at operation; a fibrous ankylosis was encountered.

sionally severe violence may produce so much joint damage that the stage is set for the development of fibrous or bony ankylosis. Such injuries occur more frequently than is generally realized. Essentially, the trauma produces comminution of the articular surfaces of one or both bones comprising the joint; the articular surfaces are often compressed and telescoped into the cancellous bone; such injuries implicate the tibial plateaus more frequently than the femoral condyles. Ankylosis may follow in locations in which there is severe disruption of the ligamentous apparatus and severe

compound fractures with or without second ary infection

Essentially, ankylosis is the product of an active reparative process which follows severe joint fractures. Invariably the joint is distended with blood some of which is not absorbed and is the basis for the formation of adhesions. Granulation tissue grows from the subchondral marrow spaces beneath the fractured surfaces and projects into the joint cavity to meet similar tissue formed on the opposing articular surface. Reparative tissue also arises in great abundance from damaged ligaments, capsule and synovialis. This tissue forms a panus over the articular surfaces absorbing hyaline cartilage and uniting the two bone ends by young connective tissue. With maturation of the granulation tissue stout fibrous adhesions are formed producing a true fibrous ankylosis. Concurrently similar changes occur at the periphery of the joint where the synovial membrane is active in the formation of numerous binding fibrous adhesions. In addition the suprapatellar pouch the posterior and the lateral synovial recesses are obliterated and coalesce into a single mass of fibrous tissue (Fig. 370). Occasionally the process goes one step further—the fibrous tissue undergoes ossification and a bony ankylosis is established.

Comprehension of the aforementioned process makes it apparent that long periods of immobilization enhance ankylosis of the knee joint when traumatized severely. On the other hand early motion tends to prevent the formation of intra articular adhesions. Fibrous ankylosis may permit a small range of motion which usually is painful. bony ankylosis is not painful but the joint may not be in the most useful position of function. It becomes obvious that when a knee joint has sustained severe intra articular fractures every effort should be made to institute early motion if no contra indications exist. Traction methods which allow motion are far superior to complete immobilization of the limb in a plaster cast.

When ankylosis of the knee appears to be inevitable the limb should be immobilized in the position of function usually 10 to 12 of flexion. Once ankylosis is established joint motion can be restored only by performing an arthroplasty. The results of arthroplasties performed for cases with post traumatic bony ankylosis are better than arthroplasties performed on knees with chronic arthritis.

Fibrous ankylosis complete or partial, is often observed in the knee joint following injuries at a distance from the joint when protracted immobilization of the limb is necessary to achieve healing of the injured part. The problems of the stiff knee are discussed in Chapter 10.

### MENOPAUSAL ARTHRITIS

That degenerative arthritis often makes its appearance or if present is accentuated during the menopause cannot be denied. The symptoms observed at the climacteric period have been responsible for incrimination of the ovaries, the anterior pituitary and even the thyroid glands as the causative agents. However no convincing evidence has been produced to justify any true relationship between dysfunction of the endocrine system and rheumatic manifestations observed in or about the menopause. On the continent many observers are of the opinion that menopausal arthritis is a distinct form of arthritis apart from degenerative arthritis. In America most workers are of the opinion that the disorder is degenerative arthritis developing during the menopausal years. It may well be that obesity so frequently observed in the climacteric years may play a role in development of the disease, the knees and the spine are affected most commonly.

Menopausal arthralgia must not be confused with arthritis. The symptoms are recognized as menopausal manifestations, they are not confined to the joint per se but implicate connective and muscle tissue in

general particularly in the region of the neck, the shoulders and the lower back. This form of arthralgia responds quickly to the administration of estrogens

### HEMOPHILIC ARTHRITIS

Hemophilia is a hemorrhagic diatheses which is transmitted to the males by the females. The hereditary and familial characteristics of this disease have been recognized for many centuries, however, inheritance in many cases cannot be ascertained because the trait has been transmitted through several generations of women. The pertinent features of the malady are failure of the blood to clot and prolonged bleeding time. Quick proposes that lack of thromboplastinogen is the etiologic factor responsible for the disease and believes that the most accurate test of hemophilia is the determination of thromboplastinogen by estimating the prothrombin consumption time.

Bleeding into the joints is a common concomitant manifestation of the disease. Hemarthrosis may be spontaneous or may

follow varying degrees of trauma. Frequently, minor traumas may initiate massive bleeding into a joint cavity. The tendency to bleeding is usually recognized after the period of infancy. During this time the child is carefully protected from any form of injury; hence the purpuric tendency may not be recognized. Hemarthroses usually have their onset between the ages of 4 and 10 years. As noted previously, the bleeding may be spontaneous or may be precipitated by trauma. Trauma in this period of life plays an important role. The parents must restrain constantly the child's activities in order to keep the incidence of trauma at a minimum. Generally the weight bearing joints are involved most frequently, the knee is implicated most often, but all joints of the body may be affected. As the child approaches adulthood there is a tendency for hemophilia to improve. Unfortunately joints, particularly the knee, that have been frequent sites of hemorrhages develop irreversible articular changes which produce severe and permanent dysfunction. Occasionally, hemarthrosis is the first clinical manifestation of the disorder.

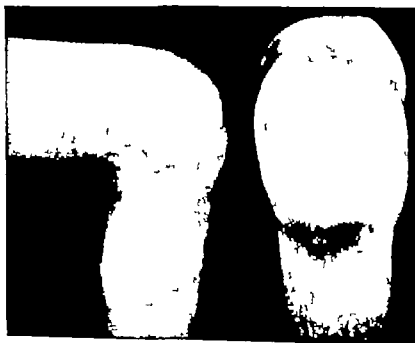


FIG. 371. Massive intra-articular hemorrhage of the knee joint of a boy 9 years old. Note the marked distention of the capsule and the pericapsular tissues.



FIG 372 Recent hemorrhage in the knee joint of a boy 8 years old. Observe that (1) The distended capsule is visualized distinctly (2) The blood casts a shadow denser than the surrounding tissues (3) The suprapatellar pouch and the posterior portion of the capsule are distended (4) The articular cartilaginous elements show no significant alterations

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

The manifestations are governed by the amount of bleeding into the joint. In most instances traumas of varying degrees are followed by rapid swelling of the joint. Invariably in large hemorrhages there is intense pain and muscle spasm fixing the knee in a flexed position. Massive intra-articular hemorrhages may cause marked distention of the capsule and the pericapsular tissues. In such cases the knee is hot and the skin is stretched and sensitive (Fig 371). In rare instances the capsule may rupture and the blood infiltrates the

soft tissues. If bleeding continues, the constant pressure on the soft tissues may result in massive sloughs of all the layers covering the anterior surface of the knee joint. This sequence of events occurred in Case J. C. (Fig 199), necessitating block excision of the necrotic tissue. The denuded area was covered with split thickness grafts (Fig 200). Fortunately such cases as the one cited are rare. In most instances mild extracapsular hemorrhages occur, producing purplish discoloration of the periarticular tissues. Some systemic reaction is usually present and is manifest by slight elevation of the temperature and a high leukocyte count. Usually the coagulation time is elevated.

Roentgenographic study in the early stages of the disease shows no significant finding in the bony and the cartilaginous elements of the joint. In the presence of a hemarthrosis the capsule is visualized distinctly. It is distended with blood which casts a denser shadow than the surrounding periarticular structures. The outline of the joint recesses are discernible (Fig 372).

#### PATHOLOGIC ALTERATIONS IN JOINT CONSTITUENTS

All the intra-articular structures the synovialis and the capsule exhibit deleterious effects produced by repeated hemorrhages and increased intracapsular tension associated with massive hemarthroses. The products of disintegrated blood cells are irritants to the delicate synovial membrane. During an episode of bleeding the synovialis becomes impregnated with blood pigment. First, it is yellowish in color. Later it becomes reddish brown. The response of the synovialis to repeated hemarthroses is evident in the formation of numerous villi and hyperplasia of all its layers. Following the first few hemorrhages into the joint the synovial tissue returns to normalcy. However after numerous episodes it becomes hyperplastic and thickened by fibrous tissue. Likewise the subsynovial stratum

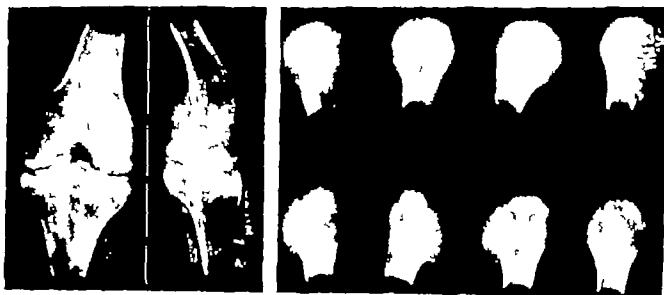


FIG 373 (Left) Roentgenogram of the knee joint of a hemophilic, aged 22 (postmortem specimen). Observe the areas of thinned cartilage the punched-out areas in the subchondral bone and the subchondral sclerosis of the lateral femoral and the lateral tibial condyles. Some marginal proliferation in the form of bony spurs is also discernible. (Right) The left (top) unaffected and the right (bottom) affected shoulder of the same individual. The right shoulder reveals advanced destructive changes the subchondral cysts are visualized clearly.

shows an active reparative process. It too becomes thickened by fibrous tissue and is impregnated with blood pigments and iron. Macrophages containing iron and other elements of red blood cells are demonstrable in the subsynovial tissue.

Although little change is evident in the articular cartilage in the early stages of the disease, repeated hemarthroses are associated with degenerative alterations in the cartilage. It is believed that the blood displaces the synovial fluid which is the source of nutrient materials for the articular cartilage. Increased intra-articular pressure also plays a role in initiating these changes. In addition, the author is of the opinion that hemophilic blood may contain some toxic element which has an affinity for hyaline cartilage and in a measure enhances destruction of this tissue. This concept is now under investigation; the results of which will be reported later. Areas of cartilage are thinned; later erosion of the articular structure is discernible; these areas appear to be punched out and frequently extend deeply

into the subchondral bone (Fig 373). They are observed both in nonweight bearing as well as weight bearing areas.

In cases of long standing in which repeated episodes have occurred, the cancellous bone becomes porotic. However, areas of subchondral sclerosis are noted at points of maximum weight bearing. Formation of subchondral cysts is characteristic of hemophilic arthritis. Key proposed that these cysts represent localized hemorrhages in the subchondral bone; the bony trabeculae within the hematoma first undergo aseptic necrosis; later, resorption takes place. This process results in the formation of bone cysts varying in size but rarely exceeding 1 cm. in diameter, which are readily discernible on roentgenograms. Marginal proliferation in the form of bony spurs is encountered in old cases; essentially, they are similar to peripheral osteophytes observed in degenerative arthritis which develop after repeated trauma to the cartilaginous surface (Fig 374). Roentgenographic study reveals the spotty, irregular destruction of the articular



ular surfaces especially of the tibial plateau a feature highly typical of hemophilic arthritis. Marginal erosions in the bone at the line of attachment of the capsule are observed frequently.

Although osseous ankylosis is rare in hemophilia fibrous ankylosis is encountered frequently. Careful study of four knee joints obtained postmortem from four different individuals in which the process in the affected knees had progressed to fibrous ankylosis revealed some significant information. The entire joint cavity is obliterated by firm tenacious fibrous adhesions stretching from the articular surfaces of the tibia to the opposing surfaces of the femoral condyles. All the joint recesses are obliterated by a dense mass of fibrous tissue. After the bone ends were forced apart the articular surfaces were found to be covered by a thick panus which grew from the subchondral bone through crevices between areas of deteriorated hyaline cartilage. The fibrous tissue within the joint was reddish brown in

color as were the remaining isles of hyaline cartilage. So firm were the adhesions binding the femur the tibia and the patella together that considerable force was expended to flex the knee joint. In fact it was necessary to cut some of the adhesions with a scalpel (Fig. 375).

#### FLEXION DEFORMITIES

Following repeated episodes of hemarthrosis frequently varying degrees of flexion deformities are encountered. In the beginning during an acute bout of bleeding the knee assumes the position of flexion because this is the position of comfort and also because when the capsule is distended completely normally the joint is forced into flexion. In addition spasm of the hamstrings tends to maintain the deformity. If recovery after each attack is delayed or if management during the episode is inadequate fibrosis in the posterior portion of the capsule and contracture of hamstrings ensue. The author has had under treatment



FIG. 374. Right knee joint of a hemophiliac, 36 years old. Note the decreased medial joint space and the irregularity of the opposing articular surfaces of the medial joint space; also note the marginal proliferation. These features are not unlike those noted in degenerative arthritis.

numerous cases ranging in age from 5 to 15 years with resistant flexion contractures of one knee joint. Inasmuch as these patients walked with the knee flexed, the knee, as well as the hip and the ankle on the same side, were subjected constantly to abnormal stresses which made the joints vulnerable to repeated hemorrhages. It becomes apparent that every effort should be made to prevent flexion contractures of the knee joint; these are the most difficult forms of deformities to correct, since open operation is prohibited except under unusual circumstances and because even minor forces may precipitate a new hemarthrosis.

#### MANAGEMENT

**Recent Hemarthrosis.** One must bear in mind that most hemarthroses occur spontaneously, and occasionally the knee or some other joint may be one of several sites of bleeding concurrently. In one case, hemarthrosis of the elbow was the reason for bringing the child to the hospital, on admission a massive hemothorax was found which could not be controlled for several days; during this interval the child was almost exsanguinated. It becomes obvious that a search for other bleeding sites is essential before local treatment to the affected knee is started.

Up to very recently the author employed the orthodox methods of treatment in these cases which comprise enforced rest, compression bandages and application of cold compresses. Small transfusions of 200 cc. of whole blood given daily or every second day until bleeding is controlled is a valuable therapeutic measure. The value of endocrine preparations to control hemorrhage is questionable.

Within the past year the author has been impressed by the use of hyaluronidase in promoting rapid absorption of the hemarthrosis, relieving pain and muscle spasm and permitting free, painless motion in the affected joint within a period of 24 to 48 hours after injection. Rapid dispersal of



FIG 375 Knee joint of a hemophiliac, aged 27 (postmortem specimen). The inner joint cavity is obliterated by tough fibrous adhesions stretching between the all-opposing articular surfaces. Likewise, the joint recesses are obliterated by dense fibrous tissue. The bone ends are covered by a thick pannus growing through crevices between areas of degenerative hyaline cartilage. The process is comparable with fibrous ankylosis of the knee joint. In addition the pericapsular tissues were markedly thickened and showed advanced fibrosis.

blood in a joint not only prevents proliferative changes in the synovials and degenerative changes in the articular cartilage but it also prevents flexion contractures of the knee joint subsequent to fibrosis induced by long periods of immobilization.

The efficacy of this method is based on the physiologic action of hyaluronidase. This enzyme acts on the ground substance in the intercellular substrate; it induces depolymerization of the principal element of the ground substance which is the mucopolysaccharide hyaluronic acid. With depolymerization of this substance interchange and dispersion of tissue fluids are enhanced; this process is aided further by the application of external pressure. Hyaluronidase acts in other ways: (1) it decreases the viscosity of the synovial fluid by acting on the hyaluronic acid and (2) it increases the permeability of the synovial membrane. From the aforementioned observations it becomes obvious that the enzyme will accelerate absorption of blood from a joint; this observation was recorded by Britton and Habib. The results reported by MacAusland and Gartland and those observed on the Jefferson Orthopedic and Medical Wards following the injection of hyaluronidase in acute hemarthrosis justify the author in recommending its use particularly in hemarthrosis in the hemophilic patient.

The following technic is employed. After the diagnosis of an acute hemarthrosis is established and the usual routine blood studies are completed, steps are taken to reduce the clotting time and stop bleeding by the administration of plasma or fresh whole blood. Under aseptic technic 4 or 5 cc. of blood is aspirated with the same needle *in situ*. 1,000 units of hyaluronidase mixed with 1 per cent procaine is injected into the joint cavity. The amount of fluid instilled into the joint is equal to the amount of blood withdrawn, usually 4 or 5 cc. The joint is not evacuated at the time of apiration. At the termination of

the instillation a sterile pad of gauze is pressed firmly against the puncture site; then a snug fitting elastic bandage is applied to make uniform pressure. The joint is placed at complete rest for 24 hours; at the end of this period the limb is re-evaluated. If swelling, pain and spasm are still predominant features, the injection is repeated.

Generally at the end of the first 24-hour period distention is reduced markedly; muscle spasm is minimal and pain is relieved to a great extent or even absent. At the end of the second 24-hour period pain is relieved completely and a free range of active and passive motion is present which generally is equal to the range prior to the onset of the hemarthrosis. Unrestricted motion in the upper limb and weight bearing on the lower is permitted at the end of the 48-hour period. It is obvious that such rapid absorption of blood precludes the formation of villous synovitis; also, the deleterious effect of blood on the cartilage and the subchondral bone is minimized and the processes leading to arthritis and fibrosis of soft tissues with contractures are aborted or retarded.

**Fixed Contractures in Hemophilic Arthritis.** As noted previously every effort must be expended to prevent even minor flexion deformities of the knee joints. When present they must be corrected in order to preclude abnormal stresses on an already damaged joint. Minor deformities may be corrected by the turnbuckle method as described on page 568. However great care must be utilized; one must proceed cautiously and slowly. When correction has been achieved it can be maintained by the use of a celluloid cylinder until muscle power is adequate to stabilize the joint and protect it from trauma incident to normal function. The same method is employed in more severe deformities. It has been the author's experience that in most cases in the latter group posterior subluxation of the tibia invariably occurs. In many joints the

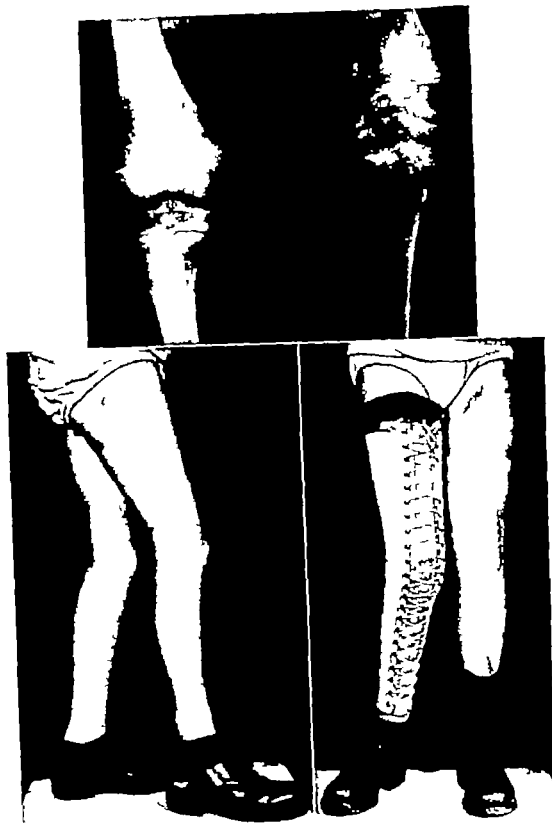


FIG 376 (Top) Hemophiliac with severe cartilaginous alterations of the right knee joint. observe the thin joint spaces, the irregularity of the articular surfaces and the marked osteoporosis of the femur and the tibia. (Bottom left) This patient has a fixed flexion contracture of the joint with external rotation of the tibia. no more than  $10^{\circ}$  to  $12^{\circ}$  of motion were demonstrable passively or actively. (Bottom right) Same patient wearing a celluloid cylinder for protection. Further correction of the joint is not possible. surgical intervention is contraindicated.



FIG 377 (A) Unusual case of severe gout in a Negro aged 37. Note the tophi in the ear.

subluxation is present before correction is attempted and it is complicated further by external rotation of the tibia resulting from contractures of the tensor fascia lata and the biceps femoris muscle. In these cases the tibial deformity must be accepted because the hemorrhagic diathesis of the patient precludes any more drastic methods such as compound traction, posterior capsulotomy or capsuloplasty. When the alterations of the joint components are severe and at best only a few degrees of motion in the knee joint can be anticipated, the author is of the opinion that ankylosis of the knee in the position of function should be the aim of the treatment. This can be achieved by immobilization of the limb in a celluloid cylinder until ankylosis is complete. Surgical arthrodesis is contraindicated (Fig. 376).

### GOUT

Gout has been recorded in the earliest

medical literature. The significance of uric acid in the disease was first recognized in 1776 by Scheele and Bergman. Although Sydenham was aware that gout and rheumatoid arthritis were two different entities, it was Heberden who recorded the cardinal features separating the two diseases. In 1847 Garrod demonstrated increased uric acid in the blood of patients affected with gout. It is difficult to determine the true incidence of gout in patients with arthritic complaints; the figures vary for 2 to 5 per cent. It is generally accepted that gout is a disease of people living in abundance of food and drink and engaged in sedentary occupations. Gout is predominately encountered in males; the incidence in males in the numerous series reported ranges from 93 to 98 per cent.

That gout is a hereditary disease is established; the tendency is most likely transmitted by the females in spite of the fact that they themselves rarely show clinical manifestations. It has been recorded that approximately 25 per cent of relatives of a gouty patient showing no clinical symptoms of the disease have hyperuricemia. Essentially gout is a disease of adult males, although it is observed occasionally in elderly women; in men it is usually noted between the ages of 30 and 50 years, however cases have been recorded in children under 10 years. Negroes are rarely affected, yet the most severe case of gout that the author has encountered was in a Negro 37 years of age (Fig. 377); the process had been active for 10 years and resisted all forms of therapy.

### ETIOLOGY

The etiology of gout is not known, however some evidence points to the possibility that androgenic activity may be closely related to gout. In support of this premise Traut points to the predilection of men to develop gout; the disease is rarely observed before puberty, when found in women it tends to be manifest at the climacteric and it is rarely encountered in eunuchs. Also in both males and females the hyperuricemia

usually develops during the period of life characterized by a relative increase in an *drogen* unantagonized by *estrogen*" This observer further noted that "gouty androgen" is presumed to originate in the adrenal cortex. The cholesterol falls in prodromal periods of gouty arthritis corresponding to increased activity of the adrenal cortex. All concede that gout is a manifestation of disturbed metabolism of uric acid however, the mechanism responsible for this meta

bolic abnormality is highly speculative. One would expect that elevations in the uric acid content in the blood invariably would initiate an acute episode this, however, is not the case hyperuricemia may be present for many months and even years without clinical manifestations Uric acid in man represents the end product of purin metabolism, unfortunately, man and the anthropoid apes lack the mechanism to synthesize this substance as is done in lower animals through



FIG. 377 (B and C) Same case exhibiting severe deformities of the lower and the upper extremities

the medium of the enzyme uricase. Normally, uric acid which is a threshold substance is eliminated by the glomeruli and reabsorbed in part by the tubules of the kidneys. It appears that in gout the hyperuricemia may be in a measure the result of excessive reabsorption by the kidney tubules; this tendency discloses the affinity that renal tissue has for urates. Evidence at hand indicates that in the gouty, an abnormal tendency exists to deposit urates in the mesenchymal tissues. In uncomplicated gout retention of uric acid occurs prior to an acute episode; this is followed by increased excretion during and retention following the attack. Other nitrogenous products are not increased in the blood. This is in contrast with old cases of gout with varying degrees of renal damage in which all the nitrogenous blood constituents, especially urea and creatine, are increased. Increase in the amount of uric acid in the blood does not govern the deposition of urates in tissues; hyperuricemia may be present for years without clinical manifestation in the mesenchymal tissues. Accumulating evidence suggests that some hormonal influence is responsible for the behavior of uric acid in the blood. The increase in uric acid excretion following administration of ACTH

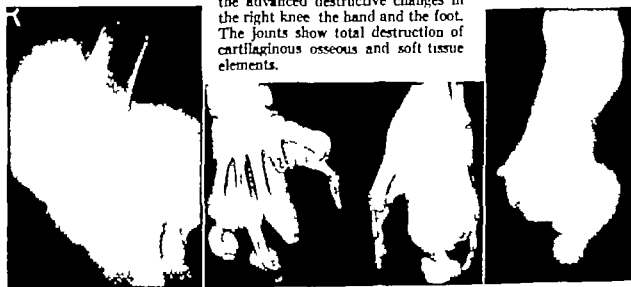
indicates that in some way the adrenal cortex may be the governing agent.

It is believed that change of the colloidal state of uric acid in the blood is responsible for its crystallization and deposition in fixed tissues. There is a close relation between the concentration of the purin in colloidal state and the content of sodium chloride present; the higher the concentration of the sodium salt the less the ability to maintain the urate in suspension. Disturbances in electrolytes and water balance invariably exist in the prodromal period of an acute episode; this usually comprises diuresis and a negative sodium chloride balance. In addition calcium, potassium, phosphate and ammonia are lost. Mesenchymal tissues such as tendons and cartilage contain higher levels of sodium salts than blood; this affords an explanation for the great tendency of these tissues to fix uric acid.

#### PATHOLOGY

In gout urates in the form of sodium biurate show predilection for such mesenchymal tissues as cartilage, tendons, capsules and bone. They have been observed also in the meninges, the pleura, the pericardium, the brain and the spinal cord. It is generally accepted that the urate deposit

FIG. 377 (D, E and F) Exhibiting the advanced destructive changes in the right knee, the hand and the foot. The joints show total destruction of cartilaginous, osseous and soft tissue elements.



(chalky mass) in symptomatic gout is associated with a local inflammatory reaction which produces focal necrosis of the mesenchymal tissue. In cartilage the urate crystals are deposited in the superficial layers causing fibrillation of the cartilage between the deposits. Eventually, the cartilage overlying the deposits (tophi) is destroyed completely, now the mass of crystals is in direct contact with the joint cavity and the synovial fluid. It is believed that intra-articular tophi are derived from urates in the synovial fluid. The inflammatory reaction surrounding the tophi is characterized by the formation of granulation tissue, exhibiting numerous leukocytes, round cells and giant cells; the last are macrophages commonly observed in foreign body reactions. In addition the surrounding tissue is edematous and hyperemic. The inflammatory response causes softening and partial resorption of the tophi. Concomitant with an acute attack, a fine panus of granulation tissue may project from the synovial membrane, forming an irregular panus over portions of the articular cartilage. Both intra-articular and periarthritic fluid are increased so that the joint may become markedly distended. Usually in early cases after the acute attack subsides the joint tissues and joint function return to normalcy. After repeated attacks over the course of many years permanent alterations ensue which are similar to those of degenerative arthritis, usually the disease at this time is polyarticular.

An acute exacerbation is accompanied generally by an inflammatory response in the periarthritic tissues and skin. The joint tissues become swollen, reddened and tense; the skin is shiny and the superficial views are engorged and tortuous. The process together with the systemic reaction which often is present has all the features of cellulitis. Occasionally implication of superficial tophi leads to the formation of a phlegmon which ruptures through the skin and produces an ulcer or fistulae which discharge urates.

As recorded previously, tophi comprises masses of urate crystals. According to Hench, less than 50 per cent of all cases of gout, regardless of the stage of the disease, exhibit tophi. Frequently, they are observed in the helix of the ear and in or near joints, also, they are commonly noted in bursae and tendons, particularly the Achilles tendon and the olecranon bursa. They vary in size from minute deposits measuring a few millimeters to large nodular masses measuring several centimeters. It is interesting to note that in joints of the extremities tophi most frequently are first observed in extensor surfaces of the joint; however, involvement of the great toe is usually on the medial aspect of the joint. In the early stages of development, the tophi are soft and even fluctuant; later they become firm and discrete and the overlying skin may be tense. Acute exacerbations of the disease are not related to the formation of tophi which cause no symptoms until necrosis and ulceration of the surrounding tissue occur.

#### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Not all cases of gout produce tophi or joint symptoms; the defective metabolism of purine may not be recognized for many years. Some cases never are associated with joint manifestations. It is recorded that approximately 50 per cent of acute gouty episodes are ushered in with prodromal symptoms such as vague pain in the affected joint or gastric disturbances. Characteristic of the disease is the sudden onset of the symptoms, comprising severe pain, swelling, discoloration and tenderness. When discoloration is present, the affected part acquires a reddish blue color due to engorgement of the superficial views. This is the classic clinical picture observed when the great toe is affected. The pain may be so intense that pressure made by bedclothes is not bearable. The symptoms gradually increase in gradient; then after 2 to 6 days they recede until all symptoms disappear and function is restored.



completely. Usually acute episodes involve one joint. In more severe and chronic cases polyarticular involvement may occur. Usually this is associated with constitutional reactions of varying intensities. After repeated attacks permanent articular changes ensue causing impaired function. In chronic

forms the joint may remain swollen, tender and painful during the interval between acute exacerbations. Severe deformities associated with advanced degenerative arthritis may occur, although rare total invalidism has been observed by the author. In one case (Fig. 377) increase in the serum



FIG. 378. Roentgenograms of the knee exhibiting moderately advanced articular alterations associated with gout. Note the atrophic loss of substance near the articular margins, more pronounced in the medial condyle of the tibia and in the articular surface of the patella.

uric acid content is now present at all times during acute attacks as well as during remissions

From 60 to 80 per cent of the patients have involvement of the great toe (*podagra*), the disease implicates the distal joints more frequently than the proximal. The knee joints are not infrequent sites of involvement, whereas the spine and the shoulders are rarely involved. The author has observed one acute episode resulting from involvement of the anterior surface of the patella, this was the patient's first attack, gout had not been suspected prior to this attack. Clinical experience reveals that certain factors may initiate an acute episode of gout. Chief among these are (1) trauma in various forms (2) overexertion, (3) excesses in eating and drinking, (4) surgical procedures and (5) injections of drugs such as mercurial salts, causing diuresis.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

Roentgenographic study may fail to disclose any demonstrable bony alterations in the affected joints, this is particularly true in early attacks. However in acute gout there is diffuse soft tissue swelling of the joint. roentgenograms of the great toe show this feature clearly. Later, changes occur in the cartilage and the articular margins which are suggestive of gouty arthritis; however these changes are not pathognomonic of the disease and may be observed in rheumatic and degenerative arthritis. There is atrophic loss of substance at or near the articular margins. The areas have an irregular punched-out appearance resembling cysts. they comprise conglomerations of urate crystals which are radiolucent (Fig 378). In more severe cases advanced degenerative changes with joint destruction may be demonstrable. Occasionally total destruction of the joint elements is discernible. This results from deposition of large deposits of urates in the articular cartilage epiphysis and capsular tissues which eventually are totally destroyed (Fig 377). As

noted previously, the aforementioned deposits are radiolucent. however, in cases of long standing, some calcium finds its way into the topi. these now become demonstrable roentgenographically.

#### DIAGNOSIS

Many cases of gout are not recognized because the attending physician fails to think of the disease as a possible etiologic factor responsible for the clinical manifestation exhibited by the patient. Physicians practicing in England are more gout-conscious than any other group in the world. this may explain why such a high incidence of gout is recorded in the English population. An acute episode of gout associated with systemic reactions such as fever, leukocytosis and a hot, tender, swollen joint may simulate an acute infectious process, frequently, it is diagnosed erroneously as cellulitis. Monoarticular involvement favors gout, simultaneous polyarticular involvement is exceedingly rare in gout. Failure to obtain pus on aspiration of the affected joint and negative cultures of the joint fluid tend to eliminate an infectious process. A history of similar attacks in the same or other joints, followed by return to normalcy, is indicative of gout. The diagnosis is established if the urate crystals can be aspirated from the joint and demonstrated and if an increase in the uric acid content in the blood is present. Also, gout must be distinguished from swelling or hemorrhage in joints following trauma. As noted previously trauma, regardless of its nature, may precipitate an exacerbation of the disorder. Rheumatoid arthritis and rheumatic fever may be confused with gout. The following features are characteristic of rheumatoid arthritis: (1) it is common in women. (2) symmetrical polyarticular involvement is the rule. (3) affected joints tend to progress to a chronic state and never return to normalcy, (4) deformities occur early in the disease. (5) the disease affects young individuals most frequently. (6) there is no evidence of disturb-

ance in purine metabolism as determined by study of the blood chemistry and (7) renal complications so common in gout are rarely observed in rheumatoid arthritis

Rheumatic fever has the following features which differentiate it from gout (1) the disease usually affects children and young individuals, (2) it is polyarticular and exhibits migratory features (3) the general physical health of the patient is usually poor and is associated with anemia a feature rarely observed in gout and (4) cardiac involvement is common

Chronic gouty arthritis may be difficult to distinguish from joint changes resulting from rheumatoid or degenerative arthritis in cases of long standing. The pertinent features suggesting gout in these instances are (1) a careful history of attacks followed by complete restoration of function and relief of pain (2) elevated uric acid levels in the plasma this is a constant finding in old established cases of gout (3) the presence of tophi from which sodium urate crystals may be obtained and (4) roentgenograms exhibiting punched-out areas at the articular margins these findings are not pathognomonic of gout but they should be highly suggestive of the disease

#### MANAGEMENT

One must bear in mind that gout is a hereditary defect that cannot be eradicated by any form of therapy known to man. The course of the disease is unpredictable some individuals never have clinical manifestations in the joints and existing cardiorenal complications may never be linked with the defect in purine metabolism. Likewise the clinical pattern in cases of gout with joint involvement is variable. In general however in individuals developing joint deformities early in life the prognosis is more grave than in those exhibiting a tendency toward deformities late in life. In spite of the hopelessness of effecting a cure much can be done to ameliorate the symptoms and reduce the joint and cardiorenal complications

to a minimum. This can be achieved only by full co-operation on the part of the patient. It may mean divorcing the patient from harmful habits particularly abuses in eating and drinking.

Patients known to have gout should be instructed in prophylactic measures which in many instances tend to lengthen the periods of remissions and decrease the intensity of an attack. The diet should be low in purine rich foods and fats. Fats are not only highly calorogenic foods but they also enhance urate retention. On the other hand carbohydrates favor increased excretion of urates. Obesity must be avoided and adequate intakes of fluids, minerals and vitamins are essential. All alcoholic beverages must be eliminated. Gouty patients must be denied certain medications which may precipitate an acute episode notably among these are liver extracts, mercurial diuretics and lead in any form. Some authorities advocate the administration of colchicine (1/100 gr.) 1 to 3 times daily for 4 or 5 days of each week. The dose must be kept within the patient's tolerance which is below the diarrheal level. Fortunately patients do not develop tolerance of the drug hence small prophylactic doses do not affect the efficacy of the drug when given in larger doses to terminate an acute gouty attack.

The aforementioned precautions should be employed in the preoperative and the postoperative management of a patient subjected to a surgical procedure. Prophylactic doses of colchicine (1/100 gr. given 3 times daily for 3 or 4 days prior to the operation and for the same period postoperatively) may abort an acute episode. In addition the patient should be protected from harmful environmental factors which may initiate an attack. He should obtain adequate rest and mental relaxation. He should avoid situations that irritate and disturb his mental peace. Finally he should understand his limitations and make the necessary psychic adjustment.

Acute exacerbations in gout are self

limited, however, much can be done to terminate the episode and relieve the patient of the intense pain. When the knee is implicated, it frequently becomes distended by massive synovial effusion, all motion is painful, and the joint is held in slight flexion. Protection to such a joint is provided best by a posterior molded splint, cold dressings add to the patient's comfort. Large effusions should be aspirated, usually, compression dressings are not tolerated. Most acute attacks respond to colchicine (1/100 gr) administered 2 to 4 times daily until the acute manifestations subside. Other drugs that may be employed for their analgesic action are sodium salicylate, acetylsalicylic acid and, for severe pain, codeine and morphine.

The use of ACTH in acute attacks of gout is gaining favor. It controls acute gouty arthritis rapidly within a period of several hours. It is believed that the hormone stimulates the adrenal cortex to produce corticosteroids which terminate the attack. It is reported that most cases are controlled within the first 24-hour period. Unfortunately, following the administration of ACTH a deficiency in corticosteroids ensues. Invariably this induces a second attack unless measures are taken to prevent this undesirable sequel. Colchicine administered in combination with ACTH is an effective method of preventing a second attack; the dose of colchicine is maintained within the limits of the patient's tolerance for 10 to 14 days after all symptoms have subsided.

When degenerative changes in the knee joint are established the treatment of the local condition in the intervals between acute attacks does not differ from that described for degenerative arthritis resulting from other causes. Besides maintaining constant vigilance over the daily habits of living these patients must avoid fatigue and pursue a plan of activity always within the functional capacity of the joint. Occasionally large tophi may cause pain; such

lesions are frequently not acceptable to the patient because of the undesirable cosmetic features. The skin over large tophi may ulcerate, producing draining sinuses. The aforementioned objections justify surgical evacuation of the urate deposits. Many times, the author has found that such procedures are indicated, particularly when the lesions involve the fingers and the toes, on two occasions tophi over the patella were excised.

## NEUROPATHIC ARTHROPATHIES

The grotesque deformities observed in neuropathic arthropathies have attracted the attention of workers for many decades. Although the basic pathology does not differ from that noted in degenerative arthritis except in degree, neuropathic joints are invariably associated with lesions of the nervous system. Charcot joint is synonymous with neuropathic arthropathy. It has been recorded that 90 per cent of all Charcot joints are concomitant lesions of tabes dorsalis, the remaining are related to syringomyelia and infectious, neoplastic, congenital and traumatic lesions of the brain, the cord or the peripheral nerves. Of the last group neuro-arthropathies are most frequently associated with syringomyelia. In 1831 Mitchell described neuropathic arthropathies encountered in cases with tuberculosis of the spine. The relation of tabes dorsalis to these lesions was noted and recorded by Charcot in 1868. The lesions have been described in association with diabetes (Foster and Bassett), arteriosclerosis paraplegia (De'ano), multiple sclerosis, spinal bifida, poliomyelitis, acute myelitis and toxic neuritis.

## ETIOLOGY

The early investigators proposed that neuropathic arthropathies were the result of impairment of the trophic centers' in the spinal cord. This concept has been debated for many years; finally the work of

Floesser in 1917 revealed some significant observations which shed some light on the pathogenesis of this disorder. This observer noted that cutting of the posterior nerve

roots of animals failed to produce Charcot joints; however if in addition to cutting the posterior roots the joints of these animals were subjected to repeated trauma

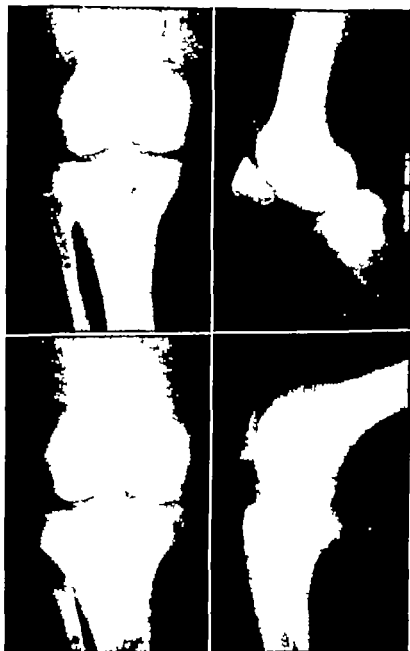


FIG. 379 (*Top*) Right knee joint of a female 51 years old. When first examined on May 8, 1952, the chief complaint was pain in the inner aspect of the knee joint following a twisting injury. Physical and roentgenographic examination exhibited no evidence of a neuro-arthropathic joint. (*Bottom*) The same knee 6 months after meniscectomy. The joint is completely disrupted and reveals all the roentgenographic features of Charcot joint. The patient's serology, both blood and spinal fluid, was positive. This is the atrophic variety of Charcot joint.

neuropathic arthropathies developed. The significance of trauma in the development of Charcot joints became apparent. There is evidence suggesting that the myelinated pain fibers responsible for rapid pain conduction are primarily involved, whereas the nonmyelinated fibers responsible for slow conduction of pain are unaffected (de Takats). In addition the nonmyelinated fibers function as vasodilator fibers; the hyperemia observed in Charcot joints following repeated injuries is evidence that vasodilator fibers remain intact. That complete anesthesia is not present in all Charcot joints is supported by the clinical observation that in some painful stimuli may be noted but their interpretation is retarded again pointing to preservation of nonmyelinated fibers for slow conduction of pain. Therefore complete anesthesia is not a prerequisite for the development of neuroarthropathic joint. Repeated traumas incident to joint function inflicted on a joint with impaired sensation precipitate pathologic changes in the joint elements consistent with Charcot joints. It is estimated that from 5 to 10 per cent of the cases of *tabes dorsalis* develop neuroarthropathies. The rapidity of development of a Charcot joint in most instances is governed by the multiplicity and the severity of the traumas. Generally the more abnormal stresses are imposed on a joint, the more rapidly the joint alterations develop. This affords an explanation for the high incidence of Charcot joints found in the weight bearing extremities as compared with that observed in the upper extremities. On the other hand the author has observed rapid deterioration of what appeared to be a normal joint both clinically and roentgenographically following some surgical procedure on the knee joint. The knee joints of 3 cases were subject to surgical procedures under the erroneous diagnosis of tear of one of the menisci. Within 4 to 6 months after the operation a typical Charcot joint developed (Fig 379). Another case of interest in the author's files



FIG 380 Typical Charcot joint with posterior subluxation of the femur in a female, aged 41. The lesion developed 4 years after injury to the spinal cord sufficient to cause paraplegia lasting 4 years. Power returned to the left extremity but a neuroarthropathic joint developed in the right knee joint.

is that of a woman 41 years old who developed thrombophlebitis of the right leg following an abdominal operation. Someone attempted to perform a procaine block of the lumbar sympathetic ganglia but unfortunately traumatized the spinal cord. This was followed by complete paraplegia approximately 4 years after the accident. Power returned gradually in the left extremity; a typical Charcot joint developed in the right knee (Fig 380).



FIG. 381 A case of multiple joint involvement. Both the left knee and the ankle are implicated. This patient is a tabetic 52 years old.

#### PATHOLOGY

Essentially the alterations in the components of a Charcot joint do not differ from those observed in degenerative arthritis except that the destruction in the former is of greater severity. Changes in the capsule and the synovial membrane occur early in the disease. The analgesic joint is no longer protected by the highly specialized sensory innervation that has endowed the capsule, the synovialis, the ligaments and the muscles crossing the joint. The synchronic function between the ligaments and the muscles which protect the knee joint is lost. The joint is now vulnerable to abnormal stress and to microtraumas incident to joint motion. As noted previously such traumas produce synovial effusions and hemarthroses. Repeated episodes of this nature are

responsible for marked thickening of the capsule and the synovial membrane. The synovialis may exhibit pronounced villous formation. The intra articular and the collateral ligaments together with the aforementioned structures become edematous, thickened and stretched; also there is progressive weakness of the muscular apparatus of the knee joint. All the above factors in combination produce marked laxity of the supporting structures of the knee joint; this together with the concomitant destruction in the cartilaginous and the bony elements of the joint produce varying degrees of subluxation or even dislocation. Excessive abnormal mobility without evoking pain is the most pertinent clinical feature of a Charcot joint. Formations of heterotopic bone and cartilage in the capsular tissues is characteristic of this disorder; the formations vary in size and number and provide a source of loose bodies in the joint cavity. The periarticular bone may extend considerable distances into the adjacent soft tissues.

Unlike other types of chronic arthritides the articular cartilage in arthropathies undergoes destruction rapidly and early exposing the subchondral bone. This alteration is more pronounced in the areas of greatest weight bearing. Those areas not subjected constantly to friction are frequently covered with a panus comprising granulation tissue arising from the edges of the synovial membrane and from the narrow spaces and fissures in the subchondral bone.

The alterations in the bone end comprise marginal fractures, disintegration and atrophy without bone reaction, marked proliferation of bone and eburnation. If the process is long standing all these changes may be seen in the same joint. Generally specific patterns in sequence are discernible. In those instances where the process progresses rapidly atrophy and disorganization of the subchondral bone usually ensue whereas in slowly progressing lesions hyper-

trophy and eburnation of the bone ends occur. In contrast with the alterations observed in degenerative arthritis, hypertrophy of bone in arthropathies fails to provide stability or support to the joint because the defective bone usually is broken off and adds to the debris, consisting of pieces of bone cartilage and necrotic granulation tissue found in the joint. Fissures, marginal fractures or fractures through the femoral or the tibial condyles are characteristic of the disease. Often the tibial condyles are depressed, and their margins are worn away. Such lesions represent compression fractures resulting from extensive osteoporosis. Although proliferation is active both in the capsular tissues and from the marrow spaces, ankylosis of a Charcot joint never occurs. This may result from the marked painless hypermobility that exists in these joints. The activity of the proliferative process in some instances permits one to conclude that if rigid immobilization of the joint were possible, ankylosis should be achieved. On the other hand, clinical experience reveals that many Char-

cot joints fail to attain ankylosis even after execution of carefully planned surgical procedures designed to produce an arthrodesis.

#### CLINICAL FEATURES

Arthropathy usually implicates a single joint, most frequently the knee. Involvement of the knee and the ankle of the same extremity is not uncommon (Figs. 381 and 382). As noted previously, neuropathic joints occur most frequently in the tabetics, the incidence in some series of cases being as high as 90 per cent, generally, the patients are over the age of 35 years.

Symptoms referable to the joints may be the first clinical manifestations of *tabes dorsalis*; the author has observed this many times. The disease is noted more frequently in the weight bearing extremities than in the nonweight bearing. Implication of both knees is a relatively frequent occurrence. The earliest clinical feature is sudden swelling of the joint which represents the joint reaction to some form of abnormal stress or joint fracture. In most instances, the neuropathy is observed first after advanced dis-



FIG 382 (*Left*) Neuro-arthropathic joint exhibiting hypertrophic features. The bone ends exhibit advanced condensation, observe the marked proliferation of new bone at the peripheries of the femur, the tibia and the patella (*Right*) In this patient the ankle joint of the same extremity is also involved



organization of the joint has occurred this is explained readily by the absence of severe pain which is characteristic of the disease. In advanced cases the deformity resulting from the marked capsular thickening and subluxation or dislocation of the knee joint is readily apparent (Fig. 380). The painless hypermobility is the result of several factors the most important being diminished sensitivity of the joint tissues stretching and rupture of the capsular and the ligamentous apparatuses and hypotonia, which is a sequel of degenerative changes in the spinal cord. Passive manipulation of the limb invariably is accompanied by crepitus produced by one roughened bone grinding against another.

One must bear in mind that in many instances the patients with arthropathies experience some discomfort and even pain in and about the affected joint occasionally the pain may be intense and in part may be the result of distention of the capsule by massive effusions or hemorrhage. Although diminished sensitivity is the rule some tabetics exhibit rheumatic manifestations which are accentuated by changes in the weather.

In addition to the local characteristic features tabetics exhibit other neurologic and systemic manifestations which aid in arriving at the correct diagnosis. There is loss or diminution of position sense and in-co-ordination and failure of pupils to contract when exposed to light. Small irregular pupils (Argyll Robertson pupils) are not always demonstrable in the tabetic. Tabetic crisis (lightning pains)

incontinence may be seen. Sensation of the cases of tabes is evidence Wassermann and spinal in approxi-

Rou  
clinic

of the extent of the destructive process in a Charcot joint. The roentgenographic features vary greatly however, they fall into two main categories the atrophic and hypertrophic both may be discernible in the same joint.

**Atrophic Type.** This variety is usually encountered in rapidly developing Charcot joints. The process is entirely destructive new bone formation is minimal or absent. The effusion tends to be massive bone destruction is at right angles to the thrust of weight bearing the bone ends are of normal density or exhibit rarefaction. Although some irregular detritus is present at the periphery of the effusion cartilaginous and bony formations in the capsule or the adjacent tissues are lacking (Fig. 379). It becomes apparent that the predominant processes are hyperemia and demineralization of the bone ends. Under these conditions unprotected motion and repeated insults to the joint are followed by rapid disintegration of the joint with no attempt at new bone formation.

**Hypertrophic Type.** Arthropathies in this group develop more slowly the destructive process is accompanied by an active proliferative process which is responsible for condensation of the bone ends and irregular defective bone formations simulating buttresses at the margins of the bones usually in the regions of maximum weight thrust. In addition calcareous lipplings or osteophytes at the joint margins are common concomitant findings these are irregular in configuration density and texture and differ from the sharply defined deposits observed in uncomplicated degenerative arthritis. Loose bodies comprising irregular detritus varying in shape texture and density are observed within and at the joint cavity (Fig. 382).

Violent ankylosis of the joint does not occur varying from even dislocation to ankylosis. This disease (Fig. 380)

### MANAGEMENT

Adequate treatment should be governed by the knowledge that a Charcot joint is the product of established degenerative alterations in the cord and that repeated insults to the joint incident to joint function are prime factors in the development of the arthropathy. Also, certain clinical observations should be considered before a choice of therapy is made. Successful arthrodeses are difficult to achieve, however the reports of some workers indicated that arthrodesis can be obtained by special surgical technic. The author has had satisfactory results by the use of the elastic compression methods as described in Chapter 13 "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." On the other hand Key brings to our attention that one third of the patients with a single neuropathic joint develop another sometime during the course of the disease. This knowledge certainly influences the choice of such procedures as arthrodeses and amputations. Tabetic patients may have difficulty in mastering a prosthesis or a limb with a stiff knee because of the defective sense of position.

The most effective form of conservative treatment is the application of some form of external support which allows ambulation and protects the joint from further injuries. This measure should be employed as early as possible in the development of the arthropathy and preferably before advanced joint destruction occurs. A brace does not eliminate completely the traumatic factor but it does diminish its intensity. For the knee the author utilizes a brace with an ischial weight bearing ring and a lock joint at the knee.

If, after adequate evaluation of the patient one feels that arthrodesis of the knee joint is indicated a procedure should be chosen which minimizes the period of bed rest enhances rapid ankylosis and permits early ambulation. The author prefers the elastic compression method noted above. Involvement of multiple joints of the same

limb, including the knee and in cases of failure to attain stabilization of the knee joint with arthrodesing operations amputation above the knee joint is indicated.

It is understood that treatment of the arthropathy should be carried out, together with treatment of the systemic disease, in cases of *tabes dorsalis*. Antisyphilitic therapy will not reverse the destructive changes in the joint, but the patient can be relieved of lightning pains. Also, the active disease is controlled and the general health of the patient is improved.

### PYOGENIC ARTHRITIS

Involvement of a joint by pyogenic organisms is a tragedy. Prior to the advent of chemotherapy and antibiotics both surgeon and patient were faced with a serious struggle not only to save the limb but also the patient's life. The aforementioned therapeutic agents have modified, in a measure, the seriousness of the condition. Nevertheless, once a joint is implicated, complete return to normalcy is rarely achieved. At best some residual dysfunction must be anticipated because of the damage sustained by the articular cartilage. Even at the present time it is not uncommon to observe complete destruction of a joint by a pyogenic process. However, when such a disaster occurs, it must be admitted that adequate treatment was not instituted or was started too late. Fortunately the popular free use of antibiotics has reduced considerably the incidence of suppurative arthritis. The most common avenue of inoculating the joint with the organism is usually by way of the blood stream, also penetrating wounds of the joint frequently are complicated by a suppurative arthritis. This is a common occurrence on the battlefield occasionally direct inoculation occurs during a surgical procedure.

### ETIOLOGY

The organisms which are the most com-

organization of the joint has occurred this is explained readily by the absence of severe pain which is characteristic of the disease. In advanced cases the deformity resulting from the marked capsular thickening and subluxation or dislocation of the knee joint is readily apparent (Fig 380). The painless hypermobility is the result of several factors the most important being diminished sensitivity of the joint tissues stretching and rupture of the capsular and the ligamentous apparatuses and hypotonia, which is a sequel of degenerative changes in the spinal cord. Passive manipulation of the limb invariably is accompanied by crepitus produced by one roughened bone grinding against another.

One must bear in mind that in many instances the patients with arthropathies experience some discomfort and even pain in and about the affected joint occasionally the pain may be intense and in part may be the result of distention of the capsule by massive effusions or hemorrhage. Although diminished sensitivity is the rule some tabetics exhibit rheumatic manifestations which are accentuated by changes in the weather.

In addition to the local characteristic features tabetics exhibit other neurologic and systemic manifestations which aid in arriving at the correct diagnosis. There is loss or diminution of position sense and in-co-ordination and failure of pupils to contract when exposed to light. Small irregular pupils (Argyll Robertson pupils) are not always demonstrable in the tabetic. Tabetic crisis (lightning pains) and incontinence may be present. Serologic examination of the blood and the spinal fluid of cases of *tabes dorsalis* may fail to provide evidence supporting the diagnosis. Both Wassermann and Kahn tests made on blood and spinal fluid are recorded to be negative in approximately 50 per cent of the cases.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

The clinical features give no indications

of the extent of the destructive process in a Charcot joint. The roentgenographic features vary greatly however they fall into two main categories, the atrophic and hypertrophic, both may be discernible in the same joint.

**Atrophic Type.** This variety is usually encountered in rapidly developing Charcot joints. The process is entirely destructive new bone formation is minimal or absent. The effusion tends to be massive bone destruction is at right angles to the thrust of weight bearing the bone ends are of normal density or exhibit rarefaction. Although some irregular detritus is present at the periphery of the effusion cartilaginous and bony formations in the capsule or the adjacent tissues are lacking (Fig 379). It becomes apparent that the predominant processes are hyperemia and demineralization of the bone ends. Under these conditions unprotected motion and repeated insults to the joint are followed by rapid disintegration of the joint with no attempt at new bone formation.

**Hypertrophic Type.** Arthropathies in this group develop more slowly the destructive process is accompanied by an active proliferative process which is responsible for condensation of the bone ends and irregular defective bone formations simulating buttresses at the margins of the bones usually in the regions of maximum weight thrust. In addition calcareous lipings or osteophytes at the joint margins are common concomitant findings these are irregular in configuration density and texture and differ from the sharply defined deposits observed in uncomplicated degenerative arthritis. Loose bodies comprising irregular detritus varying in shape texture and density are observed within and at the peripheries of the joint cavity (Fig 382).

As mentioned previously ankylosis of neuropathic joints does not occur varying degrees of subluxation and even dislocation are noted roentgenographically. This displacement may be in any plane (Fig 380).

### MANAGEMENT

Adequate treatment should be governed by the knowledge that a Charcot joint is the product of established degenerative alterations in the cord and that repeated insults to the joint incident to joint function are prime factors in the development of the arthropathy. Also, certain clinical observations should be considered before a choice of therapy is made. Successful arthrodeses are difficult to achieve, however the reports of some workers indicated that arthrodesis can be obtained by special surgical technic. The author has had satisfactory results by the use of the elastic compression methods, as described in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." On the other hand, Key brings to our attention that one third of the patients with a single neuropathic joint develop another sometime during the course of the disease. This knowledge certainly influences the choice of such procedures as arthrodeses and amputations. Tabetic patients may have difficulty in mastering a prosthesis or a limb with a stiff knee because of the defective sense of position.

The most effective form of conservative treatment is the application of some form of external support which allows ambulation and protects the joint from further injuries. This measure should be employed as early as possible in the development of the arthropathy and preferably before advanced joint destruction occurs. A brace does not eliminate completely the traumatic factor but it does diminish its intensity. For the knee the author utilizes a brace with an ischial weight bearing ring and a lock joint at the knee.

If after adequate evaluation of the patient one feels that arthrodesis of the knee joint is indicated a procedure should be chosen which minimizes the period of bed rest, enhances rapid ankylosis and permits early ambulation. The author prefers the elastic compression method noted above. Involvement of multiple joints of the same

limb, including the knee, and in cases of failure to attain stabilization of the knee joint with arthrodesing operations amputation above the knee joint is indicated.

It is understood that treatment of the arthropathy should be carried out, together with treatment of the systemic disease, in cases of tabes dorsalis. Antisyphilitic therapy will not reverse the destructive changes in the joint but the patient can be relieved of lightning pains. Also, the active disease is controlled, and the general health of the patient is improved.

### PYOGENIC ARTHRITIS

Involvement of a joint by pyogenic organisms is a tragedy. Prior to the advent of chemotherapy and antibiotics both surgeon and patient were faced with a serious struggle not only to save the limb but also the patient's life. The aforementioned therapeutic agents have modified, in a measure, the seriousness of the condition. Nevertheless, once a joint is implicated complete return to normalcy is rarely achieved, at best, some residual dysfunction must be anticipated because of the damage sustained by the articular cartilage. Even at the present time, it is not uncommon to observe complete destruction of a joint by a pyogenic process. However, when such a disaster occurs, it must be admitted that adequate treatment was not instituted or was started too late. Fortunately, the popular free use of antibiotics has reduced considerably the incidence of suppurative arthritis. The most common avenue of inoculating the joint with the organism is usually by way of the blood stream, also penetrating wounds of the joint frequently are complicated by a suppurative arthritis. This is a common occurrence on the battlefield, occasionally direct inoculation occurs during a surgical procedure.

### ETIOLOGY

The organisms which are the most com-

mon offenders are hemolytic streptococci, staphylococci, gonococci, meningococci and pneumococci; however, practically all pyogenic organisms are known to be capable of entering a joint cavity and producing a suppurative process. Pyogenic arthritis is a relatively frequent sequel of the infectious diseases such as pneumonia, scarlet fever, meningitis, measles and gonorrhea. It may be a complication of septicemias and osteomyelitis. Not infrequently no disease other than an acute respiratory infection may precede the onset of the joint lesion. Pyogenic joints are known to follow furunculosis and cellulitis. In some instances a focus of origin cannot be found.

Organisms may gain access to the joint cavity by one of several avenues. Once entrance has been achieved, the response of the joint is governed by the virulence of the organisms and the resistance of the patient. The most common mode of entry is through the blood stream, although this may occur at any age. It is observed most often in children. Penetration of the knee joint by contaminated missiles occurs frequently in combat. Open fractures communicating with the joint cavity may be a mode of entry for organisms. As mentioned previously, contamination of a joint cavity may occur during some operative procedure; the author has observed several such unfortunate complications. Finally, the joint may be involved by direct extension of an infectious process in adjacent tissues. In the knee joint, as in other joints, primary implication of the femoral or the tibial epiphysis may occur; the suppurative process may traverse the cancellous bone and the overlying cartilage to gain entrance to the joint cavity. Likewise, an osteomyelitic focus in the metaphysis may pierce the epiphyseal plate and the epiphysis to reach the joint, or it may extend along the undersurface of the periosteum and ultimately under the capsule to gain access to the joint cavity. Osteomyelitis of the patella may be the source of pyogenic organisms if the lesion

penetrates the cartilage and communicates with the joint cavity. The author has recorded two such cases in Chapter 11, Affections of the Quadriceps Apparatus.

#### PATHOLOGY

Following invasion of the joint cavity by organisms, the synovial membrane is the first structure to respond to the invaders. The synovialis becomes hyperemic and pours into the joint cavity large quantities of a serous exudate which is essentially synovial fluid. Later, there is a pronounced rise in the cell count, the predominant cells being polymorphonuclear leukocytes; the protein count rises, and the fluid now becomes turbid and thickened and assumes all the characteristics of pus. This stage of the infection is designated as the purulent stage, while the earlier stage is the seropurulent. As the process continues, the joint capsule is markedly distended with pus. In fact, it may rupture into the surrounding tissues, causing areas of local tissue necrosis which ultimately break through the skin to form sinuses.

Pus has a deleterious effect on the hyaline cartilage. It causes liquefaction necrosis. The work of Phemister reveals the mechanism of this process; this observer points out that pus contains a proteolytic ferment, protease, which is derived from the dead neutrophils. This substance is capable of dissolving the cartilage; the cartilage at the points of continuous contact is affected first. The extent of involvement of the cartilage is determined by the duration and the severity of the infection. In the early stages, chondrolysis is limited to the superficial stratum of articular cartilage, which becomes fibrillated and loses its bluish-white glistening appearance but becomes roughened and opaque. With further progression of the process, it causes dissolution of all the cartilage. It is interesting to note that the calcified stratum of cartilage is able to resist the chondrolytic action of the protease. It is the last barrier to be overcome.

The bone ends of an affected joint are involved only in fulminating suppurative processes of long duration. In such instances all the cartilage is destroyed, and the subchondral bone is bathed in pus; however, the bone has sufficient resistance to preclude the formation of bone abscesses or sequestri, these are indeed rare complications. On the other hand, it is not infrequent in children to observe death of an epiphysis, particularly the capital femoral epiphysis resulting from complete destruction of its blood supply. The author has opened several suppurative hip joints in which the capital epiphysis was found to be detached completely from the neck of the femur and constituted a loose body in the joint cavity. A comparable situation never has been encountered in suppurative arthritis of the knee joint.

After the acute process is brought under control the acute inflammatory tissue begins to undergo maturation first forming granulation tissue which may supplant the greater portion of the synovials. By projecting over the articular surfaces the granulation tissue forms a pannus over each bone thereby establishing continuity between the opposing surfaces. The basis for fibrous ankylosis of the affected joint is now laid down. As maturation progresses the granulation tissue is converted into fibrous tissue producing adhesions of varying size and strength between the bony elements of the joint and obliterating the joint cavity. During this process many areas of cartilage that have survived the chondrolytic action of the proteolytic ferment are destroyed by the granulation tissue which deprives the cartilage of any nutrient substances. This process is further enhanced by granulation tissue growing from the marrow spaces in the subchondral bone which undermines and destroys the overlying articular cartilage. As pointed out by Luck in his timely work *Bone and Joint Diseases* suppurative arthritis is one of the most common causes of ankylosis and the healing stage may

terminate in one of three forms of ankylosis: fibrous, cartilaginous or osseous. Fibrous ankylosis results when the articular surfaces are bound together by firm adhesions formed by condensation of the interposing granulation tissue. Cartilaginous ankylosis may result from transformation of fibrous tissue to fibrocartilage in response to functional stresses or by the blending of opposing areas of affected articular cartilage. Bony ankylosis invariably follows complete destruction of the articular cartilage. In the beginning the bone ends are bound together by dense fibrous tissue which is transformed later into bony trabeculae. With increased function of the limb these trabeculae are replaced by lamellar bone.

Fortunately not all cases of suppurative arthritis progress to the stage of ankylosis. The disease may be controlled sufficiently early to preclude serious damage to the articular cartilage. If function is restored early after the disease is controlled the fibrous tissue replacing portions of the synovialis affected may be converted into a smooth glistening surface which is covered by a layer of cells capable of producing synovial fluid; this does not occur if ankylosis becomes established. In some instances in spite of marked thinning and alterations of the articular cartilage a useful range of motion is salvaged. In such knee joints however abnormalities of the cartilaginous and the osseous elements of the joint that are consistent with degenerative arthritis invariably occur.

#### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Sudden onset of a systemic reaction with fever, chills and leukocytosis associated with involvement of a single joint presupposes a blood-stream infection. Aspiration of pus from the affected joint establishes the diagnosis of pyogenic arthritis. Smears, cultures and in some instances animal inoculations are essential to determine the identity of the responsible organism. The

presence of foci in other parts of the body may provide a clue to the causative bacterium. Gonococci recovered from a purulent urethral or cervical discharge or from prostatic secretions may disclose the true nature of the suppurative process when smears and cultures of the fluid recovered from the joint fail to provide convincing data to establish the correct diagnosis.

Frequently the knee joint is the seat of suppurative arthritis. When involved in addition to the constitutional response mentioned previously the knee is swollen, hot and painful, usually it is held in varying degrees of flexion and both active and passive motion initiate excruciating pain. Spasm of the flexor muscles resists any attempt to extend the joint; the flexed position is further enhanced by the massive intra-articular effusion and pain. In childhood pyogenic arthritis of the knee is relatively common. It tends to run a fulminating course and in infants it may be difficult to establish the diagnosis. Careful examination will disclose a swollen, tender, hot knee joint held constantly in partial flexion. The joint lesion may be obscured by the severe systemic reaction; the child is toxic and dehydrated and has a high fever and leukocytosis. In children it is important to distinguish purulent arthritis from osteomyelitis of the lower end of the femur or the tibia. In this condition the knee joint may show some swelling; the knee is flexed and motion precipitates severe pain. Also in children suppurative arthritis may be a complication of phlebitis resulting from intravenous procedures. The author has encountered one such case which implicated the knee joint and resulted in amputation of the limb; this was before the days of antibiotics.

Suppurative arthritis of the knee joint must be distinguished from rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis, osteomyelitis of the femur and the tibia, tuberculous arthritis, acute traumatic synovitis and traumatic hemarthrosis.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES

Early in the disease the cartilaginous and the bony elements of the joint show no abnormalities. However, marked distention of the joint capsule and detectable swelling of the pericapsular tissues, particularly the subcutaneous tissue, is demonstrable; this last feature is rarely observed in gonococci infection of the joint. Decalcification is not usually apparent at this time, but some local decalcification may be discernible. The joint space may be wider than that on the unaffected side. As the process progresses to a later stage decalcification becomes more pronounced, particularly in cases of gonococcal arthritis, and the joint space becomes narrowed as a result of destruction of the articular cartilage. Narrowing is most marked at the opposing surfaces of the articular cartilage; this is in contrast with the findings in tuberculous arthritis where these areas of the joint are implicated last. Varying degrees of marginal bone destruction may be observed; again this is usually more pronounced where loss of the articular cartilage is extensive. Sequestration due to massive necrosis is rarely seen except in the hip joint when the capital epiphysis undergoes avascular necrosis and is detached from the femoral neck; however, dislocation or subluxation may occur.

During the healing stage calcification of the bone ends returns to normal; the eroded margins in the articular cortex become more sharply defined and may appear to be more dense than the surrounding bone. Bony ankylosis may occur. In healed cases of long standing bony alterations consistent with degenerative arthritis are manifest.

#### MANAGEMENT

Too much emphasis cannot be laid on the importance of establishing an early diagnosis of pyogenic arthritis. If adequate treatment is instituted early, severe damage to the articular cartilage is prevented and a joint with excellent function can be antici-

pated. However, if the diagnosis is made late, irreparable damage is inflicted on the cartilage and the synovials so that even with the most efficacious form of therapy varying degrees of dysfunction must be expected, and in some instances ankylosis of one form or another ensues. The advantages of early aspiration of an infected joint are now generally understood. The old fear of aspiration of joints for fear of introducing organisms into the joint cavity no longer prevails when the procedure is executed under strict aseptic technic. Early and properly performed aspiration provides joint fluid for bacteriologic examination. It also reduces the intra articular tension thereby relieving pain. In addition aspirations prevent the accumulation of large quantities of pus which, when under prolonged increased pressure cause destruction of the synovials, lysis of the articular cartilage and stretching of the capsule and the ligamentous apparatus of the knee joint. It becomes apparent that proper timing is an essential factor in the treatment of pyogenic arthritis.

In formulating a plan of therapy for suppurative arthritis one must understand that the articular manifestations comprise only one facet of a generalized systemic infection. Except in cases of pyogenic arthritis resulting from penetrating wounds, the joint involvement is a complication of a blood-stream infection. Hence general measures must be instituted to treat the patients systemically: administration of repeated small blood transfusions (250 cc. of whole blood for adults and from 50 to 100 cc. for children) every 2 or 3 days if necessary, intravenous administration of fluids sodium potassium and chlorides to maintain a normal electrolyte balance, a high protein diet and ascorbic acid, relief of pain and apprehension by appropriate sedatives and specific treatment in the form of antibiotics and chemotherapy. The form of local treatment is governed by the stage of the pyogenic process. For practical purposes

three stages must be considered: acute, reparative and late.

**Acute Stage** The aims in this stage are (1) to control infection, (2) to prevent severe damage to the joint elements and (3) to restore normal function. Too often we fall short of these goals. Regardless of the type of pyogenic organism responsible for the suppurative process, conservative methods should be tried in the early stages of the disease. The high intra articular tension should be relieved; this is achieved best by repeated aspirations of the joint carried out daily or every second day, depending on the rapidity of re-formations of purulent material. The technic of this procedure is described on page 498; adherence to strict aseptic precautions is essential. With each aspiration penicillin is instilled directly into the joint. In addition, penicillin is administered parenterally also, depending upon the organisms identified in the pus, various chemotherapeutic agents are given. The author employs the following routine in the acute stage. The joint is aspirated with a large bore needle, through the same needle 500,000 units of penicillin in 10 cc. of normal saline is injected into the joint cavity. In addition, 300,000 units of penicillin is given intramuscularly every 6 hours; this is supplemented by sulfathiazole in staphylococcal arthritis and sulfadiazene in streptococcal and gonococcal arthritis. In pneumococcal arthritis sulfonamide and penicillin are combined as described above. This regimen is continued until the suppurative process is controlled as indicated by disappearance of the constitutional and the local manifestations. As a rule this is achieved in 5 to 7 days; failure to note any subsidence in the condition within this period is an indication for surgical intervention.

During the execution of the aforementioned therapeutic program the affected limb should be at complete rest. Traction to the lower leg is the most efficacious method; it facilitates nursing care, permits





traction previously applied to the lower leg of the affected limb and transfers the patient into a balanced suspension apparatus, using a Thomas splint with a Pearson attachment. The patient is able to exercise the knee joint passively to any desired degree of flexion and extension. This is achieved by means of a rope that is attached to the end of the Pearson attachment and passed through a series of pulleys to the head of the bed within the patient's reach. Between the exercise periods the limb is suspended in the position of maximum extension. Also, exercises of the quadriceps are instituted and performed conscientiously on a regulated regimen usually 10 minutes every 3 hours. In the beginning the program should be under the supervision of a competent physical therapist. When power is restored sufficiently to the quadriceps to perform straight leg raising, elastic resistance is added and later the limb is made to work against progressively increasing loads. In addition such measures as underwater exercises and the whirlpool bath tend to enhance restoration of motion. Nonprotected weight bearing should not be permitted until the quadriceps is sufficiently strong to stabilize the joint and protect it from abnormal stresses incident to function and until powerful extension and flexion of the joint are achieved.

During the reparative stage the author prefers the use of crutches to prevent full weight bearing and rarely employs knee cages or braces; these tend to increase quadriceps atrophy. The tendency toward development of flexion contractures is constant; this is observed even after a relatively good range of active motion is attained. As a prophylactic measure, long posterior molded plaster splints are worn during the night for 2 to 4 months after all evidence of activity in the joint has subsided and restoration of motion is progressing satisfactorily. Moreover continuous traction to the lower leg during the

acute and the reparative stages up to the time that exercises are started prevents the formation of serious flexion deformities. Neglected cases invariably exhibit varying degrees of flexion contractures. When encountered, the application of skin traction in the form of Buck's extension may suffice to eliminate the deformity. If this method fails, the use of turnbuckle casts invariably achieves correction. Great force must never be employed to attain correction; such measures may reactivate the pyogenic process.

**Late Stage.** In this stage are found the devastating effects of a fulminating pyogenic process now completely extinguished. The joints may show varying degrees of destruction of the articular surfaces, partial or complete restriction of motion, flexion deformities and in some cases bony ankylosis. Now the problem at hand is one of rehabilitation of the patient by various surgical procedures which will provide the patient with a painless and useful limb. If possible one should endeavor to restore a satisfactory range of motion; however, this is not always possible or advisable. The surgical procedures most commonly employed are osteotomies for correction of deformities, arthrodeses to achieve bony ankylosis and arthroplasties to restore motion. These are discussed in detail in Chapter 13, *Surgical Approaches and Procedures*. The following cases are typical examples of some of the problems encountered.

**Case J. M.,** male, aged 20 years, was first seen on June 12, 1948, when he complained of pain and swelling of the left knee joint. At the age of 4 years the patient developed suppurative arthritis following whooping cough. The knee was not draining but was placed in a plaster cast for many months. As long as he could remember, the knee was "stiff" and became painful and swollen after any form of activity.

Examination revealed a boggy, swollen, painful knee with only 45° of flexion; there was a 10° flexion contracture of the joint. Roentgenographic study disclosed marked



FIG 383 (*Left*) Left knee joint of a male 20 years old. This patient had a pyogenic infection at the age of 4 years. Note the thin joint space and the moderate marginal lipping of the tibia. Only 45° of motion were demonstrable in the joint. (*Center*) Arthrodesis of the knee joint. Contact and compression between the raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia are maintained by the method depicted herein. (*Right*) Solid bony ankylosis of the knee attained 4 months after the arthrodesis operation.

narrowing of the joint space and irregularity of the articular surfaces (Fig 383, *left*). The patient's occupation demanded long hours of standing because of the pain he was unable to hold a position for any length of time. Arthrodesis of the joint was advised; the patient refused the operation. As a second choice synovectomy was recommended which was performed on July 14, 1948. At the time of operation a markedly thickened synovial membrane was noted; also the articular surfaces of the femur, the tibia and the patella showed large areas denuded completely of cartilage. Numerous marginal exostoses of varying size were present on the femur and the patella. In addition to synovectomy the patella was excised and the exostoses were removed. Three months after the operation the patient gained sufficient motion to permit complete extension of the joint; his pain was decreased markedly.

Two years later he returned complaining of severe pain although he had not lost any more motion. He was now ready to have an arthrodesis of the joint which was performed on May 6, 1950. The operative method employing elastic compression was performed (Fig 383 *center*). Figure 383 *right* depicts

the result attained 4 months after operation. This patient now has a painless, useful limb and when last examined (2 years after the arthrodesis) was very active, employed and satisfied with the result.

Case B. K., a female, 27 years old, was first seen in July 1945 in a service hospital with a suppurative arthritis of the left knee joint in the reparative stage. The causative organism was the gonococcus. In spite of intensive chemotherapy and antibiotic therapy the process went on to marked destruction of the joint. It must be admitted that data obtained at a later date disclosed that the above therapeutic measures were employed too late. The lesion was diagnosed erroneously as rheumatic fever and was treated as such for several weeks. Intensive physical therapy failed to give a useful range of painless motion. On November 26, 1946, she had constant pain and only 20° of motion. Roentgenograms at this time revealed pronounced irregularity of the medial joint surfaces (Fig 384 *top*). In 1948 no change was demonstrable in the knee joint; an arthroplasty was performed on June 25, 1948. Figure 384 *bottom* depicts the knee joint 2 years after the arthroplasty. She now

has approximately 70° of flexion good stability and no pain. The joint is capable of meeting all her functional demands.

In the event that conservative measures fail to control an acute suppurative process within 5 to 7 days, or if a neglected case is

seen after this period of time incision and drainage of the joint are mandatory. These procedures are discussed in Chapter 13, "Surgical Approaches and Procedures." Prior to the advent of chemotherapeutic and antibiotic agents, cases were encoun-

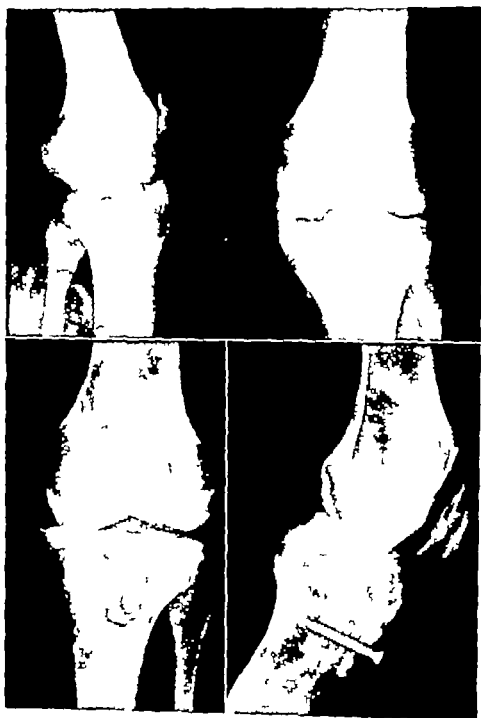


FIG 384 (Top) Destruction of the medial joint space following suppurative arthritis produced by gonococcal infection (Bottom, left and right) Roentgenograms of the above case 2 years after an arthroplasty of the affected knee joint. The joint has 70° of painless motion and excellent stability

tered occasionally which failed to respond to conservative measures or even to extensive incision and drainage. In such instances amputation or resection were justified in order to save the patient's life. At the present time occasionally cases are observed which are not controlled by conservative therapy and so necessitate radical incision and drainage of the joint but the author has not seen one case within the past 10 years in which amputation was justified. In some fulminating cases or some cases encountered late extensive articular damage occurs which precludes a satisfactory range of motion. When such a situation becomes apparent the process should be allowed to go on to ankylosis of the joint; the limb should be immobilized in the position of optimum function. A stiff stable knee is far more serviceable than one with a few degrees of painful motion. Rarely are the bone ends implicated in the infectious process. If such an event occurs, the problems of treatment are similar to those in osteomyelitis.

**Aspiration and Irrigation.** The technic of aspiration of the joint is described on page 498. Mention should be made of irrigation of the knee joint during the acute

stage. Although the author has employed this method as described by Cotton on several occasions he has not found it necessary since the method of aspiration and instillation of penicillin into the joint has been popularized.

**COTTON'S TECHNIC.** Under local anesthesia a cannula or a small trocar is inserted on each side of the joint; this is connected with a rubber tube attached to a douche can that is held at least 18 inches above the joint. From 3 to 5 gallons of normal saline are allowed to flood the infected area; first, the fluid is allowed to run into the joint until the articular capsule becomes distended; next, the irrigation tip is detached and the fluid is allowed to run out; this continues until the aforementioned volume of fluid is consumed. The procedure is repeated on alternate days until constitutional and local symptoms have subsided. Penicillin may be instilled into the joint at the termination of each irrigation. The after-care of the limb is similar to that described following treatment by aspiration. The author does not favor repeated irrigations as they minimize the bactericidal power of the synovial fluid and deprive the articular cartilage of nutrient materials.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Adams R. Treatise on Rheumatic Gout or Chronic Arthritis. London: Churchill, 1857.
- Albright F. Osteoporosis. *Ann Int Med.* 27: 861, 194.
- Allison, N. and Ghormley, R. K. *Diagnosis in Joint Disease*. New York: Wood, 1931.
- Applebaum E., Abraham, A., and Sinton, W. A case of serum sickness treated with procaine intravenously. *J.A.M.A.* 131: 1274, 1946.
- Bauer W. and Bennett G. A. Experimental and pathological studies in degenerative type of arthritis. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 18: 1, 1936.
- Bauer W. and Klemperer F. Gout, in Duncan, G. G. *Diseases of Metabolism*. Ed. 2. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1947.
- Bennett G. A. Medical criteria which govern relations of trauma to joint disease. *Clinics* 1: 1448, 1943.
- Histology of rheumatoid arthritis. Address before Chicago Rheumat. Soc. May 1947.
- Bennett G. A., Waine H., and Bauer W. Changes in the Knee Joint at Various Ages. New York: Commonwealth Fund, 1942.
- Bennett G. A., Zeller J. W., and Bauer W. Subcutaneous nodules of rheumatoid arthritis and rheumatic fever. Pathologic study. *Arch. Path.* 30: 70, 1940.
- Bennett, G. E. Discussion of cytologic study of synovial tissue. *J.A.M.A.* 117: 1560, 1941.
- Bernhardt, H. and Hench P. S. Bacteriology of blood in chronic infectious arthritis. *J. Infect. Dis.* 49: 489, 1931.
- Billings F. *Focal Infection*. New York: Appleton, 1916.
- Brailsford, J. F. *Radiology of Bone and Joints*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1944.
- Burbank R. Etiology and treatment of chronic

- arthritis J.A.M.A. 99 1489 1932 and New England J Med. 207 540 1932
- Cajori F A. Crouter C. Y., and Pemberton, R. The physiology of synovial fluid, Arch. Int. Med. 37 91, 1926
- Campbell, W. C., and Mitchner J M. An apparatus for the correction of flexion contracture of the knee, J Bone & Joint Surg. 7 416 1926
- Cecil R. L. The medical treatment of chronic arthritis J.A.M.A. 103 1583 1934
- Nonspecific protein therapy J.A.M.A. 105 1846 1935
- Present trends in the study of arthritis and rheumatism, Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin. 15 556 1940
- Cecil, R. L. Nicholls E. E. and Stainsby W. J. The etiology of rheumatoid arthritis Am. J. M. Sc. 181 12 1931
- Chandler F. A. Coronary disease of the hip J Internat. Coll. Surgeons 11 34 1948
- Charcot J M. Sur quelques arthropathies qui paraissent d'pendre d'une lesion du cerveau ou de la moelle epiniere Arch. physiol. norm. et path. 1 161 1868
- Clinical Lectures on Senile and Chronic Diseases London New Sydenham Soc., 1881
- Clawson, B J. Studies on the etiology of acute rheumatic fever J Infect. Dis. 36 444 1925
- Experiments relative to possible basis for vaccine therapy in acute rheumatic fever J Infect. Dis 49 90 1931
- Cleveland, M., and Smith A. D. Fusion of the knee joint in cases of Charcot disease J Bone & Joint Surg 13 4 1931
- Cole H. and Brown, L. T. Exercises for the development of good body mechanics in Mock H. E. Pemberton, R. and Coulter J. S. Principles and Practice of Physical Therapy Hagerstown Md., Prior 1933
- Compere E. L. Role of parathyroid glands and disease associated with demineralization of human skeleton. J Bone & Joint Surg 15 142 1933
- Comroe B I. Arthritis and Allied Conditions, Ed. 3 Philadelphia, Len 1944
- Coss J A., Jr and Boots R. H. Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis Study of 56 cases with note on skeletal changes. J Pediat 29 143 1946
- Cravener E. K. Device for overcoming non bony flexion contractures of the knee. J Bone & Joint Surg. 12 437 1930
- Crowe H W. Bacteriology and Surgery of Chronic Arthritis and Rheumatism London, Oxford Univ. 1921
- Davenport H. K. and Ranson, S W. Contracture resulting from tenotomy Arch. Surg 21 995 1930.
- Delano P J. Pathogenesis of Charcot's joint, Am J Roentgenol 56 189 1946
- DeLorimer A. A. The Arthropathies Chicago, Year Bk. Pub 1943
- de Takats G. Causalgic States and Neurotrophic Lesions of the Extremities Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery Ann Arbor Mich, Edwards Brothers Inc. 1944
- Dobner K. Adrenal function in rheumatoid arthritis Bull. Rheumat. Dis 2 5 1951
- Doub H. P. Roentgen diagnosis of chronic arthritis Radiology 24 391 1935
- Eloesser L. On the nature of neuropathic joints, Ann Surg 56 201 1917
- Ely L. W. Inflammation in Bones and Joints, Philadelphia Lippincott, 1923
- Fisher A. G. T. Manipulative Surgery, Principles and Practice, New York, Macmillan, 1926
- Chronic (Non-tuberculous) Arthritis, New York, Macmillan 1929
- Flagstad, A. E. Traction apparatus used in correcting equinus deformities J Bone & Joint Surg 13 718 1926
- Forkner C. E., Shands A. R., and Poston M. A. Synovial fluid in chronic arthritis bacteriology and cytology Arch. Int Med 42 675 1928
- Foster D. B., and Bassett, R. C. Neurogenic arthropathy (Charcot joint) associated with diabetic neuropathy Arch. Neurol & Psychiat. 57 173 1947
- Freeman, S., Fershing J., Wang C. C., and Smith L. C. Effect of ACTH on patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, in Mote J R. Proc. First Clinical ACTH Conference p. 509 Philadelphia, Blakiston 1950
- Freyberg R. H., Block, W. D. and Fromer M. F. Study of sulfur metabolism and the effect of sulfur administration in chronic arthritis, J Clin Investigation 19 423 1940.
- Fumati, R. V. Certain arthritic disturbances associated with parathyroidism J Bone & Joint Surg 15 112 1933
- Garrod A. Baring The Nature and Treatment of Gout and Rheumatic Gout London, Walton & Maberly 1859
- Garrod, A. Edward Treatise on Rheumatism and Rheumatoid Arthritis London Griffin 1890
- Ghormley R. K., and Cameron D. M. End results of synovectomy of the knee joint, J.A.M.A. 115 2023 1940
- Ghormley R. K., and Deacon A. E. Synovial membranes in various types of arthritis study by differential stains Am J Roentgenol. 35 40 1936.
- Gibson, A. Etiology of rheumatoid arthritis J Bone & Joint Surg 10 747 1928

- Golding C The differential diagnosis of advanced gout Brit J Rheumat. 1 31 1935
- Goldthwait J E. The forcible straightening of angular deformities of the knee by means of special mechanical appliances Boston M & S J 127 517 1892
- The differential diagnosis and treatment of the so-called rheumatoid diseases Boston M & S J 151 529 1904
- Goldthwait J E., Brown L. T., Swann L. T. and Kuhns, J. G. Body Mechanics in Health and Disease Ed. 3 Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1941
- Graef I Hickey D V and Altmann, V. Cardiac lesions in rheumatoid arthritis, in Slocumb C H. et al Rheumatic Diseases Postgraduate Series Philadelphia Saunders 1952
- Graubard, D. J. and Peterson M. C. Intravenous use of procaine in the management of arthritis J.A.M.A. 141 56 1949
- Hadjopoulos L. G. and Burbank, R. Correlation of experimental streptococci arthritis in rabbits with chronic rheumatoid arthritis J Bone & Joint Surg 14 471 1932
- Streptococci dissociation in pathogenesis of chronic rheumatoid arthritis J Bone & Joint Surg 18 19 1936
- Hall F. C. The value of estrogenic substance in "menopausal arthritis" M. Papers Christian Birthday Vol p 928 1936
- Menopause arthralgia study of 41 women at artificial menopause New England J Med. 219 1015 1938
- Heberden W. Commentaries on the History and Cure of Diseases London Payne 1802
- Hellman L. Production of acute gouty arthritis by adrenocorticotropin Science 109 280 1949
- Hench, P. S. The ameliorating effect of pregnancy on chronic atrophic (infectious rheumatoid) arthritis fibrositis and intermittent hydrarthrosis Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 13 161 1938
- Diagnosis and treatment of gout and gouty arthritis J.A.M.A. 116 453 1941
- Rheumatic diseases among American soldiers in World War II Ann Rheumat Dis 6 68 1947
- Hench P. S. et al. Present status of the problems of rheumatism Ann Int Med. 8 1315 1935
- Rheumatism and arthritis Ann Int Med 15 1032 1941
- Effect of a hormone of the adrenal cortex (11-hydroxy 11-dehydrocorticosterone Compound E) and of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone on rheumatoid arthritis Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 24 181 1949
- Effects of cortisone acetate and pituitary ACTH on rheumatoid arthritis rheumatic fever and certain other conditions Arch. Int Med. 58 545 1950
- Heyman, C. H. Manipulation of joints J Bone & Joint Surg 12 23 1930
- Hume D. M. and Wittenstein G. J. Relationship of the hypothalamus to pituitary adrenocortical function in Mote J. R. Proc. First Clinical ACTH Conference Philadelphia Blakiston 1950
- Intermittent hydrarthrosis (Queries and minor notes) J.A.M.A. 123 249 1943
- Irish W. H., and Stump J. P. Villous synovitis of knees due to improper weight distribution Arch. Phys Therapy 20 391 1939
- Ishmael, W. K. Degenerative arthritis Am. Pract. 4 97 1949
- Ishmael, W. K., Helfbaum A., Kuhn J. R., and Duffy J. Effects of certain steroid compounds on various manifestations of rheumatoid arthritis J Oklahoma M. A. 42 10 1949
- Jaeger C. H. Flexion deformity of knee, an improved method of correction Am J Surg 30 15 1916
- Jensen E. Case of flexion contracture of knee-joint (90 degrees) straightened by Mommensen's method Ugesk. Læger 89 1200 1927
- Jordan E. P. and Boland J. P. Results of blood culture in acute polyarthritis J Infect Dis 46 148 1930
- Jordan E. P. and Gaston D. Blood urea acid in disease J Clin Investigation 11 47 1932
- Jordan, E., et al. Primer on arthritis J.A.M.A. 119 1089 1942
- Kahn R. L. Tissue Immunity p. 5/6 Springfield, Ill. Thomas 1936
- Keefer C. S. and Myers W. K. The incidence and pathogenesis of degenerative arthritis. J.A.M.A. 102 811 1934
- Kendall, E. C. Cortisone Ann Int Med. 33 787 1950
- Kernwein G. and Lyons W. F. Neurarthropathy of the ankle joint from complete severance of the sciatic nerve Ann. Surg 115 267 1942
- Key J. A. Experimental arthritis reactions of joints to mild irritants J Bone & Joint Surg 11 05 1929
- Traumatic arthritis and mechanical factors in hypertrophic arthritis J Lab & Clin. Med. 15 1145 1930
- Hemophilic arthritis, Ann. Surg 95 193 1932
- Key J. A. and Large A. M. Histoplasmosis of knee J Bone & Joint Surg 24 281 1942
- King E. J. S. On some aspects of the pathology

- of hypertrophic Charcot's joints *Brit. J Surg* 18 113 1931
- Klemperer P Pollack, A. D., and Bachr G Diffuse collagen disease *J.A.M.A* 119 331 1942
- Kling D H. The Synovial Membrane and the Synovial Fluid, Los Angeles M. Press 1938
- Klinge, F., and Rodriguez, H. Experimental studies in the problem of gout and allergy *Beitr. z. path.* 103 350 1939
- Knaggs R. L. Diseases of Bone, New York Wood, 1926
- Knusely M. H. and Bloch E. H. Intravascular agglutination of erythrocytes in disease, *Proc. Inst. Med. Chicago* 15 No 12 1945
- Knusely M. H., Bloch, E. H., Eliot, T. S., and Warner L. Sludged blood, *Science* 106 431 1947
- Kuhns J G Posture and Exercises in Sternbrocker O Arthritis in Modern Practice, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1942
- Treatment of arthritic contractures of the knee *New England J Med.* 227 975 1942
- Treatment of arthritic contractures of the knee *Ann. Int. Med.* 19 July 1943
- Surgery in chronic arthritis *New England J Med.* 240 605 1949
- Kuhns J G., and Potter T Nylon arthroplasty of knee joint in chronic arthritis *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 91 351 1950
- Kuhns J G and Swalm L. T Disturbances of growth in chronic arthritis in children, *Am. J Dis. Child.* 43 1118 1932
- Lord J P Contractures of the knees with demonstration of appliances *Nebraska M. J* 12 26 1927
- Lowenstein, E. Rheumatic diseases and tuberculosis *Am. Rev. Tuberc.* 49 58 1944
- Lowman, C L. Rotatory subluxation at the knee, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 6 827 1924
- MacAusland, W R. Jr., and Gartland, J J The treatment of acute hemophilic hemarthrosis *New England J Med.* 247 755 1952
- Masland H. C A corrective device for soft tissue contractions of the knee and elbow joints *Am J Surg* 3 592 1927
- Merklen and Wolf Congress on gout, Paris (Foreign letters) *J.A.M.A* 105 1 82 1935
- Meyer K Cement substances of connective tissue *Ann. Rheumat Dis* 7 33 1948 (Discussion by Ragan, C., and Ropes, M. W.)
- Meyer K., and Ragan C Hyaluronic acid and rheumatic diseases *Mod. Concepts Cardiovasc. Dis* 17 Feb., 1948
- Miller D S and de Takats G Post traumatic dystrophy of the extremity (Sudeck's atrophy) *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 75 588 1942
- Mitchell, J K. On a new practice in acute and chronic rheumatism *Am J M. Sc.* 8 55 1831
- Mock, H. E. Pemberton R. and Coulter J S Principles and Practice of Physical Therapy vol. I chap 12 Hagerstown Md., Prior 1929
- Myers W K. and Keefer C S Antistreptolysin content of blood serum in rheumatic fever and rheumatoid arthritis *J Clin Investigation* 13 155 1934
- Myers W K. Keefer C S and Holmes W F Characteristics of synovial fluid in gonococcal arthritis *J Clin Investigation* 13 767 1934
- Nicholls E E and Stainsby W J Streptococcal agglutinins in chronic infectious arthritis *J Clin Investigation* 10 323 1931
- Nichols E H. and Richardson, F L. Arthritis deformans *J M Research* 21 149 1909
- Nicholson J T Pyogenic arthritis with pathologic dislocation of the hip in infants *J.A.M.A.* 141 826 1949
- Osgood, R. B A method of osteotomy of the lower end of the femur in case of permanent flexion of the knee-joint *Am J Orthop Surg* 11 336 1913
- Outland, T., and Hanlon C R The use of procaine hydrochloride as a therapeutic agent, *J.A.M.A.* 114 1330 1940
- Palmer W L. and Woodall, P S Cinchophen—Is there a safe method of administration? *J.A.M.A.* 107 760 1936
- Parker C A. Treatment of pathologically flexed knee *J.A.M.A.* 81 1198 1923
- Pemberton, R. The metabolism prevention and successful treatment of rheumatoid arthritis *Am J M. Sc.* 146 895 1913 147 111 265 423 1914
- Arthritis and Rheumatoid Condition Philadelphia, Lea 1930
- Pemberton, R., and Foster G L. Studies on arthritis in the army based on four hundred cases *Arch. Int. Med.* 25 243 1920
- Premister D B The effect of pressure on articular surfaces in pyogenic and tuberculous arthritides and its bearing on treatment *Ann. Surg* 80 481 1924
- Piersol, G M., and Hollander J L. Optimum rest-exercise balance in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, *Arch. Phys. Med.* 28 500 1947
- Pommer G Mikroskopische Befunde bei Arthritis deformans *Deutsche Akad. Wiss. Wien*, 89 1913
- Die funktionelle Theorie der Arthritis deformans *Arch. orthop. Chir* 17 3/3 1920
- Potter H E. X ray findings in neuropathic joints *J Nerv. & Ment Dis.* 45 449 1917



- Potts W J Pathology of Charcot joints Ann Surg 86 596 1921
- Putti V Treatment of arthritis deformans of the hip (degenerative arthritis in American literature) Internat Clin 4 1 1928
- Rich, A. R. Role of hypersensitivity in periarthritis nodosa Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. 71 123 1942
- Ridlon J and Berkhiser E J Neuropathic arthropathies Charcot's spines J.A.M.A. 79 146, 1922
- Roche M, Thorn G W., and Hills, A. G. Levels of circulating eosinophils and their response to ACTH in surgery New England J Med. 242 307 1950.
- Rome H P and Braceland, F J Use of cortisone and ACTH in certain diseases. Psychiatric aspects Proc Staff Meet. Mayo Clin 25 495 1950
- Ropes, M. W., and Bauer W The origin and nature of normal synovial fluid. J.A.M.A. 113 1160 1939
- Schlesinger H Die Syringomyelia, Ed. 2 Leipzig 1902
- Seifter J., Baedes D H. Begany A. J and Ehrlich, W E. Influence of hyaluronidase and steroids on permeability of synovial membranes Proc. Soc. Exper Biol & Med. 72 277 1949
- Shands, A. R. Neuropathies of the bones and joints, Arch. Surg. 20 614 1930
- Short, C L. and Bauer W Medical progress Treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, New England J Med 127 442 1942
- Shwartzman G Klemperer P and Gerber I E Phenomenon of local tissue reactivity to bacterial filtrates J.A.M.A. 107 1946 1936
- Sidel N and Abrams, M. Treatment of chronic arthritis results of vaccine therapy with saline injections used as controls J.A.M.A. 114 1740 1940.
- Silver D The role of the capsule in joint contractures With especial reference to subperiosteal separation J Bone & Joint Surg. 9 96 1927
- Stocumb C H Polley H. F and Hench, P S Effects of cortisone and ACTH on patients with rheumatoid arthritis Proc. Staff Meet. Mayo Clin. 25 476 1950
- Small, J. C Treatment of rheumatic carditis with aqueous extracts of streptococci, J Lab & Clin. Med. 19 695 1934
- Soto-Hall R. Fusion in Charcot joints of the knee a new technique for arthrodesis Ann. Surg. 108 124 1938
- Speed, K Transarticular capsulorrhaphy S Clin. Chicago 2 01 1918
- Steinbrocker O., and Samuels S S Artificial circulation of lower extremities in chronic arthritis, J Lab & Clin. Med. 26 974 1941
- Steindler A. Tabetic arthropathies J.A.M.A. 96 250 1931
- Steindler A., Williams L. A. and Puig J Tabetic arthropathies Urol. & Cutan. Rev. 46 633 1942
- Still G F Common Disorders and Diseases of Childhood, Ed. 2 London, Frowde, 1912
- Thomas, H B Some orthopaedic findings in ninety-eight cases of haemophilia J Bone & Joint Surg 18 140 1936
- Trauner L Ueber vegetative Störungen beim Rheumatismus in Schön, R. Der Rheumatismus Dresden Steinkopf 1940
- Traut, E. F The glucose tolerance in arthritis, J Metab Res 3 18, 1925 (Pub by Psychiatric Inst., Morristown, N J)
- Blood cultures in chronic arthritis J Infect Dis 52 230 1933
- Blood culture studies in iritis, Am J Ophth 17 106 1934
- Skin tests with bacterial products in arthritic and non-arthritic individuals J Allergy 8 501 1937
- Dissociation of streptococci in arthritis, Acta rheum 10 4 1938
- Traut, E. F., Campione K M and Kisilis J P Joint changes in immobilized extremities Arthritis-like deformities following lesions of the central nervous system in Stocumb C. H et al. Rheumatic Diseases Postgraduate Series, Philadelphia, Saunders 1952
- Traut E. F and Vrtak, E. G Statistical study of allergy in arthritis, Ann. Int. Med. 13 761 1940
- Ward, L. S., Stocumb C H Polley H. F Lowman, E. W., and Hench P S Clinical effects of cortisone administered orally to patients with rheumatoid arthritis Proc Staff Meet., Mayo Clin 26 361 1951
- Wilson P D Posterior capsuloplasty in certain flexion contractures of the knee J Bone & Joint Surg 11 40 1929
- Wolbach, S B Vitamin A deficiency and excess in relation to skeletal growth (Ludvig Hektoen lecture) Proc Inst Med. Chicago 16 118 1946 J Bone & Joint Surg 29 171 1947
- Wolfson W Q Cohn C and Levine R Rapid treatment of acute gouty arthritis by concurrent administration of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and Colchicine Abstr J Lab & Clin. Med 34 1 66 1949
- Wolfson W Q Huddleston B., and Levine R The transport and excretion of uric acid in man

- 11 The endogenous uric acid-like chromogen of biological fluids J Clin. Investigation 26 995 1947
- Wolfson W Q., Levine, R., Cohn, C., Rosenberg E. F., Hunt H. D., and Guterman H S Adrenocortical dysfunction in gout *in* Stocumb C H., et al. Rheumatic Diseases, Postgraduate Series Philadelphia, Saunders 1952
- Wright, A. E Vaccine therapy Lancet 2 863 1910
- Yount C. C. The role of the tensor fasciae femoris in certain deformities of the lower extremities, J Bone & Joint Surg. 8 171 1926

## Surgical Approaches and Procedures

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Knowledge of the topographic anatomy and comprehension of the intricate functional mechanism of the knee joint is essential before one can perform with safety, surgical procedures in this region. Such information ensures the safety of vital structures in the field of operation facilitates adequate exposure of the desired areas and guarantees restoration of maximum function. In general whenever feasible approaches to specific regions should be designed to avoid the pathways of important nerves, blood vessels and ligaments. In some instances however this is not possible. If such is the case the structures should be visualized clearly and protected from injury during the course of the operation. This is particularly true when incisions are made in the posterior region of the knee joint.

Primarily the functions of the knee joint are to allow free rhythmical locomotion and to provide stability for the lower limb. Because it occupies a position between the ankle and the hip joint both possessing wide and diversified arcs of motions the knee joint functions at a mechanical disadvantage. It is able to overcome this handicap by virtue of the configuration of its bony elements, its strong ligamentous apparatus and the powerful muscles which cross the anterior, posterior, medial and lateral aspects of the joint. The quadriceps apparatus plays a major role in attaining the functional requisites of this articulation. The goal of operative procedures in the region of the knee joint is to restore optimum painless function and stability. In

order to achieve this goal, it becomes mandatory that the surgeon have an accurate evaluation of the role that each structure plays, singly or in combination with other structures in the over-all performance of the knee joint. Furthermore he must know the anatomic peculiarities of this region and the alterations that are compatible with good function. In the light of this information certain modifications in the normal anatomy of the region are justifiable providing they do not preclude good function.

For example it has been demonstrated clinically that removal of the patella does not impair seriously the efficiency of the quadriceps apparatus, hence in selected cases it is a justifiable procedure. On the other hand the protective nature of the patella to the anterior articular surfaces of the femoral condyles and its role in enhancing quadriceps power must not be underestimated making it apparent that this structure must not be deleted indiscriminately. One peculiarity of this region is the rapidity with which the vasti muscles, particularly the vastus medialis, lose tone and volume after any form of trauma. All are aware of the seriousness of this undesirable sequel. It is responsible for varying degrees of instability of the knee joint and predisposes this articulation to intra-articular damage resulting in synovitis with effusion. It becomes apparent that when possible operations in this region must be designed to preserve the integrity of the quadriceps apparatus and to maintain or at least to restore rapidly volume and tone of the vasti muscles. Only in this manner can optimum function be restored in the shortest period possible. Fail

ure to respect the vulnerability of the quadriceps group of muscles will result in serious and protracted dysfunction of the knee joint

As a rule, operations on the knee are performed to correct some anatomic disorder or to remove disrupted or pathologic structures or tissues. In these cases the surgeon has a definitive plan in mind and proceeds accordingly. Not infrequently, however, an accurate diagnosis cannot be made prior to surgery, yet exploration of the joint is indicated. Occasionally the true nature of the pathologic abnormality is not ascertained until the affected region has been explored and visualized. The aforementioned circumstances make it mandatory that the surgeon possess sufficient clinical experience and technical skill in surgery of this region to handle with dexterity all lesions encountered.

### PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

It has been recorded previously that preservation of tone and volume of the vasti muscles is most essential in order to ensure normal function of the knee joint and to prevent sequelae capable of producing profound disability. To attain this goal when ever it is possible treatment should begin before the affected extremity is subjected to surgery. A carefully regulated and supervised regimen comprising rhythmic exercises of the quadriceps muscles, such as those described in the chapter dealing with disorders of the quadriceps apparatus is started at least 36 to 48 hours prior to operation. Every effort must be made to impress the patient with the urgency of this preoperative management. Once the patient has grasped the necessity of the exercises particularly the relationship that they bear to good function and rapid recovery, he invariably gives his utmost co-operation. Having mastered the exercises before operation most individuals have little difficulty in resuming them after surgery. This is in great contrast with those cases in which no

thought is given to the quadriceps muscles prior to operation. In many of these cases initiation of quadriceps drill after operation is a difficult feat, and in a few it is impossible.

### PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION OF LOCAL AREA

Numerous technics for preparation of the local area have been evolved in different clinics and hospitals. All have stout supporters. However, the truth is that by and large all are excellent technics if they are executed carefully in all details. Certain precautions must be mentioned. Strong chemical agents such as gasoline, benzene and iodine, if employed, should be used sparingly and removed carefully with alcohol or ether so that dermatitis does not follow and complicate the operative procedure. This is particularly important in fair individuals. Preliminary scrubbing of the part with soap and water, as is done in many technics, should be performed gently. Not infrequently, the skin shows mechanical irritation resulting from the rough and enthusiastic efforts of an assistant or a nurse who desires to cleanse the area thoroughly. Although it may appear to be superfluous the next precaution deserves mention. Care should be used in shaving the operative and the adjacent regions. Too frequently, these parts reveal numerous scratches and even patches of skin denuded of its superficial layers—the result of bearing down on a dull notched razor or of inexperience, lack of skill or carelessness in the use of a sharp blade.

The following technic is preferred by the writer. From 12 to 24 hours prior to operation the extremity is shaved carefully from the groin to above the malleoli. The next steps in the technic are performed under sterile precautions: the nurse puts on sterile gloves and uses sterile instruments from a tray set up especially for this phase of the preparation of the part. First, the skin is

cleansed gently with tincture of green soap using sterile cotton balls instead of gauze pads this tends to minimize mechanical irritation of the skin Next, the soap is washed away with sterile water, this is followed by the application of one coat of 2 per cent tincture of iodine which is removed with a solution of 70 per cent alcohol Finally the entire extremity is sponged with ether and wrapped in sterile towels

Immediately prior to operation after the patient has been anesthetized an Esmarch bandage is applied over the outer dressings from the toes to the middle of the thigh A pneumatic tourniquet is applied proximal to the Esmarch bandage and inflated to 300 mm then the Esmarch bandage and the dressings around the leg are removed Two coats of 1:1000 tincture of benzalkonium chloride (Zephiran) are applied from the groin to above the malleoli The last step comprises enclosing the entire limb in sterile stockinette rolled on from the toes and reaching as far as the groin A sandbag wrapped in a small sterile sheet is placed under the knee It is large enough to flex the knee about 30° If the operation to be performed is on the posterior aspect of the knee joint the limb is prepared in the same manner but the patient is placed in the prone position with the extremity extended

Although the incision should be adequately large to ensure free accessibility to the desired region unduly large incisions are to be condemned The skin incision is made through the stockinette With another scalpel the skin flaps are carefully mobilized for a short distance The cut edges of the stockinette are drawn over the skin margins and clipped in place by Michel clips

#### POSITION OF THE LIMB

The position of the limb varies with different surgeons When it is desired to expose the semilunar cartilages and the cruciate ligaments some prefer the leg to be flexed 90° believing that this position provides the best exposure of the intra-articular structures and of the articulating surface of the

tibial plateau Others perform the same procedures with the limb flexed from 20° to 30° depending upon an assistant to rotate and adduct or abduct the lower leg during the operation The writer prefers the former position Each surgeon should choose that position which he believes facilitates for him to the utmost the performance of the operation in question.

#### MANAGEMENT OF TISSUES

It is essential to carry out surgical procedures with precision and rapidity Undue exposure of tissues favors air contamination and subjects tissue to mechanical trauma resulting from continued retraction At all times the soft tissues must be handled gently sharp dissection is to be preferred to blunt dissection and crushing of soft tissues must be avoided The use of dry gauze sponges in the wound adds further insults to the tissues Observance of these elementary surgical principles minimizes the incidence of postoperative surgical complications and favors primary healing of the wound Failure to observe them may result in pronounced and persistent postoperative effusion, hemarthrosis and even sepsis.

Hemostasis can be achieved by a well applied tourniquet However when large vessels are encountered and severed the ends are ligated by fine cotton ligatures This ensures against bleeding after the tourniquet is removed When ligatures are employed they should be placed so that they include only the severed ends of the vessels or only as little of the surrounding tissues as possible the ligatures are cut close to the surgical knot in order to minimize the amount of foreign material in the wound

Foreign materials in the wound or in the joint are sources of irritation and not conducive to rapid primary healing Bone particles and fragments of articular cartilage act in a similar manner When the operative procedure necessitates drilling of bone bone spicules and particles are disseminated throughout the soft tissues and into the

joint. In such instances the region to be drilled is isolated from the adjacent tissues by wet sterile sponges to which the bone particles adhere, this facilitates their removal. At the completion of the work on the bone and before the wound is closed, the joint and the soft tissues are flushed gently with warm, sterile, normal saline solution.

### CLOSURE OF WOUND

Accurate closure of the edges of the wound ensures primary healing. However suture materials like other foreign materials should be used sparingly, yet the strength and the number of sutures should not be sacrificed to the extent that wound closure is inadequate. The writer prefers the use of No. 30 cotton sutures. It is not essential to close the wound in layers. Incisions made in the anterior, the medial and the lateral aspects of the knee, the edges of the outer fascia, the capsule and the synovial membrane are approximated by interrupted sutures so placed that the sutures do not penetrate the inner surface of the synovial membrane. The skin is closed with interrupted sutures of the same material.

### DRESSINGS

After operation and before release of the tourniquet, a properly applied pressure bandage maintains hemostasis. Compression of the part must be uniform and such that it ensures hemostasis but does not obstruct the circulation. Not infrequently a dressing applied too tightly causes swelling of the limb below the knee and severe pain in the operative region and joint. This is particularly true if the entire limb is not enclosed in the compression bandage. The following dressing is used by the writer: 2 sterile gauze pads are laid directly over the incision. 2 or 3 layers of cotton surround the limb from mid thigh to the middle of the lower leg. The entire limb is enclosed in an elastic bandage 3 inches wide, extending from the toes to the middle of the thigh. It is so applied that snug uniform compression

is made on the entire limb. Finally the tourniquet is removed.

### ANESTHESIA

The choice of anesthesia is governed by the operation to be performed, the physical status and the age of the patient, as well as the anticipated duration of the operation. In general, Intravenous Pentothal Sodium when not contraindicated, is an excellent anesthetic agent. Spinal anesthesia induced by a single injection or by continuous administration of the anesthetic agent, depending upon the duration of the operation, is preferred by some men particularly when handling patients in the younger age groups, such as are found in military hospitals. Intratracheal anesthesia is by far the most desirable anesthesia when the patient must assume the prone position on the operating table. It eliminates the many and customary difficulties encountered with routine inhalation anesthesia.

### SEPSIS

Fortunately, the undesirable and tragic complication of sepsis following surgery on the knee joint is encountered less frequently than in former years. When it does occur it is usually the result of faulty aseptic technique or poor surgical judgment. However it may arise from implantation into the operative area of micro-organisms by way of the blood stream from a focus elsewhere in the body. Although the incidence of this sequel is small, its possibility should be constantly in the minds of surgeons and no precautions should be disregarded which will minimize its occurrence. For this reason the writer injects 10 cc. of penicillin (250 units per cc.) into the knee joint and over the wound edge after operation. It is a valuable adjunct as a prophylactic agent and adds to the defense against infection. More important than the administration of antibiotics prophylactically is the observance of the surgical principles mentioned previously, particularly those dealing with gentle manipulation of

soft tissues avoidance of prolonged and forceful retraction and meticulous aseptic technic.

Should such a complication supervene the patient discloses both constitutional and local manifestations. Generally the onset is sudden and the character of the symptoms is severe. The patient reveals evidence of toxic absorption manifested by hyperpyrexia dehydration, hypoproteinemia and loss of body weight. Locally the capsule of the knee joint becomes greatly distended and the periarticular tissues exhibit increased local temperature. Pain is constant and it is accentuated by the slightest movement of the joint surfaces.

Treatment should be directed toward eradication of the infection and restoration of the normal physiology of the patient. Local treatment comprises daily aspiration of the joint and the injection of penicillin solution (250 units per cc) into the joint cavity. In addition systematic administration of penicillin singly or in combination with other antibiotics such as aureomycin is carried out. It is important to identify and culture the offending organism obtained at the first aspiration also the susceptibility of the organism to penicillin and other antibiotics should be determined at this time. Such a regimen is continued until the infection is controlled as evidenced by improvement in the general condition of the patient return of the temperature to normal levels and subsidence of pain and swelling of the joint. During this period considerable comfort may be afforded the patient by applying traction to the extremity below the knee from 3 to 5 pounds is sufficient. The general condition of the patient is improved by administering adequate amounts of fluid by the intravenous route if necessary and by maintaining at all times the electrolytes in balance. Small transfusions of whole blood given at frequent intervals are valuable adjuncts in restoring normal protein levels combating anemia and supplying needed antibodies and buffer substances.

Under such management the necessity of open drainage of the joint is minimized.

## ANATOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

In Chapter 3 "Normal Anatomy of the Knee Joint" the anatomy of this region was dealt with in detail. However in order to facilitate comprehension of the numerous surgical approaches to this articulation some of the more pertinent anatomic features will be reviewed briefly.

### BONY ELEMENTS

The bony components of the knee joint comprise the condyles of the femur the tuberosities of the tibia and the patella. In spite of the fact that it is the largest joint in the body, its bony configuration is such that it provides little toward stability. Strength and stability are provided by the surrounding soft tissue elements that comprise the muscular apparatus motorizing the joint the capsule and the ligamentous structures.

### CAPSULE

Unlike most of the joints of the extremities the articular cavity of the knee joint is not enclosed completely by a distinct fibrous capsule. Dissection of several hundred knee joints failed to disclose even in a single instance a well-defined capsule on the anterior aspect of the joint. In this region the articular cavity is limited by the aponeurosis of the vasti the fascia lata the iliotibial band the quadriceps tendon the articular surface of the patella and the patellar tendon. This is in contradistinction to the synovial membrane in this region which in all instances is a very prominent structure. On the posterior aspect of the joint the capsule is a stout fibrous structure extending from the proximal margins of the articular surfaces of the femoral condyles and the intrcondylar line to the posterior border of the tibial plateaus. Posteriorly the capsule is reinforced by a fibrous expansion from the

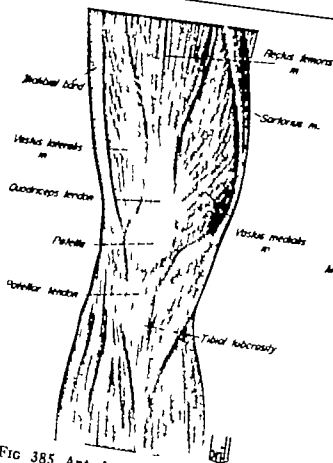


FIG 385 Anterior aspect of the knee joint the distal third of the thigh and the proximal third of the leg showing the landmarks of this region and the anatomic arrangement of the superficial components of the quadriceps muscle. The thigh and the knee are invested in the fascia lata.

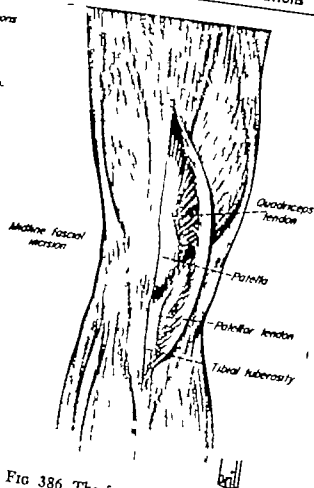


FIG 386 The fascia lata has been reflected from the anteromedial aspect of the knee. Note that the superficial layer of the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis extends across the patella and blends with the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis.

#### TENDON OF THE QUADRICEPS FEMORIS

The quadriceps tendon comprises 3 distinct laminae (Fig 18). The superficial layer consists of the tendon of the rectus femoris, the deep tendon of the vastus intermedius and the intermediate tendons of the vastus lateralis and medialis. At the lower end of the thigh the 3 strata blend to form a stout single structure which inserts into the superior and the lateral margins of the patella. Some fibers pass directly downward over the front of the patella and are continuous with the fibers of the patellar ligament. Some of the tendon fibers of the vastus lateralis and medialis form a broad aponeurosis on either side of the patella which occupies a position between the collateral ligaments and the corresponding



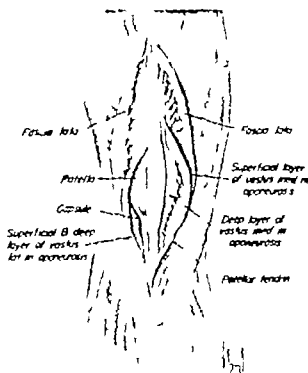


FIG. 387 Note the 2 layers of the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and their sites of insertion. The superficial layer is continuous with the deep fascia of the leg whereas the deep layer inserts into the medial margin of the patella and into the proximal border of the inner tibial tuberosity.

borders of the patella and the patellar tendon (Fig 19). As pointed out by Abbott and Carpenter the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis covers the anteromedial aspect of the knee joint and divides into 2 layers superficial and deep. The superficial layer is projected across the anterior surface of the patella and the patellar tendon and blends with the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis. Distal to the tibial tubercle it fuses with the deep fascia of the leg. The deep layer of the aponeurosis inserts into the medial margin of the patella and the proximal border of the inner tibial tuberosity. On the anterolateral aspect of the knee joint the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis fuses firmly with the deep fascia and inserts into the lateral margin of the patella and the proximal border of the outer tibial tuberosity. It also blends with the iliotibial band

Directly beneath the aforementioned aponeurosis lies the synovial lining of the joint (Figs 385, 386, 387).

### SYNOVIALIS

As recorded previously the synovialis arises from the superficial cells of the structures destined to be the capsule and the intracapsular components of the joint. This is achieved by a process of rearrangement of the cells rather than by differentiation, and the membrane appears after the development of the menisci, the cruciate ligaments and the capsule. In the light of this information it becomes apparent that the cruciate ligaments are not extrasynovial in the sense that they arise as extra-articular structures and later migrate into the joint carrying with them a reflected layer of synovial membrane. In the adult joint the cruciates like the infrapatellar fat pad are excluded from the joint cavity by the synovialis but nevertheless are intracapsular structures like the membrane itself.

The synovialis lines the posterior and the lateral portions of the fibrous capsule. Anteriorly where the capsule is deficient it is projected upward on the anterior surface of the femur under the quadriceps muscle as a well-defined pouch which as a rule communicates with the suprapatellar bursa (Fig 43). The articularis genu muscle which lies under the cover of the vastus intermedius inserts into the proximal aspect of the pouch. By this arrangement the synovial membrane is drawn upward when the leg is extended. From its posterior region the synovia gives off several prolongations which have clinical significance. One such projection envelops the tendon of the popliteus muscle forming a cul-de-sac in this region. Occasionally it is continuous with the joint cavity of the upper tibiofibular joint. Another is found on the posterior and the medial aspects and communicates in many instances with the relatively large bursa found constantly between the tendon of the semimembranosus and the medial

head of the gastrocnemius. A thick prolongation is found between the lateral condyle and the tendon of origin of the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle. Anteriorly, a pad of fatty tissue, varying in size and roughly pyramidal in shape, lies in the interval distal to the apex of the patella and the upper anterior border of the tibia in front of the intercondyloid eminences of the tibia. This fatty mass has a medial and lateral extension, semilunar pads, which project into the joint cavity and act as buffers for the femoral condyles when the joint is in a position of extension and hyperextension. It is covered by synovialis, making it extrasynovial but intra articular.

From the central portion or body of the infrapatellar fat pad a delicate fold of synovial tissue, ligamentum mucosum, arises and proceeds upward and posteriorly to gain attachment on the intercondylar notch of the femur immediately in front of the femoral attachment of the anterior cruciate ligament. The cruciate ligaments are the most important structures in the posterior region of the joint. In some instances only the anterior and the lateral aspects of the posterior cruciate are covered with synovial membrane, the posterior surface being in close contact with the fibrous capsule; in other instances the entire ligament is enveloped by the membrane. The anterior cruciate is always enclosed completely by synovialis. These structures like the infrapatellar fat pad are extrasynovial but are intra articular.

#### BURSÆ

Bursæ in the region of the knee joint are considered in detail in Chapter 3. 'Normal Anatomy of the Knee Joint' (Fig. 45). For the sake of emphasis, only the ones having important clinical and surgical significance will be discussed in this section. Three bursæ are found constantly in the anterior aspect of the knee: they are the prepatellar bursa and the superficial and the deep infrapatellar bursa. The prepatellar bursa occu-

pies a position immediately under skin overlying the anterior surface of the patella, the superficial infrapatellar surface lies between the skin and the anterior surface of the tendon of the patella, the deep infrapatellar bursa is located on the anterior surface of the tibia under cover of the patellar tendon. On the medial and the posteromedial aspects of the knee joint, 3 important bursæ are encountered constantly: (1) the medial gastrocnemius bursa, situated between the medial tendon of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle and the tendon of the semimembranosus which frequently connects with the articular cavity of the knee joint; (2) the semimembranosus bursa located immediately beneath the tendon of the semimembranosus muscle at its point of insertion into the tuberosity of the tibia, and (3) a bursa placed between the tendons of the sartorius, gracilis, and the semitendinosus muscles and the outer surface of the tibial collateral ligament. On the lateral and the posterolateral aspects of the knee joint 4 bursæ are present: (1) the lateral gastrocnemius bursa, placed between the lateral tendon of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle and the fibrous capsule; (2) a bursa situated between the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle and the fibular collateral ligament; (3) a small bursa between the fibular collateral ligament and the tendon of the popliteus muscle; and (4) a bursa between the tendon of the popliteus muscle and the lateral condyle of the femur. As noted previously, the last bursa mentioned is really a prolongation of the synovial lining of the knee joint on the popliteus tendon, forming a cul-de-sac in this region. It was noted in the specimens studied in the investigation on the mechanics of the knee joint that frequently a bursa was encountered between the superficial anterior portion of the tibial collateral ligament and the deep layer of the ligament which is continuous with the periphery of the meniscus. The bursa occupied a position opposite the meniscus, or inferior to the meniscus, between the tibial collateral liga-

ment and the fibrous capsule or between the superficial anterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the shaft of the tibia this was encountered relatively frequently. These observations substantiate those of Brantigan and Voshell who also described a bursa distal to the meniscus and one between the tibial collateral ligament and the capsule.

### ARTERIES

Knowledge of the location and the course of the main arteries forming the arterial network around the knee joint is essential to avoid unnecessary division of these vessels during operative procedure in this region or if their severance is necessary to facilitate their exposure (Figs. 36 and 50).

A rich arterial network exists around the knee joint and supplies blood both to the superficial and the deep extra articular structures and also to the intra articular elements of the joint. Two well-defined anastomoses arising from 3 arterial arches are discernible—a superficial and a deep—the former is located at the level of the upper pole of the patella its vessels lie between the superficial fibers of the quadriceps muscle the latter lies below the level of the patella and is formed by 2 deep arches traversing the infrapatellar fat pad beneath the patellar tendon. The arterial arches are formed by the terminal branches of the 4 genicular arteries the highest genicular (Genus superma) the descending branch of the lateral femoral circumflex and the anterior recurrent tibial artery. The 2 superior genicular arteries—medial and lateral—are given off from the popliteal artery at the level of the femoral condyles and proceed around the inner and the outer aspects of the femur under cover of the hamstring muscles. They pass through the inner and the outer intermuscular septa respectively and continue anteriorly to the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis where they anastomose with each other and with the highest genicular the descending branch of

the lateral femoral circumflex and the inferior genicular arteries. The inferior medial and lateral genicular arteries are given off from the popliteal artery immediately below the distal margin of the oblique popliteal ligament. They wind around the bone under cover of the tibial and the fibular collateral ligaments to reach the anterior aspect of the joint where beneath the patellar ligament they anastomose with each other and with the superior genicular arteries thereby completing the arterial network on the anterior margin of the knee joint. The azygos genicular (middle genicular) artery arises from the posterior aspect of the popliteal artery. It is smaller than the other 4 genicular arteries and together with the articular branch of the obturator nerve pierces the popliteal ligament to reach the joint cavity. It is distributed to the synovial membrane the infrapatellar fat pad and the cruciate ligaments.

### CUTANEOUS NERVES

All aspects of the integument investing the knee joint are amply supplied by sensory nerves (Fig. 52). Knowledge of the topographic anatomy of these structures is mandatory in order to avoid division of the nerves during operative procedures. Severance of the cutaneous nerves particularly in the anteromedial region of the knee joint may give rise to unpleasant areas of anesthesia or paresthesia in the cutaneous distribution of the nerve distal to its point of division. Occasionally painful neuromata develop in the divided proximal end of the nerve which may be sources of considerable annoyance and discomfort. Occasionally as a result of direct injury to the nerves or constriction of the nerves in scar tissue numbness pain and paresthesia ensue in the cutaneous fields supplied by the affected nerve. This unpleasant sequel is known as *neuralgia paresthetica* which is encountered most frequently in lesions of the lateral cutaneous nerves and its branches.

The cutaneous nerves distributed to the

skin around the knee joint are the anterior division of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve of the thigh, the intermediate cutaneous nerve of the thigh and the saphenous nerve, both being branches of the femoral nerve, the infrapatellar nerve, a branch of the saphenous nerve the anterior and the posterior branches of the medial or internal cutaneous nerve which is also a branch of the femoral nerve the terminal branches of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve which arises from the anterior divisions of the first three sacral nerves the lateral cutaneous nerve of the calf, a branch of the common peroneal the peroneal anastomatic nerve of the leg a terminal branch of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the leg, and the medial cutaneous nerve of the calf, the cutaneous branch of the tibial (internal popliteal) nerve. The terminal filaments of the branches of the femoral nerve which are distributed to the skin of the anterior aspect of the knee joint form an interesting nerve plexus the patellar plexus.

## HISTORICAL REVIEW OF SURGICAL APPROACHES TO THE KNEE JOINT

The numerous surgical approaches to the knee joint in common use at the present time evolved from a desire on the part of workers interested in the disorders of this articulation to eradicate the causative factors responsible for a large group of lesions all of which possessed a common denominator namely persistent or recurrent instability of the joint. As early as the fifteenth century Paré was cognizant of the fact that in some instances osteochondral bodies or joint mice lying free in the joint were responsible for the disabling syndrome. Later Monro expressed the opinion that these loose bodies might originate from the articulating cartilage of the joint. As a general rule these cases in the days of the aforementioned observers, were treated by manipulative methods practiced by bone setters who were prevalent in this period. Stimu-

lated by the work of Goodsur and Hunter, William Hey, a surgeon of Leeds, came to the conclusion that the menisci in many instances were the etiologic factors responsible for recurrent instability of the knee joint. In his writings he recorded the pathologic changes noted in joints so affected and emphasized in particular the abnormalities of the semilunar cartilages these comprised fractures and displacement of the menisci. In 1784 for the first time the designation "internal derangement" of the knee joint appeared in a publication written by Hey. He also recommended and described a manipulative method for the treatment of derangements of the menisci causing locking of the joint—a method which was used until the last decades of the nineteenth century. For loose bodies he favored prolonged immobilization of the extremity. Interest in the lesions of the knee joint was stimulated further by the meticulous investigations of the Weber brothers of Göttingen and Leipzig (1886) and of Meyer of Zurich (1873) who were concerned primarily with the functional mechanism of the individual components of the knee joint. Meyer was the first to focus our attention on the peculiarities of the condyles of the femur and described the mechanics of the "screw movement" of the knee joint when the leg is extended fully from a position of flexion.

The work of the aforementioned observers, together with that of other notable contributors, as Hugh Owen Thomas and Hood prompted surgical intervention for the correction of noninfective and traumatic disorders of the knee joint. In spite of the knowledge that Paré as early as the sixteenth century had attempted surgical removal of loose bodies in the knee joint, the hazards associated with any surgical procedure on an articulation comprised staunch barriers to surgeons of this period. The chief obstacles were lack of anesthetic agents and the high incidence of postoperative infections following all operations. Nevertheless during the last decades of the nineteenth

century, courageous surgeons began to attack the problem from a surgical viewpoint. In 1866 Brodthurst removed a meniscus from the left knee joint. Arthrotomy was popularized by Thomas Annandale of Edinburgh when he published two articles, one in 1879 and the other in 1885, they were "Care of Loose Cartilages Recovered from the Knee Joint by Direct Incision with Antiseptic Precautions and Excision of the Internal Semilunar Cartilage Resulting in a Perfect Restoration of the Joint Movement." From the time of the first operation of Brodthurst in 1866 to 1900 excision of the menisci rapidly gained favor in Europe through the efforts of Lauenstein and Bruns in Germany, Giordano in Italy, and Braquehave and March in France. In the United States Goldthwait assured the American surgeons of the feasibility of arthrotomy in his articles "Knee Joint Surgery for Nontuberculous Conditions" (1900) and "Slipping or Current Dislocation of the Patella" (1904). During the first decades of the twentieth century a forceful wave of enthusiasm swept through the surgical clinics in Europe and America, resulting in the designing of numerous anatomic approaches to the knee joint and ingenious surgical techniques for the excision and the repair or reconstruction of disrupted soft tissue elements of the knee joint. Many of these approaches and techniques have weathered the test of time and the critical analysis that comes with end-result studies; many are still popular today. Some of them have been modified, but their basic principles remain the same; others have been discarded because of their impracticability. The anteromedial and anterolateral incisions of Sir Robert Jones in the Liverpool clinic provide sufficient exposure to excise the menisci without opening the joint widely. Many modifications of this incision have been designed. Timbrell Fisher (1926) changed the obliquity of the incision, but otherwise it is essentially the same. Jones' approach replaced in a measure the "J" incision devised by Kocher. Kocher (1894)

also described a lateral parapatellar incision in which the patellar ligament remained intact. von Langenbeck (1878) designed a semilunar medial parapatellar incision. These provided the basic principles upon which Krida (1925) devised his parapatellar or general utility incisions, whose popularity rapidly gained prominence.

The U incision of Putti (1921) provides excellent visualization of the inside of the knee joint, but it sacrifices the integrity of the patellar ligament, which is severed in order to allow upward reflection of the patella. Although this approach is seldom used for excision of menisci or reconstruction and repair of the cruciate ligaments, it is a favorite approach for arthrodesis of the knee joint.

The success achieved by the various anterior approaches to the knee joint for the removal of pathologic menisci stimulated surgeons to investigate other regions of the knee joint and to devise reconstructive techniques for repair or replacement of the cruciate and the collateral ligaments. New posterior incisions were devised, or old ones were modified. Brackett and Osgood (1911) published the description of a posterior incision for the removal of joint mice in the posterior capsule of the knee joint. Putti (1921) and Henderson (1928) also described approaches to the posterior region of the knee joint. Operations for reconstruction of the cruciate ligaments were first popularized by Hey Grooves (1917). His methods were modified by Campbell, Carell, Callie, and Le Mesurier. Reconstruction of the collateral ligaments also began to gain favor, and in 1924 Edwards worked out an ingenious technique for repair of the collateral ligaments using fascia lata and a portion of the biceps tendon to repair the lateral ligament. A method of release of flexion contractures of the knee joint by a posterior capsulotomy was devised by Wilson (1929).

With the acquisition of refinement in aseptic technique and the attainment of skill in the handling of the bony and the soft

tissue elements of joints, surgery of the knee joint made rapid strides. Chemotherapy and antibiotics add even a greater impetus to surgical investigation of all joints. Other pathologic processes of the various elements of the knee joint other than those affecting the menisci, the cruciate and the collateral ligaments were subjected to closer scrutiny and surgical methods for their correction were devised. One of the problems under consideration was recurrent dislocation of the patella. This entity was attacked from a surgical viewpoint as early as 1850 when Heller, according to Huebscher, attempted to correct the disorder by scarifying the medial aspect of the joint capsule, hoping to cause sufficient contracture of tissues to prevent displacement of the patella to the outer side. Hoffa (1890) advanced reefing of the tissues on the medial side of the patella. Goldthwait (1904) created a check rein against lateral dislocation by transplanting the outer one half of the patellar ligament to the inner aspect of the tibia, and in 1930 Hauser recommended the transplantation of the entire patellar tendon with its bony insertion to the inner aspect of the tibia. Other surgeons developed different approaches to this problem. Realizing that developmental malformation of the lateral condyle of the femur was one of the reasons for recurrent lateral dislocation of the patella, Robert Jones elevated the lateral femoral condyle by doing an osteotomy through the base of the condyle in the coronal plane and then prying it forward. Later Albee attempted retaining the elevated anterior portion of the split condyle in place by inserting a bone graft between the two segments. More recently ablation of the patella is gaining favor in some quarters for recurrent dislocations. Excision of the patella for other reasons than recurrent dislocation was reported as early as 1860 by Putz of Strasbourg and in 1902 Joachimsthal reported a case of congenital absence of the patella with normal joint function. Encouraged by Putz's work, Murphy, in the

United States, excised the patella for tuberculosis of that bone, while Heineck at about the same time reported a series of patellectomies, some of which were performed because of severe comminution of the bone. For a while patellectomy was seldom performed until the subject was reopened by Brooke in 1936, who was of the opinion that this bone was in the process of phylogenetic reduction, a view with which the author is not in accord. His work and enthusiasm initiated renewed interest in disorders of the patella and brought to prominence patellectomy for many lesions, such as recurrent dislocations, fractures and osteoarthritis. However, this problem needs re-evaluation because it is becoming progressively more apparent that, in many instances, ablation of the patella is being practiced needlessly.

## SURGICAL APPROACHES TO THE ANTERIOR REGION OF THE KNEE JOINT

### LANDMARKS

Knowledge of the topographic anatomy of this region is essential in order to facilitate operative approaches and to recognize deviations from the normal which may be present (Fig. 388). In general, the bony components are relatively prominent structures and any abnormal alterations are apprehended readily. Different degrees of flexion and extension of the joint produce a shift in position of the landmarks, making it necessary to be familiar with the location of the landmarks with the various positions of the joint. The only constant feature is the distance between the apex of the patella and the insertion of the ligament of the patella into the tibial tuberosity. The inelasticity of the patellar tendon makes this a constant interval regardless of the position of the joint. As noted previously, the extended knee joint possesses a normal valgity of  $10^{\circ}$  to  $12^{\circ}$  corresponding to the axial deviation between the tibia and the femur. Although this angle varies slightly in different

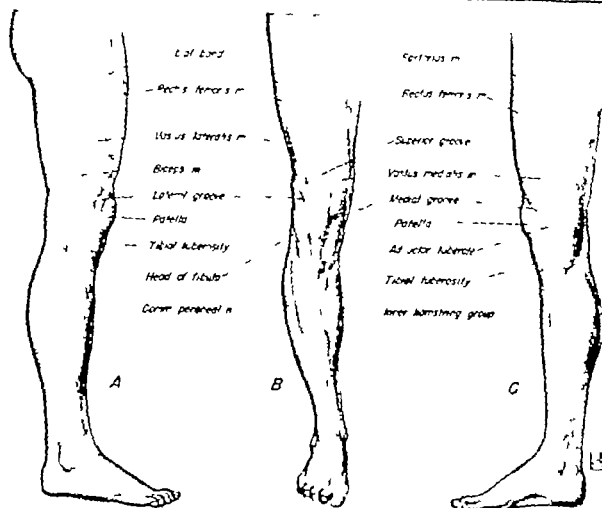


FIG. 388 Landmarks on the anterior, anteromedial and the anterolateral aspects of the knee joint.

individuals marked variance, either in the way of an increase or a decrease of the angle is consistent with pathologic alterations as genu valgum or genu varum. As a rule the normal deviation is greater in females than in males.

On the anterior aspect of the knee joint the patella stands out as a prominent bony mass, the configuration being detected readily by inspection and palpation. With the knee extended and the quadriceps relaxed this bony mass can be displaced with ease upward, downward and to either side. Extending proximally from the base of the patella the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle is readily discernible; the same is true of the patellar tendon which extends from the apex of the patella to the tibial

tuberosity. The length of the patellar ligament is approximately 5 cm; its mid-point lies opposite the joint line. In the presence of a large effusion in the knee joint the mobility of the patella is increased greatly and ballottement of this bone can be demonstrated by tapping it gently; this maneuver causes the patella to strike the anterior surface of the femur with each tap of the finger; the contact can be both felt and heard.

In the intervals between the lateral margins of the patella and the corresponding femoral condyles a distinct furrow is present running parallel with the patellar border. In thin individuals the furrows are deep and well demarcated while in individual with large quantities of subcutaneous fat

they may be shallow or obliterated. Another depression is discernible above the base of the patella connecting the two lateral furrows and producing a horseshoe-shaped peripatellar furrow (Fig. 388). The grooves parallel the upper and the lateral boundaries of the suprapatellar pouch. In knee joints distended with blood or an effusion, the peripatellar furrows are ballooned out to form semicircular convexity around the lateral margins and the base of the patella. As recorded previously the patella is freely movable with the knee extended, by displacing the patella laterally or medially the corresponding borders of the condyles of the femur can be palpated.

When flexion of the knee joint is initiated the patella stands out as a prominent bony structure in the anterior aspect of the joint. As flexion continues the patella becomes less prominent and more fixed. In full flexion it lies deeply in the intercondylar notch of the femur and then no lateral motion is demonstrable, the apex of the patella lies opposite the joint lines, and the articular surface of the intercondylar notch is palpable immediately proximal to its base.

Below the apex of the patella and on either side of the patellar ligament the pyramidal infrapatellar fat pad produces a soft fullness which becomes more prominent and tense when the quadriceps muscle is contracted. With the knee fully flexed the fullness on either side of the patellar ligament is accentuated but remains soft. On either side of the patellar ligament the joint between the femoral condyles and the tibia is readily palpable; this is particularly true when the knee is in a flexed position. In the region of the collateral ligaments the joint line is barely distinguishable because it lies under cover of these structures.

On the lateral aspect of the joint several pertinent structures must be considered. The enlarged anterior portion of the lateral condyle of the femur lies slightly in front of and proximal to the head of the fibula; this feature is demonstrated best when the knee

is flexed. The biceps tendon is readily palpable as it approaches its site of insertion into the head of the fibula. The common peroneal nerve descends along the lateral side of the popliteal fossa in relation to the inner border of the biceps femoris muscle. At the level of the superior border of the head of the fibula it becomes superficial and then proceeds to wind around the neck of the fibula lying between the peroneus longus muscle and the bone. In thin individuals the nerve can be palpated as it winds around the neck of the fibula.

On the medial aspect of the knee joint the most prominent structure is the medial femoral condyle, which is readily palpable. The upper and inner boundary of this condyle ends in the adductor tubercle into which inserts the tendon of the adductor magnus muscle. This tubercle lies on a line with the distal epiphyseal plate of the femur; it is slightly proximal to the upper limits of the articular surface of the trochlea of the femur. In their course downward the sartorius and the gracilis muscles wind around the posteromedial aspect of the condyle and then proceed forward to reach the medial aspect of the upper end of the tibia; they are in relation to the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus (Fig. 395).

On the anterior aspect of the knee joint with the leg extended actively the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle stands out prominently and its lateral borders are readily detectable. The bulge of the vasti muscle on either side of the tendon of the rectus femoris is plainly visible. The prominence of the vastus lateralis is at a much higher level and is less pronounced than that of the vastus medialis (Fig. 388). In active extension of the leg a deep groove is present distal to the prominence of the vastus lateralis between the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle and the iliotibial band.

#### PARAPATELLAR INCISIONS

As recorded previously the parapatellar incisions so commonly employed at the pres-



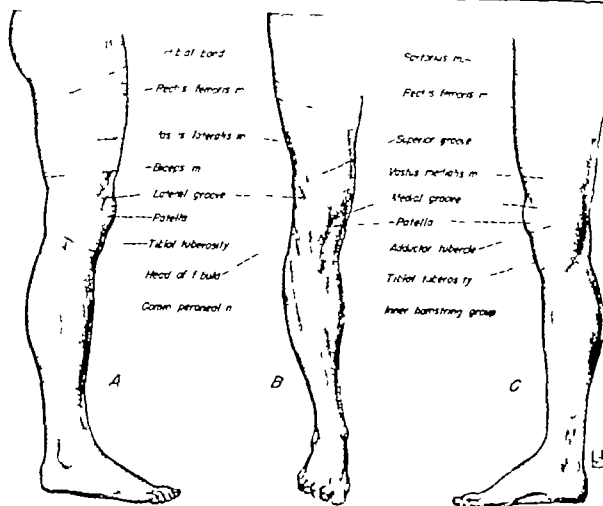


FIG. 388 Landmarks on the anterior, anteromedial and the anterolateral aspects of the knee joint.

individuals marked variance either in the way of an increase or a decrease of the angle is consistent with pathologic alterations as genu valgum or genu varum. As a rule the normal deviation is greater in females than in males.

On the anterior aspect of the knee joint the patella stands out as a prominent bony mass, the configuration being detected readily by inspection and palpation. With the knee extended and the quadriceps relaxed this bony mass can be displaced with ease upward, downward and to either side. Extending proximally from the base of the patella the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle is readily discernible; the same is true of the patellar tendon which extends from the apex of the patella to the tibial

tuberosity. The length of the patellar ligament is approximately 5 cm; its mid point lies opposite the joint line. In the presence of a large effusion in the knee joint the mobility of the patella is increased greatly and ballottement of this bone can be demonstrated by tapping it gently; this maneuver causes the patella to strike the anterior surface of the femur with each tap of the finger; the contact can be both felt and heard.

In the intervals between the lateral margins of the patella and the corresponding femoral condyles a distinct furrow is present running parallel with the patellar border. In thin individuals the furrows are deep and well demarcated while in individuals with large quantities of subcutaneous fat

they may be shallow or obliterated. Another depression is discernible above the base of the patella connecting the two lateral furrows and producing a horseshoe shaped peripatellar furrow (Fig 388). The grooves parallel the upper and the lateral boundaries of the suprapatellar pouch. In knee joints distended with blood or an effusion, the peripatellar furrows are ballooned out to form semicircular convexity around the lateral margins and the base of the patella. As recorded previously, the patella is freely movable with the knee extended, by displacing the patella laterally or medially the corresponding borders of the condyles of the femur can be palpated.

When flexion of the knee joint is initiated the patella stands out as a prominent bony structure in the anterior aspect of the joint. As flexion continues the patella becomes less prominent and more fixed. In full flexion it lies deeply in the intercondylar notch of the femur, and then no lateral motion is demonstrable. The apex of the patella lies opposite the joint lines, and the articular surface of the intercondylar notch is palpable immediately proximal to its base.

Below the apex of the patella and on either side of the patellar ligament the pyramidal infrapatellar fat pad produces a soft fullness which becomes more prominent and tense when the quadriceps muscle is contracted with the knee fully flexed. The fullness on either side of the patellar ligament is accentuated but remains soft. On either side of the patellar ligament the joint between the femoral condyles and the tibia is readily palpable. This is particularly true when the knee is in a flexed position. In the region of the collateral ligaments the joint line is barely distinguishable because it lies under cover of these structures.

On the lateral aspect of the joint several pertinent structures must be considered. The enlarged anterior portion of the lateral condyle of the femur lies slightly in front of and proximal to the head of the fibula. This feature is demonstrated best when the knee

is flexed. The biceps tendon is readily palpable as it approaches its site of insertion into the head of the fibula. The common peroneal nerve descends along the lateral side of the popliteal fossa in relation to the inner border of the biceps femoris muscle. At the level of the superior border of the head of the fibula it becomes superficial and then proceeds to wind around the neck of the fibula lying between the peroneus longus muscle and the bone. In thin individuals the nerve can be palpated as it winds around the neck of the fibula.

On the medial aspect of the knee joint the most prominent structure is the medial femoral condyle, which is readily palpable. The upper and inner boundary of this condyle ends in the adductor tubercle into which inserts the tendon of the adductor magnus muscle. This tubercle lies on a line with the distal epiphyseal plate of the femur. It is slightly proximal to the upper limits of the articular surface of the trochlea of the femur. In their course downward the sartorius and the gracilis muscles wind around the posteromedial aspect of the condyle and then proceed forward to reach the medial aspect of the upper end of the tibia. They are in relation to the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus (Fig 395).

On the anterior aspect of the knee joint, with the leg extended actively the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle stands out prominently and its lateral borders are readily detectable. The bulge of the vasti muscle on either side of the tendon of the rectus femoris is plainly visible. The prominence of the vastus lateralis is at a much higher level and is less pronounced than that of the vastus medialis (Fig 388). In active extension of the leg a deep groove is present distal to the prominence of the vastus lateralis between the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle and the iliotibial band.

#### PARAPATELLAR INCISIONS

As recorded previously, the parapatellar incisions so commonly employed at the pres-

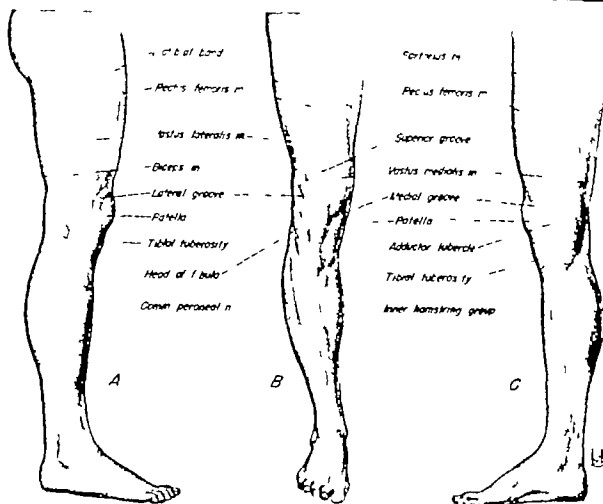


FIG. 388 Landmarks on the anterior, anteromedial and the anterolateral aspects of the knee joint.

individuals marked variance either in the way of an increase or a decrease of the angle is consistent with pathologic alterations as genu valgum or genu varum. As a rule the normal deviation is greater in females than in males.

On the anterior aspect of the knee joint the patella stands out as a prominent bony mass, the configuration being detected readily by inspection and palpation. With the knee extended and the quadriceps relaxed this bony mass can be displaced with ease upward, downward and to either side. Extending proximally from the base of the patella the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle is readily discernible; the same is true of the patellar tendon which extends from the apex of the patella to the tibial

tuberosity. The length of the patellar ligament is approximately 5 cm. Its mid point lies opposite the joint line. In the presence of a large effusion in the knee joint the mobility of the patella is increased greatly and ballottement of this bone can be demonstrated by tapping it gently. This maneuver causes the patella to strike the anterior surface of the femur with each tap of the finger; the contact can be both felt and heard.

In the intervals between the lateral margins of the patella and the corresponding femoral condyles a distinct furrow is present running parallel with the patellar border. In thin individuals the furrows are deep and well demarcated while in individuals with large quantities of subcutaneous fat

they may be shallow or obliterated. Another depression is discernible above the base of the patella connecting the two lateral furrows and producing a horseshoe-shaped peripatellar furrow (Fig. 388). The grooves parallel the upper and the lateral boundaries of the suprapatellar pouch. In knee joints distended with blood or an effusion, the peripatellar furrows are ballooned out to form semicircular convexity around the lateral margins and the base of the patella. As recorded previously, the patella is freely movable with the knee extended, by displacing the patella laterally or medially the corresponding borders of the condyles of the femur can be palpated.

When flexion of the knee joint is initiated the patella stands out as a prominent bony structure in the anterior aspect of the joint. *As flexion continues the patella becomes less prominent and more fixed*, in full flexion it lies deeply in the intercondylar notch of the femur, and then no lateral motion is demonstrable—the apex of the patella lies opposite the joint lines, and the articular surface of the intercondylar notch is palpable immediately proximal to its base.

Below the apex of the patella and on either side of the patellar ligament the pyramidal infrapatellar fat pad produces a soft fullness which becomes more prominent and tense when the quadriceps muscle is contracted. With the knee fully flexed the fullness on either side of the patellar ligament is accentuated but remains soft. On either side of the patellar ligament the joint between the femoral condyles and the tibia is readily palpable—this is particularly true when the knee is in a flexed position. In the region of the collateral ligaments the joint line is barely distinguishable because it lies under cover of these structures.

On the lateral aspect of the joint several pertinent structures must be considered. The enlarged anterior portion of the lateral condyle of the femur lies slightly in front of and proximal to the head of the fibula—this feature is demonstrated best when the knee

is flexed. The biceps tendon is readily palpable as it approaches its site of insertion into the head of the fibula. The common peroneal nerve descends along the lateral side of the popliteal fossa in relation to the inner border of the biceps femoris muscle. At the level of the superior border of the head of the fibula it becomes superficial and then proceeds to wind around the neck of the fibula, lying between the peroneus longus muscle and the bone. In thin individuals the nerve can be palpated as it winds around the neck of the fibula.

On the medial aspect of the knee joint the most prominent structure is the medial femoral condyle, which is readily palpable. The upper and inner boundary of this condyle ends in the adductor tubercle into which inserts the tendon of the adductor magnus muscle. This tubercle lies on a line with the distal epiphyseal plate of the femur. It is slightly proximal to the upper limits of the articular surface of the trochlea of the femur. In their course downward the sartorius and the gracilis muscles wind around the posteromedial aspect of the condyle and then proceed forward to reach the medial aspect of the upper end of the tibia—they are in relation to the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus (Fig. 395).

On the anterior aspect of the knee joint, with the leg extended actively the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle stands out prominently and its lateral borders are readily detectable. The bulge of the vasti muscle on either side of the tendon of the rectus femoris is plainly visible. The prominence of the vastus lateralis is at a much higher level and is less pronounced than that of the vastus medialis (Fig. 388). In active extension of the leg a deep groove is present distal to the prominence of the vastus lateralis between the tendon of the rectus femoris muscle and the iliotibial band.

#### PARAPATELLAR INCISIONS

As recorded previously the parapatellar incisions so commonly employed at the pres-

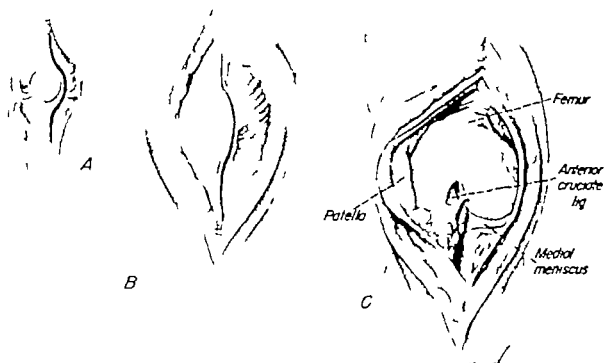


FIG 389 (A and B) Median parapatellar incision (von Langenbeck) (Krida) (C) Observe the extensive exposure of the interior of the knee joint.

ent time were devised in the late decades of the nineteenth century. In 1878 von Langenbeck devised a median parapatellar approach leaving the patellar ligament intact and Kocher (1894) designed a similar lateral parapatellar incision. These incisions were popularized by Krida (1925) and have come to be known as "general utility incisions," a designation first used by Krida. Parapatellar incisions have gained much favor among orthopedic surgeons of all parts and are indicated when wide exposure of the joint is desired.

**Median Parapatellar Incision.** The median parapatellar incision is particularly useful in cases requiring surgical exploration; also it facilitates the execution of the following surgical procedures: synovectomy, removal of foreign bodies, excision of the infrapatellar fat pad, reconstruction or repair of the cruciate ligament, removal of osteochondral fragments resulting from osteochondritis, and removal of deteriorated cartilage from the articulating surface of the patella in cases of chondromalacia.

The patient is placed in the supine position, and the extremity, after it is enclosed in sterile stockinette rolled on separately from the toes to the groin, is bent at the knee over a sandbag wrapped in a sterile covering or over a folded sterile sheet so that it is flexed from  $20^{\circ}$  to  $30^{\circ}$ . The pertinent landmarks are the quadriceps tendon and the adjacent bulge of the vastus medialis, the adductor tubercle, the patella, the patellar ligament, and the tubercle of the tibia (Fig 388).

**Von Langenbeck's Incision (Krida)** (Fig 389). Beginning at the medial border of the quadriceps tendon from  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 inches proximal to the upper border of the base of the patella, the skin incision is carried distally following the medial border of the quadriceps tendon, the medial margin of the patella, and the patellar ligament to a point just distal to the lower border of the tubercle of the tibia. After the skin is retracted to either side, the deep fascia is incised, and the quadriceps tendon is exposed. Next a vertical incision is made in the

quadriceps tendon 1 cm. lateral to its medial border, it is carried distally, curving around the medial margin of the patella and the patellar ligament. In its path the incision divides the medial aponeurosis of vastus medialis. Division of the quadriceps tendon and deep aponeurosis of the vastus medialis permit visualization of the medial border of the suprapatellar pouch as it projects under the quadriceps tendon. The synovialis is divided 1 cm. from the medial border of the patella and the patellar ligament. Finally the patella is dislocated laterally so that it lies to the outer side of the external condyle, and its articular surface faces anteriorly. In some cases it may be necessary to mobilize the patella to a greater extent in order to facilitate its lateral displacement. This can be achieved by dividing the periosteum below the tubercle of the tibia and reflecting it outward enough to free the inner portion of the insertion of the patellar tendon.

This approach gives an excellent exposure of the inside of the articular cavity of the knee joint, the view can be improved by flexing the knee to a right angle while the patella is held on the lateral aspect of the external condyle of the femur. The structures visualized are both condyles of the femur, portions of the cruciate ligaments, both menisci, the infrapatellar fat pad, the ligamentum mucosum and the lateral extensions of the infrapatellar fat pad, the articular surface of the patella and the posterior surface of the patellar ligament, the anterior borders of the upper end of the tibia and the suprapatellar pouch. Closure of the incision is facilitated by removing the support under the knee and placing it under the heel, by so doing the position of the knee joint is changed from one of flexion to one of extension. It is not necessary to close the wound in layers. Closure is achieved readily by interrupted sutures, including the synovialis, the deep aponeurosis and the fascial layers, the subcutaneous layer and the skin are closed separately. The author uses No 10 cotton as suture material for all closures.

FISHER'S MODIFICATION OF VON LANGEN



FIG. 390 (Left) Incision of Payr (Right) Incision of Erkes

**BECK'S INCISION** The incision designed by Fisher is a modification of von Langenbeck's approach, the skin incision is essentially the same except that the skin is reflected laterally as far as the lateral border of the patella. This is executed readily by sharp dissection. Next a vertical mid line incision is made through the three fascial layers covering the quadriceps tendon, the patella and the patellar ligament. On the inner aspect of the patella the deep fascia and the superficial aponeurotic layer blend to form a single structure making it possible to reflect these layers medially as a single sheet. The deep aponeurotic layer and the synovialis beneath it are incised medial to the patella. This incision is carried upward through the fibers of the quadriceps tendon lateral to the insertion of the vastus medialis. In order to mobilize the patella the patellar ligament is dissected free along its medial margin as far as the tibial tubercle. This permits lateral dislocation of the pa

tella exposing the inside of the articular cavity. As pointed out by Abbott and Carpenter, greater access to the joint may be attained by one of the following ways: (1) by extending the incision on the quadriceps tendon to a higher level; (2) by projecting the upper end of the incision obliquely inward and separating the fibers of the vastus medialis; (3) by dividing longitudinally the inner border of the alar ligament and the adjacent fat pad; and (4) by mobilizing the inner border of the insertion of the patellar ligament by subperiosteal dissection.

**Payr's Modification (Fig. 390)** Payr described an S-shaped median parapatellar incision which begins about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 inches proximal to the base of the patella in the midline. It continues vertically downward to just proximal to the patella, then curves around its medial border and is continued downward along the medial border of the patellar ligament (Fig. 390). Next, an incision is made through the conjuncture of the fibrous insertion of the vastus medialis and the quadriceps tendon; this limb of the incision is continued distally along the medial border of the patella and the patellar ligament, cutting through the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis as it proceeds downward to the level of the tubercle of the tibia. The synovialis, which now comes into view, is divided, exposing the inside of the joint cavity. Lateral dislocation of the patella to the outer side of the external condyle completes the final step in the exposure.

**Erker's Incision (Fig. 390)** This incision is rarely used because the median parapatellar incisions described are executed more readily and give greater exposure of the inside of the joint. Essentially, it is an oblique incision beginning over the medial epicondyle of the femur and is carried downward and inward as far as the insertion of the patellar tendon into the tubercle of the tibia. The next step is division of the fibers of origin of the vastus medialis from the internal intermuscular septum. This

allows displacement of the patella and exposure of the underlying synovialis. The synovial membrane is divided to secure access to the joint cavity.

**Lateral Parapatella Incision (Kocher) (Fig. 391)** This is the most widely employed lateral parapatellar incision. Primarily, it is used to expose the anterolateral aspect of the knee joint; also, it is a valuable approach for the surgical treatment of certain condylar fractures of the femur and to remove loose bodies from the joint. The landmarks are the lateral femoral condyles, the head of the fibula, the vastus lateralis, the quadriceps tendon, the patella, the patellar tendon, and the tubercle of the tibia.

The skin incision begins on the lateral aspect of the knee joint approximately  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 inches above the base of the patella. It is continued downward and slightly inward, crossing the parapatellar region of the joint. At the level of the joint line, it begins to curve forward, crossing the tibial tubercle. A vertical incision is made in the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis, 1 cm from the lateral border of the patella; the incision is extended upward through the quadriceps tendon medial to its lateral border and downward through the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis to the insertion of the patellar tendon into the tibial tubercle. Then the synovial membrane is incised, exposing the inside of the joint cavity. In some instances, in order to dislocate the patella medially, it may be necessary to elevate the insertion of the patellar tendon by subperiosteal dissection or to detach it from the tubercle together with a piece of cortical bone. The disadvantage of this incision lies in the complete detachment of the patellar ligament; this delays restoration of function of the knee joint, or, as noted by Putti, when the tendon is detached with a piece of bone, nonunion may ensue. If the insertion of the patellar tendon is detached either subperiosteally or subcortically, caution must be taken not to divide the periosteum at the distal end of the tibial tubercle, since

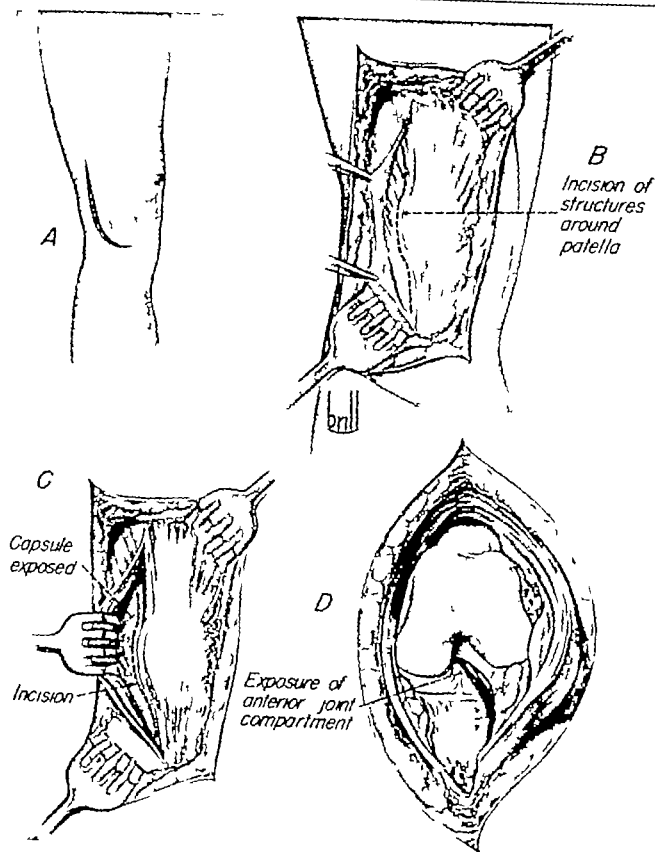


FIG 391 Lateral parapatellar incision (Kocher)

it is the only structure remaining which anchors the tubercle to the tibia after the operation

A similar median J-shaped incision pro-

vides better exposure of the joint cavity and inflicts less damage to the tissues. Lateral displacement of the patella can be achieved readily without detachment of the tibial in-



section of the patellar tendon. Of the two J shaped approaches the medial one is preferred for exploration of the joint.

#### ANTEROMEDIAL AND ANTEROLATERAL APPROACHES

Many anteromedial and anterolateral incisions were designed primarily to remove torn or lacerated menisci from the knee joint. A great many of them allowed visualization of only that portion of the meniscus lying anterior to the lateral collateral ligaments. For a time the necessity for removal of the entire meniscus was not universally understood and these incisions gained much popularity. However, they lost favor rapidly when it became apparent that complete removal of the meniscus was desirable. With this change in the trend of surgery of the menisci, new incisions were devised, such as the incisions of Fisher, Cave and Bosworth. This latter group of incisions also facilitated mobilization and removal of cysts of the menisci and removal of torn posterior segments of menisci which were left behind at previous operations performed through limited anterior approaches.

Certain of the smaller anteromedial and anterolateral incisions are still employed by experienced and skillful surgeons who can remove the menisci in toto through such small approaches but they are not recommended for general use. A great variety of these incisions have been described over the years. In general, all of them are placed in the interval between the lateral margins of the patella and the patellar tendon and the corresponding lateral collateral ligament. They gain access to the joint cavity by dividing the aponeurosis of the vasti and the synovial membrane in this region. Their direction varies; it may be transverse, oblique or vertical; others are a combination of the aforementioned incisions, following a curved direction. The small transverse incision first described and employed by Annandale of Edinburgh (1879) provides limited exposure of the meniscus and ex-

cept in the hands of skillful surgeons, makes excision of the entire meniscus very difficult despite the claims of some surgeons. For this reason it is seldom used. Smillie objects to this incision because it divides the skin, the synovial membrane, the capsule and the aponeurosis at right angles to the direction of their fibers; he believes that a broad weak scar results in these structures. However, the author never has seen such unfavorable sequelae following transverse incision in this region.

**Surgical Anatomy.** Anteromedial and anterolateral incisions are confined to the triangular interval between the apex of the patella and the patellar tendon in front, the respective condyles and the anterior margins of the collateral ligaments behind, and the upper border of the tibia below. The significant landmarks are the same for incisions on the medial and the lateral aspects of the joint; they are the patella, the patellar tendon, the tibial tubercle, the femoral condyles and the anteromedial or anterolateral joint line. In addition on the medial side one finds the adductor tubercle and the infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve. The structures exposed by these incisions are the infrapatellar fat pad and its lateral projection, the ligamentum mucosum, the portion of the menisci anterior to the collateral ligaments, the origin and a portion of the anterior cruciate ligament, portions of the articular cartilage of the femoral condyles and of the tibial plateaus.

In all the aforementioned approaches the extent of the exposure of the anterior region of the joint is approximately the same. The essential difference in all of them is the direction of the incisions in the skin, the aponeurosis and the synovial membrane. Of this group the curved incisions provide best access to the joint. Fisher's curve has its convexity placed while that of Sir Thomas Johnson has its anterior convexity the inferior of the saphenous nerve; divided in the latter the

sion. This complication is not considered to be of any real significance in the minds of some surgeons, however, if possible, it is desirable to avoid division of the nerve. All these incisions may be used on either side of the joint, depending upon whether the surgeon desires to attain exposure of the medial or the lateral regions of the articular cavity.

**Anteromedial Curved Incision (Fisher)** This incision (Fig. 392) is used for excision of the internal meniscus; a similar lateral incision is used for removal of the external structure.

With the patient in a supine position and the knee flexed  $90^\circ$  over the end of the table, a curved skin incision with its convexity

posteriorly is made. The upper vertical limb of the incision parallels the anterior edge of the tibial collateral ligament, and the lower horizontal limb curves forward as far as the medial margin of the patellar ligament slightly below the joint line. The aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the underlying synovial membrane are divided in the same line of the skin incision. The inside of the articular cavity is now accessible; the incision allows the tibial collateral ligament to be retracted readily, thus permitting visualization of the anterior and the lateral attachments of the meniscus. The author employs a slight modification of this incision (Fig. 393). Complete removal of the meniscus is achieved readily if the technic

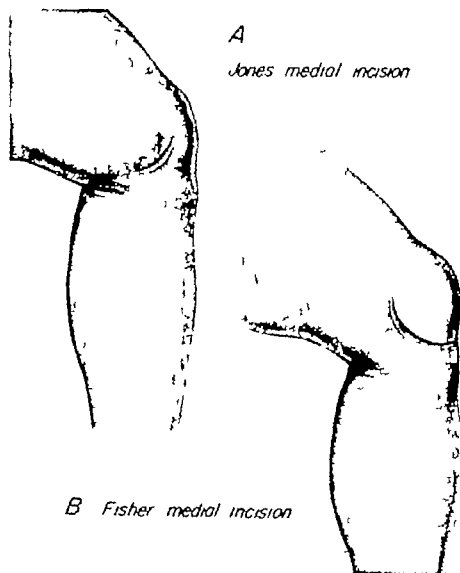


FIG. 392 Anteromedial incisions of (A) Jones and (B) Fisher

section of the patellar tendon. Of the two J-shaped approaches the medial one is preferred for exploration of the joint.

#### ANTEROMEDIAL AND ANTEROLATERAL APPROACHES

Many anteromedial and anterolateral incisions were designed primarily to remove torn or lacerated menisci from the knee joint. A great many of them allowed visualization of only that portion of the meniscus lying anterior to the lateral collateral ligaments. For a time the necessity for removal of the entire meniscus was not universally understood and these incisions gained much popularity. However they lost favor rapidly when it became apparent that complete removal of the meniscus was desirable. With this change in the trend of surgery of the menisci new incisions were devised, such as the incisions of Fisher, Cave and Bosworth. This latter group of incisions also facilitated mobilization and removal of cysts of the menisci and removal of torn posterior segments of menisci which were left behind at previous operations performed through limited anterior approaches.

Certain of the smaller anteromedial and anterolateral incisions are still employed by experienced and skillful surgeons who can remove the meniscus in toto through such small approaches but they are not recommended for general use. A great variety of these incisions have been described over the years. In general all of them are placed in the interval between the lateral margins of the patella and the patellar tendon and the corresponding lateral collateral ligament. They gain access to the joint cavity by dividing the aponeurosis of the vasti and the synovial membrane in this region. Their direction varies. It may be transverse, oblique or vertical. Others are a combination of the aforementioned incisions following a curved direction. The small transverse incision first described and employed by Annandale of Edinburgh (1879) provides limited exposure of the meniscus and ex-

cept in the hands of skillful surgeons, makes excision of the entire meniscus very difficult despite the claims of some surgeons. For this reason it is seldom used. Smillie objects to this incision because it divides the skin, the synovial membrane, the capsule and the aponeurosis at right angles to the direction of their fibers, he believes that a broad weak scar results in these structures. However the author never has seen such unfavorable sequelae following transverse incision in this region.

**Surgical Anatomy.** Anteromedial and anterolateral incisions are confined to the triangular interval between the apex of the patella and the patellar tendon in front, the respective condyles and the anterior margins of the collateral ligaments behind and the upper border of the tibia below. The significant landmarks are the same for incisions on the medial and the lateral aspects of the joint: they are the patella, the patellar tendon, the tibial tubercle, the femoral condyles and the anteromedial or anterolateral joint line. In addition on the medial side one finds the adductor tubercle and the infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve. The structures exposed by these incisions are the infrapatellar fat pad and its lateral projection, the ligamentum mucosum, the portion of the meniscus anterior to the collateral ligaments, the origin and a portion of the anterior cruciate ligament, portions of the articular cartilage of the femoral condyles and of the tibial plateau.

In all the aforementioned approaches the extent of the exposure of the anterior region of the joint is approximately the same. The essential difference in all of them is the direction of the incisions in the skin, the aponeurosis and the synovial membrane. Of this group the curved incisions provide the best access to the joint. Fisher's curved incision has its convexity placed posteriorly while that of Sir Thomas Jones has an anterior convexity. The infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve is more apt to be divided in the latter than in the former inci-

sion This complication is not considered to be of any real significance in the minds of some surgeons, however. If possible, it is desirable to avoid division of the nerve. All these incisions may be used on either side of the joint, depending upon whether the surgeon desires to attain exposure of the medial or the lateral regions of the articular cavity.

**Anteromedial Curved Incision (Fisher)** This incision (Fig. 392) is used for excision of the internal meniscus; a similar lateral incision is used for removal of the external structure.

With the patient in a supine position and the knee flexed 90° over the end of the table, a curved skin incision with its convexity

posteriorly is made. The upper vertical limb of the incision parallels the anterior edge of the tibial collateral ligament and the lower horizontal limb curves forward as far as the medial margin of the patellar ligament slightly below the joint line. The aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the underlying synovial membrane are divided in the same line of the skin incision. The inside of the articular cavity is now accessible; the incision allows the tibial collateral ligament to be retracted readily, thus permitting visualization of the anterior and the lateral attachments of the meniscus. The author employs a slight modification of this incision (Fig. 393). Complete removal of the meniscus is achieved readily if the technic

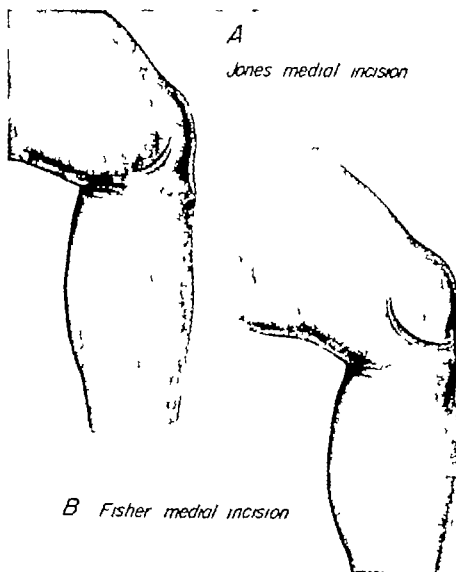


FIG. 392. Anteromedial incisions of (A) Jones and (B) Fisher.

section of the patellar tendon. Of the two J shaped approaches the medial one is preferred for exploration of the joint.

#### ANTEROMEDIAL AND ANTEROLATERAL APPROACHES

Many anteromedial and anterolateral incisions were designed primarily to remove torn or lacerated menisci from the knee joint. A great many of them allowed visualization of only that portion of the meniscus lying anterior to the lateral collateral ligaments. For a time the necessity for removal of the entire meniscus was not universally understood and these incisions gained much popularity. However they lost favor rapidly when it became apparent that complete removal of the meniscus was desirable. With this change in the trend of surgery of the menisci new incisions were devised such as the incisions of Fisher, Cave and Bosworth. This latter group of incisions also facilitated mobilization and removal of cysts of the menisci and removal of torn posterior segments of menisci which were left behind at previous operations performed through limited anterior approaches.

Certain of the smaller anteromedial and anterolateral incisions are still employed by experienced and skillful surgeons who can remove the menisci in toto through such small approaches but they are not recommended for general use. A great variety of these incisions have been described over the years. In general all of them are placed in the interval between the lateral margins of the patella and the patellar tendon and the corresponding lateral collateral ligament. They gain access to the joint cavity by dividing the aponeurosis of the vasti and the synovial membrane in this region. Their direction varies; it may be transverse, oblique or vertical; others are a combination of the aforementioned incisions following a curved direction. The small transverse incision first described and employed by Annandale of Edinburgh (1879) provides limited exposure of the meniscus and ex-

cept in the hands of skillful surgeons, makes excision of the entire meniscus very difficult despite the claims of some surgeons. For this reason it is seldom used. Smillie objects to this incision because it divides the skin, the synovial membrane, the capsule and the aponeurosis at right angles to the direction of their fibers; he believes that a broad weak scar results in these structures. However the author never has seen such unfavorable sequelae following transverse incision in this region.

**Surgical Anatomy.** Anteromedial and anterolateral incisions are confined to the triangular interval between the apex of the patella and the patellar tendon in front of the respective condyles and the anterior margins of the collateral ligaments behind and the upper border of the tibia below. The significant landmarks are the same for incisions on the medial and the lateral aspects of the joint: they are the patella, the patellar tendon, the tibial tubercle, the femoral condyles and the anteromedial or anterolateral joint line. In addition on the medial side one finds the adductor tubercle and the infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve. The structures exposed by these incisions are the infrapatellar fat pad and its lateral projection, the ligamentum mucosum, the portion of the meniscus anterior to the collateral ligaments, the origin and a portion of the anterior cruciate ligament, portions of the articular cartilage of the femoral condyles and of the tibial plateaus.

In all the aforementioned approaches the extent of the exposure of the anterior region of the joint is approximately the same. The essential difference in all of them is the direction of the incisions in the skin, the aponeurosis and the synovial membrane. Of this group the curved incisions provide the best access to the joint. Fisher's curved incision has its convexity placed posteriorly while that of Sir Thomas Jones has an anterior convexity; the infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve is more apt to be divided in the latter than in the former inci-

sion. This complication is not considered to be of any real significance in the minds of some surgeons; however, if possible, it is desirable to avoid division of the nerve. All these incisions may be used on either side of the joint, depending upon whether the surgeon desires to attain exposure of the medial or the lateral regions of the articular cavity.

**Anteromedial Curved Incision (Fisher)** This incision (Fig 392) is used for excision of the internal meniscus; a similar lateral incision is used for removal of the external structure.

With the patient in a supine position and the knee flexed 90° over the end of the table, a curved skin incision with its convexity

posteriorly is made. The upper vertical limb of the incision parallels the anterior edge of the tibial collateral ligament, and the lower horizontal limb curves forward as far as the medial margin of the patellar ligament slightly below the joint line. The aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the underlying synovial membrane are divided in the same line of the skin incision. The inside of the articular cavity is now accessible; the incision allows the tibial collateral ligament to be retracted readily, thus permitting visualization of the anterior and the lateral attachments of the meniscus. The author employs a slight modification of this incision (Fig 393). Complete removal of the meniscus is achieved readily if the technic

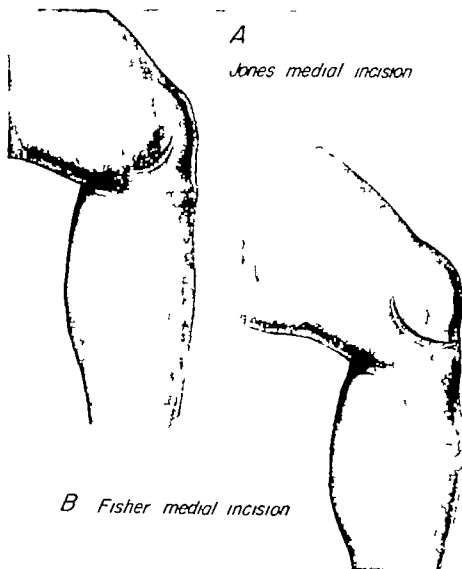


FIG 392 Anteromedial incisions of (A) Jones and (B) Fisher

described in Chapter 5 "Affections of the Menisci" is executed meticulously. On rare occasions more exposure is necessary to remove the posterior segment of the meniscus; in such cases the skin incision depicted in Figure 393 is extended backward to a point 1 cm behind the medial epicondyle of the femur. A second incision is made in the cap-

sule behind the internal ligament. It begins immediately below the epicondyle and continues slightly obliquely downward and forward. This allows ample exposure of the posterior compartment of the joint and particularly the posterior segment of the fibrocartilage. It also provides access to loose bodies in this region of the joint.

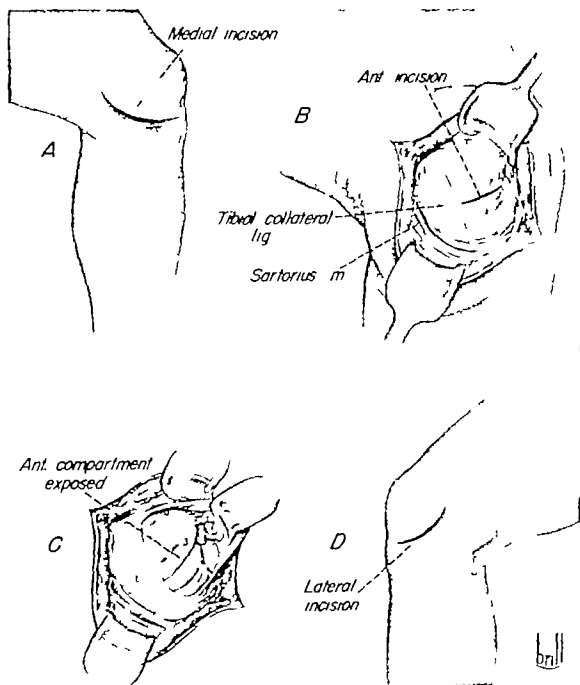


FIG. 393. Modification of the Fisher incision employed by the author. Extension of this incision posteriorly permits access to the posterior compartment of the joint.

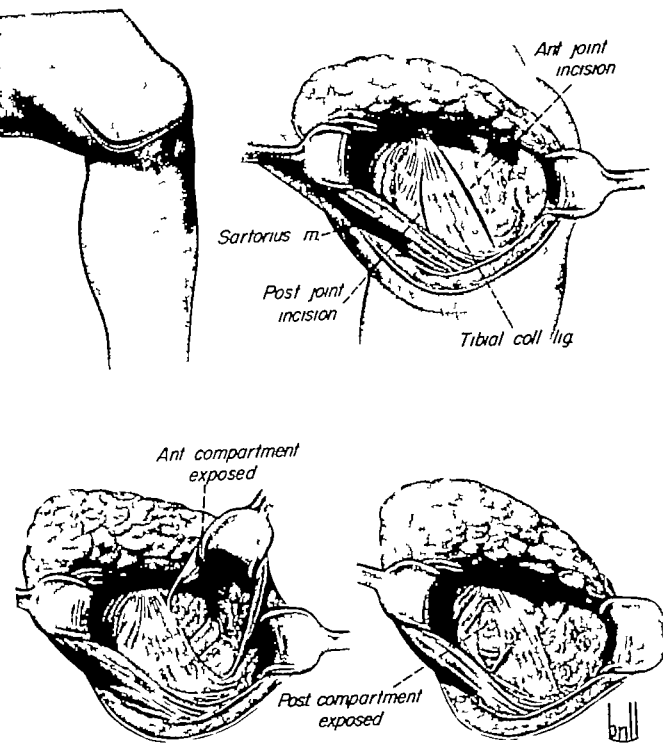


FIG 394 (A) Cave's incision utilized to gain access to the anterior and the posterior compartments of the medial side of the knee joint

**Anteromedial Incisions Providing Access to Both Anterior and Posterior Compartments.** The following incisions are particularly useful when a lesion of the posterior segment is suspected or when removal of a cyst of the meniscus together with the meniscus is desired. They ensure excellent

exposure of all the attachments of the meniscus facilitating their division under direct vision. Similar incisions may be employed on the lateral side of the knee joint.

The landmarks are the patella, the patellar tendon, the tibial tubercle, the femoral condyles and the anteromedial and antero-



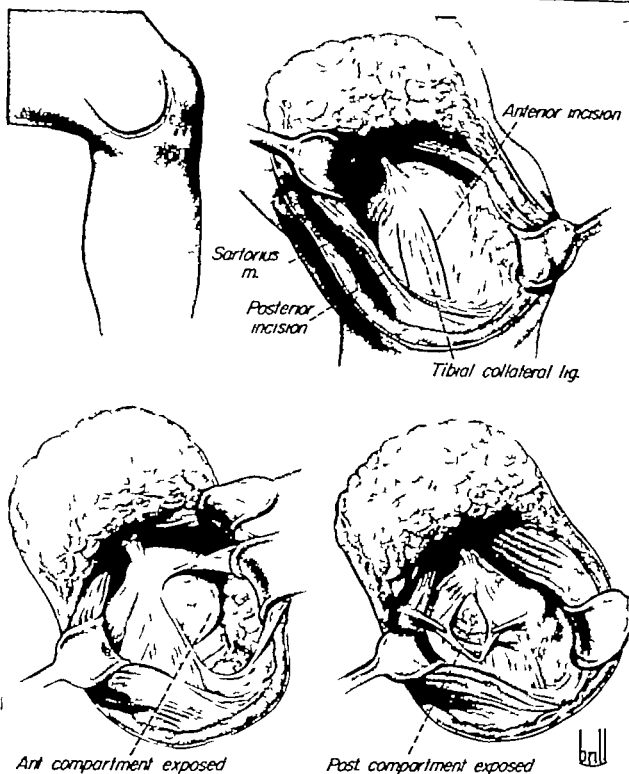


FIG 394 (B) Anteromedial curved incision (Fisher) employed to gain access to both the anterior and the posterior compartments of the joint

lateral joint line. On the medial side one must note also the location of the infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve and the site of the adductor tubercle while on the lateral side of the head of the fibula is

a prominent landmark and the popliteus tendon in relation to the external meniscus and the fibular collateral ligament must be borne in mind

**Anteromedial Curved Incision (Cave)**

the patient in a supine position and knee flexed 90° over the end of the table, the skin incision begins approximately 1 cm proximal and posterior to the epicondyle of the internal femoral condyle (Fig 394 A). Its upper vertical limb curves down to a point 1/2 cm below the joint line. It continues forward as the horizontal limb to the medial margin of the patellar tendon. The proximal flap of skin and subcutaneous tissue is freed by sharp dissection from the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and reflected upward thus exposing the tibial collateral ligament. Anterior to the tibial collateral ligament an oblique incision is made through the aponeurotic expansion of the vastus paralleling its fibers. The capsule and the synovial membrane are incised in the same line. A similar incision is made anterior to the superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament, thus opening the capsule and the synovialis in this region. The parts of the internal meniscus and its attachments are visualized clearly; also the patellar fat pad, the origin of the anterior cruciate ligament, the medial projection of the infrapatellar fat pad and the plica mucosa are brought into view. The approach described by Bosworth is similar to the incision of Cave except that the skin incision over the anterior medial aspect of the joint follows an oblique direction extending upward and slightly backward. The vertical incision anterior to the tibial collateral ligament is made with the knee extended, while the vertical incision anterior to the same ligament is made with the knee flexed.

**Anteromedial Curved Incision to Facilitate Removal of Posterior Horn of Meniscus** (Fig 394 B) The following description refers to excision of the internal meniscus; a similar incision can be employed for the removal of the external meniscus. The patient is placed in the supine position with the knee flexed 90° over the end of the table. This approach is divided into two stages. In the first stage the an-

terior limb of the incision is made, at its completion, the pathologic nature of the meniscus is ascertained. If its removal is deemed possible, the second stage of the operation is not performed. On the other hand, if it becomes apparent that removal of the posterior portion of the meniscus is not possible or is going to be exceedingly difficult, then the second stage of the operation is executed. In the first stage the skin incision begins at a point midway between the patellar ligament and the anterior margin of the tibial collateral ligament on a line with the apex of the patella. It curves downward and backward as far as the anterior margin of the tibial collateral ligament slightly below the upper border of the tibia. The infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve is identified and retracted posteriorly. The joint cavity is exposed by an incision through the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the synovialis in the same line as the skin incision; it is preferred to extend this incision a little nearer to the margin of the tibial collateral ligament than the skin incision. Then the second stage of the operation, if deemed necessary is performed. The incision previously made is closed temporarily with a moist, warm pack of gauze; then its distal limb is continued across the inner side of the joint just below the joint line and projected upward and backward over the inner aspect of the posterior compartment of the knee joint, thus producing a semicircular flap of skin and subcutaneous tissue. By reflecting the flap upward the tibial collateral ligament comes into view. A curved incision is made in the capsule and the synovialis immediately posterior to the collateral ligament. This provides an excellent exposure of the posterior region of the medial side of the knee joint and of the posterior portion of the meniscus with its attachment.

Fisher advocated this incision not only for removal of the menisci but also for removal of loose bodies in the anterior and the posterior compartments of the joint. By

extending the anterior limb of the incision upward the suprapatellar pouch is made accessible should exploration of this region be desired

#### SURGICAL APPROACHES TO THE MEDIAL REGION OF THE KNEE JOINT

**Surgical Anatomy (Figs 395 and 396)** Knowledge of the pertinent structures of the medial aspect of the knee will facilitate surgical approach to this region. The structures of particular significance are the tibial collateral ligament the internal intermuscular septum the tendons of the sartorius the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles the bursae in relation to these muscles and the tibial collateral ligament the saphenous branch of the highest genicular artery

(arteria genu suprema), the saphenous vein the saphenous nerve and the branches of the medial femoral cutaneous nerve

The tibial collateral ligament is by far the most important structure on the medial aspect of the knee joint. A detailed description of this ligament has been recorded previously. Separating the anterior compartment of the knee joint from the popliteal space is the internal intermuscular septum. This structure is a fascial projection from the fascia lata which proceeds inward, inserting into the linea aspera and fusing with the tendon of insertion of the adductor magnus muscle. It forms a fascial partition between the vastus medialis in front and the adductor magnus and longus behind. On the posteromedial aspect of the joint are

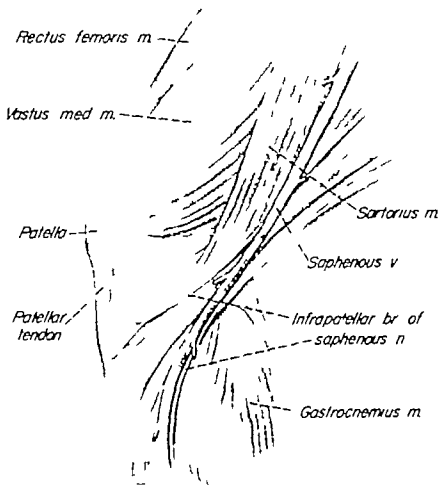


FIG. 395 Superficial structures on the medial aspect of the knee and their anatomic relation to one another

found the sartorius the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles as they sweep around the medial femoral condyle and then continue forward and inward to reach the site of insertion on the anteromedial surface of the upper end of the tibia. Between these tendons and the tibia lies a large bursa. All three tendons cross the distal segment of the superficial layer of the tibial collateral ligament on the way to their insertion where they conform to a specific configuration, the tendon of the sartorius occupies a position anterior to the tendons of the gracilis and the semitendinosus. Another bursa is present between the tendons and the terminal fibers of the tibial collateral ligament.

Both the anterior and the posterior branches of the medial cutaneous nerve of

the thigh are encountered in this area. The anterior branch passes vertically downward and pierces the fascia lata at the junction of the middle and the lower thirds of the thigh, it continues distally for a short distance then proceeds lateralward to the antero-medial aspect of the knee where its terminal twigs enter into the formation of the patellar plexus. The posterior branch descends along the posterior border, later occupying a position behind the sartorius and the saphenous nerve it continues downward to the middle of the calf. The most important nerve in this region is the saphenous nerve a branch of the femoral nerve. In Scarpa's triangle it lies lateral to the femoral artery. At the apex of the triangle it enters and traverses Hunter's canal, in the canal it is

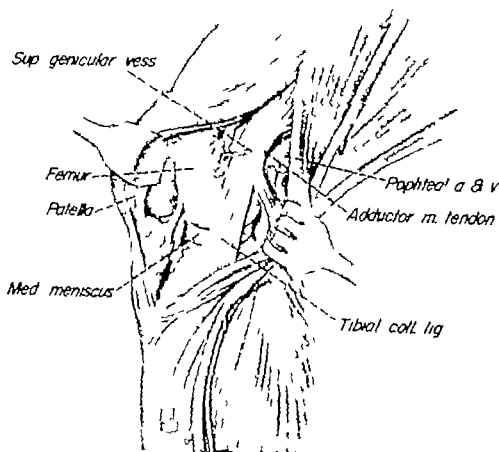


FIG. 396 Deep structure on the medial aspect of the knee. Observe the arterial anastomosis in relation to the tibial collateral ligament and the position of the saphenous nerve.

in relation to the femoral artery, lying first on its lateral side then in front of it and finally on the medial side of the artery. Upon leaving the canal it is joined by a branch of the genu suprema artery, and together they descend between the posterior border of the sartorius and the anterior border of the gracilis. Before it passes from under cover of the sartorius it gives off the infrapatellar branch that penetrates the sartorius just above the knee and lies on the anterior surface of the fascia lata. This branch continues distally and outward about 1 cm below the joint line; its twigs are distributed to the anteromedial aspect of the knee joint that takes part in the formation of the patellar plexus.

Deep to the tibial collateral ligament the superomedial and the inferomedial genicular arteries pass forward close to the femur and the tibia. On the anterior aspect of the knee joint they join in the formation of the rich arterial anastomosis found here. The internal saphenous vein in its course proximally crosses the posteromedial region of the joint. It is in relation to the sartorius muscle. It lies first behind the tendon and then behind the muscle belly of the sartorius. In relation to a bony landmark in this region it lies behind the epicondyle of the internal femoral condyle.

Medial approaches are indicated primarily for surgery on the tibial collateral ligament. Also they facilitate procedures demanding visualization of the anterior cruciate, the internal meniscus and the medial hamstring tendons in addition to the tibial collateral ligament.

The pertinent landmarks are the internal condyle of the femur and the adductor tubercle, the inner condyle of the tibia, the joint line, the tubercle of the tibia and the medial hamstring muscles.

**S-Shaped Incision (Fig. 397)** The patient is placed in the supine position with the leg flexed 20° to 30° and slightly rotated externally. This incision has an upper and a lower limb; the upper limb is a long

sweeping slightly curved incision with its convexity placed posteriorly on the postero-medial aspect of the knee joint. It begins about 5 cm proximal to the adductor tubercle directly over the tendons of the sartorius and the gracilis muscles. It parallels the course of these muscles as far as the joint line; then it curves forward to the anterior border of the upper end of the tibia. The lower limb begins at this point. It continues downward in a gentle curve with its convexity directed outward and terminates at the inferior border of the tubercle of the tibia. The upper and the lower flaps which comprise skin and subcutaneous tissue are reflected upward and downward respectively from the deep fascia by sharp dissection. A vertical incision is made in the deep fascia from the level of the adductor tubercle to the upper and the medial aspects of the tibia. Reflection of the flaps of the deep fascia brings into view the vastus medialis and its aponeurosis, the tendinous insertion of the adductor magnus into the adductor tubercle, the anterior superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament, the upper and the medial aspects of the tibia and the sartorius and the gracilis tendons. Next the tendons of the sartorius, the gracilis and the semitendinosus muscles are identified in the lower portion of the incision and displaced posteriorly. This maneuver brings into view the oblique superficial posterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament. It will be noted that this portion of the tibial collateral ligament together with the fibrous capsule in this region winds around the posterior medial border of the internal condyle of the femur. Other structures clearly seen are the insertion of the semimembranosus and the posterosuperior region of the upper end of the tibia. Now the inner hamstring muscles, the sartorius and the gracilis muscles together with the saphenous nerve and vein can be displaced posteriorly with ease, permitting access to the popliteal space. Immediately behind the tendon of the sartorius the saphenous nerve and its

# Surgical Approaches to the Anterior Region of the Knee Joint

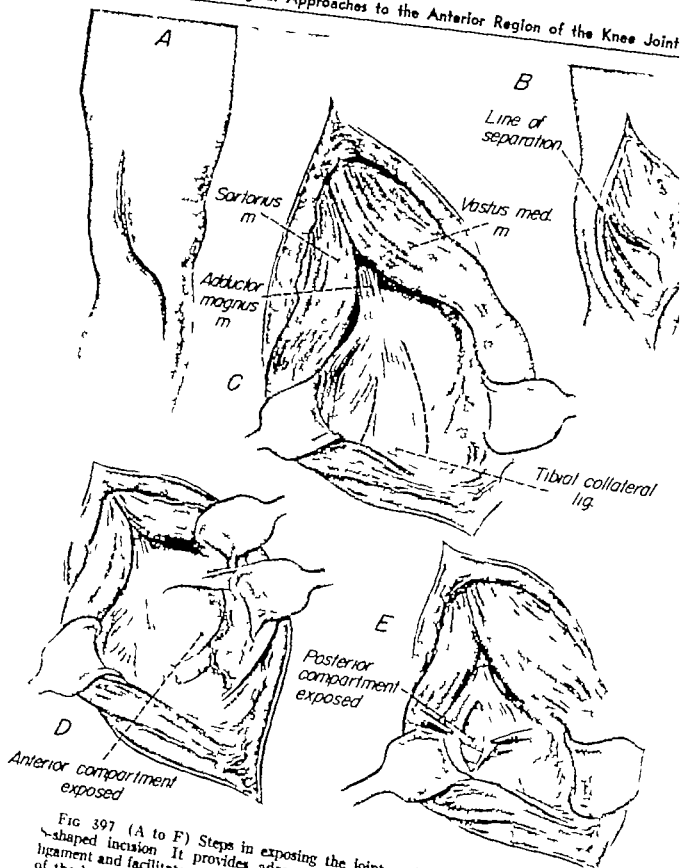


FIG 397 (A to F) Steps in exposing the joint cavity through a medial Y-shaped incision. It provides adequate exposure of the tibial collateral ligament and facilitates access to the anterior and the posterior compartments of the knee joint

infrapatellar branch and the posterior division of the medial femoral cutaneous nerve can be identified the infrapatellar branch

of the saphenous can be traced along the inferior border and then through the tendon of the sartorius to its termination on the

anteromedial aspect of the knee joint about 1 cm. below the joint line

A vertical incision is made anterior to and parallel with the long superficial fibers of the tibial collateral ligament through the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the underlying synovial membrane. By retracting the anterior and the posterior flaps of this last incision the entire anterior compartment of the knee joint is visualized; the anterior cruciate ligament, the anterior segment of the internal meniscus and the infrapatellar fat pad are seen clearly. A similar incision through the oblique posterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the synovialis exposes the posterior compartment of the joint. Now the posterior segment of the internal meniscus is clearly discernible.

Through this approach the surgeon has

access to the entire tibial collateral ligament, the anterior, the middle and the posterior segments of the internal meniscus, the infrapatellar fat pad and the ligamentum mucosum, the anterior cruciate ligament, all of the inner hamstring muscles and the sartorius and the gracilis muscles.

**Straight and Curved Incisions.** Instead of the curvilinear S shaped incision described above a straight incision or a curved incision with its convexity directed posteriorly may be made on the medial aspect of the knee joint. They extend from the adductor tubercle to the anteromedial aspect of the upper end of the tibia. After the skin and the subcutaneous tissues are reflected from the deep fascia, the remaining steps of the approach are similar to those described for the S-shaped incision. These incisions fail to provide the extensive

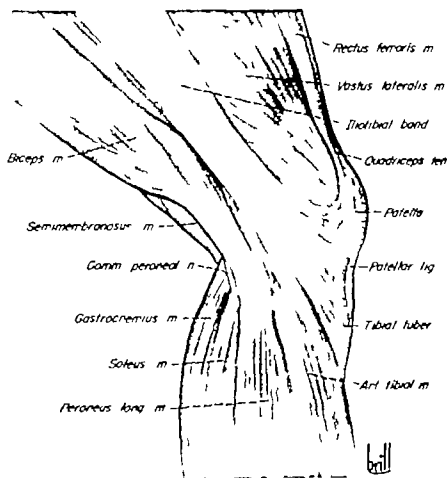


FIG. 398 Superficial structures on the lateral aspect of the knee joint. Observe the anatomic relation of the common peroneal nerve

exposure of the medial region of the knee joint and of the joint cavity that is obtained with the S-shaped incision. However, they are valuable approaches when limited exposure is desired.

#### APPROACHES TO THE LATERAL REGION OF THE KNEE JOINT

##### Surgical Anatomy (Figs 398 and 399)

The structures of surgical significance on the lateral aspect of the knee joint are the iliotibial band, the fibular collateral ligament, the lateral intermuscular septum, the head of the fibula, the common peroneal nerve, the biceps tendon as it inserts into the outer aspect of the head of the fibula and the tendon of the popliteus muscle lying between the external meniscus and the fibular collateral ligament. The iliotibial band is a tough tendinous band is the continuation

of the tensor fasciae latae muscle which arises from the external lip of the iliac crest and the upper border of the notch between the anterior superior spine and the anterior inferior spine of the ilium and from the fibrous septum between it and the gluteus medius muscle. The iliotibial band continues distally to insert into the upper border of the external tuberosity of the tibia. It blends anteriorly with the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis and posteriorly with the fibrous expansion of the biceps femoris.

From the deep surface of the iliotibial band the lateral intermuscular septum passes inward to gain insertion into the linea aspera. This septum separates the vastus lateralis, the biceps femoris and the anterior compartment of the knee and the popliteal fossa. The tendon of the biceps winds around the superficial layer of the

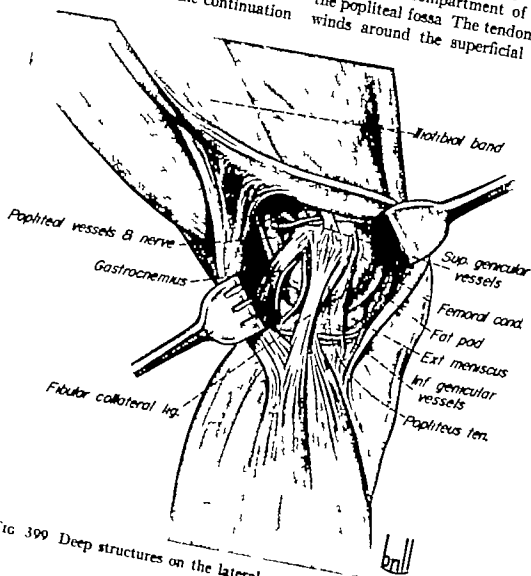


FIG 399 Deep structures on the lateral aspect of the knee joint



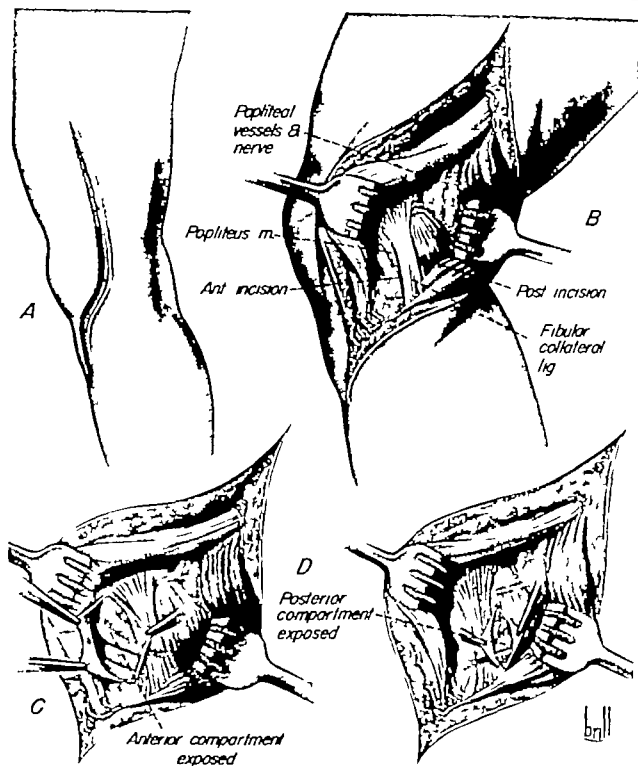


FIG 400 (A) Lateral S-shaped incision (B C and D) Observe the complete exposure of the fibular collateral ligament. Both compartments of the knee joint are readily accessible.

fibular collateral ligament and inserts into the outer aspect of the head of the fibula. Frequently between the tendon and the ligament a bursa is interposed.

The fibular collateral ligament stretches from the lateral epicondyle of the external

femoral condyle to the head of the tibia. As recorded previously, it comprises a deep and a superficial layer. Between its deep surface and the external meniscus lies the tendon of the popliteus muscle which is directed obliquely upward and inserts into

the lateral epicondyle of the femur. A prolongation of the synovial lining of the joint investing the popliteal tendon ends in a cul-de-sac in this region. The important vessels on the lateral aspect of the knee are the superior lateral genicular and the inferior lateral genicular arteries. The former passes under the tendon of the biceps and proximal to the attachment of the fibular collateral ligament on the femur; it passes through the lateral intermuscular septum and is distributed to the vastus lateralis, the latter proceeds forward beneath the fibular collateral ligament proximal to its attachment to the head of the fibula.

Lateral approaches are employed chiefly to gain access to the fibular collateral ligament, the external meniscus and the external condyle of the femur. Through these approaches, cysts of the lateral meniscus are removed readily, however less-extensive incisions than the S-shaped incision to be described subsequently suffice for removal of uncomplicated cysts of the lateral meniscus. The pertinent landmarks are the external condyle of the femur, the head of the fibula, the tendon of the biceps muscle, the patella, the patellar tendon, the iliotibial band and the lateral joint line.

**S-Shaped Incision (Fig. 400).** The patient is in a supine position, the leg is flexed over sandbags 20° to 30° and slightly internally rotated. This incision consists of an upper and a lower limb. The upper limb begins 5 cm. proximal to the lateral condyle of the femur in the posterior aspect of the sulcus between the iliotibial band and the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle. It sweeps forward along the upper border of the lateral tuberosity of the tibia. The lower limb begins at the upper anterior border of the lateral tibial tuberosity and curves gently downward to the tubercle of the tibia. The upper and the lower flaps, which comprise skin and subcutaneous tissue, are reflected upward and downward respectively from the underlying structures by sharp dissection. This permits visualization of the tendinous fibers of the iliotibial tract, be-

hind which is the tendon of the biceps muscle, the fibular collateral ligament and the posterolateral portion of the fibrous joint capsule. Behind the biceps tendon, the peroneal nerve can be identified and traced along its course as it winds around the neck of the fibula. The entire fibular collateral ligament comes into view, its upper femoral attachment is clearly demonstrable, as is also its relation to the biceps tendon and to the tendon of the popliteus muscle, which is seen to occupy a position posterior and deep to the fibular collateral ligament. Access to the anterolateral compartment of the joint can be attained by dividing the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis and the synovial membrane in a line directed downward and forward. Retraction of the flaps reveals the anterior segment of the external meniscus and the lateral portion of the infrapatellar fat pad. The approach provides excellent exposure of all of the aforementioned extra-articular structures, particularly the fibular collateral ligament, the biceps tendon, the common peroneal nerve and the iliotibial tract; it also makes the intra-articular structures in the posterolateral and the anterolateral compartments of the joint readily accessible, especially the external meniscus.

**Straight and Curved Incisions.** The S-shaped incision may be replaced by a straight or a curved incision with its convexity directed posteriorly. They extend from a point 5 cm. above and posterior to the lateral condyle of the femur to the anterolateral aspect of the upper end of the tibia. The following steps are similar to those described for the S-shaped incision. These incisions are indicated when less exposure than that provided by the S-shaped incision is desired.

#### POSTEROMEDIAL AND POSTEROLATERAL INCISIONS

**Surgical Anatomy.** The bilateral incisions in general use have the same surgical landmarks. In the lateral region of the knee joint, the pertinent landmarks are the lateral

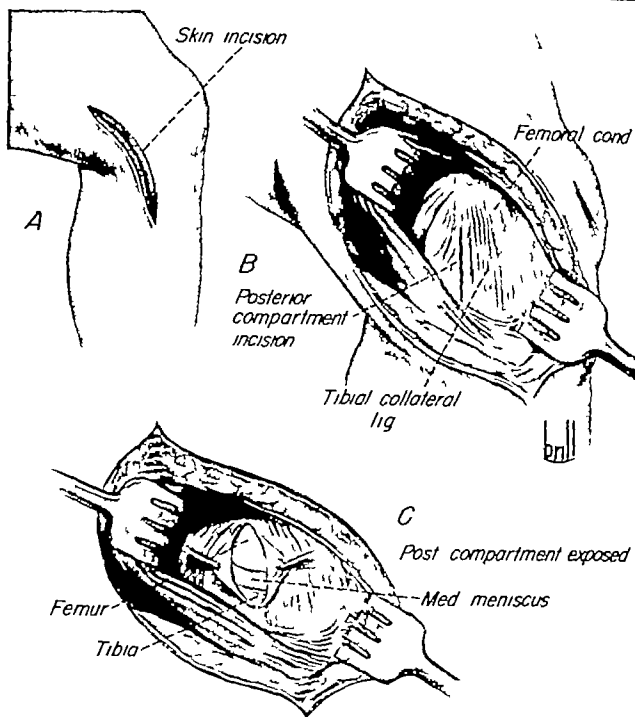


FIG 401 (A to C) Steps in exposing the posterior compartment through a postero-medial incision of the knee joint (Henderson)

condyle and the epicondyle of the femur the head of the fibula with the biceps tendon inserting into it the upper border of the lateral tuberosity of the tibia above which is the lateral one half of the joint line the fibular collateral ligament panning the interval between the lateral epicondyle of the

femur and the head of the fibula the lateral intermuscular septum and the fibrous ilio-tibial tract The landmarks of surgical significance on the medial aspect of the joint are the adductor tubercle on the distal end of the femur the medial condyle of the femur the upper border of the medial tu

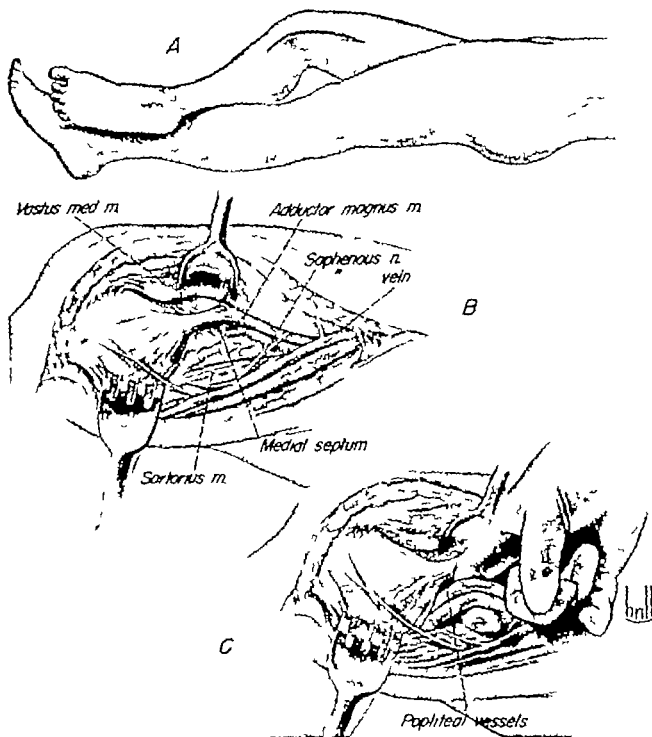


FIG. 402 Medial approach for exposure of the popliteal face of the femur (Henry)

berosity of the tibia and the joint line proximal to it the tibial collateral ligament, the inner hamstring muscles and the sartorius and the gracilis muscles and the medial intermuscular septum. On the medial aspect of the knee the medial intermuscular septum and the posterior border of the tibial collateral ligament form a partition separating the anterior region of the knee joint from

the posterior region of the joint and the popliteal surface of the distal end of the femur. Similarly on the lateral side, the lateral intermuscular septum and the fibular collateral ligament separate the anterior portion of the knee joint from the posterior compartment of the joint and the popliteal surface of the femur.

Posteromedial and Posterolateral Ap-

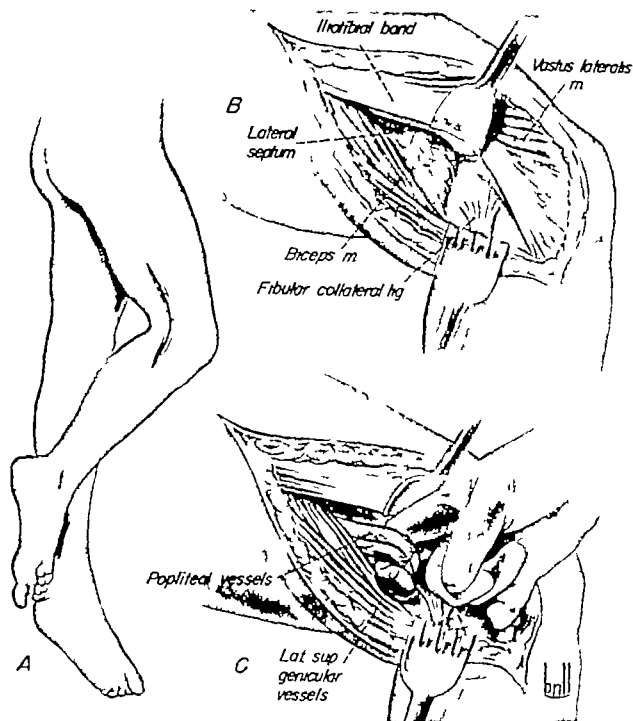


FIG. 403 (A to C) Steps in the lateral approach for exposure of the popliteal face of the femur (Henry)

proaches (Henderson) These incisions facilitate removal of loose bodies from the posterior compartment of the knee joint. The patient is placed in the supine position with the knee bent to a right angle over the end of the table.

**POSTEROMEDIAL APPROACH (Fig 401)** The skin incision is from 3 to 3½ inches long. It curves gently forward and downward be-

ginning over the adductor tubercle and ending over the medial aspect of the tibia paralleling the fibers of the long superficial portion of the tibial collateral ligament. Reflection of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue brings into view the tibial collateral ligament, the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the lower portion of the sartorius muscle. Next the sartorius is displaced po-

teriorly, thus exposing the oblique posterior fibers of the tibial collateral ligament and the tendon of the semimembranosus muscle. A vertical incision is made in the oblique posterior portion of the tibial collateral ligament and capsule in the line of their fibers. Retraction of the capsular flaps permits access to the posteromedial compartment of the joint, the posterior portion of the medial femoral condyle and the posterior segment of the internal meniscus are visualized clearly.

**POSTEROLATERAL APPROACH** A curved skin incision from 3 to 3½ inches in length, with its convexity directed anteriorly, is made in the sulcus formed by the biceps tendon posteriorly and the iliotibial tract anteriorly. It extends in front of the fibular collateral ligament and ends on the lateral aspect of the tibia. The flaps comprising skin and subcutaneous tissue are reflected up and down exposing the iliotibial tract, and the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle. In the upper end of the wound the external intermuscular septum is identified and followed to the linea aspera proximal to the lateral condyle of the femur. The fibular collateral ligament is now demonstrable as it inserts into the epicondyle of the lateral femoral condyle. Immediately below and posterior to the fibular collateral ligament the tendon of the popliteus muscle is seen running upward and forward to its insertion into the lateral aspect of the lateral femoral condyle. By retracting the biceps tendon downward the posterior capsule of the joint is exposed. Access to the posterior lateral compartment is achieved by incising the posterior capsule in its line of fibers. retraction of the capsular flaps brings into view the posterior portion of the lateral femoral condyle and the posterior segment of the external meniscus.

**Exposure of the Popliteal Face of the Femur (Henry)** The patient lies recumbent with a sandbag under the buttocks of the unaffected side. the foot of the affected extremity rests on the opposite shin as near

the knee as possible. This position tilts the popliteal face of the femur upward (Fig 402)

**MEDIAL APPROACH (Fig 402)** The skin incision follows the bend of the limb beginning 6 inches above the adductor tubercle and ending 2 inches below. The lower flap of skin and subcutaneous tissue is freed from the underlying fascia for approximately 1 inch, exposing the sartorius to a point proximal to the adductor tubercle, the sartorius is mobilized by dividing the deep fascia in front of it, taking care not to injure the synovial membrane which lies immediately beneath the muscle. Now the sartorius is retracted readily downward, thus exposing the tendon of the adductor magnus muscles and the saphenous nerve which lies deep to the sartorius. As the saphenous nerve leaves Hunter's canal it occupies a position in front of the adductor tendons. In some instances the nerve is attached to the deep surface of the sartorius muscle, in others it lies free and unattached in the bend of the limb. it is accompanied by the superficial branch of the genu suprema artery.

Immediately posterior to the adductor tendon is found a loose thin fascia, which is opened readily to gain access to the popliteal face of the femur. A finger is inserted into the opening with its dorsal surface against the tendon as far as the center of the popliteal face. Then the finger tip is flexed to locate the popliteal vessels which lie approximately 2 to 3 cm. from the bone. Using the finger, the opening into the space is enlarged and the vessels are mobilized from the opening in the adductor magnus to the condyles of the femur. The vessels together with the sartorius muscle are retracted backward. In so doing some twigs of the popliteal vessels going to the bone come into view. these are ligated and cut. Now exposure of the popliteal face of the femur is complete and the region is readily accessible.

**LATERAL APPROACH (Fig 403)** The patient lies on the unaffected side with the

sound limb extended the knee of the affected extremity is placed just in front of the opposite knee so that the heel lies on the shin of the sound limb thus tilting the angle of the popliteal region upward. An incision 6 inches long is made through the skin and the subcutaneous tissue it follows the bend of the flexed limb and lies about 3 to 4 cm in front of the biceps tendon paralleling the lower margin of the iliotibial tract. It is carried down to the head of the fibula. Next immediately proximal to the lateral condyle of the femur the deep fascia of the leg is divided just behind the lower margin of the iliotibial tract using this edge as a guide the incision is extended proximally taking care not to injure the synovial membrane in the region of the femoral condyle. The biceps muscle and the external intermuscular septum are now clearly identified and the index finger is inserted in the plane be-

tween the two structures just proximal to the femoral condyle. The finger is passed along the popliteal face of the femur, freeing it from all attachments of the biceps muscle. In so doing several branches of the perforating arteries will be encountered these are ligated and cut. Dissection of the belly of the biceps muscle is continued to the upper limbs of the skin incision. Close to the condyle a finger is inserted into the wound with its dorsal surface against the lower edge of the iliotibial tract as far as the center of the popliteal face of the femur. Then the finger is flexed, and the vascular bundle in the popliteal space is hooked the vessels are mobilized gently and retracted downward thus the entire popliteal face of the femur comes into view. The large nerves of the thigh (tibial and common peroneal) are not exposed because they occupy a position behind the vessels in this region.

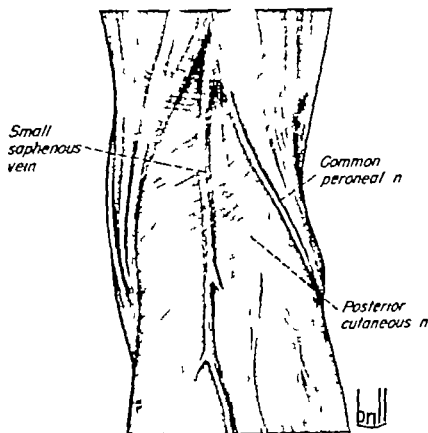


FIG. 404 Superficial structures of the posterior aspect of the knee joint.

APPROACHES TO POSTERIOR REGION  
OF THE KNEE JOINT

## Surgical Anatomy (Figs. 404 and 405)

Comprehension of the anatomy of the posterior aspect of the knee joint is most essential because of the many important structures which are present in this region and because of the many indications which require access to it. As recorded previously the muscles crossing the posterior aspect of the knee joint form the boundaries of the popliteal fossa which is lozenge-shaped. Above its medial border is formed by the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus

muscles below by the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle. On the lateral side the boundary is formed above by the biceps femoris muscle and below by the plantaris muscles. The following structures from above downward comprise the floor of the fossa the popliteal face of the femur the oblique popliteal ligament, the upper end of the tibia and the fascial covering of the popliteus muscle. Posteriorly the roof of the fossa is formed by the popliteal fascia, which is an extension of the fascia lata. As pointed out by Abbott and Carpenter the

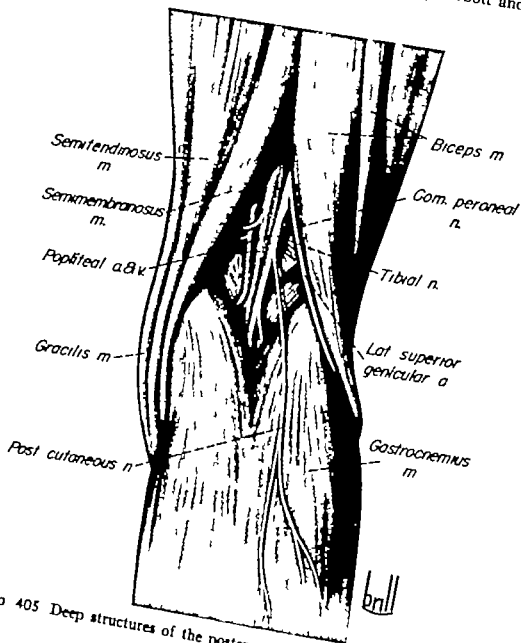


FIG 405 Deep structures of the posterior aspect of the knee joint.



popliteal fascia is fenestrated by certain structures which act as important surgical guides to other structures in this region. The posterior cutaneous nerve of the calf is such a structure. It occupies a position in the lower apex of the fossa between the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle. This nerve is the uppermost branch of the tibial nerve and arises in the popliteal fossa. It descends between the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle lateral to the external (short) saphenous vein. Approximately at the middle of the back of the leg it pierces the deep fascia and fuses with the anastomatic branch of the common peroneal nerve to form the sural nerve. It becomes apparent that by identifying the posterior nerve of the calf and tracing it upward it acts as a useful guide to the tibial nerve and other structures within the popliteal fossa. The posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh lies lateral to the posterior cutaneous nerve of the calf. The aforementioned cutaneous nerves must not be mistaken for two other nerves in this region: they are cutaneous branches of the common peroneal—the lateral cutaneous nerve of the calf and the anastomatic peroneal nerve. Deep in the popliteal fossa and lying directly on its floor are the popliteal artery and vein. From above downward the vein first lies on the lateral side of the artery, then it crosses it and finally in the distal region of the fossa it lies medial to the artery. In the fossa the genicular arteries leave the popliteal artery at right angles; the tibial nerve lies beneath the popliteal fascia traversing the fossa from above downward through its center crossing the vessels posteriorly from a lateral to a medial position. The common peroneal is found in the lateral aspect of the fossa under cover of the biceps muscle above and its tendon below.

Mid line approaches to the posterior region of the knee joint are employed for removal of loose bodies in the posterior compartment of the joint for repair of the posterior cruciate ligament for release of

flexion contractures of the joint for removal of tissues and cysts in this region and for exposure of the vessels and nerves in the popliteal fossa. The surgical landmarks are the boundaries of the popliteal fossa and the head of the fibula. The patient lies in a prone position with the affected limb slightly flexed at the knee joint and raised at a higher level than the opposite limb by a sandbag on a folded sheet.

**Mid line Incision (Fig. 406)** A curvilinear or S shaped skin incision is preferred to the vertical incision. The curvilinear incision begins on the medial side of the lower end of the thigh from 8 to 10 cm proximal to the joint line. It parallels the tendon of the semitendinosus to the joint line then curves laterally and downward crossing the posterior surface of the joint and continues distally over the outer head of the gastrocnemius. The skin flaps are reflected by sharp dissection thus exposing the popliteal fascia. In the lower end of the incision a vertical split is made in the deep fascia and the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh is identified. It lies deeply between the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle. As noted previously the external saphenous vein runs parallel with this nerve along its lateral aspect. In the extreme lateral aspect of the wound and under cover of the deep fascia are the anastomatic peroneal nerve and the lateral cutaneous nerve of the calf—both are branches of the common peroneal. They may arise singly or from a common trunk. By tracing the posterior cutaneous nerve of the calf upward to its origin the tibial nerve is identified readily. Once the tibial nerve is located it can be traced upward to the apex of the fossa where it joins the common peroneal to form the sciatic nerve and it can be followed downward to the distal portion of the fossa where it gives off muscular branches to the two heads of the gastrocnemius, the soleus and the plantaris muscles. The common peroneal can be followed downward until it winds around the neck of the fibula just

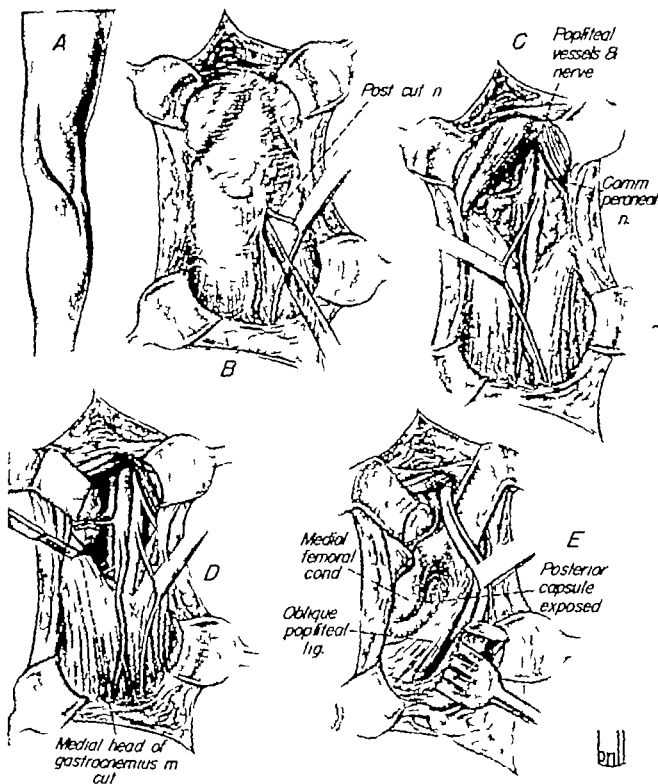


FIG. 406 (A to E) Steps to gain access to the posterior aspect of the knee joint through a curvilinear incision

proximal to this point it lies between the outer head of the gastrocnemius muscle and the tendon of the biceps femoris. On the floor of the fossa lie the popliteal artery and vein. Exposure of these vessels reveals the origin of the genicular arteries. Exposure

of the medial aspect of the popliteal fossa may be increased by dividing and retracting laterally the tendon of the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle. A similar exposure may be obtained on the lateral side by sectioning the tendon of the outer head of

the gastrocnemius. Further mobilization of the large vessels may be achieved by dividing some of the genicular arteries. By retracting the vessels and the nerves the structures comprising the floor of the popliteal fossa is demonstrable. Division of the posterior joint capsule and retraction of its flaps permits access to all the structures in the posterior compartment of the joint. These structures are the posterior segments of the menisci, the posterior cruciate, the posterior portions of the femoral condyles and the posterior aspects of the condyles of the tibia.

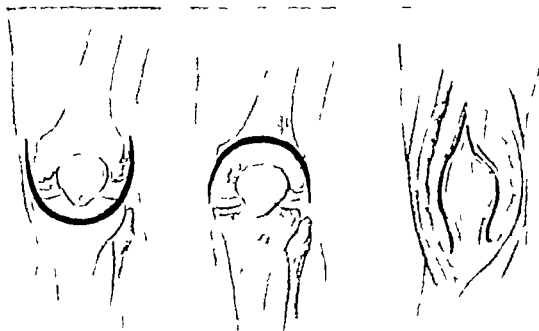
#### APPROACHES DIVIDING THE PATELLA

All the approaches to the knee joint which divide the patella provide excellent exposure of the entire joint except its posterior regions. However these incisions disrupt the quadriceps apparatus in such a fashion that restoration of normal function is greatly retarded and in some instances impossible. For these reasons they have been discarded and have been replaced by

the parapatellar incisions. The principal difference in the aforementioned incisions is the plane in which the patella is sectioned. Devine's approach splits the patella in the sagittal plane. von Volkmann divides the patella transversely. Brackett and Hall and Jones split the patella in the vertical plane. Bougot and De La Rue designed two incisions. In one the patella is sectioned obliquely from front to back. In another the patella is divided in the vertical plane.

#### APPROACHES DIVIDING THE QUADRICEPS FEMORIS MUSCLE OR THE PATELLAR TENDON

These approaches were designed primarily to facilitate arthroplasties of the knee joint. However they are used occasionally for synovectomies and exploration of the joint. As stated previously the last two procedures named are performed usually through parapatellar incisions. The significant surgical landmarks are the quadriceps tendon, the patella, the patellar tendon, the tibial tubercle and the condyles of the



*Textor*

*Putti*

*Coonse & Adams*

FIG. 407 Incisions of (left) Textor (center) Putti (right) Coonse and Adams

femur and the tibia. The patient is in the supine position with the knee of the affected limb flexed from 20° to 30° over a sandbag.

#### Incision Dividing the Patellar Tendon Transversely (Textor) (Fig 407 left)

This incision is particularly useful in cases requiring excision of the joint. The skin incision is U-shaped with its convexity facing downward. It begins over the medial femoral condyle and curves downward and outward crossing the leg just distal to the insertion of the patellar tendon into the tubercle of the tibia. It continues upward and outward ending over the lateral condyle of the femur. Upward and downward reflection of the skin flaps uncovers the patellar tendon and its tibial insertion and the lateral aponeurosis of the vasti. The lateral aponeurosis of the vasti, the patellar tendon and the synovialis are divided in the line of the skin incision taking care to preserve the integrity of the tibial collateral ligament on the inner side and the iliotibial tract on the outer aspect of the joint. The proximal flap comprising the skin and the aponeurotic expansions of the vasti and the patella is turned and retracted upward thus exposing the anterior region of the knee joint. Flexion of the joint to a right angle increases the exposure bringing clearly into view the condylar portion of the femur, the upper portion of the tibia, the suprapatellar synovial pouch, the menisci, the articular surface of the patella, the collateral and the cruciate ligaments, the infrapatellar fat pad and the ligamentum mucosum.

Some surgeons advocate this incision in severely septic joints in which case the joint may be held open by suturing the patellar tendon to the skin on the lower and anterior surface of the thigh.

#### Incision Dividing the Quadriceps Muscles (Putti Campbell) (Fig 407 center)

A curved skin incision U-shaped with its convexity directed proximally is made starting over the medial tibial condyle just anterior to the tibial collateral ligament. It

sweeps upward and outward across the anterior aspect of the joint from 2" above the base of the patella, then downward in front of and parallel to the fibular collateral ligament to terminate at the lateral tibial condyle. The underlying structures comprising the fascia and aponeurosis of the vasti are cut in the line of the skin incision, while the tendon of the quadriceps is divided transversely just proximal to the base of the patella. Some surgeons preferred to do a Z-plastic incision in the quadriceps tendon rather than section it transversely. Retraction of the lower flap which contains the patella provides an excellent exposure of the entire knee joint except its posterior portion. The exposure may be enhanced by flexing the knee to a right angle.

#### Plastic Division of the Tendon of the Quadriceps (Coonse and Adams) (Fig 407 right)

The first step in this approach is a curved medial parapatellar incision. Reflection of the skin and the subcutaneous tissues reveals the quadriceps tendon, the patella, the patellar tendon and the aponeurosis of the vastus medialis and the inner portion of the aponeurosis of the vastus lateralis. Next, an inverted Y-shaped incision is made in the tendon of the quadriceps and the aponeurosis of the vasti and in the synovial membrane. The upper limb of the inverted Y divides the quadriceps tendon vertically then it sweeps downward on either side of the patella, cutting through the aponeurosis of the vasti. Complete access of the anterior compartment of the joint is achieved by reflecting the patella downward.

## SURGICAL PROCEDURES

### ARTHRODESIS OF THE KNEE JOINT

**Indications and Contraindications:** The goal of arthrodesis is twofold: (1) to provide the patient with a stable painless limb in the position of optimum function and (2) to eradicate the existing pathologic

processes responsible for the deformity or disability. This is achieved by producing through surgical intervention, bony ankylosis of the affected joint. Once an arthrodesis is decided upon and performed, there is no turning back; thus each case must be evaluated carefully, particularly in regard to the advantages and the disadvantages of the procedure. The indications for arthrodesis are (1) tuberculosis, (2) flail joints, such as those resulting from anterior poliomyelitis, (3) neurotrophic diseases of joints, particularly Charcot's joints, (4) traumatic lesions producing gross incongruity of the articular surfaces, usually following fractures with displacement of the tibial plateau, (5) advanced osteoarthritis, traumatic or degenerative in origin, causing severe pain and disability, and (6) postinfectious arthritis leaving in its wake a disrupted joint with limited painful motion.

Except in cases of tuberculosis arthrodesis should be the last measure employed to rehabilitate the patient. This is especially true in traumatic and degenerative lesions. The value of other more conservative methods is first weighed and tried, such as rest, improvement of muscle tone and control, particularly of the quadriceps group, synovectomy, débridement of the joint, improvement of static alignment by osteotomy, reconstruction of lax or torn ligaments, and in cases of paralysis, muscle transplants wherever possible. One is justified in performing an arthrodesis only after the aforementioned measures have failed to produce results acceptable to the patient or if, in the judgment of the surgeon based on clinical experience, they are not considered worthy of trial. The handicaps of a fused knee are numerous; it precludes a graceful, smooth gait; in a sitting position it may be a source of inconvenience and embarrassment, and the patient is unable to kneel. The enumerated disadvantages comprise a sacrifice that is made with great reluctance by the patient, an unwillingness that is justifiable. It becomes apparent that the advantages must

outweigh the disadvantages of a fused knee joint before the surgeon is justified in recommending and performing this procedure.

So far, only the unpleasantness of an arthrodesis has been emphasized. However, there is much to be said in favor of this operation. In tuberculosis, regardless of the age of the patient, arthrodesis has proved to be an effective means of inducing complete rest of the part, a feature that is essential before the body forces can eradicate the disease. In instances of gross instability of the knee joint, arthrodesis allows the patient to discard cumbersome braces. Cleveland recorded that 91 per cent of 80 patients with fused paralyzed knee joints were satisfied with the result of the procedure. In patients with traumatic or degenerative arthritis causing pain and disability, arthrodesis provides a painless, stable limb and restores the patient to a gainful occupation; moreover, the cure is permanent. Except in tuberculosis, the question as to the advisability of an arthroplasty instead of an arthrodesis arises frequently. The specific indications of arthroplasty will be discussed subsequently; however, at this time, mention must be made of the fact that even in the hands of the most experienced and skillful operators, the results obtained by arthroplasty are not considered as satisfactory in a large percentage of the patients.

#### ARTHRODESIS OF TUBERCULOUS KNEE JOINTS

**Evaluation of Arthrodesing Operations.** Today it is common knowledge that arthrodesis of a tuberculous joint is a valuable adjunct in achieving complete rest until nature overpowers the disease and eradicates it. The measure is not a cure and plays a secondary part to the more important role of the body as a whole. No measure must be overlooked that will build up the natural resources of the patient and aid in localizing and eventually obliterating the pathologic processes. Such measures include adequate rest, pleasant and sanitary environment, and

a diet rich in all the essential foods and vitamins. The role of the antibiotics and chemotherapy looks promising; the future may release some startling advances in these fields.

Prior to the time of Rollier, extensive resection of the tuberculous knee joint was considered as the treatment of choice. This radical procedure was followed invariably by unfavorable and sometimes tragic sequelae. Extensive resections of the articular surfaces without adequate immobilization resulted in wide separation of the bone ends; thus union was rarely achieved. Secondary infections were encountered frequently. In many instances the unfavorable complications associated with these secondary infections were responsible for the loss of the limb and in some instances the life of the patient. Most of those who survived the ordeal demonstrated limbs distorted by contractures and they were of little or no functional value.

These unfavorable results were responsible for the adaptation of more conservative measures. The methods practiced and publicized by Rollier claimed more and more adherents. In fact, Rollier's slogan was "Every case of tuberculosis can be healed if we have only the patience not to operate."

Critical analysis of the cases treated by the conservative methods advocated by Rollier disclosed that the immediate good result did not stand up under the test of time. Relapses of the pathologic processes occurred in a large number of cases which previously had been considered as cured. Also in a large percentage of the healed cases the affected limb was of no functional value; severe contractures and marked shortening of the extremities were the usual sequelae. These factors forced surgeons to consider again a surgical approach to the problem. A combination of conservative treatment and surgical intervention gradually became popular. The goal of the surgeons now was to achieve a bony ankylosis in the position of function without removal of large quantities of bone; the surgery was

performed at a time when the patient's general condition was considered to be good and the local lesion was controlled by the natural resistances of the patient. The value of long periods of postoperative immobilization was recognized and practiced. With such a regimen the number of healed patients with functioning limbs increased. It is interesting to note that for many years prominent surgeons combined the arthrodesing procedures with excision of the synovial membrane.

**AGE AT WHICH OPERATION IS ADVISABLE**  
The age of the patient at which operation is deemed advisable is still a controversial topic. For many years surgery was reserved for patients who had attained skeletal maturity; operation on children was discouraged and frowned upon. Clinical experience has changed this view. Now, age is no longer a consideration. Between the ages of 3 and 5 osseous ankylosis is difficult to achieve because of the preponderance of cartilage tissue which comprises the ends of the epiphysis of the distal end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia. Nevertheless, even in these cases surgical intervention is preferred to conservative methods because they exhibit less residual shortening of the limbs and have fewer complications. In performing arthrodesis of the knee joint in children, precaution is taken not to injure the epiphyseal plates; this may lead to growth disturbances in the form of angular deformities, shortening of the limb, or both. In general, the degree of skeletal development governs the time of operation: after the age of 8 the epiphyses of femoral and tibial condyles contain sufficient osseous tissue to assure bony ankylosis. However, the writer's clinical experience substantiates the observations of McKeever and others that in young children intra-articular fusion may be achieved and that these children have better results than could be obtained with prolonged immobilization without surgical intervention. Haas' report in 1940 is of great significance, and his observations have been sub-





FIG 408 (*Left*) Case J O, male, aged 9. Observe the complete bony ankylosis following surgical arthrodesis performed for tuberculosis of the joint at the age of 6. No evidence of any activity is evident clinically or roentgenographically. The knee is in the ideal position (full extension). (*Right*) Two years after operation this patient sustained a slip of the distal femoral epiphysis following a fall; minimal deformity was present which was reduced by manipulation. No disturbance of growth ensued.

408) In the adult, from  $10^{\circ}$  to  $20^{\circ}$  of flexion at the knee is desirable. It permits the patient to sit with ease. The slight amount of shortening which results from an arthrodesis is advantageous to the patient because it facilitates walking; the leg can be swung in walking without the foot's scraping the ground or without having to elevate the pelvis on the affected side or without having to swing the leg outward.

**Postoperative Management.** Following most of the fusion operations except those utilizing compression, the patient is placed in a single plaster spica extending from the iliac crest to the toes on the affected side. After 4 weeks most of the postoperative swelling will have subsided, the cast is removed, the wound is inspected, and a similar snug fitting spica is applied. As a rule, after 12 weeks clinical union is demonstrable, although roentgenographic evidence of union may be slight or absent. The plaster spica is replaced by an unpadded skin tight plaster cylinder extending from the groin to above

the malleoli, and weight bearing is permitted. Later, the plaster cylinder may be replaced by a Thomas caliper knee brace, to which is added a leather corset that fits snugly around the limb. It is worn day and night until there is roentgenographic evidence of an osseous ankylosis. Even after bony fusion has been achieved, the limbs of adults should be protected by braces until continuous bony trabeculae crossing the site of operation are demonstrable by roentgenograms; thus may mean from 6 to 12 months or even more. In children postoperative protection of the limb is even more important. The long leg brace without a knee joint should be worn for several years in order to prevent slipping of the distal femoral epiphysis. Some surgeons advocate its use until the age of 14 for some children.

#### ARTHRODESIS PROCEDURES

Numerous operations have been designed to produce bony ankylosis in tuberculous knee joints. Although extra articular arthro-



stantiated subsequently by many workers. Although his series was small he pointed out that if the epiphyseal cartilage plates in growing children are not disturbed fusion is obtained without loss of growth in the majority of the cases and when shortening does occur it never exceeds  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. The youngest patient in this series was  $2\frac{3}{4}$  years and the oldest  $12\frac{1}{2}$  years.

In the very young children the preponderance of cartilage and a small ossification center may preclude osseous contact. In these cases removal of a thin layer of cartilage from the adjacent articular surfaces suffices; a bony ankylosis may not occur but a fibrous union always will follow. Later when the ossification center has increased in size a second operation is done to obtain osseous union.

**OPTIMUM TIME OF OPERATION** Another controversial point is the stage of the disease which may be considered as the optimum time to perform the arthrodesis. Many workers are of the opinion that the optimum time comes during the period of abatement of the disease or when the natural body resistance has controlled the activity and the spread of the pathologic processes. On the other hand other noted authorities in the field have advocated operative interference as soon as the diagnosis is established.

In the writer's clinic a middle course is chosen. Arthrodesis is performed in the early stages of the disease before extensive disruption of the components of the joint has occurred and preferably when there is roentgenographic evidence that the lesion is controlled and the osseous elements of the joint are approaching normal. Operation is not done in the face of an actively destructive process with acute clinical manifestations. This would invite avoidable complications as increasing the intensity of the process and exposure of the patient to secondary infection or dissemination of the disease to other systems of the body. Patients in this category are put at complete bed rest for 3 months; the affected extremity is encased

in plaster. If a flexion deformity exists the limb is placed in balanced traction—forceful correction never is employed. During this period supportive measures are added to improve the physical status of the patient. Small transfusions of whole blood are valuable adjuncts. In addition 1 Gm. of streptomycin is given daily to adults and  $\frac{1}{2}$  Gm. to children. This is continued for the 90-day period. The efficacy of this drug in tuberculosis of bones and joints has been established. No doubt the future will give us an antibiotic or drug which will be even more effective than streptomycin. After this period the patient is usually ready for arthrodesis of the knee joint.

**Management of Existing Deformities.** Untreated or poorly managed cases of tuberculosis of the knee joint may disclose varying degrees of axial deformity of the tibia on the femur and flexion contracture of the knee. As a rule the limb is flexed at the knee abducted and rotated externally; the tibia may be subluxated partially or completely on the femur. Deformities of lesser degrees may be corrected at the time of operation by shaving the condyles of the femur and the tibia to allow contact between the surfaces with the knee in the position of election. Severe deformity may require preliminary surgical procedures such as posterior capsulotomies, tendon lengthening or osteotomies before arthrodesis can be considered. After stability of the corrected position is assured which is between 4 and 6 weeks arthrodesis of the joint can be performed. As noted previously at no time is forceful correction of a deformity resulting from tuberculosis justified.

**POSITION OF ELECTION OF THE LIMB** In children the position of election of the extremity following arthrodesis differs from that in adults. In the children the knee is placed in full extension. This precaution is essential because slight flexion tends to increase with weight-bearing and growth, also slipping of the lower femoral epiphysis is a common occurrence in children (Fig



FIG 408 (*Left*) Case J O, male aged 9. Observe the complete bony ankylosis following surgical arthrodesis performed for tuberculosis of the joint at the age of 6. No evidence of any activity is evident clinically or roentgenographically. The knee is in the ideal position (full extension). (*Right*) Two years after operation this patient sustained a slip of the distal femoral epiphysis following a fall, minimal deformity was present, which was reduced by manipulation. No disturbance of growth ensued.

408) In the adult from  $10^{\circ}$  to  $20^{\circ}$  of flexion at the knee is desirable, it permits the patient to sit with ease. The slight amount of shortening which results from an arthrodesis is advantageous to the patient because it facilitates walking; the leg can be swung in walking without the foot's scraping the ground or without having to elevate the pelvis on the affected side or without having to swing the leg outward.

**Postoperative Management.** Following most of the fusion operations except those utilizing compression the patient is placed in a single plaster spica extending from the iliac crest to the toes on the affected side. After 4 weeks most of the postoperative swelling will have subsided; the cast is removed, the wound is inspected, and a similar snug fitting spica is applied. As a rule after 12 weeks clinical union is demonstrable although roentgenographic evidence of union may be slight or absent. The plaster spica is replaced by an unpadded skin tight plaster cylinder extending from the groin to above

the malleoli and weight bearing is permitted. Later the plaster cylinder may be replaced by a Thomas caliper knee brace, to which is added a leather corset that fits snugly around the limb; it is worn day and night until there is roentgenographic evidence of an osseous ankylosis. Even after bony fusion has been achieved, the limbs of adults should be protected by braces until continuous bony trabeculae crossing the site of operation are demonstrable by roentgenograms; this may mean from 6 to 12 months or even more. In children postoperative protection of the limb is even more important. The long leg brace without a knee joint should be worn for several years in order to prevent slipping of the distal femoral epiphysis. Some surgeons advocate its use until the age of 14 for some children.

#### ARTHRODESIS PROCEDURES

Numerous operations have been designed to produce bony ankylosis in tuberculous knee joints. Although extra-articular arthro-



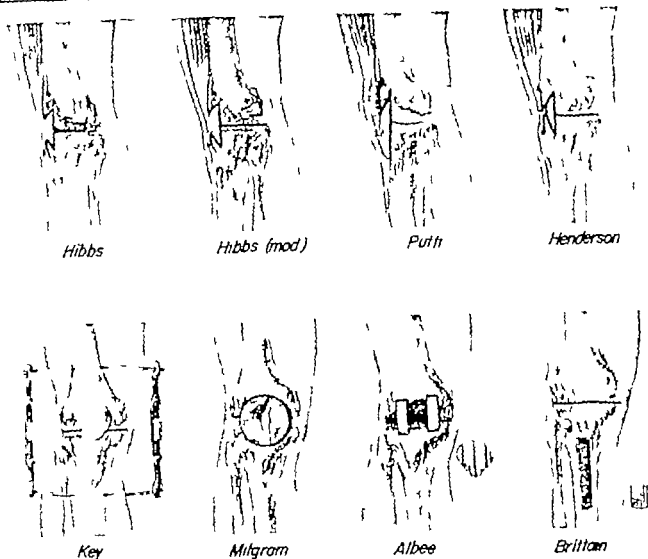


FIG. 409 Some of the methods of arthrodesis of the knee joint.

medial side just below the adductor tubercle (Fig 409). It curves downward and outward to a point immediately below the insertion of the patellar tendon into the tibial tubercle and then continues upward ending at the lateral epicondyle of the femur. In the line of the skin incision the aponeurosis of the vasti, the patellar tendon and the joint capsule are divided preserving the tibial collateral ligament on the medial side and the iliotibial tract on the lateral side. The entire flap which includes the patella and the patellar tendon, is reflected upward. By flexing the knee all the structures in the anterior compartments of the knee joint are exposed. The patella is excised and denuded of all tendinous tissue, periosteum and cartilage. In the original

operation designed by Hibbs the patella was left attached to the quadriceps tendon in order to ensure adequate blood supply to the bone. However the use of the patella as a free graft facilitates the procedure inasmuch as it is embedded in cancellous tissue of the femur and the tibia revascularization occurs readily. Both menisci, the infrapatellar fat pad and all accessible diseased tissue are removed. Next, with a fine osteotome a curved resection of the articular cartilage of both the condyles of the femur is performed likewise the condyles of the tibia are denuded of cartilage so that there is good contact between the femoral and the tibial condyles. Extensive resection of all diseased bone is not essential, only enough bone should be removed to permit satisfac-

deses are the ideal operations, the intra-articular arthrodeses are by far the most popular. In 1933 Delahaye described for the first time an extra-articular operation. He employed a long flexible tibial graft, which was inserted through the substance of the patella and bridged the interval from the femur to the tibia. This principle was utilized by Richards and King who devised a two-step procedure. In the first step a tibial graft was inserted in the patella and the tibia. In the second, another tibial graft was placed between the patella and the femur. The goal of this technic is to achieve spontaneous bony ankylosis of the affected articulation by an extra-articular bridge of bone which eliminates all motion in the joint. In spite of the theoretical advantage of extra-articular arthrodeses, they are used rarely; however they may come into greater favor in the future.

**Intra-articular Arthrodeses.** The objective of all arthrodesing procedures is to obtain a bony ankylosis of the knee joint. This is achieved best by fulfilling specific technical requisites. These are adequate and accurate bone contact between the femur and the tibia, prolonged and effectual fixation until fusion is achieved and bone struts across the joint line to promote osteogenesis. Those procedures which meet all the aforementioned requirements are known to have the highest incidence of successful results while those that do not have fallen into disuse because of the poor results that ensued. In order to assure undisturbed fixation some surgeons use screws and pins across the joint line. This practice must be discouraged particularly in tuberculous knee joints because of the danger of secondary infection, ring sequestri and other unfavorable complications. Fortunately clinical experience has amply proved this point; hence today less and less foreign material is introduced across joint lines of tuberculous knees. On the other hand the principle of compression is a valuable adjunct in promoting rapid osseous union and shortening

the time of immobilization. The author utilizes this method routinely in all fusions of the knee if no contraindications to its use exist.

Arthrodesing operations fall into four categories: (1) arthrodeses with bridging grafts, (2) arthrodeses by resection and compression, (3) arthrodeses with internal and external fixation and (4) arthrodesis by a combination of the above methods.

**ARTHRODESIS WITH BRIDGING GRAFTS.** The earlier operations depended solely on the bridging grafts to effect a bony ankylosis. The articular surfaces of the joint are not resected. Although these procedures are executed with minimum shock and trauma and result in no shortening of the limb, the incidence of failure to obtain a bony fusion is higher than in arthrodesing operations in which resection of joint surfaces is carried out; hence, they are seldom used. Hibbs' original operation used the patella as a bridging graft, while Putti utilized a triangular wedge of bone removed from the upper end of the tibia, including the tibial tubercle. Roeren described a rotation arthrodesis which was modified by Milgram; however, this procedure is not recommended for tuberculous joints. Hibbs' later procedure which included curved resection of the articular surfaces is widely used. This together with the element of compression is the author's preference. It is the operation of choice in tuberculosis of the knee joints of children because it minimizes the amount of shortening of the limb. Particular precaution must be taken in children not to inflict trauma to the epiphyseal cartilage plate. In adults more resection of the bone ends is usually necessary. In fact a modified plane resection is done before the desired plane of contact between the femur and the tibia is reached. Plane resection produces more shortening than curved resection but this is unavoidable in extensive destructive lesions in adults.

**Hibbs' Operation (Modified).** A U-shaped skin incision is made beginning on the

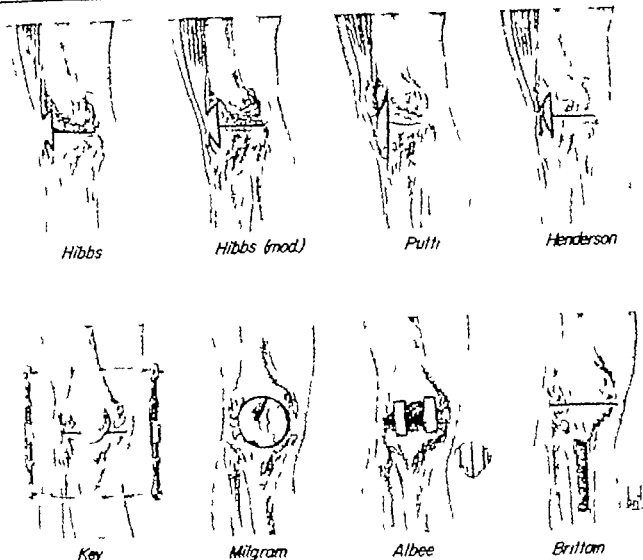


FIG. 409 Some of the methods of arthrodesis of the knee joint.

medial side just below the adductor tubercle (Fig. 409). It curves downward and outward to a point immediately below the insertion of the patellar tendon into the tibial tubercle and then continues upward ending at the lateral epicondyle of the femur. In the line of the skin incision the aponeurosis of the vasti, the patellar tendon and the joint capsule are divided, preserving the tibial collateral ligament on the medial side and the iliotibial tract on the lateral side. The entire flap, which includes the patella and the patellar tendon, is reflected upward. By flexing the knee all the structures in the anterior compartments of the knee joint are exposed. The patella is excised and denuded of all tendinous tissue, periosteum and cartilage. In the original

operation designed by Hibbs the patella was left attached to the quadriceps tendon in order to ensure adequate blood supply to the bone. However, the use of the patella as a free graft facilitates the procedure inasmuch as it is embedded in cancellous tissue of the femur and the tibia revascularization occurs readily. Both menisci, the infrapatellar fat pad and all accessible diseased tissue are removed. Next, with a fine osteotome a curved resection of the articular cartilage of both the condyles of the femur is performed. Likewise, the condyles of the tibia are denuded of cartilage so that there is good contact between the femoral and the tibial condyles. Extensive resection of all diseased bone is not essential, only enough bone should be removed to permit satisfac-

deses are the ideal operations the intra articular arthrodeses are by far the most popular In 1933 Delahaye described for the first time an extra-articular operation He employed a long flexible tibial graft, which was inserted through the substance of the patella and bridged the interval from the femur to the tibia This principle was utilized by Richards and King, who devised a two-step procedure In the first step a tibial graft was inserted in the patella and the tibia In the second another tibial graft was placed between the patella and the femur The goal of this technic is to achieve spontaneous bony ankylosis of the affected articulation by an extra-articular bridge of bone which eliminates all motion in the joint In spite of the theoretical advantage of extra articular arthrodeses they are used rarely however, they may come into greater favor in the future

**Intra articular Arthrodeses.** The objective of all arthrodesing procedures is to obtain a bony ankylosis of the knee joint. This is achieved best by fulfilling specific technical requisites These are adequate and accurate bone contact between the femur and the tibia prolonged and effectual fixation until fusion is achieved and bone struts across the joint line to promote osteogenesis Those procedures which meet all the aforementioned requirements are known to have the highest incidence of successful results while those that do not have fallen into disuse because of the poor results that ensued In order to assure undisturbed fixation some surgeons use screws and pins across the joint line This practice must be discouraged particularly in tuberculous knee joints because of the danger of secondary infection ring sequestri and other unfavorable complications Fortunately clinical experience has amply proved this point hence today less and less foreign material is introduced across joint lines of tuberculous knees On the other hand the principle of compression is a valuable adjunct in promoting rapid osseous union and shortening

the time of immobilization The author utilizes this method routinely in all fusions of the knee if no contraindications to its use exist

Arthrodesing operations fall into four categories (1) arthrodeses with bridging grafts, (2) arthrodeses by resection and compression (3) arthrodeses with internal and external fixation and (4) arthrodesis by a combination of the above methods

**ARTHRODESIS WITH BRIDGING GRAFTS** The earlier operations depended solely on the bridging grafts to effect a bony ankylosis The articular surfaces of the joint are not resected Although these procedures are executed with minimum shock and trauma and result in no shortening of the limb the incidence of failure to obtain a bony fusion is higher than in arthrodesing operations in which resection of joint surfaces is carried out hence they are seldom used Hibbs original operation used the patella as a bridging graft, while Putti utilized a triangular wedge of bone removed from the upper end of the tibia including the tibial tubercle Roeren described a rotation arthrodesis which was modified by Vilgram however, this procedure is not recommended for tuberculous joints Hibbs later procedure which included curved resection of the articular surfaces is widely used This together with the element of compression is the author's preference It is the operation of choice in tuberculosis of the knee joints of children because it minimizes the amount of shortening of the limb Particular precaution must be taken in children not to inflict trauma to the epiphyseal cartilage plate In adults more resection of the bone ends is usually necessary In fact a modified plane resection is done before the desired plane of contact between the femur and the tibia is reached Plane resection produces more shortening than curved resection but this is unavoidable in extensive destructive lesions in adults

**Hibbs Operation (Modified)** A U-shaped skin incision is made beginning on the

flaps on the anterior surface of the femur and the tibia. Further stability of the bone ends is achieved by approximating snugly the aponeuroses of the vasti and the capsule with interrupted sutures.

*Albee's Operation* This procedure is similar to the technic of Henderson, except that no nails are used for internal fixation (Fig 409). The patella is excised and denuded of all soft tissue and cartilage. With a twin blade saw two grafts are cut out of the patella. A slot is made in each femoral condyle, and a corresponding slot is chiseled out of the upper end of the tibial condyles. The raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia are approximated, and with the limb held in the position of election, the patella grafts are driven in the slots made in the femur and the tibia. These grafts provide fixation and osteogenesis.

*Pattil's Operation* Like the original Hibbs technic, this procedure attempts to attain an osseous ankylosis between the femur and the tibia without resection of the articular ends of the bones (Fig 409). As noted previously, it preserves length of the limb but the incidence of successful fusions is not as high as in procedures which resect the articular surfaces.

The knee is exposed through an antero-medial incision, and the patellar tendon is detached from the tibial tubercle. A triangular-shaped piece of bone is removed from the anterior surface of the tibia; the base of the triangle is at the upper border of the anterior surface of the tibia, while its apex is at the lower margin of the tubercle of the tibia. A flap of bone is elevated from the anterior surface of the femur. Next the tibial graft is turned around and its apex is inserted under the osseous flap on the anterior surface of the femoral condyles, while its base rests on the raw surface on the anterior surface of the tibia. In addition, the articular cartilage is removed from the patella, and the raw surface is brought in contact with the corresponding raw surfaces made on the osseous flap of the femur. The

patella and the tibial graft are anchored by catgut sutures, one passing around the flap and another around the base of the tibial graft.

*Brittain's Operation* The advantage of this procedure is that fixation is achieved with healthy tibial grafts which stimulate osteogenesis (Fig 409). It is contraindicated in children, because the grafts will traverse the epiphyseal cartilage plates thereby inducing growth disturbances in the form of axial deformities and shortening of the limb.

An anteromedial incision is utilized to expose the knee joint. The lower limb of the incision continues distally 6 inches on the crest of the tibia. The crest and the adjacent anterior surface of the tibia are exposed subperiosteally, and two parallel grafts 5 inches in length are removed with a motor-driven saw. The grafts include the crest of the tibia. It is advisable at this time to close the lower limb of the incision in order to prevent contamination by material from the knee joint. The patella is excised from its bed, and with a twin blade handsaw parallel cuts are made through the articular ends of the femur and the tibia. Wide thin osteotomes are used to complete the resection. A special chisel or Henderson reamer is passed through the anteromedial aspect of the base of the medial tibial condyle; it is directed upward and outward, passing through the tibia across the joint line and into the femur. The chisel is left in place. A second chisel or reamer is inserted into the anterolateral aspect of the base of the lateral condyle and directed upward and into the femur. The first chisel is removed, and a graft is driven in its track. Then the second chisel is withdrawn, and the remaining graft is inserted. At the completion of the operation the raw areas of the femur and the tibia should be in good apposition, and the limb in the desired angle of flexion at the knee.

*ARTHRODESIS WITH ILIAC BONE.* To provide stability and osteogenesis knee fusions may be augmented by iliac grafts. This source of bone is readily accessible, and as



tory contact of the raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia. The lateral collateral and cruciate ligaments are left intact. Transverse slots are chiseled out of the anterior surfaces of the femur and the tibia and by extending the knee the patella is mortised into the slots. The severed ends of the patellar tendon and the capsule are brought together by interrupted sutures. Immobilization of the extremity is attained by a single plaster spica from the waist to the toes. Children's knees are placed in full extension ( $180^\circ$ ) in order to overcome the tendency to develop flexion deformities or slipping of the distal femoral epiphysis. The adult knee is allowed to fuse in  $10^\circ$  to  $20^\circ$  of flexion; this facilitates walking and sitting.

*Galloway's Operation* This procedure is seldom used. It comprises a plane resection of the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia, use of lateral bridging grafts and 4 transfixing nails. The modern trend to avoid the use of cross pins or nails across the joint line in tuberculous knees has been substantiated by the unfavorable sequelae reported in cases where such material has been used. The compression method used by the author to induce rapid fusion and maintain the position of election of the knee is accompanied by fewer hazards than internal fixation by transfixion pins.

As in the Hibbs procedure the knee is exposed by a U-shaped incision. All accessible diseased tissue is removed; also the menisci and the infrapatellar fat pad are excised. A flat layer of bone is elevated from the lateral aspects of each condyle of the femur; these will function as bridging grafts. Corresponding raw surfaces are created with a thin osteotome on the lateral aspects of the tibial condyles. With a saw the articular ends of the femur and the tibia are resected so that when approximated the knee will be flexed  $165^\circ$ . Likewise the articular cartilage of the patella is removed and a raw surface is made on the anterior surface of the femur and the tibia. Next

the surfaces of the femur and the tibia are brought into contact and fixed by 2 wire nails or Knowles pins which are introduced through the tibia into the femur in such a manner as to cross each other. Two other nails fix the patella to the femur and the tibia; the patella also bridges the joint line. Finally, the lateral flaps of bone elevated previously from the condyles of the femur are fitted across the joint line and approximated to the corresponding raw surfaces on the lateral aspects of the tibial condyles.

*Henderson's Operation* This operation (Fig. 409) is a modification of Galloway's procedure. The knee joint is exposed by a U-shaped incision and the large flap containing the patella is reflected upward. The patella is excised and denuded of all tendinous attachments, periosteum and cartilage. It is used later as a free graft. As nearly complete a synovectomy as possible is done. A plane resection of the ends of the femur and the tibia is performed by a saw. Now the tibia is readily displaced forward and as much of the infected synovial membrane in the posterior region of the joint as is accessible is removed. Sufficient bone is removed from the condyles to permit approximation of the bone ends at the angle of election; this excised bone is set aside to be used as grafts. About 12 cm. below the proximal border of the tibia 2 small incisions are made on each side of the mid line through which 2 wire nails are inserted. The nails are directed upward and backward, passing through the tibia until their ends protrude from the resected tibial surface. A layer of bone from 2 to 3 cm. in length is elevated from the anterior surface of the femur; a similar flap is pried from the corresponding anterior surface of the upper end of the tibia. The resected ends of the femur and the tibia are brought together and held at the desired angle of the knee joint. This position is secured by driving the nails into the femur. The patella or the cancellous bone obtained previously from the femoral condyles is mortised under the bone

flaps on the anterior surface of the femur and the tibia. Further stability of the bone ends is achieved by approximating snugly the aponeuroses of the vasti and the capsule with interrupted sutures.

**Albee's Operation** This procedure is similar to the technic of Henderson, except that no nails are used for internal fixation (Fig. 409). The patella is excised and denuded of all soft tissue and cartilage. With a twin blade saw two grafts are cut out of the patella. A slot is made in each femoral condyle, and a corresponding slot is chiseled out of the upper end of the tibial condyles. The raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia are approximated, and with the limb held in the position of election, the patella grafts are driven in the slots made in the femur and the tibia. These grafts provide fixation and osteogenesis.

**Putti's Operation** Like the original Hibbs technic, this procedure attempts to attain an osseous ankylosis between the femur and the tibia without resection of the articular ends of the bones (Fig. 409). As noted previously, it preserves length of the limb, but the incidence of successful fusions is not as high as in procedures which resect the articular surfaces.

The knee is exposed through an antero-medial incision, and the patellar tendon is detached from the tibial tubercle. A triangular shaped piece of bone is removed from the anterior surface of the tibia; the base of the triangle is at the upper border of the anterior surface of the tibia, while its apex is at the lower margin of the tubercle of the tibia. A flap of bone is elevated from the anterior surface of the femur. Next, the tibial graft is turned around and its apex is inserted under the osseous flap on the anterior surface of the femoral condyles while its base rests on the raw surface on the anterior surface of the tibia. In addition the articular cartilage is removed from the patella, and the raw surface is brought in contact with the corresponding raw surfaces made on the osseous flap of the femur. The

patella and the tibial graft are anchored by catgut sutures, one passing around the flap and another around the base of the tibial graft.

**Brittain's Operation** The advantage of this procedure is that fixation is achieved with healthy tibial grafts which stimulate osteogenesis (Fig. 409). It is contraindicated in children because the grafts will traverse the epiphyseal cartilage plates, thereby inducing growth disturbances in the form of axial deformities and shortening of the limb.

An anteromedial incision is utilized to expose the knee joint. The lower limb of the incision continues distally 6 inches on the crest of the tibia. The crest and the adjacent anterior surface of the tibia are exposed subperiosteally and two parallel grafts 5 inches in length are removed with a motor-driven saw. The grafts include the crest of the tibia. It is advisable at this time to close the lower limb of the incision in order to prevent contamination by material from the knee joint. The patella is excised from its bed and with a twin blade handsaw parallel cuts are made through the articular ends of the femur and the tibia. Wide thin osteotomes are used to complete the resection. A special chisel or Henderson reamer is passed through the anteromedial aspect of the base of the medial tibial condyle; it is directed upward and outward, passing through the tibia across the joint line and into the femur; the chisel is left in place. A second chisel or reamer is inserted into the anterolateral aspect of the base of the lateral condyle and directed upward and into the femur. The first chisel is removed and a graft is driven in its track, then the second chisel is withdrawn, and the remaining graft is inserted. At the completion of the operation the raw areas of the femur and the tibia should be in good apposition, and the limb in the desired angle of flexion at the knee.

**ARTHRODESIS WITH ILIAC BONE** To provide stability and osteogenesis knee fusions may be augmented by iliac grafts. This source of bone is readily accessible and as

many grafts as are desired may be obtained moreover the bone in this region is free of infection and its use eliminates the unfortunate sequel of a fracture of the tibia following the removal of massive grafts

**ARTHRORHESIS WITH COMPRESSION** The value of compression forces in arthrodesing operations has not been fully understood until very recently, following the publication of Charnley in 1948. The method was first described by Key in 1937 several modifications of this technic have appeared in the literature since its introduction. As noted previously it provides adequate fixation without inserting pins, nails or screws across the joint line in diseased bone and more important it is a powerful stimulus of osteogenesis.

**Key's Operation:** The joint is exposed through an anteromedial or U-shaped incision the latter is employed more commonly (Fig 409). The upper flap containing the patella and the patellar tendon is reflected upward permitting access to the articular surfaces and other structures in the anterior compartment of the joint. As a rule all the diseased synovialis which is accessible is excised also the infrapatellar fat pad and the meniscus are removed. Gross osseous foci of the disease are curetted. Next a curved resection of the articular surfaces is performed with a sharp thin osteotome or a plane resection is done with a saw forming two flat surfaces. The amount of bone removed should not be excessive because too much shortening will result only enough bone should be resected to allow good apposition of the raw surfaces. Care is taken not to injure the epiphyseal plates. The planes of resection are such that all axial deformities are corrected the patella is excised and used as a free graft or discarded or it is denuded of its articular surface and brought into apposition to corresponding raw areas on the anterior surface of the femur and the tibia hence acting as a bridging graft.

A stainless-steel pin (3/16 inch for adults and 5/32 inch for children) is inserted through the lower third of the femur and

other is passed through the upper end of the tibia. The pins are parallel with each other and lie at a distance from the operative field. The wound is closed, and a plaster cast is applied from the toes to the groin incorporating the pins. After the plaster has hardened a circular section is removed at the knee and extended turnbuckles are fitted to the ends of the pins the turnbuckles are tightened sufficiently to bend slightly, the pins thereby creating a positive pressure at the line of contact of the raw surfaces. Repeated tightening of the turnbuckles is necessary to maintain the desired degree of pressure. As a rule, osseous union is sufficient to allow removal of the pins after 8 weeks, another plaster cast is applied and worn for 8 more weeks before weight bearing is permitted. Great pressure is possible with this method excessive pressure causes bone necrosis at the line of contact and this must be avoided on the other hand mild pressure is a great stimulus to osteogenesis.

The following modification of the above technic is employed by the writer. Stainless-steel pins (for adults 3/16 inch and for children 5/32 inch) are inserted parallel with each other through the lower third of the femur and below the condyles of the tibia at a distance from the field of operation. The pins are inserted after the incision has been closed. A plaster cylinder is applied from the groin to the toes incorporating the pins. After the plaster has hardened rectangular slots are cut out of the plaster cylinder so that the ends of the pins and the intervening skin are free. Stout rubber bands are passed around the ends of the pins, and sufficient tension is created to bend the pins slightly toward one another (Fig 410). Now positive pressure exists between the raw bony surfaces of the femur and the tibia. In nontuberculous joints excluding Charcot's joints constant pressure is maintained for 5 weeks as a rule there is roentgenographic evidence of osseous union at the end of this period. Then the pins are removed and another snug plaster cylinder

applied. This is worn for 4 to 6 more weeks during that time the patient is permitted to bear weight on the extremity. In tuberculous and neurotrophic (Charcot) joints positive pressure is maintained for 6 to 8 weeks. At the end of this period there is usually sufficient clinical and roentgenographic evidence of osseous union to permit removal of the pins. A cylinder case is applied, and weight bearing is permitted. In children the extremity is protected with a brace for 1 to 2 years in order to prevent slipping of the lower femoral epiphysis. Adults also wear a brace following the removal of the last plaster cast. It is removed only after the roentgenograms exhibit well formed continuous bony trabeculations bridging the femur and the tibia. It may be necessary to wear the brace a year or more. In tuberculous knee joints as in the shoulder joint compression ensures bony union and decreases the period of immobilization. Moreover, it holds the position of election of the limb and prevents backward displacement of the tibia on the femur.

In the author's series there are 8 cases of Charcot's knee joints. All were treated by the compression method described above, and all achieved a solid bony ankylosis.

#### ARTHRODESIS FOR NONTUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE KNEE JOINT

The techniques described for arthrodesis of the tuberculous knee joint are equally applicable to nontuberculous affections requiring

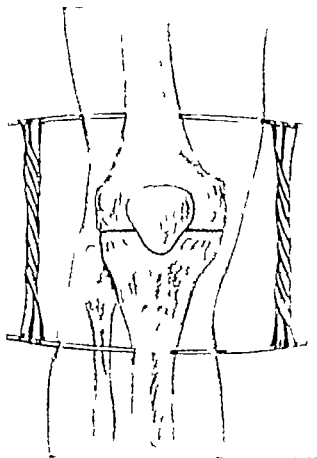


FIG 410 (A) Compression arthrodesis of the knee joint. Constant pressure is maintained at the points of contact on the bone ends by stout rubber bands passing around the ends of the pins.

osseous ankylosis of this articulation. However, several operations have been designed especially for nontuberculous affections and are contraindicated in tuberculosis of the knee joint.

**Milgram's Operation (Fig 409)** This



FIG 410 (B) After the arthrodesis operation is completed, a plastic cylinder is applied. After the plaster has hardened, rectangular slats are cut out so that the ends of the pins and the intervening skin are free. Compression is made by stout rubber bands or tubing passed around the pins as depicted herein.

operation is a modification of the rotation arthrodesis of Roeren first described in 1929. The advantages of this procedure is that it causes no shortening of the limb. It is particularly suitable for osteoarthritis and traumatic arthritis of the knee requiring fusion. However Milgram has used it in cases of tuberculosis of the joint in adults. It is contraindicated in children because of the damage it inflicts on the epiphyseal plates. The writer is of the opinion that it never should be used in tuberculous joints.

A U-shaped incision exposes the articular surfaces of the tibia and the femur. The upper end of the tibia is exposed for a distance of 1 inch. After the menisci, the infrapatellar fat pad and the anterior cruciate ligaments are excised as much of the implicated synovialis as is accessible is removed. The cavitation in the bones is curetted and the patella is excised. A circular section of bone is removed from the joint, one half is taken from the femur and one half from the tibia. This is done by a special circular saw and curved chisels. The saw consists of a rotating cylindrical cup  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter. It is made of crucible steel. The handle of the instrument is of special design. It contains a well into which fits a cylindrical post  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch in diameter and the post is of such length that it projects  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch beyond the teeth of the circular saw. At the end of the post is a malleable transverse plate which can be curved at operation so as to slip between the articular surfaces and rests on the posterior cruciate ligament. After the anterior cruciate ligament is excised the post is inserted between the articular surfaces with the malleable plate resting against the posterior cruciate ligament. Next the cutting cup is fitted over the post and rotated forward and backward to the depth permitted by the post. The instrument is withdrawn and the semi-circular grafts are removed with curved chisels. The grafts are cleaned of all soft tissues. They are rotated 90° and reinserted into the circular defect in the joint. Now the joint line between the semicircular grafts

lies in a vertical plane at right angles to its former position. All accessible cartilage is removed from the surfaces of the femur and the tibia.

**Intramedullary Pinning for Arthrodesis.** The principle of intramedullary pinning of diaphysal fractures has been applied to arthrodesis of the knee joint by Chapchal of Holland. He records many advantages of this method over those described previously. Intramedullary pinning provides postoperatively a limb so stable that no plaster fixation is necessary. The position of election is secure unless forces sufficient to bend or break the pin are applied to the region of the knee. Postoperative management is simplified and shortened. The patients are able to walk from the first day they leave the bed. Physical measures to maintain muscle tone and function in the remaining joints of the extremity are readily employed when no plaster envelops the limb. In addition decubitus ulcers, circulatory disorders of the limb and paralysis of the peroneal nerve are eliminated. Chapchal advocates this method for all indications for an arthrosis of the knee except in inflammatory disease and in growing children. Osseous ankylosis is usually complete in 4 to 6 months at which time the pin is removed.

A straight mid line incision from 10 to 12 inches in length is made over the ventral surface of the knee. The patella is excised and the joint is exposed. After the ligaments of the knee are severed the joint is flexed in order to gain access to the articular ends of the femur and the tibia. With a thin osteotome the articular cartilage and the subchondral bone are removed from the femoral and the tibial condyles until satisfactory apposition of the raw bony ends is achieved. A hole 3 cm long is made in the vertical axis of the femur in the upper end of the incision. A medullary pin as thick as the medullary cavity of the tibia will permit and from 25 to 30 cm in length is introduced in the hole of the femur and directed downward into the medullary cavity. At

this point care should be taken not to fracture the shaft of the femur while inserting the pin. When the distal end of the pin pierces the surface of the femur the tibia is placed in front of it so that the pin will enter the medullary canal of the tibia, this is possible only when the knee is flexed from 6° to 10°. Different angles of flexion can be obtained by changing the point of entrance of the pin in the femur. The wound is closed in the usual manner.

No plaster cast is applied after the operation. After 10 to 14 days the patient is allowed to bear weight and uses a removable plaster splint, which is worn only when walking and is taken off when resting. Depending upon the occupation, the patient is ready to resume work after 3 or 4 more weeks.

**Arthrodesis by Central Bone Graft (Hatt)** The use of a central bone graft in arthrosis of the knee joint provides immediate stabilization of the limb in the position of election, eliminates the use of metal as agents of internal fixation and favors rapid osseous ankylosis. Key described such a method in 1937; he used a large central autogenous bone peg. Theoretically, it should be reserved for adults with nontuberculous affections of the knee; however, Hatt has employed a similar method in children with tuberculous knee joints and records no increase in the amount of shortening when compared with a similar group of cases in which the Hibbs' procedure was performed. The average shortening in both groups of cases after an average follow up period of 7 years was approximately 1 inch. The average age at the time of operation in both series was slightly over 9 years. Dissemination of the diseases along the tract of the graft did not occur in any instances.

The knee joint is exposed through a linear anterior incision. The lower limb of the incision is carried distal to the junction of the upper and the middle thirds of the tibia. The patella is freed from the quadriceps femoris above; this is done in order to prevent upward displacement, which occurs

frequently when the muscle attachments remain intact. A plane-curved resection of the ends of the femur and the tibia is done with a saw or an osteotome, and the raw ends are approximated. Next the upper third of the tibia is exposed and a transverse cut is made immediately distal to the tubercle of the tibia. A graft measuring  $1\frac{1}{2}$  by 12 cm. is removed with a motor saw or osteotome. A specially designed osteotome is driven upward starting in the graft bed, crossing the joint line and penetrating deeply in the substance of the femur. The alignment is checked carefully, and necessary adjustments are made at this time. The osteotome is withdrawn and the graft is driven into the tunnel; this is facilitated by a bone set shaped similarly to the osteotome. Finally, the patella is divested of cartilage and placed across the joint line, functioning as a bridging graft. The wound is closed in the usual manner, and a plaster cast is applied from the groin to the toes.

**Bosworth's Operation.** The knee joint is exposed through a U shaped incision; the medial limb of the incision is extended upward proximal to the condyle of the femur. After the articular surfaces are denuded of cartilage and shaped to fit properly, the bones are fixed in the position of election (which is with the knee straight) by a Smith Petersen nail. The nail is driven obliquely downward and outward through the medial condyle of the femur and into the substance of the tibial condyles. The posterior two thirds of the patella is removed leaving a flat surface which is approximated to corresponding surfaces on the outer surface of the femur and the tibia; it is fixed to the tibia by a screw placed obliquely and now functions as a bridging graft.

#### ARTHROPLASTY OF THE KNEE JOINT

**Historical Survey.** Arthroplasty is a reconstructive procedure designed to restore motion in ankylosed or stiffened joints. This is achieved by remodeling the affected articular ends and by re-establishing the func-

tional mechanics of the articulation which in a large measure are governed by the ligamentous and muscular apparatus of the joint. The intense desire of the earlier surgeons to restore motion in a fused or defective joint was responsible for the numerous attempts in joint resection. In general joint resection failed to produce the desired results because of the many failures resulting from instability of the joint if too much bone was resected or recrudescence of the osseous or fibrous union if less bone was removed. To Rhea Barton (1826) of Philadelphia goes credit for performing the first arthroplasty. He succeeded in establishing a pseudoarthrosis in an ankylosed hip joint. The operation performed was not a true arthroplasty; instead it was a high osteotomy through the greater trochanter and part of the femoral neck. He prevented osseous union by repeated passive motion. The result was a stable weight bearing limb with motion at the osteotomy site. Motion was still demonstrable 2 years after operation, then ankylosis recurred. The next logical step in the development of arthroplasty was the interposition of materials between the articular surfaces to prevent osseous or fibrous ankylosis and thereby allow some permanent mobility.

The first attempt at interposition of soft tissue between the remodeled bone ends was made by Ollier (1884). He used adipose tissue which lay loosely within the joint space. The results were discouraging because the tissue was absorbed readily and osseous union or fibrous ankylosis ensued. Experiments utilizing other soft tissues followed. Helferich in 1893 and Mikulicz in 1895 attempted to prevent fusion of the resected bone ends by interposing muscle flaps taken from areas adjacent to the joint. Although the immediate results were better than those of Ollier, eventually the muscle flaps were absorbed and postoperative ankylosis resulted. In 1900 Chlumsky published his experiments in animals using different material, absorbable and nonabsorbable as

interposing media between resected bone ends. Such material as plates of zinc, rubber, silver and celluloid were tried in the early experiments. Later he used decalcified bone, ivory and magnesium. His work provided the basis for subsequent experiments with foreign interposing materials. Many of the nonabsorbable substances were extruded from the joints; suppuration was a frequent sequel and in all instances wherein the animal survived recrudescences of ankylosis ensued. Autogenous flaps of periosteum (Hoffman, Payr and Von Frisch), joint cartilage (Tuffier, Klapp, Mauclair), skin (Gluck, Tretze) and muscle (Helferich, Lentz, Henle, Hoffa and many others) were tried as interposing substances. Although occasional satisfactory results were attained on the whole the aforementioned substances proved to be inadequate in arthroplasties and have been superseded by free transplants of fascia lata. Murphy (1902) again investigated the use of pedicle flaps and designed arthroplasties for all the major joints. His enthusiasm and success were powerful stimuli to other workers interested in this field. Murphy was a strong advocate of the use of autogenous fascial membrane, the most common source being the fascia lata of the thigh or from fibrous structures in the vicinity of the operated articulation. The advantages of these structures over foreign metallic material or heteroplastic substances soon became apparent; nevertheless Robert Jones (1902) performed a successful arthroplasty of the hip using gold foil as the interposing agent. The patient still has a useful range of motion 21 years after the operation. Lexer also favored the use of autogenous fascial membranes, yet he attempted the transplantation of articular ends of hemoplastic bones. The results were either total failure or far from satisfactory.

The intensive investigation in arthroplasties by such surgeons as Lexer, Putti, Payr and Enderlen in Europe and in this country by Murphy, Baer, Allison, MacAusland, Henderson and Campbell resulted

in perfecting the surgical technics and in establishing the indications and the counter indications of the procedure. In 1925 Smith Petersen introduced the use of the prefabricated mold as an interposing substance. After considerable experimentation, the alloy vitallium, first used in surgery of bones by Venable and Stuck, was selected because of its nonelectrolytic nature. The use of the vitallium cup in arthroplasty of the hip was first reported by Venable and Stuck and by Hopkins and Zuck in 1938. Within the past decade further advancement has been made by the introduction of prostheses, replacing one of the articular ends of the bony components of the joint. Judet popularized the use of a plastic prosthesis for the femoral head. The acceptance of this work is reflected in the numerous prostheses which have been designed for the femoral head and neck. Each one has some mechanical features believed by the originators to be of special value. The most popular materials used are inert plastics, vitallium and stainless steel. The true value of replacement by prefabricated prostheses can be determined only after the method has been tried in a large number of cases and a sufficient period of time has elapsed (5 to 10 years). Experiments in replacement of bone ends of other joints such as the head of the humerus, are also being conducted. The many good immediate results reported in the literature indicate that we may be on the threshold of a new era in the field of arthroplasty.

**Evaluation of Interposition Materials and Prostheses.** It is generally accepted that fibrous and osseous union between the raw surfaces of a newly remodeled joint is less apt to occur if some interposing substance is present. Furthermore, clinical experience reveals that interposition of soft tissue such as muscle, fascia and fat between the fragments of fractured bones may induce nonunion or even a pseudoarthrosis. In addition Brooks and Allison demonstrated experimentally that denuded bone ends exhibit a covering of granulation tissue arising

from the marrow spaces at the end of 5 days. This is the basis of the subsequent development of a fibrous ankylosis and later osseous union. This sequence can be interrupted by interposing substances of soft tissue which tend to prevent the formation of fibrous strands extending from one raw surface to the other. It becomes apparent that the chief function of autogenous interposing material is to prevent the formation of fibrous adhesions until a dense fibrous covering is formed over the bone ends which is derived from the granulation tissue growing out of the marrow spaces. Eventually, the interposing substances are absorbed completely. Function of the joint stimulates the formation of a mature connective tissue covering the process is one of physiologic repair.

As stated previously, many materials have been used to preserve motion in a reconstructed joint among these were glass, gold and tantalum foil, celluloid, ivory pegs and chromicized pig's bladder. These have failed to produce the desired results and have been replaced by autogenous fascial membranes and inert metals such as stainless steel and vitallium. More recently inert plastics have been introduced.

**FASCIA LATA.** The advantages of the use of free transplants of fascia lata is well established, it is by far the most commonly employed interposing medium in arthroplasty. It is utilized in arthroplasty of all joints, large and small. However, since the introduction of inert materials it has been used less frequently in arthroplasties of the hip. Many surgeons prefer the prefabricated vitallium cup as a covering over the femoral head. The free transplants of fascia lata are removed from the lateral aspect of the thigh, where a sheet of the material large enough to envelop any raw surface may be procured. Some surgeons interpose a single sheet of fascia between the raw bony ends; the writer prefers two layers. By so doing free gliding of one surface on the other is assured. The outer surface of the fascia differs from the inner surface, t



surface is coarse and consists of fibers less compact than the inner surface which is smooth glistening and composed of compact fibrous strands. The outer surface is placed next to the raw bone to which it adheres readily because of its loose coarse texture while the smooth undersurface now lining the interior of the joint enhances motion.

**PEDUNCULATED FASCIAL FLAP** This method is rarely employed. The flap comprises fascia and fat obtained in the vicinity of the joint to be reconstructed. Its use is indicated only in instances wherein fascia lata is not available and in isolated cases of ankylosis of the patella to the femur but with free motion between the femur and the tibia. The author utilizes this technic in operations for recurrent subluxating or chronic dislocation of the patella and also in cases of chondromalacia wherein the articular surface of the patella is removed. A flap of infrapatellar fat pad is dissected free and placed over the raw undersurface of the patella. In general soft tissues adjacent to a defective joint exhibit pronounced fibrosis making it undesirable as an interposing substance. Moreover in most instances the remaining attached pedicle is too deficient in blood supply to be of any substantial aid in the nutrition of the dissected flap after its transplantation.

**FREE FAT** Transplants of fascia lata have replaced completely those of fatty tissue obtained at a distance from the joint.

**VITALLIUM** This material is universally accepted as an excellent interposing agent. It was first introduced by Venable and Stuck, but its use as a prefabricated mold in arthroplasties of the hip was popularized by Smith Petersen. Campbell designed a vitallium mold for the remodeled end of the femur in arthroplasties of the knee. He reported 4 cases, all were graded as poor results so the method was discarded. Further experimentation with vitallium as an interposing material in the knee and other joints might reverse Campbell's unsatisfactory results. More recently vitallium stain

less steel and inert plastic prostheses particularly for the head and the neck of the femur have been introduced. This new approach in arthroplasties attempts to eliminate vitallium as an interposing material.

Critical analysis of long range follow-up studies is necessary before judgment can be passed on the validity of the prostheses.

**Structural and Morphologic Alterations in Reconstructed Joint.** Information relative to the histology of arthroplasties is limited and difficult to procure. Animal experiments in this field have been of very little significance because ankylosis in joints of animals is rarely encountered and it is not possible to produce in animals conditions analogous to the pathologic processes found in ankylosis of the human joints. Moreover it is impossible to obtain from animals the intelligent concerted effort essential to the evaluation of functional adaptation of an articulation. Hence the work of Murphy, Sumits, Neff, Putti, Segale, Allison and Brooks, Phemister and Miller done on animals adds little to our knowledge of this problem.

Observations of value were made by Baer, MacAusland, Campbell and Putti. These workers studied and recorded in detail the anatomic morphologic changes in joints following arthroplasties at secondary operations and from reconstructed joints obtained postmortem. The observations relative to the fate of the fascia lata when used as an interposing membrane were of special significance. Summation of their findings permits the following conclusions to be made: (1) Arthroplasties executed skillfully produce new joints with a useful range of motion, good stability and no pain. (2) A joint cavity is re-established which is usually smaller than the normal cavity and it may be multilocular. (3) A joint fluid simulating synovial fluid lubricates the joint. (4) During the early months following the operation the articular ends of the bones are covered by a layer of dense fibrous tissue which represents the fascia lata altered by

functional adaptation (5) With increased function and passage of time the aforementioned superficial connective tissue stratum is replaced by fibrocartilage which arises in part from the marrow spaces of the bone ends and in part from the remnants of the fascial membrane (6) Immediately below the stratum of fibrocartilage a compact layer of bone is formed in response to function, bone trabeculae reappear and rearrange themselves along the line of stress

**Indications and Contraindications for Arthroplasty of the Knee Joint.** The indications for mobilization of the knee joint are few because an ankylosed knee in good functional position provides the patient with a stable, painless useful limb This fact makes arthrodesis of the knee joint in cases with limited motion resulting from an incomplete fibrous ankylosis a strong competitor of arthroplasty the same is true of the osteotomy in ankylosed knee joints in malposition Nevertheless there are indications which justify the procedure in spite of the opinion of some surgeons who maintain that an arthroplasty of the knee is never justified if an arthrodesis can be effected with the limb in a good position of function This view is held chiefly by the British surgeons the results of many of the American surgeons do not support this belief Before arthroplasty is performed each case must be studied critically, and specific requisites must be met otherwise the procedure is doomed to failure In most instances the decision is governed by the severity of the disability imposed on the patient by a stiff knee Occasionally, one is justified in mobilizing an ankylosed knee in good functional position if the patient's occupation is expedited by a movable joint Only in rare instances is the operation performed for esthetic reasons yet one must admit that even a stiff knee in an acceptable position of function is a handicap when sitting and is a constant source of embarrassment to young people particularly to women.

Follow up studies of many arthroplasties of the knee by numerous workers reveal that the following general and local considerations are of prime importance in the ultimate success or failure of the procedure

(1) As stated previously the degree of disability that the fused joint causes must be determined Ankylosed knee joints in  $10^{\circ}$  to  $20^{\circ}$  of flexion with the ankle at right angles to the lower leg produce little dysfunction of the limb, and arthroplasty is not indicated unless it will facilitate execution of the patient's occupation

(2) Ankylosis of the knee joint in malposition or a knee with restricted painful motion, as is found in incomplete fibrous ankylosis, is an indication for arthroplasty

(3) Two stiff knees or a stiff hip and knee in the same limb justify mobilization of one knee joint

(4) Flexion deformities exceeding  $100^{\circ}$  increase the technical difficulties of the operation and may preclude a good result In these cases a preliminary osteotomy may be necessary When the operation is done on ankylosed joints approaching the position of function the chances of a successful result are increased In ankylosed knees with a flexion deformity exceeding  $120^{\circ}$  Campbell performed a two-stage operation In the first stage the union between the tibia and the femur was divided posteriorly, and the deformity was corrected, occasionally a posterior capsulotomy was necessary to attain the desired amount of correction, or in other instances further extension was achieved by traction Then the limb was immobilized in a plaster cast for 6 weeks and weight-bearing was allowed with a brace The second stage, which comprised the actual arthroplasty, was performed after the osseous and soft tissue structures approached normal

(5) Shortening of the limb more than 3 inches, resulting from bone destruction or growth disturbance, is a contraindication to arthroplasty

(6) The etiologic factors responsible for

the ankylosis of the joints play a major role in the final decision of the surgeon. (A) The results of arthroplasties performed in ankylosed joints caused by trauma or acute pyogenic infection are superior to those induced by other factors or varieties of infection. This is especially true of ankylosis resulting from gonorrheal infection—these joints lend themselves readily to arthroplasties. (B) Arthroplasty is contraindicated in ankylosed joints of tuberculous origin. Recrudescence of the disease following extensive surgery is a real and disastrous probability. (C) In ankylosis of both knees or the hip and the knee of the same extremities induced by tuberculosis one is justified in performing an arthroplasty of one knee joint. In these cases the seriousness of the dysfunction is so profound that the surgeon is justified in challenging the hazards associated with the reconstructive procedure. Today the use of antibiotics and chemotherapy tend to minimize the risk. (D) In general arthroplasty is contraindicated in low grade inflammatory processes implicating the collagenous tissues of the body, such as in atrophic polyarthritis. In these instances it is justified only if there are multiple ankyloses. Even when the operation is performed by the most skillful surgeons the prognosis is not good.

(7) Proper timing of the mobilizing procedures is essential. In ankylosed joints induced by pyogenic infections arthroplasty should not be attempted until 18 to 24 months have elapsed after all evidence of infection has disappeared. Surgical intervention before this period is apt to cause recurrence of the septic process. Chemotherapy and antibiotics may shorten this period. In tuberculous joints the same principle holds—here the hazards are present even after a waiting period of several years in spite of the fact that there is no evidence of activity determined clinically and roentgenologically. If ankylosed joints caused atrophic arthritis no attempt should be made to mobilize the joints until the in-

flammatory process has subsided completely. On the other hand the waiting period must not be protracted indefinitely because disuse promotes profound atrophy of the soft tissue elements and demineralization of the bony components of the joint. Such changes increase the technical difficulties and retard early and satisfactory function of the newly constructed joint.

(8) Success or failure of an arthroplasty of the knee depends in a large measure on the condition of the osseous elements, the muscles that motorize the new joint, the ligaments that aid in its stability and the surrounding skin. (A) Advanced atrophy and demineralization of bone contraindicate surgical intervention. Such bone is difficult to reshape to the desired configuration. It becomes apparent that in cases of severe osteoporosis and atrophy the bone must first be restored to normal before any mobilizing operation can be considered. If the extremity is in a position capable of weight bearing this goal can be achieved by active use; however in joints with severe malposition precluding activity first the deformity must be corrected, then a regimen of muscular development and weight bearing is instituted to restore normal bony texture. (B) Dense eburnated bone implicating the femur and the tibia beyond the joint line is not favorable material for an arthroplasty, as a rule—such bone is the product of a fulminating osteomyelitic process. It is difficult bone to remodel and there is always the probability of re-activating the infectious process by surgical intervention. If the limb is in a position of function arthroplasty is definitely contraindicated; if it is in malposition osteotomy through healthy bone is the procedure of choice. (C) In cases of long duration and lack of function the femur and the tibia may form one shaft with a common medullary canal. The absence of solid bone in the region of the joint line interferes with proper remodeling of the bone ends; hence the success of the arthroplasty is lessened. In exceptional cases ar-

throplasty may be done, if good muscle control and a stabilizing ligamentous apparatus exist. (D) Advanced muscle atrophy precludes a successful arthroplasty. The extent of atrophy is in proportion to the period of disease. In long standing cases it is profound. The quadriceps particularly loses tone and diminishes rapidly in volume. If possible, muscle control must be restored by active contraction and weight bearing before an arthroplasty is contemplated. No arthroplasty should be attempted until the extensor muscles of the thigh are in optimum condition. To ensure good muscle control progressive muscle exercises against resistance should be practiced for several months before the knee is mobilized. If the deformity of the knee prevents weight bearing the malalignment must be corrected first. Muscle atrophy parallels osteoporosis and atrophy of the bony elements. (E) Excessive scar tissue and fibrosis implicating the skin and the subcutaneous tissue around the knee constitute formidable contraindications to arthroplasty. Such conditions are encountered following extensive burns in the region of the knee and in the presence of draining sinuses that have existed for long periods of time. The skin may be leathery in texture and adherent to the underlying bone. Normal skin with adequate fat and subcutaneous tissue must be present to ensure a successful arthroplasty. If absent it must be restored before the operation is undertaken.

(9) According to MacAusland, the preferable age to perform an arthroplasty is between 20 and 40 years, however, in exceptional cases if all other requirements are fulfilled it may be performed in persons over 40. In children, the danger of injury to the epiphyseal cartilage plate is a strong contraindication to arthroplasty. Operation should be postponed until epiphyseal growth has terminated.

(10) Other major considerations determining whether or not an arthroplasty is justifiable are the social status, the occupa-

tion and the temperament of the patient. Ankylosed knee joints in the optimum position of function in laborers should not be mobilized. Such joints are far more serviceable to these individuals than arthroplasties rated as excellent results. Individuals with a low index of pain who are apprehensive and exhibit a nervous temperament are undesirable candidates for this extensive surgical procedure. They are not capable of the concentrated effort and perseverance essential in the postoperative phase of the treatment to develop a good functioning joint.

**Varieties of Ankylosis.** The types of intra-articular ankylosis may be grouped into several categories. (1) the most frequently encountered is complete bony fusion implicating the patella, the femur and the tibia. (2) the tibiofemoral joint is free, but a bony ankylosis of the patellofemoral joint exists, this type is rare, (3) the patella is free, but the tibiofemoral is fused. (4) only one femoral condyle is united with the corresponding tuberosity of the tibia, whereas the joint space in the remaining one half of the joint is free, (5) ankylosis, complete or incomplete, may be fibrous in nature, and (6) the ankylosis may be partially fibrous and partially osseous, in both (5) and (6) there are varying degrees of destruction of cartilage of the articular surfaces.

In cases exhibiting union, fibrous or osseous on only one side of the joint, surgeons may be tempted to perform a partial or hemiarthroplasty. However, the experience of Campbell and others reveals that such procedures invariably fail. Hence a complete arthroplasty should be performed in all instances regardless of the normalcy of a portion of the articular surfaces. The only exception to the above statement is union of the patella and the femur with a normal tibiofemoral joint. In this situation one of two procedures may be performed: (1) patellectomy or (2) arthroplasty of the patella.

**Technics of Arthroplasty.** Numerous technics of arthroplasty of the knee have

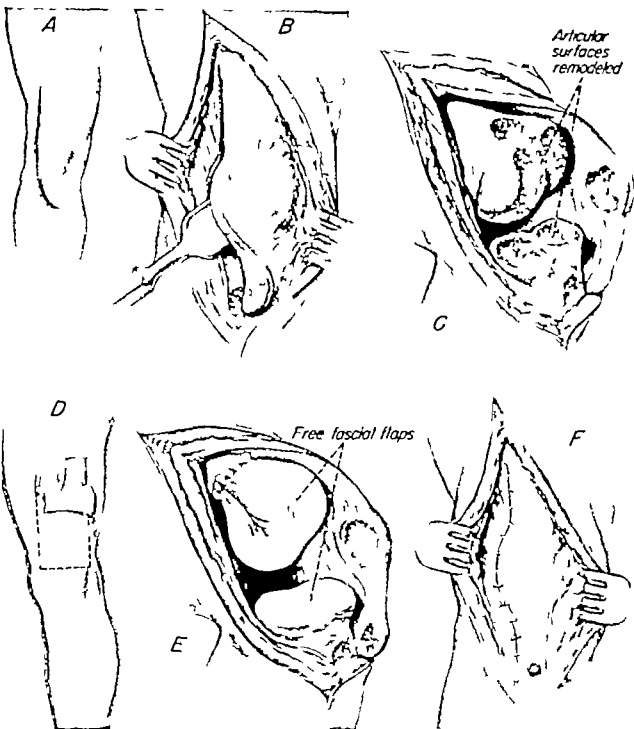


FIG. 411 (A to F) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described. Either a modified Kocher incision or an inverted U is employed. Note: If surfaces are shaped to conform to the original contour of the condyles and the plateaus of the tibia. All raw surfaces except that of the patella by an interposing membrane (fascia lata).

been designed. In general most of them attempt to reconstruct the normal anatomic configuration of the joint. They differ slightly in the amount of bone removed from the femoral condyles. Some surgeons

try to maintain as much of the normal dimensions of the joint in the transverse and the anteroposterior dimensions, whereas the tibia is excavated to the shape of the femoral

restore the anatomic curve of the condyles of the femur but decrease sagittal diameter finally, others recreate a flat tibial plateau, and the femoral condyles are pointed A critical survey of the end results reveals that Putti had the highest incidence of satisfactory arthroplasties, however it also becomes apparent that, regardless of the technique employed, the skill and the experience of the surgeon are major factors in the low or high percentage of successful arthroplasties.

**TECHNIC OF PUTTI (Fig 411)** Putti exposed the joint through a modification of the Kocher incision, which was prolonged distally to a point below the tibial tubercle and then continued around the tubercle, or an inverted U incision which encircles the patella from above to this was added a vertical limb extending upward from the curve of the U Putti's objection to the Kocher incision was the detachment of the tibial tubercle necessary to mobilize the patellar tendon he contended that this step might lead to nonunion or delayed union A portion of the tibial tubercle with the patellar tendon attached is removed with a chisel the patella is detached from the anterior surface of the femur, and the joint is exposed After the ankylosis is freed by chiseling and manipulation, beginning from the outer side the condyles of the femur are remodeled with special chisels with curves that correspond to those of the normal femoral condyles. In the remodeling an attempt is made to preserve as much as possible the transverse dimensions of the condyles whereas their sagittal diameter is decreased Also with specially designed chisels the joint surfaces of the tibia are fashioned so as to approach the normal shape of the tibial plateaus The intercondyloid notch is deepened and the tibial spine is sharpened now the reconstructed surfaces of the femur and tibia should approach the normal configuration of these bones. The final step in remodeling is smoothing the raw surfaces including that of the patella with a file

the bone ends are now ready to receive the fascia lata covering A flap of fascia lata 5 to 7 inches in length and 3 to 5 inches wide is removed from the lateral aspect of the opposite thigh The flap is interposed between the newly fashioned bone ends so that it covers the raw surfaces completely the flap is secured by suturing it to the capsule and the periosteum The raw surface of the patella is not covered by a fascial flap when the Kocher incision is used, the detached tibial tubercle is secured to the tibia by a metal nail

An alternate procedure is lengthening of the quadriceps tendon without detachment of the tibial tubercle After the vastus externus and internus are separated from the rectus femoris, the tendon of the rectus femoris is freed from that of the vastus intermedius below and both tendons are divided by Z-shaped incisions in alternate directions This facilitates approximation of the tendons to the desired length at the completion of the arthroplasty Then the incision is carried through the synovial capsule and the lower flap containing the patella is displaced downward providing an excellent approach to all the osseous elements At the termination of the arthroplasty the extensor apparatus is reassembled the tendons of the rectus femoris and the vastus intermedius are united to the proper length the vastus internus and the vastus externus are reattached to the rectus femoris and the wound is closed in the usual manner

**TECHNIC OF CAMPBELL (Fig 412)** In the arthroplasty designed by Campbell no attempt is made to reconstruct the bone ends similar to the anatomic contours of the femur and the tibia Instead the distal end of the femur is shaped into a single condyle which fits into a corresponding concavity made in the tibia This arthroplasty is predicated on the premise that remodeling of the bone ends to conform to the configuration of the normal joint contributes little to the ultimate stability of the joint. The procedure is modified to meet type and

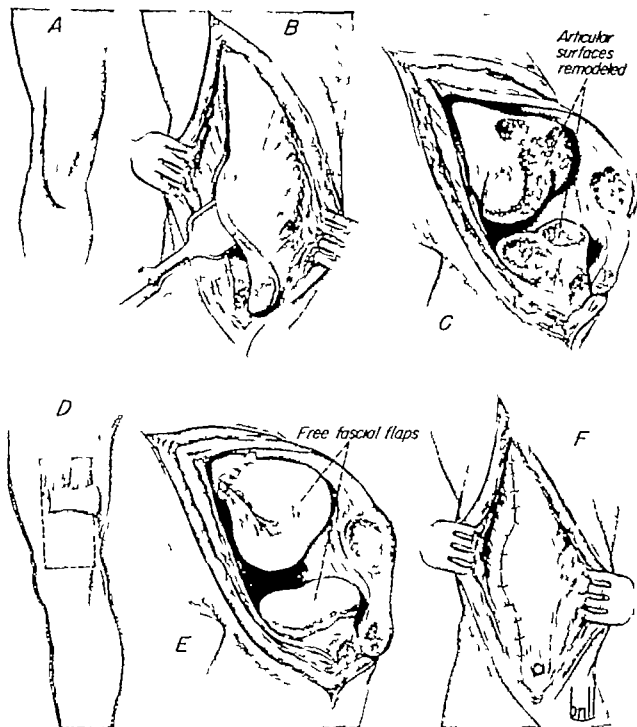


FIG 411 (A to F) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described by Puttl. Either a modified Kocher incision or an inverted U is employed. Note that the joint surfaces are shaped to conform to the original contour of the condyles of the femur and the plateaus of the tibia. All raw surfaces except that of the patella are covered by an interposing membrane (fascia lata)

been designed. In general, most of them attempt to reconstruct the normal anatomic configuration of the joint. They differ slightly in the amount of bone removed from the femoral condyles. Some surgeons

try to maintain as much as possible the normal dimensions of the condyles both in the transverse and the sagittal planes, whereas the tibia is excavated to conform to the shape of the femoral condyles. Others

restore the anatomic curve of the condyles of the femur but decrease sagittal diameter finally, others recreate a flat tibial plateau, and the femoral condyles are pointed A critical survey of the end results reveals that Putti had the highest incidence of satisfactory arthroplasties, however it also becomes apparent that, regardless of the technique employed, the skill and the experience of the surgeon are major factors in the low or high percentage of successful arthroplasties.

**TECHNIC OF PUTTI (Fig 411)** Putti exposed the joint through a modification of the Kocher incision which was prolonged distally to a point below the tibial tubercle and then continued around the tubercle or an inverted U incision which encircles the patella from above to this was added a vertical limb extending upward from the curve of the U Putti's objection to the Kocher incision was the detachment of the tibial tubercle necessary to mobilize the patellar tendon, he contended that this step might lead to nonunion or delayed union. A portion of the tibial tubercle with the patellar tendon attached is removed with a chisel the patella is detached from the anterior surface of the femur and the joint is exposed After the ankylosis is freed by chiseling and manipulation beginning from the outer side the condyles of the femur are remodeled with special chisels with curves that correspond to those of the normal femoral condyles In the remodeling an attempt is made to preserve as much as possible the transverse dimensions of the condyles whereas their sagittal diameter is decreased Also with specially designed chisels the joint surfaces of the tibia are fashioned so as to approach the normal shape of the tibial plateaus The intercondylar notch is deepened and the tibial spine is sharpened now the reconstructed surfaces of the femur and tibia should approach the normal configuration of these bones. The final step in remodeling is smoothing the raw surfaces including that of the patella with a file

the bone ends are now ready to receive the fascia lata covering A flap of fascia lata 5 to 7 inches in length and 3 to 5 inches wide is removed from the lateral aspect of the opposite thigh The flap is interposed between the newly fashioned bone ends so that it covers the raw surfaces completely the flap is secured by suturing it to the capsule and the periosteum The raw surface of the patella is not covered by a fascial flap when the Kocher incision is used, the detached tibial tubercle is secured to the tibia by a metal nail

An alternate procedure is lengthening of the quadriceps tendon without detachment of the tibial tubercle. After the vastus externus and internus are separated from the rectus femoris the tendon of the rectus femoris is freed from that of the vastus intermedius below and both tendons are divided by Z shaped incisions in alternate directions. This facilitates approximation of the tendons to the desired length at the completion of the arthroplasty Then the incision is carried through the synovial capsule, and the lower flap containing the patella is displaced downward, providing an excellent approach to all the osseous elements. At the termination of the arthroplasty the extensor apparatus is reassembled the tendons of the rectus femoris and the vastus intermedius are united to the proper length, the vastus internus and the vastus externus are reattached to the rectus femoris and the wound is closed in the usual manner

**TECHNIC OF CAMPBELL (Fig 412)** In the arthroplasty designed by Campbell no attempt is made to reconstruct the bone ends similar to the anatomic contours of the femur and the tibia Instead the distal end of the femur is shaped into a single condyle which fits into a corresponding concavity made in the tibia. This arthroplasty is predicated on the premise that remodeling of the bone ends to conform to the configuration of the normal joint contributes little to the ultimate stability of the joint The procedure is modified to meet type and



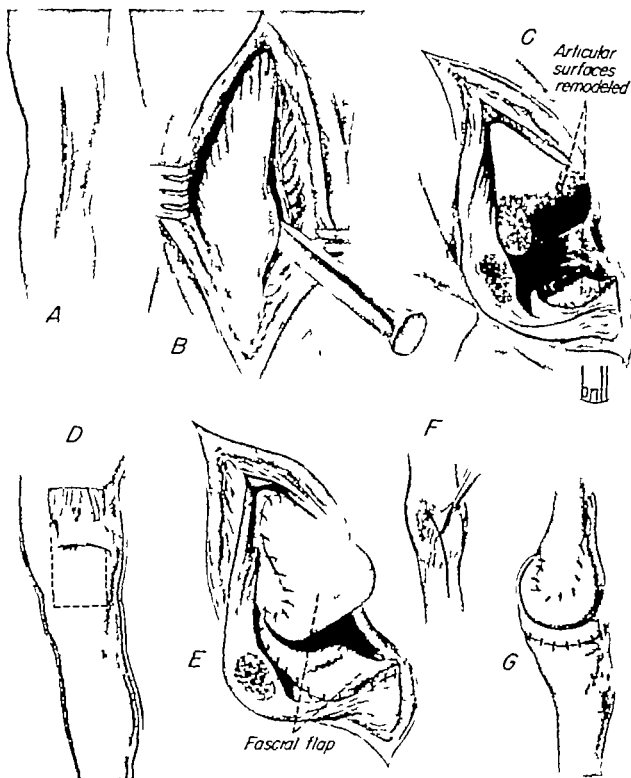


FIG. 412 (A to G) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described by Campbell. The distal end of the femur is converted into a single condyle and the cruciate ligaments and the tibial spine are sacrificed; the raw surface of the patella is covered with fat.

distribution of the ankylosis and the position of deformity of the limb present at the time of operation

The skin incision begins from 4 to 6 inches proximal to the joint at the inner margin of the quadriceps tendon. It is prolonged downward with a slight convexity directed medially and terminates distal to the insertion of the patellar tendon. The superficial and the deep fascia of the thigh are divided in the line of the skin incision and the vastus medialis is separated from the tendon of the rectus femoris which in turn is freed as far as the patella. With a sharp osteotome the fusion between the patella and the femur is divided. The patellar tendon and the quadriceps tendon are displaced laterally. Fibrous strands restraining lateral displacement of these structures are severed. The femur and the tibia are separated by a thin osteotome. In executing this step care must be taken not to divide or traumatize the structures behind the posterior joint capsule. By flexing the knee slowly complete visualization of the joint is attained. After the posterior portions of the condyles of the femur are removed the distal end of the femur is converted into a single condyle being convex from above downward and from before backward. Sufficient bone is removed from the femur to reach cancellous bone. Removal of too much bone will result in an unstable joint. The larger amount of bone is chiseled from the posterior aspects of the condyles. With a wide gouge ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in.) the tibial surface is shaped to single cavity from before back to accommodate the femoral condyle. Again as little bone as possible is removed in order to preserve length of the limb. After completion of the remodeling traction on the limb should separate the bone ends at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. In spite of the loss of the cruciate ligaments in this operation the tibial spine and the supracondylar notch are not reconstructed. Stability is dependent entirely upon the broad

articulating surface of the femur and good development of the muscular apparatus, especially the quadriceps group. Care is taken during the operation to preserve the integrity of the lateral collateral ligaments. Finally, the line of approximation of the 2 bones is noted. The articulation must be a straight hinge joint. Hence, if there is any axial deviation at the joint either in varus or valgus, sufficient bone is removed to correct the deformity.

The patella is converted into a thin lamina of bone by removing most of its posterior surface. In addition approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch of bone is trimmed from its periphery. The raw surface is covered by a pedicle flap of fat removed from the posterior surface of the patellar ligament, the edges of the flap are secured to the margins of the tendinous fibers surrounding the patella.

Attention is now directed to coverage of the raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia by an interposing fascial membrane. A section of fascia lata measuring from 8 to 10 inches long and from 4 to 5 inches wide is taken from the lateral surface of the opposite thigh. The outer and coarser surface of the fascia is applied next to the bone and the inner surface functions as a lining membrane of the new articular surfaces. The fascia is folded in such a manner that two thirds of its length comprises the upper segment, and one third the lower segment. The fold is fastened to the posterior capsule by fine interrupted chromic catgut sutures. The upper segment is brought around the femoral condyle from backward to forward and then reflected over the anterior surface of the femur for a distance of 4 to 5 inches. The lower segment is brought forward covering the tibial plateau to the anterior margin of the tibia. Finally, the edges of the fascia are secured beyond the peripheries of the articular surfaces to the soft tissues and periosteum by a continuous suture of chromic catgut. Occasionally, it may be nec

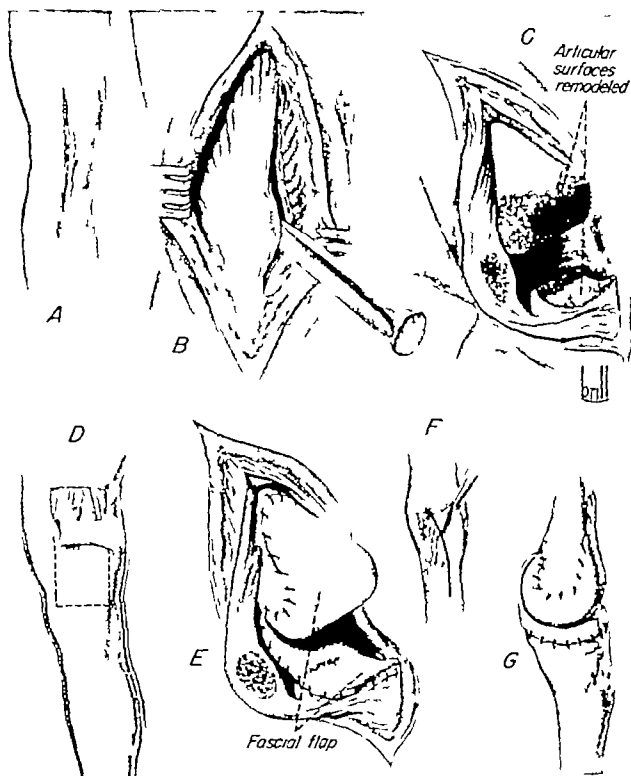


FIG. 412 (A to G) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described by Campbell. The distal end of the femur is converted into a single condyle and the cruciate ligaments and the tibial spine are sacrificed; the raw surface of the patella is covered with fat.

distribution of the ankylosis and the position of deformity of the limb present at the time of operation

The skin incision begins from 4 to 6 inches proximal to the joint at the inner margin of the quadriceps tendon, it is prolonged downward with a slight convexity directed medially and terminates distal to the insertion of the patellar tendon. The superficial and the deep fascia of the thigh are divided in the line of the skin incision and the vastus medialis is separated from the tendon of the rectus femoris, which in turn is freed as far as the patella. With a sharp osteotome the fusion between the patella and the femur is divided. The patellar tendon the patella and the quadriceps tendon are displaced laterally fibrous strands restraining lateral displacement of these structures are severed. The femur and the tibia are separated by a thin osteotome, in executing this step care must be taken not to divide or traumatize the structures behind the posterior joint capsule. By flexing the knee slowly complete visualization of the joint is attained. After the posterior portions of the condyles of the femur are removed the distal end of the femur is converted into a single condyle being convex from above downward and from before backward. Sufficient bone is removed from the femur to reach cancellous bone removal of too much bone will result in an unstable joint the larger amount of bone is chiseled from the posterior aspects of the condyles. With a wide gouge ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in) the tibial surface is shaped to single cavity from before back to accommodate the femoral condyle. Again as little bone as possible is removed in order to preserve length of the limb. After completion of the remodeling traction on the limb should separate the bone ends at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. In spite of the loss of the cruciate ligaments in this operation the tibial spine and the supra condylar notch are not reconstructed. Stability is dependent entirely upon the broad

articulating surface of the femur and good development of the muscular apparatus especially the quadriceps group. Care is taken during the operation to preserve the integrity of the lateral collateral ligaments. Finally, the line of approximation of the 2 bones is noted the articulation must be a straight hinge joint, hence, if there is any axial deviation at the joint either in varus or valgus, sufficient bone is removed to correct the deformity.

The patella is converted into a thin lamina of bone by removing most of its posterior surface. In addition, approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch of bone is trimmed from its periphery. The raw surface is covered by a pedicle flap of fat removed from the posterior surface of the patellar ligament the edges of the flap are secured to the margins of the tendinous fibers surrounding the patella.

Attention is now directed to coverage of the raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia by an interposing fascial membrane. A section of fascia lata measuring from 8 to 10 inches long and from 4 to 5 inches wide is taken from the lateral surface of the opposite thigh. The outer and coarser surface of the fascia is applied next to the bone, and the inner surface functions as a lining membrane of the new articular surfaces. The fascia is folded in such a manner that two thirds of its length comprises the upper segment, and one third the lower segment. The fold is fastened to the posterior capsule by fine interrupted chromic catgut sutures. The upper segment is brought around the femoral condyle from backward to forward and then reflected over the anterior surface of the femur for a distance of 4 to 5 inches. The lower segment is brought forward, covering the tibial plateau to the anterior margin of the tibia. Finally the edges of the fascia are secured beyond the peripheries of the articular surfaces to the soft tissues and periosteum by a continuous suture of chromic catgut. Occasionally it may be nec

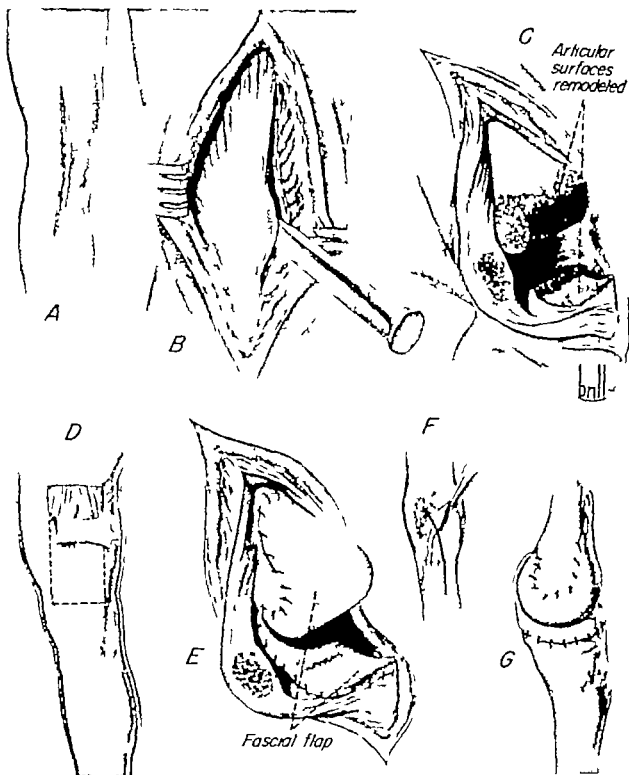


FIG. 412 (A to G) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described by Campbell. The distal end of the femur is converted into a single condyle and the cruciate ligaments and the tibial spine are sacrificed. The raw surface of the patella is covered with fat.

distribution of the ankylosis and the position of deformity of the limb present at the time of operation

The skin incision begins from 4 to 6 inches proximal to the joint at the inner margin of the quadriceps tendon. It is prolonged downward with a slight convexity directed medially and terminates distal to the insertion of the patellar tendon. The superficial and the deep fascia of the thigh are divided in the line of the skin incision and the vastus medialis is separated from the tendon of the rectus femoris, which in turn is freed as far as the patella. With a sharp osteotome the fusion between the patella and the femur is divided. The patellar tendon and the quadriceps tendon are displaced laterally, fibrous strands restraining lateral displacement of these structures are severed. The femur and the tibia are separated by a thin osteotome in executing this step care must be taken not to divide or traumatize the structures behind the posterior joint capsule. By flexing the knee slowly complete visualization of the joint is attained. After the posterior portions of the condyles of the femur are removed the distal end of the femur is converted into a single condyle being convex from above downward and from before backward. Sufficient bone is removed from the femur to reach cancellous bone; removal of too much bone will result in an unstable joint. The larger amount of bone is chiseled from the posterior aspects of the condyles. With a wide gouge ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in.) the tibial surface is shaped to single cavity from before back to accommodate the femoral condyle. Again as little bone as possible is removed in order to preserve length of the limb. After completion of the remodeling traction on the limb should separate the bone ends at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. In spite of the loss of the cruciate ligaments in this operation the tibial spine and the supracondylar notch are not reconstructed. Stability is dependent entirely upon the broad

articulating surface of the femur and good development of the muscular apparatus, especially the quadriceps group. Care is taken during the operation to preserve the integrity of the lateral collateral ligaments. Finally, the line of approximation of the 2 bones is noted; the articulation must be a straight hinge joint; hence, if there is any axial deviation at the joint either in varus or valgus, sufficient bone is removed to correct the deformity.

The patella is converted into a thin lamina of bone by removing most of its posterior surface. In addition, approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch of bone is trimmed from its periphery. The raw surface is covered by a pedicle flap of fat removed from the posterior surface of the patellar ligament; the edges of the flap are secured to the margins of the tendinous fibers surrounding the patella.

Attention is now directed to coverage of the raw surfaces of the femur and the tibia by an interposing fascial membrane. A section of fascia lata measuring from 8 to 10 inches long and from 4 to 5 inches wide is taken from the lateral surface of the opposite thigh. The outer and coarser surface of the fascia is applied next to the bone and the inner surface functions as a lining membrane of the new articular surfaces. The fascia is folded in such a manner that two thirds of its length comprises the upper segment and one third the lower segment; the fold is fastened to the posterior capsule by fine interrupted chromic catgut sutures. The upper segment is brought around the femoral condyle from backward to forward and then reflected over the anterior surface of the femur for a distance of 4 to 5 inches. The lower segment is brought forward, covering the tibial plateau to the anterior margin of the tibia. Finally the edges of the fascia are secured beyond the peripheries of the articular surfaces to the soft tissues and periosteum by a continuous suture of chromic catgut. Occasionally, it may be nec-

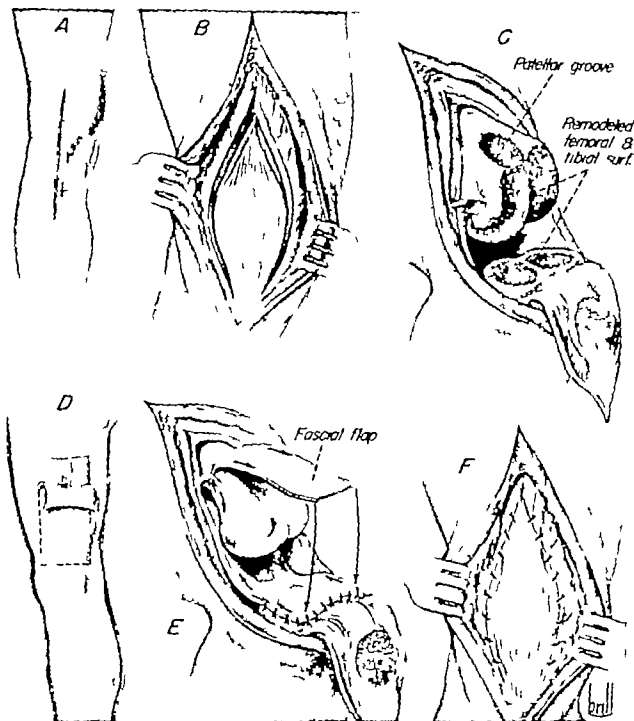


FIG 413 (A to F) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described by MacAusland. The anatomic contours of the femoral condyles and the tibial plateaus are restored. In addition a notch on the anterior surface of the femur is created to accommodate the remodeled patella.

essary to anchor the fascia to the margins of the bone by sutures passing through holes drilled in the bone. The wound is closed in layers in the usual manner.

**TECHNIC OF MACAUSLAND (Fig 413)**  
This arthroplasty differs from that of

Campbell in that an attempt is made to reconstruct the normal configuration of the femur and the tibia. Also a notch is made on the anterior surface of the femur to accommodate the patella.

The skin incision begins from 3 to 4

inches above the patella over the middle of the quadriceps tendon. It is continued downward in a straight line over the center of the patella and the patellar tendon and ends 1 to 2 inches distal to the tibial tubercle. The skin flaps and the superficial fascia are reflected on each side of the incision for 3 or 4 inches, exposing the deep fascia, the quadriceps muscle and tendon. An inverted

goblet-shaped incision is employed to expose the deeper structures; it begins 3 inches proximal to the base of the patella and extends directly downward for 1 inch, from this point 2 curved incisions, one on each side of the patella, continue downward and terminate over the corresponding tuberosity of the tibia. The incisions are deepened through the capsule, exposing the intra

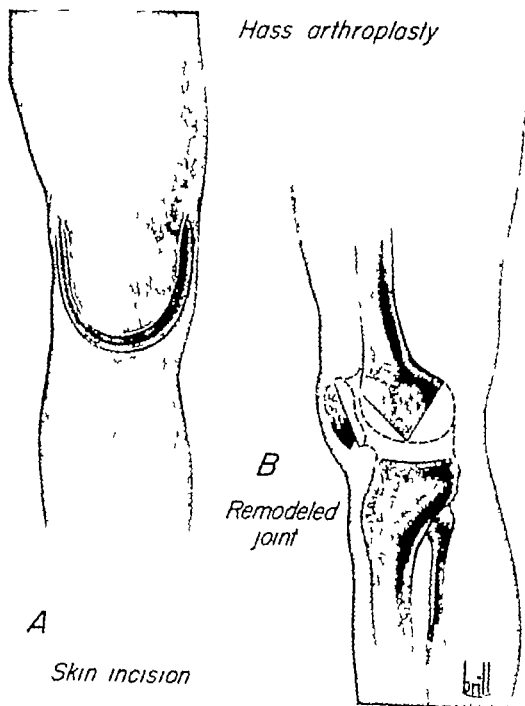


FIG. 414 Arthroplasty of the knee joint (Hass) (A) Incision employed, (B) the end of the femur is remodeled into a wedge with a long anterior and a short posterior surface. Interposing membrane may or may not be employed.



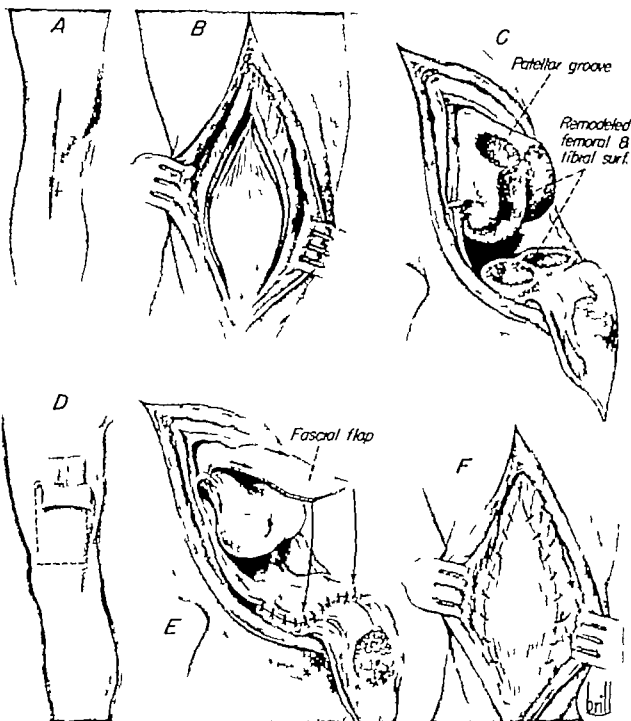


FIG 413 (A to F) Steps in arthroplasty of the knee joint as described by MacAusland. The anatomic contours of the femoral condyles and the tibial plateaus are restored. In addition, a notch on the anterior surface of the femur is created to accommodate the remodeled patella.

essary to anchor the fascia to the margins of the bone by sutures passing through holes drilled in the bone. The wound is closed in layers in the usual manner.

**TECHNIC OF MACAUSLAND (Fig 413)**  
This arthroplasty differs from that of

Campbell in that an attempt is made to reconstruct the normal configuration of the femur and the tibia. Also, a notch is made on the anterior surface of the femur to accommodate the patella.

The skin incision begins from 3 to 4

inches above the patella over the middle of the quadriceps tendon it is continued downward in a straight line over the center of the patella and the patellar tendon and ends 1 to 2 inches distal to the tibial tubercle. The skin flaps and the superficial fascia are reflected on each side of the incision for 3 or 4 inches exposing the deep fascia, the quadriceps muscle and tendon. An inverted

goblet-shaped incision is employed to expose the deeper structures, it begins 3 inches proximal to the base of the patella and extends directly downward for 1 inch. From this point 2 curved incisions, one on each side of the patella, continue downward and terminate over the corresponding tuberosity of the tibia. The incisions are deepened through the capsule exposing the intra

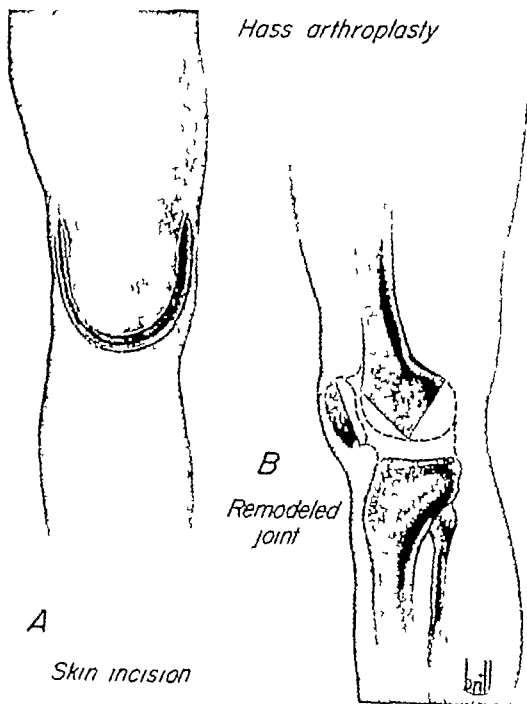


FIG. 414 Arthroplasty of the knee joint (Hass). (A) Incision employed. (B) the end of the femur is remodeled into a wedge with a long anterior and a short posterior surface. Interposing membrane may or may not be employed.

articular structures After the patella is freed from the femur the entire flap is turned downward. All ligamentous structures are dissected free from the femur and the tibia but they are left intact.

With the use of Putti's chisels the new joint surfaces are remodeled, following as closely as possible the normal contour of the bone ends about 1 cm of bone is removed from the condyles. In addition to reshaping the condyles the intercondylar notch is reconstructed. Two cavities are chiseled out of the tibial surfaces to accommodate the femoral condyles between them is left a well formed tibial spine which fits in the intercondylar notch and ensures lateral stability. On the anterior surface of the femur a shallow cavity is created which will articulate with the patella. All surfaces are smoothed with rasps and files.

Attention is now directed to the patella which is narrowed considerably. This is achieved by trimming off longitudinally one third of the inner and the outer surfaces and one third of the posterior surface of the remaining bone. Then it is enclosed in the joint capsule.

From the opposite thigh a piece of fascia lata is removed its length and width should be sufficient to cover both femoral condyles both tibial plateaus and the posterior surface of the patella. The edge of the flap is first sutured to the anterior and lateral surfaces of the tibia then the flap is drawn into the popliteal space to a point  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches up the posterior surface of the femur and sutured to the posterior capsule next it is drawn upward over the condyles of the femur and anchored around the condyles by a purse-string suture the remaining portion of the flap is reflected downward and sutured to the upper margins of the tibial tuberosities. After the quadriceps apparatus has been reassembled the wound is closed in layers.

**TECHNIC OF HASS (Fig. 414)** In this operation Hass strives to convert the ankylosed knee into the simplest form of gin

gymus. Primarily, he is concerned with remodeling the new joint from a physiologic rather than an anatomic viewpoint. Also, he is of the opinion that an interposing substance is not essential in restoring function but it does serve to fill in the dead spaces in the anterior and the posterior compartments of the joint and acts as a hemostatic agent. Technically he reduces the amount of bone contact to a minimum, believing that this feature obviates refusion of the bone ends and allows motion without friction. The ultimate configuration of the bone ends is in response to functional adaptation the end of the femur becomes round and smooth and even develops condyles, whereas the trough in the tibia is deepened.

The joint is approached through a curved infrapatellar skin incision. After the tibial tuberosity is detached, the patella is chiseled off the anterior surface of the femur, and the flap containing the tibial tuberosity, the patellar tendon and the patella is turned upward exposing the anterior surface of the tibiofemoral joint. With thin sharp osteotomes the union between the femur and the tibia is divided. In so doing the lateral ligaments are spared. By flexing the knee the entire lower end of the femur is made accessible the condyles are removed forming a wedge with a long anterior and a short posterior surface. The plateau is reshaped into a shallow trough perpendicular to the femur next the patella is thinned by removing its posterior surface and all raw surfaces are smoothed with a rasp and a mallet. As much of the capsular tissue as is accessible is removed and the end of the femur is covered with a layer of fat removed from the lateral aspect of the thigh. The tibial tuberosity is made secure to its original site by a metallic screw or nail and the wound is closed in the usual manner. Skin traction is applied to the leg and the limb is immobilized in plaster with the knee extended.

**TECHNIC OF AUTHOR (Fig. 415)** Recently the author has designed and employed a vitallium prosthesis for the tibial

plateau, in addition the raw surfaces of the end of the femur and the anterior surface of the lower end of the femur are covered by a strip of nylon the raw surface of the patella is covered with fat. The results attained are encouraging, but the cases as yet are too few (4 cases) and too recent to allow adequate evaluation of the method. Later a critical analysis of the cases will be recorded.

The actual remodeling of the bone ends is similar to that described by Hass except that the end of the femur is made less angular, and approximately  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm. of the upper end of the tibia is resected.

**Postoperative Management.** Careful supervision of this phase of the treatment is essential, the rapidity of rehabilitation is governed by many factors, such as the duration of the ankylosis, the severity of the existing osteoporosis in both bones, the status of the muscular and ligamentous apparatus and the intelligence and the co-operation of the patient. In general, the limb should be put at complete rest after the operative procedure for 2 to 3 weeks. This is achieved best by immobilizing the extremity in plaster with the knee extended and adhesion traction to the leg making 4 to 6 pounds pull. Total rest ensures rapid ces-

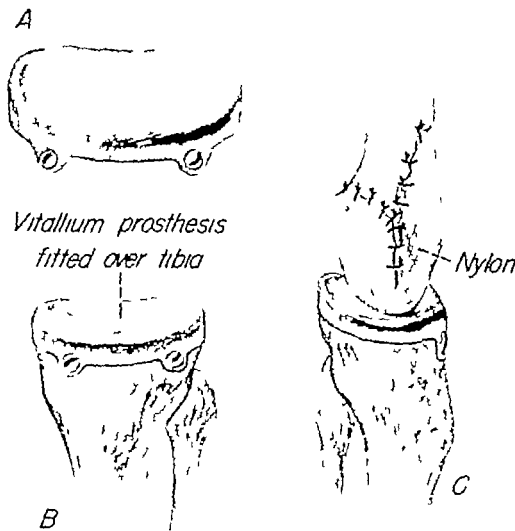


FIG 415 Arthroplasty of the knee joint (author's method) (A) Vitallium prosthesis used. The anterior and the posterior flares of the femoral condyles are removed. Also, the upper end of the tibia is resected transversely (B) The block of bone removed is sufficient to accommodate the prosthesis placed over the tibial plateau (C) The end of the femur is covered with nylon

sation of tissue reaction and favors early painless motion at the knee. While in plaster the quadriceps is contracted actively on a regulated schedule from 10 to 15 times every hour. This begins on the third or the fourth day. After the removal of the plaster cast the limb is placed in balanced traction and active flexion and extension of the knee is started. At first care is taken to avoid excessive or forceful motions in order to prevent recurrence of swelling and pain. If this occurs the limb is again placed at rest until all evidence of reactive swelling has subsided. At all times motion should be gentle and within the tolerance of pain, as the index of pain becomes diminished motion is increased gradually. Physical measures such as radiant heat and gentle massage are valuable adjuncts and add much to the patient's comfort. The regimen of balanced suspension is continued for 3 weeks after which the patient is allowed up on crutches but no weight bearing is permitted until the ligaments and the muscles have tightened.

As a rule at the end of 8 weeks the patient is ready to start partial weight bearing. This is achieved by a weight-bearing caliper with a Thomas ring and an adjustable joint at the knee. The apparatus protects the knee from strain and provides the patient with a sense of stability at the knee joint. Full unprotected weight bearing is not permitted until there is roentgenographic evidence that the bone pattern is approaching normal and the bony trabeculae have arranged themselves along the lines of stress; moreover the quadriceps muscle must have regained good power and volume.

During the aforementioned period every effort possible must be made to redevelop tone and power in the muscles motorizing the knee joint in addition to increasing progressively the arcs of flexion and extension. Active progressive exercises against increasing resistance on a specific routine is the best method to attain this goal.

**Features Constituting an Acceptable**

**Arthroplasty** Critical analysis of the end result studies of arthroplasty of the knee published by different surgeons such as Campbell, Putti, MacAusland and Hass, discloses that restitution of normal function is obtained only in the rarest cases. However a serviceable range of painless motion and good stability of the joint is achieved in a relatively high percentage of cases. The newly formed joint can scarcely be compared with the highly specialized mechanism of the normal joint. Nevertheless functional adaptation converts the simple man-made articulation into a joint acceptable to both the patient and the surgeon and a joint that will stand up under daily usage for an indefinite period of time.

The average arthroplasty has a range of motion of 60° to 70° generally accompanied by some crepitus beneath the patella. Excessive strain will initiate some pain and swelling. When the knee is flexed and the muscles are relaxed varying degrees of instability are demonstrable. With the muscles tense especially when the knee is extended the amount of instability is negligible. As a rule the gait approaches normal and a limp is barely detectable. In most cases mounting steps is performed with some difficulty.

Hass classified 44 per cent of his cases as excellent and 33 per cent as good results. The follow up period in this series was 5 years or more. Campbell noted in his large series that during the first 2 or 3 years certain degenerative and adaptative alterations occurred in the joints and except in the rare case the ultimate degree of motion, stability and functional capacity is not achieved within this period. During the next 2 or 3 years there is a progressive slow increase in motion and muscular control of the joint reaching the maximum degree of function and stability from 5 to 7 years after the operation. Thereafter a stationary phase ensues and no further change is noted clinically or roentgenographically.

## TRANSPLANTATION OF TENDONS AT THE KNEE FOR PARALYZED QUADRICEPS

**Historical Considerations.** According to Waterman, grafting and transference of tendons in traumatic cases were not uncommon procedures for several decades before Karl Nicoladoni (1880) conceived the idea of applying this same principle to paralyzed muscles. He attempted to re-establish muscle power in a case of paralytic cal caneus by transferring the severed proximal ends of the tendons of the peroneus longus and brevis to the distal end of the divided tendo achillis. Although the operation was a failure because the tendon anastomosis separated, the same technic was employed by Drobnick (1896) in 16 cases with satisfactory results. Following Drobnick's report, muscle transference gained popularity and for the first time in America, Gold thwait and Milliken working independently joined the lower end of the sartorius muscle to the tendon of the rectus femoris in a case of paralysis of the quadriceps muscle. This principle was conceived first by Parrish in a case of paralytic valgus. In 1892 he sutured the tendon of the extensor hallucis to that of the paralyzed tibialis anticus, both tendons being left intact. Lange and Krause (1898) in Europe and Painter (1902) in America successfully restored power of extension in a case of a paralyzed quadriceps muscle by transferring the tendon of an active biceps femoris muscle directly to the patella. The tendon occupies a subperiosteal position on the anterior surface of the patella. This operation has gained much popularity both in America and in Europe and has been accepted as a standard procedure in the armamentarium of the orthopedic surgeon. More recently some surgeons advocate transference of one of the medial hamstrings the sartorius or the semitendinosus muscle to the patella in addition to the biceps femoris. This addition ensures against lateral subluxation or dislocation of the

patella that results from the pull of the unopposed biceps femoris.

**General Considerations.** The success of tendon transplants in the region of the knee, as elsewhere in the body, is governed by many factors such as the proper selection of cases, the skill of the surgeon, adherence to established principles of tendon surgery and adequate supervision of the postoperative management. Much of our present-day knowledge of the physiologic and biologic aspects of tendon surgery stems from the work of Biesalski and Mayer. The impetus to this phase of the development of tendon surgery was provided in a large measure by Codivilla who was the first observer to note the significance of preserving the tendon to-tendon sheath gliding mechanism. The prime principles in tendon surgery are

- 1 The use of gentleness and atraumatic technic in handling tissues, particularly the tendon and its covering, this preserves the gliding mechanism and prevents peritendinous adhesions.

- 2 The power and the efficiency of the transplanted muscle should approach the normal power of the muscle to be substituted. This is of special importance in the lower extremity where one desires stability in addition to motion. Failure to achieve this goal leads to instability and formation of deformities.

- 3 Functional integrity of a muscle must be preserved. All portions of a muscle work as a single unit. One portion will not perform independently of or antagonistically to another.

- 4 The line of pull of a transplanted tendon must be mechanically efficient. It must effect a straight line of pull. As pointed out by Mayer in cases of transference of the flexors of the knee to replace a paralyzed quadriceps, the muscles must be mobilized sufficiently to permit upward displacement of the patella when they contract. If the muscles are freed insufficiently, their pull is in a dorsal direction, hence, the patella

is pulled against the femur instead of in a proximal direction

5 Every effort must be made to preserve or restore the gliding mechanism of the transferred tendon Codivilla designed a method wherein the transplanted tendon traversed the sheath of the tendon to be substituted Reconstruction of a working gliding apparatus is the chief concern of every surgeon who is effecting a tendon transplant In the region of the knee the problem is less difficult than in the hand or the arm here the usual operation is transference of the flexors of the knee to the patella the tendons traverse tunnels made through subcutaneous fat Functional adaptation converts the fat tissue surrounding the tendons into a smooth gliding system

6 The degree of tension of the transferred tendon should approach its normal physiologic state of tension This is difficult to ascertain In general tension should be of such a degree that no slack is demonstrable when the joint is in the desired position

7 In the region of the knee periosteal attachment is preferred to tendon-to-tendon attachment this method ensures the best possible anchorage Technical details must be executed meticulously in effecting periosteal anchorages failure to do so has brought unsatisfactory results in many cases

8 Existing deformities must be corrected before or at the time of tendon transference It is absurd to expect a transplanted tendon to correct an existing deformity This becomes more apparent when one realizes that a normal tendon would be unable to overcome the handicap

9 The time for motion to begin must be decided by the surgeon who knows the type of anchorage performed and is able to judge when the attachment is sufficiently secure to allow mobilization of the tendon

Indications. In most instances tendon transference in the region of the knee is performed to restore extensor power in cases

of paralysis of the quadriceps muscles. If the quadriceps is active and paralysis of the flexors exists no transplantation is necessary because in walking flexion of the knee is achieved by gravity when the hip of the affected limb is flexed Hyperextension or slight recurvatum at the knee favors stability, provided that the flexors of the hip and the gastrocnemius muscles possess good power In these cases the knee is locked in hyperextension at the end of each step Although the disability associated with a paralyzed quadriceps is severe most patients make adequate compensating adjustments that permit free ambulation without supporting the knee A common gait adopted is that of stabilizing the knee by rotating the limb outward so that transverse axis of the knee approaches the sagittal plane another mode of walking is throwing the leg forward taking very short steps the movement is executed rapidly so that the knee has no time to buckle under the body weight Both methods of walking are undesirable because they permit abnormal stress to act on the knee the ankle and the foot Relaxation of the posterior structures of the knee occurs frequently and results in varying degrees of genu recurvatum the foot of the involved limb may develop pes valgus In the face of the aforementioned abnormalities transference of the flexor tendons to restore extensor power is justifiable

After the decision to transplant flexor tendons to the quadriceps has been made the type of operation is dependent upon the status of the hamstring muscles Clinical experience discloses that transference of two flexors one on each side gives the most satisfactory results the most desirable pair comprises the biceps femoris and the semi tendinosus O'Donoghue utilizes this method and has reported excellent results In the event that the semitendinosus is inefficient the sartorius or the gracilis may be substituted Some workers employ only the biceps femoris this method results in satisfactory

function, but the unopposed pull of the biceps femoris is apt to sublunate the patella to the lateral side of the knee joint. This occurred in 4 of the author's cases and has been reported by other workers. Crego and Fischer pointed out that the most suitable candidates for biceps femoris transplant are those demonstrating good power in the muscles of the hip and the calf but the quadriceps paralysis makes walking difficult without some supporting appliance. The dual transference method not only eliminates the possibility of subluxation of the patella but also provides a more powerful extensor apparatus. It is generally accepted that some flexors of the knee must be left intact, the minimum being one flexor and an active gastrocnemius muscle.

Transference of the sartorius and the tensor fascia femoris, although at one time a very popular procedure, is seldom employed, because the strength of the new extensor mechanism is not adequate; moreover, the tensor fascia femoris contributes considerably to the lateral stability of the knee joint and therefore, if possible, should not be disturbed. This method is justifiable only in those cases wherein the quadriceps power is not seriously impaired.

**Associated Deformities.** Quadriceps paralysis is associated frequently with other deformities of the knee, the hip or both. In the region of the knee the two common concomitant deformities are varying degrees of flexion contracture often associated with some external rotation and subluxation of the tibia and genu recurvatum. Flexion deformity may be the result of unopposed action of the flexors; the severity varies in degree being contingent on the degree and the duration of the muscle imbalance. If the power of the biceps femoris exceeds that of the internal hamstrings the tibia is not only rotated externally and abducted on the femur but it may be subluxated posteriorly. Prolonged action of active muscles may produce torsion deformities of the femur and the tibia. Yount (1926) and later Forbes

(1928) pointed out the role of the tensor fascia femoris in certain deformities of the lower extremities. They noted that contracture of this structure was responsible for abduction contracture of the hip and external rotation, abduction and flexion of the tibia on the femur, especially in cases with an inefficient or paralyzed quadriceps. The biceps femoris was considered as a major contributing factor in producing the alterations of the knee joint. In mild contractures these observers advocated division of the iliotibial band and the lateral intermuscular septum, and in some cases lengthening of the biceps femoris muscle. Yount (1938) designed an operation employing the fascia lata and in some cases the biceps femoris to restore extensor power and relieve the deformities. Through the iliotibial band he utilizes the tensor fascia femoris and a fair portion of the gluteus maximus muscle which fuses with the former muscle in the iliotibial band.

As noted previously, before tendon transference is carried out all deformities of the knee, the hip and the ankle must be corrected. Contractures of the knee if mild in nature will respond to simple measures such as gradual stretching, skin traction to the leg or wedging of a plaster-of-Paris cast. Severe contractures require more radical methods such as posterior capsulotomy with or without lengthening of the tendons of the hamstring muscles, occasionally supracondylar osteotomy of the femur may be necessary in severe fixed flexion deformities or in torsion deformities of the femur or the tibia.

On the other hand mild degrees of genu recurvatum cause no disability and in many instances are desirable because they enhance the stability of the knee in walking. Severe grades of recurvatum increase functional disability and must be corrected.

**Transplantation of Biceps Femoris and Semitendinosus Muscles (Fig 416)**  
Three skin incisions are employed in this procedure: the first over the anterior sur-



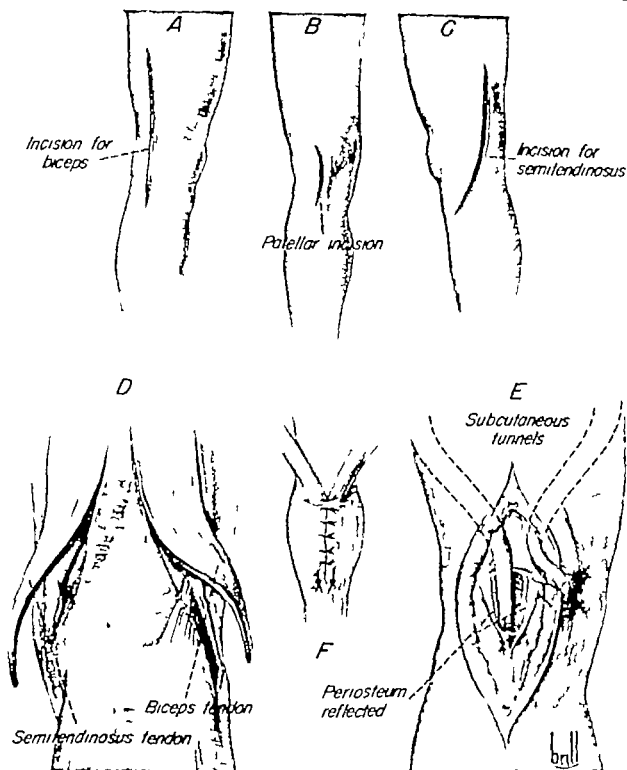


FIG. 416 (A to F) Steps in transference of the tendons of the biceps femoris and the semitendinosus to the patella for paralysis of the quadriceps muscle. Note that 3 incisions are utilized. The method of anchorage of the tendons to the patella is depicted clearly in F and F.

face of the patella the second along the course of the biceps femoris, and third along the posteromedial aspect of the thigh. The first skin incision is approximately 3

inches in length with a slight convexity. It is placed over the anterior surface of the patella. Its skin flaps are dissected on each side until the surface of the patella. The

patellar tendon below and the quadriceps tendon above are visualized. A vertical incision is made in the mid line of the patella, dividing the fascial layer, the quadriceps tendon and the periosteum, the incision is deepened to the bone, a transverse incision is made along the base of the patella, thereby converting the vertical incision into a T. The two flaps are dissected from the anterior surface of the patella. With a sharp gouge a deep vertical groove is made in the mid line of the patella, its depth should be sufficient to accommodate readily the tendons of the biceps femoris and the semitendinosus. From the upper pole of the incision two subcutaneous tunnels are formed: one directed obliquely upward and medially, the other obliquely upward and laterally, the latter must be sufficiently wide to permit the transplanted biceps femoris muscle to glide freely.

The second skin incision is made along the course of the biceps femoris muscle and tendon, it begins slightly below the head of the fibula and extends proximally along the posterolateral aspect of the thigh for a distance of 10 to 12 inches. The common peroneal nerve is dissected free from the medial border of the biceps tendon and retracted gently laterally. After the tendinous insertion of the biceps muscle is freed from all surrounding tissues it is severed from the head of the fibula. At this point one must bear in mind the relationship of the fibular collateral ligament to the biceps tendon: the tendon winds around the ligament in such a fashion that the ligament appears to split the tendon into a superficial and a deep portion. Care must be executed in not cutting the collateral ligament when the tendon is detached. If a portion of the ligament should be cut it must be reattached to the fibula. Occasionally if the length of the biceps tendon appears to be too short to reach the patella it may be necessary to remove a prolongation of the fascia lata of the thigh with the biceps tendon. Dissection of the biceps tendon and muscle is carried proximally until the structure is mobilized

sufficiently to permit its displacement anteriorly without tension. Precautions must be taken to avoid injury to the nerve supply of the short head of the biceps muscle, the sciatic nerve and femoral vessels in the upper limits of the incision. Now, the muscle and the tendon are ready for transference, the tendon is passed through the subcutaneous tunnel directed upward and outward that was formed in the first stage of the operation. The course of the muscle should be slightly oblique approaching closely a vertical path, the end of the tendon should reach its new bed in the patella. The lateral incision is closed in layers.

The third skin incision runs parallel with the course of the medial hamstrings on the posteromedial aspect of the thigh. It begins at the insertion of the inner hamstrings into the tuberosity of the tibia and continues proximally for about 10 inches. The semitendinosus is situated immediately behind the sartorius and below the gracilis. It is severed at its point of insertion and mobilized as far as the upper limits of the incision. It is freed sufficiently so that it can be shifted anteriorly without difficulty, the free end of the tendon is now drawn through the remaining subcutaneous tunnel and should reach the patella. The medial incision is closed in the usual manner.

The next stage of the operation is anchorage of the biceps femoris and semitendinosus tendons in the groove constructed previously on the anterior surface of the patella. As noted previously, no slack should be present in the tendons after their fixation to the patella. The tendon of the biceps femoris is attached first. The tendon is laid in the groove and its end is fastened to the lower pole of the patella by a suture of medium sized silk which passes through the biceps tendon, the bone of the patella and the patellar tendon. To ensure firm anchorage several cross stitches are passed through the patellar tendon. The tendon of the semitendinosus is embedded in a similar fashion. In addition the two tendons as they lie side by side in the groove are tacked to one

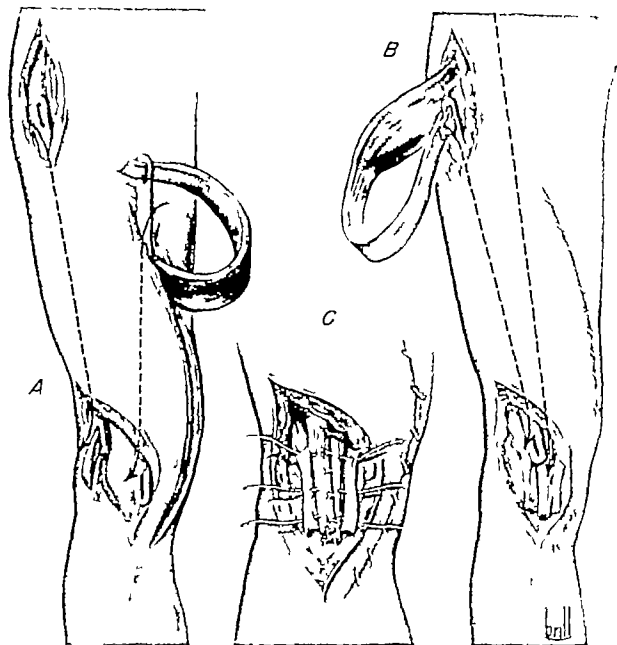


FIG. 417 Transference of the tensor fascia femoris and the sartorius muscles to the patella for paralysis of the quadriceps muscle (Ober). (A) The iliotibial band is divided at its point of insertion into the head of the fibula. The tendon of the sartorius is divided at its site of insertion into the tibia. The belly of the muscle is mobilized as far as the thigh. (B) Both the tensor fascia femoris and the sartorius are transplanted to their new anatomic position. (C) Method of anchorage to the patellar tendon and patella.

another by interrupted cotton sutures. Finally the edges of the periosteal fascial flaps dissected previously from the anterior surface of the patella are approximated.

**POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT** With the limb in 180° extension a plaster-of-Paris cast is applied which extends from the

toes to the groin. This immobilization is maintained from 3 to 4 weeks, then the cast is removed and active progressive exercises and physical therapy are instituted. The patient must be taught to employ the transferred flexors as extensors of the knee. In most instances this is accom-

plished readily. Radiant heat and gentle massage are valuable adjuncts in restoring normal circulation and dissipating post-operative tissue reactions. After removal of the cast, the extremity is protected by a posterior splint of plaster of Paris; this can be taken off during the exercise periods and then reapplied. Weight-bearing is allowed 2 months after the operation. Now the plaster splint is replaced by a long leg brace with a lock at the knee that holds the limb in complete extension while walking. When the patient has acquired strong extensor action in the transplanted muscles, motion at the knee is allowed in the brace. However, a posterior plaster splint should be worn at night for 3 months or longer. After the patient has achieved strong extension power and the knee is stable, the brace is discarded; usually this is accomplished in 12 to 16 weeks.

#### Other Combinations of Flexor Tendons Employed for Quadriceps Paralysis.

**BICEPS FEMORIS AND SARTORIUS MUSCLES.** The author prefers this method when an inefficiency of the semitendinosus exists. The procedure is identical in all details with that of the transference of the biceps femoris and the semitendinosus muscles described previously.

**TENSOR FASCIA FEMORIS AND SARTORIUS MUSCLES (Ober).** This procedure is justifiable only when the biceps femoris and the semitendinosus are partially or completely paralyzed (Fig. 417). By this method powerful extension at the knee must not be expected. However, the strength to stabilize the knee does not necessarily have to approach that of the normal quadriceps muscle; in many instances a very small increase in strength in the extensor mechanism is sufficient to stabilize the knee and to produce marked improvement in the patient's walking. On the other hand, the above procedure must not be carried out unless some flexion power is left intact. Complete absence of flexor power may precipitate a disabling genu recurvatum de-

formity. The advantage of this operation is evident in the topographic anatomy of the sartorius and the tensor fascia femoris muscles. Their location, in relation to the anterior structures of the thigh, permits a better physiologic action on the patella than that of the hamstring muscles.

A curved skin incision 8 inches in length with its convexity directed outward is made on the lateral aspect of the knee; it begins over the patellar ligament and continues proximally along the iliotibial band. The insertion of the iliotibial band into the head of the fibula is identified and freed from the surrounding structures; a flap of fascia lata  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch wide is severed from the fibula. Next a skin incision 3 inches in length is made on the lateral aspect of the thigh over the lower portion of the tensor fascia femoris. A subcutaneous tunnel is bored between the two skin incisions, and the loose flap of fascia is drawn out of the upper opening. The belly of the tensor fascia femoris is mobilized by freeing it from all adjacent tissues. By reflecting medially the skin edge of the lower incision the patella, the patellar tendon and the quadriceps tendon are brought into view. A vertical incision is made in the quadriceps tendon and its fascial covering, the aponeurosis over the patella and the patellar tendon; the edges of the incision are dissected to each side for  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. Next, the sartorius muscle is exposed. The skin incision begins at the tibial tubercle and curves gently upward on the medial aspect of the thigh; it terminates on the anteromedial aspect of the thigh at the juncture of the middle and the upper thirds. The lower margins of the skin incision are dissected on each side to expose the patella and the patellar tendon on the lateral aspect and the sartorius muscle on the medial aspect. The tendon of the sartorius is identified and divided at its point of insertion into the tibia. It lies in front of the tendons of the semitendinosus and the gracilis muscles. Next the tendon and its muscle belly are mobilized as far as

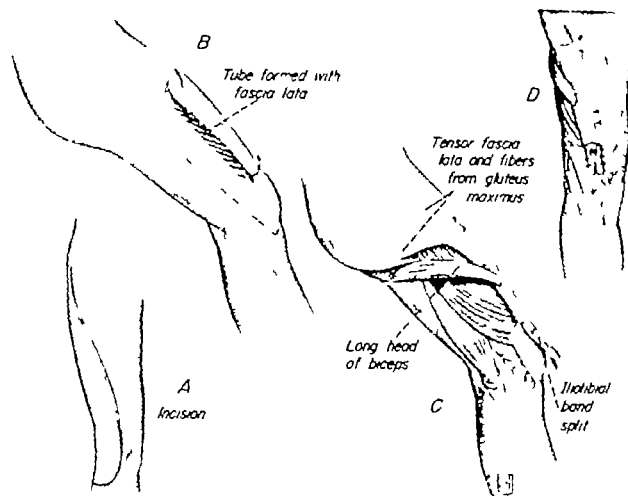


FIG 418 Transference of the tensor fascia femoris and the biceps femoris muscles to the patella. This method is employed in cases with quadriceps paralysis exhibiting a flexion and an external rotation deformity of the tibia on the femur resulting from contracture of the iliotibial band (ount) (A) Incision. (B) Formation of fascial tube. (C) Depicts sites of entrance of the (1) iliotibial band into which are inserted the tensor fascia femoris and a portion of the gluteus maximus and (2) the long head of the biceps femoris muscle. (D) Method of attachment of the transplants to the patella and the patellar tendon.

the middle of the thigh in this step precautions must be taken not to injure the saphenous nerve which occupies a position in relation to the posterior border of the sartorius muscle. An X suture of silk is passed through the end of each transplant. By means of a fascia carrier the iliotibial band is passed beneath the fascia lata so that its distal end emerges from the lower wound over the quadriceps tendon, while the sartorius muscle and tendon are passed through a perforation made in the intermuscular septum between the sartorius and the quadriceps. The end of the

tendon appears in the lower wound over the quadriceps tendon. The free ends of the transplants are now ready for anchorage with the knee extended and the thigh flexed 45°. The tendon of the sartorius is fastened to the patellar tendon by silk sutures. The distal end of the iliotibial band is superimposed over the sartorius and it also is fastened to the patellar tendon. Both structures are then approximated by interrupted sutures of the reflected ends of the reflected bands. The ends of the reflected bands are approximated.

**MUSCLES (YOUNT)** (Fig 418) This operation was designed by Yount primarily for those cases wherein the quadriceps is paralyzed, both the inner and the outer hamstring muscles are acting and, because of contracture of the iliotibial band, flexion deformity of the knee and external rotation of the tibia on the femur ensue. By this operation the aforementioned deformities of the knee are remedied, and extensor power is restored to the thigh. The tensor fascia femoris muscle and the posterior portion of the gluteus maximus which inserts in the fascia lata, together with the biceps femoris muscles, are utilized to attain the desired extensor power.

The skin incision begins just below the greater trochanter and continues distally toward the middle of the dorsal surface of the thigh to the patella. It runs across the patella and ends on the lateral aspect of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. Reflection of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue to each side by blunt dissection exposes the fascia lata from the middle of the thigh to its inferior margin of the lateral surface. Proximally the reflection is continued until the insertion of the gluteus maximus muscle into the fascia lata is adequately exposed. By retracting the lower skin flap laterally the tendon of the biceps is visualized. Next the tendon above the head of the fibula is mobilized and  $\frac{2}{3}$  of its thickness is stripped free from its point of insertion in the head of the fibula. Dissection of the tendon continues proximally until the muscle fibers of the short head come into view. Dissection of the long head continues upward leaving the short head behind. The long head is mobilized sufficiently to allow its displacement to the new position with ease. Separation of the long and the short heads is facilitated by the presence of a distinct line of cleavage between the two muscle bellies. The short head left in situ ensures against the development of genu recurvatum. Next the iliotibial band is made ready for transference. A narrow strip approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$

inch wide is freed by subperiosteal dissection from the tuberosity of the tibia. It extends upward across the knee joint to that portion of the iliotibial band which is well defined. Beginning 2 inches proximal to the knee joint, the strip of fascia lata including the iliotibial band is widened gradually. This continues as far as the upper third of the thigh. It gains considerably in width as it nears the insertion of the gluteus maximus muscle. Here it is stripped free up to the point where the fibers of the gluteus maximus insert into it. On the medial side the fascia is stripped up so as to include the tensor fascia femoris muscle.

A tube of fascia lata which will enclose the transplants is constructed and so placed that it will maintain the new extensors of the knee in a position approaching that of the quadriceps. The tube is made from the inner lip of the cut fascia lata by folding it upon itself toward the mesial aspect of the limb. It is so placed in the upper part of the thigh that it occupies a lateral position from which it continues gradually and obliquely toward the middle of the thigh as it approaches a point 3 inches proximal to the base of the patella. The free end of the iliotibial band enters the tube at the top, the biceps tendon enters it 2 inches from the top through a separate aperture. After the biceps emerges from the distal end of the fascial tube it is fastened to the iliotibial because its length is not sufficient to reach the patella. After the quadriceps tendon is divided in the mid line  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches above the patella both transplants are sutured to it. The terminal segment of the fascial transplant is divided into two strips and each is passed through holes drilled in the patella. The wound is closed in the usual manner and the limb is immobilized in a plaster-of-Paris cast extending from the toes to the groin. If some flexion contracture of the knee is still present at the end of the operation only moderate force should be used to correct it, complete correction may

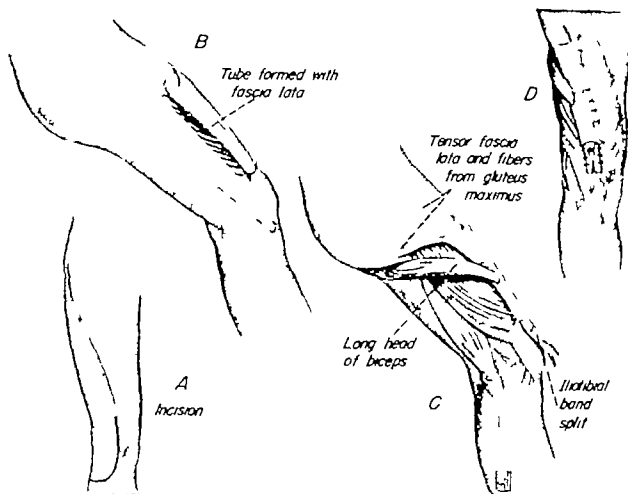


FIG 418 Transference of the tensor fascia femoris and the biceps femoris muscles to the patella. This method is employed in cases with quadriceps paralysis exhibiting a flexion and an external rotation deformity of the tibia on the femur resulting from contracture of the iliotibial band (Yount) (A) Incision (B) Formation of fascial tube. (C) Depicts sites of entrance of the (1) iliotibial band into which are inserted the tensor fascia femoris and a portion of the gluteus maximus and (2) the long head of the biceps femoris muscle. (D) Method of attachment of the transplants to the patella and the patellar tendon.

the middle of the thigh in this step pre cautions must be taken not to injure the saphenous nerve which occupies a position in relation to the posterior border of the sartorius muscle. An X suture of silk is passed through the end of each transplant. By means of a fascia carrier the iliotibial band is passed beneath the fascia lata so that its distal end emerges from the lower wound over the quadriceps tendon like wise the sartorius muscle and tendon are passed through a perforation made in the intermuscular septum between the sartorius and the quadriceps muscles the end of the

tendon appears in the lower wound over the quadriceps tendon. The free ends of the transplants are now ready for anchorage with the knee extended and the thigh flexed 45°. the tendon of the sartorius is fastened to the patellar tendon by silk sutures the distal end of the iliotibial band is super imposed over the sartorius and it also is fixed to the patellar tendon. Both structures are tacked to one another by interrupted sutures. Finally the edges of the reflected aponeurosis of the patella are approximated over the transplants.

TENSOR FASCIA FEMORIS AND BICEPS

**MUSCLES (YOUNT) (Fig 418)** This operation was designed by Yount primarily for those cases wherein the quadriceps is paralyzed, both the inner and the outer hamstring muscles are acting and, because of contracture of the iliotibial band, flexion deformity of the knee and external rotation of the tibia on the femur ensue. By this operation the aforementioned deformities of the knee are remedied, and extensor power is restored to the thigh. The tensor fascia femoris muscle and the posterior portion of the gluteus maximus which inserts in the fascia lata, together with the biceps femoris muscles, are utilized to attain the desired extensor power.

The skin incision begins just below the greater trochanter and continues distally toward the middle of the dorsal surface of the thigh to the patella, it runs across the patella and ends on the lateral aspect of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. Reflection of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue to each side by blunt dissection exposes the fascia lata from the middle of the thigh to its inferior margin of the lateral surface. Proximally, the reflection is continued until the insertion of the gluteus maximus muscle into the fascia lata is adequately exposed. By retracting the lower skin flap laterally the tendon of the biceps is visualized; next the tendon above the head of the fibula is mobilized and  $\frac{3}{4}$  of its thickness is stripped free from its point of insertion in the head of the fibula. Dissection of the tendon continues proximally until the muscle fibers of the short head come into view; dissection of the long head continues upward leaving the short head behind. The long head is mobilized sufficiently to allow its displacement to the new position with ease. Separation of the long and the short heads is facilitated by the presence of a distinct line of cleavage between the two muscle bellies. The short head left in situ ensures against the development of genu recurvatum. Next the iliotibial band is made ready for transference. A narrow strip approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$

inch wide is freed by subperiosteal dissection from the tuberosity of the tibia, it extends upward across the knee joint to that portion of the iliotibial band which is well defined. Beginning 2 inches proximal to the knee joint the strip of fascia lata including the iliotibial band is widened gradually; this continues as far as the upper third of the thigh. It gains considerably in width as it nears the insertion of the gluteus maximus muscle; here it is stripped free up to the point where the fibers of the gluteus maximus insert into it. On the medial side the fascia is stripped up so as to include the tensor fascia femoris muscle.

A tube of fascia lata which will enclose the transplants is constructed and so placed that it will maintain the new extensors of the knee in a position approaching that of the quadriceps. The tube is made from the inner lip of the cut fascia lata by folding it upon itself toward the mesial aspect of the limb. It is so placed in the upper part of the thigh that it occupies a lateral position from which it continues gradually and obliquely toward the middle of the thigh as it approaches a point 3 inches proximal to the base of the patella. The free end of the iliotibial band enters the tube at the top; the biceps tendon enters it 2 inches from the top through a separate aperture. After the biceps emerges from the distal end of the fascial tube it is fastened to the iliotibial because its length is not sufficient to reach the patella. After the quadriceps tendon is divided in the mid line  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches above the patella both transplants are sutured to it. The terminal segment of the fascial transplant is divided into two strips, and each is passed through holes drilled in the patella. The wound is closed in the usual manner, and the limb is immobilized in a plaster-of-Paris cast extending from the toes to the groin. If some flexion contracture of the knee is still present at the end of the operation, only moderate force should be used to correct it; complete correction may



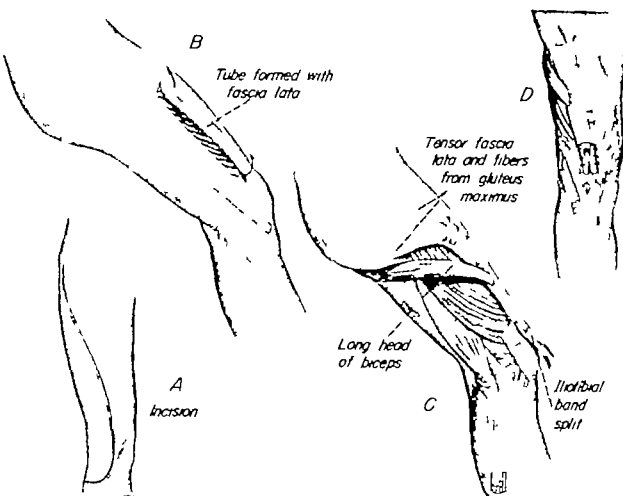


FIG 418 Transference of the tensor fascia femoris and the biceps femoris muscles to the patella. This method is employed in cases with quadriceps paralysis exhibiting a flexion and an external rotation deformity of the tibia on the femur resulting from contracture of the iliotibial band (Yount). (A) Incision. (B) Formation of fascial tube. (C) Depicts sites of entrance of the (1) iliotibial band into which are inserted the tensor fascia femoris and a portion of the gluteus maximus and (2) the long head of the biceps femoris muscle. (D) Method of attachment of the transplants to the patella and the patellar tendon.

the middle of the thigh in this step precautions must be taken not to injure the saphenous nerve which occupies a position in relation to the posterior border of the sartorius muscle. An X suture of silk is passed through the end of each transplant by means of a fascia carrier the iliotibial band is passed beneath the fascia lata so that its distal end emerges from the lower wound over the quadriceps tendon. Likewise the sartorius muscle and tendon are passed through a perforation made in the intermuscular septum between the sartorius and the quadriceps muscles. The end of the

tendon appears in the lower wound over the quadriceps tendon. The free ends of the transplants are now ready for anchorage with the knee extended and the thigh flexed 45° the tendon of the sartorius is fastened to the patellar tendon by silk sutures. The distal end of the iliotibial band is superimposed over the sartorius and it also is fixed to the patellar tendon. Both structures are tacked to one another by interrupted sutures. Finally the edges of the reflected aponeurosis of the patella are approximated over the transplants.

TENSOR FASCIA FEMORIS AND BICEPS

**MUSCLES (YOUNT) (Fig 418)** This operation was designed by Yount primarily for those cases wherein the quadriceps is paralyzed both the inner and the outer hamstring muscles are acting and because of contracture of the iliotibial band, flexion deformity of the knee and external rotation of the tibia on the femur ensue. By this operation the aforementioned deformities of the knee are remedied, and extensor power is restored to the thigh. The tensor fascia femoris muscle and the posterior portion of the gluteus maximus which inserts in the fascia lata together with the biceps femoris muscles are utilized to attain the desired extensor power.

The skin incision begins just below the greater trochanter and continues distally toward the middle of the dorsal surface of the thigh to the patella. It runs across the patella and ends on the lateral aspect of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. Reflection of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue to each side by blunt dissection exposes the fascia lata from the middle of the thigh to its inferior margin of the lateral surface. Proximally the reflection is continued until the insertion of the gluteus maximus muscle into the fascia lata is adequately exposed. By retracting the lower skin flap laterally the tendon of the biceps is visualized next to the tendon above the head of the fibula is mobilized and  $\frac{2}{3}$  of its thickness is stripped free from its point of insertion in the head of the fibula. Dissection of the tendon continues proximally until the muscle fibers of the short head come into view. Dissection of the long head continues upward leaving the short head behind. The long head is mobilized sufficiently to allow its displacement to the new position with ease. Separation of the long and the short heads is facilitated by the presence of a distinct line of cleavage between the two muscle bellies. The short head left in situ ensures against the development of genu recurvatum. Next the iliotibial band is made ready for transference. A narrow strip approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$

inch wide is freed by subperiosteal dissection from the tuberosity of the tibia, it extends upward across the knee joint to that portion of the iliotibial band which is well defined. Beginning 2 inches proximal to the knee joint, the strip of fascia lata including the iliotibial band is widened gradually, this continues as far as the upper third of the thigh. It gains considerably in width as it nears the insertion of the gluteus maximus muscle here it is stripped free up to the point where the fibers of the gluteus maximus insert into it. On the medial side the fascia is stripped up so as to include the tensor fascia femoris muscle.

A tube of fascia lata which will enclose the transplants is constructed and so placed that it will maintain the new extensors of the knee in a position approaching that of the quadriceps. The tube is made from the inner lip of the cut fascia lata by folding it upon itself toward the medial aspect of the limb. It is so placed in the upper part of the thigh that it occupies a lateral position from which it continues gradually and obliquely toward the middle of the thigh as it approaches a point 3 inches proximal to the base of the patella. The free end of the iliotibial band enters the tube at the top. The biceps tendon enters it 2 inches from the top through a separate aperture. After the biceps emerges from the distal end of the fascial tube it is fastened to the iliotibial because its length is not sufficient to reach the patella. After the quadriceps tendon is divided in the mid line  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches above the patella both transplants are sutured to it. The terminal segment of the fascial transplant is divided into two strips and each is passed through holes drilled in the patella. The wound is closed in the usual manner and the limb is immobilized in a plaster-of-Paris cast extending from the toes to the groin. If some flexion contracture of the knee is still present at the end of the operation only moderate force should be used to correct it. Complete correction may

not be attainable at this time. It may be necessary to defer final correction of the deformity until after complete healing has been achieved which is approximately 4 weeks. This is accomplished by means of a wedged cast.

**Transplantation of the Biceps Femoris Muscle.** Powerful extensor power is not essential to increase the stability of a knee joint with quadriceps palsy and to improve walking. In cases wherein the biceps is acting and insufficient flexor structures preclude transplantation of one of the medial hamstrings in combination with the biceps, the biceps alone may be converted into an extensor of the knee. The resulting enhancement in walking and in the stability of joint justifies the procedure. The technic is similar to the method described when the biceps is transplanted in combination with the semitendinosus.

#### DRAINAGE FOR SEPSIS OF THE KNEE JOINT

As stated previously in the section dealing with pyogenic arthritis of the knee joint, the use of chemotherapy and antibiotics has reduced considerably the number of cases of pyarthrosis which require surgical drainage. However, some infections, particularly some strains of staphylococci, are resistant to the aforementioned agents as well as to other conservative methods. In such instances drainage must be performed. On the other hand, since the advent of antibiotic agents, the author has not encountered a single case of acute gonorrheal arthritis of the knee joint which did not respond to the conservative measures comprising rest, hot packs, aspiration of pus and instillation of antibiotics. This has been the experience of other surgeons. If drainage is decided upon, the anterior routes are preferred to the posterior ones because the latter may be complicated by extension of the infection up and down along the fascial planes of the limb. Distention of the posterior compartments or a localized abscess in these regions makes it

mandatory that a posterior approach be employed.

In general, the knee joint cavity is divided roughly into anterior and posterior compartments. On the medial side the line of separation consists of the medial intermuscular septum and the tibial collateral ligament, and on the lateral side the dividing structures are the lateral intermuscular septum and the fibular collateral ligament. It becomes apparent that operative approaches to the anterior or the posterior compartments are devised in relation to the aforementioned septa. Knowledge of the anatomy of some of the bursae in the popliteal region facilitates approaches to the popliteal space. It was noted in Chapter 3, which deals with normal anatomy of the knee joint, that large bursae in this region frequently communicate directly with the joint cavity; they are the bursae located between the medial head of the gastrocnemius and the semimembranosus muscles. This anatomic feature is of clinical significance because the posterior region of the joint cavity may be drained adequately by opening the posterior walls of the bursae. Another natural perforation in the joint capsule is made by the popliteus tendon, an extension of the synovial lining of the joint projects on the anterior surface of the popliteus tendon and muscle. In the light of these anatomic characteristics, incisions on the posteromedial aspect of the tibia allow access to the anterior surface of the popliteus muscle, and if continued proximally following the popliteus tendon the posterolateral region of the knee is entered.

The author now employs continuous open drainage of the knee joint. If it becomes necessary to drain the joint cavity by one of the incisions described below, after thorough irrigation of the joint cavity the synovial capsule is closed and the overlying tissue layers are approximated loosely. Occasionally they are left open with a drain placed in the wound as far as the closed synovial layer. By so doing synovial fluid is not removed continuously from the joint.

As noted previously, the synovial fluid in its normal state has powerful antiseptic powers that should be utilized to combat the existing infection.

For academic reasons and for the sake of completeness the following technics designed for drainage of the knee joint are included as described by their originators.

**Anterior (Parapatellar) Incisions.** With the patient in the supine position and the knee flexed  $20^{\circ}$  to  $30^{\circ}$  two vertical skin incisions from 3 to 4 inches in length, are made on both sides of the knee they extend from the upper limits of the suprapatellar pouch to the upper borders of the tuberosi-

ties of the tibia. The incisions are deepened through the superficial fascia, the deep fascia, the aponeuroses of the vasti and the synovialis. Occasionally, it may be necessary to fasten the edges of the synovialis to the skin margins by interrupted sutures of fine plain catgut in order to prevent closure of the incisions and spread of the infection along tissue planes. Drains never should be introduced into the joint but are inserted down to the level of the joint.

**Posteromedial Approach (Klein)** (Fig 419) This approach is centered over the posteromedial aspect of the knee joint and follows natural planes of cleavage. It re-

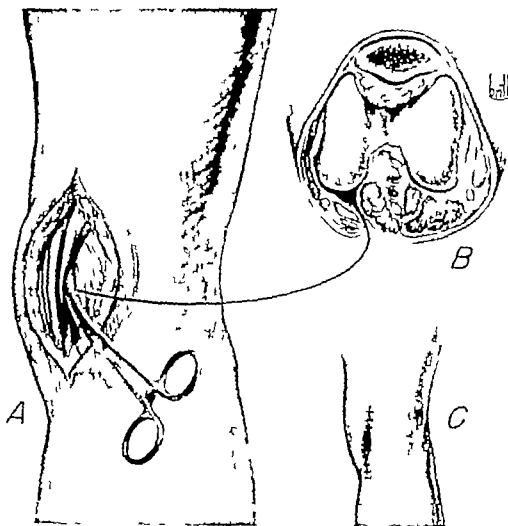


FIG 419 Technic of draining the knee joint through a posteromedial approach (Klein) (A) Instrument placed between the semitendinosus and the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscles indicates the point of entrance into the joint cavity (B) Depicts the same point of entrance in a cross section through the knee joint. (C) The synovialis is stitched to the skin to ensure drainage.

quires minimal amount of mobilization of vessels and nerves. Moreover, with the patient in the supine position, free dependent drainage of the inner and the posterior compartments is achieved readily.

The patient is placed in the prone position with the affected limb supported on sandbags so that it lies at a higher level than the opposite limb. The skin incision is approximately 4 inches in length and is placed over the inner side of the posterior aspect of the joint, the center of the incision is over the joint line. The incision runs parallel with the semitendinosus muscle on its outer side. After the superficial fascia is incised the incision is deepened by blunt dissection developing the interval between the semitendinosus and the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscles. Retraction of the muscle brings into view the deep fascia and the fat overlying the internal condyle of the femur. Immediately beneath these structures lies the capsule of the joint. Fascia capsule and synovialis are incised in the same line as the skin incision thereby exposing the interior of the posteromedial region of the joint cavity. The upper limits of the incision are bounded medially and superiorly by the semitendinosus and the semimembranosus muscles while its lower limit projects to the superior border of the popliteus muscle. To ensure adequate drainage the synovial membrane and capsule are stitched to the subcutaneous fascia. A drain is inserted in the cavity as far as the level of but not in the joint cavity. The skin edges around the aperture are approximated with interrupted sutures.

**Posteromedial and Posterolateral Approaches** (Henderson) (Fig. 401). These approaches described on page 661 provide adequate drainage of the posteromedial and posterolateral compartments of the knee joint. When used in combination or if Klein's incision is employed with Henderson's posterolateral approach through and through drainage of the joint is obtained.

Posterior mid line incisions as advocated

by Osgood, Brackett and Putti are rarely used to drain the posterior compartments of the knee joint.

**Postoperative Management.** It is essential to place the affected limb at complete rest after the surgical procedure and during the acute phase of a suppurative arthritis. This is achieved best by simple adhesive traction to the lower leg. In addition the method overcomes muscle spasm tends to keep the articular surfaces of the femur and the tibia separated and prevents contractions. At this time continuous applications of voluminous hot packs add much to the comfort of the patient and also provide some immobilization of the part. After the acute inflammatory process has subsided motion, both passive and active is started at the knee. All movements should be within the patient's tolerance of pain. Forceful motion or excessive early motion may be responsible for swelling pain and muscle spasm. The first active motion should be contraction of the quadriceps muscle pulling the patella upward. Later movement at the joint is begun. Restriction of function is enhanced by placing the limb in balanced suspension. Weight bearing should be prohibited until all evidence of inflammation has subsided and the patient has developed good extensor power in the quadriceps muscle. At this time weight bearing should be protected by the use of crutches, braces and cages should not be employed except as a last resort. In order to prevent flexion deformities at the knee a posterior splint is applied during the night. It may be necessary to wear the splint for many months. Underwater exercise is a useful adjunct in increasing the arc of motion and developing muscle tone. It is most essential to impress on the patient that progress is naturally slow and that whole-hearted co-operation is essential in order to restore joint function.

As noted previously when the author employs the incisions described the synovial capsule is closed and in addition to the aforementioned postoperative measures in

tensive antibiotic therapy is instituted, both locally and systemically. The plan carried out is similar to that described in the section dealing with infected wounds of the knee joint.

#### RESECTION OF UPPER END OF FIBULA

It now is established definitely that as much as three fourths of the proximal portion of the fibula may be sacrificed without any deleterious effects on function of the lower limb. On the other hand, the distal one fourth of the fibula comprises the outer component of the ankle mortise and contributes in a large measure to the stability of the ankle joint. Resection of the upper end of the fibula is justifiable in instances of chronic osteomyelitis of this portion of the bone; the procedure ensures a certain cure. Neoplastic lesions implicating this region are treated by resection of the bone; chief among these are giant-cell tumors and chondrosarcomas (Fig. 420). If the latter tumor is limited to the fibula, resection of the bone is the treatment of choice. On occasions the upper portion of the fibula may be transplanted to replace bone defects; the size and the configuration of the head of the fibula lend themselves to replacement for defects of the upper end of the humerus and for the distal end of the fibula. The author on three occasions, has utilized the upper end of the fibula to replace a defect in the upper proximal end of the humerus. In all instances the head of the humerus together with approximately one third of the shaft were resected because they were the seat of a giant-cell tumor. In another instance it was used to stabilize the wrist in a case of congenital absence of the distal one third of the radius.

**Operative Technic (Henry) (Fig. 421)** The exposure designed by Henry facilitates resection of the proximal portion of the fibula; the pertinent structures vulnerable in the operation are the common peroneal nerve and its 3 terminal branches. The parent trunk lies directly on the neck of the

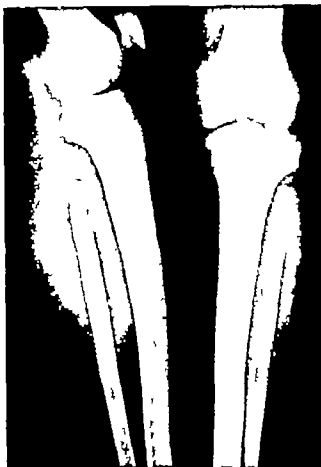


FIG. 420 Resection of the upper end of the fibula. The tip of the head of the fibula was left behind in order to preserve the attachment of the fibular collateral ligament. The lesion necessitating removal of the segment of bone was an osteoid osteoma in the head of the fibula.

fibula. In this position it gives off the recurrent tibial, the anterior tibial (deep branch) and the musculocutaneous branch (superficial branch). The musculocutaneous nerve continues distally directly on the shaft of the fibula between the anterior and the posterior fibers of origin of the peroneus longus. It becomes apparent that complete mobilization of the aforementioned nerves is essential in order to protect them from injury.

With the patient on the sound side and the knee of the affected limb flexed, a skin incision begins just behind the head of the fibula and continues vertically downward over the proximal two thirds of the shaft of

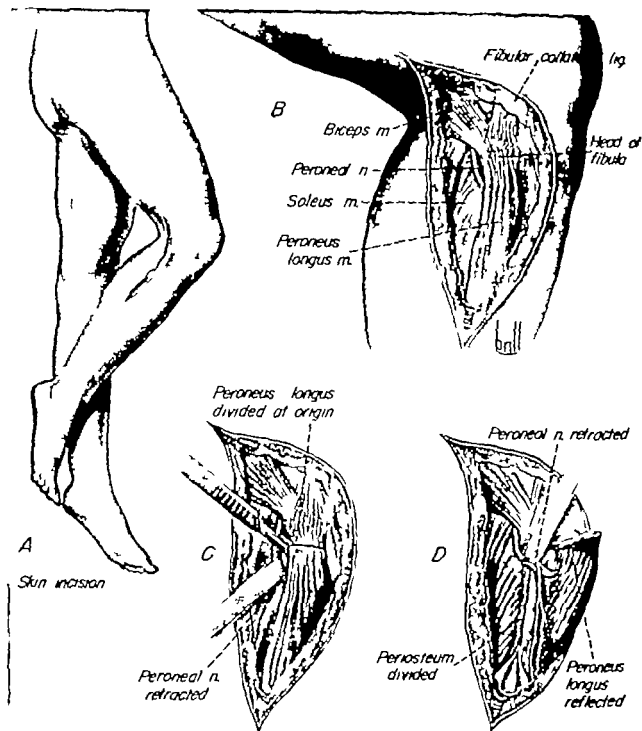


FIG. 421 (A and B) Exposure of the upper end of the fibula (Henry) (C and D) That portion of the peroneus longus overlying the nerve is severed; this step mobilizes the nerve sufficiently to allow its displacement anteriorly over the head of the fibula.

the fibula the proximal end of the incision is extended upward for 4 to 5 inches along the tendon of the biceps muscle. The superficial fascia is divided in the line of the skin incision; the deep fascia is first split along

the medial border of the biceps tendon and this line of division is extended vertically downward to the lower pole of the wound. In the proximal part of the wound the common peroneal nerve is identified as it

merges from under the inner border of the biceps tendon. The nerve is mobilized sufficiently to allow its displacement across the tendon and the head of the fibula. The groove normally occupied by the nerve leads to the plane of cleavage between the soleus posteriorly and the peroneal muscles anteriorly. In the next step, the nerve is displaced downward and with the scalpel blade directed upward, that portion of the peroneus longus overlapping the nerve is severed. This step mobilizes still further the main nerve trunk so that it can be displaced a considerable distance from the neck and the head of the fibula. Dissection to the shaft of the bone is carried out through the plane of cleavage between the sulcus and the peroneal muscles; the periosteum is divided, and the muscles are detached subperiosteally. Care must be executed when the muscles are stripped from the shaft; one is apt to injure the deep branches of the common peroneal nerve which lies on the deep surface of the peroneal muscles. In the upper portion of the wound these same branches lie in close proximity to the neck of the fibula. Finally the shaft of the bone is cut at the desired level with a Gigli saw and the head is freed by dividing all soft tissue attachments close to the bone. In order to provide an anchorage for the biceps tendon it may be fastened to the fascia lata and the capsule of the proximal tibio-fibular joint.

#### AMPUTATIONS

**General Considerations.** The aim of an amputation below through or above the knee joint, should be to provide the patient with a stump which can activate a serviceable prosthesis without discomfort. In order to achieve this goal the surgeon must possess adequate knowledge of the surgical anatomy of the region chosen as the site of amputation and he should be acquainted with the mechanics of the prosthesis to be worn. Much information has been made

available to us over the period of many years relative to (1) the best level for an amputation, (2) what constitutes the best tissue covering for a stump, (3) the pitfalls that must be avoided in selecting the amputation site, and (4) the type of stump to be constructed. The concentrated effort made during and after World War II in the numerous amputation centers established in this country and abroad to study the problems of the amputee in regard to his rapid rehabilitation has added much valuable data to our stock of knowledge on the subject of amputations. The author's experience in caring for hundreds of fresh casualties, many of which required severance of one or more members and his experience in the management of amputees after the war in one of the amputation centers leads him to believe that when possible an amputation should be performed by a surgeon of sufficient skill and experience to do a definitive primary operation. In this way the patient is spared numerous secondary operative procedures; the period of hospitalization is reduced, and rehabilitation is expedited. It is granted that in times of conflict the aforementioned idealistic requisite is impossible to attain; however in civilian life, if no contraindications exist, a patient can be given this service and any other course should be condemned.

One must not lose sight of the fact that the surgeon's responsibility does not terminate with severance of an individual's limb and management of the immediate post-operative period. It is the moral obligation of the operator to prepare the stump for an artificial limb to prescribe the best prosthesis for the stump that he constructed and finally to guide the patient through a period of training so that he attains maximum function and achieves adequate mental and emotional readjustment to his physical handicap. Only then is the amputation surgeon's work completed.

It is not within the scope of this section



to discuss in detail the many problems of amputation surgery. This information may be obtained in the numerous excellent works that have been published within the past decade on this subject. Slocum's *Atlas of Amputations* is a comprehensive study that provides valuable information. However, it is permissible at this time to enumerate the generally accepted indications for severance of a limb.

**Indications.** A limb that has no functional value should be deleted. This is especially true if severance of a useless limb will make it possible to construct a stump which can wear a prosthesis with comfort and enhance the over all efficiency of the individual. A functionless extremity may be the product of violent trauma, severe infections or it may be a congenital deformity.

Eradication of an extremity is justifiable in the face of an acute fulminating infection which is jeopardizing the patient's life. Since the advent of chemotherapy and antibiotic agents the aforementioned indication is encountered less frequently than prior to the period of their availability. Nevertheless occasionally rapidly spreading infections of an extremity are confronted which fail to respond to the conventional therapeutic and surgical measures. In such instances amputation of the limb is a life saving procedure. Gas gangrene is the most common offender in this category. Also the author has encountered 3 cases of diffuse fulminating tuberculosis—2 of the elbow and 1 of the knee joint—which were not amenable to control. Severance of the extremities became mandatory in order to save the patients' lives. Chronic osteomyelitis which has existed over many years and has failed to respond to the measures employed may have a deleterious effect on the patient's general physical status. Constant absorption of toxins from the affected limb may induce severe liver and renal damage. As a rule such limbs in addition to supplying continuously harmful toxins to the body are useless organs beyond the hope

of functional restoration. It becomes apparent that in the face of these circumstances amputation is warranted. In adults control of tuberculosis of the limbs with open sinuses and mixed infections by the usual measures may be impossible to attain. Radical surgery in these cases may be so extensive that a useless limb is the end product with no assurance that the pathologic processes are eradicated. Tuberculosis of the bones of the foot and the ankle is notorious for its resistance to the usual therapeutic measures. Not infrequently the devitalized tissues are invaded by pyogenic organisms producing greater sepsis and draining sinuses. In such cases, amputation of the foot at a level to provide a good stump which can wear a serviceable prosthesis is not only a judicious measure but also a humane one.

Neoplastic lesions implicating an extremity is a common etiologic factor responsible for severance of a limb. As pointed out in the chapter dealing with bone tumors in the region of the knee joint primary malignant lesions in a limb justify deletion of the extremity when there is hope that metastasis may be prevented. In the face of metastatic lesions elsewhere in the body amputation serves no purpose unless there are other circumstances to warrant the procedure. A limb may be rendered totally useless by metastatic involvement; moreover such an extremity may be the source of great discomfort. Amputation in such cases is employed as a palliative measure.

As pointed out by Slocum at times an extremity is so distorted as the result of trauma or of congenital origin that it is not acceptable to the patient. The rejection may be so profound that the presence of the limb may place the patient's mental equilibrium in jeopardy. In such instances removal of the part restores the patient's mental status to normalcy.

**Preferable Sites of Amputation and Other Pertinent Considerations.** If possible severance of a limb through the lower one third of the leg should be avoided. In

this region the circulation is poor, and the soft tissues do not lend themselves to the construction of a serviceable stump. Because of the circulatory deficiency, the stump is cold, cyanotic and frequently exhibits ulcerations of its soft tissue covering. Moreover, the resulting long stump is a poor mechanical organ to motorize a prosthesis, the repeated trauma inflicted to the distal end of the stump during walking results frequently in the formation of painful bursae and ulcerations of the skin. Its length interferes with a smoothly functioning ankle mechanism, therefore, a prosthesis must be made which is bulky about the ankle joint, this feature is objectionable to the patients, especially women.

Clinical experience reveals that preservation of the knee joint adds materially to the efficiency and the comfort of the patient when the stump is made to conform to specific requirements which permit wearing a comfortable and serviceable prosthesis. The ideal stump for below the knee amputations in the average adult is 7 inches in length measured from the superior anteromedial border of the tibial plateau to the end of the bone. This is not a weight bearing stump; the weight is borne on the expanded tuberosities of the tibia. Whereas earlier amputation surgeons attempted to provide the end of a stump with a cushion of muscle tissue and skin, it is now definitely established that such padding is of no functional value and even undesirable. Bulbous soft tissue masses at the end of a stump increase the difficulties of fitting an artificial limb and also are prone to develop circulatory disorders resulting in edema, local infection and ulceration of the tissues. Instead the stump should be symmetrical, tapering gently to a rounded end. No bony prominence should be present either at the end or the sides of the stump; the sharp anterior crest of the tibia should be shaved off to give the surface a rounded configuration. The scar should be located slightly posterior and approximately 2 to 4 cm. proximal to

the posterior margin of the end of the tibia, in this position it is spared undue pressure made by the back of the socket. Every effort should be made to provide the end of the stump with a covering of normal skin which is freely movable over the end of the tibia and the scar should not be adherent to the adjacent bone.

Although a stump 7 inches long is considered as the most efficient lever arm in below the knee amputations, occasions arise wherein it is impossible to construct such a stump. Nevertheless, every effort possible should be made to preserve the knee joint. A lower leg stump of 13½ inches can be fitted with a prosthesis which allows free normal action at the knee joint, a feature which permits greater control and efficiency of the artificial limb than is possible with an artificial knee joint. Up to 7 inches the efficiency of the lever arm increases progressively with its increase in length.

Stumps too short to activate a prosthesis, or when flexion deformities exist which defy correction, may be adapted to a bent knee prosthesis (kneeling leg<sup>2</sup>) or must be reamputated above the level of the knee joint. Bent knee amputations may be fitted with a prosthesis similar in mechanism to that employed for end bearing stumps above the knee joint. From a functional viewpoint the bent knee amputation provides a very serviceable stump with a broad weight bearing surface. It is an excellent amputation in laborers who are required to stand for long periods of time; rarely does it show evidence of circulatory disorders.

Some workers have recorded excellent results in amputations through the knee joint. Nevertheless, it is generally accepted that the unequal and bulbous condyles of the femur do not form a good weight bearing stump. The overlying skin is subjected to undue pressure and friction, resulting in frequent breakdowns. In addition, the unshapely configuration of the end of the stump makes it exceedingly difficult to fit a comfortable prosthesis; the artificial

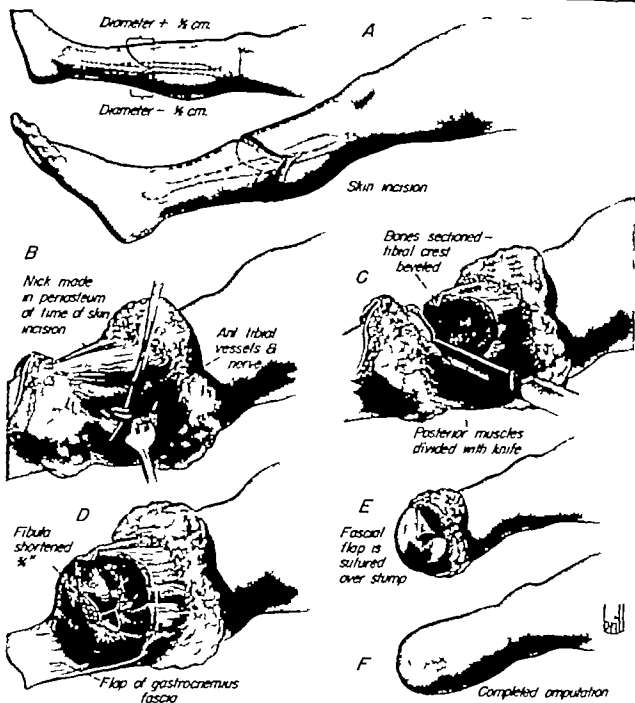


FIG. 422 (A to F) Steps in amputation through the middle third of the leg (Carnes)

limb is unsightly because it cannot be shaped to match the opposite limb. In children it is a justifiable procedure if the knee joint cannot be left intact. Since the lower epiphysis is responsible for approximately 70 per cent of the length of the femur, it becomes apparent that this important growth center is preserved in patients who

have not as yet achieved complete skeletal development.

There is considerable controversy relative to the disposition of the fibula in below the knee amputations. Some workers are convinced that the fibula is of no functional value in activating a prosthesis and that is the source of pain resulting from con-

stant irritation of the tissues between the tibia and the fibula and finally it increases the difficulties of fitting a prosthesis. These observers recommend either total excision of the fibula in all amputations through the upper one third of the leg or, if allowed to remain, a synostosis should be created between the two bones. Other surgeons, including the author are in total disagreement with the aforementioned view. As pointed out by Slocum the presence of the fibula is a distinct functional advantage, its triangular shape prevents the prosthesis from rotating, thus increasing the control of the stump. Also, a certain "spring action" between the tibia and the fibula which acts as a shock absorber protects the stump from undue pressure from an artificial limb. To facilitate fitting of a prosthesis the fibula should be sectioned from 1 to 2 inches proximal to the distal end of the tibia. In cases wherein the fibula is responsible for pain and disability resulting from excessive motion between it and the tibia or sensitive areas in overlying skin, the fibula should be resected. Its removal is also advantageous in all short below the knee amputations; this facilitates fitting of a comfortable prosthesis.

**Technics of Amputations Through the Middle Third of the Leg.** Numerous operations have been conceived for amputations at this level. The technics described in this section have proved to give satisfactory stumps capable of activating a prosthesis with efficiency. In all procedures each step should be worked out carefully before it is executed. Only in this manner can pitfalls be avoided and a useful stump obtained. The author prefers Carnes' amputation to all others; each step is performed under direct vision and if all details are observed meticulously an excellent stump is attained.

**AMPUTATION OF CARNES (Fig. 422)** The pertinent features of this operation are the following: (1) The skin flaps are of unequal length, the anterior being slightly longer than the posterior. (2) After the skin flaps

are cut each subsequent step proceeds from the anterior to the posterior aspects of the leg. (3) Each step is performed under direct vision.

The length of the skin flaps is determined in the following manner: the desired bone level is chosen, and the diameter of the leg at this level is measured. This step determines the surface area of the skin necessary to cover the end of the stump. The anterior flap is equal to the radius of the leg at the predetermined bone level plus 0.5 cm, whereas the posterior flap measures the radius minus 0.5 cm; hence the anterior flap is 1 cm longer than the posterior. A small incision in the skin below the bone level designates the length of each flap.

The skin incision for the anterior flap begins at the mid point of the medial surface of the leg at the intended bone level; it curves downward as far as the marker previously placed on the skin, then continues upward on the lateral aspect of the leg to a point corresponding to its medial level of origin. In order to establish a fixed reference point for future measurements the incision as it sweeps across the crest of the tibia is carried through the periosteum to the bone. The shorter posterior flap has its convexity directed downward and passes through the skin marker on the posterior surface of the leg. Next, both incisions are deepened to the fascia investing the muscles of the leg and the skin flaps are reflected upward by sharp dissection as far as the intended bone level. In dissecting the posterior flap from the fascia the sural veins and nerves are encountered; the nerves are pulled down and severed and the vein is cut and ligated. Inasmuch as the skin flap retracts, it is of no value in estimating the level of the saw cut through the tibia; this is determined by measuring off on the bone from the incision made previously. In the periosteum the original length of the flap at this level; a small saw cut is made in the periosteum and the bone on the anterior surface of the tibia.

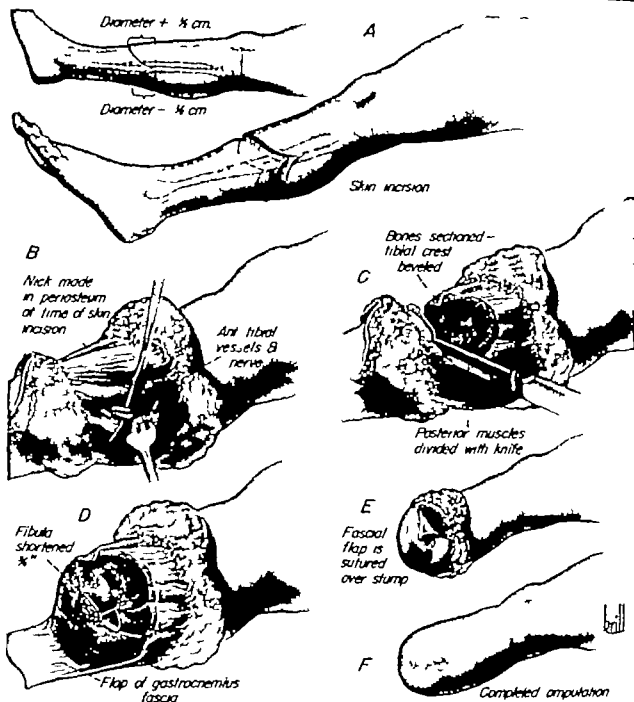


FIG. 422 (A to F) Steps in amputation through the middle third of the leg (Carnes)

limb is unsightly because it cannot be shaped to match the opposite limb. In children it is a justifiable procedure if the knee joint cannot be left intact. Since the lower epiphysis is responsible for approximately 70 per cent of the length of the femur, it becomes apparent that this important growth center is preserved in patients who

have not as yet achieved complete skeletal development.

There is considerable controversy relative to the disposition of the fibula in below the knee amputations. Some workers are convinced that the fibula is of no functional value in activating a prosthesis and that it is the source of pain resulting from con-

stant irritation of the tissues between the tibia and the fibula and finally it increases the difficulties of fitting a prosthesis. These observers recommend either total excision of the fibula in all amputations through the upper one third of the leg or, if allowed to remain, a synostosis should be created between the two bones. Other surgeons, including the author are in total disagreement with the aforementioned view. As pointed out by Slocum, the presence of the fibula is a distinct functional advantage: its triangular shape prevents the prosthesis from rotating, thus increasing the control of the stump. Also, a certain "spring action" between the tibia and the fibula which acts as a shock absorber protects the stump from undue pressure from an artificial limb. To facilitate fitting of a prosthesis the fibula should be sectioned from 1 to 2 inches proximal to the distal end of the tibia. In cases wherein the fibula is responsible for pain and disability resulting from excessive motion between it and the tibia or sensitive areas in overlying skin the fibula should be resected. Its removal is also advantageous in all short below the knee amputations, thus facilitating fitting of a comfortable prosthesis.

**Technics of Amputations Through the Middle Third of the Leg.** Numerous operations have been conceived for amputations at this level, the technics described in this section have proved to give satisfactory stumps capable of activating a prosthesis with efficiency. In all procedures each step should be worked out carefully before it is executed only in this manner can pitfalls be avoided and a useful stump obtained. The author prefers Carnes amputation to all others, each step is performed under direct vision, and if all details are observed meticulously an excellent stump is attained.

**AMPUTATION OF CARNES (Fig. 422)** The pertinent features of this operation are the following: (1) The skin flaps are of unequal length the anterior being slightly longer than the posterior. (2) After the skin flaps

are cut each subsequent step proceeds from the anterior to the posterior aspects of the leg. (3) Each step is performed under direct vision.

The length of the skin flaps is determined in the following manner: the desired bone level is chosen, and the diameter of the leg at this level is measured; this step determines the surface area of the skin necessary to cover the end of the stump. The anterior flap is equal to the radius of the leg at the predetermined bone level plus 0.5 cm, whereas the posterior flap measures the radius minus 0.5 cm; hence the anterior flap is 1 cm longer than the posterior. A small incision in the skin below the bone level designates the length of each flap.

The skin incision for the anterior flap begins at the mid point of the medial surface of the leg at the intended bone level. It curves downward as far as the marker previously placed on the skin then continues upward on the lateral aspect of the leg to a point corresponding to its medial level of origin. In order to establish a fixed reference point for future measurements the incision as it sweeps across the crest of the tibia is carried through the periosteum to the bone. The shorter posterior flap has its convexity directed downward and passes through the skin marker on the posterior surface of the leg. Next both incisions are deepened to the fascia investing the muscles of the leg and the skin flaps are reflected upward by sharp dissection as far as the intended bone level. In dissecting the posterior flap from the fascia the sural veins and nerves are encountered; the nerves are pulled down and severed and the vein is cut and ligated. Inasmuch as the skin flap retracts it is of no value in estimating the level of the saw cut through the tibia; this is determined by measuring off on the bone from the incision made previously in the periosteum the original length of the flap. At this level a small saw cut is made in the periosteum and the bone on the anterior surface of the tibia.

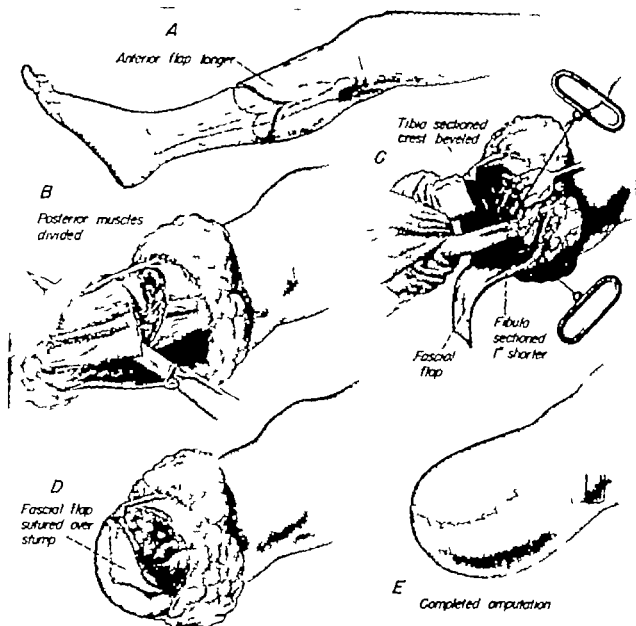


FIG. 423 (A to E) Steps in tendoplastic amputation (Kirk)

Along the lateral surface of the tibia lies a natural plane of cleavage. Into this interval a curved hemostat is placed. It is passed along the interosseous membrane onto the anterior surface of the fibula, emerging anterior to the peroneus brevis muscle. In the interval between the peroneus brevis and the extensor digitorum longus the superficial peroneal nerve is identified, drawn downward and divided. All muscles in the anterior compartment are sectioned  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch distal to the saw level. Upon retraction the proximal ends of the muscles will lie flush

with the bone level. In dividing the muscles care is taken to avoid injury to the anterior tibial vessels and nerves. These are identified and isolated. The vessels are doubly ligated and sectioned. The nerves are drawn downward and divided. In the next step the crest of the tibia is beveled. This is achieved by placing the saw  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch above the bone level and carrying it obliquely downward so that it crosses the bone level  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch anterior to the marrow cavity. By transverse saw cuts the tibia and the fibula are divided at the same level. Both bones are grasped

below the saw line by bone holding forceps and displaced downward and forward, this maneuver brings into view the posterior muscles of the calf.

Division of the posterior muscles is performed by a large amputation knife, beginning  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch distal to the bone level and passing obliquely backward and slightly upward until the aponeurosis of the gastrocnemius muscle is encountered. Then the knife is directed downward parallel with the deep surface of this structure until a fascial flap is attained sufficient in length to cover the end of the stump, then the aponeurosis is sectioned transversely. As the posterior muscles are divided the posterior tibial vessels are identified, isolated, doubly ligated and sectioned, the posterior tibial nerve is drawn downward and severed. In the final step the cut end of the fibula is exposed subperiosteally for a distance of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches proximal to the cut end of the tibia, at this level the fibula is divided transversely with a Gigli saw, the remaining periosteal sleeve is dissected free under direct vision so that bleeding from this source can be controlled readily. Both bone ends are made smooth with a bone file. The end of the stump closure of the wound is achieved by bringing forward the fascia of the gastrocnemius muscle and fastening it to the anterior muscle fascia and periosteum by interrupted sutures. If the muscle mass is bulky it may be trimmed by taking out a medial or lateral wedge before the fascia is sutured. The skin flaps are brought together and fixed by interrupted skin sutures. After adequate dry dressings are applied over the end of the stump gentle compression is made with a 3 inch elastic bandage extending from the end of the stump to above the knee. Further protection and immobilization to the part are provided by a posterior plaster splint reaching from the mid thigh to the anterior margin of the stump.

**TENDOPLASTIC AMPUTATION OF KIRK** (Fig. 423) The essential feature of this

procedure is the formation of a long anterior and a short posterior flap, the ratio being 3 to 2. In addition, the posterior flap comprises a thinned layer of muscle, tendon and fascial structures derived from the posterior aspect of the leg. The length of stump is measured from the point of insertion of the inner hamstring muscles.

With the patient in the supine position, the anterior skin incision starts at the mid point on the medial aspect of the leg just proximal to the intended bone level. It continues distally and laterally crossing the anterior surface of the leg then proceeds upward on the lateral aspect to a point corresponding to the one of origin on the medial side. The posterior flap is cut in a similar fashion. By sharp dissection the anterior flap is reflected slightly above the saw line, while the posterior flap is dissected proximally for  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch. The skin distal to the posterior incision is freed for 2 to 3 inches, exposing the aponeurosis of the gastrocnemius muscle. By a transverse cut the muscles in the anterior compartment of the leg are sectioned  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch distal to the bone level using a long amputation knife, the posterior calf muscles are transfixed behind the tibia and the fibula at the level of the saw line. The knife is drawn downward and backward through the posterior muscles. This maneuver creates a tongue-shaped flap comprising muscles, tendon and fascia. Its length should be sufficient to cover the end of the stump. One fourth inch proximal to the bone level the periosteum is sectioned circumferentially, except over the crest of the tibia where the line of division continues proximally for  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch. This allows beveling of the tibia. After the fibula is stripped of muscle attachments for a distance of 1 inch and the tibial crest is beveled beginning at a point  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch above the saw line the tibia is sectioned at right angles to the long axis of the leg and the fibula is divided by a Gigli saw 1 inch proximal to the end of the tibia. All bone surfaces and margins are made smooth with a bone file. The pos-



terior flap is now ready for final trimming. Sufficient muscle tissue is cut away from its anterior surface to form a thin flap measuring in thickness  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch at the base and  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch at the apex. The length of the flap should be sufficient to reach the muscle fascia and periosteum on the anterior aspect of the leg; all excess tissue is cut away. The anterior and the posterior tibial and the peroneal arteries are identified and doubly ligated; other large vessels are treated in a similar manner. The nerves of the leg are drawn downward cut and permitted to retract upward. Finally the posterior flap is approximated and sutured by interrupted sutures to the anterior muscle fascia and periosteum on the medial aspect of the tibia; the skin flaps are brought together and fixed by skin sutures.

Dry sterile gauze pads are placed over the end of the stump and uniform compression is made by a 3 inch elastic bandage enclosing the entire stump as far as the mid thigh. A posterior plaster splint is applied extending from the mid thigh to the anterior margin of the stump holding the knee in extension; this provides adequate immobilization and protection to the part until healing of the tissues is completed.

**Amputations Through the Upper Third of the Leg.** As recorded previously amputations through this level fail to provide a lever below the knee joint which possesses the efficiency comparable with amputations through the middle third of the leg. Nevertheless amputations at this level are predicated on the same principles as those through the middle third. Fitting of a prosthesis to the short stump is exceedingly difficult; moreover the stump has a tendency to lift itself out of the prosthesis. This is especially true if the hamstrings are left intact. As in amputations with a stump of ideal length weight is borne on the metaphyseal flare of the tibia; the fibula is of no functional value and its excision permits a better fit of the artificial limb. Construction of a short stump is difficult because of the

lack of adequate soft tissues. The suture line cannot be placed at will; however preferably it should be placed posteriorly or laterally, never on the anterior surface of the tibia where it will be subjected to pressure from the prosthesis. It may be extremely difficult to obtain sufficient fascial tissue to provide a covering for the end of the stump. If possible the posterior fascia of the gastrocnemius muscle should be utilized for this purpose; otherwise the fascia from the anterior and lateral aspects of the leg may be employed.

Clinical experience discloses that excision of the fibula is desirable in amputations at this level. It removal facilitates fitting of a prosthesis and also reduces the incidence of unfavorable sequelae such as the formation of painful bursae, painful areas on the stump resulting from a poor fit and even ulcerations of the stump. It is preferable to excise the fibula in toto from below at the time of the primary amputation. The tibia is treated in the usual manner. In order to increase the efficiency of the short stump as a lever and to facilitate fitting a prosthesis some surgeons (Blair and Morris) advocate severance of all the hamstring muscles at the level of the knee joint; the sartorius muscle is left intact. As a result of this procedure flexion at the knee is not seriously affected and recurvatum deformity does not ensue.

From the aforementioned remarks it becomes apparent that amputations through the upper third of the leg present many technical and mechanical problems. These problems differ in each individual case; their solution is dependent upon the skill of the operator and comprehension of the functional mechanics of the stump to be constructed and the prosthesis to be worn.

**Bent Knee Amputations.** As noted previously this type of stump is capable of great endurance and can be adapted readily to a prosthesis similar in design to that employed in end bearing amputations. It is less likely to develop the unpleasant com-

plications encountered so frequently in other end bearing stumps and is desirable if a peg leg is to be worn. On the other hand the unsightly appearance of the prosthesis in the region of the knee makes this stump undesirable in women. The indications for this amputation are instances wherein the lack of tissue precludes the formation of a satisfactory stump capable of utilizing the knee joint and amputation above the knee joint is contraindicated in the presence of flexion contractures of the knee which can not be corrected in growing children in whom a functioning below the knee stump cannot be salvaged and preservation of the distal femoral epiphysis is essential to ensure growth of the femur.

As in short below the knee amputations no special technic can be described. Each case must be dealt with as an individual problem. However the surgeon should strive to meet certain requisites. The knee must be flexed to a right angle, a stump measuring 1 to 2 inches below the popliteal space is sufficient, the anterior surface of the tibia which bears the weight must be covered by normal pliable skin and free of any bony projections, the popliteal space should be lined with normal skin and be free of scars and fibrous tissue and the suture line should be at the end of the stump.

**Disarticulation of the Knee Joint.** Disarticulation of the knee joint is not a popular procedure. Clinical experience discloses that a prosthesis is fitted with great difficulty to the bulbous end of the femur and unless the fit is a perfect one, areas on the stump which are subjected to pressure tend to break down. On the other hand Rogers pointed out some of the advantages of disarticulation if a satisfactory fit is attained. The broad end of the femur provides an excellent natural weight-bearing surface and is insensitive, the soft tissues covering the stump adapt themselves readily to weight bearing, the length of the limb is adequate to activate a prosthesis, the stump consist-

ing of the entire femur, retains in toto its muscular apparatus, thereby ensuring excellent control, the shape of the end of the stump allows some patients to wear a prosthesis without a pelvic band, circulation of the terminal region of the stump is excellent and normal length of the femur is ensured in children by preservation of the distal femoral epiphysis. The cases encountered by the author and recorded in Chapter 7 "Congenital and Acquired Deformities" support the aforementioned observations. In children this method should supplant above-the-knee amputations when no contraindications exist.

**TECHNIC (ROGERS)** The position of the surgeon is on the side opposite the extremity to be disarticulated, the patient lies in the supine position with the knee flexed. Two broad skin flaps are made—a long, anterior flap extending 1 inch distal to the tubercle of the tibia and a short posterior flap extending 1 inch distal to the flexor crease of the knee. Deep dissection is performed first in the medial aspect of the knee, the tendons of the 4 medial hamstring muscles are identified and sectioned close to the point of insertion. The popliteal fossa is now accessible, the popliteal artery and vein are isolated and doubly ligated and severed just distal to the origin of the superior geniculate arteries, the tibial nerve is located, drawn distally and sectioned. The deep fascia and the capsule of the joint are divided in the line of the skin incision, the deep incision continues across the patellar tendon close to the tibial tubercle. Now, the anterior flap comprises skin, patella, patellar tendon and synovial membrane. On the lateral aspect of the knee the biceps tendon and the iliotibial band are dissected free and divided close to their insertions, the peroneal nerve is readily identified, drawn down and severed. By reflecting the posterior flap upward the collateral and the cruciate ligaments are made accessible, these are divided close to their femoral attachments. Disarticulation is completed by

sectioning the heads of origin of the gastrocnemius muscle close to the posterior surface of the femur

Without undue tension the muscles of the thigh are attached to the end of the stump. The patella is treated in one of two ways: it may be mortised into a groove on the anterior surface of the femur or its articular cartilage is removed and its raw surface is opposed to a similarly prepared area on the femur to which it is fixed with a screw. The patellar tendon is drawn posteriorly within the intracondylar groove and fastened to the ends of the tendons of the hamstring muscles, the iliotibial band and the tendon of the sartorius are fixed to the fascial portion of the extensor apparatus. The synovial membrane and the articular cartilage remain intact. Finally the fascial layers and the skin flaps are approximated with interrupted sutures.

**End Bearing Amputations.** These amputations allow the patient to carry his full weight on the end of the stump. They differ from amputations of the thigh above the supracondylar region which are so designed that with a specially adapted prosthesis the greater part of the weight is borne on the tuberosity of the ischium. In order to construct a good functioning stump the surgeon must know the basic principles which ensure the successful creation of a functional stump. As pointed out by Slocum the stump should be of sufficient length to provide an efficient lever to control the limb. Amputations from the level of the knee joint to the supracondylar region meet this requirement; this is not true of amputations above the juncture of the middle and the lower thirds of the thigh. Locomotion is achieved by preservation of the muscular apparatus of the stump; this entails retaining the natural length of the individual muscles preserving their origin and providing an insertion to bone. Moreover the lateral surface must be able to transfer effectively the motor leverage of the stump to the artificial limb. An ideal stump can

propel, rotate and lift a prosthesis with ease. The end of the stump may be rounded or flat but in each instance the supporting surface should be smooth and parallel with the ground so that the load is distributed evenly and not concentrated on one small area. It becomes apparent that the greater the weight-bearing surface the less pressure is made per unit of surface and the greater the endurance of the soft tissue covering. The difficulty in fitting a prosthesis to a bulky bearing area, such as one encounters in disarticulations of the knee is somewhat counterbalanced by the advantages recorded previously of a large bearing end and the availability of skillfully and efficiently constructed artificial limbs. This difficulty becomes progressively less in amputations at higher levels in the supracondylar region. Depending on the technique employed the end of the bone may be covered by the quadriceps tendon, the patella or the patellar bed in the extensor fascia after the patella has been enucleated and possessing normal sensation and adequate blood supply. In the body there are certain tissues which are naturally designed to withstand outside pressure. If possible an attempt should be made to utilize this material as coverage for the end of the stump. Rogers enumerated these highly specialized tissues as follows: finely trabeculated cancellous bone surrounded by a thin cortex, and covered by either hyaline cartilage or adherent periosteum; the tendinous origins or insertions of muscles; secretory pouches such as joint cavities and bursae; areolar connective tissue and skin—the last two of a congenitally specialized variety.

**ROUNDED EPICONDYLAR TENOPLASTIC AMPUTATION (SLOCUM)** (Fig 424) The essential features of this operation are the creation of a broad bearing end which is rounded to facilitate fitting of an artificial limb and the apposition of the patellar bed apparatus to the end of the

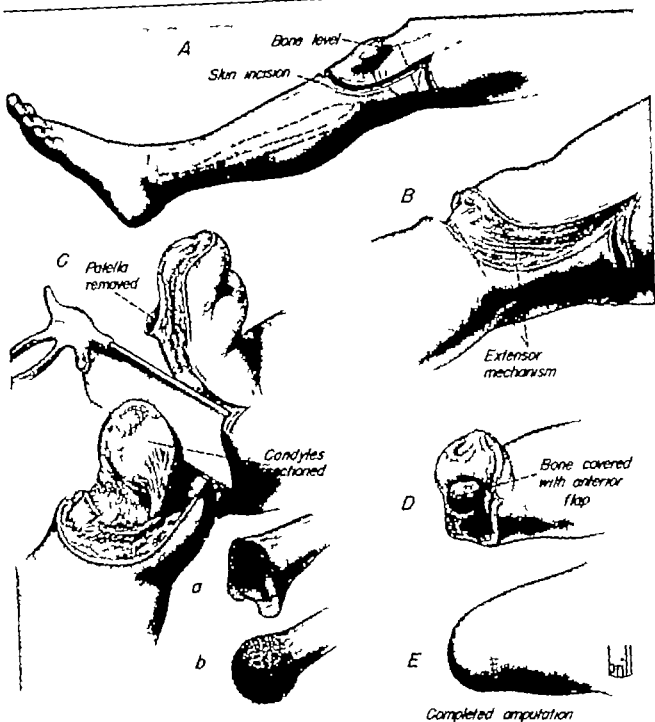


FIG. 424 (A to E) Steps in rounded epicondylar tendoplasty amputation (Slocum)

raw bone surface Slocum points out that the finished stump is similar to that produced by the Stokes Gritti procedure, but the hazard of failure of fusion between the femur and the patella is eliminated.

With the patient in the supine position the anterior skin incision begins on the medial aspect of the leg opposite the adductor tubercle of the medial epicondyle; it continues distal across the joint line, then

swings laterally, crossing the front of the knee at the level of the insertion of the patellar tendon to the tubercle of the tibia. Then it continues proximally along the lateral aspect of the knee to terminate at the upper border of the lateral epicondyle of the femur. The posterior incision joins the two ends of the anterior incision forming a gentle arc directed downward; the resulting posterior flap measures  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch. The

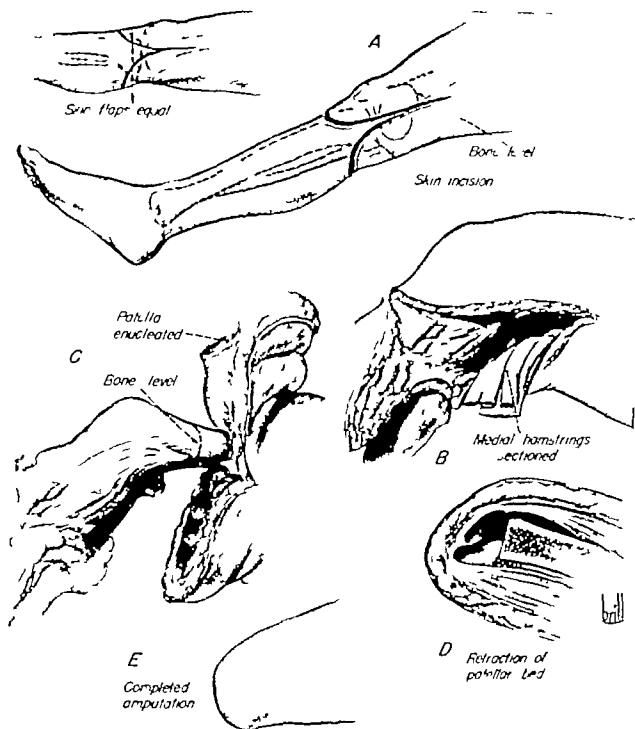


FIG. 425 (A to E) Steps in supracondylar amputation (Callander)

anterior aspect of the joint is exposed by deepening the incision through the fascia and the tendon. The anterior flap is now reflected upward and the patella is enucleated by sharp dissection. All excess fat and the synovial membrane about the patellar bed are trimmed away. At the level of the

femoral condyles the bone is sectioned so that the weight bearing surface is parallel with the ground when the patient is in the erect position. The resulting base of the femur is broad and irregular. It must be rounded and smoothed until it is roughly hemispherical in shape except for its broad

flattened base. This is achieved by beveling the edges of the cut bone at an angle of  $45^\circ$  beginning  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch from the periphery. All sharp edges and spicules of bone are smoothed with a bone file. By displacing downward the severed femoral condyles, the soft tissues on the posterior aspect of the thigh are brought into view. The popliteal artery and vein are identified, isolated, doubly ligated and divided; the sciatic nerve (or the tibial and the common peroneal nerves) is divided above the level of the end of the bone. A fine ligature around the nerve will prevent bleeding from the small vessel which lies with the nerve trunk. Next the hamstring muscles are dissected free and severed at the bone level. The posterior fascia of the thigh is now clearly visualized, it is sectioned in an anteroposterior direction  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch distal to the retracted skin of the posterior flap. The tourniquet is now released and all bleeding points are controlled.

When the anterior flap is drawn posteriorly, the patellar bed fits snugly over the end of the bone; the tendinous portion of the flap is fixed to the posterior fascia by interrupted sutures. The skin flaps are approximated by interrupted skin sutures. A drain is placed in the depth of the wound; dry sterile gauze dressings are applied over the stump and compression is made by an elastic bandage over sheet wadding. After 48 to 72 hours the drain is removed and compression by elastic bandaging is continued until shrinkage of the stump is complete.

**CALLANDER AMPUTATION (Fig. 425)** Clinical experience discloses that this is the procedure of choice for peripheral vascular disease necessitating an amputation above the level of the foot. The essential features of the procedure are: extra long anterior and posterior flaps of equal length; provision for adequate drainage from the end of the stump; severance of all muscles through their tendinous insertions; and the absence of any deep sutures. Although the flaps ap-

pear to be unusually long at the end of the operation, subsequent retraction of the tissues leaves no redundant or bulky masses over the stump. The posterior tissues retract a greater distance than the anterior, hence drawing the suture line proximally on the posterior aspect of the stump. No tourniquet is required in this amputation, because it is performed through vascular planes.

The patient is placed in the supine position, a sandbag under the popliteal space supports the limb and flexes the knee  $150^\circ$ . The surgeon takes his place on the side of the operating table opposite the leg to be amputated. Starting on the medial aspect of the thigh 3 fingerbreadths above the medial femoral condyle, the skin incision passes distally in the interval between the vastus medialis and the sartorius muscles; this groove is readily discernible with the knee flexed. The incision swings downward and outward to the anterior aspect of the upper end of the tibia just distal to the insertion of the patellar tendon into the tubercle of the tibia. At this point the thigh is rotated medially and a second skin incision is made on the lateral aspect of the thigh beginning 3 fingerbreadths above the lateral condyle of the femur, it continues downward and inward in the anterior region of the groove between the tendinous fascia lata and the biceps femoris tendon and joins the medial incision over the tibial tubercle. Similar incisions are made on the posterior aspect of the leg, outlining a posterior flap equal in length to the anterior; the distal point of the posterior incision lies at the mid line of the calf behind the tibial tubercle. Next, both incisions are carried down to the level of the fascia. Now the limb is rotated externally and the medial fascia is divided. All the inner hamstring muscles are identified and freed by blunt dissection; the tendons are severed at their tibial insertions in an anteroposterior direction: first the sartorius, then the gracilis, the semimembranosus and the semitendinosus; also, the tendinous portion of the adductor magnus

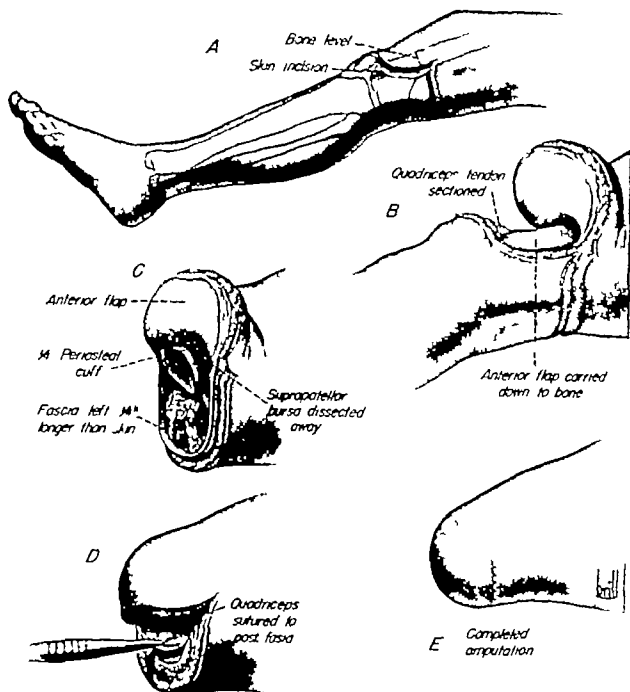


FIG. 426 (A to E) Steps in periosteal supracondylar tendoplastic amputation (Kirk)

muscle is divided at its point of insertion into the adductor tubercle. The femoral artery and vein are isolated by finger dissection, clamped, doubly ligated, and divided at the most distal point possible in the popliteal fossae. The sciatic nerve (or its branches, the tibial and the common peroneal nerves) is identified, freed of surrounding areolar tissue, and sectioned. A fine

ligature around the end of the nerve ensures against bleeding from the small vessel found in its substance. The limb is now rotated internally, and the deep fascia on the lateral aspect of the thigh, together with the fibers of the fascia lata, are sectioned; the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle is dissected free and severed at its point of insertion into the head of the fibula. The posterior

incision is carried to the aponeurosis of the gastrocnemius muscle. With the knee in the extended position the anterior incision is deepened through the capsule, the synovial membrane and the patellar tendon in the line of the skin incision. The resulting anterior flap comprising the extensor fascia, the patella and the patellar tendon is reflected upward by sharp dissection the patella is removed from its bed, the synovial lining is left intact. Immediately proximal to the adductor tubercle the femur is sectioned transversely, at this level the transverse diameter of the femur approaches roughly that of the patellar bed in the extensor apparatus the margins of the cut bone end are made smooth with a bone file. Both flaps now extend approximately one or more inches distal to the bone level, they are brought together loosely and approximately by 4 or 6 interrupted sutures. The remarkable feature of this procedure is the rapidity with which the flaps retract within 7 to 10 days the flaps fit the end of the bone snugly and the suture line is pulled upward on the posterior aspect of the stump by the hamstring muscles. After the stump is covered with dry sterile dressings a posterior plaster splint is applied. For several days considerable serous material drains from the wound requiring daily dressings.

**PERIOSTEAL SUPRACONDYLAR TENOPLASTIC AMPUTATION (KIRK)** (Fig. 426) The distinguishing features of this amputation are the creation of a long anterior and a short posterior flap in the relationship of 4 to 1 the bone is sectioned  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches above the articular surface on the anterior aspect of the femur and forms a tapering conical stump to which a prosthesis can be fitted readily. Beginning on the medial aspect of the thigh just proximal to the intended bone level and at a point midway between the anterior and the posterior surfaces of the femur the skin incision continues distally and outward crossing the anterior aspect of the thigh just distal to the base of the patella it curves proximally

on the midlateral aspect of the thigh to terminate opposite the starting point on the medial aspect of the thigh. The posterior skin flap is made by joining the upper ends of the anterior incision by an incision with a convexity directed downward the flap measures in length at its most distal point one fourth the length of the anterior flap. After both skin incisions are carried down to the underlying fascia the anterior incision is deepened to the bone slightly above the line of the retracted skin, the quadriceps tendon is sectioned at its insertion into the patella. The resulting anterior flap, comprising skin and musculotendinous tissue is reflected upward, exposing the synovial lining and the suprapatellar pouch, these structures are removed by sharp dissection.

On a line  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch below the retracted skin the posterior fascia of the thigh is sectioned the remaining posterior soft tissues, consisting mostly of muscles, are severed to the bone so that their proximal cut ends lie at the predetermined bone level the flap is then reflected upward. Before the bone is sectioned a circular cut is made in the periosteum at the saw level, and a  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch periosteal cuff is excised. The bone is sectioned transversely in such a manner that its cut surface parallels the ground when the patient is standing. To accomplish this the normal deviation of the femur must be taken into consideration. Next the femoral artery and vein are identified clamped doubly ligated and cut the sciatic nerve (or its branches, the tibial and the common peroneal nerves) is isolated drawn downward and cut. A fine ligature around the nerve will control any bleeding from within its substance all other nerves are pulled down cut and allowed to retract. If a tourniquet is employed it is now released and all bleeding points are controlled. Closure is achieved by approximating the fasciae of the two flaps by interrupted sutures. If the amputation is performed correctly the quadriceps tendon falls directly over the end of the bone. The skin edges are closed



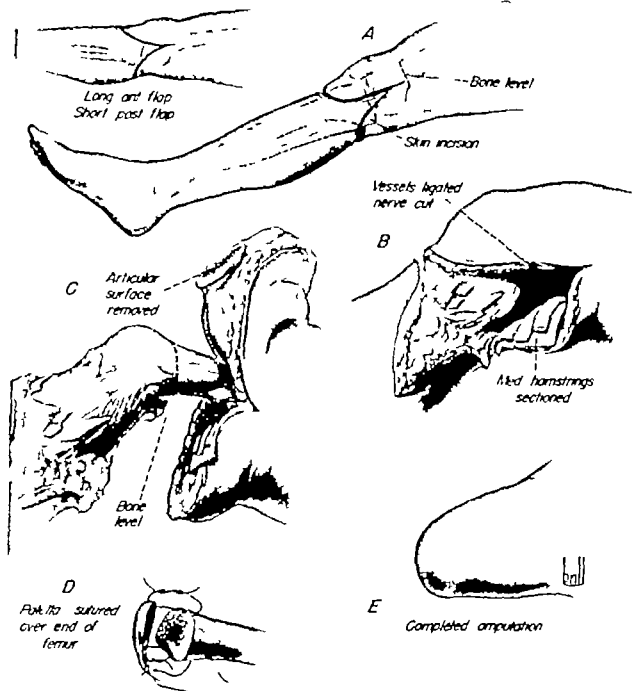


FIG. 427 Osteoplastic amputation (Stokes Gritti)

with interrupted skin sutures and drains are inserted on both ends of the wound (these are removed at the end of 48 to 72 hours). The stump is covered with sterile dry gauze dressings and compression is made by elastic bandages.

**OSTEOPLASTIC AMPUTATION (STOKES GRITTI)** (Fig. 427). In the United States this amputation is not performed fre-

quently; however the Canadians prefer this to all other types of end bearing amputations. The chief objection to the procedure is frequent failure to achieve bony union between the end of the femur and the patella. Weight bearing is made directly on the anterior surface of the patella.

Beginning at a point midway between the anterior and the posterior surfaces of the

thigh and 1 inch proximal to the base of the patella, the skin incision curves distally to a point  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch below the apex of the patella, it continues across the front of the knee joint and swings upward on the medial aspect of the thigh to terminate 1 inch above the superior border of the patella. By connecting the upper ends of the anterior incision the posterior flap is formed. It measures approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch at its most distal point in the popliteal space. The anterior incision is carried into the joint, dividing the capsule, the patellar tendon and the synovial membrane. The resulting flap is reflected upward. Next, any redundant synovial tissue is trimmed away, and the posterior one half of the patella is removed. This includes the articular cartilage of the patella and a section of the subchondral bone. After the posterior skin flap is retracted upward the muscles are sectioned in a slightly oblique plane, beginning proximally near the skin and ending distally immediately above the condyles of the femur. Next the femoral vessels are identified, clamped, doubly ligated and sev-

ered, the sciatic nerve (or its branches) is drawn downward and divided, a fine ligature is passed around the nerve end to control postoperative bleeding.

In the supracondylar region a level is chosen the base of which corresponds in size to that of the patella, at this site the femur is divided transversely in a plane parallel with the ground when the patient is standing. The anterior flap is drawn posteriorly over the stump so that the two raw bony surfaces are in apposition. The patella is fixed to the end of the femur by 2 stout catgut sutures, one passing anteriorly and one posteriorly through drill holes made in both bones. The patellar tendon and the periosteum on the posterior surface of the femur are approximated by interrupted sutures. The skin edges are closed by interrupted skin sutures. A drain is inserted into either side of the wound. After the stump is covered with sterile gauze dressings an elastic bandage is applied from the end of the stump to the groin, making uniform compression. The drains are removed at the end of 48 to 72 hours.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abbott, L. C. and Carpenter W. F. Surgical approaches to the knee joint, *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 27: 277, 1945.
- Abbott, L. C. and Gill, G. G. The use of cancellous bone grafts in orthopedic surgery. *Brunn, Med. Surg. Tributes*, p. 1, 1942.
- . Surgical approaches to the epiphyseal cartilages of the knee and ankle joints. *Arch. Surg.* 46: 591, 1943.
- Albee, F. H. *Bone Graft Surgery*, Philadelphia: Saunders, 1915.
- . Original features in arthroplasty of the knee with improved prognosis. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 47: 312, 1928.
- . Principles of arthroplasty. *J.A.M.A.* 96: 245, 1931.
- . Original features of arthroplasty of the hip and knee. *J.A.M.A.* 101: 1694, 1933.
- Wilson, Nathaniel. Tuberculosis of the knee: the importance of diagnosis. *J.A.M.A.* 83: 750, 1924.
- Allison, N. and Brooks. Ankylosis: an experimental study. *J.A.M.A.* 64: 391, 1915.
- Annandale, T. Care of loose cartilages recovered from the knee joint by direct incision with antiseptic precautions. *Lancet* 2: 167, 1849.
- Baer, W. S. Preliminary report of the use of animal membrane in producing mobility in ankylosed joints. *Am. J. Orth. Surg.* 7: 121, Discussion 102, 1909.
- . Arthroplasty with the aid of animal membrane. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 16: 194, 171, 1918.
- Barton, J. R. On the treatment of ankylosis by the formation of artificial joints. *North Am. M. & S. J.* 3: 279, 1827.
- Bennett, G. E. Lengthening of the quadriceps tendon. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 4: 279, 1922.
- . The use of fascia for the re-enforcement of relaxed joints. *Arch. Surg.* 13: 655, 1926.
- Bick, E. M. *Source Book of Orthopedics*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1937.

- Blair H C and Morris H D Conservation of short amputation stumps by tendon section, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 28 42 1946
- Bosworth, D M An operation for meniscectomy of the knee *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1113 193
- Posterior approach to the femur *J Bone & Joint Surg* 26 637 1944
- Knee fusion by the use of a three flanged nail *J Bone & Joint Surg* 28 550 1946
- Brackett E G and Hall C L Osteochondritis dissecans *Am J Orthop. Surg* 15 9 191
- Brackett E G and Osgood, R B Popliteal incision for the removal of "joint mice" in the posterior capsule of the knee joint: a report of cases *Boston M & S J* 165 975 1911
- Bradford, E. H Tenoplastic surgery *Ann. Surg* 26 153 1897
- Bradford, E. H and Lovett R. W Treatise on Orthopaedic Surgery New York, Wood 1911
- Brantigan O C., and Voshell A. F The mechanics of the ligaments and menisci of the knee joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 23 44 1941
- The tibial collateral ligament its function its bursae and its relation to the medial meniscus *J Bone & Joint Surg* 25 121 1943
- Brinton J H On amputation at the knee-joint and at the knee *Am J M Sc* 55 305 1868
- Brittain H A. Architectural Principles in Arthrodesis Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1942
- Brodhurst B E Detached portion of semi lunar cartilage removed from knee-joint *St George's Hosp Rep* 2 141 186
- Brooke R. The treatment of fractured patella by excision A study of its morphology and function *Brit J Surg* 24 33 1937
- Bruns P Die Luxation der Semilunarknorpel des Kniegelenks *Beitr z klin. Chir* 9 435 1892
- Callander C L Tendinoplastic amputation through femur at knee further studies *JAMA* 110 113 1938
- Surgical Anatomy Ed. 2 Philadelphia and London, Saunders 1939
- Campbell W C Arthroplasty of the knee *Am J Orthop Surg* 3 430 1921
- Arthroplasty of the knee *Ann Surg* 80 83 1924
- The present status of arthroplasty *Surg Gynec & Obst* 41 843 1925
- Physiology of arthroplasty *Joint Surg* 13 223 1931
- Repair of the ligaments *Surg Gynec & Obst* 62 964 1936
- Operative Orthopaedics St. Louis Mosby 1939
- Interposition of vitallium plates in arthroplasties of the knee preliminary reports *Am J Surg* 47 639 1940
- Carell, W B Use of fascia lata in knee-joint in stability *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1018 1937
- Cave E. F Combined anterior-posterior approach to the knee joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 17 427 1935
- Chandler F A. Re-establishment of normal leverage of the patella in knee flexion deformity in spastic paralysis *Surg Gynec. & Obst.* 57 523 1933
- Chapchal, G Intramedullary nailing for arthrodesis of the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 30-A, 28 1948
- Charnley J C Positive pressure in arthrodesis of the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 30-B 4/8 1948
- Cleveland, Mather Operative fusion of the unstable or flail knee due to anterior poliomyelitis. A study of the late results *J Bone & Joint Surg* 14 525 1932
- Cleveland, Mather and Smith A D Fusion of the knee joint in cases of Charcot's disease report of four cases *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 849 1931
- Colonna P C Hamstring transplantation for quadriceps paralysis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 5 472 1923
- Coonse K. D., and Adams, J D A new operative approach to the knee joint *Surg Gynec & Obst* 77 344 1943
- Crego C. H Jr., and Fischer F J Transplantation of the biceps femoris for the relief of quadriceps femoris paralysis in residual poliomyelitis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 515 1931
- Cubbins W R Conley A. H Callahan, J J and Scuderi C S A new method of operating for the repair of ruptured cruciate ligaments of the knee joint *Surg Gynec & Obst* 54 299 1932
- Devine H. G Exposure of the knee-joint *Brit J Surg* 19 306 1931
- Dickson F D The mobilization of ankylosed joints by operation *J Missouri M A* 20 266 1923
- Drobnick T Über die Behandlung der Knie-Lähmung mit Hilfe der Funktionstheilung und Fügung der Muskeln, *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Chirurgie* 43 473 1896
- F — Operative procedure suggested for ligaments of knee joint *Arthroplasty* 766 1920.
- Arthroplasty of the temporoposterior

- of tantalum foil preliminary report J Bone & Joint Surg 28 603 1946.
- Internal contact splint, J Bone & Joint Surg 30 A 40 1948
- Eloesser L. On sites and types of amputation and exarticulation together with some notes on technic, S Clin. North America 13 9 1933
- Erkes, F Weitere Erfahrungen mit physiologischer Schnittführung zur Eröffnung des Kniegelenks Beitr z klin. Chir 147 221 1929
- Fick, R A Anatomie und Mechanik der Gelenke unter Berücksichtigung der beweglichen Muskeln in Bardeleben von Karl Handbuch der Anatomie des Menschen, Jena, G Fischer 1911
- Fisher A. G. T. A study of loose bodies composed of cartilage or of cartilage and bone occurring in joints with special reference to their pathology and etiology Brit J Surg 8 493 1920-21
- Internal Derangements of the Knee Joint, New York Macmillan, 1924
- Manipulative Surgery London, Lewis 1925
- A new method of approach to the semilunar cartilages of the knee-joint, Lancet 2 1407 1931
- Gallie W E and Le Mesurier A. B The repair of injuries to the posterior crucial ligament of the knee joint Ann. Surg. 85 592 1927
- Galloway H. P H. The patellar bone graft in excision of the knee Am J Orthop. Surg 15 104 191
- Giangrasso G. Plastiche con lamina di gomma in lesioni articolari sperimentali, Ann. Ital. Chir 19 289 1940
- Gill A B Operation for correction of paralytic genu recurvatum J Bone & Joint Surg. 13 49 1931
- Giordano Sopra un caso di lussazione antica della cartilagine semilunare con corpo mobile articolare Arch. ortop 9 241 1892
- Girdlestone G R The pathology and treatment of tuberculosis of the knee joint, Brit J Surg 19 488 1932
- Goldthwait J E Tendon transplantation in the treatment of paralytic deformities Boston M & S J 134 29 1896
- Knee joint surgery for non-tuberculous conditions Boston M. & S. J 286 1900
- Slipping or recurrent dislocation of the patella Boston M. & S. J 150 169 1904
- Grant J C B An Atlas of Anatomy Vol. 1 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1943
- Groves E W H Operation for the repair of the cruciate ligaments Lancet 2 674 1917
- The cruciate ligaments of the knee joint their function rupture and operative treatment of the same Brit. J Surg 7 505 1920
- Arthroplasty Brit. J Surg 11 234 1923
- Hampton O P Jr The management of penetrating wounds and suppurative arthritis of the knee joint in the Mediterranean Theatre of Operations J Bone & Joint Surg 28 659 1946
- Observations on the management of suppurative arthritis of the knee joint, Am. J Surg 74 631 1947
- Hark, F W Arthroplasty of the knee in Am Acad. Orthop. Surgeons Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Vol. 2 p 336 Ann Arbor Mich. Edwards 1944
- Harmon P H. Surgical treatment of the residual deformity from suppurative arthritis of the hip occurring in young children, J Bone & Joint Surg 24 576 1942
- Arthroplasty of the hip for osteoarthritis utilizing foreign body cups of plastic, Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 76 347 1943
- Harmon, P H., and Adams C O Pyogenic coxitis end results and considerations of diagnosis and treatment Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 78 371 1944
- Hass J Functional arthroplasty of elbow and knee in Am. Acad. Orthop. Surgeons Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Vol. II p 340 Ann Arbor Mich. Edwards 1944
- Hatt R. N The central bone graft in joint arthrodesis J Bone & Joint Surg 22 393 1940
- Hauser E. D IV Total tendon transplant for slipping patella new operation for recurrent dislocation of patella Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 66 199 1938
- Heineck, A. P The modern operative treatment of fractures of the patella Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 9 177 1909
- Henderson, M S What are the real results of arthroplasty? Am. J. Orthop. Surg 16 30 1918
- Posterolateral incision for the removal of loose bodies from the posterior compartment of the knee joint, Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 33 698 1921
- Bucket handle fractures of semilunar cartilages J.A.M.A. 90 1359 1928
- Derangements of the knee joint, South. Surgeon 3 123 1934
- Henderson, M S., and Fortin H. J Tuberculosis of the knee joint in the adult J Bone & Joint Surg 9 700 1927
- Henry A K Exposures of Lone Bones and Other Surgical Methods Bristol, Wright 1927

- Blair H. C., and Morris H. D. Conservation of short amputation stumps by tendon section, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 28 427 1946
- Bosworth, D. M. An operation for meniscectomy of the knee *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1113 1937
- Posterior approach to the femur *J Bone & Joint Surg* 26 68, 1944
- Knee fusion by the use of a three-flanged nail *J Bone & Joint Surg.* 28 550 1946.
- Brackett E. G. and Hall C. L. Osteochondritis dissecans *Am. J Orthop. Surg* 15 79 1917
- Brackett E. G., and Osgood R. B. Popliteal incision for the removal of "joint mice" in the posterior capsule of the knee joint: a report of cases, *Boston M. & S J* 165 9/5 1911
- Bradford, E. H. Tenoplastic surgery *Ann Surg* 26 153 1897
- Bradford, E. H. and Lovett, R. W. *Treatise on Orthopaedic Surgery* New York Wood, 1911
- Brantigan, O. C., and Vossell, A. F. The mechanics of the ligaments and menisci of the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 23 44 1941
- The tibial collateral ligament: its function, its bursa and its relation to the medial meniscus *J Bone & Joint Surg* 25 121 1943
- Brinton, J. H. On amputation at the knee-joint, and at the knee, *Am. J. M. Sc.* 55 305 1868
- Brittain, H. A. *Architectural Principles in Arthrodesis* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins, 1942
- Brodhurst B. E. Detached portion of semi-lunar cartilage removed from knee-joint, *St. George's Hosp. Rep* 2 141 1867
- Brooke R. The treatment of fractured patella by excision: A study of its morphology and function *Brit J Surg* 24 733 1937
- Bruns, P. Die Luxation der Semilunarknorpel des Kniegelenks *Beitr z klin. Chir* 9 435 1892
- Callander C. L. Tendinoplastic amputation through femur at knee: further studies *J.A.M.A.* 110 113 1938
- *Surgical Anatomy* Ed 2 Philadelphia and London, Saunders, 1939
- Campbell W. C. Arthroplasty of the knee *Am J Orthop Surg* 3 430 1921
- Arthroplasty of the knee *Ann. Surg* 80 88 1924
- The present status of arthroplasty *Surg. Gynec. & Obst* 41 843 1925
- Physiology of arthroplasty *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 223 1931
- Repair of the ligaments of the knee, *Surg. Gynec. & Obst* 62 964 1936
- *Operative Orthopaedics*, St. Louis Mosby 1939
- Interposition of vitallium plates in arthroplasties of the knee: preliminary reports, *Am J Surg* 47 639 1940
- Carell, W. B. Use of fascia lata in knee-joint instability *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 1018 1937
- Cave E. F. Combined anterior-posterior approach to the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 17 427 1935
- Chandler F. A. Re-establishment of normal leverage of the patella in knee flexion deformity in spastic paralysis *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 57 523 1933
- Chapchal, G. Intramedullary pinning for arthrodesis of the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 30-A 728 1948
- Charnley J. C. Positive pressure in arthrodesis of the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 30-B 478 1948
- Cleveland, Mather. Operative fusion of the unstable or flail knee due to anterior poliomyelitis. A study of the late results, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 14 525 1932
- Cleveland, Mather and Smith, A. D. Fusion of the knee joint in cases of Charcot's disease: report of four cases, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 849 1931
- Colonna P. C. Hamstring transplantation for quadriceps paralysis *J Bone & Joint Surg* 5 472 1923
- Coonse K. D., and Adams, J. D. A new operative approach to the knee joint *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 77 344 1943
- Crego C. H. Jr. and Fischer F. J. Transplantation of the biceps femoris for the relief of quadriceps femoris paralysis in residual poliomyelitis, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 13 515 1931
- Cubbins W. R. Conley A. H., Callahan, J. J. and Scuderi, C. S. A new method of operating for the repair of ruptured cruciate ligaments of the knee joint *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 54 299 1932
- Devine, H. G. Exposure of the knee-joint *Brit. J Surg* 19 306 1931
- Dickson F. D. The mobilization of ankylosed joints by operation *J Missouri M. A.* 20 266 1923
- Drobnick, T. Über die Behandlung der Kinderlähmung mit Hilfe der Funktionstheilung und Funktionsübertragung der Muskeln, *Deutsche Zeitschr Chir* 43 473 1896
- Edwards A. H. Operative procedure suggested for repair of collateral ligaments of knee joint, *Brit. J Surg* 8 266 1920.
- Eggers G. W. N. Arthroplasty of the temporomandibular joint in children with interposition

- of tantalum foil preliminary report, J Bone & Joint Surg 28 603 1946
- Internal contact splint, J Bone & Joint Surg 30-A 40 1948
- Eloesser L. On sites and types of amputation and excruciation together with some notes on technic, S Clin. North America 13 9 1933
- Erkes F Weitere Erfahrungen mit physiologischer Schnittführung zur Eröffnung des Kniegelenks Beitr z. klin. Chir 147 221 1929
- Fick R A Anatomie und Mechanik der Gelenke unter Berücksichtigung der beweglichen Muskeln, in Bardeleben, von Karl Handbuch der Anatomie des Menschen Jena, G Fischer 1911
- Fisher A G T A study of loose bodies composed of cartilage or of cartilage and bone occurring in joints with special reference to their pathology and etiology Brit. J Surg 8 493 1920-21
- Internal Derangements of the Knee Joint New York Macmillan 1924
- Manipulative Surgery London, Lewis 1925
- A new method of approach to the semilunar cartilages of the knee-joint Lancet 2 107 1931
- Janne W E., and Le Mesurier A. B The repair of injuries to the posterior crucial ligament of the knee joint, Ann Surg 85 592 1927
- Galloway H. P H. The patellar bone graft in excision of the knee Am J Orthop. Surg. 15 104 1917
- Giangrasso G. Plastiche con lamina di gomma in lesioni articolari sperimentali Ann ital chir 19 289 1940
- Gill A B Operation for correction of paralytic genu recurvatum J Bone & Joint Surg 13 49 1931
- Giordano Sopra un caso di lussazione antica della cartilagine semilunare con corpo mobile articolare Arch. ortop 9 241 1892
- Girdlestone G R. The pathology and treatment of tuberculosis of the knee joint Brit. J Surg 19 488 1932
- Goldthwait J E. Tendon transplantation in the treatment of paralytic deformities Boston M & S J 134 29 1896
- Knee joint surgery for non-tuberculous conditions Boston M & S J 286 1900
- Slipping or recurrent dislocation of the patella Boston M & S J 150 169 1904
- Grant J C B An Atlas of Anatomy Vol. 1 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1943
- Groves E W H Operation for the repair of the cruciate ligaments Lancet 2 674 1917
- The cruciate ligaments of the knee joint their function, rupture and operative treatment of the same Brit. J Surg. 7 505 1920
- Arthroplasty Brit. J Surg 11 234 1923
- Hampton O P., Jr The management of penetrating wounds and suppurative arthritis of the knee joint in the Mediterranean Theatre of Operations J Bone & Joint Surg 28 659 1946
- Observations on the management of suppurative arthritis of the knee joint Am. J Surg 74 631 1947
- Hark, F W Arthroplasty of the knee, in Acad. Orthop Surgeons Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Vol 2 p 336 Ann Arbor Mich Edwards 1944
- Harmon P H. Surgical treatment of the residual deformity from suppurative arthritis of the hip occurring in young children J Bone & Joint Surg 24 5/6 1942
- Arthroplasty of the hip for osteoarthritis utilizing foreign-body cups of plastic, Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 76 347 1943
- Harmon, P H. and Adams C O Pyogenic coxitis end results and considerations of diagnosis and treatment, Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 78 371 1944
- Hass J Functional arthroplasty of elbow and knee, in Acad. Orthop Surgeons Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Vol. II p 340 Ann Arbor Mich. Edwards 1944
- Hatt, R. N The central bone graft in joint arthrodesis J Bone & Joint Surg 22 393 1940
- Hauser E. D W Total tendon transplant for slipping patella new operation for recurrent dislocation of patella Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 66 199 1938
- Heineck, A P The modern operative treatment of fractures of the patella Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 9 177 1909
- Henderson M S What are the real results of arthroplasty? Am J Orthop. Surg. 16 30 1918
- Posterolateral incision for the removal of loose bodies from the posterior compartment of the knee joint Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 33 698 1921
- Bucket-handle fractures of semilunar cartilages J.A.M.A. 90 1359 1928
- Derangements of the knee joint South. Surgeon 3 123 1934
- Henderson M. S., and Fortin H. J Tuberculosis of the knee joint in the adult J Bone & Joint Surg 9 700 1927
- Henry A. K Exposures of Loose Bones and Other Surgical Methods Bristol, Wright 192

- Extensile Exposure Applied to Limb Surgery. Edinburgh Livingstone 1945
- Hibbs R. A. An operation for stiffening the knee-joint. *Ann. Surg.* 53 404 1911
- Hibbs, R. A., and von Lackum, H. L. End-results in treatment of knee joint tuberculosis. *J.A.M.A.* 85 1289 1925
- Hopkins, H. H., and Zuck, F. H. Arthroplasty of hip, with use of vitallium cup. *M. Bull. Veterans Admin.* 15 1 1938.
- Huebscher C. Ueber Operationen bei habitueller Luxation der Knie Scheibe, *Ztschr. Orthop. Chir.* 24 1 1909
- Jones H. T. The treatment of acute purulent arthritis by joint washing and closure. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 17 559 1935
- Jones R. *Injuries of Joints*. London, Oxford, 1915
- Disabilities of the knee joint, *Brit. M. J.* 2 169 1916
- Jones, Robert and Lovett R. W. *Orthopaedic Surgery*. Baltimore Wood, 1929
- Key J. A. Positive pressure in arthrodesis for tuberculosis of the knee joint, *South. M. J.* 25 909 1932
- Arthrodesis of the knee with a large central autogenous bone peg. *South. M. J.* 30 574 1937
- Penicillin and sulfonamides in the treatment of osteomyelitis and pyogenic arthritis. *Bull. New York Acad. Med.* 21 87 1945
- Joint infection and arthritis (except tuberculosis) in Bancroft, W. F., and Murray C. R. *Surgical Treatment*. Vol. I, Philadelphia, Lippincott 1945
- Kirk, V. T. *Amputations in Lewis Dean Practice of Surgery*. Vol. III Chap. 10 Hagerstown. Md., Prior 1942
- Kirschner M. Die praktischen Ergebnisse der freien Fascien-Transplantation, *Arch. klin. Chir.* 92 888 1910
- Klein A. Arthrotomy at the knee-posterior incision. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 16 704 1934
- Kleinberg S. The transplantation of the hamstring muscle for quadriceps palsy. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 15 512 1917
- Reattachment of the capsule and external rotators of the shoulder for obstetric paralysis. *J.A.M.A.* 98 294 1932
- Arthroplasty in lower extremity. *Arch. Surg.* 34 1072 193
- Kocher E. T. *Chirurgische Operationslehre*. Ed. 4 1894 Eng. trans. London Black, 1903
- Koontz A. R. Dead (preserved) fascia grafts for hernia repair. clinical results. *J.A.M.A.* 89 1230 192
- Krda A. A general utility incision for exploration of the knee joint. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 7 212 1925
- Lange F. Orthopaedic treatment of spinal paralysis. *Am. J. Orthop. Surg.* 8 8 1910
- Law W. A. Postoperative study of vitallium mould arthroplasty of the hip joint, *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 30-B 76 1948
- Lee J. G. Amputations following trauma and infection, *S. Clin. North America* 18 359 1938
- LeFort, R. A propos de la résection du genou dans l'arthrite bacillaire. *Bull. et mém. Soc. nat. chir.* 56 1144 1930
- Lexer E. Über Gelenktransportation, *Med. Klin. Berlin* 4 817 1908
- Über Gelenktransplantation. *Arch. klin. Chir.* 90 263 1909
- MacAusland, W. R. Mobilization of ankylosed joints. *Gynec. & Obst.* 37 255 1923
- MacAusland, W. R., and MacAusland, A. R. The mobilization of ankylosed joints by arthroplasty. Philadelphia Lea 1929
- McKeever D. C. The use of cellophane as an interposition membrane in synovectomy. *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 25 576 1943
- McKeever F. M. Tuberculosis of the knee in infancy and childhood, *J.A.M.A.* 113 1293 1939
- McMurray T. P. The semilunar cartilages, *Brit. J. Surg.* 29 407 1942
- Magnusson, R. Treatment of tuberculosis of the elbow by resection and arthroplastic operation in one seance. *Acta orthop. scandinav.* 7 325 1936
- Margary F. Estirpazione della fibrocartilagineo semilunare interna del ginocchio sinistro. *Glor. roy. acad. med. Torino* 30 361 1882
- Marotelli O. R. La pateleotomia en el tratamiento de la luxacion recidivante de la rotula, *Bol. Soc. cir. Rosario* 7 223 1940
- Mauck H. P. A new operative procedure for instability of the knee, *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 18 984 1936
- Mayer L. The physiological method of tendon transplantation. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 22 182 1916
- Mayer L., and Ransohoff N. S. Repair of damaged finger tendons. preliminary report on reconstruction of the destroyed tendon sheaths, *Am. J. Surg.* 31 56 1936
- Milgram J. E. A modification of the rotation arthrodesis of the knee (Roeren). *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 58 355 1931
- Arthrodesis of the knee in *Acad. Orthop. Surgeons. Lectures on Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities*. Vol. 2 p. 315 Ann Arbor Mich. Edwards 1944

- Monro A. Part of the Cartilage of the Joint Separated and Ossified, *Med Essays and Observations*, 1738
- Murphy, J B Tuberculosis of the patella *Surg Gynec. & Obst.* 6 262 1908
- Arthroplasty *Ann Surg* 57 593 1913
- Arthroplasty for intra-articular bony and fibrous ankylosis of temporomandibular articulation report of nine cases *J.A.M.A.* 57 1783 1914
- Olber L. Traite des résections et des opérations conservatrices qu'on peut pratiquer sur le système osseux, Vol I Paris Masson 1885
- Parrish, B F A new operation for paralytic talipes valgus *New York M. J.* 56 402 1892
- Pfayr E. Über die operative Mobilisierung ankylosierte Gelenke *München med. Wchnschr* 57 1921 1910.
- Über die operative Behandlung von Kniegelenkankylosen *Arch klin Chir* 99 681 1912
- Peabody C W Tendon transplantation an end result study *J Bone & Joint Surg* 20 193 1938
- Perkins, G Amputations *Brit J Surg* 31 37 1944
- Pfemister D B The causes and changes of loose bodies arising from the articular surface of the joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 6 278 1924
- Operative arrestment of longitudinal growth of bones in the treatment of deformities *J Bone & Joint Surg* 15 1 1933
- Pfemister D B and Miller E. M. The method of new joint formation in arthroplasty an experimental study *Surg., Gynec & Obst* 26 406 1918
- Platt H. Lesions of the semilunar cartilages of the knee joint, *Acta chir scandinav.* 57 654 1930
- Pringle J H Avulsion of the spine of the tibia *Ann. Surg* 46 169 1907
- Putti, V La mobilizzazione chirurgica della anchilosi del ginocchio *Chir org movimento* 1 1 1917
- Arthroplasty *Am. J Orthop Surg* 3 421 1921
- Tecnica dell'artrotomia del ginocchio *Chir org movimento* 5 1 1921
- Arthrodesis for tuberculosis of the knee and of the shoulder *Chir org movimento* 18 217 1933
- Roeren L. Die Drehversteifung *Ztschr orthop. Chir* 52 2 1 1929
- Rogers, S P Amputations at the knee joint *J Bone & Joint Surg* 22 973 1940
- Smillie I S Injuries of the Knee Joint, *Edinburgh Livingstone* 1946
- Smith Petersen, M N Arthroplasty of the hip A new method, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 21 269 1939
- Sorrel, E. De quelques points de technique de la résection du genou pour tumeur blanche Des indications opératoires et des résultats *Bull. et mém Soc nat. chir* 56 1100 1930
- A propos des résections du genou, *Bull. et mém Soc nat chir* 57 209 1931
- Speed, J S and Knight, R. A. Arthroplasty of the hip, *in Am. Acad. Orthop Surgeons Reconstruction Surgery of the Extremities Vol II* p 326 Ann Arbor Mich. Edwards 1944
- Steindler A. Operative treatment of paralytic conditions of the upper extremity *Am. J Orthop Surg* 1 608 1919
- The surgical reconstruction of the paralytic upper extremity *Illinois M J* 43 197 1923
- Operative orthopaedics New York, Appleton 1925 Later Ed. Springfield Ill. Thomas 1940
- Sudhoff W Anatomisch-histologische Untersuchung eines Falles von Blutig Mobilisiertem Ellbogengelenk, *Beitr z. klin Chir* 123 655 1921
- Sutherland R. and Rowe, M. J., Jr Arthrotomy approaches in the lower extremity *Am J Surg* 71 335 1946
- Thomas Atha Anatomical and physiological considerations in the alignment and fitting of amputation prostheses for the lower extremity *J Bone & Joint Surg* 26 645 1944
- Thomas H O Principles of the Treatment of Fractures and Dislocations, Part VI London Lewis, 1886
- Thompson, T C Amputations A comparison of end bearing and ordinary stumps *S Clin North America* 24 1433 1944
- Quadricepsplasty *Ann Surg* 121 751 1945
- Thompson, T C., and Alldredge, R. H. Amputations Surgery and plastic repair, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 26 639 1944
- Towney J W Jr Knee joint tuberculosis 222 patients treated by operative fusion *Surg Gynec & Obst.* 68 1029 1939
- Tregubov S Operative treatment of tuberculosis of the knee joint, *J Bone & Joint Surg* 19 734 1937
- Venable C. S., and Stuck, W G Electrolysis controlling factor in the use of metals in treating fractures *J.A.M.A.* 111 1349 1938
- Vulpus O and Stoffel, A. Orthopaedische Operationslehre Ed. 2 Stuttgart Enke 1920
- Waterman J H Tendon transplantation its



- history, indications and technic, *M. News* 81 54 1902
- Watson B. A. *A Treatise on Amputations of the Extremities and Their Complications* Philadelphia, Blakiston, 1885
- Williams C. Treatment of purulent arthritis by wide arthrotomy followed by immediate active mobilization *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 28 546 1919
- Wilson P. D. Amputations in Nelson Loose Leaf Living Surgery III pp. 563-694 New York, Nelson, 1921
- Posterior capsuloplasty in certain flexion contractures of the knee, *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 11 40 1929
- Wu, Y. K., and Milner L. J. Operative treatment of tuberculosis of knee joint: analysis of end results of 77 cases, *Chinese M. J.* 50 253 1936.
- Yount C. C. The role of the tensor fascia femoris in certain deformities of the lower extremities *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 8 1:1 1926.
- An operation to improve function in quadriceps paralysis *J. Bone & Joint Surg.* 20 314 1938

## Bone Neoplasms in the Region of the Knee Joint

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It is not the aim of the author in this chapter to delve into the controversial theories of the origin and the histology of bone tumors in general but to deal with the diagnosis and the treatment of these lesions. Primary neoplasms both benign and malignant, and metastatic lesions are encountered frequently in the region of the knee joint. Tumors in this region do not differ from those encountered in other parts of the body. However, failure to make an accurate diagnosis and to institute adequate therapy is apt to cost the patient a limb. Although the seriousness of such an error is far less than one made in the region of the shoulder girdle, the loss of a lower limb is a grave handicap to the individual. Knowledge of

the clinical course and of the roentgenographic and histologic characteristics of bone tumors will increase diagnostic accuracy and reduce to a minimum the incidence of the above surgical tragedies. More extensive knowledge provides the surgeon with a working armamentarium which permits an intelligent approach to the problem and facilitates formulation of an early diagnosis. All these factors play an important part in the ultimate outcome of the individual case on hand. The great number of poorly diagnosed cases which are seen every year at tumor clinics is a serious reflection on the profession as a whole. To educate the physician to the importance of early diagnosis is most essential, but it is even more important to educate the physician

TABLE 9 CLASSIFICATION OF BONE TUMORS (COLEY)

MALIGNANT	BENIGN
Fibrosarcoma of bone	Nonosteogenic fibroma of bone
Osteogenic sarcoma	Osteoma
	Osteoid osteoma
	Exostosis
	Chondroma
Primary chondrosarcoma	Benign giant-cell tumor
Secondary chondromyxosarcoma	Benign chondroblastoma (Codman's type)
Malignant giant-cell tumor	Unicameral bone cyst (giant-cell tumor)
	Cavernous angioma
Endothelioma (Ewing's sarcoma)	Plexiform angioma
Angiosarcoma	
Myeloma	plasma-cell myeloma
	myelocytoma
	erythroblastoma
	lymphocytoma
Reticulum-cell sarcoma	
Liposarcoma	

TABLE 10 (LICHTENSTEIN)

BENIGN TUMORS OF BONE		MALIGNANT COUNTERPART (if any)		MALIGNANT TUMORS OF BONE (Arising through malignant change or independently)
Cartilage cell or cartilage-forming connective-tissue derivation	PERIPHERAL	PERIPHERAL CHONDROSARCOMA		Chondrosarcoma
	CENTRAL	CENTRAL CHONDROSARCOMA		
Osteoblastic derivation	PERIPHERAL	{ Osteocartilaginous exostosis (multiple exostosis)		Osteogenic sarcoma
		{ Eochondroma (skeletal enchondromatosis)		
		{ Benign chondroblastoma		
		{ Chondromyxoid fibroma		
Nonosteoblastic connective-tissue derivation	CENTRAL	{ Osteoma		Fibrosarcoma
		{ Osteoid osteoma		
		{ Osteogenic fibroma		
		{ Other osteoid tissue-forming tumors		
Mesenchymal connective-tissue origin	PERIPHERAL	{ Nonosteogenic fibroma		Frankly malignant giant-cell tumors
		{ Least aggressive giant cell tumors		
Hematopoietic origin	CENTRAL	{ Not known		Ewing's sarcoma
		{ More aggressive and malignant giant-cell tumors		
Nerve origin	PERIPHERAL	{ Malignant schwannoma		{ Multiple myeloma Chronic myeloid leukemia Acute leukemias
		{ Malignant lymphoma		
Vascular origin	CENTRAL	{ Hemangioma		{ Reticulum-cell sarcoma Lymphosarcoma Hodgkin's disease
		{ Hemangioepithelioma (Glomus)		
Fat-cell origin	PERIPHERAL	{ Hemangio-endothelioma		Hemangio-endothelioma
		{ Liposarcoma (?)		
Notochordal derivation	CENTRAL	{ Chordoma		So-called adamantinoma
		{ Adamantine or possibly basal cell derivation		

## CLASSIFICATION OF BONE NEOPLASMS

Since the classification conceived by Ewing in 1939 for the Registry of Bone Sarcoma of the American College of Surgeons numerous classifications of bone tumors have appeared in the literature. A survey of these classifications leaves the reader confused because there is total lack of agreement among the investigators on the basis of a classification. Some workers strive to classify bone lesions on their anatomic and histologic features; others base their classification on pathologic and roentgenographic characteristics. Within the past decade there has been a uniform trend to classify primary bone tumors in accordance with the predominant cell or tissue contained in the neoplasm and springing from the undifferentiated germ cells of bone. This is applied not only to bone tumors per se but also to tumors arising from the accessory tissues of bone as bone marrow, reticulo-endothelial system and connective tissue of the marrow. In line with the aforementioned trend, Coley modified the revised classification of the Registry of Bone Sarcoma of the American College of Surgeons; he included both benign and malignant neoplasms (Table 9). More recently, Lichtenstein evolved an even more comprehensive classification of primary neoplasms of bone (Table 10). In it he attempts to indicate the malignant counterpart, if one exists, of the benign lesion.

## DIAGNOSIS OF BONE NEOPLASMS

### HISTORY

Of great importance in establishing a diagnosis of bone tumor is a carefully taken history. It should elicit the significant features of the case in chronologic order with particular emphasis laid on the age of the patient, the time interval of the manifested symptoms and the rapidity of growth of the lesion. This information together with other

diagnostic aids, will allow the correct diagnosis to be made in the great majority of the cases. Although the factor of heredity plays a dubious role in the etiology of bone tumors, certain lesions such as multiple osteochondromas and other tumors of cartilaginous derivation appear to have a hereditary background. It is an established clinical fact that rapidly growing tumors regardless of the patient's age or the site of the tumor, must be regarded as very malignant lesions. On the other hand, slowly growing tumors are less malignant. If a tumor has existed for a long time without increase in size and then begins to manifest evidence of enlargement, the increased activity is usually indicative of secondary malignant changes in a benign neoplasm.

**Past History.** Many infectious diseases may implicate the osseous system producing lesions not unlike true bone tumors. It becomes apparent that the past history must be scrutinized meticulously for the previous existence of such lesions. Syphilis is the most common offender in this category; it may simulate many of the known bone neoplasms. Other infectious processes capable of confusing the clinical picture are tuberculosis, osteomyelitis, typhoid fever and brucellosis. The author has encountered two cases of tuberculosis of the shafts of long bones appearing in the form of discrete cystic lesions without clinical implication of the lungs or other viscera, both cases presented unusually difficult diagnostic problems. The diagnosis was established by histologic study of the material obtained from the lesions. Metabolic and deficiency diseases such as gout, rickets and scurvy, produce bone lesions.

In older individuals it is of utmost importance to elicit the presence or the absence of Paget's disease of bone and of tumors of any region of the body, either past or present. It is not uncommon for metastatic bone lesions to occur many years after the ablation of carcinoma of the thyroid gland or the breast.

Past history will reveal the presence or the absence of strains and repeated trauma to the affected part. This may have some bearing on the ultimate identity of the lesion.

### INJURY

Trauma antedates the symptoms and the local manifestations in a large group of cases. Its importance as an etiologic factor of bone tumors is of doubtful value; however, in many instances it serves to make the patient cognizant of an existing lesion. Occasionally the first manifestation of a neoplasm is a pathologic fracture. It is generally recognized that a single trauma regardless of the degree of severity is not the prime causative agent responsible for the development of neoplasms of bone. Nevertheless, every effort should be made to record a detailed account of the injury or accident such as its time and manner of occurrence, demonstrable local evidence of the injury at the time of examination, the degree of disability resulting from the incident and the subsequent course of the pathologic disorder. Such data may be of particular importance should the case assume medicolegal proportions.

### AGE

The age period wherein bone neoplasms appear is of special significance in establishing a correct diagnosis; this is particularly true of osteogenic sarcoma. The study of Badgley and Batts disclosed that the greatest number of osteogenic sarcomas were encountered in the second decade. Christensen recorded that two thirds of 441 cases of bone sarcoma occurred between 10 and 30 and one third over 30 years; also that the very young and the very old are rarely affected with bone sarcoma.

Codman pointed out that osteogenic sarcoma in individuals around 50 years of age is usually indicative of sarcomatous changes superimposed on Paget's disease of bone. Bird found that 14 per cent of all cases of

Paget's disease undergo sarcomatous transformation.

Of interest is the relationship of bone cysts and giant-cell tumors to age. Bone cysts make their appearance before closure of the epiphyseal disk; giant-cell tumors are encountered after the epiphysis has united. Plasma-cell myeloma is rarely encountered under the age of 40, although the author knows of one case which was 30 years of age when the diagnosis was established by histologic study. As a rule metastatic lesions are found past middle life but they occasionally are seen in patients under 20.

### SITE OF THE TUMOR

Some neoplasms of bone disclose a predilection for specific regions of the osseous system. Knowledge of this characteristic is a valuable aid in making a diagnosis. Osteogenic sarcoma is encountered more frequently in the region of the knee than in any other part of the body. Approximately 42 per cent of all sarcomas of bone are found in the lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia and the fibula. Over 57 per cent of all giant-cell tumors are encountered in the aforementioned areas of the knee joint. Solitary bone cysts are usually observed in the diaphysis close to the metaphysis, while giant-cell tumors are observed in the epiphyseal region after ossification of the epiphyseal plate has occurred. Osteogenic sarcomas most frequently implicate the ends of the shafts of long bones and the metaphyseal region, while Ewing's tumors involve the shafts. The most common sites for benign chondroblastoma, in the order of frequency, are the lower end of the femur, the upper end of the tibia and the upper end of the humerus (Fig. 428).

### PAIN

Pain without apparent cause is a frequent subjective manifestation of bone neoplasm. In the early stages of the disease it is exceedingly variable; it may be mild and present only on activity or intermittent so

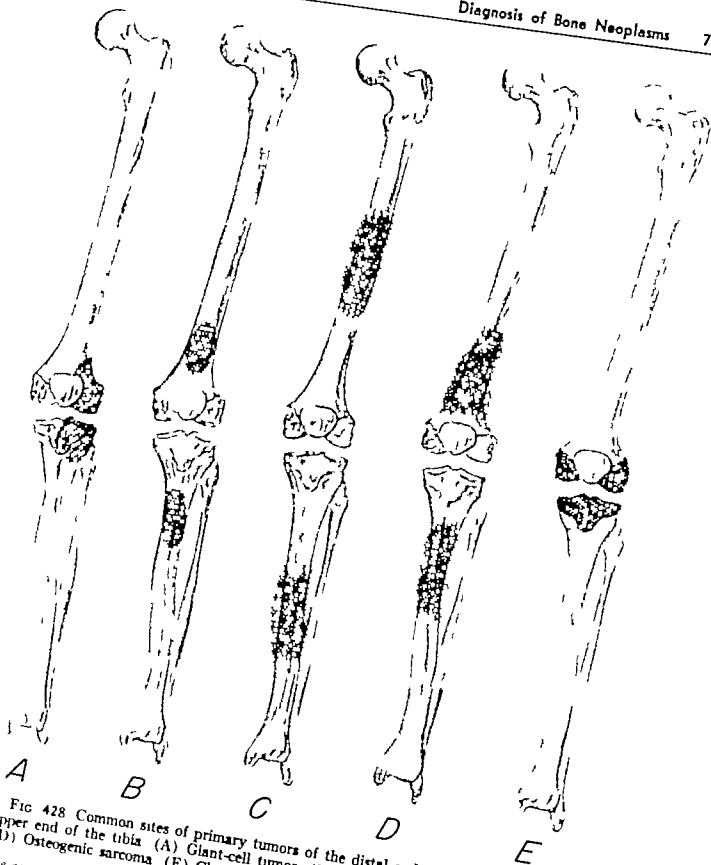


FIG 428 Common sites of primary tumors of the distal end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia (A) Giant-cell tumor (B) Bone cysts. (C) Ewing's tumor (D) Osteogenic sarcoma (E) Chondrosarcoma.

that its seriousness is not understood by the patient or the physician. Generally its onset is insidious however at times it is ushered in abruptly and may be associated with pronounced systemic reaction not unlike an infectious process such as acute osteomyelitis. Not infrequently Ewing's tumor and highly malignant, rapidly growing bone sarcomas



does not indicate the benign or malignant character of a tumor. Many small tumors are not detected until after there is clinical evidence of metastasis. The size and the configuration of neoplasms vary greatly. As in the region of the shoulder, chondrosarcomas are usually the largest tumors in the vicinity of the knee joint.

Generally, tumors arising in the medullary and the cortical portions of bone encounter greater resistance to growth and expansion than those arising from the surface of bone or beneath the periosteum; the latter grow more rapidly than the former and reach greater dimensions. Large tumors and tumors implicating the adjacent soft tissues may interfere with the venous and the lymphatic circulations of the limb; thence pronounced enlargement of the extremity distal to the lesion may occur.

The rate of enlargement in slowly growing tumors may be determined by careful circular measurements of the part. To avoid errors, the same levels above and below the apex of the patella should be used at each subsequent measurement.

#### BODY REACTION

Although most bone neoplasms do not produce clinically demonstrable systematic reactions, occasionally some malignant lesions are ushered in with all the clinical manifestations of an acute infection. Ewing's tumor falls into this category. Before this characteristic of Ewing's tumor was widely known, many cases were subjected erroneously to operative procedures under the diagnosis of acute osteomyelitis. Unfortunately, roentgenographic study in these cases may fail to uncover the true nature of the lesion. The clinical features of osteoid osteoma simulate those of Garré's disease and Brodie's abscess; all these lesions are associated with intense, deeply seated pain and roentgenographically exhibit localized increased bone density. It is common knowledge that many cases of osteoid osteoma have been operated upon under a mistaken diagnosis. There are 3 cases of osteoid

osteoma in the author's files which were subjected to more than one surgical procedure before the true diagnosis was established. Osteoid osteoma is a relatively common lesion in the femurs of adolescents, and in these cases it may be responsible for referred pain in the knee joint. One such case came to the writer's attention which had been treated as synovitis of the knee joint for several months. Roentgenograms including the middle one third of the femur disclosed the true identity of the lesion.

In general, the physical status of a patient with sarcoma is better than that of a patient with carcinoma, except in the terminal phases. Anemia in varying degrees, which increases in intensity as the tumor progresses, is a frequent concomitant feature of carcinoma. Severe pain in bone neoplasms may interfere with the patient's sleep and rest; they become irritable and extremely apprehensive.

#### PULSATING TUMORS

Pulsation is an exceedingly rare characteristic of primary bone tumors, implicating the ends or the shafts of long bones. Occasionally, highly vascular neoplasms exhibit this feature. On the other hand, osteolytic metastatic lesions from renal and thyroid cancer may produce a pulsating tumor. Codman put forth the premise that pulsation of a tumor mass destroys the surrounding bone and causes expansion of the remaining thin bony shell. The pulsating bone marrow tends to restrain extension of the tumor down the medullary canal.

Although the number is small, some pulsating giant-cell tumors have been recorded in the literature. Histologically these neoplasms in no way differ from nonpulsating giant-cell tumors; however, it is believed that their rate of growth is more rapid and they exhibit a greater tendency toward recurrence after therapy either by surgery or irradiation.

#### ROENTGENOGRAPHIC STUDIES

Roentgenographic study plays a major



role in arriving at the correct diagnosis of bone neoplasms. It is more important than physical examination and second only in importance to histologic study of the bone lesions. In most instances roentgenograms taken in the anteroposterior, the lateral and the oblique views provide the desired information. Occasionally, exposures other than the aforementioned conventional ones may be necessary to give more nearly accurate and detailed data. In addition stereoscopic and laminographic exposures may add much pertinent information when more difficult diagnostic problems arise.

As a rule bone tumors produce certain alterations in bone and the adjacent soft tissues which are characteristic of the lesions and are demonstrable roentgenographically. This is especially true of benign lesions. One well versed in these characteristic features is able to make a correct diagnosis in a large number of cases, and a tentative one in others. It is true that even what appears to be an obvious roentgenographic diagnosis may bring forth diversified interpretations from different roentgenologists. It is also true that some bone neoplasms give rise to bizarre roentgenograms which defy the most competent roentgenologist; many lesions mimic the features of others making a correct diagnosis by roentgenographic study alone impossible. It has been demonstrated frequently that many such lesions also exhibit histologic patterns that fail to conform to any specific category. According to Coley, there is a 14 to 20 per cent error in roentgenographic diagnosis when checked by histologic examination.

Some of the diseases of bone which test and even defy the acumen of the roentgenologist are syphilis of bone which may take on the roentgenographic features of primary osteogenic sarcoma, Ewing's tumor which resembles closely acute osteomyelitis, cystic tuberculosis of bone which simulates metastatic carcinoma of bone, single metastatic lesions which may be interpreted erroneously as primary osteolytic

bone sarcoma, osteoid osteoma which may be difficult to distinguish from a bone abscess or Garré's disease, and myositis ossificans, which may be mistaken for periosteal sarcoma. In addition, Ewing's tumor may be mistaken for metastatic bone lesions of neuroblastoma.

The appearance of a lesion in one bone makes a general skeletal survey imperative. This often uncovers the presence of other lesions or even general skeletal involvement and may establish the identity of bizarre neoplasms. An investigation of the entire osseous system is also indicated in lesions suggestive of multiple myeloma, parathyroid disease, fibrous dysplasia of bone, multiple exostosis and metastatic bone lesions.

An essential part of all roentgenographic surveys is examination of the chest. Occasionally, the only evidence of the true nature of a bone tumor is the presence of metastatic nodules in the lungs. Repeated examinations of the chest should be done at regular intervals in order to check the diagnosis of a bone lesion and to follow the course of its behavior regardless of the choice of therapy instituted.

#### LABORATORY EXAMINATION

It is definitely established that certain diseases affecting bone are associated with demonstrable alterations in the chemistry of blood and urine. This knowledge is of significant value in arriving at a correct diagnosis of bone lesions. Notably among the workers who have made valuable contributions to this aspect of bone study are Albright, Reifstein, Woodard, Bodansky, Gutman and Kutscher. A well-conducted laboratory investigation comprises (1) complete blood count, (2) Wassermann reaction of blood and spinal fluid, (3) serum calcium level, (4) serum phosphorus level, (5) serum phosphatase level and (6) test for Bence-Jones bodies in the urine. In addition the following tests may disclose some pertinent abnormalities in the body chemistry: (1) sugar determinations, (2) uric

acid level which is elevated in gout, and (3) blood protein level, which may be greatly elevated in multiple myeloma.

The true interpretation of elevated phosphate levels is essential to prevent pitfalls in diagnoses of bone neoplasms or other osseous disorders. Elevated alkaline phosphatase values do not indicate any specific bone tumor or the malignant nature of bone lesions. Instead, they are indicators of new bone formation in the natural course of a reparative process or by a neoplastic primary or secondary bone lesion.

High alkaline phosphatase readings are found in growing individuals and in normal reparative processes in which bone is being formed, such as in fractures. In certain bone diseases wherein new bone formation is a predominant feature the alkaline phosphatase is elevated. Such is the case in osteogenic sarcoma, osteoplastic metastatic carcinoma to bone and Paget's osteitis deformans. Bone diseases characterized by alterations in the normal calcium and phosphorus metabolism may reveal increased alkaline phosphatase levels as in rickets, osteomalacia and hyperparathyroid disease. As a rule, osteolytic lesions arising from carcinoma do not cause rise in the serum alkaline phosphatase level. This is in contrast with osteoplastic lesions from carcinoma, particularly cancer of the prostate gland in which the values are invariably high. Coley observed that 75 per cent of all metastatic lesions from the prostate gland were osteoplastic, and the remainder disclosed some new bone formation.

A high serum acid phosphatase is a concomitant feature of metastatic bone lesions from carcinoma of the prostate. In fact some workers are of the opinion that an increased serum acid phosphatase determination is pathognomonic of cancer of the prostate.

#### HISTOLOGIC EXAMINATION

The aforementioned diagnostic aids discussed will provide sufficient information in the great majority of cases to establish a

correct diagnosis. However, in a small group the final diagnosis cannot be made on this data. The best that one may do is arrive at a tentative diagnosis. Histologic examination of the suspected tissue is the last and final diagnostic test at our disposal. The tissue for examination may be obtained by surgical or aspiration biopsy.

#### ASPIRATION BIOPSY

This method is preferred to surgical biopsy in many cancer clinics. Its simplicity is a distinct advantage and in the hands of experienced workers it yields a relatively high incidence of satisfactory results. It provides a simple method to differentiate soft tissue malignancies and chronic inflammatory processes. All surgeons interested in neoplasms should be versed in this method. The method does have some disadvantages. The material obtained by aspiration may not be adequate to make a diagnosis, tumor cells may be disseminated along the path of the needle, hemorrhage may occur within the tumor, favoring metastasis, and a negative aspiration does not dismiss definitely the presence of a tumor. Also, deeply seated tumors are difficult to reach, and, if surrounded by dense bone the needle may not penetrate into the substance of the tumor. The observations of Coley and Snyder are significant. They recorded that in 568 aspiration biopsies of bone performed on 474 individuals there were no immediate complications and no evidence indicating that the procedure had enhanced the development of metastasis. Also, in 67.5 per cent of 385 cases of primary and secondary bone neoplasms a specific diagnosis was established by this method. 82 per cent of the cases yielded sufficient tissue to permit a diagnosis; in 14.5 per cent the tissues were not identified; and in 1 case a benign lesion was diagnosed as a malignant tumor.

A proved valuable diagnostic aid is aspiration of the sternum or the iliac crests for bone marrow. It provides pertinent information in cases of multiple myeloma, leukemia and metastatic carcinoma. In some

role in arriving at the correct diagnosis of bone neoplasms. It is more important than physical examination and second only in importance to histologic study of the bone lesions. In most instances roentgenograms taken in the anteroposterior, the lateral and the oblique views provide the desired information. Occasionally exposures other than the aforementioned conventional ones may be necessary to give more nearly accurate and detailed data. In addition, stereoscopic and laminographic exposures may add much pertinent information when more difficult diagnostic problems arise.

As a rule bone tumors produce certain alterations in bone and the adjacent soft tissues which are characteristic of the lesions and are demonstrable roentgenographically. This is especially true of benign lesions. One well versed in these characteristic features is able to make a correct diagnosis in a large number of cases and a tentative one in others. It is true that even what appears to be an obvious roentgenographic diagnosis may bring forth diversified interpretations from different roentgenologists. It is also true that some bone neoplasms give rise to bizarre roentgenograms which defy the most competent roentgenologist; many lesions mimic the features of others making a correct diagnosis by roentgenographic study alone impossible. It has been demonstrated frequently that many such lesions also exhibit histologic patterns that fail to conform to any specific category. According to Coley, there is a 14 to 20 per cent error in roentgenographic diagnosis when checked by histologic examination.

Some of the diseases of bone which test and even defy the acumen of the roentgenologist are syphilis of bone which may take on the roentgenographic features of primary osteogenic sarcoma, Ewing's tumor which resembles closely acute osteomyelitis, cystic tuberculosis of bone which simulates metastatic carcinoma of bone, single metastatic lesions which may be interpreted erroneously as primary osteolytic

bone sarcoma, osteoid osteoma, which may be difficult to distinguish from a bone abscess or Garré's disease, and myositis ossificans which may be mistaken for periosteal sarcoma. In addition, Ewing's tumor may be mistaken for metastatic bone lesions of neuroblastoma.

The appearance of a lesion in one bone makes a general skeletal survey imperative. This often uncovers the presence of other lesions or even general skeletal involvement and may establish the identity of bizarre neoplasms. An investigation of the entire osseous system is also indicated in lesions suggestive of multiple myeloma, parathyroid disease, fibrous dysplasia of bone, multiple exostosis and metastatic bone lesions.

An essential part of all roentgenographic surveys is examination of the chest. Occasionally the only evidence of the true nature of a bone tumor is the presence of metastatic nodules in the lungs. Repeated examinations of the chest should be done at regular intervals in order to check the diagnosis of a bone lesion and to follow the course of its behavior regardless of the choice of therapy instituted.

#### LABORATORY EXAMINATION

It is definitely established that certain diseases affecting bone are associated with demonstrable alterations in the chemistry of blood and urine. This knowledge is of significant value in arriving at a correct diagnosis of bone lesions. Notably among the workers who have made valuable contributions to this aspect of bone study are Albright, Reifenstein, Woodard, Bodansky, Gutman and Kutscher. A well-conducted laboratory investigation comprises (1) complete blood count, (2) Wassermann reaction of blood and spinal fluid, (3) serum calcium level, (4) serum phosphorus level, (5) serum phosphatase level and (6) test for Bence Jones bodies in the urine. In addition the following tests may disclose some pertinent abnormalities in the body chemistry: (1) sugar determinations, (2) uric

acid level, which is elevated in gout, and (3) blood protein level, which may be greatly elevated in multiple myeloma.

The true interpretation of elevated phosphate levels is essential to prevent pitfalls in diagnoses of bone neoplasms or other osseous disorders. Elevated alkaline phosphatase values do not indicate any specific bone tumor or the malignant nature of bone lesions, instead, they are indicators of new bone formation in the natural course of a reparative process or by a neoplastic primary or secondary bone lesion.

High alkaline phosphatase readings are found in growing individuals and in normal reparative processes in which bone is being formed, such as in fractures. In certain bone diseases wherein new bone formation is a predominant feature the alkaline phosphatase is elevated. Such is the case in osteogenic sarcoma, osteoplastic metastatic carcinoma to bone and Paget's osteitis deformans. Bone diseases characterized by alterations in the normal calcium and phosphorus metabolism may reveal increased alkaline phosphatase levels, as in rickets, osteomalacia and hyperparathyroid disease. As a rule osteolytic lesions arising from carcinoma do not cause rise in the serum alkaline phosphatase level. This is in contrast with osteoplastic lesions from carcinoma, particularly cancer of the prostate gland in which the values are invariably high. Coley observed that 75 per cent of all metastatic lesions from the prostate gland were osteoplastic, and the remainder disclosed some new bone formation.

A high serum acid phosphatase is a concomitant feature of metastatic bone lesions from carcinoma of the prostate. In fact some workers are of the opinion that an increased serum acid phosphatase determination is pathognomonic of cancer of the prostate.

#### HISTOLOGIC EXAMINATION

The aforementioned diagnostic aids discussed will provide sufficient information in the great majority of cases to establish a

correct diagnosis. However, in a small group the final diagnosis cannot be made on this data. The best that one may do is arrive at a tentative diagnosis. Histologic examination of the suspected tissue is the last and final diagnostic test at our disposal. The tissue for examination may be obtained by surgical or aspiration biopsy.

#### ASPIRATION BIOPSY

This method is preferred to surgical biopsy in many cancer clinics. Its simplicity is a distinct advantage, and in the hands of experienced workers it yields a relatively high incidence of satisfactory results. It provides a simple method to differentiate soft tissue malignancies and chronic inflammatory processes. All surgeons interested in neoplasms should be versed in this method. The method does have some disadvantages. The material obtained by aspiration may not be adequate to make a diagnosis, tumor cells may be disseminated along the path of the needle, hemorrhage may occur within the tumor, favoring metastasis, and a negative aspiration does not dismiss definitely the presence of a tumor. Also, deeply seated tumors are difficult to reach, and, if surrounded by dense bone, the needle may not penetrate into the substance of the tumor. The observations of Coley and Snyder are significant. They recorded that in 568 aspiration biopsies of bone performed on 474 individuals there were no immediate complications and no evidence indicating that the procedure had enhanced the development of metastasis. Also, in 67.5 per cent of 385 cases of primary and secondary bone neoplasms a specific diagnosis was established by this method. 82 per cent of the cases yielded sufficient tissue to permit a diagnosis. In 14.5 per cent the tissues were not identified, and in 1 case a benign lesion was diagnosed as a malignant tumor.

A proved valuable diagnostic aid is aspiration of the sternum or the iliac crests for bone marrow. It provides pertinent information in cases of multiple myeloma, leukemia and metastatic carcinoma. In some

clincs aspiration of the iliac crest is preferred to sternal puncture

#### SURGICAL BIOPSY

This method must not be taken lightly and should be performed with gentleness and profound respect for the tissues involved. It always should precede any radical procedure particularly amputations. It is the method of choice in some institutions and in some cases it is the only means at one's disposal for obtaining tissue for histologic examination. The disadvantages of an open operation are counterbalanced by the assurance that adequate material can be obtained for histologic study. If possible the operation should be executed under tourniquet after the desired tissue is removed the wound is closed in layers. An incision in suspected malignant tissue never should be left open or drained. If closure is performed as described above, the chances of disseminating tumor cells and fungation of the tissues are minimized.

### BENIGN BONE NEOPLASMS

#### OSTEOCARTILAGINOUS EXOSTOSIS (OSTEOCHONDROMA)

**Introduction.** Osteochondroma is by far the most common neoplasm of bone. Although it may arise in any bone preformed in cartilage it is most commonly observed in the ends of long tubular bones particularly in their metaphyseal regions. They may occur as single or multiple lesions; the latter group is recognized clinically as hereditary deforming dyschondroplasia and is associated with bizarre skeletal deformities such as bending of the bones shortening resulting from interferences with normal bone growth and widening and distortion of the metaphyseal region. Tumors in both categories (single or multiple) essentially comprise a mass of bone covered by a cartilaginous cap; the base of the tumor protrudes from the surface of the involved bone. In a measure the amount of cartilage tissue present in the tumor is responsible

for the clinical and the roentgenographic features.

In general, these tumors are considered to be congenital lesions. Not infrequently a familial tendency can be traced through several generations. This is especially true of hereditary deforming dyschondroplasia usually observed in the white race. Negroes are affected rarely. Many workers have stressed the familial characteristics of these tumors; notably among these are Ollier, Hale, Jansen, Ehrenfried and the Vansants. The widening and broadening of the affected metaphyseal regions so frequently observed to be associated with these tumors (more so in the multiple forms) is the result of defective modeling of the bone. This theory was set forth by Keith.

**Etiology.** The exact origin of these neoplasms is still obscure, in spite of some very convincing conjectures on their histogenesis. As noted previously, it is conceded that they are found in bone preformed in cartilage and arise from cartilage. According to Geschickter and Copeland from a histologic viewpoint osteochondromas are merely an exaggeration of normal bony protuberance destined for the insertion of an important tendon. At the juncture of tendon and bone a bony protuberance normally emerges through a defect in the periosteum and joins the tendon which in turn contributes to the formation of the attachment by cartilaginous ossification within the substance of the tendon. Furthermore they maintain that in cases of multiple lesions tags of periosteum in the ends of the tendon proliferate and form cartilaginous and bony outgrowths also associated disturbances and deficiencies in the periosteum in the region of the metaphyses of the affected bones are responsible for widening of the metaphyses and inhibition of bone growth. These observers believe that the tumors are the result of perverted activity of the periosteum a process which is conducive to the formation of aberrant foci of metaplastic cartilage.

**Site Incidence Age and Sex.** The ends



FIG 429 (A, *Left*) Multiple osteochondroma in a female, aged 16. Note the pedunculated configuration of the lesion arising from the posteromedial aspect of the distal end of the femur. A similar lesion arises from the posterior aspect of the head of the fibula.

(B, *Right*) Histologic pattern of benign osteochondroma. The superficial portion comprises hyaline cartilage, which at a lower level exhibits calcification. Observe that the base of the lesion consists of cancellous bone. The cartilaginous cap of the tumor is covered by a layer of connective tissue. (Photomicrograph  $\times 100$ )

of the long tubular bones are the most frequent sites of osteocartilaginous exostoses; however, flat bones are frequently implicated, particularly the ribs, the scapula, the iliac bones, and on rare occasions the clavicles and the spinous processes of a vertebra. The most common site is the lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia. In most surveys, males are affected more often than females; the ratio being 2 to 1. In Lichtenstein's series, there was no appreciable difference in the sex incidence. As a rule, the disorder is observed during childhood or adolescence; however, the age range is from 5 to 80 years, the highest incidence occurring between 11 and 15 years, and approximately 80 per cent of the cases appearing under the age of 21.

**Clinical Features.** In many instances

because of the absence of pain and slow growth, the tumor remains obscure and is discovered only accidentally by the roentgenologist. By the same token, if the patient is aware of the presence of the tumor, medical advice is not considered as urgent. On occasions, trauma directs the patient's attention to the neoplasm. In other instances, the protuberances interfere with normal excursion of muscles and tendons, thereby producing varying degrees of disability of the affected limb or articulation in the vicinity of the tumor. Such was the case history of the patient whose knee joint is depicted in Figure 429 left. This individual (female, 16 years of age) was unaware of any abnormalities in the region of the right knee joint. For several months prior to the initial examination, the child noted some

stiffness in the back of the knee at the end of the day. Later she developed pain in the calf and was aware of an occasional snap on the outer side of the knee joint when walking or running. The symptoms were accentuated by activity. Finally, some swelling occurred on the outer aspect of the knee; the swelling would disappear with rest. Physical examination of the knee in question disclosed a large irregular hard mass in the region of the head of the fibula; over the mass was a distinctly palpable bursa  $2\frac{1}{2}$  by 3 cm. distended with fluid. Another palpable mass was found on the posteromedial aspect of the supracondylar region. These findings were confirmed at operation.

Occasionally, the first manifestation of the lesion may be local paralysis resulting from pressure on peripheral nerves. The author has recorded a case wherein the first indication of the tumor on the ventral aspect of the scapula in a child 6 years of age was paralysis of the serratus anticus muscle. Growth of the lesion occurs during childhood and adolescence when growth ceases is not definitely known; however, it is generally believed that maturation of the tumor is achieved approximately at the time or several years before skeletal maturation of the individual is attained. With increasing age the cartilage cap tends to regress as indicated by irregular areas of calcification within its substance and eventually disappear. However, in rare instances cartilage rests in a more or less dormant state and is demonstrable in the later decades of life and is capable of reactivated growth.

It becomes apparent that quiescent lesions may exist for many years without clinical manifestations; some never give rise to symptoms. As noted previously, large tumors in the region of the knee, the shoulder or the ankle joint may interfere with normal motion. Such neoplasms are firm, painless, more or less symmetric masses attached to the underlying bone. The consist-

ency of the tumor depends upon the amount of cartilaginous tissue present. Soft tissues are freely movable over the lesion. In rare instances a bursa distended with fluid may be attached to the base of the tumor; this "exostosis bursata" finding is not uncommon in cases of larger osteochondromas. The bursal lining is not unlike synovial membrane; the bursal cavity contains mucinous fluid and at times may contain flakes of fibrin, rice bodies and even calcified cartilaginous bodies.

Although osteochondromas are essentially benign neoplasms, sarcomatous transformation does occur in a small percentage of the cases. Some observers record the incidence of this unfavorable sequel as low as 1 to 2 per cent in solitary lesions; a higher incidence is noted in multiple lesions. Jaffe's series of hereditary multiple exostosis revealed development of chondrosarcoma in 3 of 28 cases or 11 per cent. He also pointed out that the incidence of malignant change in this same group might be higher because the survey was made at a time when the patients were still young. Changes in the nature of the tumor which are ominous signs are pain and increase in size. Occasionally malignant degeneration is initiated by injury to the implicated region. Development of a chondrosarcoma is usually exceedingly slow; often many months are required before its evolution is complete. It is interesting to note that often they reach appreciable dimensions before their true nature is disclosed.

**Roentgenographic Features.** Roentgenographically, osteocartilaginous exostoses exhibit more or less distinctive features. The base of the tumor may be broad or it may be a narrow pedicle; the former constitutes the sessile form and the latter the pedunculated variety (Fig. 429). The base comprises normal bone while its periphery is covered by a cartilaginous cap which may exhibit irregular areas of calcification. Varying degrees in the size of the cartilaginous covering are discernible in different tumors.

The neoplasm may appear as a narrow, regular imperceptible band or massive, irregular, calcifying lesion often referred to as a 'cauliflower mass.' Benign lesions exhibit a sharply delineated periphery and a base comprising normal bone which is continuous with the spongiosum of the shaft. On the other hand a hazy irregular, ill defined peripheral zone, a granular stippled appearance of the cartilaginous components and irregular areas of bone resorption at the base of the lesion are indicative of malignant transformations.

**Treatment and Prognosis.** Theoretically removal of an osteochondroma should include its periosteal covering this ensures against subsequent reformation of cartilaginous tissue which may give rise to recurrence of the tumor. Small tumors producing no symptoms and portraying no manifestations of reactivation require no treatment. It is justifiable to excise tumors which interfere with normal function of the knee joint or press on the surrounding tissues sufficiently to cause pain. If excision is attempted the operation should be a definitive one. It should be performed through normal osseous tissue beyond the limits of the tumor. Large tumors with prominent cartilaginous caps may not be amenable to local excision. In such instances resection is the procedure of choice. Lesions exhibiting clinical and histologic manifestations of sarcomatous transformations are treated in the manner described for the management of chondrosarcomas.

As recorded previously, the most pertinent change pointing to malignant degeneration is an insidious progressive enlargement of the tumor. In the light of this information it becomes apparent that known lesions should be checked roentgenographically at regular intervals to uncover any abnormalities in their physical character. Malignant changes are usually encountered after the age of 30 making it obvious that periodic evaluation of the tumors is more essential in adults than in children.

## CHONDROMA

Chondromas are benign tumors derived from cartilage, they are known also as enchondromas and chondromyxomas. They are encountered most commonly in the small bones of the hands and the feet; however, they occur also in tubular bones, particularly the humerus, the femur and the tibia. Males are affected more commonly than females, a ratio of slightly more than 2 to 1. The peak of incidence in all skeletal chondromas is between 20 and 30 years, the age range is between 10 and 70 years.

**Clinical Features.** Quiescent lesions may give rise to no symptoms. Not infrequently such lesions are uncovered accidentally by the roentgenologist. Neoplasms in the region of the knee and the shoulder joints may be responsible for mild pain associated with exertion, it is usually relieved by rest. As a rule, disability is insignificant or absent. Growing tumors may distend the shaft slowly, producing a uniform or eccentric swelling of the end of a tubular bone. Not infrequently the factor responsible for recognition of the lesion is a spontaneous fracture. This is particularly true in chondromas implicating the phalanges. Also, trivial trauma may produce a fracture. According to some workers the incidence of fracture is 10 per cent of all central chondromas. The average duration of symptoms prior to the time when a patient seeks medical aid is approximately 40.5 months.

Accentuation of existing symptoms and the presence of a tumor which increases slowly in size comprise highly suspicious clinical evidence of malignant transformation. Some observers record malignant alterations in 25 per cent of all chondromas. Malignant changes in tumors situated in long bones are not infrequent. On the other hand it is common knowledge that chondromas in the hand or the foot are innocuous. Development of malignant transformation in these lesions is highly unusual.

**Roentgenographic Features.** In roentgenograms of central chondromas certain





FIG. 430 Chondroma of the distal end of the femur. Case W. S. female aged 16. Symptoms of 2 years duration. A block resection of the lesion was done at the time of biopsy which confirmed the roentgenographic diagnosis. No evidence of recurrence 3 years after operation. (Bottom right) (Photomicrograph  $\times 200$ ) The tissues comprise adult hyaline cartilage the cells of which are round fusiform or stellate in shape. They vary in size. They are more or less uniformly small and contain a single round dark staining nucleus. (Bottom left) Specimen removed in block and split in 2 halves. Observe its cartilaginous nature. (Top left) Roentgenograms reveal a multilocular radiolucent lesion expansile in nature. The cortex of the femur medially and posteriorly is markedly thinned no evidence of new bone formation is discernible. (Top right) Roentgenograms taken 6 months post operatively disclose no evidence of recurrence of the lesion. The iliac bone grafts inserted into the defect at the time of operation are coalescing.

significant and characteristic features are discernible a radiolucent area fusiform or eccentric distention of the shaft of the bone marked thinning of the cortex absence of new bone formation and occasionally perforation of the thin cortex. Roentgenographically lesions in the long bones resemble closely bone cysts giant-cell tumors osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma and osteolytic metastatic lesions of carcinoma (Fig. 430)

In such cases it is extremely difficult to arrive at a final diagnosis on the clinical and roentgenographic features alone. The diagnosis can be established only by histologic examination of the tissue. This is most essential when radical treatment is contemplated. Irregular lines of calcification may be demonstrable throughout the tumor giving it a multilocular pattern.

Histologic Appearance Microscopi

cally the tumor offers no diagnostic problems. The tumor consists of normal adult hyaline cartilage. The cells vary in size and are usually round, some may be fusiform or stellate in shape, they tend to be in groups of 2 or 3. Areas of calcification may be found scattered throughout the tumor. Strands of connective tissue divide the tumor into facets of varying size, calcification is usually noted in cells close to the connective tissue fibers. The cells lie in lacunae, which are embedded in a hyaline ground appearance. The cartilage cells of a benign lesion are uniformly small with single nuclei which are small and round and are dark staining. Since the tumor has malignant tendencies, all portions of the neoplasm should be scrutinized before a diagnosis of a benign chondroma is made. Some areas of the tumor may disclose some myxomatous material.

**Treatment.** Chondromas are radioresistant tumors, surgical intervention is the treatment of choice. Any surgery on these lesions especially when located in the long bones, should be definitive. If a biopsy is done, complete removal of the tumor mass by excision or resection should follow. In the light of the knowledge that the tumor tends to recur following surgical procedures the aforementioned precautions are most essential. Some observers estimate the incidence of recurrences in large bones to be as high as 25 per cent.

It was noted previously that lesions in the small bones of the hands and the feet are definitely benign. Extirpation of these tumors invariably produces a cure. This is achieved best by meticulous curettage of the tumor then the cavity is cauterized by a saturated solution of zinc chloride followed by thorough irrigation with normal saline solution. New bone formation may be enhanced by packing the cavity with bone chips or small bone grafts.

Lesions in long bones must be excised completely or resected (Fig. 430). Tumors found in the humerus or the fibula lend

themselves to this form of surgery. If large portions of the shafts are affected, segmental resection followed by bone transplantation gives a satisfactory result. The author has performed this procedure for both chondromas and giant-cell tumors of the upper end of the humerus. On occasion the size and the location of the neoplasm make excision or resection impossible. In such cases amputation offers the only hope for the patient particularly if there are indications of malignant changes. Working on the premise that chondromas of the long bones are potentially malignant some surgeons raise the question as to whether one is justified in waiting for evidence of malignant transformations. Thus occasionally amputation is the procedure of choice before sarcomatous alterations manifest themselves.

**Case Report.** Case W S, a female aged 16 was unaware of any disorder of the left knee joint until 2 1/2-50 when she developed 'an aching knee.' The child's mother noticed a swelling on the inner side of the knee when she attempted to massage the region with a liniment. Upon further questioning the patient volunteered the statement that for the past 2 years she occasionally experienced a deep-seated ache in the joint following strenuous activity, invariably, the pain was relieved by rest up to the present episode. Examination of the affected limb revealed a bony, hard painless swelling immediately above the internal epicondyle of the femur. The skin and the soft tissues were freely movable over the mass, no distention of the veins was observed in the overlying skin. All movements of the knee joint were within normal limits the child walked with a normal gait. All laboratory studies disclosed normal findings. Roentgenographic studies revealed a large eccentric radiolucent area on the inner and posterior aspect of the lower end of the shaft of the femur. Calcified trabeculae within the tumor created a multilocular configuration. The shaft was expanded on its posterior and inner aspects the cortex was exceedingly thin but no break in its continuity was demonstrable. On the basis of these findings, the roentgenologist made a diagnosis of a tentative giant-cell tumor or chondroma. Histologic examination of the material from the tumor obtained by surgical biopsy disclosed the entity of the

neoplasm as being a chondroma (Fig 430) A block resection of the lesion was performed, and the defect was filled with cancellous bone grafts obtained from the iliac crest. The patient has made a complete recovery when seen 3 years following resection of the tumor no evidence of recurrence was demonstrable by roentgenographic study

#### BENIGN CHONDROBLASTOMA OF BONE

Codman was the first to recognize this tumor as a distinct entity and recorded the pertinent characteristics which set it apart from other tumors of cartilaginous derivation In 1931 he collected 9 cases from the Sarcoma Registry the lesions were listed under such diagnoses as osteogenic sarcoma chondrosarcoma and giant-cell tumors. He was of the opinion that they were essentially atypical giant-cell tumors having a predilection for the head of the humerus His enthusiasm stimulated new interest in cartilaginous tumors soon it became apparent that similar lesions arise in the epiphyseal regions of other long bones particularly in the lower end of the femur and the upper and the lower ends of the tibia.

Origin. Although there was considerable controversy relative to the origin of this tumor when first introduced by Codman now it is generally accepted that the lesion is in no way related to the giant-cell tumors that it has a cartilaginous origin and is a benign innocuous lesion Codman put forth the premise that it was an atypical giant-cell tumor arising in the region of the tuberosities of the head of the humerus at an age before the ossification of the epiphyseal cartilages was completed and that the "peculiar epithelioid cells which merge into a low-grade type of cartilage cell" found in the neoplasm arose from the epiphyseal cartilage He was supported by Willis who reported a case whose histologic structure conformed to the views of Codman

Other observers are in complete disagreement with this theory of origin Geschickter believes the lesions arise from the metaphyseal side of the epiphyseal line and that the proliferating tissue is of cartilage deri-

vation and not composed of giant cells he designated the lesion "chondroblastic tumors, benign and malignant" On the other hand Coley reports that he knows of no verified instance of metastasis of the tumor and that a cure was effected in all his cases by conservative measures. The author's experience supports the observation of Coley 6 cases of chondroblastoma have been treated by excision and curettage in all no evidence of recurrence or metastasis has occurred The observations of Jaffe and Lichtenstein support those of Coley they are convinced that the lesions have a cartilaginous origin and are benign they designate them "benign chondroblastoma of bone"

**Clinical Features.** Chondroblastomas are encountered between the ages of 12 and 24 at a time when the epiphyseal cartilages are not as yet obliterated by ossification Codman's cases fell into this age group Males are affected more frequently than females 80 per cent of the cases are observed in males As recorded previously tuberosities of the humerus the lower end of the femur and the upper and the lower ends of the tibia are the sites of predilection

Characteristic of the tumor is its mild insidious onset Its chronicity is demonstrated by the long interval between the onset of the disease and the treatment it ranges from 5 to 36 months The only significance that can be allocated to trauma is its role in making the patient cognizant of an existing lesion. At first there are pain and stiffness in the region of the knee joint varying degrees of disability may be present Later a definite tumefaction may be demonstrable Although the mass is not tender to superficial palpation firm pressure over the affected region may elicit tenderness Limping is present constantly in older lesions involving weight bearing bones particularly when they occur in the region of the knee or the ankle Varying degrees of atrophy of the quadriceps muscles are observed in cases implicating the

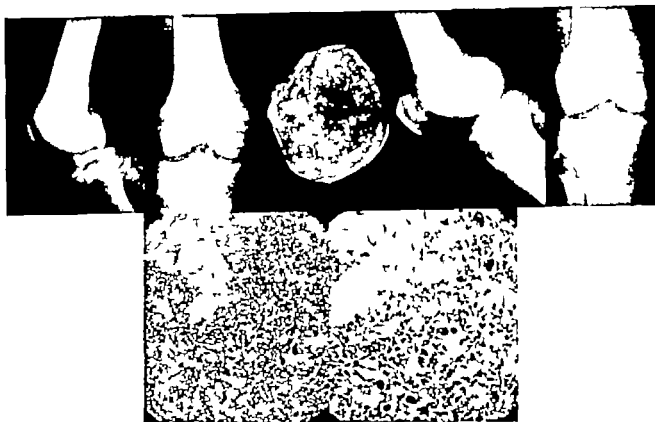


FIG. 431 (Top, left) Case E. P. chondroblastoma of the distal end of the femur. It does not implicate the articular cartilage. It is multilocular and exhibits a flocculent appearance. (Top, center) Specimen (sectioned) obtained after a block resection of the lesion was performed. Observe that it is well demarcated from the surrounding bone except at one area (upper right). (Top right) Roentgenograms showing complete resection of the tumor. (Bottom) (Photomicrographs  $\times 100$ ,  $\times 200$ ) Benign chondroblastoma. Observe the stellate character of the cells and the myxomatous stroma; also the fibroblastic proliferation and the numerous chondroblasts. Numerous giant cells are scattered throughout the field.

bones of the knee joint, on occasion an effusion is discernible in the joint. The benign nature of the neoplasm is evidenced by the clinical observation that conservative management results in a permanent cure.

**Roentgenographic Features.** It is interesting to note that chondroblastomas usually occupy an eccentric position in the involved bone (Fig. 431). As a rule, the lesion does not extend beyond the epiphyseal plate to involve the articular cartilage. Only one such case is on record reported by Jaffe wherein the neoplasm implicated the articular cartilage of the head of the humerus. The tumors are consistently small and are sharply demarcated from the surrounding normal bone by a zone of increased density; they present a "fluffy cotton wool

look'. Scattered throughout the tumor irregular areas of calcification are noted frequently, producing a multilocular, flocculent appearance. Trabeculations such as those seen in giant-cell tumors are absent. Occasionally new bone formation is demonstrable on the outer surface of the cortex of the shaft in the vicinity of the tumor; this periosteal response is more evident in older lesions.

**Microscopic Features.** Essentially, the cytologic pattern comprises masses of immature cartilage cells embedded in a cartilaginous matrix. The pattern varies in different tumors and even in different areas of the same specimen. In the early stages of development the tumor is more cellular than in the later stages and consists of compact

ovoid polyhedral cells varying in size the nucleus is relatively large, on occasion more than one nucleus is present. A variable number of multinuclear or giant cells are scattered throughout the field they appear to have no specific part in the cytologic scheme of the tumor. Occasionally one observes areas of calcification and ossification in the matrix, dispersed throughout the cellular elements. In addition, focal areas of necrosis may be demonstrable these stimulate a separative process whereby connective tissue is formed. As pointed out by Lichtenstein this connective tissue may assume the form of collagenous plaques resembling chondroid or osteoid matrix in some areas the latter may progress to osseous transformation.

**Diagnosis.** The neoplasms most likely to be mistaken for chondroblastoma are osteogenic sarcoma, chondroblastoma, sarcoma, giant-cell tumor and chondrosarcoma. Features which set it apart from other lesions are the location of the tumor, the benign course and the long duration of symptoms and its cytologic pattern.

**Treatment and Prognosis.** The treatment of choice is thorough curettage of the lesion or block excision of the mass where possible the resulting defect may be filled with cancellous bone chips to enhance obliteration of the cavity. Intensive irradiation is contraindicated because of the doubtful effect it has on the tumor and the severe soft tissue contraction that may occur. Amputation of a limb as a form of treatment is very seldom justified. The simple surgical measures outlined above eradicate the tumor and restore good function at the knee joint the same is true of lesions in the vicinity of other joints. In all the cases reported by Codman, Jaffe and Coley conservative management resulted in a permanent cure.

**Case Report.** Case E. P., a male aged 24, injured his right knee at work approximately 3 weeks prior to his admission (3-20-51) to the hospital. The knee became swollen and

painful on motion. After several days of rest the swelling and the acute tenderness disappeared gradually but he became aware of a hard lump like a golf ball on the inner aspect of the knee joint. Although the pain was not severe it was constant and he noted no diminution of the size of the tumor.

Physical examination of the affected region revealed slight swelling of the knee joint resulting from a moderate effusion in the joint cavity. A round, bony hard mass was palpable over the medial epicondyle of the femur was not particularly painful except when firm pressure was made over it. Laboratory investigations disclosed no abnormalities. Roentgenographic study showed a discrete round tumor confined to the upper and inner portion of the distal femoral epiphysis, part of the tumor had involved a portion of the metaphysis, occupied an eccentric position so that it extended beyond the limits of the cortex. It presented a woolly mottled appearance (Fig. 431). Histologic findings in the material obtained from the lesion were consistent with chondroblastoma of bone.

A block excision of the tumor mass was performed, and the base of the defect was curetted thoroughly. Full function was restored to the knee joint as yet no evidence of recurrence is demonstrable.

#### GIANT-CELL TUMOR

**Introduction.** It is now commonly conceded that giant-cell tumor is a benign primary bone neoplasm primarily affecting the ends of the shafts of long bones. Up to the time that the benignity of this lesion was definitely established many limbs were sacrificed needlessly under the erroneous diagnosis of osteogenic sarcoma. Such workers as Cooper, Paget, Millar, Gross, Stewart, Coley, Bloodgood and others contributed much valuable information relative to the true nature of this disorder and to them goes the credit for recognizing and emphasizing its benign characteristics although this is true of most giant-cell tumors it is now generally recognized that on occasion giant-cell tumors undergo malignant transformations and may metastasize to the lungs. Also such tumors have been encountered before any form of therapy was instituted. However the majority of malignant

giant-cell tumors have been observed following some form of therapy, usually irradiation

**Age and Sex** Analysis of the numerous series of giant-cell tumors reveals that the highest incidence is in the third decade, they are rarely found in children or in individuals past middle life. According to Geschickter and Copeland, 40 per cent of all giant-cell tumors occur between the ages of 20 and 30 years. Coley records 48 out of 124 cases occurring between 21 and 30, and 78 in 124 being between the ages of 21 and 40 years. There is no predilection as to sex, males and females are affected about equally

**Site.** The most common sites in order of frequency are the distal end of the femur, the proximal end of the tibia, the distal end of the radius and the upper end of the humerus. The first three locations account for at least 60 per cent of all giant-cell tumors. Coley reports that 14 cases implicating the patella have been recorded

One of the distinguishing features of giant-cell tumors is its location in the cancellous portion of the tubular bones; also, it appears primarily as a solitary lesion in the aforementioned sites. Nevertheless, they have been observed in all the bones of the body, including the skull. Usually, in the early stages of development the tumor occupies an eccentric position in the subcortical portion of the epiphysis; later by gradual expansion and destruction of the less-resistant cancellous bone it occupies a more central position. On occasion the tumors are completely eccentric, appearing to take origin beneath the periosteum; some observers have designated such tumors subperiosteal giant-cell tumors. Subperiosteal lesions resembling giant-cell tumors have been reported as arising from the shaft of long bones at a distance from the epiphyseal region. Some observers believe that these are true giant-cell tumors identical with those found in the epiphyseal regions, other workers are of the opinion that they comprise a distinct and separate entity, being

sequelae of subperiosteal hematoma. Lichtenstein regards this tumor as a distinct entity unrelated to giant-cell tumors arising in the epiphyseal regions of tubular bones and has designated it aneurysmal bone cyst.

**Etiology** The origin of giant-cell tumors remains a controversial subject; numerous theories have been advanced. Through the efforts of Stewart (1922) the theory of hemorrhagic osteomyelitis conceived by Barrie has been discarded. There are still some supporters of the neoplastic theory; some of whom postulate that the tumor arises from marrow cells, others are of the opinion that it originates from and consists of "bone formative cells" (Willis) which possess osteoclastic characteristics.

The most popular is the traumatic theory. Codman set forth the premise that rupture of a nutrient artery which fails to clot was the origin of all giant-cell tumors. From this nidus arises a pulsating mass of tissue which produces resorption of the adjacent cancellous bone trabeculae. The mass tends to progress centrally because cancellous bone is less resistant than cortical bone. Extension of the mass into the shaft is prevented by the pulsating bone marrow.

Geschickter and Copeland maintain that trauma following subperiosteal hemorrhage interrupts normal blood supply to the cortex of the adjacent bone. This results in increased osteoclastic activity in the subcortical region of the traumatized cortex and finally by hyperplasia of osteoclasts, a tissue designated giant-cell tumor is formed.

On the other hand Jaffe, Portis and Lichtenstein are convinced that giant-cell tumors are distinctive primary bone tumors originating from the non-bone-forming supporting connective tissue of the marrow. They emphasized that the tumor comprises a vascular network of spindle-shaped or ovoid stromal cells throughout which are interspersed multinuclear cells; this feature is an integral part of the cytologic pattern. Jaffe pointed out that the so-called giant cell variants are in no way related, clinical

cally or anatomically, to the true giant-cell tumor the only similarity is the benignity of the lesions and the favorable prognosis.

**Macroscopic Pathology Examination** of the gross specimens reveals the subcortical origin of the tumor. Usually they occupy an eccentric position and tend to invade the bone centrally, while the more resistant cortical bone acts as an effective barrier to peripheral expansion of the tumor. As a rule the affected portion of the bone is expanded and the tumor involves the epiphyseal region and the adjacent metaphysis. In more advanced lesions pronounced expansion of the bone and thinning of the cortical shell occurs; the cortical layer of bone may be perforated in several places. When this occurs the periosteum and a thin layer of newly formed bone replacing the original cortex, tends to delimit the tumor mass; even this last barrier may be overcome by the growing tumor causing invasion of the surrounding soft tissues. Once the osteoperiosteal cuff is perforated aggressive tumors may extend along intermuscular septa even cross the joint line to invade other bones. However only rarely does the tumor invade a joint; the articular cartilage resists invasion. It is not uncommon to observe in advanced lesions the cartilage still intact sitting like a cap on a mass of tumor tissue while the bony elements are totally destroyed. Extension of the tumor shaftward does not progress any appreciable distance beyond the metaphyseal region; yet only a thin fibrous or osseous zone may separate it from marrow. As recorded previously Codman believed that the pulsating bone marrow tends to limit the advance of the tumor.

Generally the tissue is very cellular varying in color and consistency in different tumors. As a rule it is friable disintegrates readily and bleeds freely; it ranges in color from red to black; on occasion it is firm puttylike and of a grayish white color. Interspersed throughout the tumor mass fibrous trabeculae—some fine others coarse—are often encountered; they appear to ex-

tend into the substance of the tumor from its periphery. Not infrequently, marked generalized oozing and even large spurting vessels are encountered during operation, indicating the great vascularity of the tumor. At times the hemorrhage may be difficult to control. Other tumors may be avascular permitting curettage without difficulty. The characteristics mentioned above may be altered by secondary changes within the tumor. Soft areas, colored a bright red or a bluish red are indications of hemorrhage; yellowish or orange isolated portions of the tumor point to necrosis of the tissue. In advanced lesions with marked secondary alterations the tumors take on a cystic appearance.

**Microscopic Pathology** As in the gross specimens the histologic picture varies in different tumors or in different areas of the same tumor, depending upon the stage of development of the neoplasm and the degree and the intensity of the secondary changes within it. In tumors exhibiting no (or only minimal) secondary changes, the tissue consists of a characteristic stroma made up of mononuclear spindle or ovoid cells varying numbers of multinuclear giant cells and small amounts of intercellular collagenous substance consisting of fine fibers. The cytologic pattern described above is most applicable to regions of the tumor which disclose few or no secondary alterations.

The ratio of spindle to ovoid cells varies in different tumors. These cells contain a single round or elongated nucleus which occupies a considerable portion of the cell. In addition each nucleus exhibits a well defined central nucleolus and a moderate amount of evenly distributed chromatin material. Usually the ovoid cells are found in greater numbers than the spindle cells. The outline of the cytoplasm of the stromal cells may be indistinct and exhibit delicate cytoplasmic processes. As recorded previously Jaffe is of the opinion that the most plausible origin of stromal cells is from mesen-

chymal supporting connective tissue of the marrow. Some stromal cells disclose mitotic division.

Irregularly dispersed throughout the stroma are the multinucleated giant cells measuring from 30 to 100 or more microns. The number of these cells per field varies; generally, the number demonstrable in the low power field ranges from 10 to 35 cells. The nuclei of the giant cells vary in number from 15 to 100 or more per cell; they tend to occupy a central position in the cell. It is interesting to note the remarkable similarity of the nuclei of the giant cells to the nuclei of the ovoid stromal cells. This similarity forms the basis of the premise supported by some observers that the giant cells are formed by fusion of stromal cells.

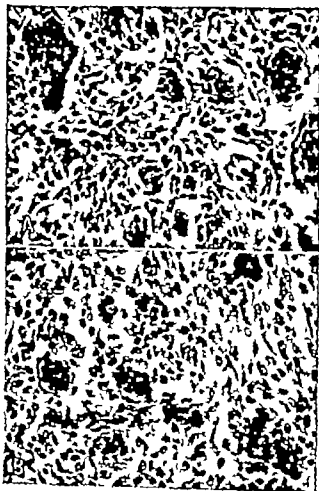
In uncomplicated giant-cell tumors col-

lagen fibers are not abundant. The collagenous material is more plentiful when the stromal cells exhibit a loosely arranged pattern than in a compact arrangement of the stromal cells. Vascularity of the tumor tissue is also a variable feature; the vascular spaces are thin walled, composed of flattened endothelial cells. Not infrequently tumor cells are demonstrable in close relation with the walls of the blood channels. Areas of hemorrhage may be discernible throughout the tumor tissue.

Credit goes to Jaffe for emphasizing the alterations that occur in the stromal cells when malignant transformations are occurring in a giant-cell tumor. He is of the opinion that a typical, uncomplicated giant-cell tumor exhibits a characteristic stromal pattern. Changes in this pattern indicate

FIG 432 (A) (*Top*) Tissue from a giant-cell tumor of Grade I that occupied the head and the neck of a humerus in a woman of 30 ( $\times 275$ ). There was no preoperative irradiation of this tumor. Note the abundance of large giant cells and the predominantly spindle-shaped and not closely compacted stromal cells between them. The stromal cells presented few mitoses and no evidences of atypism. Altogether, this histologic picture represents what can definitely be called a "benign" giant-cell tumor, curettage and postoperative irradiation of the lesion were followed within a year by substantial repair of the affected area.

(*Bottom*) Tissue from a giant-cell tumor still properly classifiable as belonging to Grade I but no longer so clearly "benign" as the tumor of above ( $\times 245$ ). The lesion occupied the head and the neck of a femur in a woman of 22. There was no preoperative irradiation of the tumor. Note that the giant cells are rather abundant between the stromal cells and that the latter are abundant but not closely compacted. The stromal cells do not show appreciable atypism, but here and there some of them have large nuclei and an occasional one even has two nuclei. In this case, postoperative irradiation was not followed by prompt clinical improvement. Eventually we lost sight of this patient because she left the country. (Jaffe, H. L., et al. Arch. Path. 30: 993)





the aggressiveness of the tumor, certain features pointing to a frankly malignant giant cell tumor. He describes three grades of aggressiveness.

Grade I is the least aggressive. In this tumor there is a loose arrangement of the cells with no appreciable atypism of the stromal cells. Grade II is more aggressive. Tumors in this category tend to recur and may even assume characteristics of Grade III. The stroma cells are in greater abundance than in Grade I, forming a compact stromal pattern and disclosing definite manifestations of atypism. Grade III is characterized by a dense compact stroma

with an irregular whorled atypism. Tumors in this group are malignant lesions and usually metastasize to the lungs. Generally, they represent malignant transformations occurring in Grades I and II but occasionally begin as Grade III neoplasms (Fig. 432).

**Clinical Features.** A survey of the many reported series of giant-cell tumors reveals that the highest incidence occurs in the third decennium; they are exceedingly rare before the age of 20; nevertheless, a few cases have been reported. The author has observed a giant-cell tumor in an adolescent 15 years of age; the tumor occurred

FIG. 432 (B) (Top) Tissue from a giant-cell tumor already classified as belonging to Grade II ( $\times 285$ ). The lesion occupied the lower end of a femur in a man of 36.



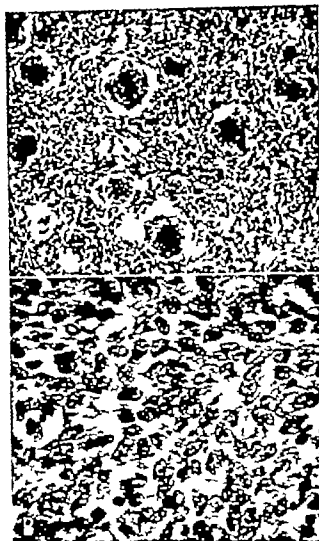
There was no preoperative irradiation of the tumor. Note the compaction of the stromal cells and the presence of multiple nuclei in some of them. More of the stromal cells showed mitoses than show them in a tumor of Grade I. Despite postoperative irradiation the lesion progressed, and 2½ years later the histologic picture had changed completely, the lesion having become frankly malignant.

(Bottom) Tissue from a giant-cell tumor of Grade II that occupied the lower end of a femur in a woman aged 23 ( $\times 90$ ). The tissue shown represents material obtained from the lesion through curettage some time after a thorough course of radiation therapy had failed to control its progression. Subsequently the lesion became infected and fungated and the limb was amputated. Note that the field illustrated contains numerous densely compacted spindle-shaped stromal cells but that hyalinization of the stroma which would indicate an irradiation effect, is absent. Note also that hardly any giant cells are to be seen in the photomicrograph. In other fields of the tumor, however, they were very numerous and the histologic architecture altogether so characteristic that there could be no doubt that one was dealing with a giant-cell tumor in spite of the concomitant presence of more ominous-looking areas like the one shown (Jaffe H. I. et al. Arch. Path. 30: 993).

In the upper end of the humerus. Frequently, the patient's attention is focused on the affected region by some form of trauma. Pain of varying intensity is the cardinal symptom. It may be intermittent, relieved by rest and accentuated by activity. Some limitation of motion and dysfunction of the knee joint are usually discernible. As the tumor progresses the pain becomes constant and more severe. It may be more pronounced at night, interfering with the patient's sleep. At times slight swelling and tenderness on palpation may be the factors that make the patient aware of the pathologic process. In most instances, because of its insidious nature, the tumor attains an appreciable size before its entity is uncovered. One case in the author's files implicating the upper end of the tibia had progressed to such a degree that the involved region was at least twice its natural size. In fact, medical aid was requested only after a pathologic fracture had occurred. The amount of swelling in the region of the knee joint varies. Occasionally, swelling of the limb distal to the lesion is demonstrable. Expansion of the shaft and thinning of the cortex may result in a spontaneous fracture. When this occurs, all symptoms become more pronounced and functional impairment of the extremity is increased.

**Physical Findings.** As indicated the tumor grows insidiously, hence, no physical evidence may be evident during the early stages. However as a rule varying degrees of impairment of the function of the knee joint are manifested early and its intensity parallels the growth of the neoplasm. The topographic anatomy of the knee joint permits early detection of any swelling. Palpation may reveal an eccentric tumefaction of the femur or the tibia particularly in more advanced cases. Pressure over the affected region invariably elicits tenderness.

As the tumor progresses the above signs and symptoms are accentuated. The affected region appears to be fuller and more promi-



**FIG 432 (C) (Top)** Tissue from a giant-cell tumor of Grade II which occupied the lower end of a femur of a man, aged 44 ( $\times 150$ ). Radiation was not given preoperatively but was used after thorough curettage. Nevertheless, there was a recurrence, associated with infection and fungation, necessitating ablation of the limb about 1½ years later. The field illustrated is from the tissue originally curetted. Note, between the giant cells, the densely compacted stromal cells in a somewhat irregular whorled arrangement. In the field illustrated, these cells when studied in detail did not present much atypism, but in other fields (*bottom*) they did. This shows the necessity for studying the details of the stromal cells from many areas and gauging the prognosis of the lesion by its most ominous-looking parts.

**(Bottom)** A stromal cell field showing atypism from the same tumor as above ( $\times 550$ ). Note that several of the cells contain two or more nuclei; that the nuclei in general are large and that many of them show hyperchromatism. (Jaffe, H. L. et al. Arch. Path. 30: 602)

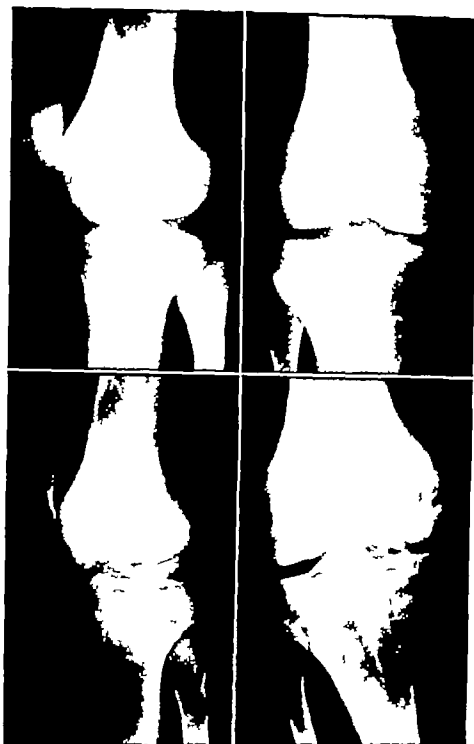


FIG. 433 (Top) Giant-cell tumor of the inner femoral condyle. Case L. C. male aged 31. Observe the eccentric position of the lesion; the inner cortex of the femur is markedly thinned but the articular surface is not involved. (Bottom) This patient was treated elsewhere by irradiation; the joint changes which ensued are depicted. These roentgenograms were taken 5 years later. Note the joint changes which have occurred. The patient now has constant pain and marked limitation of motion. Roentgenographically there is some evidence of recurrence of the lesion in the epicondylar region. This was proved by biopsy. Eventually this limb was amputated.

nent than the normal side. Some effusion may be demonstrable in the articular cavity of the knee joint. Motion of the joint is definitely impaired and guarded by protective muscle spasm, the knee may be held constantly in slight flexion. One patient exhibited a fixed flexion contraction of  $30^{\circ}$  he walked on the ball of his foot with a decided limp. Pressure over the expanded position of the affected bone manifests considerable tenderness. In all instances the skin is freely movable over the bony prominences of the knee joint and over the implicated bone and exhibits no significant diagnostic features. In very vascular and rapidly growing neoplasms a sense of pulsation in the tumor may be elicited; this is an exceedingly rare finding. The rarity of pulsating

giant-cell tumors is reflected in the paucity of this lesion in the literature, up to 1947 only 7 such tumors had been recorded. This feature is more commonly associated with thyroid or renal metastasis to bone.

**Roentgenographic Features.** It must be emphasized that the roentgenographic features of a giant-cell tumor are extremely variable. The most pertinent findings are an eccentrically placed radiolucent area in the ends of the bones, thinning and expansion of the cortical bone and the age of the patient (usually the third decade) (Fig. 433). Also of significance is the absence of periosteal bone formation over the expanded cortex. Although the aforementioned findings are subjective of a giant-cell tumor, clinical experience discloses that they are



FIG. 434. Recurrent giant-cell tumor with malignant transformation. Case S. W., male, aged 42. A biopsy of the lower end of the femur was done; a diagnosis of giant-cell tumor was made by histologic examination. Irradiation was given elsewhere. 3 years later the lesion continued to grow and presented the features depicted herein. Note the multilocular pattern following irradiation. A biopsy at this time revealed sarcomatous transformation of the tumor. Adequate treatment was not given at this time (the limb should have been amputated); 1 year later the patient died of pulmonary metastasis.

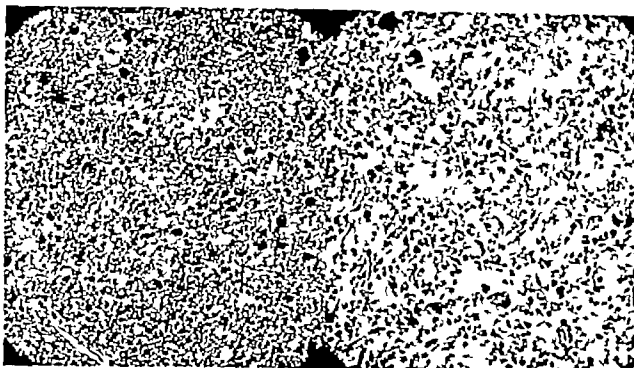


FIG 435 Tissue obtained from a benign giant-cell tumor of the upper end of the tibia in a male 22 years old. Observe the cytologic pattern of the stroma the stroma consists of numerous mononuclear ovoid and spindle cells and small amounts of inter cellular collagenous substance which exhibits fine fibrils. Many multinucleated giant cells of varying size and with varying numbers of nuclei are discernible (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ )

not infallible and the ultimate diagnosis must be made by histologic investigation of material obtained from the affected region. Simple radiolucent areas in the epiphyseal region of tubular bones possessing roentgenographic features suggestive of a giant cell tumor may also be produced by lesions such as osteolytic metastatic tumors and cortical osteogenic sarcomas. This again substantiates the importance of histologic study before a final diagnosis is possible (Fig 435).

In the early stages only an eccentrically placed area of rarefaction may be observed. Later with resorption of the cancellous bone the lesion occupies a more central position (Fig 433 top). Fine or coarse trabeculae may traverse the tumor giving it a bubblelike pattern. The affected areas of the femur the tibia or the fibula expand the cortical shell becomes thin and may even reveal evidence of perforation by a break in

its continuity. In untreated cases this multilocular configuration is relatively rare, and when present other lesions than giant-cell tumors must be seriously considered (Fig 434). Notably among these are nonosteogenic fibroma enchondroma hemangioma and fibrous dysplasia. Generally the neoplasm does not extend far beyond the limits of the metaphysis into the shaft. Total destruction of all the bony elements may occur in the implicated region of the affected bone the limits of the tumor being maintained by a barely perceptible thin bony shell and a thickened periosteal tube. Occasionally only the periosteal covering remains in certain areas around the tumor. As indicated previously the cartilage resists invasion and may become calcified. New bone may form on its surface opposite the tumor tissue so that in roentgenograms it is discernible as a thin smooth line of increased density. At no time is roentgenographic evidence of peri-

osteal reaction present, resulting in new bone formation, also no soft tissue swelling is demonstrable except when the lesion has ruptured through the limiting periosteal membrane and implicates the surrounding soft tissues such a complication is rare. In the event of fracture, displacement of the fragments is not pronounced. No evidence of repair is evident clinically or roentgenographically.

**Diagnosis.** The age of the patient and the location of the tumor are the two most significant factors in establishing a diagnosis of giant-cell tumors. Nevertheless, there are several entities, neoplastic and non neoplastic, which may resemble closely the characteristics of these tumors, both clinically and roentgenographically. It becomes apparent that before any therapeutic modality is instituted, the diagnosis of giant-cell tumor should be confirmed by histologic examination. Osseous lesions which are more apt to be confused with giant-cell tumors are (1) bone cyst, (2) malignant giant-cell tumor, (3) medullary osteogenic sarcoma, (4) benign chondroblastoma of bone, (5) hyperparathyroidism, (6) metastatic carcinoma, (7) myeloma and (8) fibrous dysplasia.

**BONE CYST.** If one is not aware of the subtleties in diagnosis of a giant-cell tumor, this lesion may be interpreted fallaciously as a bone cyst in some instances. Bone cysts possess certain characteristics which closely resemble giant-cell tumors. In the region of the knee joint they usually are situated in the upper ends of the tibia and the fibula or in the lower end of the femur in close proximity to the epiphyseal cartilages they exhibit expansive tendencies (the transverse dimensions of the shaft increase and the cortical shell may become so thin that fracture ensues) their cytologic pattern may bear resemblance to that of giant-cell tumors and finally to their benignity.

The features that set giant tumors apart from bone cysts are (1) their occurrence in an older age group after epiphyseal ossi-

fication is complete, (2) giant-cell tumors occupy an eccentric position in the region of the epiphysis on the epiphyseal side of the metaphysis, (3) bone cysts occur in younger individuals in whom the epiphyseal line is still open, the lesion arises on the diaphyseal side of the metaphysis.

Although both lesions are considered as benign the clinical course of bone cysts differs from that of giant-cell tumors in their mildness. It is common knowledge that many bone cysts cause no symptoms and are uncovered only by chance or when a fracture occurs. Fracture through a bone cyst initiates a reparative process which, on occasions, may not only heal the fracture but also obliterate the cyst. Reparative processes of this nature never are encountered in pathologic fractures occurring in giant-cell tumors.

Occasionally the cytologic patterns of the two entities may bear such a close resemblance to one another that of necessity the final diagnosis must depend upon the clinical course of the lesions, the age of the patient, the location of the lesion in reference to the epiphyseal line and the roentgenographic features.

**MALIGNANT GIANT-CELL TUMORS.** Clinical and roentgenographic features of a malignant giant tumor are not sufficient to establish a positive diagnosis. The true nature of this lesion can be detected only by microscopic examination which reveals the sarcomatous stroma of the tumor. On the other hand giant-cell tumors which undergo malignant transformation following irradiation surgery, or both manifest their true character by recurrence of symptoms at varying periods following the initial therapeutic modalities (Fig. 434). The diagnosis is substantiated by histologic study of the material constituting the tumor. It is obvious, of course, that clinical evidence of pulmonary metastasis following treatment of a supposedly benign lesion confirms the malignant nature of the lesion.

**BENIGN CHONDROBLASTOMA OF BONE.** On

occasion this lesion may be confused with a giant-cell tumor. When Codman first described it in 1931 he was of the opinion that it occurred solely in the greater tuberosity of the head of the humerus. Now it is known to occur in the ends of the tubular bones. It is encountered in a younger age group than giant-cell tumors before the ossification of the epiphyseal plate and does not progress beyond the epiphyseal cartilage to involve the articular cartilage. The tumors are consistently small and sharply delineated from the surrounding normal bone by an area of increased density. As a rule no trabeculations are discernible in the tumor which has a "fluffy cotton wool" appearance in the roentgenogram. Their clinical course is by far more benign than that of giant-cell tumors and microscopic examination identifies them readily and discloses their cartilaginous derivation.

**HYPERPARATHYROIDISM.** Osseous lesions associated with hyperparathyroidism are non neoplastic and are usually multiple in involving many or all of the bones of the body. The lesions are more or less diffuse chiefly implicating the shaft of the bones. However it is not unusual to encounter localized radiolucent areas in the ends of bones which resemble giant-cell tumors. Moreover microscopic examination may fail to differentiate the lesions from genuine giant-cell tumors because of the close similarity in the histologic sections. It becomes apparent that these difficulties in diagnosis may deter the correct treatment in the individual case or may be responsible for instituting wrong therapy.

Study of the blood constituents establishes the diagnosis. Normal serum levels of calcium, phosphorus and phosphate are present in giant-cell tumors. In hyperparathyroidism the serum calcium and the phosphate are elevated and the phosphorus is

ticularly when the lesions present an expanded appearance and are traversed by trabeculae giving the lesion a multilocular pattern. This lesion is most often misdiagnosed as one of the so-called variants of giant-cell tumors—subperiosteal giant-cell tumor. The inconspicuous clinical course and its chronicity distinguish it from giant-cell tumors. However should spontaneous fracture occur identification of the lesion on the clinical and roentgenographic features alone becomes more difficult and involved. Final diagnosis must be made by histologic examination.

**OSTEOGENIC SARCOMA.** It is not too unusual for a giant-cell tumor to be overdiagnosed as an osteogenic sarcoma; the dangers of this mistake are obvious. Moreover medullary or central osteogenic sarcomas may be underdiagnosed as giant-cell tumors. This osteogenic sarcoma may arise in the distal end of the femur and the upper ends of the tibia and the fibula and in the early stages of development it may pursue a clinical course not unlike that of giant-cell tumors. Roentgenographically a radiolucent lesion is demonstrable in the epiphyseal regions of the femur, the tibia and the fibula consistent with an osteolytic process; no new bone formation is discernible. Hence even by roentgenographic study the sarcomatous lesion may not differ essentially from giant-cell tumor. Histologic examination is the only diagnostic aid that will establish the identity of the tumor.

**METASTATIC CARCINOMA.** Occasionally isolated metastatic lesions of the bones in the region of the knee joint may occur. The upper end of the humerus is another site of predilection for metastatic tumors; renal and thyroid lesions most likely to produce solitary lesions. One case of hyperparathyroidism treated by the author provided a lesion in the upper end of the humerus which required resection of the

new bone formation. Aids in establishing the diagnosis are the patient's age (such lesions usually occur after the third decade), the general physical status, the demonstration of a primary lesion and microscopic examination of the tissue.

In the same vein, other osseous lesions that must be considered in the differential diagnosis are central chondroma and such tumors of the marrow cells as plasma-cell myeloma, myelocytoma, lymphocytoma and erythroblastoma.

**Treatment.** As yet there is no unanimity as to the mode of treatment that produces the highest incidences of cures. This stems from two causes: (1) lack of well-controlled large series of cases treated by surgery or irradiation and followed for a sufficiently long period of time (5 to 10 years) and (2) failure to correlate the various modalities of therapy with the malignant potentialities of the tumor as discernible by its cytologic pattern. As pointed out by Lichtenstein it is difficult to evaluate the efficacy of any method unless such a study is undertaken and carried out to a successful conclusion. It is very probable that giant-cell tumors exhibiting genuine benign cytologic features may respond to surgery as well as irradiation while more aggressive tumors may tend to recur or even become frankly malignant, metastasizing to the lungs in spite of the therapeutic measures employed. Moreover, there is a sad need of standardization of roentgen therapy: no two radiotherapists employ the same formula.

Essentially there are two methods of treatment for giant-cell tumors—irradiation and surgery. Some investigators contend that treatment by roentgen rays causes less impairment of function and is followed by few recurrences. On the other hand, exponents of the surgical management maintain that this method is followed by shorter periods of disability, that fracture is a common sequel of irradiation and that sarcomatous changes may appear in irradiated bone. Coley notes that 25 per cent of the

cases of giant-cell tumors of long bones treated by irradiation sustained pathologic fractures.

In this country at least, there is a general trend to favor the surgical approach to this problem and employ roentgen rays only in tumors inaccessible to surgery or in lesions which have progressed to such a stage that complete extirpation of the tumor tissue is impossible. Irradiation is used also in lesions that have caused total destruction of the joint and when the tumor tissue has invaded the joint cavity. The surgical procedures employed are curettage, resection and amputation.

**CURETTAGE.** Small giant-cell tumors or tumors which are still at a distance from the articular surfaces in the lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia are especially amenable to curettage, while those in the upper end of the fibula lend themselves nicely to resection.

Advanced lesions in the femur and the tibia implicating the articular cartilage are less suited for curettage because incongruity of the weight-bearing surfaces is inevitable and severe impairment of function may ensue. This is not true in lesions of the upper end of the humerus.

Surgical approaches to giant-cell tumors in the region of the knee, as elsewhere in the body, should provide adequate visualization of all aspects of the affected region. This is essential to a correct evaluation of the extent of the lesion and for gaining access to all tumor tissue.

Tumors situated in the condyles of the femur may be exposed by vertical skin incision from 5 to 6 inches in length made directly on the respective condyles. For exposure of lesions in the condyles of the tibia, hockey-stick-shaped incisions may be employed: the vertical limb of the incisions parallels the margins of the patellar tendon while the horizontal limb runs immediately below the superior margins of the tibial condyles (Fig. 436). After complete hemostasis of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue the



*Cancellous  
bone chips*

*Rib struts*

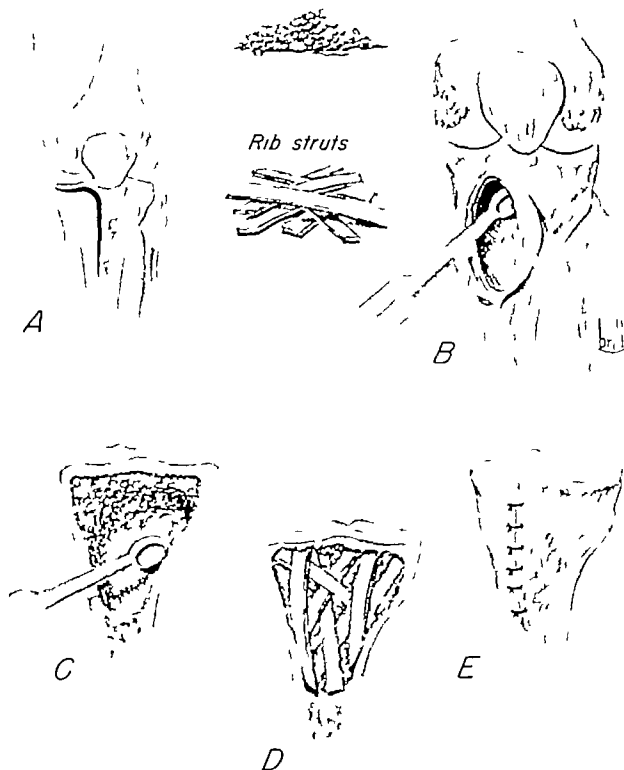


FIG. 436 (A, B and C) Technic of curettage of giant-cell tumor of the upper end of the tibia. (D and E) Packing the defect with cancellous bone chips and bone struts and closure of the defect.

skin edges are fastened to towels by skin clips to protect the wound edges from exposure and contamination. In approaches for lesions implicating the femoral condyles, the next step is division of the fascia of the leg in line with the skin incision. Then the muscles are split along the line of their fibers by separation of the muscle masses, the periosteum of the femur comes into view. At this point emphasis should be placed on care and gentleness to be exercised while obtaining the desired exposure. All soft tissues are covered and packed away from the involved bone by large hot sponges. By so doing, contamination of the tissues by tumor material will be averted as it is being removed from the bone cavity.

Generally, the periosteal tube around the affected area is intact. It is divided longitudinally down to the bone and reflected to either side. The thin cortical shell is perforated readily with a bone gauge, and the opening is enlarged by rongeurs until all areas within the cavity are accessible. All tumor material is removed with a large curet taking care to avoid spilling. An angular curet facilitates its removal from the roof of the cavity. Curettage is continued until normal healthy bone is reached. Then the cavity is flushed thoroughly with normal saline solution and is sucked dry. This is repeated several times until all loose fragments of tissue are removed. Next the cavity is swabbed with a solution of saturated zinc chloride and then flushed again with normal saline solution. Finally, the cavity is packed tightly with a hot gauze sponge which is left in situ while bone chips are being prepared to fill the defect.

Small cavities with an intact cortical shell are packed with small bone chips obtained from the iliac crest. Bank bone may also be used for this purpose. Not infrequently the defect is large after curettage or the cavity collapses after its contents have been removed as a result of dissolution of the cortical shell. In these instances it is advantageous to use 4 or 5 long strips

of bone in the cavity as struts, they are placed parallel with the long axis of the shaft of the femur. To enhance osteogenesis the spaces between the struts are packed with autogenous cancellous bone chips. Rib bones split in halves make admirable bone struts for this purpose. (A supply of rib bone is always available in the bone bank.)

The periosteum is closed over the defect with interrupted cotton sutures, and the muscle is allowed to fall into its natural position. Its edges are also approximated with interrupted nonabsorbable sutures. Accurate coaption of the fascia and the skin is achieved in a similar fashion.

If the defect is small, no external fixation is necessary. An elastic bandage applied over a layer of cotton padding and making uniform pressure provides sufficient splinting. In these cases early joint function without weight-bearing is encouraged. After the acute postoperative reaction has subsided, partial and later full weight bearing is permitted. In the event that a pathologic fracture was sustained prior to curettage, or if a large defect is present with a cortical shell so thin that fracture is inevitable if unprotected following curettage, the limb should be protected until new bone formation obliterates the defect. For lesions in the femur a plaster-of-Paris spica extending from the axilla to the toes on the affected side affords the best protection. After 5 or 6 weeks this may be replaced by a long leg cast extending from the toes to the groin. When roentgenograms exhibit obliteration of the cavity a Thomas ischial weight bearing caliper is applied and weight-bearing is started. Physical measures to restore joint function are instituted. The limb should be protected until there is sufficient roentgenologic evidence that fracture will not occur.

**RESECTION.** Giant-cell tumors of the upper end of the fibula are treated best by resection. In performing this procedure care should be taken to remove sufficient normal bone distal to the tumor. This ensures ablation of the lesion in toto. Moreover the

peroneal nerve as it winds around the head of the fibula must be freed meticulously and retracted out of danger. The technic for resection of the upper end of the fibula is described on page 709.

**AMPUTATION.** Comprehension of the true nature of a genuine giant-cell tumor has greatly reduced the number of amputations to eradicate the malady. Amputation of a limb is justifiable only when there is clinical and histologic evidence that the neoplasm has undergone malignant transformation following treatment by irradiation or surgery. On occasion such undesirable sequelae as infection and irradiation necrosis may render the extremity useless, here amputation is advisable. An occasional lesion may exhibit on histologic examination unequivocal evidence of malignancy in such instances primary amputation is mandatory. The site of amputation depends upon the location of the malignant lesion. If it involves the fibula or the upper end of the tibia amputation is performed through the supracondylar level of the femur. This site provides a suitable weight-bearing stump. High thigh amputations are performed for malignant giant-cell tumors situated in the distal end of the femur. (The techniques for amputations at different levels are described in Chapter 13.)

**Prognosis.** Prognosis of a giant-cell tumor is predicated on many factors. Notably are the age of the patient, the site of the tumor and the characteristics of the stromal cells. In general the outlook is better in young individuals. Lesions of the upper extremity give a more favorable prognosis than those in the lower extremity. Clinical experience discloses that the prognosis is unfavorable in lesions which tend to recur following treatment. Such behavior should arouse suspicion of malignant transformation and should influence the prognosis accordingly.

Jaffe's observation on the aggressiveness of giant-cell tumor based on changes in the cytologic pattern of the stromal cell

provides valuable aid in prognosticating the clinical behavior of a tumor in point. Also it is reasonable to believe that in the future this information will influence the choice of treatment to be employed.

#### SOLITARY BONE CYST

**Introduction.** This lesion is now accepted as a distinct entity possessing distinguishing clinical, roentgenographic and cytologic characteristics. It has a predilection for the ends of long bones, its most prevalent site being the upper end of the humerus, the femur and the tibia. However there is no unanimity of opinion relative to the origin of this lesion; this stems from the close similarity of bone cysts to giant-cell tumors.

Three distinct varieties of this lesion are recognized: (1) the most common form is the bone cyst found in young children in the metaphysis of long bones (on the diaphyseal side of the epiphyseal plate), (2) in latent bone cysts observed in older children and adults which is located in the shaft of the bone at some distance from the epiphyseal line (an older form of the first variety which during the period of bone growth has migrated toward the middle of the shaft) and (3) that group encountered during adolescence—this lesion borders on the epiphyseal disk and exhibits more acute clinical manifestation than do the other two varieties. Histologically they bear close resemblance to giant-cell tumors. Coley considers this lesion an intermediate form between simple bone cyst and giant-cell tumors, whereas Geschickter considers it as a giant-cell variant of bone cyst (Fig. 437).

Origin. Virchow (1878) was the first to describe bone cyst; this initiated much speculation concerning the origin of the lesion. Numerous diversified concepts as to its source of origin have been advanced; unfortunately each one lacks uncontestable evidence for acceptance.

There are those who are of the opinion that the lesion results from metabolic dis-

turbance (Sisk), a theory not substantiated by other workers. Other investigators have proposed that the disease is caused by intra medullary inflammation (Bloodgood, Pfeiffer) however, bacteriologic investigation has failed to provide conclusive evidence to support this theory. Trauma and hemorrhage have aroused the interest of many workers who have attempted to correlate these factors with formation of bone cysts (Mouclaire and Burnier, Pommer, Jenckel and Mikulicz).

More recently Geschickter and Copeland contended that a close relationship exists between the constituents of bone cysts and those of giant-cell tumor. They maintain that the elements of bone cysts represent a reparative process of bony elements taking place around an area of bone destruction which soon becomes arrested; the healing or reparative phase may persist for many years giving rise to the latent bone cyst. Failure to collapse the bony wall of the cyst is responsible for persistence of the lesion into adult life. This fact is substantiated by the knowledge that fracture of the cortical shell spontaneous or surgical usually is followed by rapid healing; complete obliteration of the cyst may occur.

**Age, Incidence and Site.** Solitary bony cysts are encountered between the ages of 5 and 15 years; the intermediate variety (Coley) or giant-cell variant (Geschickter and Copeland) are seen during adolescence while the latent inactive form is observed in older individuals in whom the lesion has a much longer history or has caused no symptoms.

Approximately 50 per cent of all cases of bone cysts are located in the upper ends of the humerus and the femur; the next site in order of frequency is the upper end of the tibia. Males are affected more frequently than females. The highest incidence occurs between 6 and 10 years; the age ranges from 3.5 to 60 years; the average being 16.4 years.

The pertinent distinguishing feature of

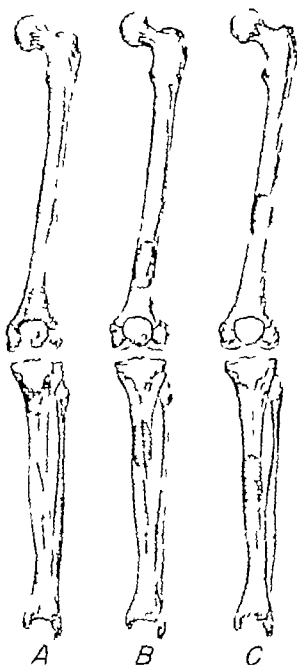


FIG. 437 Types of cysts. (A) Intermediate variety between bone cyst and giant-cell tumor found during adolescence. (B) Bone cyst appearing in childhood. (C) Latent bone cyst encountered in older children and adults.

active bone cysts which set them apart from giant-cell tumors is their metaphyseal location always on the diaphysial side of the epiphyseal plate. This region is also the site of origin for the quiescent or latent variety but they gradually migrate toward the mid-shaft as the bone grows.

**Pathology.** Gross investigation discloses





FIG 438 (*Top, left*) Bone cyst in the upper end of the tibia of a female, aged 6. Observe the radiolucent nature of the lesion and its juxta-epiphyseal location. The cortex of the tibia is thin; no evidence of new bone formation is discernible. (*Top, right*) The cyst was curetted and packed with bone chips and bone struts; observe the coalescence of the bone chips and the partial obliteration of the cavity. (*Bottom*) Cytologic pattern of material removed in this case. Note the multinucleated giant cells dispersed throughout the tissue, resembling osteitis fibrosa; endothelial cells and fibroblasts are demonstrable. (Photomicrographs: left  $\times 100$ , right  $\times 200$ )

tibia are not under cover of fleshy muscle masses; hence, varying degrees of swelling may be discernible. Advanced lesions in the femur, and especially in the tibia, may pro-

duce a fusiform enlargement that is readily demonstrable by palpation. This becomes even more apparent when the affected side is compared with the opposite side.

that the constituents comprising bone cysts vary in different lesions. The age of the patient and the duration of the lesion are responsible in part for this variation. Lesions of short duration exhibit a thin enveloping bony shell. Bloodgood pointed out that a bone cyst may or may not possess a connective tissue lining the contents of the cyst may consist of a cavity filled with a yellowish fluid or a solid mesh of fibrous tissue (osteitis fibrosa) occasionally numerous small cavities are encountered (multilocular cysts).

According to Coley the neoplasm is initiated by a subcortical hemorrhage followed first by localized bone destruction then granulation tissue containing osteoclasts (giant cells) fibrosis and finally cyst formation. Geschickter and Copeland describe the sequence of the process as follows: first the formation of giant-cell areas followed by the appearance of new blood channels and hemorrhage; absorption of the hemorrhage follows; this results in the formation of cysts lined with connective tissue which ultimately is transformed into bone.

Progression of bone cysts is usually slow; its rate of growth parallels the intensity of the symptoms. The implicated bone portion expands slowly as the overlying cortex becomes very thin. The more acute forms exhibit no evidence of bone reaction although some condensation of the bony shell is demonstrable in the latent forms. Minor trauma may result in fracture of the weakened bone. Generally fracture stimulates a reparative process evidenced by new bone formation. On occasion the healing following fracture is sufficient to obliterate the cyst.

Microscopic investigation reveals wide variations in the cytologic pattern of bone cysts. Some lesions closely resemble giant-cell tumors; this is particularly true of the intermediate varieties encountered during adolescence. Other cysts do not differ from osteitis fibrosa. Most observers are of the opinion that the variations are different

stages of the same pathologic process and are related to giant-cell tumors. Also they maintain that the variable factors responsible for the different behaviors of bone cysts and giant-cell tumors are the age of the patient, the region of the bone affected and the response of the surrounding bone to the pathologic process. In the region of the metaphysis sufficient resistance is encountered to restrain the aggressiveness of the lesion while in the epiphyseal region less resistance is offered by the cancellous bone thereby allowing the destructive phase to progress. Based on the above premise it becomes obvious that the pathologic processes in the region of the metaphysis result in bone cysts while those in the epiphyseal region result in giant-cell tumors.

**Clinical Features.** As recorded previously, not infrequently bone cysts are discovered accidentally by roentgenograms taken for reasons not related to the affected region. In a child the first indication of the presence of a bone cyst may be a fracture following a minor trauma. As a rule, the disorder pursues a mild clinical course; the duration of the symptoms varies from a few months to many years. However, in adolescence bone cysts run a more acute clinical course; the duration being under 6 months. Latent cysts may date back from 20 to 40 years with an average duration of 2½ years.

**PAIN.** Generally pain is not a prominent clinical feature. It may occur only after exertion and as a rule subsides after an interval of rest. Of course with the occurrence of a pathologic fracture pain is accentuated. Early in the disease when the bones in the region of the knee are affected pain is localized to affected bone; later it becomes more diffuse. Lesions in the upper end of the femur frequently project pain to the region of the knee joint. Firm pressure over the lesion invariably elicits varying degrees of tenderness.

**SWELLING.** This is rarely detectable when the lesion is in the lower end of the femur; however, lesions in the upper end of the



FIG. 438 (*Top left*) Bone cyst in the upper end of the tibia of a female, aged 6. Observe the radiolucent nature of the lesion and its juxta-epiphyseal location. The cortex of the tibia is thin, no evidence of new bone formation is discernible (*Top right*) The cyst was curetted and packed with bone chips and bone struts; observe the coalescence of the bone chips and the partial obliteration of the cavity (*Bottom*) Cytologic pattern of material removed in this case. Note the multinucleated giant cells dispersed throughout the tissue resembling osteitis fibrosa; endothelial cells and fibroblasts are demonstrable. (Photomicrographs: left  $\times 100$ , right  $\times 200$ )

tibia are not under cover of fleshy muscle masses; hence, varying degrees of swelling may be discernible. Advanced lesions in the femur, and especially in the tibia, may pro-

duce a fusiform enlargement that is readily demonstrable by palpation. This becomes even more apparent when the affected side is compared with the opposite side.





FIG 439 Latent bone cyst. Observe the condensation of bone surrounding the cyst. There is evidence of healing within the cyst cavity

**FUNCTION** In the early phases of development of the lesion little or no dysfunction may be apparent in the knee joint except some stiffness and soreness following exertion. Later with progression of the lesion dysfunction may be increased but even in this group it is not an outstanding feature and may be entirely absent. Coley records disability in only 2 out of 17 cases prior to fracture. With the advent of a fracture disability is increased.

**Roentgenographic Features.** The dis-

tinctive features of bone cysts are (1) a destructive lesion in the metaphysis in growing individuals (before closure of the epiphyseal line) (2) uniform expansion of the metaphyseal region of the shaft (3) a smooth thin cortical shell and (4) the occasional occurrence of irregular trabeculae throughout the bone defect.

In the early stages of development the aforementioned features of bone cysts may be absent. Roentgenographically, the lesion may appear as a radiolucent area in the metaphysis close to the epiphyseal plate (Fig 438). Lack of bone reaction is a characteristic finding in all uncomplicated bone cysts. On the other hand in the advent of fracture new bone formation is readily discernible. Also as noted previously some bone condensation is demonstrable around a latent cyst (Fig 439).

**Diagnosis.** Generally the age of the individual, the location of the lesion in the metaphysis (on the diaphyseal side of the epiphyseal disk), roentgenologic features and a mild clinical course are sufficient to establish a diagnosis of bone cyst. Occasionally it may be necessary to consider other lesions before the diagnosis is finally made. Notably among these are giant-cell tumor, benign chondroblastoma of bone and chondroma.

**GIANT-CELL TUMOR.** This neoplasm usually is encountered in older individuals (after the age of 20 years) when the epiphyseal plate has become ossified. It is situated in the epiphyseal region arising from an eccentric position and extending centrally and toward the articular cartilage.

**BENIGN CHONDROBLASTOMA OF BONE.** This tumor usually is found in close proximity to the epiphyseal plate and tends to grow away from the epiphyseal cartilage toward the middle of the shaft. Roentgenographically it discloses a fluffy mottled appearance. Histologic studies reveal that it consists essentially of immature cartilage.

**CHONDROMA.** This lesion bears a close resemblance to bone cysts, however it is rarely found in long bones. On the other



FIG. 440 (A *Left*) Osteoid osteoma of the femur in a female aged 4. The symptoms had existed 1 year before the lesion was discovered. Note the fusiform enlargement of the affected portion of the femoral shaft and the pronounced sclerosis of the bone—a nidus is not visible roentgenographically. This case is of particular interest because after a block resection of the area the child was completely free of pain for a period of over 2 years. (B *Center*) Shows no evidence of recurrence of the lesion 1 year post-operatively. Then pain again appeared in the same leg but was localized at a lower level. (C *Right*) Roentgenograms at this time disclosed a nidus with some bone sclerosis around the outer side of the distal end of the femur. Histologic study proved this to be an osteoid osteoma. Naturally, this question arises: Is the second lesion a new osteoid osteoma or is it a reactivation of some of the material left behind at the first operation?

and it is encountered more frequently in the bones of the knee joint than in the other long bones of the body except the humerus.

**Treatment.** Now it is generally accepted that surgical intervention is the treatment of choice. Implantation of bone chips or longer segments of bone parallel with the long axis of the cyst ensures more rapid regeneration of bone and minimizes the possibilities of spontaneous fracture through the affected area. Although pathologic fractures initiate healing which occasionally obliterates the bone cyst, curettage of the cavity and reinforcement with cancellous bone chips assure more prompt healing. The surgical treatment of these lesions is similar to that of giant-cell tumors.

The disadvantages of irradiation are generally recognized. It may damage the epiph-

ysis or even result in premature ossification of the epiphyseal disk, thereby interfering with normal bone growth. Also, the possible development of sarcoma in irradiated bone is a definite contraindication to the use of roentgen rays in cases where other forms of therapy are more effective.

Long-range follow-up studies of the surgical management of bone cysts reveals that recurrence subsequent to curettage is not frequent. However, a second curettage or in rare instances, even a third may be necessary to achieve a cure.

#### OSTEOID OSTEOOMA

Although unanimity of opinion does not exist relative to the origin of osteoid osteoma, this lesion is now generally recognized as a distinct clinical entity. Most observers

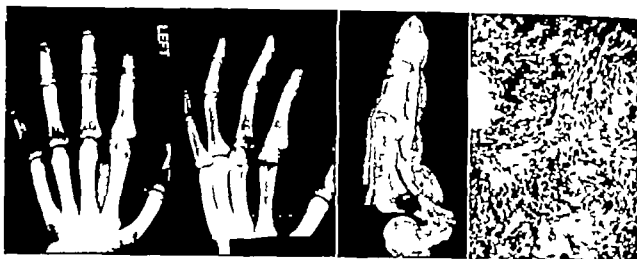


FIG 441 Osteoid osteoma of the proximal phalanx of the index finger (A *Left*) Roentgenogram of Case M G male aged 21. Observe that the index finger fails to reveal any indication of a bone lesion. Numerous views and laminographs also failed to provide any information. (B, *Center*) The amputated finger of Case M G has been sectioned in the sagittal plane—observe the small discrete tumor in the proximal end of the first phalanx close to the articular cartilage. (C *Right*) Tissue removed from specimen in B. Observe the vascular osteoblastic connective tissue which contains many fibroblasts and osteoblasts forming osteoid spicules, and the atypical osseous tissue consistent with osteoid osteoma. (Photomicrograph  $\times 100$ )

are in accord with Jaffe in believing that the lesion is a benign neoplasm of bone. However a few refuse to accept this concept believing that the lesion is a chronic bone infection or abscess (Brown and Ghormley Brailsford). With the accumulation of clinical and histologic data the weight of evidence is definitely against the infectious theory. Lack of systemic reactions such as leukocytosis and consistent negative bacteriologic and histologic studies tends to discredit the infectious theory. Also analysis of the cases reveals that trauma is not a factor in the histogenesis of the neoplasm. Frequently the lesion is confused with Brodie's abscess and Garré's sclerosing osteitis. The lesion has been found in all the bones of the body except the cranial bones, the scapula and the clavicle.

**Age, Sex and Incidence.** The highest incidence is found between the ages of 10 and 20 years; it has a predilection for adolescents and young adults. Sherman reported one instance in an individual 51

years old. The neoplasm is more prevalent in males than in females.

**Site.** A comprehensive report made by Sherman on 158 cases of osteoid osteoma, 128 of which were gathered from the literature, reveals that the lesion was found in all the bones of the skeletal system except the cranial bones, the scapula and the clavicle. The most frequent site is the tibia and the femur. It may arise in the cancellous bone near or at a distance from the articular cartilage or it may occupy an intracortical or subperiosteal position.

**Clinical Features.** Pain is the cardinal manifestation of this disease. The character of the pain may be responsible for much confusion, particularly if the lesion is in the vicinity of a joint. The case depicted in Figure 440 illustrates the difficulties that arise in making a diagnosis, particularly if the attending physician fails to consider the possibility of an osteoid osteoma. For 1 year this child complained of severe nocturnal pain which was projected to the knee joint.

Roentgenographic studies of the articulation disclosed no evidence of pathology implicating the knee joint. Unfortunately the films did not include the affected portion of the femur. The patient was treated empirically for many months without relief, finally, roentgenographic studies were repeated, and the lesion was uncovered. Generally, the pain is constant, deep and boring. It is relieved by rest and accentuated by activity. Nocturnal pain is a common complaint interfering with the patient's sleep. Sherman pointed out that on occasion the pain may cause some dysfunction of the adjacent joint fluid being demonstrable in the joint simulating a primary arthritis.

Secondary joint manifestations occurred in two of the author's cases. In one case the lesion involved the distal end of the radius. In the other the proximal phalanx of the left index finger.

The last instance is of particular interest because the final diagnosis was not made until after ablation of the finger (Fig 441 A). The onset of the symptoms followed an injury. Pain was constant and radiated to the tip of the finger. The metacarpophalangeal joint was slightly swollen and painful on motion. Pressure over the surfaces of the proximal phalanx invariably elicited severe tenderness. The pain was more pronounced at night and required heavy sedation to allow more sleep. Of interest were the vasomotor disturbances demonstrable in the entire finger. The skin was thin, glossy and hypersensitive. The slightest pressure caused excruciating pain. Repeated roentgenographic studies failed to throw any light on the causative agent. All blood studies were within normal limits. After consultation with the neurosurgeons the digital nerves were explored in the hope that a hidden neuroma might be uncovered. Of course the procedure disclosed no pathology. After all diagnostic studies were exhausted months after the onset of the symptoms amputation was decided upon to

relieve the patient of the pain which was becoming progressively more intense. Sagittal section of the amputated specimen revealed a small reddish brown soft area in the proximal end of the first phalanx close to the articular cartilage. A diagnosis of osteoid osteoma was made by histologic study (Fig 441 C). These cases substantiated the findings of Sherman and emphasize the clinical articular manifestations that may arise when the lesion lies in close proximity to the articular cartilage of the joint.

Lesions arising in areas in which there is little overlying soft tissue, swelling and thickening of the bone may be palpable. Point tenderness over the affected bony area is a constant observation. Such local evidence of inflammation as redness, increased local temperature and edema of the soft tissues is absent, as are other systemic manifestations of infection, such as fever and leukocytosis.

**Roentgenologic Features.** Except in the occasional case as described above, the final diagnosis usually is based on the distinctive roentgenographic characteristics. Generally, in most instances a small round or ovoid radiolucent area surrounded by dense sclerotic bone is discernible. The central rarefield area or nidus is sometimes demonstrable only in laminographic examination. However the dense sclerotic bone is always visible. The extent of this perifocal sclerotic hypertrophied bone varies with the location and the duration of the lesion. Lesions of long duration in the cortex or near the periosteum usually are associated with pronounced regional thickening of the shaft (Fig 440) while those situated in the spongiosa are surrounded by a circumscribed arc of bone of varying density which is seldom marked. Occasionally in intracortical lesions cause thickening of the entire circumference of the shaft. During the early stages of development the neoplasm may fail to reveal any of the above roentgenographic features. Subsequent ex-

aminations will uncover the true nature of the lesion. Symptoms may antedate the roentgenographic evidence by many months. This is especially true in lesions arising in the bones of the feet and the hands.

**Pathology** Macroscopic study of the neoplasm reveals the nidus to be a small cavity usually under 2 cm in its greatest dimension and containing friable reddish brown substance which bears close resemblance to granulation tissue (Fig 441 B). As a rule the nidus is located at the junction of the old cortex and the newly formed bone, or may be deeper toward the medullary cavity.

Microscopic examination discloses the distinctive histologic features of this benign tumor. When a well-defined nidus is present it stands out with sharp contrast from the surrounding bone. Essentially it comprises a circumscribed focus of highly vascular osteoblastic connective tissue in which are found trabeculae of osteoid tissue some of which are irregularly calcified to form atypical osseous tissue. Multinucleated giant cells may be dispersed throughout the tumor (Fig 441 C).

**Treatment and Prognosis** Block resection of the nidus with a portion of the surrounding bone has proved to be the most effective form of treatment. It is interesting to note that if the lesion is removed completely pain disappears immediately and recurrence of the symptoms does not occur. Such is not the case if the nidus and its contents are not totally removed as occasionally happens following inadequate block resection or curettage of the lesion. With incomplete removal of the lesion the train of symptoms is not interrupted. Even upon awakening from the anesthesia the patient will continue to complain of the same type of pain. If the surgical defect is extensive in tubular bones especially those of the lower limb postoperative immobilization of the extremity should be insisted upon to prevent fracture through the operative site. Protection of the limb is maintained until

there is roentgenographic evidence of new bone formation in sufficient amount to assure against fracture. The process may be enhanced and the period of fixation shortened by filling the bone defect with bone chips or grafts. Fracture of the radius occurred in one of the author's cases in which the aforementioned precautions were not observed.

Sufficient data have not been accumulated to predict the outcome of untreated cases. Some workers are of the opinion that spontaneous clinical arrest may occur after many years. On the other hand Lichtenstein recorded one case of 7 years duration in which the nidus when eventually removed surgically exhibited no indications pointing to involution. According to Sherman Pheister had under observation a case in which the diagnosis of osteoid osteoma by the present-day criterion was apparent. Surgery was refused by the patient; the symptoms subsided gradually and 7 years later had disappeared completely. Follow up study of this patient 24 years later disclosed by roentgenographic examination persistent thickening and sclerosis of the cortex; the nidus was not discernible. Also the patient was completely free of all symptoms.

What the response of osteoid osteoma would be to irradiation is not definitely known. However it becomes obvious that since surgical treatment affects a rapid and lasting cure roentgen ray therapy should be reserved for those cases which are surgically inaccessible.

#### NONOSTEOGENIC FIBROMA OF BONE

In 1942 Jaffe and Lichtenstein first described this benign bone neoplasm and set forth its distinctive pathologic and histologic feature. According to their premise the lesion originates from mature marrow connective tissue and does not undergo osseous metaplasia. Some observers refuse to recognize the lesion as a true tumor of bone believing it to be the result of local disturbance of bone growth; nevertheless it is

generally accepted as a pathologic entity. Frequently the neoplasm is confused with monostatic fibrous dysplasia, variants of giant-cell tumors, xanthoma of bone and even osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma. There are no instances on record in which sarcomatous transformation has occurred.

**Site Age and Sex.** The sites of predilection are the ends of the long bones, particularly the femur, the tibia and the fibula. Usually, the lesion is observed to the end of the shaft approximately 1 to 2 inches from the epiphyseal cartilage. In the large tubular bones it tends to occupy an eccentric position lying close to the cortex and sharply demarcated from the center of the shaft by a zone of sclerotic bone. In contrast with this in small long bones as the fibula or the ulna, it fills the entire width of the shaft, giving it the appearance of fibrous

dysplasia, bone cyst, or an osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma.

Older children and adolescents usually are affected only on rare occasions as it encountered in adults. The incidence in males and females is approximately the same.

**Clinical Features.** The cardinal symptoms are pain and swelling of the joint near the lesion, the symptoms are more pronounced in the lower extremities than in the upper. Frequently, attention is focused to the implicated region by some form of trauma. On the other hand fracture of the thinned cortex may be the first clinical manifestation of the lesion. In the cases reported the duration of the symptoms before the lesion was uncovered was brief. There is clinical evidence to believe that the lesions grow slowly and insidiously before giving rise to symptoms leading to their

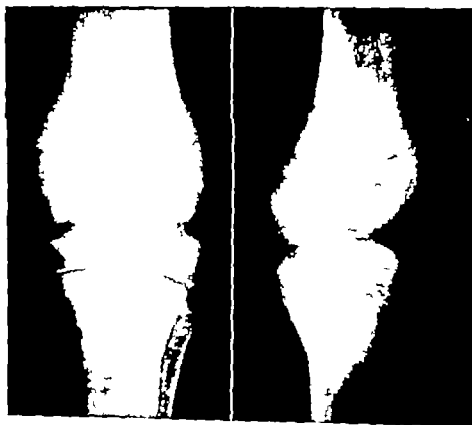


FIG. 442 Nonosteogenic fibroma of the upper end of the tibia in a male 9 years old. Note the eccentric position of the irregular lesion. It is delineated clearly from the surrounding bone by a sharp zone of sclerotic bone. The cortex is thin and the lesion is multilocular. This patient was cured by simple curettage of the lesion.

discovery. Also, some latent lesions are disclosed accidentally by the roentgenologist.

**Roentgenographic Features.** Roentgenographically, the tumor exhibits distinctive features. In the large limb bones it is observed at the ends of the shafts not far from the epiphyseal cartilages. Its size varies considerably, but its longest dimension parallels the long axis of the shaft. It occupies an eccentric position and its inner aspect is clearly delineated by a zone of sclerotic bone, while the cortex over the peripheral portion of the bone may be thinned and even expanded. In the event of a fracture the continuity of the outer cortex is broken, this is a rare finding. The lesion presents an irregular area of rarefaction which may be loculated by thin bony trabeculae (Fig. 442).

Lesions in the small limb bones, such as the fibula and the ulna, also possess distinguishing characteristics. Here the neoplasm occupies the entire width of the shaft which it tends to expand uniformly. The overlying cortex is thin and at times may reveal a fracture. These findings bear close resemblance to bone cysts and giant-cell tumors and fibrous dysplasia from which the lesion must be differentiated. Like lesions in the large bone the neoplasm is surrounded by a layer of sclerotic bone.

**Pathology.** Grossly, regardless of its site the lesion comprises several sharply outlined but connecting foci of dense fibrous tissue varying in color from gray yellow to yellow brown. The individual focus is contained in a thin layer of sclerotic bone. The cortical bone adjacent to the lesion may exhibit some areas of destruction thinning and even thickening. Except when a fracture has occurred the periosteum shows no significant alterations.

Jaffe and Lichtenstein noted and described a basic cytologic pattern for non-osteogenic fibroma of bone. Essentially it consists of whorled bundles of connective tissue cells. However they observed considerable variation in the cellularity and the

vascularity of the stroma of different tumors or even in different areas of the same tumor. Some lesions exhibit varying numbers of multinuclear giant cells, and in others lipoid is demonstrable in the form of foam cells. Stromal cells of some tumors are laden with granules of hemosiderin in their cytoplasm. This is responsible for the brown color that some tumors exhibit. Moreover multinuclear giant cells are scattered through the brown tumors. It appears that there is a close relationship between the presence of hemosiderin and the appearance of multinuclear giant cells which seem to be the result of fusion of the spindle-shaped stromal cells.

On the other hand, yellowish tumors contain no hemosiderin but rather contain groups or nests of lipoid-containing foam cells which are interspersed in the stromal tissue. It is believed by some workers that the foam cells arise through conversion of the spindle cells into lipophages.<sup>17</sup> It is interesting to observe that the more lipophages are present in a yellowish tumor, the less hemosiderin it contains in the cytoplasm of the stromal cells and the fewer multinuclear giant cells are discernible.

Macroscopically the tumors disclose no evidence of osteogenesis; the lack of new bone formation per se is an outstanding characteristic of this neoplasm.

**Treatment.** Surgical management offers a rapid and permanent cure. In large bones the lesion may be removed by curettage or by block resection. Large surgical defects may be filled with bone chips or grafts. Lesions in the fibula may be eradicated readily by subperiosteal resection of the affected region of the shaft.

#### CHONDROMYXOID FIBROMA OF BONE

In 1948 Jaffe and Lichtenstein described this rare bone tumor. The author never has encountered one or at least never has recognized the lesion. According to the above workers the lesion arises from cartilage-forming connective tissue. It is definitely a

benign neoplasm and may be confused with chondrosarcoma, unusual giant-cell tumor and myxosarcoma.

**Clinical Features.** It occurs usually in individuals under 20 years of age, however, there were two cases 42 and 56 years and two between 23 and 30 years in the series of Jaffe and Lichtenstein. The site of predilection appears to be in the lower extremities particularly the tibiae and the femurs. When it arises in the tibia and the femur the lesion is located in the metaphyseal region not far from the adjacent joint. In these bones the lesion is usually eccentrically placed, tends to expand the affected region of the shaft and erodes the overlying cortical bone.

The lesion develops slowly, and the symptoms are mild in nature. Awareness of the disorder is usually present some months before medical advice is sought. As a rule, the patients are cognizant of a palpable mass in the affected bone. Trauma does not seem to play a part in the origin of the tumor except to make the patient aware of the lesion.

**Pathology.** Macroscopically the neoplasm consists of a firm, solid material having a rubbery consistency and a white yellowish-white or tan color. Grossly, it lacks a mucinous appearance. At the site of origin, the tumor replaces completely the osseous tissue of this region and it tends to erode and destroy the adjacent cortical bone. Also it expands the implicated portion of the bone and around its periphery in part or throughout a thin zone of periosteal new bone may be discernible. In areas at the periphery which are completely devoid of cortical bone, the periosteum and the periosteal connective tissue act as delimiting membranes. The tumor exhibits no tendency to invade the soft tissues. Finally, the inner aspect of the lesion (if it does not involve the entire width of the shaft) is sharply demarcated by a zone of sclerotic bone which often is serrated or notched.

Microscopically the cytologic pattern is

governed by the duration of the lesion. Essentially, it consists of spindle, ovoid or multipolar tumor cells loosely dispersed in a myxoid intercellular matrix. Narrow curving bands formed by more compactly arranged tumor cells divide the matrix into pseudolobules. The cells exhibit indistinct cytoplasmic borders and prominent nuclei. At the periphery of the pseudolobules prominent cells with plump nuclei may be encountered also occasional multinuclear giant cells.

More mature lesions disclose definite evidence of collagenization of the intercellular matrix in scattered areas, or throughout the entire tumor. Occasionally some foci of calcification and ossification is noted but this is not an outstanding feature. In older neoplasms the matrix exhibits in different areas, even more maturity, taking on a chondroid appearance. Here the tumor cells may actually be in lacunae, now the matrix bears close resemblance to cartilage tissue. It becomes apparent that depending on the stage of maturation, the intercellular matrix may appear predominantly myxoid or chondroid in nature.

**Roentgenographic Features.** The tumor varies in size according to the first describers of this lesion, some may measure as much as 7 or 8 cm. in length and 4 or 5 cm. across. In the large bones, the neoplasm usually occupies an eccentric position in the metaphyseal region and shows no tendency to progress toward the end of the bone. The lesion appears as a radiolucent area, usually ovoid in configuration with its long axis paralleling the long axis of the implicated bone. It is expansile in nature, the outer cortex may be completely eroded and replaced by a thin layer of periosteal new bone while its inner border is delimited by a sharply defined notched zone of sclerotic bone.

**Treatment.** So far no instance of malignant transformation has been recorded in this tumor. Curettage of the lesion effects a cure. In cases of large tumors, the remaining



surgical defect may be filled with bone chips or grafts

#### CHONDROSARCOMA

Up to 1939 chondrosarcoma was included in the general classification of osteogenic sarcoma. However the accumulated histologic and clinical data on these tumors revealed that they have a cartilaginous derivation—the greater portion or even the entire tumor comprises cartilage tissue exhibiting varying degrees of differentiation and finally the neoplasms pursue a more protracted clinical course than osteogenic sarcomas. These observations were responsible for a revision of the classification of primary bone tumors by the Committee of the Registry of Bone Sarcoma. Accordingly these lesions were removed from the general classification of osteogenic sarcoma and allocated to a separate division "Chondrosarcoma." In addition they were further subdivided into (1) primary chondroblastic sarcoma and (2) secondary chondrosarcoma.

**Primary Chondroblastic Sarcoma.** This neoplasm is highly malignant and does not differ essentially in clinical course and prognosis of osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma. The site of predilection is the ends of the long bones; its origin is from normal cartilage in the region of the epiphyseal plate. It is encountered most frequently (in order of frequency) in the region of the knee, the shoulder and the hip.

**CLINICAL FEATURES.** This neoplasm is encountered most frequently between the ages of 10 and 25 years; the highest incidence is observed in the second decade of life between 10 and 15 years. In this respect the lesion is similar to osteogenic sarcoma. As recorded previously, the most frequent site is in the region of the knee joint. The cardinal clinical characteristics are pain, swelling and impaired function. Frequently pain is associated with some form of trauma. In the early stages of development pain is mild in nature; later it is constant and accompanied by varying degrees of dysfunction

in the knee joint. The duration of symptoms before medical aid is sought varies from 7 to 16 months. Spontaneous fracture rarely occurs.

A palpable enlargement in the affected region is usually discernible. Frequently varying amounts of effusion in the knee joint cavity are demonstrable. Pressure over the local swelling elicits considerable tenderness. As in the shoulder region tumors in the region of the knee may assume extraordinary dimensions. At first the swelling may have a doughy elastic consistency; later with the advent of secondary calcification within the tumor it may become firm and hard. Rapidly growing lesions may produce severe bodily reactions such as elevated temperature, loss of weight and leukocytosis.

Metastases to the lungs via the blood stream occur early in the disease. As yet no proved cases of metastases by way of the lymphatic system have been recorded.

As a rule the serum phosphate level in these tumors is elevated and its range is indicative of the activity of the tumor. In the absence of metastatic lesions the level diminishes following therapy.

**ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES.** During the early stages of development, lesions arising from the center of the shaft exhibit more or less irregular rounded radiolucent areas resulting from destruction of the spongiosa; no new bone formation or bone condensation is demonstrable around the periphery of the lesion. Both sides of the epiphyseal cartilage may be implicated and the tumor may extend toward the end of the bone in the direction of the articular surface of the femur or the tibia (Fig. 443). Chondroblastic sarcomas depicting the aforementioned roentgenographic features may be readily misinterpreted as giant-cell tumors, osteolytic osteogenic sarcomas and bone cysts. With destruction of the overlying cortical shell and involvement of the periosteum a zone of dense bone may surround the lesion. Elevation of the periosteum by

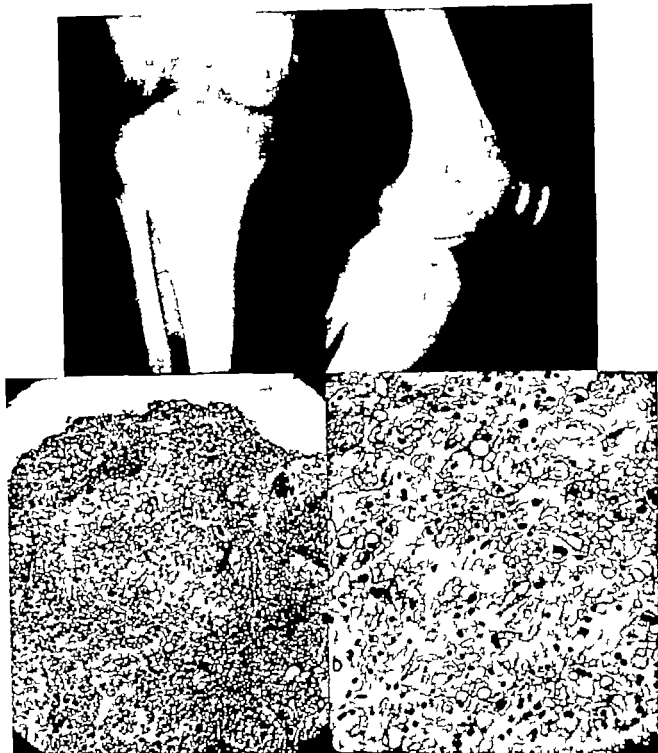


FIG. 443 Primary chondroblastic sarcoma, Case F R., male aged 26 (*Top*) Note the osteolytic nature of the lesion—it involves the diaphysis and extends proximally as far as the articular cartilage. No new bone formation is evident. This lesion may be interpreted erroneously as an osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma or as a giant-cell tumor (*Bottom*) Cytologic pattern of tumor tissue obtained from the tumor depicted above. Observe the pleomorphic nature of the chondroblasts—the marked vascularity and the paucity of stromal tissue. (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ )

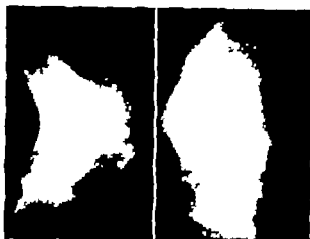


FIG 444 Chondroblastic sarcoma arising from the lower end of the femur. The tissue has perforated the cortex and has invaded the soft tissues. Irregular, spotty areas of calcification are demonstrable in the surrounding soft tissues. Case G M female aged 67

the tumor tissue may stimulate the formation of new bone parallel with the shaft distal to the tumor (Codman's triangle) this is of no diagnostic significance. Later stages of evolution of the tumor may depict irregular coarse trabeculae traversing the tumor giving it a multilocular configuration.

**PATHOLOGY** Grossly the tumor comprises a grayish white material throughout which may be found cystic and hemorrhagic areas of varying size and different stages of development. Its consistency varies according to the type of cartilage and the amount of calcification and ossification plus the extent of degeneration.

Microscopic investigation reveals that the cytologic pattern exhibits pronounced variation in different tumors also in different areas of the same tumor. Essentially the bulk of the lesion consists of cartilage cells depicting varying stages of differentiation and calcification a cartilaginous matrix and varying amounts of myxomatous tissue. The stage of differentiation of the cartilage tissue indicates the degree of malignancy. Neoplasms exhibiting the least differentiation are the most malignant (Fig 443)

**TREATMENT AND PROGNOSIS** The tumor is not radiosensitive however extensive radiation may influence the tumor sufficient to cause some regression and alleviate the acute symptoms. Surgery if it is performed early, offers more than any other form of therapy. Early amputation of limb is indicated in all cases. Resection of a primary chondroblastic sarcoma is not justified. This is not true in secondary chondrosarcomas which by histologic examination are shown to be of low grade malignancy and are situated in bones amenable to resection. In the region of the knee joint the only region that might meet the requisite is the upper end of the fibula. The prognosis is generally grave. Tumors in the region of the knee joint have a far poorer outlook than those in the region of shoulder.

**Secondary Chondrosarcoma.** Metaplastic transformation may occur in pre-existing ostensibly benign cartilaginous lesions such as chondromas and osteochondromas (single or multiple). Although the most common sites for this lesion are in the bones of shoulder and the pelvic girdle, the location next in order of frequency is the region of the knee joint. Males are more commonly affected than females. The highest incidence is found between the ages of 31 and 45 years.

Characteristic features of significance are the low-grade malignant nature of these tumors and the tendency toward repeated recurrences after conservative treatment. Adequate surgery. The presence of a pre-existing cartilaginous tumor is not always demonstrable by roentgenographic or histologic studies (Fig 445). Secondary chondrosarcomas are noted for their long drawn-out clinical course while primary tumors pursue a more rapid and shorter course. Nevertheless in spite of the chronicity and the low-grade malignant character of the secondary chondrosarcomas most cases terminate fatally.

**CLINICAL FEATURES** In the greater majority of the cases, patients afflicted with this disorder give a history of a swelling or mild pain in the affected region of the knee present for many months or years before the symptoms have progressed to such intensity that medical aid is sought. Frequently, a history of trauma to the part can be elicited; however, its relationship to the development of malignant transformation in a benign lesion is questionable. Also, the patient may or may not be aware of a pre-existing mass. After many months or years, with or without cause, pain, swelling and impairment of function are manifested, increasing progressively in intensity. In the series reported by Geschickter and Copeland the duration of symptoms was from 2 to 25 years; this is in great contrast

with a comparative series of primary chondrosarcomas in which the duration was 3 to 5 months. Secondary chondrosarcoma in patients over 50 years of age may arise in bone affected with Paget's osteitis deformans.

Any pre-existing cartilaginous growth in the region of the knee (as elsewhere in the body) which is increasing in size and is associated with a progressive increase in pain and dysfunction should be regarded with suspicion and scrutinized for malignant transformation. On occasion, pathologic fracture may occur late in the disease. Generally, the fracture does not traverse the entire width of the bone but occurs in some portion of the involved cortex. With this sequel all the above clinical manifestations are accentuated.

**PATHOLOGY** The cytologic pattern of sec



FIG. 445 Secondary chondrosarcoma arising from the shaft of the femur. Observe the extensive involvement of the soft tissues and the advanced irregular calcification of the tumor. Case M. C., male, aged 64. The patient was cognizant of this tumor for 3 years before he sought medical aid. Although the origin of the tumor is not discernible, the duration leads one to conclude that it arises from a pre-existing cartilaginous lesion.

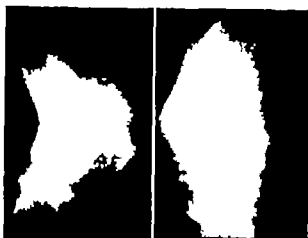


FIG 444 Chondroblastic sarcoma arising from the lower end of the femur. The tissue has perforated the cortex and has invaded the soft tissues. Irregular spotty areas of calcification are demonstrable in the surrounding soft tissues. Case G M female aged 67

**TREATMENT AND PROGNOSIS** The tumor is not radiosensitive however extensive irradiation may influence the tumor sufficiently to cause some regression and alleviation of the acute symptoms. Surgery if it is performed early, offers more than any other form of therapy. Early amputation of the limb is indicated in all cases. Resection of a primary chondroblastic sarcoma is never justified. This is not true in secondary chondrosarcomas which by histologic examination are shown to be of low-grade malignancy and are situated in bones amenable to resection. In the region of the knee joint the only region that might meet the requirement is the upper end of the fibula. The prognosis is generally grave tumors in the region of the knee joint have a far poorer outlook than those in the region of the shoulder.

**Secondary Chondrosarcoma.** Malignant transformation may occur in pre-existing ostensibly benign cartilaginous lesions such as chondromas and osteochondromas (single or multiple). Although the most common sites for this lesion are in the bones of the shoulder and the pelvic girdle the location next in order of frequency is the region of the knee joint. Males are more commonly affected than females the highest incidence is found between the ages of 31 and 35 years.

Characteristic features of significance are the low-grade malignant nature of these tumors and the tendency toward repeated recurrences after conservative usually inadequate surgery. The presence of a pre-existing cartilaginous tumor is not always demonstrable by roentgenographic or histologic studies (Fig 445). Secondary chondrosarcoma are noted for their long drawn-out clinical course while primary tumors pursue a more rapid and shorter course. Nevertheless in spite of the chronicity and the low grade malignant character of the secondary chondrosarcomas most cases terminate fatally.

the tumor tissue may stimulate the formation of new bone parallel with the shaft distal to the tumor (Codman's triangle) this is of no diagnostic significance. Later stages of evolution of the tumor may depict irregular coarse trabeculae traversing the tumor giving it a multilocular configuration.

**PATHOLOGY** Grossly the tumor comprises a grayish white material throughout which may be found cystic and hemorrhagic areas of varying size and different stages of development. Its consistency varies according to the type of cartilage and the amount of calcification and ossification plus the extent of degeneration.

Microscopic investigation reveals that the cytologic pattern exhibits pronounced variation in different tumors also in different areas of the same tumor. Essentially the bulk of the lesion consists of cartilage cells depicting varying stages of differentiation and calcification a cartilaginous matrix and varying amounts of myxomatous tissue. The stage of differentiation of the cartilage tissue indicates the degree of malignancy. Neoplasms exhibiting the least differentiation are the most malignant (Fig 443).

**CLINICAL FEATURES** In the greater majority of the cases, patients afflicted with this disorder give a history of a swelling or mild pain in the affected region of the knee present for many months or years before the symptoms have progressed to such intensity that medical aid is sought. Frequently, a history of trauma to the part can be elicited, however, its relationship to the development of malignant transformation in a benign lesion is questionable. Also the patient may or may not be aware of a pre-existing mass. After many months or years with or without cause, pain, swelling and impairment of function are manifested, increasing progressively in intensity. In the series reported by Geschickter and Copeland the duration of symptoms was from 2 to 25 years; this is in great contrast

with a comparative series of primary chondrosarcomas in which the duration was 3 to 5 months. Secondary chondrosarcoma in patients over 50 years of age may arise in bone affected with Paget's osteitis deformans.

Any pre-existing cartilaginous growth in the region of the knee (as elsewhere in the body) which is increasing in size and is associated with a progressive increase in pain and dysfunction should be regarded with suspicion and scrutinized for malignant transformation. On occasion, pathologic fracture may occur late in the disease. Generally the fracture does not traverse the entire width of the bone but occurs in some portion of the involved cortex. With this sequel all the above clinical manifestations are accentuated.

**PATHOLOGY** The cytologic pattern of sec



FIG. 445 Secondary chondrosarcoma arising from the shaft of the femur. Observe the extensive involvement of the soft tissues and the advanced irregular calcification of the tumor. Case M C, male, aged 64. The patient was cognizant of this tumor for 3 years before he sought medical aid. Although the origin of the tumor is not discernible, the duration leads one to conclude that it arises from a pre-existing cartilaginous lesion.

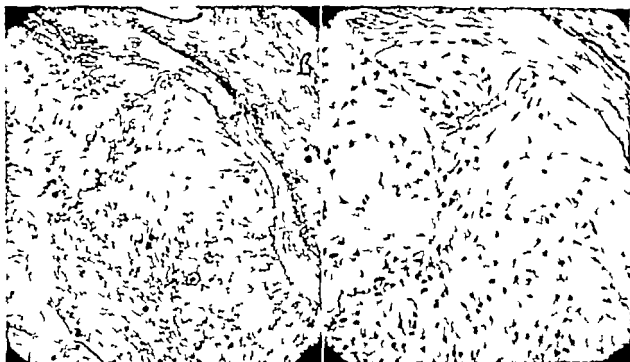


FIG. 446 Cytologic pattern of secondary chondrosarcoma. Observe the cellular pleomorphism, the binucleate forms of chondroblasts and the paucity of stromal tissue. (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ )

ondary chondrosarcomas may be difficult to evaluate and to distinguish from that of primary lesions. This distinction may be facilitated if remnants of a pre-existing lesion are discernible; however, such evidence may be lacking. Also, the presence of multiple benign skeletal lesions and (in older individuals) evidence of Paget's osteitis deformans in other bones may throw some light on the derivation of the neoplasm.

Microscopic study discloses that the tumor consists of proliferating connective and varying amounts of myxomatous tissues interspersed with chondral elements. Cartilage cells in various stages of differentiation and showing mitotic figures indicate the malignant nature of the lesion; however, mitoses in great numbers is not a frequent finding. Cellular pleomorphism may be evident in varying degrees. Morton described the nucleate and binucleate forms and the giant cells (Fig. 446). Irregular areas of calcification and ossification may be dispersed through the tumor; the extent of these changes is governed in a large measure

by the duration of the tumor and the rapidity of growth. Generally, the tumor tissue exhibiting more cellular and undifferentiated areas is found at the periphery of the neoplasm, while in its central region areas of advanced degeneration, calcification and ossification are observed. Spindle-shaped and stellate-shaped cartilage cells may be observed in myxomatous areas. The vascularity of these tumors is a variable feature. Areas of typical hyaline cartilage may be scattered through the tumor, where the chondroblasts are ovoid and lie in lacunae.

Histologically, it may be impossible to distinguish a primary from a secondary chondrosarcoma. Also, it may be difficult to distinguish the malignant forms from the benign tumors, chondroma and osteochondroma. In order to evaluate the grade of malignancy of the lesion, a careful search must be made of the entire neoplasm; examination of isolated areas may fail to uncover its true nature.

**ROENTGENOGRAPHIC FEATURES.** Roentgenograms may disclose the remains of a pre-

## SARCOMA OF BONE

existing chondroma or osteochondroma from which arises an irregular, granular, blotchy mass. Islands of calcification and ossification stand out as irregular areas of increased density particularly in the center of the tumor mass. The neoplasm may cause extensive destruction of the cortex and invade the medullary canal. It may extend peripherally invading the soft tissues. Irregular branching shadows of varying density producing a stippled blotched appearance are characteristic roentgenographic features (Figs 444 and 445).

**TREATMENT AND PROGNOSIS** It is generally accepted that early radical surgery is the treatment of choice. In most instances amputation of the affected limb is justified. On occasion resection is permissible if the entire tumor is accessible and amenable to removal in toto. Secondary chondrosarcomas of the upper end of the humerus and the scapula lend themselves to this form of treatment. In 2 cases the author has performed a total scapulectomy for a secondary chondrosarcoma of the scapula. Four and 2 years respectively after the operations the patients exhibit no evidence of local recurrence or metastasis. Coley reported the same procedure in a patient who was living 11 years after operation. For lesions in the region of the knee joint resection is a futile operation. Even in regions where the tumor may be removed completely resection is justifiable only in cases which reveal low grade malignancy on careful scrutiny of the histologic structure by a competent pathologist.

Clinical experience discloses that recurrences invariably follow inadequate surgery. The low grade malignancy of some of these tumors is reflected in the number of recurrences which occur many years after incomplete removal. In these cases the disease pursues a protracted course. Death may not occur for 2 to 10 years following the recurrences. The importance of definite surgery performed at the first operation cannot be overemphasized.

**Incidence and Age.** According to Coley there is an incidence of one case of osteogenic sarcoma for every 117,000 of the population in the United States. Codman's survey made in 1922 in the State of Massachusetts revealed an incidence of 1 case in 100,000 inhabitants at any one time. The disease is a little more prevalent in males than females. One half of the cases are encountered in the second decade and two thirds between the ages of 10 and 30 years. Nevertheless the disease is not relatively uncommon in individuals between 30 and 40 years. When the neoplasm occurs in patients over 50 years of age one should suspect the existence of Paget's disease of bone with sarcomatous transformation.

**Site.** The sites of predilection in order of frequency are the lower end of the femur, the upper end of the tibia and the upper end of the humerus. Less frequent locations are the upper end of the fibula, the bones of the pelvis and the vertebral column. In the tubular bones the tumors usually arise in the metaphyseal region adjacent to the epiphyseal plate. Occasionally they arise at a distance from the metaphyseal area.

**Gradation of Degree of Malignancy.** Most workers are in agreement that it is possible to determine the degree of malignancy of sarcoma of bone by the histologic characteristics of the cells and the tissues comprising the neoplasm. Broder has evolved a classification of gradation based on the differentiation and the anaplastic features of cells. Some workers hesitate to place too much faith on such a gradation while others rely heavily on the pathologist's evaluation before instituting definitive therapy for a lesion in point. At the Mayo Clinic this grading of tumors has reached a high degree of proficiency. The decision of the pathologist therefore plays a major role in the choice of treatment or the extent of surgery performed in that institution. It becomes apparent that by such a method neoplasms of lesser malignancy may be ascer-



tained and treated accordingly. Tumors in this category if accessible may be treated by excision in toto with reasonable assurance that local recurrences or metastasis will not occur. According to Coley, the percentage of 5 year survival in low-grade tumors is more than twice that of higher grades combined. He is of the opinion that fine subdivisions of grading into numerous groups is of no practical significance.

#### OSTEOGENIC SARCOMA

The following distinctive characteristics are found in these neoplasms. They arise in bone and are capable of producing bone. They comprise 50 per cent of all bone sarcomas. The nature and the amount of bone formed vary in different tumors based on this peculiarity the tumors can be placed in several different categories. Generally the outlook is unfavorable and the mortality is high. As noted previously in long bones the lesion originates in the metaphyseal region and tends to grow outward and downward in the shaft of the bone. Invasion of the medullary canal and destruction of the cancellous and the cortical bones is a characteristic feature of the tumor. Also they may invade a portion of the epiphysis proper. When the tumor progresses as far as the articular cartilage of the femur or the tibia it meets a very effective barrier rarely is the articular cartilage penetrated. In far-advanced tumors the joint cavity may be implicated by invasion of the capsule at the site of its attachment to the involved portion of the bone.

As the tumor advances and the periosteum is stripped from the shaft varying amounts of new bone may be formed on the shaft distal to the tumor (Codman's triangle). With dissolution and perforation of the cortex the tumor may progress beyond the limits of the bone varying degrees of ossification may occur in the tumor tissue outside the shaft. Metastasis to the lungs occurs in the early stages of the disease generally dissemination of the tumor is

achieved via the blood stream but occasionally by the lymphatics.

Pathologic fractures are not infrequent especially in rapidly growing sarcomas. It is interesting to note that this unfavorable sequel is more likely to occur in the humerus than in the femur despite the fact that the latter is a weight bearing bone (Coley and Sharp). Sclerosing sarcomas rarely cause a fracture of the shaft.

**Sclerosing Osteogenic Sarcoma.** Neoplasms in this category are encountered most frequently in the bones of the lower limbs particularly the lower end of the femur and the upper end of the tibia. Although the age ranges from 8 to 61 years the highest incidence is observed between 11 and 15 years the average age being 19.3 years. Males are affected more commonly than females.

Generally in the tubular bones as the femur and the tibia the tumor arises in the metaphyseal region. Its clinical course is not so acute as the osteolytic form the duration of symptoms from onset to treatment being less than a year. Pathologic fracture is rarely encountered in this tumor. Irradiation has no curative effect on the lesion. It is radioresistant.

Lesions in the region of the knee joint are associated early with more impairment of function than those involving the upper extremity. In advanced cases palpation reveals an irregular hard bony tumor in the lower end of the femur or the upper end of the tibia. The massive quadriceps muscle may conceal the bony mass in the lower end of the femur nevertheless the implicated region appears fuller and more prominent than the unaffected side. In the upper end of the tibia the discrepancy between the involved and the uninvolved sides is more readily discernible. Pressure over the swelling elicits pain. Rarely does effusion in the articular cavity reach such proportions that it is demonstrable clinically.

As stated previously impairment of function occurs early in the disease generally



FIG 447 (A Top left) Sclerosing osteogenic sarcoma of the upper end of the tibia. Case R. F. female aged 13. Observe that the pronounced increased density has obliterated the normal pattern of the bone the cortex has been perforated and the tumor extends into the soft tissues. The neoplasm has not crossed the epiphyseal plate (B Top right) Gross specimen of the tumor depicted in A. Note that the entire upper end of the medullary cavity of the tibia contains tumor tissue also observe that the tumor has perforated the cortex and has grown to large proportions in the soft tissues. Areas of necrosis are demonstrable in the tumor (C Bottom) Histologic pattern of tissue removed from the tumor. Note the irregular trabeculae of osteoid tissue which exhibit no definite pattern. Numerous malignant osteoblasts are discernible on the peripheries of the trabeculae some areas of the tumor show numerous blood channels. (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ )

the patient walks with a slight limp pain is intensified by activity and relieved by rest. Later dysfunction is more pronounced and the knee is held in varying degrees of flexion at all times. Pain at night may be severe. The child R. F. whose knee is depicted in Figure 447 would awaken during the night with excruciating pain in the knee joint.

Roentgenographically the tumor possesses some distinguishing features. Irregular areas of increased density obliterating the pattern of normal bone appear in the metaphyseal region. As the tumor grows outward and toward the mid-shaft of the bone the cortex is destroyed and the soft tissues are invaded. Now the same dense areas of tumor bone noted above appear beyond the confines of the shaft of the involved bone (Fig. 448). The neoplasm rarely crosses the epiphyseal line to involve the epiphysis proper, however occasionally and in advanced lesions the tumor may progress to the under surface of the articular cartilage. Fine spicules of tumor bone radiating at right angles to the shaft may be observed giving the sun ray appearance.

This is not a constant feature and has no diagnostic significance (Fig. 447 A).

The cytologic pattern is extremely variable essentially, it comprises a frankly sarcomatous stroma which forms tumor osteoid and new bone. In sclerosing osteogenic sarcoma the stroma is endowed with unusual powers of osteogenesis, hence highly sclerotic bone may be discernible within the tumor. The tumor cells may display atypism and pleomorphism or they may be predominantly atypical spindle-shaped cells. The osteoid tissue is laid down in irregular trabeculae with no definite pattern.

The peripheries of the trabeculae may be lined by numerous malignant osteoblasts. Occasionally one encounters in the tumor areas of malignant cartilage exhibiting calcification and even ossification. The vascularity of the tumor is another variable factor; numerous vascular channels may be observed throughout the tumor.

**Osteolytic Osteogenic Sarcoma.** This form often referred to as telangiectatic sarcoma of bone and "malignant bone aneurysm" is a relatively rare bone neoplasm. Diagnosis may be exceedingly difficult.



FIG. 448 Sclerosing osteogenic sarcoma of the lower end of the femur. Case W. H. male aged 60. This case presents several unusual features. It occurred in the late years of life and it exhibits an unusual amount of tumor bone formation.

often it is confused with bone cysts giant cell tumors and metastatic carcinoma. It is a highly destructive vascular lesion very malignant and carries an unfavorable outlook. This neoplasm occurs more frequently in the second decade of life but may occur in older age groups. Ages range from 13 to 60 years the average being 28.5 years. The highest incidence occurs between 16 and 20 years. Pathologic fracture is a common sequel some series report an incidence of approximately 50 per cent.

In advanced cases when the lower end of the femur or the upper end of the tibia are involved, the knee region exhibits a globular or fusiform swelling the skin, as a rule is stretched tightly over the tumor mass but it may remain freely movable the surface temperature of the affected area is increased. The tumefaction may be soft and boggy. Varying degrees of dysfunction at the knee are usually present.

Röntgenographic studies exhibit pronounced dissolution of the bone affected. As a rule the tumor does not extend beyond the articular cartilage rarely does it invade the joint cavity except in far advanced cases. In these instances the tumor gains entrance to the joint by perforating the capsule at its point of attachment to the affected bone. In early cases new periosteal bone formation on the shaft distal to the tumor may be demonstrable on occasion the "sun ray" pattern of new bone is present. With progression of the tumor no evidence of new bone formation may be discernible. Pathologic fracture is a frequent sequel.

Microscopically the neoplasm comprises spindle shaped plump spindle shaped and stellate-shaped tumor cells in a loose arrangement varying amounts of osteoid matrix are demonstrable. The tumor cells exhibit an extreme degree of anaplasia hyperchromatism and mitotic figures. The tumor displays numerous blood channels or lacunae some of which are lined by endo-

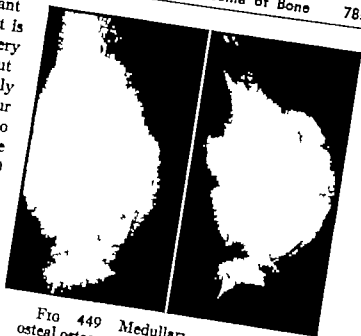


FIG. 449 Medullary and subperiosteal osteogenic sarcoma in a male aged 11. Note that the tumor has invaded the medullary canal and is growing under the periosteum. A well formed "Codman's triangle" is discernible at the upper end of the tumor. Also the tumor has penetrated the epiphyseal plate. This occurs rarely.

thelium others possess no endothelium and still others are lined by tumor cells.

Medullary and Subperiosteal Osteogenic Sarcoma. This is a relatively common group of osteogenic sarcomas which arise within the bone and destroy first the spongiosa and then the cortex. Tumor tissue grows and extends into the medullary canal and occupies a position under the raised periosteum.

Tumor bone is formed varying in amount and degree of differentiation. In addition reactive new bone is laid down by the periosteum distal to the tumor in an attempt to impede its progression. As the tumor grows the reactive bone is destroyed but another layer is laid down distal to the new limits of the neoplasm. As in other types of osteogenic sarcomas the tumor tends to grow toward the mid-shaft of the implicated bone rather than toward the epiphyseal region. The epiphyseal plate appears to act as a barrier to the tumor but

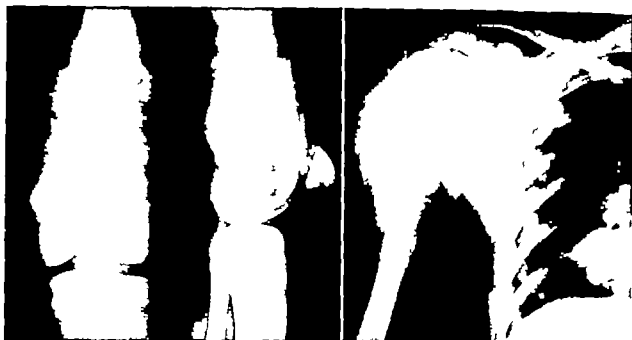


FIG. 450 (*Left*) Fibrosarcoma (periosteal type) in a male aged 13. There is only minimal involvement of the shaft. This patient had similar lesions in the upper ends of both humeri (*Right*) The left humerus is shown. The lesions were considered as examples of primary multiple sarcomas.

in advanced cases this too is penetrated (Fig. 449).

**Fibrosarcoma of Bone.** This neoplasm arises from the fibrous connective tissue within bone or from the tissue forming the outer layers of the periosteum. Primarily they comprise spindle cells whose degree of malignancy depends upon the degree of cell differentiation. They never form bone. Generally they are considered as the least malignant of the osteogenic sarcomas and offer the most favorable prognosis.

Medullary fibrosarcomas originate in the cancellous bone near the epiphyseal cartilage. As the tumor grows it invades the spongiosa, eroding and perforating the cortex. In some instances the raised periosteum is stimulated to the formation of reactive bone distal to the tumor. Because there is a complete lack of tumor bone formation the central area of destruction is depicted in the roentgenograms as an irregular radiolucent area sometimes confused with the

more malignant osteolytic sarcoma or a central chondroma.

Like the medullary type fibrosarcoma originating from the outer layers of the periosteum does not form tumor bone, also it exhibits little tendency to invade the adjacent normal bone (Fig. 450). On occasion the bone is implicated making it difficult or impossible to determine the origin of the tumor. It is generally conceded that these tumors possess a relatively low grade of malignancy, also if treated early when they are amenable to surgery the survival rate of this group would be increased greatly. Unfortunately in most instances treatment is initiated after metastasis has occurred.

#### FWING'S SARCOMA

**Introduction.** After much controversy over a period many years Fwing's tumor is now accepted as a definite clinical entity with characteristic clinical, roentgenographic and histologic features. Its hi-

genesis is still an unsettled question. According to Ewing's original concept the neoplasm consists of angio-endothelial cells of endothelial origin. Jaffe and Lichtenstein are of the opinion that it is derived from primitive marrow connective tissue. Stout believes that the neoplasm is a variant of reticulum sarcoma, originating from the supporting mesenchymal tissue of the bone marrow while Oberling states that the tumor is a reticulosarcoma.

In spite of its obscure and undetermined origin, many distinctive features of this bone neoplasm have been uncovered. It is exceedingly radiosensitive, metastasizes to the lungs, the lymph nodes and other bones and usually terminates fatally.

**Incidence Age Sex, Site.** Ewing's tumor is relatively common and occurs most frequently in children and young adults. It is rarely encountered after 30 years of age. The highest incidence is between 6 and 15 years. Males are affected more often than females, the ratio being approximately 2 to 1.

The initial lesion is encountered most frequently in one of the bones comprising the pelvic or the shoulder girdle and the vertebral column. Also a single lesion is often observed first in one of the long bones, particularly the femur, the tibia or the humerus; in these bones the neoplasm has a predilection for the shaft rather than the ends of the bones.

**Clinical Features.** Trauma appears to play no part as a causative agent in the development of the tumor. Pain is the most pertinent clinical manifestation. Although in the early stages it may be mild in nature, its intensity increases progressively. Lesions in the femur and the tibia may project pain to the knee joint and if the lesion is in close proximity to the joint, an effusion in the articular cavity may be demonstrable. Later in the disease pain is constant, being most severe at night. The knee displays varying degrees of impairment of function when the lesions implicate the lower portion

or the shaft of the femur or the upper portion of the tibia.

Another pertinent and constant clinical observation is the local swelling present over the affected bone. Pressure over this region invariably elicits tenderness. The presence of a tumefaction in the greater majority of cases is indicative of the tumor's great tendency to break through the cortex and involve the surrounding soft tissue. Occasionally the skin over the tumor is tense and thinned, and the subcutaneous veins stand out prominently. Fractures may occur, particularly in the tubular bones, strange as it may seem, this sequel is more apt to occur in the humerus than in the other long bones.

Constitutional reactions such as fever, leukocytosis and secondary anemia are common manifestations of the disease, also the sedimentation rate may be elevated. These observations have been responsible, in many instances, for the erroneous diagnosis of osteomyelitis. Not infrequently such cases have been operated upon and the diagnosis has not been established until after middle some surgery had been performed. Lichtenstein makes the interesting observation that cases that exhibited the constitutional manifestations enumerated above invariably pursued a more fulminating clinical course, ending in death within a few months after admission to the hospital. On the other hand those that exhibited no clinical evidence of constitutional reactions survived a year or more.

Generally the disease tends to run a variable clinical course and is usually fatal. Early metastases to the lungs and the lymph nodes and later to the bones is a characteristic feature of the neoplasm. Bones of the skull are frequent sites for metastatic lesions. Reported cases reveal that the time range between the first appearance of bone lesion and multiple bone involvement is from 2.5 months to 4 years.

**Roentgenographic Features.** Essentially the lesion is osteolytic in nature, never producing bone, the new bone forma-



FIG 451 Ewing's sarcoma of the femur in a female aged 27. Observe the extensive involvement of the shaft; a pathologic fracture has occurred. The roentgenographic features resemble closely those of osteomyelitis. This patient was treated as a case of bone infection; the diagnosis was made by histologic examination 6 months later.

tion noted roentgenographically is reactive bone formed by the periosteum and the endosteal elements through stimulation of the advancing tumor. Destruction or lysis of bone is the only consistent roentgenographic feature of Ewing's tumor. For this reason it is often misconstrued for an infectious process or some other form of osteolytic bone malignancy (Fig 451).

In the early stages of development increased density and expansion of the affected portion of the bone may be discernible; this results from endosteal and subperiosteal bone formation. On the other hand, subperiosteal bone is laid down parallel to the long axis of the shaft of the bone

the onion peel effect often described as characteristic of Ewing's sarcoma. It must be emphasized that the laminated periosteal new bone is only rarely encountered in Ewing's tumor and that when present its significance must not be overestimated as indicative of Ewing's tumor because there is the possibility that other lesions may produce the same bone pattern.

Later, the neoplasm progresses along the shaft of the affected bone and causes osteolysis of the cortex and irregular mottling and rarefaction of the medullary cavity. Periosteal bone formation may produce a zone of increased density at the periphery of the tumor. Reactive periosteal bone is usually more abundant in children than in adults. In advanced lesions dense spicules of necrotic bone may be evident, simulating an infectious process of bone.

**Pathology.** Macroscopically one notes that the tumor arises in the medullary canal. It destroys and invades the cancellous bone and then the cortical bone. It extends up and down the medullary canal, the shaft expanding as it grows. With destruction and lysis of the cortex the neoplastic tissue proliferates under the periosteum. In advanced cases large amounts of tumor tissue are found in this position. Marked thickening of the shaft may result from endosteal and subperiosteal bone formation. Only rarely does the tumor cross the epiphyseal line. Subperiosteal bone is laid down parallel with the shaft but with separation of the periosteum new bone is formed at right angles to the shaft following the course of the blood vessels (Ribbert).

The cytologic pattern comprises compact areas of small polyhedral cells with a round nucleus and scanty cytoplasm, but irregular outline. The surrounding stroma is present and may be so altered by the tumor as to give the appearance of granular tissue. The degree of change is dependent on the age of the tumor.

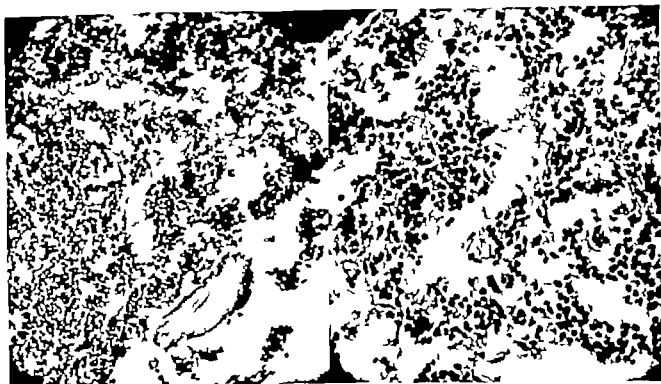


FIG 452 Ewing's sarcoma. The cytologic features comprise compact areas of small polyhedral cells with scanty cytoplasm and a round hyperchromatic nucleus. Inter cellular stroma is absent (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ )

difficulty in identifying the tumor. Areas may be observed which are heavily infiltrated with polymorphonuclear leukocytes giving the appearance of an infectious process. Also, microscopic interpretation of this lesion is often confused with reticulum-cell sarcoma and metastatic bone lesions from neuroblastoma of the sympathetic system. Willis is of the opinion that frequently the latter is diagnosed erroneously as Ewing's sarcoma.

**Treatment and Prognosis.** Although the tumor is exceedingly radiosensitive, irradiation alone never has effected a cure. Roentgen ray therapy relieves pain and causes regression of the tumor. However, it does not prevent metastasis which invariably follows regardless of the local status of the initial neoplasm. Inadequate dosages of irradiation tend to make the tumor less radiosensitive.

It is generally accepted that surgical management with or without irradiation is the best form of treatment. Coley states that resections should be performed more

frequently in such bones as the fibula, the ulna and even the scapula and the humerus. He justifies his opinion by the observation that amputation offers no more hope for a cure than does resection. Critical analysis of the statistics reveal that the results of amputation are far from encouraging; in fact they are poor. Resection if feasible holds no more hope for the patient, but he is spared a mutilating operation. Moderate dosages of roentgen therapy before amputation or resection and heavier dosages after the wound has healed is the plan of treatment in most institutions.

On the whole, prognosis is poor; metastases and death are the usual sequelae. The survival period after the initial symptoms of the disease is variable, but it is rarely over 2 years.

## MULTIPLE MYELOMA

**Introduction.** It is now generally conceded that multiple myeloma (plasma-cell myeloma) is truly an endosteal tumor. It





FIG 451 Ewing's sarcoma of the femur in a female aged 27. Observe the extensive involvement of the shaft; a pathologic fracture has occurred. The roentgenographic features resemble closely those of osteomyelitis. This patient was treated as a case of bone infection; the diagnosis was made by histologic examination 6 months later.

tion noted roentgenographically is reactive bone formed by the periosteum and the endosteal elements through stimulation of the advancing tumor. Destruction or lysis of bone is the only consistent roentgenographic feature of Ewing's tumor. For this reason it is often misconstrued for an infectious process or some other form of osteolytic bone malignancy (Fig 451).

In the early stages of development increased density and expansion of the implicated portion of the bone may be discernible; this results from endosteal and subperiosteal bone formation. On occasion subperiosteal bone is laid down parallel with the long axis of the shaft of the bone, giving

the onion-peel effect often described as characteristic of Ewing's sarcoma. It must be emphasized that the laminated periosteal new bone is only rarely encountered in Ewing's tumor and that when present, its significance must not be overestimated as indicative of Ewing's tumor because there is the possibility that other lesions may produce the same bone pattern.

Later, the neoplasm progresses along the shaft of the affected bone and causes osteolysis of the cortex and irregular mottling and rarefaction of the medullary cavity. Periosteal bone formation may produce a zone of increased density at the periphery of the tumor. Reactive periosteal bone is usually more abundant in children than in adults. In advanced lesions dense spicules of necrotic bone may be evident, simulating an infectious process of bone.

Pathology. Macroscopically one notes that the tumor arises in the medullary canal. It destroys and invades the cancellous bone and then the cortical bone. It extends up and down the medullary canal, the shaft expanding as it grows. With destruction and lysis of the cortex, the neoplastic tissue proliferates under the periosteum; in advanced cases large amounts of tumor tissue are found in this position. Marked thickening of the shaft may result from endosteal and subperiosteal bone formation. Only rarely does the tumor cross the epiphyseal line. Subperiosteal bone is laid down parallel with the shaft but with separation of the periosteum, new bone is formed at right angles to the shaft, following the course of the blood vessels (Ribbert).

The cytologic pattern comprises compact areas of small polyhedral cells with a round hyperchromatic nucleus and scanty cytoplasm with distinct but irregular outline (Fig 452). No interlacing stroma is present. This pattern may be so altered by secondary changes as degeneration and necrosis of the tumor cells and by hemorrhage and reparative reaction that one finds great

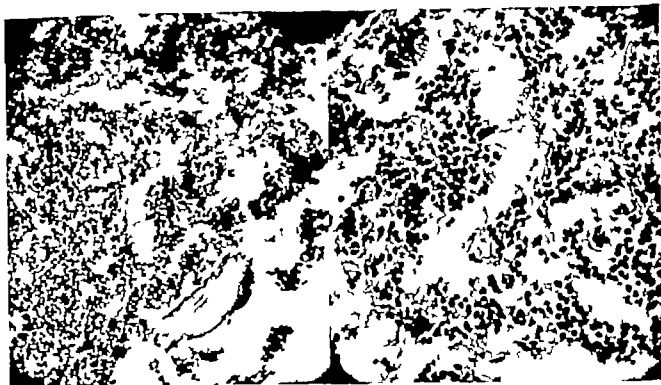


FIG 452 Ewing's sarcoma. The cytologic features comprise compact areas of small polyhedral cells with scanty cytoplasm and a round hyperchromatic nucleus. Inter cellular stroma is absent. (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$ , right  $\times 200$ )

difficulty in identifying the tumor. Areas may be observed which are heavily infiltrated with polymorphonuclear leukocytes giving the appearance of an infectious process. Also microscopic interpretation of this lesion is often confused with reticulum-cell sarcoma and metastatic bone lesions from neuroblastoma of the sympathetic system. Willis is of the opinion that frequently the latter is diagnosed erroneously as Ewing's sarcoma.

**Treatment and Prognosis.** Although the tumor is exceedingly radiosensitive, irradiation alone never has effected a cure. Roentgen ray therapy relieves pain and causes regression of the tumor. However, it does not prevent metastasis, which invariably follows regardless of the local status of the initial neoplasm. Inadequate dosages of irradiation tend to make the tumor less radiosensitive.

It is generally accepted that surgical management with or without irradiation is the best form of treatment. Coley states that resections should be performed more

frequently in such bones as the fibula, the ulna and even the scapula and the humerus. He justifies his opinion by the observation that amputation offers no more hope for a cure than does resection. Critical analysis of the statistics reveal that the results of amputation are far from encouraging; in fact, they are poor. Resection, if feasible, holds no more hope for the patient, but he is spared a mutilating operation. Moderate dosages of roentgen therapy before amputation or resection and heavier dosages after the wound has healed is the plan of treatment in most institutions.

On the whole, prognosis is poor; metastases and death are the usual sequelae. The survival period after the initial symptoms of the disease is variable, but it is rarely over 2 years.

## MULTIPLE MYELOMA

**Introduction.** It is now generally conceded that multiple myeloma (plasma-cell myeloma) is truly an endosteal tumor. It

arises from the blood forming elements of the bone marrow and it is multifocal in origin. The disease is extremely malignant and although pain may be controlled some times and life may be prolonged by irradiation the ultimate outcome is invariably fatal. Some authorities are of the opinion that multiple myeloma may be subdivided into 4 categories: plasma-cell myeloma is the most common (94% of all myelomas); the others in order of frequency are myelocytoma, lymphocytoma and erythroblastoma. Other observers refuse to believe that these tumors are distinct clinical entities but contend that the disease is of unitary cell type; the variations in cytologic patterns reflecting stages of maturation of the basic tumor cell (Lichtenstein). In regard to the histogenesis of multiple myeloma Wallgren, Wood, Wintrobe and others believe that the tumor comprises distinctive cells of myeloid formation or hematic origin.

The etiologic factor responsible for the myelomas is obscure. Some investigators contend that they are not true primary bone tumors but diseases of the lymphoid system (Meyerling) or of the lymphatic hemopoietic system (Lubarsch). This tumor may be confused with several entities: metastatic carcinoma offering the greatest difficulty. Giant-cell tumor must be considered in the differential diagnosis when roentgenographic examination in the early stages exhibits only a single lesion. At times Ewing's sarcoma must be considered in arriving at a diagnosis. However, the age of the patient (usually over 40 years), the presence of Bence Jones protein in the urine (over 50% of the cases) and the histologic examination of the bone marrow (obtained by sternal or iliac puncture or open biopsy) suffice to establish the diagnosis in the majority of the cases. In many instances final diagnosis defies the most exacting scrutiny of the malady and the diagnosis must be made by exclusion of other lesions. In this process all diagnostic aids must be employed and evaluated; biochemical data may add valuable informa-

tion, especially the serum protein values. Hypercalcemia is observed in over 50 per cent of the cases; this reflects the lytic resorption in the osseous system; often it is associated with renal insufficiency. This is not diagnostic of multiple myeloma but together with other information may fortify a tentative diagnosis, particularly when it is a concomitant finding with hyperproteinemia or Bence Jones proteinuria.

Serum phosphatase levels are always within normal limits except for slight elevations in the event of a pathologic fracture. Hyperproteinemia, specifically hyperglobulinemia, is a pertinent and concomitant feature of some cases of multiple myeloma; serum albumin values are usually normal or even diminished. Also increased values of uric acid in the blood may occur in this disease reflecting breakdown of the nucleoproteins contained in the tumor cells.

**Incidence, Age, Sex.** This disorder is more common than is generally realized. Although improved diagnostic aids such as sternal and iliac puncture facilitate the diagnosis, many cases are encountered in which these measures fail to provide the necessary information. Of course open biopsy in such cases must be performed if the final diagnosis is to be established. The tumor is rarely observed in patients under 35 years of age; there are some cases in the literature under 30 years; the highest incidence is between 56 and 60 years. It is generally conceded that multiple myeloma occurs more frequently in males than in females; however, there is considerable discrepancy in the exact ratio; in different series of cases it varies from 1:1 to 3:1.

The bones that most frequently disclose clinical and roentgenographic manifestations of the disease are in order of frequency the vertebrae, the ribs, the pelvis, the femur and the humerus.

**Clinical Features.** The disease may be ushered in by bizarre clinical manifestations. Vague pain in the back, the abdomen and the chest may be the only early com-

plaints of the disorder. Because of the progressive anemia, weakness, malaise and loss of weight may be associated symptoms, pain, which at first may be mild may increase progressively in intensity and, as a rule, is accentuated by activity. It may be intermittent. In fact, periods of remission which may last for months with or without treatment are common. Rest generally gives relief, nocturnal pain is not a distinctive feature. While the remission period is usually under a year, cases have been recorded in which the remission lasted for 3 to 5 years.

Occasionally, pathologic fracture may be the first evidence of the neoplasm. In other instances the presence of a palpable mass in the affected bones may be the initiating complaint. Rarely it is precipitated suddenly by acute radicular pain or even varying degrees of paraplegia resulting from collapse of one or more vertebral bodies. Fractures are encountered most frequently in the ribs; they are also common sequelae in the femur and the humerus. The incidence of pathologic fracture has been estimated by some as high as 50 per cent of all cases of myeloma. Multiple fractures are not uncommon. In widespread skeletal involvement small semifluctuant tender tumors may be palpable in the ribs, the sternum or the clavicle and the shafts of the long bones may exhibit uniform distention. On the other hand, autopsy specimens may reveal widespread dissemination of the tumor while no outward clinical or roentgenographic manifestations were discernible in the patient prior to death.

As recorded previously, systematic reactions through involvement of the blood-forming elements and the viscera may give rise to fever, malaise and loss of weight. Bence-Jones bodies are found in over 50 per cent of the cases; these proteins are not pathognomonic of myelomas being found also in leukemia, carcinoma with skeletal metastases, multiple sarcoma of bone (Seegeken, Gilmore), polycystic disease

(Grooves), comminuted fracture (Campbell and Horsfall) and senile osteomalacia (Rascke). Also it was pointed out that extensive destruction of the hemopoietic elements results in varying degrees of secondary anemia, and that serum protein values may be above normal limits in many cases. This does not apply to serum albumin which is usually within normal limits or even diminished.

The disease pursues a variable course; usually it lasts under 2 years and terminates in death.

**Pathology.** Gross examination of multiple myeloma reveals marked variation in the affected bones. In general, the tumor arises from multiple foci in the cancellous space and the medulla and comprises a soft gelatinous substance varying in color (gray brown or red), depending upon its vascularity. In the spongiosa the points of origin grow, expand and cause resorption of the surrounding bone trabeculae and become confluent. The cortex may be slowly absorbed and thinned; the periosteum may be distended. Characteristic of this tumor there is no reactive bone formation. In some instances there may be no gross involvement of the cortex and the bony trabeculae show only minimal implication. However, the distinctive whitish or gray gelatinous tumor tissue replaces or infiltrates the marrow. Such bones will exhibit roentgenographically diffuse porosity but not the punched-out appearance believed to be characteristic of myelomatous bones. In other instances the cortex shows advanced thinning but has not lost its continuity while in other cases the tumor produces multiple areas of lysis in the cortex distends and even perforates the cortex to invade the surrounding soft tissues. The latter group of cases gives rise to the features often associated with multiple myeloma, namely the presence of discrete, punched-out radiolucent areas of varying size. Moreover, such bones particularly the long tubular bones (femur and humerus)

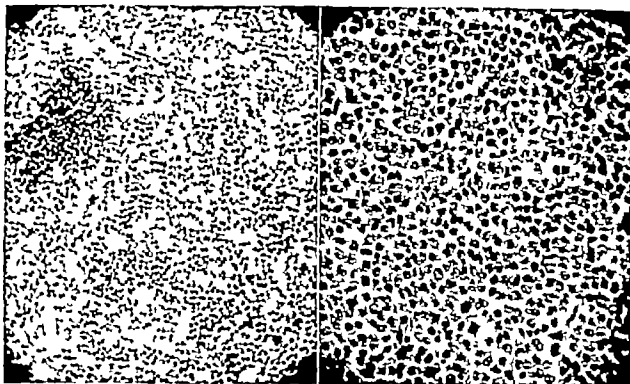


FIG. 453 Myeloma. The tumor cells tend to be round and possess a stippled nucleus which is placed eccentrically and is globular in configuration (Photomicrographs left  $\times 100$  right  $\times 200$ )

are frequent sites of fracture. One must bear in mind that punched-out rarefied areas in the calvarium and other bones of the skeleton may occur at times in carcinomatosis.

Histologic examination reveals a fairly constant cytologic pattern comprising groups of compact cells without intercellular material or stroma. Lichtenstein describes two subdivisions of this pattern: one in which the tumor cells are quite uniform and predominantly small and have a superficial resemblance to plasma cells. The tumor cell is roundish and has a stippled nucleus substantially filling the cell. The darkish chromatic particles spotting the nucleus are dispersed centrally as well as peripherally. The second group exhibits a cytologic picture which tends to be dominated by cells larger than those resembling plasma cells but may be a rather variegated one. Tumor cells of this group are larger than the myeloblast and possess abundant cytoplasm; they have a large round oval

or even uniform pale stippled nucleus" (Fig. 453).

**Roentgenographic Features** The appearance of myelomatous bones in roentgenograms is governed by the degree and the manner in which the pathologic process involves the bones. As recorded previously, tumors in which the cortex is only slightly thinned and the bone trabeculae are still numerous exhibit roentgenographically diffuse porosity of the implicated bones. More advanced lesions but in which the cortex is still intact may give a spotty or mottled appearance while in far-advanced lesions with numerous foci of osteolysis and massive destruction of the cortex many punched-out radiolucent areas are discernible.

Characteristic of the lesion is its osteolytic tendencies; hence it may simulate giant-cell tumors, osteolytic sarcomas, and osteolytic metastatic carcinomatous lesions. Fractures of the bone through the affected

area may occur, in these cases evidence of bone healing even if present is not marked.

**Prognosis and Treatment.** Prognosis is always poor. Moderate dosages of irradiation can alleviate pain and induce remissions. Surgery has nothing to offer except to obtain material for a biopsy. Treatment is entirely expectant in nature. Such drugs as Stilbamidine and Pentamidine have failed to influence the course of the disease. Radioactive phosphorus in some cases may alleviate the symptoms but does not alter the progress or the outcome of the disease. In the event of fracture in the long bones the author has employed the use of intramedullary nails. This obviates the use of cumbersome casts, splints or traction apparatus. The method is particularly justifiable in debilitated patients.

#### SOLITARY PLASMA CELL MYELOMA

Single myelomatous lesions have been reported in the literature. The series reported by Pasternack and Waugh (30 cases from the literature and one of their own) included 7 cases which were alive from 4 to 10 years and 6 from 7 to 10 years later. In this regard the author has one case under observation which exhibited a myelomatous lesion of one of the lumbar vertebrae. The diagnosis was established by histologic examination of material obtained by open biopsy. This patient is alive 2½ years since the diagnosis was made as yet no evidence of multiple foci is demonstrable. All symptoms were alleviated by irradiation. In spite of these reports one must be aware of the variability of the clinical course which multiple myeloma pursues and it is feasible to assume that ultimately multiple foci will develop.

It becomes apparent that a solitary lesion may offer considerable diagnostic difficulties. Its osteolytic and expansive nature may readily confuse it with giant-cell tumor and some varieties of metastatic carcinomaous lesions.

In general single lesions have a more

favorable outlook. However, when considering the prognosis of a solitary myeloma, one should know that the osseous lesion is only one manifestation of a generalized affection of the hemopoietic system.

#### METASTATIC CARCINOMA

Greater interest in skeletal metastases from carcinoma reveals that its incidence is higher than is generally realized. It is obvious that the true incidence is difficult to determine. According to some observers approximately 50 per cent of breast, renal, prostate and bronchiogenic carcinomas metastasize to bone and that 25 per cent exhibit clinical evidence of bone involvement before death. It is generally known that carcinoma of certain viscera is more prone than others to metastasize to bone. Breast lesions frequently affect bone, while carcinomas arising in the prostate do so less frequently, malignancies of the bladder, the cervix, the uterus and the gastro-intestinal tract rarely show this tendency. In 1922 Kauffman noted on postmortem examination that roughly two thirds of all breast cancers and one half of all prostatic malignancies disclosed skeletal metastases. Secondary bone involvement may be the first clinical manifestation of cancer elsewhere. Not infrequently the primary lesion never may be uncovered even at autopsy.

**Types of Metastatic Bone Lesions.** Secondary metastatic lesions in bone are most often multiple, however occasionally single lesions are encountered. If single lesions are followed for sufficient time almost always multiple involvement will be demonstrable ultimately. According to some workers single lesions occur in 25 per cent of breast cancers and are observed more frequently in renal cancers. Although any bone in the body may be affected secondarily by any of the recognized forms of cancer in general certain cancers show a predilection for specific regions. Thyroid and renal cancers most frequently metastasize to the long

bones of the extremities particularly the humerus and the femur breast and prostatic tumors metastasize to the spine and the pelvis

Metastatic foci in bone may be either osteoblastic or osteolytic in nature. As a rule cancer cells are deposited in the spongiosa of the ends of long bones and in the region of the nutrient artery. In response to the stimulus provided by the tumor cells varying amounts of reactive new bone formation from the periosteum and endosteal elements occur. Cancers capable of such a response are referred to as osteoblastic tumors. The involved bone areas exhibit irregular areas of increased density and irregular thickening of the cortex. In addition they may show periosteal new bone above and below the lesion. On the other hand the tumor may be purely a destructive lesion stimulating no reactive new bone formation. Starting from a central focus it first destroys the spongiosa then destroys the cortex expands the shaft and perforates the periosteum. Tumors manifesting these characteristics comprise the osteolytic group. They are considered as growing more rapidly attaining greater dimensions than osteoblastic tumors and being associated more frequently with pathologic fractures. Metastatic tumors of the prostate are most often osteoblastic. However some prostate cancers may be osteolytic others may exhibit both characteristics. Although most breast cancers are osteolytic a large number exhibit osteoblastic tendencies. Renal and thyroid cancers generally give rise to osteolytic metastatic lesions.

In any discussion of metastatic lesions consideration should be given to Ewing's tumor and neuroblastoma of adrenal or sympathetic origin. As noted previously these tumors also are sources of metastatic skeletal foci essentially they are osteolytic in nature especially in the tubular bones. While the age period in which they occur and their cytologic features usually distin-

guish them readily from metastatic carcinoma it may be exceedingly difficult to differentiate one from the other.

**Pathologic Fractures.** Fracture may be the first indication of the disease and it is not an uncommon sequel. When it occurs particularly in the long bones as the femur and the tibia management of the patient becomes greatly complicated. This undesirable complication may occur as the result of trivial trauma. Metastatic carcinoma and multiple myeloma are the most frequent etiologic factors responsible for pathologic fractures in patients past 35 years of age. The incidence is unusually high in metastatic renal carcinoma. Some workers report an incidence as high as 45.5 per cent. Pathologic fractures are rarely concomitant lesions with prostatic cancers; most metastatic lesions are characterized by new reactive bone formation and are less prone to sustain fractures.

Fixation of fracture of the long bones by intramedullary pinning is a valuable method and facilitates the management of the patient; alleviates pain and does not interfere with other forms of therapy.

Spontaneous healing occurs occasionally however the amount of new bone is usually small and defective and refracture is the usual sequel. In some cases roentgen ray therapy undoubtedly destroys the tumor cells or inhibits their activity sufficiently to allow healing. Endocrine therapy and castration have been known to produce rapid bone regeneration and tumor regression in many instances of breast and prostatic tumors.

**Roentgenographic Features.** Multiple skeletal lesions in an individual past 35 years are usually indicative of metastatic carcinoma or multiple myeloma. The latter lesion may be portrayed roentgenographically as diffuse porosity of the affected bones or irregular mottling or in advanced cases as multiple discrete punched-out radiolucent areas without evidence of new bone formation. Occasionally single mye-

lomatous lesions are encountered, in the long bones as the femur, the humerus and the tibia, the neoplasm may cause considerable expansion of the shaft, resembling osteolytic metastatic carcinoma. Diagnosis can be definitely established by histologic study of bone marrow obtained by sternal or iliac puncture or by study of the local tumor tissue obtained by open biopsy.

Osteolytic solitary metastatic carcinoma lesions implicating the ends of long bones especially of renal or thyroid origin may be confused with osteolytic osteogenic sarcoma malignant giant-cell tumors or a latent bone cyst. Osteoblastic lesions particularly those of prostatic cancer, may resemble closely osteoblastic osteogenic sarcoma. It becomes apparent that histologic study of the tumor tissue is essential to establish a correct diagnosis. Blood studies

revealing an elevated acid phosphatase level point to prostatic cancer.

### MYOSITIS OSSIFICANS CIRCUMSCRIPTA

**Introduction.** Single or repeated trauma may give rise to this variety of myositis ossificans. The muscles most frequently affected are the quadriceps femoris and the brachialis anticus. It is common knowledge that this lesion may be mistaken for periosteal osteogenic sarcoma and treated by radical surgery, patients have lost limbs because of this erroneous diagnosis. In the light of this information the author deems as essential a discussion of the myositis ossificans in a chapter dealing with bone neoplasms.

Myositis ossificans (especially in the early



FIG. 454. More common form of myositis ossificans. Case J. J. male, aged 29. This lesion followed a direct blow to the thigh. The roentgenograms depict the character of the lesion 8 weeks later. At the end of 4 months the mass was removed without recurrence.



stages) may simulate osteogenic sarcoma so closely in some instances that both the surgeon and the pathologist may not be able to arrive at a correct diagnosis in spite of all the clinical roentgenographic and histologic data before them. Cases are on record, however in which sarcomatous transformation occurred in areas of myositis ossificans many years after the initial trauma. Pack and Braund recorded 2 cases in which both patients died of pulmonary metastasis. Shipley reported 4 cases. Geschickter and Copeland 2. Coley observed 1 unquestionable case.

**Age Sex and Site.** The quadriceps femoris the brachialis anticus and less fre-

quently the deltoid muscle constituted the sites of predilection. It is rarely encountered in the very young or very old. The highest incidence is observed between 15 and 20 years but is fairly common up to 40. The highest incidence apparently parallels the period of life in which most strenuous bodily activity occurs. Injuries sustained in football and soccer are frequently the inciting traumas. Males are affected more commonly than females.

**Clinical Features.** Invariably there is a history of severe direct trauma to the affected part followed by tumefaction of a localized area in the quadriceps femoris muscle. At first the mass is tender but not

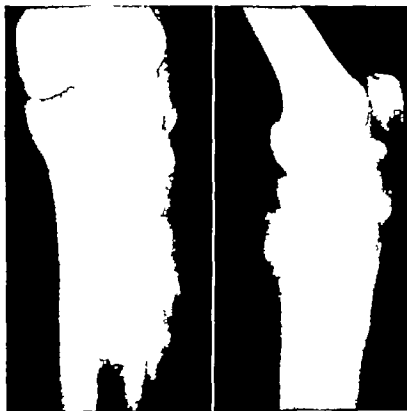


FIG. 455 Unusual form of myositis ossificans with malignant changes in a male aged 32 following severe trauma to the lower leg when kicked by a horse. This lesion was subjected injudiciously to 3 attempts to irradiate the lesion surgically. recurrences occurred after each procedure. Finally a biopsy was done approximately 10 months after the injury and malignant changes were discernible consistent with osteogenic sarcoma. These changes did not exist in the tissue obtained at the previous operation.

prominent. Later it slowly increases in size and acquires a hard bony consistency. At this stage, pain is not a significant feature and recession of the tumor may occur. It rarely disappears completely.

**Roentgenographic Features** (Figs 454 and 455) Roentgenograms taken immediately following the injury fail to reveal any significant findings. However, within 2 to 4 weeks evidence of calcification in the muscle is demonstrable. If a subperiosteal hemorrhage is present it may be visible along the shaft of the femur. According to Ferguson trauma to the soft tissues is responsible for stagnation of body fluids and calcification at first diffuse and amorphous; later, it is more sharply defined, dense and discrete. If subjected to functional stresses the deposit assumes an osseous pattern. Hence in myositis ossificans traumatica of the quadriceps femoris muscle the calcareous mass is distributed axially and extends along the muscle fibers parallel with the shaft of the femur. It becomes more sharply defined as an osseous texture forms. As a rule, in old cases the osseous structure is well laminated, regular in outline and is apart from the shaft of the femur, lying entirely within

the quadriceps femoris muscle. Less frequently it may be attached to the bone for varying distances, and its outline may be irregular and fuzzy. The latter cases may cause considerable concern on arriving at a correct diagnosis.

During the early stages of evolution the process may challenge the most experienced workers, but late cases rarely present difficulty, especially in the light of a severe injury. When in doubt a period of watchful waiting is justifiable before any therapy is instituted. Repeated roentgenograms at frequent intervals will reveal the true nature of the disease in 3 to 6 weeks which, together with the features of the clinical course pursued within this period will aid in establishing the diagnosis.

**Treatment.** No treatment except rest to the part is indicated in questionable cases. Surgical intervention in the early stages of the disease is contraindicated, since the entire process may be stimulated to renewed activity and tumor recurrences. Excision of the mass may be performed late in the disease when all evidence of activity has subsided. In doubtful cases open biopsy is justifiable.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Bloodgood, J. C. Benign bone cysts, osteitis fibrosa, giant cell sarcoma and bone aneurysm of the long pipe bones. A clinical and pathologic study with the conclusion that conservative treatment is justifiable. *Ann Surg* 52: 145, 1910.
- The diagnosis and treatment of benign and malignant tumors of bone. *J Radiology* March 1920.
- Brailsford, J. F. Chronic sub-periosteal abscess. *Brit. J Radiol* 15: 313, 1942.
- *Radiology of Bones and Joints*. Ed. 3, p. 373. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1945.
- Broders, A. C. and Pemberton, J. J. Primary osteogenic sarcoma of the thyroid gland: report of a case. *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 58: 100, 1934.
- Brown, R. C., and Ghormley, R. K. Solitary eccentric cortical abscess in bone. *Surgery* 14: 541, 1943.
- Cahan, W. G., Woodard, H. Q., Highbotham, N. L., Stewart, F. W. and Coley, B. L. Sarcoma arising in irradiated bone: a report of eleven cases. *Cancer* 1: 3, 1948.
- Christensen, F. C. Bone tumors. Analysis of one thousand cases with special reference to location, age and sex. *Ann Surg* 81: 1074, 1925.
- Coley, B. L. Neoplasms of Bone and Related Conditions. Their Etiology, Pathogenesis, Diagnosis and Treatment, pp. 14-15. New York: Hoeber, 1949.
- Coley, B. L. and Highbotham, N. L. Solitary bone cyst. *Ann Surg* 99: 432, 1934.
- Coley, B. L. and Lenson, N. Osteoid-osteoma. *Am J Surg* 77: 3, 1949.
- DeSanto, D. A. and Burgess, E. Primary and secondary neurilemmoma of bone. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 71: 454, 1940.
- Falconer, E. H., and Leonard, M. E. Skeletal

- lesions in Hodgkin's disease *Ann Int Med.* 29 1115 1948
- Geschickter C F., and Copeland, M M. Recurrent and so-called metastatic giant cell tumor *Arch. Surg.* 20 13 1930
- Gross P., Bailey F R., and Jacox, H W. Primary intramedullary neurofibroma of the humerus *Arch. Path.* 28 16 1939
- Haas S L. *in* Lewis Dean Practice of Surgery Vol. II p 15 Hagerstown Md Prior 1927
- Haggart G E. and Hare H F. Combined roentgen radiation and surgical treatment of large benign giant cell tumors of bone *Ann. Surg.* 124 228 1946
- Hatcher C H. The diagnosis of bone sarcoma *Rocky Mountain M J* 45 968 1948
- Jackson A E., Dockerty M. B. and Ghormley R. K. Osteoid-osteoma. A clinical study of 20 cases *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin* 24 380 1949
- Jaffe H L. "Osteoid-osteoma a benign osteoblastic tumor composed of osteoid and atypical bone *Arch. Surg.* 31 09 1935
- Osteoid-osteoma of bone *Radiology* 45 319 1945
- Tumors of the skeletal system pathological aspects *Bull New York Acad. Med.* 23 497 1947
- Jaffe H L. Bodansky A. and Blair J E. Resorption of bone underlying processes particularly in pathological conditions *Arch Surg* 20 355 1930
- Erzeugung von ostitis fibrosa (osteodystrophia fibrosa) durch epithelkörperchen extrakt *Klin Wchnschr* 9 932 1930
- Jaffe H L. and Lichtenstein L. Osteoid-osteoma. Further experience with this benign tumor of bone with special reference to cases showing the lesion in relation to shaft cortices and commonly misclassified as instances of sclerosing non-suppurative osteomyelitis or cortical-bone abscess *J Bone & Joint Surg* 22 645 1940
- Benign chondroblastoma of bone a re-interpretation of the so-called calcifying or chondromatous giant cell tumor *Am. J. Path.* 18 969 1942
- Solitary unicameral bone cyst with emphasis on the roentgen picture the pathologic appearance and pathogenesis *Arch Surg* 44 1004 1942
- Non-osteogenic fibroma of bone *Am J Path.* 18 205 1942
- Chondromyxoid fibroma of bone A distinctive benign tumor likely to be mistaken for chondrosarcoma *Arch Path* 45 541 1948
- Jaffe H L. Lichtenstein L. and Portis R B. Giant cell tumor of bone its pathologic appearance grading supposed variants and treatment *Arch. Path.* 30 993 1940
- Jaffe H L., Lichtenstein L., and Sutro C J. Pigmented villonodular synovitis bursitis and tenosynovitis *Arch Path.* 31 31 1941
- Jaffe H L., and Maver L. An osteoblastic osteoid tissue forming tumor of a metacarpal bone *Arch. Surg.* 24 550 1932
- Jenckel Z. C. Knochencysten und ostitis fibrosa *Vereinigung Nordwest deutsche chir Jan* 20 1912 and *Zentralbl. Chir* 39 350 1912
- King E S J. An example of benign osteogenic sarcoma *Brit J Surg* 19 330 1931
- Kolodny A. Bone sarcoma primary malignant tumors of bone and giant cell tumor *Surg Gynec & Obst* 44 1 (Pt. 2) 192
- Lichtenstein L. Chondromyxoid fibroma of bone *Am J Path.* 24 686 1948
- Aneurysmal bone cyst. A pathological entity commonly mistaken for giant cell tumor and occasionally for hemangioma and osteogenic sarcoma *Cancer* 3 29 1950
- Giant cell tumor of bone current status of problems in diagnosis and treatment *J Bone & Joint Surg* 33 A 143 1951
- Lichtenstein L., and Jaffe H L. Fibrous dysplasia of bone a condition affecting one several or many bones the graver cases of which may present abnormal pigmentation premature sexual development, hyperthyroidism or still other extraskelatal abnormalities *Arch. Path.* 33 77 1942
- Lichtenstein L. and Kaplan L. Benign chondroblastoma of bone unusual localization in femoral capital epiphysis *Cancer* 2 93 1949
- Luck J V. Bone and Joint Diseases Pathology Correlated with Roentgenological and Clinical Features, pp 439-440 and 484-485 Springfield, Ill Thomas 1950
- Mauclair P. and Burnier H. Kystes solitaires des os et ostéite fibreuse *Arch. Gen chir* 5 1911
- McKeever F M. Osteoid-osteoma *West J Surg* 58 213 1950
- Mikulicz J V. Ueber cystische degeneration der knochen *Verhandl. Gesellsch. deutsch Naturforsch. u. Aerzte* 76 107 1906
- Mouchet A. and LeGac P. Ostéite fibreuse kystique et kystes essentiels des os *Arch. franco-belges chir* 25 338 1922
- Parker F Jr and Jackson H Jr. Primary reticulum cell sarcoma of bone *Surg Gynec & Obst* 68 45 1939
- Pasternack J G. and Waugh R L. Solitary myeloma of bone *Ann Surg* 110 42 1939
- Pfeiffer C. Ueber die ostitis fibrosa und die genese und therapie der knochenysten. *Beitr z klin. Chir* 53 4 3 190

- Phemister D B Chondrosarcoma of bone Surg., Gynec. & Obst 50 216 1930
- Pines, B Lavine, L. and Grayzel, D M. Osteoid-osteoma Etiology and pathogenesis report of 12 new cases J Internat. Coll Surgeons 13 249 1950
- Pommer G Zur kenntnis der progressiven Hamstern und Phlegmasieveränderungen der Rohrenknochen Arch. orthop u. Unfall-Chir 17 17 1920
- Schlumberger H G Fibrous dysplasia of single bones (monostotic fibrous dysplasia) Mil Surgeon 99 504 1946
- Sherman R. S., and Snyder R E The roentgen appearance of primary reticulum cell sarcoma of bone Am J Roentgenol. 58 291 1947
- Silver D The so-called benign cyst of the bone report of a case simulating hip joint disease Am J Orthop Surg 9 563 1911
- Slisk, J N Bone tumors Radiology 13 115 1929
- Steiner P E. Hodgkins disease the incidence distribution nature and possible significance of the lymphogranulomatous lesions in the bone marrow Arch. Path. 36 62, 1943
- Stewart F W Primary liposarcoma of bone Am. J Path 7 87 1931
- Stewart, F W Coley B L. and Farrow J H Malignant giant cell tumor of bone Am J Path 14 515 1938
- Tavernier L. Une forme de lesion osseus intermédiaire entre les tumeurs a myeloplaxes et les kystes des os Bull. et mém Soc nat chir 52 1, 1926
- Uhlmann E and Grossman, A. von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis with bone manifestations Ann. Int. Med. 14 225 1940
- Virchow R Ueber die bildung von knochen cysten Monatsber Kgl Akad. Wissenschaften Sitzung der Physikalisches-mattemat Klasse vom 12 Juni 1876
- Wheelock M C The pathology of bone tumors J Iowa M Soc 38 522 1948
- Willis R. A. Pathology of Tumours p 610 London Butterworth, 1948
- The pathology of osteoclastoma or giant cell tumor of bone J Bone & Joint Surg 31 B 236 1949



# Bibliographic Index

- Abadie J 538  
 Abbott, L. C., 93 105 306 312  
 313 315 353 354 359 419 634  
 644 665 727  
 Abraham, A., 622  
 Abrams, M 626  
 Abrikosoff A 539  
 Adams, C O 464 729  
 Adams, J D 21 668, 669 728  
 Adams, R., 532 579 622  
 Adkins, E. W O 539  
 Ader, G S 463  
 Allen, F H 192 193 639 675 6 7  
 727  
 Albright, F 559  
 Aleman, Oscar 241 264  
 Alkredge, R. H., 106, 731  
 Allen, H. R., 105 419  
 Allison, Nathaniel, 489 491 539  
 553 579 622 682-684 727  
 Altman V 624  
 Anderson, C E., 105 359 419  
 Anderson, E. M 242 264  
 Anderson, Margaret, 354  
 Annandale Thomas 419 638 646  
 Anzibotti, Guilio 353  
 Applebaum, E., 622  
 Aschner, Berta, 21  
 Ashburn, 378  
 Asplund, G 353  
 Athansen, G 264 469 491 581  
 Babcock, W W 463  
 Bachr G 625  
 Badgley C E 463 736  
 Baedies, D H 626  
 Baehr G 540  
 Baer W S 539 682 684 727  
 Bailey F R 798  
 Baillet, L. C 353  
 Baker W M., 533 539  
 Balfour 1  
 Bardeen, C R 21  
 Barr J S 353 463  
 Barr J W 356  
 Barrie, 751  
 Barth, A 469 470, 492  
 Barton, J R 727  
 Barton, Rhen, 682  
 Barwell, R 492  
 Bassett, R C 607 623  
 Batta, 736  
 Baser Walter 243 264 265 539  
 541 578, 579 622 626  
 Bogan, A J 626  
 Bencke, 581  
 Bennett, G A 243 264 265 514  
 518, 520-523 539 541 578-580,  
 581  
 Bennett G E., 73 105 133 290  
 419 622 727  
 Renninghoff A., 182  
 Berg Richard, 464  
 Berger Louis, 539  
 Bergman 600  
 Berkheiser E J 21 265 626  
 Bernhardt, H 622  
 Berry J 492  
 Bessel Hagen Fritz, 353  
 Bilbergell, E 492  
 Bick, E M 463 727  
 Bickell, 529  
 Biedermann, Wilhelm, 539  
 Biering 537  
 Biesalski, 697  
 Billings, F 622  
 Bird, 736  
 Bizard G., 541  
 Blair H C 412 420, 718 728  
 Blair J E., 798  
 Bland Sutton, J 492  
 Bloch, E H 625  
 Block, W D 623  
 Blodgett, W E., 265  
 Blok, Harmen, 539  
 Bloodgood J C 353 492 750,  
 765 766, 797  
 Blount, W P 308 309 321 353  
 Bodanaky A 740, 798  
 Böhler Lorenz 420, 463  
 Bohm Max, 353  
 Bokero, J L 182  
 Bolton P S 492  
 Bonn, R., 539  
 Bonnin J G 182  
 Boonitt S B 539  
 Boots R. H., 623  
 Borchard, 200  
 Bost, F C 105 359 419  
 Bost, J R 105 420  
 Bosworth H M 105 420  
 Bosworth D M 105 265 353  
 354 411 420 646 651 681 728  
 Bougot, 668  
 Boyd H B 265  
 Braceland F J 626  
 Brackett, E G 463 638, 668 708,  
 728  
 Bracquave 638  
 Bradford, C H 463  
 Bradford, E H 728  
 Bradford, J F 622 707 797  
 Brann, L., 492  
 Brantigan O C 87 97 105 106  
 420 529 539 636 728  
 Braund, 796  
 Brett, A. L 353  
 Briggs, C D 529  
 Brinton, J H 728  
 Bristow W R 106, 182  
 Briton, 598  
 Brittain, H. A 464 675 677 728  
 Broca, Paul 470 492  
 Broders, A C 509 781 797  
 Brodhurst, B E 638 728  
 801  
 Brodie D., 481 492  
 Bronitsky Jacob 265  
 Brooke R 21 214 265 639 728  
 Brooks, B., 539 683 684 727  
 Brown, F T 200 265  
 Brown L T 623 624  
 Brown, R C 770, 797  
 Bruce John, 21 182 265  
 Bruns, P 638 728  
 Brunschwig Alexander 356  
 Bryant J C 492  
 Buchman, Joseph 353  
 Buchner L., 492  
 Buckner H. T 464  
 Budinger 241  
 Burbank, R., 545 622 624  
 Burgess, E 797  
 Burman M S 106, 353  
 Burnier H 765 798  
 Burns, B H 464  
 Buxton S J D 464  
 Burby B F 21  
 Caan, Paul, 106, 420  
 Cahen W G 797  
 Cajori, F A 623 539  
 Caldwell, E. H 464  
 Callahan J J 106 464 728  
 Callender C L 539 722 723 728  
 Calot, M., 353  
 Caive, Jacques, 354  
 Cameron, D M 623  
 Campbell W C 106 265 334  
 354 411 420, 464 623 638, 669  
 682 684 687 689 690, 696 28  
 91  
 Camptone, K M 626  
 Cantl R. G., 21  
 Canton, 541  
 Carey E J 21  
 Carlson 343  
 Carnea, 714 715  
 Carney P W., 464  
 Carothers, R., 492  
 Carpenter W F 634 644 665 727  
 Carr P J Jr 357  
 Carrell, W B., 354 411 420 638  
 728  
 Cave, E. F., 182 242 265 464 646  
 649-651 728  
 Cecil R. L. 545 623  
 Chaklin, V D 232 265  
 Chandler F A., 21 73 347 354  
 623 728  
 Chapchal G 680, 728  
 Charcot, J M., 579 607 623  
 Charnley J C., 283 678 728  
 Chatterton, C C., 357  
 Cheng, K., 539  
 Chlunsky 682  
 Christensen, F C., 736 9  
 Christopher F., 106, 420  
 Chrostek F., 539

- Clark, F R., 303 309 353  
 Clarke H O., 464  
 Clawson, B J 623  
 Cleveland Mather 354 623 6 0 728  
 Clutton, H H 539  
 Codvilla, 299 697 698  
 Codman, 736 39 748, 750- 52  
 60, 781  
 Cohn, C., 626 62  
 Cole H 623  
 Cole W H 354  
 Coleman H M 232 233 65  
 Coley B L., 318, 733 735 740,  
 741 748 750 51 761 764-766,  
 768, 781 782 789 796, 797 799  
 Colonna P C 353 492 728  
 Compere E. L., 21 623  
 Comroe B I 623  
 Conley A H 106 464 728  
 Conwell, H E 106, 266  
 Coome G K., 539  
 Coome K D 668 669 728  
 Cooper Astley 200, 265 750  
 Copeland M M 509 539 742  
 751 65 766 779 96, 798  
 Cornell, N W 465  
 Coss, J A Jr 623  
 Costa, Alberto 106 420  
 Cotton, F J 106 265 411 420  
 464 6 2  
 Coulter J S 623  
 Courts 106, 420  
 Coutts, J W 420  
 Coventry 276 279  
 Cowan J F 265  
 Cox F J 242 265  
 Cravener E K 539 623  
 Crego C H 353 354 699 728  
 Crothers, 343  
 Crouter C Y 539 623  
 Crowe H W 623  
 Cubbins, W R 106 464 28  
  
 Darrach William, 106, 265  
 Davenport H K 623  
 David, S D 464  
 Davidson, A J 106 274  
 Davies, D V 539  
 Davies, E. R 215 266  
 Dav Lora, 356  
 Deacon A E 623  
 de Girondier J 106  
 Delahaye 6 4  
 Delano P J 607 623  
 De La Rue 668  
 Delore N 464  
 DeLortimer A A 623  
 DeLorme T L 4 257 261 263  
 265 420  
 DePalma V F 74 182  
 DeSanto D A 507 509 511 514  
 539 797  
 de Takats, G 546 562 609 621  
 625  
 Devine H G 668 4  
 DeVriese B21  
  
 Dick, E., 492  
 Dickson, F D 354 728  
 Dickson, J A., 106  
 Dietrich, H 182 539  
 Dittrich R. F., 159 182  
 Dobbie R. P., 21 265  
 Dobelle Martin 464  
 Doblner K., 623  
 Dockerty M B 798  
 Dorsey A. H E., 465  
 Doub, H P., 623  
 Dowd, C. N 509 539  
 Dowman, C. E 354  
 Drobak, T 697 728  
 Duchenne G B 82 106, 189 265  
 Duffy J 624  
 Duncan, Donald 182  
 Dunn Naughton, 182 354  
 Duran Revnals, F 539  
 Duran-Reynals, M L., 539  
 Durham, H A., 354  
 duToit, G T., 151 182  
 Dwyer F C 136 182  
  
 Eboer A., 130 151 182  
 Edelman, T S 421  
 Eden B 492  
 Edlund T 539  
 Edwards, A H 106 411 420, 638  
 728  
 Edwards, D A W., 539  
 Eiskind 506  
 Eggers G W N 350, 352 354 728  
 Ehrenfried, 742  
 Ehrlich, W E 626  
 Elholm, R., 540  
 Elliot T S 625  
 Elliott H C 182  
 Ellis, V H 21 182  
 Elcasser L 608 623 729  
 Ely L. W 265 579 623  
 Enderlen 682  
 Enslin, T B 151 182  
 Erb, 241  
 Erdheim 579  
 Fikes, F 644 729  
 Erlacher Philipp, 354  
 Everidge J 464  
 Ewling James, 492 735 787  
  
 Faber Alexander 492  
 Fairbank H A T 113 182 265  
 420  
 Fairchild R. D 265  
 Falconer E. H 797  
 Farrow J H 799  
 Fay 343  
 Fell, H B 21  
 Ferguson, A B 237 240 354 797  
 Ferhling, J 623  
 Fick, R A 81 82 87 96 420 729  
 Flinder J G 21 182  
 Fischer F J 354 699 28  
 Fisher A G T 106 112 156 182  
 265 466, 482 492 619 579 621  
 638 641 646, 647 650, 651 729  
  
 Fisher H R 539  
 Flitts, W T Jr 464  
 Flagstad A. E., 623  
 Flint J M 21  
 Folk, F., 540  
 Forbes, A M 354 699  
 Forkner C E 464 623  
 Forster O 354  
 Fortin, H J 729  
 Forty F., 21  
 Foster D B 607 6.3  
 Foster G L., 625  
 Frankau C H. S 464  
 Frantz, C H 355  
 Freeman, S., 623  
 Freiberg, A H., 469 492  
 Freiberg J A., 353 464  
 Freund Ernst 482 484 492 579  
 Freyberg R. H 623  
 Von Frisch, 682  
 Fromer M F 623  
 Fromone 470  
 Funstz, R V 623  
 Furbank, T J 182  
  
 Galile W E., 106, 354 638, 729  
 Galloway H. P H 509 676 729  
 Gamgee, S 539  
 Gardner E., 21 22 539 540  
 Garre C 492  
 Garrod, A. E. 579 600, 623  
 Gartland, J J., 598, 625  
 Gaston, D 624  
 Gegenbaur 1  
 Geist, E S., 354  
 Gerber I E 626  
 Geschickter C F., 131 509 539  
 742 748, 751 764 766, 779 796,  
 798  
 Ghoramley R K 464 489 491 539  
 623 770, 97  
 Glangrasco, G 729  
 Gilbey V P., 540  
 Gibson A 623  
 Glickler H 334 354  
 Giles, R G 21  
 Gill A B 334 354 729  
 Gill, F F 727  
 Gill, G G 506 312 313 315 313  
 354  
 Gilmore 791  
 Giordano 638, 729  
 Girdlestone G R 464 729  
 Girondier J 420  
 Gluck, 682  
 Goetjes, H 106 420  
 Gold, A M 35  
 Gokling, C 624  
 Goodthwait, J E 265 301 579  
 624 638 639 697 729  
 Gonzalez-Aguilar J 354  
 Goodrich F S 2 22  
 Goodrich John 22 399 420 61  
 Goss, C M 42 74  
 Graef I 624

- Grant, J. C. B. 74 729  
 Graubard, D. J. 556, 624  
 Grav D. J. 21 22 540  
 Gray Henry 540  
 Grayzel D. M., 799  
 Green, W. T., 346 354  
 Gregory W. K., 22  
 Grhwold, 426, 441  
 Gromley 509  
 Grooves, 791  
 Gross, P. 750, 798  
 Grossman, A., 799  
 Groves, E. W. H. 22 106 410 420  
 729  
 Gruber 532  
 Groenfeld, G. 540  
 Guikdal, 354  
 Guterman, H. S., 627  
 Gortman, 740  
 Haagenen, C. D. 525 540  
 Hais, S. L., 354 798  
 Habif 598  
 Hackenbroch, M. 355  
 Hadjopoulos, L. G. 545 624  
 Haenisch, 186, 187  
 Hagemann, R., 492  
 Hagen, Torn, O. 22  
 Haggart, G. E., 533 534 798  
 Hahn, L., 492  
 Haines, R. W. 22  
 Hall C. L. 668 728  
 Hall, F. C., 624  
 Halstead, A. E., 492  
 Hamburger V. 22  
 Hamilton, H. L. 22  
 Hamilton, J. F. 464  
 Hampton, O. P. Jr. 457 459 463  
 464 729  
 Hand F. M., 465  
 Hanson, C. R., 625  
 Iarbin, Maxwell, 355  
 Iarbitz, Francis, 509 540  
 are H. F. 798  
 ark, F. W. 729  
 umon P. H., 232 265 355 464  
 79  
 th R. I. 464  
 Harrison, R. G. 22  
 Hartman, F. W. 509 540  
 Hass, Julius 308, 355 671 693-696  
 729  
 Haicher C. H. 798  
 Hatt, R. N. 681 729  
 Hauser, E. D. W. 22 265 411 412  
 470, 619 729  
 Hawkes, Forbes, 540  
 Hawkins, B. L. 265  
 Hayton, H. A., 214 265  
 Heberden, W. 579 600 6.4  
 Hedrick, D. W. 22  
 Heine, 579  
 Hebeck, A. P. 492 639 729  
 Helfferich 682  
 Helfert, A. J. 407 409 410, 412  
 414 470  
 Hellbaum A. 624  
 Heller 639  
 Hellman, L., 624  
 Hench, P. S. 543 539 622 624  
 626  
 Henderson M. S. 22 106, 355 464  
 480, 482 483 485 492 493 638,  
 660 662 675-677 682 708, 729  
 Hemia 682  
 Henry A. K., 355 661-663 709  
 710 729  
 Herzheimer G. 540  
 Herzenberg, Helene, 539  
 Herzmark, M. H., 10, 22 74 182  
 265  
 Heuter 308  
 Hey 637  
 Hey Grooves, 638  
 Heyman C. H. 334 355 540, 624  
 Hfiba, R. A., 674-677 681 730  
 Hickey D. V. 624  
 Hight W. B. 355 420  
 Higinbotham, N. L., 797  
 Hildebrand, 492  
 Hills, A. G. 626  
 Hilton, John, 359 540  
 Hinricson, H. 241 242 265  
 Hirsch Carl, 242 265  
 Hodgen, J. T. 355  
 Hofer K., 539  
 Hoffa, 682  
 Hoffer 639  
 Hoffman, 682  
 Hoke Michael 354  
 Holbrook, 565  
 Hollander J. L. 625  
 Hollinshead W. H. 74  
 Holmes, W. F. 355 420, 625  
 Hood 637  
 Hopkins, H. H., 682 730  
 Horsfall, 791  
 Horvitz, M. T. 74 106 265  
 Houkorn S. S., 265  
 Howell, A. B. 3 5 7 22  
 Huddleston, B. 626  
 Huebner C. 639 730  
 Hughes, R. E. 331 355  
 Huhtkrantz, J. W. 22  
 Hume D. M. 624  
 Humphry G. M. 74 492  
 Hunt H. D. 627  
 Hunter 509 579 637  
 Hutchinson, J. L. 107  
 Hutter C. G. Jr. 336-339  
 Hurley T. H. 22  
 Inge G. S. L. 500, 503 504 540  
 Ingelmark, B. E. 540  
 Inman 200  
 Irish, W. H. 624  
 Irwin, C. E., 330-333 355  
 Irwin R. L., 243 266  
 Ishmael, W. K. 624  
 Ito L. K. 492  
 Jackson, A. E., 798  
 Jackson, H., Jr., 798  
 Jacob, H. W. 798  
 Jaeger C. H., 624  
 Jaffe H. L. 22 131 507 514 540  
 744 748-755 764 770 772 774  
 75 787 798  
 Jansen, Murk 355 742  
 Jean, G. 182  
 Jenckel Z. C. 765 798  
 Jensen, E. 624  
 Joachimsthal 639  
 Johannson S. 237 266  
 Johnson, 276 279  
 Jolly D. W. 464  
 Jones, E. B. 182  
 Jones, Ellis 503 540  
 Jones, E. S. 540  
 Jones, F. W. 22 355  
 Jones H. C., 22  
 Jones, H. T. 464 485 492 730  
 Jones, Robert, 106, 283 540 638,  
 639 682 730  
 Jones, Thomas, 646 647 668  
 Jordan, E. P. 553 624  
 Jordan H. E. 22  
 Joseph N. R., 540  
 Judet 683  
 Kahn, R. L. 624  
 Kangas, 579  
 Kaplan E., 540  
 Kaplan, L., 798  
 Kappa, M. 469 492  
 Karlson Stig, 266  
 Kauffman, 793  
 Kazzander J. 22  
 Keeler C. S. 243 266, 579 624 625  
 Kelbel Franz 485 492  
 Keith A. 22 54 79 742  
 Kelleher J. J., 463  
 Kelton I. W., 540  
 Kendall, E. C. 624  
 Kernwein G., 624  
 Key J. A., 266 464 495 506, 540  
 579 595 613 618 624 675 678  
 681 730  
 Keyes E. L. 243 266  
 Kidner F. C., 355  
 Klenböck R., 492  
 Killfoyle R. M. 463  
 Kindred, J. E., 22  
 King B. B. 334  
 King, D. 113 115 117 182 540  
 674  
 King E. S. J. 22 131 163 182 624  
 798  
 Kingsley J. S. 2 22  
 Kirby C. K., 464  
 Kirk, N. T., 716 717 724 725 730  
 Kirmison, E. 355  
 Kirmison, M., 493  
 Kirschner M. 730  
 Kirsch, J. P., 626  
 Klapp, 682  
 Klein, A. 707 730



- Kleinberg Samuel, 232 266, 355 730  
 Klemperer P., 540, 622 625 626  
 Kling D. H., 495 509 540, 594 625  
 Knaess, R. L., 581 6.5  
 Koese, K. H., 540  
 Knight, R. A. 731  
 Knibely M. H. 625  
 Kobylinski, T. L., 493  
 Koch, Heinrich 40-43 540  
 Kocher E. T., 464 638, 642, 644 645 730  
 Koenig F., 46 493  
 Kolaczek, 540  
 Kolliker A., 481 493  
 Kolodny A., 798  
 Konig, 241  
 Koontz, A. R., 730  
 Kopp, J. W., 493  
 Krause 697  
 Kreuscher P. H. 106  
 Krida A., 232 638, 642 730  
 Kroer M. 232 266  
 Kuhn, J. R., 624  
 Kuhns J. G. 540, 565 568, 5 4- 576 591 624 625  
 Kulonen E., 540  
 Kulowski, Jacob 182 296, 420, 465 566, 567  
 Kurlander J. J. 106, 420  
 Kutscher 740  
  
 von Lackum, H. L., 730  
 Laczec, 481  
 Lagomandoo, E. H. 420  
 Lambert R. G. 265  
 Lammou, O. F. 493  
 Lange F. 697 730  
 Langemak, O. 493  
 von Langenbeck, 638, 642  
 Langenskiold, F. 355  
 Lanzer M. 22  
 Larre A. M. 624  
 Landtler H. 540  
 Larsen, 237  
 Latten, W. 540  
 Latenstein 638  
 Lavine L. 99  
 Law W. A. 730  
 Lawrence J. C. 106  
 Lazarus J. A., 540  
 Leadbetter G. W. 465  
 LeDamany P. 155  
 Ledderhose 131  
 Lee H. G. 106 470  
 Lee J. G. 730  
 LeFort R. 40  
 LeGac P. 794  
 LeGarde L. A. 465  
 Lenz A. T. 355  
 Lejars, 509 541  
 LeMesurier A. B. 106 618 729  
 Lenson N. 79  
 Lentz, 682  
 Leonard M. E., 79  
 Leonard, R. D. 21  
 Leriche R., 106, 420  
 Levine R., 626, 627  
 Lewin Philip, 355  
 Lewis, Denn, 131  
 Lewis, T. L., 493  
 Lewis, W. H. 21  
 Lester Erich 355 493 682 730  
 Lichtenberg, V., 493  
 Lichtenstein L., 734 735 743 748, 750, 751 761 772 774 775 787 790, 798  
 Lieberman H. S., 266  
 Lindblom, 541  
 Lindem, M. C. 493  
 Lipcomb P. R., 463  
 Livingston T. F., 493  
 Lloyd, E. L., 182  
 Loeb 545  
 Loomer E., 355  
 Lord, C. D. 420  
 Lord, J. P., 625  
 Lotach, F., 493  
 Lovett, R. W., 540, 541 728 730  
 Lowe Breck, 170  
 Lowenstein, E., 625  
 Lowman, C. L., 625  
 Lowman, E. W., 626  
 Lubarsch 790  
 Luck, 491 582 675 798  
 Lucke, 541  
 Ludloff K., 470, 493  
 Lulsdorf Fritz, 355  
 Lyons, W. F. 624  
  
 MacAusland A. R., 730  
 MacAusland W. R. 266 598 625 682 684 687 692 696 730  
 MacCarroll R. R. 192 193 266, 355  
 Macartney J. 481 493  
 MacConnell, M. A. 22 113 182 541  
 McConville, B. E., 411 420  
 McDermott L. J. 22 60, 346 354  
 McFarland B. L., 355  
 McGrath, B. F. 21  
 McKeever D. C. 227 246, 290, 294 295 506, 568 574 588 671 730, 798  
 MacKenzie Colin, 74 83 84 266  
 McMurray T. P. 106 182 413 420, 730  
 McPherson, S. H. 107 421  
 McWhorter G. L. 355  
 Masull H. K. 463  
 Magnuson, P. B., 220, 266, 541 588, 589  
 Magnusson Ragnar 355 730  
 Mabel Bernard, 465  
 Mallin S. A. 22  
 Mall, F. P. 485 492 493  
 Mandl, F., 541  
 March 638  
 Margary F. 730  
 Margolis, H. M. 465  
 Mark M. S. 540  
 Marotelli, O. R. 0  
 Marsh F. H., 493  
 Marsh H., 493  
 Marth, B., 200, 266  
 Maxwell, V., 355  
 Masland H. C., 625  
 Mau, C., 355  
 Mauck, H. P. 106, 411 420  
 Maucalre P. 682 765 798  
 Mayeda T. 541  
 Mayer Leo, 106, 334 3 730, 798  
 Meekins D. M. 182 231  
 Melchior E. 356  
 Menor M. C. 265  
 Mercer 466  
 Merklen, 625  
 Metz, A. R., 465  
 Meyer A. W., 495 541  
 von Meyer H., 637  
 Meyer K., 541 625  
 Meyer L., 541  
 Meyerling 537 790  
 Myers, W. K., 624  
 Mitchell, A. G. M. 541  
 Middleton, D. S. 13 183  
 Mulkalk, J. A. 75 682 765  
 Moller 750  
 Milch, Henry 106, 305 3 356, 411 420  
 Millram, J. E., 232 266, 679 680  
 Miller D. S. 625  
 Miller E. M. 541 684, 731  
 Miller D. L., 356  
 Miliken, 697  
 Milner L. J. 732  
 Milnot, C. S. 493  
 Mitchell J. K. 607 625  
 Mitchell J. I. 354  
 Mitchell J. M. 623  
 Mivart, 1  
 Mock, H. E., 625  
 Monro, Alexander 467 4 731  
 Moon, 545  
 Moore 537  
 Moore J. R., 356  
 Moore R. D. 356  
 Moorehead J. J. 106 420  
 Morley 529  
 Morris, H. D. 541 718, 728  
 Morrison, G. M. 106 420  
 Morton, 780  
 Moser Ernst 541  
 Mouchet, A. 798  
 Muller E., 356  
 Muller G. M. 464  
 Muller W. 493  
 Muratori, G. 541  
 Murphy P. G. 107  
 Murphy J. B. 503 541 63 683 731  
 Murray M. R. 441  
 Murray P. D. F. 22  
 Murray R. D. Jr. 483 485 491  
 Myers, W. K., 241 66 625

- Nachles, I W 356, 400 421  
 Nagell, T., 465  
 National Research Council, Com-  
 mittee on Surgery 465  
 Naul, H. V. 4 22  
 Neff, J. M. 541 684  
 Netter, 541  
 Nicholas, E. E., 545 623 625  
 Nichols, E. H. 243 266 552 553  
 579, 581 625  
 Nicholson, J. T. 625  
 Nickerson, S. H., 22  
 Nicoladoni, Karl, 697  
 Nicoll, E. A., 107 254 256, 266  
 Nibonne Haraki, 356  
 Northrup, W. P., 541  
 Nusbaum A. 356 493  
  
 Ober, F. R., 21 183 188, 192 197  
 266, 331 356, 465 703  
 Oberling, 287  
 O'Donoghue, D. H., 340, 356, 359  
 370, 567 571 572 698  
 Ogilvie W. H. 456, 463  
 Ogston, A. G. 541  
 Oldershaw Robert 131 159 183  
 Ollier L., 682 731 742  
 Opp, J. L., 400, 4 1  
 Orr, T. G. 465  
 Orson, Eugen, 700 266  
 Orwood, R. B. 463 623 638 708,  
 728  
 Outland, T. 625  
 Owre, 412  
 Owre A. 266  
  
 Pack, 796  
 Paget, James, 493 750  
 Painter C. F. 356, 691  
 Palmer Ivar 105 360, 365 421 465  
 Palmer W. L., 625  
 Pardee, 506  
 Paré, Ambrose 466 637  
 Parker C. A., 581 625  
 Parker Frederic Jr. 243 266 798  
 Parodi, S. E., 541  
 Parrish, B. F. 697 731  
 Parsons, F. G. 22  
 Pasternack, J. G. 793 798  
 Patterson, R. G. 493  
 Pavt, E., 359 644 682 731  
 Peabody C. W. 356 731  
 Pelegrini, 400  
 Pels-Leunden, Friedrich 356  
 Pemberton, J. J. 797  
 Pemberton, P. A., 353  
 Pemberton, R., 500 545, 548, 555  
 623 625  
 Perkins, 731  
 Perlman, Robert, 464  
 Perthes, G. 356  
 Peterson, L. T. 421  
 Petty M. J. 74 186 187  
 Pfiedler C. 765 798  
 Phelps, W. M. 343 356  
 Phemister D. B. 183 336 465  
 471 473 493 541 614 625 684  
 731 772 799  
 Piersol G. A., 541  
 Piersol, G. M., 625  
 Pike, M. M. 107 421  
 Pines, B. 799  
 Platt, Harry 315 356 421 731  
 Plevins, L. W., 541  
 Pogoreff B. A., 541  
 Pollack, A. D. 540, 625  
 Polley H. F. 626  
 Pommer G. 579 581 625 63 799  
 Pool, E. H., 457 465  
 Porth, R. B. 751 798  
 Poston M. A., 464 623  
 Potter H. E. 574 576 625  
 Potter T. 625  
 Potts, W. J. 626  
 Pringle, J. H. 107 731  
 Puig, J. 626  
 Putti, Vittorio, 272 275 356 465  
 626, 638, 644 668, 669 674 675  
 677 682 684 688, 689 696 708  
 731  
 Putz, 639  
  
 Quengel 567  
 Quick, 593  
 Quigley 545  
  
 Rachemann, 546  
 Ragan, C., 541 625  
 Rainey, 481 493  
 Rail, Gerhard, 356  
 Rand, H. W. 4 22  
 Raney R. B. 542  
 Ransohoff N. S., 730  
 Ranson S. W., 623  
 Rapport, M. M., 541  
 Rasche 791  
 Rasmussen, P., 541  
 Read, B. S., 421  
 Reed C. L., 540  
 Regan J. M., 266, 357  
 Rehn E. 493  
 Reich R. S., 465  
 Reichel P. 493  
 Reifenshtein 740  
 Reimlich, J., 421  
 Reynolds, O. 541  
 Ribbert 788  
 Rich, A. R. 646  
 Richards, 674  
 Richardson, F. L., 243 266, 552  
 553 579 581 625  
 Rickett H. W. 182  
 Ridlon, J. 626  
 Riedel, G. 357 493  
 Rieger H. 492  
 Rimann, H. 493  
 Rilmington, C. 541  
 Rinsler J. C., 355  
 Ritvo, M., 421  
 Rutherford Emmet 493  
 Roberts, R. E. 421 542  
 Robertson George, 266  
 Robertson H. E., 493  
 Robertson, W. B., 541  
 Robson, A. W. M., 107 541  
 Roche M., 626  
 Rocher H. L. 357  
 Rodriguez H., 625  
 Roeren, L., 674 680, 731  
 Roemer E., 469 493  
 Rogers, S. P., 719 720, 731  
 Rokltanaky C., 493  
 Rollier 671  
 Rome H. P., 646  
 Ropes, M. W., 539 541 626  
 Rosenberg E. F., 627  
 Rosenow 545  
 Rossmels E. C., 541  
 Roth P. B., 107 421  
 Roudil G. 357  
 Rowe, C. R. 242 265  
 Rowe, M. J., Jr. 731  
 Royle, N. D., 357  
 Rubens-Durall 509 541  
 Rubin, G. 22  
 Ryerson E. W., 107 357  
 Ryerson, S. 21 265  
 Ryffel, H., 357  
  
 Saaf J. 541  
 Samuels, S. S., 626  
 Sanborn 200  
 Sandison, C. 266  
 Sashin, David, 509 540  
 Saunders, F. K., 355  
 Saunders, J. B. D. M. 105 107  
 359 419  
 Scaglietti, O. 357  
 Schaeffer J. P. 74  
 Scheele, 600  
 Schickinger 537 626  
 Schlumberger H. G. 799  
 Schmorl 579  
 Schone G. 465  
 Schwartzmann, J. R. 192 193 266,  
 355  
 Scott, J. C. 219 221 266  
 Scott, Walter 336-339 355  
 Scudder C. L., 465  
 Scuderi C. S., 106, 464 728  
 Scull, 535  
 Seegelfen 791  
 Seelig M. G. 540  
 Segale, 684  
 Selfert, G. S., 464  
 Selfer J. 626  
 Selby D. 22  
 Selig, Seth 337  
 Sell, L. S., 357  
 Selje, 543  
 Sever J. W., 465  
 Shae 133  
 Shands, A. R., Jr., 107 266, 464  
 542 623, 626  
 Sharp, 782  
 Shattuck, 489  
 Sherman, R. S., 770-772 799  
 Sherrington, 255

- Shipley 796  
 Short, C. L., 626  
 Shwartzman, G., 626  
 Sidel N., 626  
 Skelting, J. A. 21  
 Sölvverskold Nils, 266  
 Silver D. 626, 99  
 Simon, Gustav 509 542  
 Sinton, W. 622  
 Sisk, J. N., 65-99  
 Sloane David, 357  
 Sloane M. F. 357  
 Slocum 712 715 720 721  
 Slocumb, C. H. 626  
 Small, J. C. 626  
 Smart, 200  
 Smilie I. S. 64 85 107 112 117  
     125 129 130, 136-138 131 139  
     160 170, 174 193 213 266, 290,  
     293 294 389 391 392 412 415  
     428, 429 465 469 476 499 646,  
     731  
 Smith A. D. 623 728  
 Smith, Hugh 464  
 Smith L. C. 623  
 Smith, L. D. 22  
 Smith, L. W., 518, 542  
 Smith S. A. 106 107 357 410, 421  
 Smith, Wallis, 493  
 Smith Petersen, M. N. 683 684 731  
 Snodgrass, L. E. 542  
 Snyder R. E., 741 799  
 Sonntag, 509 542  
 Sorrel, E., 731  
 Soto-Hall, Ralph 241 243 266, 626  
 Souther Robert, 23 357  
 Speed J. S. 357 465 542 731  
 Speed, Kellogg 266, 626  
 Stalmsby W. J. 545 623 625  
 Stanley J. E. 541  
 Staples, O. S. 182  
 Steck, I. E., 540  
 Steele, P. B. 465  
 Steinbrocker O. 626  
 Steindler Arthur 75 77 80 82 83  
     107 183 357 542 626 731  
 Steiner P. E. 799  
 Stewart F. W. 750, 51 797 99  
 Stewart, S. F. 232 266  
 Stedra, A. 400, 421  
 Stelking R. I. 357  
 Still G. F. 554 626  
 Stoffel Adolf 357 731  
 Stobr F. 493  
 Stout A. P. 525 540 541 787  
 Straszewski, T. S. P. 493  
 Straub, L. R. 357  
 Streeter G. L. 23  
 Strickler F. P. 10  
 Stuart F. A. 183  
 Stubbins, S. G. Jr. 35  
 Stuck W. G. 15 683 684 731  
 Stump J. P. 624  
 Sudhoff W. 741  
 Sumita, M. 542 684  
 Sundt, 241  
 Sutherland, R., 731  
 Sutor, C. J., 798  
 Sutton, J. B., 23 183  
 Swalm L. T., 624 625  
 Sweet, P. P. 107 421 503 542  
 Sydenham 600  
 Talbot, A., 542  
 Tavernier L., 799  
 Taylor C., 136, 182  
 Terhune S. R., 421  
 Textor 668, 669  
 Thatcher 1  
 Thibodeau A. A. 357  
 Thomas, Atha. 31  
 Thomas, H. B. 626  
 Thomas, H. O. 637 731  
 Thompson, F. A. 354  
 Thompson, F. R., 353  
 Thompson, S. B. 421  
 Thompson, T. C., 290 291 293  
     357 576 731  
 Thompson, V. P. 301 357  
 Thomson J. E. VI., 221 224 266  
 Thorn, G. IV. 626  
 Thornton L., 266  
 Tobin, W. J. 421  
 Tobler T. 542  
 Toumey J. W. Jr., 731  
 Trauner L., 626  
 Trausner Hans, 200 266  
 Traut E. F. 545 546, 548, 556-  
     558, 561 580, 600 626  
 Tregubov S., 731  
 Tretze 682  
 Troell, A., 493  
 Trueta J. 465  
 Tuffler 682  
 Turner A. L., 509 542  
 Uhlmann E., 799  
 Umanaki A. L., 10 421  
 Valentin, Bruno 357  
 Valla, Jose 107  
 Vallat, Emile, 542  
 Van Demark 537  
 Van Gelderen, D. N. 357  
 Vansanta, 742  
 Vaubel, E., 542  
 Venable, C. S., 357 683 684 731  
 Vickersman, P. 541  
 Villar 232  
 Virehow R. 579 764 799  
 von Voikmann Richard 308, 503  
     668  
 Vo-hell A. F. 87 97 105 106, 420  
     529 539 636, 728  
 Vitlak, E. G. 626  
 Vulpino O. 731  
 Wagner L. C. 357  
 Walne H. 539 578, 579 622  
 Walgren, 90  
 Walmsley Robert, 21 23 182 265  
 Walmsley T. 542  
 Wang C. C. 623  
 Ward, L. S. 626  
 Warner L., 625  
 Wasm, S. H., 215 266  
 Waterman, J. H. 697 731  
 Watson, B. A., 32  
 Watson, C. G. 493  
 Watson Jones, Reginald, 357 421  
     465 542  
 Waugh, M., 22  
 Waugh R. L., 793 798  
 Weatherford H. L., 540  
 Weber 637  
 Wepelin C. 542  
 Wehner 581  
 Weckselbaum 579  
 Well S. 542  
 Weir R. F., 542  
 West F. E. 421  
 Wheelock, M. C. 799  
 White J. W., 357  
 White Locke R. H. A. 493  
 Wiberk Gannar 242 266, 476  
 Wiedersheim 3  
 Wiggins, 461 462  
 Williams, C. 460, 465 73  
 Williams, L. A., 626  
 Willis, R. A., 23 748, 751 789 799  
 Williston 8  
 Willmoth, C. L., 493  
 Wilson, J. C., 421  
 Wilson, P. D. 357 507 509 513  
     514 531 533 534 539 542 56  
     573 638, 732  
 Wintrobe 790  
 Wittenstein, G. J. 624  
 Witzel, Oscar 542  
 Wolbach S. B. 626  
 Wolcott 506  
 Wolf 625  
 Wolfson, W. Q. 626 627  
 Wood 426, 441 790  
 Woodall, P. S. 625  
 Woodard H. Q. 740, 797  
 Woods, R. S. 421  
 Wright, A. E. 627  
 Wright R. D. 540  
 Wu Y. K., 732  
 Wustmann, O. 542  
 Yee L. B. K., 242 265  
 Young H. H. 266  
 Young R. H. 464  
 Young C. C. 296 329 330, 627  
     699 703 732  
 Zadek 131  
 Zanoli R. 356  
 Zeller Frank, 153  
 Zeit, W. 21  
 Zeller J. W. 622  
 Ziegner B. 493  
 Zinsner Hans, 545  
 Ziv Louis 107  
 Zollinger Robert 355  
 Zuck F. H. 682 730  
 Zullig J. 542  
 Zuppiker 78

# Subject Index

- Abduction, with flexion and internal rotation of femur  
on tibia, trauma to ligaments, 360-363  
knee joint, collateral ligament, tibial, 109  
measurement, apparatus, 89  
menisci, 112  
rocking of tibia on femur 100-101  
tibia, ligaments as checkreins, 358  
Adduction-adduction, knee joint, 80  
Abductor muscles, pelvis, 28  
thigh, 28  
Abscess, Brodie's, diagnosis, differential, from osteoid  
osteoma, 739 740  
ACTH arthritis, rheumatoid, 559 561  
contraindications, 561  
root, 607  
side effects, unfavorable, 561  
Adams and Coonse incision, division of quadriceps  
tendon, 668 669  
Adaptation syndrome, 557 559  
Adduction, with flexion and external rotation of femur  
on tibia, trauma to ligaments, 363 364  
measurement, apparatus, 89  
menisci, 112  
rocking of tibia on femur 100-101  
Adductor brevis muscle, 32 33 36  
Adductor longus muscle, 27 33 37 67  
Adductor magnus muscle, 32 33 35 37 51 69 655  
leg, 34 36  
thigh, 32 36  
Adhesions, infrapatellar fat pad 156  
intramuscular, stiffness of knee joint from, 281  
quadriceps muscle, to femur shaft 281 282  
after fracture of femur 283  
in suprapatellar pouch, impairment of extensor  
apparatus of knee joint, 282  
after synovectomy loss of flexion from, 294  
in synovial cavity impairment of extensor appa-  
ratus of knee joint, 282  
from trauma to suprapatellar pouch in open reduc-  
tion of femoral fracture 287  
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone. See ACTH  
Age as factor arthrodesis, tuberculous joints, advi-  
sability of 6 1-672  
in diagnosis, cyst(s) of bone 736  
solitary 765  
ectostosis, osteocartilaginous 743  
fibroma of bone nonosteo-genic, 773  
myeloma, multiple 790  
plasma-cell, 736  
myeloid osteosarcoma circumscribed 796  
neoplasms of bone 736  
osteoma, osteoid, 770  
sarcoma, of bone 781  
Ewing's 787  
tumors, giant-cell, 36 751  
Albee technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joints,  
675 677  
Alcoholic beverages, elimination, in gout, 606  
Allergy in arthritis, rheumatoid 560  
Amphibia anatomy comparative, 10-12  
frog 10-12  
salamander 10-12  
evolution of pelvic girdle, 4 5  
Amputation, arthritis, pyogenic, lat stage, 622  
arthropathies neuropathic, 613  
chondroma, 747  
in congenital absence, fibula, 279  
tibia 271 272 274 2 6  
of knee joint, 711 727  
bent knee stump, 718-719  
end-bearing stump 720-727  
Callander technic, 722 725  
Kirk technic, periosteal supracondylar tendo-  
plastic operation, 724-726  
Stocum technic, rounded epicondylar tendo-  
plastic operation 720-723  
Stokes-Gritti osteoplastic technic, 726-727  
general considerations 711 712  
indications, 712  
sites, middle third of leg, 714-718  
Carnes technic, 714-717  
Kirk tendoplastic technic, 716-718  
preferable, 712 715  
upper third of leg, 718  
sarcoma, chondroblastic primary 778  
secondary 781  
Ewing's, 789  
tumor giant-cell, 764  
Anastomosis, arterial around knee joint, 70-72  
Anatomy knee joint, comparative 10-21 253  
amphibia 10-12  
frog 10-12  
salamander 10-12  
mammals, 12 21  
dog 12 15 16  
opossum 12 14  
primates, 16 21  
chimpanzee, 18-20  
macaque monkey 16 17 19  
man, 19 21  
reptiles 12 13  
normal, 24 73 36-73  
thigh normal See Thigh  
Anemia, hypochromic microcytic, with rheumatoid  
arthritis, transfusions of whole blood as  
therapy 555 556  
Anesthesia general, dislocation of knee joint, trau-  
matic, 419  
in examination, ruptures of cruciate ligament,  
anterior 392 393  
fracture femur distal end supracondylar 426,  
428

## Anesthesia general—(Continued)

## fracture—(Continued)

tibia, upper end, condylar lateral, depressed  
type 438

intercondylar (T or Y) 432

in roentgenographic examination, rupture of  
tibial collateral ligament, complete 368,  
370, 372-373

incomplete and uncomplicated, 367

aspiration femur epiphysis, distal, 440-442

intratracheal, in surgery of knee joint 631

Pentothal Sodium, in surgery of knee joint, 631

from severance of cutaneous nerves of knee joint,  
636

spinal fracture femur distal end, supracondylar  
426

in surgery of knee joint, 631

in surgery of knee joint 631

Aneurysm, in fossa popliteal, 333

Angiobroma, villous *See* Synovroma, malignant

Ankylosis of knee joint, bony in arthritis hemophilic  
fixed contractures, 600

pyogenic 613

in flexion, 297-298

in genu recurvatum 302-303

open wedge osteotomy 303

cartilaginous, in arthritis, pyogenic 615

fibrous, in arthritis, hemophilic, 596

pyogenic 613

after trauma, severe in degenerative arthritis,  
591-592

varieties, 687

Van der Laan incision, 646

Anomalies, congenital *See* Congenital anomalies

Antibiotic therapy after arthroplasty deformities of  
knee  
Kul

*See also index*

Aponeurosis, vast

vastus medialis

Arcuate ligament

extension, 97

hyperextension

Arrest epiphysa

com

Arthritis men-

net

Arthritides, 543-6

arthritis degen

hemophilic

pyogenic *See*

## Arthritis—(Continued)

## degenerative—(Continued)

etiology 577-579

constitutional factors, 577

endocrine deficiencies, 579

infection, 578

metabolic disturbances 579

senescence 578

trauma, 577-578

vascular disorders, 578-579

vitamin deficiencies, 579

immobilization causing restricted motion, 746

loose bodies, 583-584

management, conservative 586-588

general measures 586-587

local measures, 587

medications, 587-588

roentgen therapy 591

surgical 588-591

arthrodesis, 588-589

arthroplasty 590-591

chondrectomy 588

debridement of knee joint, 589-590

postoperative management 590

patellectomy 588

remodelling of patella 588

pathology and pathogenesis, 579-583

capsular alterations, 582-583

cysts, subchondral 581-582

Haberden's nodes, 581-584

lacunar resorption, 580

roentgenographic findings, 586

of spine, 543

hemophilic, 593-600

clinical features 593-594

- Arthritis—(Continued)  
   rheumatoid—(Continued)  
     allergic manifestations, 560  
     with anemia, hypochromic, microcytic, transfusions of whole blood as therapy 555  
       blood studies, 549  
       with bony ankylosis of knee joint in flexion, 297  
       clinical features, 547-548  
       joints involved most frequently 547  
       physical signs, 547-548  
       types 544-545 551  
     course of disease, 548-549  
     deformities of knee, correction 564-566  
       contractures, mild and recent 565 566  
       severe and old 566-569 574-576  
       surgical 570-577  
       arthroplasty Kahns and Potter technic, 574-577  
       capnecoplasty posterior Wilson technic, 567 572 574  
       capsulotomy posterior 570-572  
       synovectomy 577  
       with turnbuckles, contraindications, 569-570  
       Kulowicki technic, 567 569  
       prevention and management, 563 564  
       diagnosis characteristic features, 605-606  
       differential from arthritis, pyogenic, 616  
       from gout, 605 606  
       biology 545 547  
       disturbances, circulatory 546  
       neurogenic, 546-547  
       redispensing factors, 547  
       reory endocrine, 545 546  
       infectious, 545  
       metabolic 546  
       race age and sex, 547  
       etiology and pathogenesis, 552 553  
       prognosis, 553 554  
       relapse of disease 549  
       and rheumatic fever relation 544-545  
       roentgenographic features, 550-552  
       of spine, synonyms, 543  
       synonyms, 543  
       with synovitis, villous, chronic nonspecific, 502  
       treatment 554-553  
       ACTH, 559 561  
       compound F 558-562  
       contractures, mild and recent, 565 566  
       cortisone, 558 560  
       general measures, 554-556  
       local measures, 562 563  
       exercises, 563  
       massage, 562 563  
       medicinal agents, 556-562  
       barbiturates, 556  
       codeine, 556  
       Demerol, 556  
       gold, 558 559  
       complications and unfavorable sequelae 559  
       morphine 556  
       Numbrol 556
- Arthritis—(Continued)  
   rheumatoid—(Continued)  
     treatment—(Continued)  
       medicinal agents—(Continued)  
       procaine, 556  
       salicylates 556  
       sulfur use discarded, 556 558  
       parathyroidectomy not recommended 562  
       sympathectomy use discarded, 562  
       vaccines 562  
       Strumpell Marie See Arthritis, rheumatoid, of spine  
       suppurative, loose bodies with, 491  
       tuberculous, diagnosis, differential from arthritis, pyogenic, 616  
       villous, chronic diagnosis, differential from synovitis, villonodular pigmented 508  
       hemorrhagic, chronic. See Synovitis, villonodular pigmented  
   Arthrodesis of knee joint, 454-455 669-681  
   arthritis degenerative 588-589  
   hemophilic contraindicated, 599 600  
   pyogenic, late stage, 619  
   arthropathies, neuropathic, 613  
   contraindications, 670  
   deformities of knee, contractures, severe and old 568  
   flexion contractures of knee joint, 297  
   goal, 669-670  
   indications, 670  
   nontuberculous affections of knee joint 6 9-681  
   Borworth technic, 681  
   central bone graft, Hatt technic, 681  
   intramedullary pinning, 681-682  
   Mikgram technic, 675 679-680  
   tarsal, for valgus deformity of foot, with congenital absence of fibula, 279  
   tuberculous joints, 670-679  
   age as factor 671-672  
   deformities, existing management, 672-673  
   position of election of limb 672-673  
   evaluation of operation, 670-672  
   optimum time of operation, 672  
   postoperative management 673  
   procedures, 673-679  
   bridging grafts, 674-677  
   Albee operation, 675 677  
   Brittain operation, 675 677  
   Galloway operation 676  
   Henderson modification, 675-677  
   Hibbs operation original, 674  
   modified 6 4-676  
   Putil operation 674 675 677  
   Roeren rotation method 674  
   modification by Mikgram 674 675  
   classes 674-679  
   compression, 674 675 678-679  
   Key technic, 6 5 678-679  
   DePalma modification 678-679  
   iliac bone grafts, 677-678  
   intra-articular 674  
   Arthropathies, neuropathic 607-613

- Arthropathies neuropathic—(Continued)  
 clinical features, 611-612  
 etiology, 607-609  
 lesions associated with, 607  
 management, 613  
 pathology, 610-611  
 roentgenographic features, 612
- Arthroplasty of knee joint, 454-455, 681-696  
 alterations in reconstructed joint, structural and morphologic, 684-685  
 arthritis, degenerative, 590-591  
 pyogenic, late stage, 619  
 deformities of knee joint, in rheumatoid arthritis, Kohns and Potter technic, 574-577  
 indications and contraindications, 576-577  
 flexion contractures of knee joint, 297  
 historical survey, 681-683  
 indications and contraindications, 685-688  
 interposition materials and prostheses, evaluation, 683-684  
 fascia lata, 683-685  
 free fat, 684  
 pedunculated fascial flap, 684  
 vitallium, 684  
 with nylon as interposing membrane, deformities of knee contractures, severe and old, 568  
 postoperative management, 695-696  
 results, acceptable features, 696  
 technics, 687-695  
 Campbell, 689-692  
 DePalma, 694-695  
 Hiss, 693-694  
 MacAusland, 692-694  
 Putti, 688, 689
- Articularis genu muscle, 27, 30, 31, 60, 634
- Articulations knee joint, 39
- Aspiration of knee joint, Cotton technic, arthritis, pyogenic, 622  
*See also* Hemarthrosis and Effusion of synovial fluid
- Aurumycin, injection into knee joint after operation, 612
- Avulsion, bone flake from femoral condyle, 361-368  
 from fibula, 364  
 with rupture of collateral ligament, fibular, 385-386  
 tibial, 363, 370  
 from tibia, 365  
 collateral ligament, fibular, with bone flake from fibula, 364  
 with fracture of upper end of tibia, 455-456  
 tibial, from femoral or tibial insertions, 361-368  
 cruciate ligament, anterior, with anterior tibial spine, 389-390  
 femoral attachment, 380-381  
 fresh quadriceps muscle, *See* Quadriceps muscle, avulsion, fresh  
 tendon, patellar, from patella, 209-210  
 treatment, 209-210  
 from tibial tubercle, 206-209  
 treatment, 20-209  
 tibia, portion of spine with hemorrhage and synovial effusion into joint cavity, 391-392
- Avulsion—(Continued)  
 tibia, portion of spine—(Continued)  
 treatment, conservative, 394-395  
 operative, 395-396  
 vastus medialis muscle, fibers of insertion into patella, 183
- Axis, femur, anatomic, 75-76  
 mechanical, 75-76  
 knee joint, 75-76  
 genu valgum, 76  
 genu varum, 76
- Azygos artery, *See* Genicular artery, middle
- Baker cyst of, *See* Bursae of knee joint, popliteal, cysts
- Band fascia lata, anatomy, 330  
 role in deformities of leg after poliomyelitis, 331  
 fibrotibial anatomy, 25, 28, 34, 37, 38, 47, 69, 70, 81, 87, 330, 633, 656, 657, 662  
 release, for flexion contracture after injuries to knee joint, 296  
 role in deformities of leg after poliomyelitis, 331
- Bandage Ace arthritis, rheumatoid, deformities of knee, 564  
 after Thompson's quadriceptoplasty, 292-293  
 elastic, compression, avulsion of portion of tibial spine, 395  
 bursitis of knee joint, prepatellar, 531  
 traumatic, acute, 529  
 chronic, 529-530  
 dislocation of knee joint, traumatic, 419  
 fracture, tibia, upper end, intercondylar (T or Y), 452  
 hemarthrosis, traumatic, 500  
 manipulative therapy after reduction of femoral fracture, 289  
 osteochondritis dissecans, 481  
 reconstruction, collateral ligament, tibial, 413  
 rupture, cruciate ligament, anterior, 395-396  
 posterior, 400  
 tibial collateral ligament, complete, with co-existing lesions, 381-382  
 uncomplicated, 367  
 sprain, tibial collateral ligament with effusion or hemarthrosis, 367-381  
 synovitis, villous, chronic, nonspecific, 502  
 Thompson's quadriceptoplasty, 292  
 E marsh application to local area, preoperative, 630
- Barbiturates, arthritis, rheumatoid, 556
- von Bechterew's disease, *See* Arthritis, rheumatoid, of spine
- Benadryl therapy, hydrarthrosis, intermittent, 538
- Bence Jones proteinuria in myeloma, multiple, 790-791  
 neoplasms of bone, 740
- Bennett operation for flexion increase after reduction of femoral fracture, 292-293
- Biceps femoris muscle, anatomy, 24, 54, 55, 52, 59, 70, 73, 84, 86, 656, 662, 665  
 long head, 34, 36, 69  
 and sartorius muscle, transplantation of tendons for paralysis of quadriceps muscle, 703

- keeps femoris muscle—(Continued)  
 and semitendinosus muscle transplantation of  
 tendons for paralysis of quadriceps  
 muscle 699 703  
 postoperative management, 702 703  
 not head 34 36, 69  
 and tensor fascia femoris muscle, transplantation of  
 tendons for paralysis of quadriceps  
 muscle, Yount technic, 704 706  
 nplantation of tendon, for paralysis of  
 quadriceps muscle, 706  
 v In diagnosis, aspiration, neoplasms of bone,  
 741 742  
 local neoplasms of bone 742  
 vessels of knee joint, 65 72  
 66-70  
 ficial, 65 66  
 blade plate fracture, femur distal end Inter  
 condylar 434 435  
 In osteotomy supracondylar open wedge for flexion  
 contractures after injuries to knee joint  
 298  
 Bodies, loose. See Loose bodies  
 rice. See Rice bodies  
 Böbber redresser In fracture reduction, tibia, upper  
 end, Intercondylar (T or Y) 452  
 Böbber Braun splint, fracture, femur distal end, Inter  
 condylar 432  
 supracondylar 428  
 tibia, upper end, Intercondylar (T or Y) 452  
 454  
 Boits, fracture femur distal end, Intercondylar 433  
 Bone(s) block, anterior for checking hyperextension  
 in genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis,  
 333 334  
 Campbell technic, 333 334  
 Mayer technic, 333 334  
 Milch technic, 333  
 carcinomas. See Carcinoma, bone  
 cysts. See Cysts, bone  
 formation, in arthritis, degenerative, 582  
 grafts, in arthrodensis, nontuberculous affections of  
 knee joint, Hatt technic of central bone  
 graft, 681  
 Milgram technic, 680  
 tuberculous joints, bridging grafts, 674-677  
 Hibbs technic, 674-676  
 Milgram modification of Roeren technic  
 674 675  
 Roeren technic, 674  
 patella as free graft, 675 676  
 fracture femur open reduction, with intra  
 medullary nailing, 287  
 free, in stabilization of fibula congenital absence  
 by reconstruction of external malleolus,  
 278-279  
 In osteotomy genu recurvatum, 327  
 genu varum femur 320  
 supracondylar open wedge for flexion con  
 tractures after injuries to knee joint, 298  
 of knee joint 632  
 neoplasms. See Neoplasms bone  
 approximation of fragments of fractured  
 patella, 220  
 Bosworth, Incision anteromedial, 651  
 technic of arthrodesis for nontuberculous affections  
 of knee joint, 681  
 Brace(s) arthropathies, neuropathic, 613  
 bowleg after osteotomy genu varum 320-321  
 caliper after arthroplasty deformities of knee  
 joint in rheumatoid arthritis, Kuhns and  
 Potter technic, 576  
 after capsulotomy posterior deformities of knee  
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 572  
 contractures in rheumatoid arthritis, 568  
 after osteotomy derotation, for torsion of femur  
 343  
 Thomas arthrodesis, tuberculous joints, 673  
 deformities of knee incident to cerebral palsy 345  
 346  
 fracture fibula upper end, 455  
 In genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis after opera  
 tive treatment 334 335  
 genu varum 319  
 knock knee, for genu valgum, 307 312  
 after osteotomy supracondylar open wedge 298  
 for tibia vara 324  
 See also Individual operations  
 Brett technic In osteotomy genu recurvatum 325 327  
 Brittain technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joints  
 675 677  
 Brodie, abscess of differential diagnosis from osteoid  
 osteoma, 739 740  
 Brucellosis diagnosis, differential, from bone neo  
 plasm, 735  
 Buckling of knee joint. See Giving way of knee joint  
 Bursa(e) of knee joint anatomy and function, 61-63  
 525-526 635-636  
 affections, 525 537  
 bursitis. See Bursitis of knee joint  
 general considerations, 525 526  
 anserine, 35 62 63 109 526, 531  
 biceps femoris 62 63  
 between biceps femoris and gastrocnemius muscles,  
 62 63  
 cysts, parameniscal 159  
 gastrocnemius, lateral, 62 63  
 medial, 62 63  
 excision, 537  
 gastrocnemiosemimembranosus, anatomy 62 63 532  
 excision, 535 537  
 postoperative management, 537  
 infrapatellar 24 61 63 526  
 calcification 528, 529 531  
 between meniscus and tibial collateral ligament, 92  
 93  
 parapatellar 38 45 48 50, 58  
 patellar 25  
 popliteal, 62 63 526, 531 537  
 cysts, cause of effusion, 533  
 clinical features, 534-535  
 diagnosis, 535-536  
 etiology 532 533  
 gross appearance of hernial sac, 531  
 incidence, 534  
 microscopic findings, 533 534  
 roentgenographic study 534 535  
 treatment, 536-537



- Bursa(e) of knee joint—(Continued)  
 popliteal—(Continued)  
   synovitis, villonodular 529  
   between popliteus tendon and external collateral ligament, 62, 63  
   prepatellar 24 61 63 526  
     calcification, 528 529  
     suppurative form 527  
   pretibial, superficial 61 63 526  
     suppurative form 527  
   semimembranosus, 59 62 63 532  
     excision, 536-537  
     postoperative management, 537  
   septa 532  
   suprapatellar 60, 61 63 526  
     between tibia and tibial collateral ligament, 109  
     between tibial tubercle and ligamentum patellae, 46-47  
   tibial tuberosity 25
- Bursitis of knee joint, acute invasion of pyogenic organisms 527  
   anserina diagnosis, differential 531  
     management, 531  
   with arthritides, 529  
   with calcification, 528 529  
     management 530  
   forms, 526-529  
   gastrocnemius. See Bursae of knee joint popliteal cysts  
   roots 527 528  
   infectious, diagnosis, differential, from suppuration, 530  
   infrapatellar management, 531  
     management 529-531  
   popliteal. See Bursae of knee joint popliteal cysts  
   prepatellar management, 530-531  
   with proliferations, neoplastic or non neoplastic, 526 529  
     management 530  
   semimembranosus. See Bursae of knee joint popliteal cysts  
   suppurative 527 530  
   syphilitic 528-529  
   traumatic 526-527  
     acute management, 529  
     chronic management, 529 530  
   tuberculous 527 530
- Calcar femorale 41-42
- Calcification of knee joint with bursitis 528, 529  
   para articular. See Pellegrini Stieda disease of menisci, 140-141  
   with degenerative joint changes, 141  
   with trauma, 140-141
- Caliper weight bearing with Thomas ring, after arthroplasty 696
- Callender technic amputation of knee joint, 722 725
- Campbell technic arthroplasty of knee joint 689-692  
   bone block to check hyperextension in genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis, 333 33  
   osteotomy genu recurvatum 326 328
- Canal adductor 69  
   Hunters 6
- Capsule articular 60  
   fibrous, 47 48, 632-633  
     alterations in degenerative arthritis, 582 583  
     from, 10, 11  
     in hyperextension of knee joint, 98  
     in hyperflexion of knee joint 98  
     physical examination, in injuries of meniscus, 152 153  
     in rotation of knee joint, 104  
     tears with fracture of patella 216  
   synovial, 59  
     drawn into knee joint in dislocation traumatic, surgical treatment 419  
     tears with fracture of patella 216
- Capsuloplasty deformities of knee joint after poliomyelitis, 329  
   Wilson technic, deformities of knee in rheumatoid arthritis, 567 572 574  
   for flexion contracture after injuries to knee joint 296
- Capsulotomy deformities of knee joint after poliomyelitis 329  
   for fibula, absence congenital, 278  
   for flexion contracture after injuries to knee joint, 296  
   posterior deformities of knee in rheumatoid arthritis, 570-572  
   of hamstring muscles, after osteotomy supracondylar circular for flexion contractures after injuries to knee joint, 300
- Carcinoma, bone metastatic diagnosis, differential, from tuberculosis of bone cystic, 740  
   metastatic 793-795  
     diagnosis, differential, 760-761 795  
     fractures pathologic, 794  
     roentgenographic features, 794 795  
     types of lesions, 793 794
- Carnes technic amputation of knee joint middle third of leg, 714 717
- Cartilage discoid, in meniscus, lateral, 110  
   medial 109  
   byaline liquefaction necrosis from pus, 614  
   resorption, lacunar in degenerative arthritis, 380
- Cast (plaster) after advancement of patella  
   Chandler technic, 350  
   arthritis rheumatoid, 553  
   deformities of knee 564  
   avul ion of portion of tibial spine with rupture of anterior cruciate ligament, 393  
   capsulotomy posterior deformities of knee in rheumatoid arthritis, 572  
   for congenital absence fibula, 278  
   tibia 271  
   contractures in rheumatoid arthritis, with turn buckles and hinges, Kulowski technic 567 569  
   dislocation fibula upper end, 456  
     knee joint trauma  
       fracture femur condylar in sagittal plane  
       open  
       closed, 425-427

Cast (plaster)—(Continued)  
fracture—(Continued)

tibia proximal end

without displacement, 448  
after manipulative therapy after reduction of  
osteochondritis dissecans, 4 6

after osteotomy derotation, for torsion of femur  
342

genu recurvatum 326-329  
genu varum 370

supracondylar circular 300  
open wedge, 298

for torsion of tibia, 342

Pellegrini Stieda disease 403

reconstruction collateral ligament tibial 413

rupture, collateral ligament tibial, complete, with  
combined lesions, 381 382

uncomplicated, 367 368

cruciate ligament, anterior with tear of medial  
meniscus, 396

posterior 400

separation, femur epiphysis, distal, 440-441

successive for stretching of quadriceps muscle for  
congenital genu recurvatum, 281

after surgical treatment, fibula absence, con-  
genital, 279

genu recurvatum congenital 281

after poliomyelitis, 333

genu valgum 309 312

car meniscus, medial, with rupture of anterior  
cruciate ligament 396

ter transplantation of hamstring tendons to  
femoral condyles, Eggers technic 352

with turnbuckle arthritis, pyogenic, 619

rheumatoid, contractures, severe and old, 567

569

In arthrodesis for tuberculous joints, Key technic,  
678

for flexion contracture after injuries to knee  
joint, 296

after osteotomy supracondylar circular 300

after osteotomy for deformities of knee  
joint after poliomyelitis, 330

See also *Isolated operations*

Cave inclusion, anteromedial, curved, 649-651

Cavity synovial knee joint, adhesions in, impairment  
of extensor apparatus of knee joint 282

function, 282

Cellophane as interposition membrane after synovec-  
tomy 294 295

for preservation of gliding mechanism in Thomp-  
son's quadricepsplasty 292

Chandler technic advancement of patella, 347 348,  
350

Charcot joint See Arthropathies, neuropathic

Charcot knee joint See Neurotrophic knee joint

(Charcot's disease) See Arthritis, rheumatoid

(Chompanier knee joint, comparative anatomy 18 20

Chondrectomy arthritis degenerative, 553

partial, for chondromalacia patellae, 246-24

Chondroblastoma of bone benign, 748  
case reports, 749 750  
clinical features, 748 749  
diagnosis, 50  
differential 750  
from cyst, bone solitary 768  
from tumor giant-cell 759-760  
microscopic features, 49-750  
origin, 748  
prognosis, 750  
roentgenographic features, 749  
site, 736 737  
treatment 750

Chondroma, 45-748  
case report, 747 748  
clinical features, 745  
diagnosis, differential, from cyst bone solitary 768-  
769

histologic appearance, 46-747  
incidence 745  
roentgenographic features 745 746  
treatment, 746 747

Chondromalacia of patella, 240-247  
age as factor in incidence, 242  
clinical features, 244 245  
crepitus of knee joint from 152  
etiology 241 242  
general considerations 240-241  
incidence 242

from incongruity of articular surface after repair  
of fractured patella, 220  
pathology 242 244  
roentgenographic features, 245  
treatment, 245 247

conservative 245 246  
operative, 246 247  
chondrectomy partial 246-247  
patellectomy indications and contraindic-  
tions, 246

of patellofemoral joint crepitus of knee joint from  
152

Chondromyxoma See Chondroma

Chondrosarcoma, 776-781  
chondroblastic primary, 776-778  
clinical features, 776  
roentgenographic features 776-778  
differential, from chondroblastoma of  
bone, benign, 750

from fibroma of bone, chondromyxoid 774 775  
Chrysotherapy arthritis, rheumatoid, 558-559  
complications and unfavorable sequelae 559  
lateral 63 72  
medial 68

Circumflex artery iliac, superficial, 68

Circumflex vein iliac, superficial, 65

Clamp, compression fracture, tibia, upper end, con-  
dylar lateral, depressed type, 449

Click of knee joint, in fracture reduction, tibia upper  
end, intercondylar (T or Y) 452

Codeine arthritis, caustic, 132  
rheumatoid, 556

Codman triangle of 8, 8.

- Burns(e) of knee joint—(*Continued*)  
 popliteal—(*Continued*)  
   synovitis, villonodular 529  
 between popliteus tendon and external collateral ligament 62 63  
 prepatellar 24 61 63 526  
   calcification, 528, 529  
   suppurative form, 527  
 pretibial superficial, 61 63 526  
   suppurative form, 527  
 semimembranosus 59 62 63 532  
   excision, 536-537  
   postoperative management, 537  
 septa, 532  
 suprapatellar 60, 61 63 526  
   between tibia and tibial collateral ligament, 109  
   between tibial tubercle and ligamentum patellae 46-47  
 tibial tuberosity 25
- Bursitis of knee joint, acute, invasion of pyogenic organisms, 527  
 anserina diagnosis, differential, 531  
   management, 531  
 with arthritides, 529  
 with calcification, 528, 529  
   management, 530  
 forms, 526-529  
 gastrocnemius *See* Bursae of knee joint, popliteal cysts  
 gouty 527 528  
 infectious, diagnosis, differential from suppuration, 530  
 infrapatellar management, 531  
 management 529 531  
 popliteal *See* Bursae of knee joint, popliteal cysts  
 prepatellar management, 530-531  
 with proliferations, neoplastic or non neoplastic, 526 529  
   management, 530  
 semimembranosus *See* Bursae of knee joint popliteal, cysts  
 suppurative 527 530  
 syphilitic 528-529  
 traumatic, 526-527  
   acute management, 529  
   chronic management, 529-530  
 tuberculous, 5 7 530
- Calcar femorale 41-42
- Calcification, of knee joint, with bursitis, 528, 529  
 para articular *See* Pellegrini-Stieda disease of menisci, 140-141  
 with degenerative joint changes, 141  
 with trauma 140-141
- Caliper weight-bearing, with Thomas ring, after arthroplasty 696
- Callender technique, amputation of knee joint, 722 725
- Campbell technique arthroplasty of knee joint 689-692  
 bone block to check hyperextension in genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis, 333 334  
 osteotomy genu recurvatum 326-328
- Canal, adductor 68  
 Hunter's 26
- Capsule, articular 60  
 fibrous, 47 48, 632-633  
   alterations in degenerative arthritis, 582 583  
   frog, 10 11  
   in hyperextension of knee joint, 98  
   in hyperflexion of knee joint 98  
   physical examination, in injuries of meniscus, 152 153  
   in rotation of knee joint, 104  
   tears, with fracture of patella 216  
 synovial, 59  
   drawn into knee joint, in dislocation, traumatic, surgical treatment, 419  
   tears, with fracture of patella, 216
- Capsulectomy deformities of knee joint after poliomyelitis, 329  
 Wilson technique, deformities of knee in rheumatoid arthritis, 567 572 574  
   for flexion contracture after injuries to knee joint, 296
- Capsulotomy deformities of knee joint after poliomyelitis, 329  
 for fibula, absence congenital, 278  
 for flexion contracture after injuries to knee joint, 296  
 posterior deformities of knee in rheumatoid arthritis, 570-572  
   of hamstring muscles, after osteotomy supracondylar circular for flexion contractures after injuries to knee joint, 300
- Carcinoma bone, metastatic, diagnosis differential, from tuberculosis of bone cystic, 40  
 metastatic, 793 795  
   diagnosis, differential, 760-761 795  
   fractures pathologic, 794  
   roentgenographic features, 794-795  
   types of lesions, 793-794
- Carnes technique, amputation of knee joint middle third of leg, 714-717
- Cartilage discoid in meniscus, lateral 110  
 medial 109  
 hyaline liquefaction necrosis from pus, 614  
 resorption, lacunar in degenerative arthritis, 580
- Cast (plaster) after advancement of patella Chandler technique, 350  
 arthritis, rheumatoid, 555  
   deformities of knee, 564  
 avulsion of portion of tibial spine with rupture of anterior cruciate ligament, 395  
 capsulotomy posterior deformities of knee in rheumatoid arthritis, 572  
 for congenital absence, fibula 278  
 tibia, 271  
 contractures in rheumatoid arthritis, with turn buckles and hinges, Kulowski technique 567 569  
 dislocation, fibula upper end 456  
   knee joint, traumatic, 419  
 fracture, femur distal end, condylar in sagittal plane 438  
   intercondylar 434  
   supracondylar reduction closed, 425-427 429 430  
   fibula, proximal end 455

- Cast (plaster)—(Continued)  
fracture—(Continued)  
tibia, proximal end, condylar lateral or medial  
without displacement 448  
after manipulative therapy after reduction of  
femoral fracture, 289  
osteochoondritis dissecans, 476  
after osteotomy derotation, for torsion of femur  
342  
genu recurvatum, 326-329  
genu varum, 320  
supracondylar circular 300  
open wedge, 298  
for torsion of tibia 342  
Pellegrini-Stieda disease, 403  
reconstruction, collateral ligament tibial, 413  
rupture collateral ligament, tibial, complete, with  
combined lesions, 381 382  
uncomplicated, 367 368  
cruciate ligament, anterior with tear of medial  
meniscus, 396  
posterior 400  
separation, femur epiphysis, distal, 440-441  
recessive, for stretching of quadriceps muscle for  
congenital genu recurvatum 281  
after surgical treatment fibula, absence, con-  
genital, 279  
genu recurvatum congenital, 281  
after poliomyelitis, 335  
genu valgum 309 312  
meniscus, medial, with rupture of anterior  
cruciate ligament, 396  
transplantation of hamstring tendons to  
femoral condyles, Eggers technic, 352  
turnbuckle, arthritis, pyogenic, 619  
hematoid contractures, severe and old 567  
569  
rhododitis for tuberculous joints, Kev technic,  
6 8  
flexion contracture after injuries to knee  
joint 296  
osteotomy supracondylar circular 300  
after osteotomy for deformities of knee  
after poliomyelitis, 330  
of knee joint, penetrating 459-461  
individual operations  
a, anteromedial, curved 649-651  
vial knee joint, adhesions in, impairment  
of extensor apparatus of knee joint, 282  
n, 282  
interposition membrane after synovec-  
omy 294 295  
tion of gliding mechanism in Thomp-  
son's quadricepsplasty 292  
k advance of patella 347 348  
Arthropathies, neuropathic  
a. See Neurotrophic knee joint  
e. See Arthritis, rheumatoid  
ound of knee joint penetrating, 459  
joint comparative anatomy 18 20  
thritis, degenerative 588  
romalacia patellae, 246-247  
Chondroblastoma of bone, benign, 748-750  
case report 49 750  
clinical features, 748 749  
diagnosis, 750  
differential 750  
from cyst, bone, solitary 768  
from tumor giant-cell, 759 760  
microscopic features, 749 50  
origin 748  
prognosis, 750  
roentgenographic features, 49  
site 736 73  
treatment, 750  
Chondroma, 745-748  
case report, 74 748  
clinical features, 745  
diagnosis, differential from cyst, bone solitary 768-  
769  
histologic appearance, 46-747  
incidence, 745  
roentgenographic features 745-746  
treatment, 746 747  
Chondromalacia of patella 240-247  
age as factor in incidence 242  
clinical features, 244 245  
creptus of knee joint from 152  
etiology 241 242  
general considerations, 240-241  
incidence, 242  
from incongruity of articular surface after repair  
of fractured patella, 220  
pathology 242 244  
roentgenographic features, 245  
treatment, 245 247  
conservative 245 246  
operative, 246-247  
chondrectomy partial 246-247  
patellectomy indications and contraindic-  
tions, 246  
of patellofemoral joint, creptus of knee joint from  
152  
Chondromyxoma. See Chondroma  
Chondrosarcoma, 776-781  
chondroblastic, primary 776-778  
clinical features, 776  
roentgenographic features 776-778  
diagnosis, differential, from chondroblastoma of  
bone benign, 750  
from fibroma of bone, chondromyxoid 774 775  
Chrysotherapy arthritis, rheumatoid, 558 559  
complications and unfavorable sequelae 559  
Circumflex artery iliac, superficial, 68  
lateral 68 72  
medial 68  
Circumflex vein, iliac, superficial, 65  
Clamp, compression, fracture, tibia upper end con-  
dylar lateral, depressed type 449  
screw: Scudder in fracture reduction, tibia upper  
end, intercondylar (T or V) 452  
Click of knee joint, causes 152  
Codine arthritis, degenerative 588  
rheumatoid, 556  
gout, 607  
Codman triangle of 778 82

- Colchicine, for gout, 606
- Cole type of pressure pad fracture femur distal end, condylar in sagittal plane, 438
- supracondylar 429
- Coley classification of bone neoplasms, 733 735
- Collateral ligament(s) extension, 97
- fibular anatomy 31 47 48, 52 55 59 385 657
- 658, 662
- surgical, 110-111
- movement, 110, 111
- relation to lateral meniscus, 110
- avulsion, with portion of styloid process of fibula 455-456
- cysts parameniscal, 159
- in extension of knee joint, 89 93 94
- in flexion of knee joint, 89 93 94 98
- in hyperextension of knee joint, 89
- lesions, 385 389
- avulsion, with bone flake from fibula, 364
- clinical features, 386
- mechanism 385
- old, 409
- operative treatment, 386-388
- postoperative management, 387 388
- types, 364
- rupture, complete, case report, 388-389
- old management, 416-417
- functional mechanism 87-97
- materials and methods employed in study 87-89
- in hyperextension of knee joint, 97 98
- physical examination in injuries of meniscus, 152 153
- in rotation of knee joint, 101 104
- tibial, in abduction and adduction of knee joint, 109
- anatomy 31 47 53 55 648-650, 653 660
- surgical, 108-110
- layer deep, 109
- superficial 109
- relation to tibial collateral ligament, 109
- as checkrein to abduction and external rotation of tibia on fixed femur 358
- in extension of knee joint, 89 90, 92 93
- in flexion of knee joint, 89 90, 92 93 98, 109-110
- in hyperextension of knee joint 89
- lesions, avulsion, with bone flake from femoral condyle 361 368
- from femoral or tibial insertions, 361 368
- combined management, conservative, 381 382
- postoperative 381
- operative repair 376-381
- types, 362 363
- diagnosis, differential, from bursitis, anserina 531
- from menisci lesions, 161 162
- with fracture, of tibia, condylar 445
- isolated, 361
- operative repair 373 376
- recent 366-385
- reconstruction, 412-413
- operative technique, 412 413
- in rotation of knee joint, 109
- rupture 100
- with combined lesions, 391
- complete 468 471
- Collateral ligament(s)—(Continued)
- tibial—(Continued)
- rupture—(Continued)
- complete—(Continued)
- clinical features, 368-370
- with coexisting lesions 370-373
- clinical features, 371 373
- management 373
- combined lesions case reports, 383 385
- diagnosis, 371-372
- examination, 368 369 371 373
- isolated lesions, case report, 382 383
- roentgenographic studies, 367 368 370
- signs, 370
- with fracture of lateral condyle of tibia, 391
- incomplete and uncomplicated 366-368
- case report, 382
- roentgenographic studies, 367
- signs and symptoms, 366-367
- management, 367 368
- old, clinical manifestations, 406-407
- pathogenesis, 406
- with tear of cruciate ligament, anterior 405
- of meniscus, 405
- with rupture of anterior cruciate ligament 391 393-394
- with tearing of menisci, 390, 391
- tightening in extension of knee joint, 87
- Comminution, fracture(s) femur distal end Inter condylar 433-435
- supracondylar 424 425 427
- tibia, proximal end condylar 443-447
- reduction, closed and open, 449-452
- Compound E. See Cortisone
- Compound F (Hydrocortone) arthritis, rheumatoid 558-562
- gout, 560
- Compression, in fracture reduction, tibia, upper end. Intercondylar (T or Y) 452
- test, for determination of injury to meniscus, 150 152
- Condyle(s) femoral, 38-40, 44
- avulsion of bone flake, 361 368
- chimpanzee 18, 20
- frog 11
- in hyperextension of knee joint, 98
- in hyperflexion of knee joint, 99
- lateral, 38, 39 55 60 641
- loose bodies arising from, surgical approach 480
- maldevelopment, 188
- opossum, 12 14
- osteocondritis dissecans, 470, 472
- macaque monkey 16, 17
- in man, comparative anatomy 19 21
- medial, 38-40, 55 60, 641
- loose bodies arising from, surgical approach, 479-480
- opossum, 12 14
- osteocondritis dissecans, 467 468, 472 479
- tumor giant-cell, 756
- in rotation of knee joint in extension, 90
- salamander 10
- semilunar area, 38
- turtle, 12 13

Condyle(s)—(*Continued*)

- tibial lateral, 46 47
- medial, 46, 47
- tibiofibular, frog 11
- salamander 10
- ossential abnormalities of knee joint, 267 281
- absence femur 267 270
- fibula. *See* Fibula, absence, congenital
- tibia. *See* Tibia, absence, congenital
- overriding deformities, 267
- tensor apparatus, 184-188, 267
- relaxation, 187 188
- cor muscles, contractures, 184
- no recurvatum. *See* Genu recurvatum, congenital
- in valgum 188
- ella 184-187 267
- bsence 185
- with multiple arthrodysplasia 185
- partite, 186 187
- ifferential diagnosis, from fracture 187
- placement laterally 187 188
- double, bilateral, 186, 187
- position in quadriceps tendon abnormally high 185 187
- tendon abnormally attached to tibia 187
- tripartite 187
- types 186
- underdevelopment, 185 188
- quadriceps muscle, malformation, 184
- vastus medialis muscle, absence of 184
- Convexity of femur lateral, 39-40
- medial, 39-40

Coonae and Adams incision, division of quadriceps tendon 668, 669

Corpora oxydosa. *See* Rice bodies

Cortex axis, hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal, 557 559

Corticosteroids, arthritis, rheumatoid, 558 559

Corticosterone comparison with adrenal steroids, 558

Corticone (Compound E) arthritis, rheumatoid, 558-561

contraindications, 561

gout, 560

Cortone. *See* Corticone

Crepitus of knee joint causes 152

with osteoarthritis, 152

Cruciate ligament(s) anatomy 635

anterior anatomy 38, 46, 53-55 58 60 642

as checkreins to abduction and external rotation

of tibia on fixed femur 358

dislocation without fracture of tibial spine,

operative treatment, 396

dog 15 16

extension of knee joint, 95 97

flexion of knee joint 95 96

hyperextension of knee joint 96

injuries recent, 389 397

avulsion with anterior tibial spine 389 390

clinical features, 391 394

combined lesions, 392 394

isolated lesions 391 392

management 394-397

mechanism, 389 391

combined lesions, 391

isolated lesions, 389 391

Cruciate ligament(s)—(*Continued*)

anterior—(*Continued*)

lesions, 96

combined clinical features, 392 394

mechanism, 391

types, 362 363

with fracture of tibia, condylar 445

isolated clinical features, 391 392

isolated mechanism, 389 391

management 394 397

recent, 389-397

with rupture of tibial collateral ligament complete, 370

operative repair 376-381

restoration, operative technique, 415-416

rupture 100

with avulsion of portion of tibial spine management, conservative 389 394 395

operative, 395 396

old, clinical manifestations, 408

isolated, 404-405

management, 410

pathogenesis, 407-408

with tear of medial meniscus, operative treatment 396-397

types, 365

substitution, 414-416

operative technique of Smillie 414-416

tear with rupture tibial collateral ligament, 405

chimpanzee 18 20

extension of knee joint, 97

flexion of knee joint, 98

functional mechanism, 87 97

materials and methods employed in study 87-89

hyperextension of knee joint 97 98

hyperflexion of knee joint, 98

lesions, differential diagnosis, from menisci lesions,

161 162

macaque monkey 16 17

man, comparative anatomy 19 20

physical examination in injuries of meniscus, 152

153

posterior anatomy 38, 46, 53 55 58-60

dog 15 16

in extension of knee joint, 94 96 97

in flexion of knee joint 96 97

in hyperextension of knee joint 97

rupture, 397-400

clinical features, 397

management 397-400

operative technique, 397-400

mechanism 397

old, clinical manifestations, 408-409

management 410 416

pathogenesis 408

varieties 397

tear 362 363

prevention of displacement of tibia on femur 99 100

in rotation of knee joint 104

Crural ligament turtle 13

Curette cyst, bone solitary 769

fibroma of bone chondromyxoid, 775

monosteogenic, 774

tumor plant-cell, 761 763

- Cutaneous nerves, of calf anatomy 637  
 of knee joint anatomy 636-637  
   anterior 72  
   dorsal, lateral, 72  
   femoral, lateral, 72  
   posterior 72 73  
   medial, anterior 72  
   posterior anatomy 69 664 665 667  
 lower extremity 72  
 of thigh femoral, lateral, anatomy 71 637  
   intermediate, anatomy 637
- Cyst(s) Baker's. *See* Bursae of knee joint, popliteal cysts
- bone, diagnosis, age as factor 736  
   differential, from tumor giant-cell 759  
 latent diagnosis, differential, from carcinoma metastatic, 795  
 site, 736  
 solitary 764-769  
   age 765  
   clinical features, 766-768  
   diagnosis, 768-769  
     differential, from chondroblastoma of bone benign 768  
     from chondroma, 768-769  
     from tumor giant-cell 768  
   incidence, 765  
   latent, 768  
   origin, 764-765  
   pathology 765 766  
   roentgenographic, 767 768  
   site, 765  
   treatment, 769  
   types, 464 465
- of meniscus, 121 130-136  
 development from horns, 158-159  
 differential diagnosis, from bony excrescences, 159  
   from intracapsular loose bodies, 159  
   from meniscus injuries, 157 159  
   from osteophytes, 159  
   from tear of regenerated meniscus, 161
- discoid 140  
 etiology 131 133  
   theories, 131 133  
   traumatic, 131 133  
 general considerations, 130-131  
 lateral, 133 134 158 159  
   with longitudinal tears, 132 134 136  
 macroscopic features, 133 135  
 medial, 132 133 135 158  
 microscopic features, 135 136  
 multiple 132 133  
 operative treatment, 174  
 pathogenesis, 133-134  
   with tears of lateral meniscus, 127 129 131 132  
 parameniscal, differential diagnosis, from cysts of meniscus, 159  
 subchondral, with arthritis, degenerative 581 582
- DCA (Doka) arthritis, rheumatoid 559  
 Débridement of knee joint, arthritis degenerative 589-590  
   wounds penetrating 458 461
- Deformities of knee joint acquired, 281 353  
   angular 304-312  
     genu recurvatum. *See* Genu recurvatum  
     genu valgum. *See* Genu valgum  
     genu varum. *See* Genu varum  
     tibia vara. *See* Tibia vara  
   ankylosis, bony in genu recurvatum, 302 303  
   in femur surgical correction, 341 343  
   flail knee, 336  
   flexion, contractures, after injuries to knee joint.  
     *See* Flexion, contractures, after injuries to knee joint  
   incident to cerebral palsy. *See* Palsy cerebral, deformities of knee incident to  
   after poliomyelitis, 329 335  
   stiffness after trauma. *See* Stiffness, in knee joint after trauma  
   surgical correction 346-348  
     advancement of patella, 347 348, 350  
     division of patellar retinacula, 349 350, 352  
     neurectomy of soleus muscle 353  
     transplantation of hamstring tendons to femoral condyles, 351-353  
   torsion of femur. *See* Femur torsion  
   of tibia. *See* Tibia, torsion  
   angular 304-312  
     congenital, 304  
     etiology 304  
     genu valgum. *See* Genu valgum  
     site, 305  
   arthritis, rheumatoid, correction, 564-566  
     prevention and management, 563 564  
   congenital. *See* Congenital anomalies, knee joint  
   Demerol, arthritis, rheumatoid, 556  
 DePalma incision modification of Fisher anteromedial curved, 648  
   modification of Key technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joints, 678-679  
   technic, arthroplasty of knee joint 694-695
- Diet as therapy arthritis, rheumatoid 555  
 gout, 606
- Disarticulation of knee joint 719 720  
 Rogers technic, 719-720
- Distal of femoral meniscus, infantile 63 64 66  
 intermediate, 63 64  
 primitive, 63 64
- Dislocation, knee joint, bilateral congenital, 267 268  
   traumatic 416-419  
     clinical features, 418-419  
     management, 419  
     pathology 417-418  
     types, 416, 417  
   *See also* individual anatomic units
- Displacement. *See* Individual anatomic units
- Doka (DCA) arthritis, rheumatoid 559
- Dog knee joint, comparative anatomy 12 15 16
- Drawer sign in diagnosis, displacement, tibia on fixed femur 392  
   rupture cruciate ligament anterior 372 391 393  
   posterior 392 397 408  
   stretching or tearing anterior cruciate ligament 393
- Dressings, in surgery of knee joint, 631

- "Drop foot" from paralysis of muscles, rupture  
collateral ligament, fibular 386
- Dynamics of knee joint 78
- motorizing muscles, 81-86
- extensors, 80-85
- flexors, 84-86
- rotators, 85-86
- Dyschondroplasia genu varum from 318
- Dysplasia fibrosa, diagnosis, differential, from tumor  
giant-cell, 760
- monostatic, diagnosis, differential, from fibroma  
of bone nonosteogenic, 773
- Effusion of synovial fluid of knee joint, aspiration,  
avulsion of portion of tibial spine with  
rupture of anterior cruciate ligament  
394-395
- buritis, suppurative, 530
- traumatic acute, 529
- dislocation of knee joint, traumatic, 419
- from stretching or tearing of synovial, 366-367
- synovitis, villous chronic nonspecific, 502
- technic, 498-499
- In avulsion of tibia, portion of spine 391-392
- upper surface, 391-392
- distention of knee joint, testing for 149
- after meniscectomy of infectious origin, 178
- of traumatic origin 177-178
- In popliteal cysts, cause of 533
- In rupture cruciate ligament, anterior 391-392
- with tear of menisci, 146
- Eggers technic, division of patellar retinacula 349
- 350-352
- transplantation of hamstring tendons to femoral  
condyles, 351-353
- Embrace Intercondylar, tibial 46
- Enchondroma See Chondroma
- Endocrine glands, deficiencies, as causative agent  
arthritis degenerative 579
- disturbances, angular deformities in and about knee  
joint from, 304
- genu varum from, 318
- Epicondyle, femoral, lateral, 38-39
- medial, 38-39
- Epigastric artery superficial 68
- Epigastric vein, superficial, 65
- Ephrysiodesis separation, femur epiphysis, distal  
444
- Equilibrium, at knee joint, maintenance 86-87
- Equinovarus deformity with absence of tibia con  
genital, 269
- Evolution of 643-644
- Evolution of knee joint, 1-9
- femur 6-8
- fibula, 8-9
- lower extremities, 4-6-9
- origin of paired limbs, 1-4
- theory, gill arch, 1
- lateral fin 1
- pectoral girdle 1-4
- pelvic girdle 2-4-6
- amphibia, 4-5
- Evolution of knee joint—(Continued)
- pelvic girdle—(Continued)
- fishes, 2-5
- mammals, 4-6
- reptiles, 4-5
- tibia, 8-9
- Ewing, sarcoma of See Sarcoma, Ewing's
- tumor of See Tumor Ewing's
- Excrecences, bony differential diagnosis, from cysts  
of meniscus, 159
- Exercise(s) arthritis, rheumatoid 555-563
- contractures, mild and recent, 566
- after arthroplasty deformities of knee joint in  
rheumatoid arthritis Kuhns and Potter  
technic, 576
- flexion, reconstruction, collateral ligament, tibial  
413
- after reduction of femoral fracture, 286
- leg after reduction of femoral fracture 286-287
- after manipulative therapy after reduction of  
femoral fracture, 289
- muscles. See Muscles, exercises
- patella, after reduction of femoral fracture, 286
- quadriceps muscle. See Quadriceps muscle exercises
- straight leg raising, 264
- arthritis, pyogenic 619
- rheumatoid, 564
- after capsulotomy posterior deformities of knee  
In rheumatoid arthritis, 572
- contractures in rheumatoid arthritis, 568
- after débridement of knee joint for degenerative  
arthritis, 590
- after excision, bursae of knee joint, gastrocnemio  
semimembranosus, 537
- semimembranosus, 537
- hemarthrosis, traumatic, 500
- Pellegrini Stieda disease, 403
- rupture of tibial collateral ligament, complete,  
with coexisting lesions, 381-382
- incomplete, 368
- after synovectomy 505
- after synovectomy McKeever method 295
- after Thompson's quadricepsplasty 292-293
- whirlpool and underwater arthritis, pyogenic, 619
- after débridement of knee joint for degenerative  
arthritis, 590
- Exostosis, bursitis 744
- osteochondral (osteochondroma) 742-745
- age 743
- clinical features, 743-744
- etiology 742
- incidence 743
- prognosis, 745
- roentgenographic features, 743-745
- sex 743
- site, 742-743
- treatment, 745
- Extension of knee joint, anatomy and physiology 79
- 85-281-282
- compression of infrapatellar fat pad 112
- contracture bilateral, 269
- Injuries to meniscus, 119
- Ligaments, 89-97
- arcuate 97



# Extension of knee joint—(Continued)

## Ligaments—(Continued)

- collateral, 97
- fibular 89 93 94
- tibial 89 90, 92-93
- cruciate, 97
  - anterior 95 97
  - popliteal, oblique 97
  - posterior 94 96, 97
- loss of, after synovectomy of knee joint 295-296
- maintenance of stability 86-87
- measurement, apparatus, 89
- menisci 89-91 111 113
- quadriceps apparatus, 281 282
- "screw-home" movement 79 84 86, 90, 112
- test for determination of injury to meniscus, 150 152

## tightening of collateral ligaments 87

## working apparatus, Flick's calculations, 81 82

# Extensor apparatus of knee joint, disorders, 184-264

- avulsion. *See* Avulsion
- chondromalacia patellae. *See* Chondromalacia patellae
- congenital malformations. *See* Congenital anomalies of knee joint
- dislocation of patella. *See* Patella dislocation
- fractures. *See* Fractures
- Larsen Johansson disease, 240, 241
- Osgood-Schlatter's disease, 237 240
- osteoarthritis of poles of patella, 240, 241
- osteomyelitis of patella, acute, 245-252
- quadriceps muscle. *See* Quadriceps muscle and Tendon, quadriceps muscle
- ruptures. *See* Ruptures
- separation of upper epiphysis of tibia, 235

# Extensor longus muscle, 27 28

# Extensor muscles, hip, 33 34

- knee, 27 29
- physical examination, in injuries of meniscus, 152 153

## leg, 30, 36

## salamander 10

## thigh, 35 36

# Extremities, lower evolution 4 6-9

# Facet, tibial, lateral, 46

## medial, 46

# Fascia(e) cribrosa, 24 27

## iliopsoas, 26

- lata, as interposition material in arthroplasty
- Campbell technic, 691-692

## evaluation, 683-684

## septa, intermuscular 26

## thigh, 24-27

## lower extremity 25

## thigh, 24-27

## lata (deep) 24-27

## superficial (tela subcutanea) 24 25

# Fat, free as interposition material in arthroplasty 684

# Femoral artery 66-68

## deep, 68

# Femoral nerve 66-68, 71 82

# Femoral vein, 25 65-68

## deep, 66

# Femorofibula joint, turtle, 12 13

# Femur absence, complete or partial, 267 270

## architecture, bony intrinsic, 40-41

## axis, anatomic, 75 76

## mechanical, 75 76

## chimpanzee, 18, 20

## condyles. *See* Condyles, femoral

## deformities, torsion, with paralysis, quadriceps muscle 699

## distal end, chondroblastoma 749 750

## benign, 736, 737

## chondroma, 746-748

## fractures, 422-439

## anatomy and function of region, 422

## condylar in frontal plane, 438-439

## in sagittal plane 438

## general considerations, 422-424

## groups, 422

## intercondylar (T and Y) 431-435

## management, conservative, 432

## operative, 432-435

## single condyle, 435-439

## management, 437

## supracondylar 422-432

## comminution, 424 425 427

## diagnosis, 425

## management, 425-432

## conservative 425-431

## operative, 431-432

## position of fragments, 423-425

## T. *See* Femur distal end, fracture inter condylar

## Y. *See* Femur distal end, fracture inter condylar

## sarcoma, chondroblastic, 778

## osteogenic, 736

## sclerosing, 784

## tumor giant-cell, 754 755

## dog, 12 15

## epiphysis, distal, irreducible management, 441 442

## 444

## separation 439-444

## management, 440-442 444

## types, 439

## evolution, 6-8

## fractures, adhesions in quadriceps muscles, stiffness

## of knee joint from, 283

## distal end. *See* Femur distal end fractures

## middle third, treatment conservative 285

## operative, 285

## neck and trochanteric region intramedullary nail

## ing, 286

## treatment, early mobilization of leg, 286-287

## operative 287 295

## choice of methods, 284-286

## for flexion increase Bennett's technic 292

## 293

## Smillie's technic 293 294

## Thompson's quadricepsplasty 290-293

## incision and exposure, 287

## management, 287 288

## manipulation, 288-289

## technic, 288-289

## Femur—(Continued)

## fractures—(Continued)

upper third, treatment, operative, intramedullary  
nailing, 285 286

frog, comparative anatomy 10

genu varum. *See* Genu varum

head prosthesis, materials, 683 684

inner structure, distal end, 43-44

proximal end 40, 41

ligaments. *See* Individual ligaments

macaque monkey 17

opossum, 12 14

osteoma, osteoid 769

osteomyelitis, diagnosis, differential, from arthritis,  
pyogenic, 616

and patella anatomic relation, 82-83

rotation on tibia internal, with abduction and  
flexion, trauma to ligaments, 360-363

salamander comparative anatomy 10

sarcoma, Ewing's, 788

shaft, chondrosarcoma, secondary 779

tubular structure, 43

stresses, maximum tensile and compression, proximal  
end, 42 43

sukus, intercondylar deficient, 188

torion, 336-340, 342

etiology 337 338

examination, physical, 338-339

treatment 341 343

postoperative, 342 343

surgical, osteotomy devolution, 341 342

supracondylar 342

types, 336

trochanters, homology 7-8

turtle, 12 13

Fever rheumatic, and arthritis, rheumatoid, relation,  
diagnosis, differential, from arthritis, pyogenic,  
616

Fibromyxoma, giant-cell. *See* Synovitis, villous,  
nodular pigmented

Fibroma of bone, chondromyxoid 774-776

diagnosis, differential, 774-775

pathology 775

roentgenographic features, 775

treatment, 775-776

diagnosis, differential, 773

nonosteogenic, 772 774

age, 773

clinical features, 773 774

pathology 774

roentgenographic features, 773 774

sex, 773

site 773

treatment, 774

Fibrosarcoma of bone, 786

in fossa, popliteal, 535

Fibrosis. *See* Adhesions

Fibula, absence

congenital, complete or partial 267

270 276-279

diagnosis, differential, from congenital absence

of tibia 277 278

treatment conservative 278

## Fibula absence, congenital—(Continued)

treatment—(Continued)

operative, 278-279

amputation, 279

capulotomy 278

epiphyseal arrest to equalize leg length,

279

stabilization by construction of external  
mallohus, with free bone graft, 278-279

tarsal arthrodeses for valgus deformity of  
foot, 279

tendon lengthening, 278

tenotomy 278

types 276-278

chimpanzee, 18

distal end, stabilization, in absence of tibia, 274-276

dog 15 16

evolution, 8-9

genu varum. *See* Genu varum

head, avulsion of bone flake, 364

displacement upward, congenital 268

ligaments. *See* Individual ligaments

macaque monkey 17

neck, fracture, with condylar fracture of tibia, 443

445

opossum, 12 14

proximal end, dislocation, 456

management, 456

fractures, 455-456

diagnosis, 455

isolated, 455-456

treatment, 455-456

resection, 708-711

operative technic (Henry) 709 711

sarcoma, osteogenic, 736

transfer Putti technic, in congenital absence of  
tibia 271 275

turtle 12 13

Finger(s) formation of Heberden's nodes in degenera-  
tive arthritis, 581 584

index, proximal phalanx, osteoid osteoma, 770

Fisher incision, anteromedial, curved, 647-648

in removal of posterior horn, 650-652

modification, of von Langenbeck, 643-644

Fishes, evolution, of fins, paired, and skeletal sup-  
ports, 3

pelvic girdle 2 5

Flail knee 336

Flatfoot genu valgum from, 306

Flexion of hip joint contracture, bilateral, 269

of knee joint, 78-80

with abduction and external rotation of femur

on tibia, trauma to ligaments, 363 364

with abduction and internal rotation of femur

on tibia, trauma to ligaments, 360-363

anatomy and physiology 281 282

contractures, after injuries, 293 302

ankylosis (bony) 297 298

surgical treatment 297 298

management, early deformities, 296

resistant deformities 296

surgical treatment arthrodesis and arthro-  
plasty 297

- Flexion—(Continued)  
 of knee joint—(Continued)  
 contractures—(Continued)  
 osteotomy. *See* Osteotomy  
 flexion contractures  
 after injuries to knee joint  
 prophylaxis 295  
 with paralysis, quadriceps muscle, 699  
 after poliomyelitis, 329-333  
 Infrapatellar fat pad, function, 156  
 Hxamants, 89-97  
 collateral, 98  
 fibular 89 93 94  
 tibial, 89 90, 92 93 109-110  
 cruciate, 98  
 anterior 95-96  
 posterior 96, 97  
 maintenance of stability 87  
 measurement, apparatus, 89  
 menisc, 89 91 111 113  
 injuries, 119 120  
 quadriceps apparatus, 281 282  
 safeguards against loss, 284-285  
 Flexor muscles, digitorum longus pedis, 36  
 hallucis, 36  
 hip, 27 28, 33 34  
 knee 28, 81 84-86  
 contractures, congenital, 184  
 working ability. *See* Fick's calculations 81 82  
 leg, 34 36  
 petris, 32  
 thigh, 29 32 33  
 Fold(s) alar 53 60  
 Infrapatellar 60  
 Fossa, Intercondyloid, 38-40  
 tibial anterior 46  
 posterior 46  
 ovalis, 24 27  
 popliteal, 25 72 73  
 aneurysm, 535  
 Fouché test of to detect tear of meniscus, posterior  
 segment, 150, 151 161  
 Fracture bed, use in fracture reduction, tibia, upper  
 end, Intercondylar (T or Y) 452 454  
 Fracture table, use in reduction, fracture femur  
 distal end, condylar 438  
 Intercondylar 433  
 supracondylar 426 427  
 tibia proximal end, condylar 448  
 Intercondylar (T or Y) 452  
 separation, femur epiphysis, distal, 440, 441  
 Fractures, knee joint, 422-456  
 osteochondral, involving patella, 218  
 pathologic, from carcinoma metastatic 794  
 patella. *See* Patella fractures  
*See also* Individual bones  
 Friction, in knee joint minimized by menisci, 113  
 Frog comparative anatomy 10-12  
 Functions of knee joint 628  
 materials and methods employed in study 87-89  
 Galloway technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joints,  
 676  
 Henderson modification 675-677  
 Garré's disease diagnosis differential from osteoid  
 osteoma, 719 740  
 Gas gangrene antitoxin, wounds of knee joint, pen-  
 trating 457  
 Gastrocnemius muscle anatomy 19 27 28, 34 70,  
 652 656, 665 667  
 chimpanzee 18  
 dog, 15  
 as extensor of knee joint, 80, 81  
 as flexor of knee joint, 84 85  
 head, inner 73  
 lateral, 47 52 69  
 medial, 47 49 52 69  
 outer 73  
 in hyperflexion of knee joint 99  
 macaque monkey 17  
 as stabilizer of knee in extension, 86  
 Gemellus muscles, 36  
 Genicular arterioles, 70 72 636, 637  
 highest (genu suprema) 72  
 inferior 69 0  
 medial, 51  
 superior 69 70  
 Genicular vein, 657 665  
 Genu recurvatum 325 329  
 ankylosis, bony 302 303  
 open wedge osteotomy 303  
 congenital, 184 267 279-281  
 management, 281  
 operative treatment, osteotomy 325 329  
 Brett technic 325 327  
 Campbell technic, 326-328  
 Irwin technic, 328-329  
 with osseous alterations, 332-333  
 without osseous alterations, 333  
 with paralysis, quadriceps femoris muscle, 699  
 after poliomyelitis, anterior 332  
 surgical treatment, 333 335  
 Gill's technic, 334 335  
 osteotomy tibia 334  
 transplantation of hamstrings into patella  
 334  
 postoperative management, 326-329  
 Genu valgum, 304 316  
 clinical features, 307  
 congenital, 188  
 deformity acquired 187  
 etiology 306-307  
 mechanical axis, 76  
 severe 312-315  
 with tibia vara, oblique osteotomy 312 313  
 treatment operative 312 315  
 management in growing children, 315  
 osteotomy oblique, 312 313  
 technic of Abbott and Gill, 313 315  
 treatment, 307 309  
 conservative 307 308  
 operative, 307 315  
 Blount and Clarke technic 308-310  
 osteotomy 297 311 312  
 open wedge 305 311 312  
 postoperative management 312  
 stapling 308-311  
 for linear deformities, 310-311  
 Genu varum (bowleg) 317 321  
 clinical features 318

## Genu varum (bowleg)—(Continued)

- etiology 317-318
- mechanical axis 76
- treatment, 318-321
  - conservative, 319
  - surgical 319-321
- technic, for apex of joint space, 320, 321
  - for femur 297 320-321
  - for tibia, 321

## Gill technic, for genu recurvatum after anterior poliomyelitis, 334-335

- Girdle pectoral, origin, 1 4
- pelvic, evolution, 2 4-6
  - amphibla, 4 5
  - fishes, 2 5
  - mammals, 4-6
  - reptiles, 5

## Giving way (buckling) of knee joint, 85

- from failure to repair implicated ligaments, 358
- from incomplete removal of torn meniscus, 161
- as indication of meniscus injury 149-151
- rupture old collateral ligament, tibial, 406
- synovitis, villous chronic nonspecific, 502
- from tears of menisci 121 122 126, 127 130

## Gliding mechanism, of extensor apparatus, preservation, in Thompson's quadriceplasty

- cellophane or nylon, 292
- in and about knee joint, in function of quadriceps muscle 281 282

## protection in surgical treatment of lesions, 376

## Gliding motion, knee joint, 78-80

## Gluteus maximus muscle, 28, 34

- as extensor of knee joint, 80 81
- maintenance of stability at knee joint, 87

## role in flexion contracture of hip, 379

## Gluteus medialis, muscle 28

## Gluteus minimus muscle, 34 36

## Glycocorticoids, arthritis, rheumatoid 558, 559

## Gold arthritis, rheumatoid 558-559

## Gold complications and unfavorable sequelae 559

## Gout 600-607

## bone lesions from, 735

## clinical manifestations 603-605

## diagnosis 605-606

## differential, 605-606

## etiology 600-602

## history 600

## incidence 600-602

## management, 606-607

## Compound F 560

## cortisone 560

## prophylaxis, 606

## pathology 602-603

## roentgenographic features, 604 605

## Gracilis muscle, 27 32 34 3 51 641 665

## displacement into intercondylar notch of femur in

## dislocation of knee joint, 419

## as flexor of knee joint, 84 85

## as rotator of knee joint, 85 86

## Griswold and Wood technic, irreducible distal femoral

## epiphyseal separation, 441-442

## Grooves of knee joint anatomy 640, 641

## lateral, femur 38

## medial, of femur 38-40

## Grooves of knee joint—(Continued)

- patellar 38, 60
- variations in lower primates and man 8
- Growth arrest, of tibia, genu varum from 318
- disturbances, genu valgum from 306

## Hamstring muscles, capsulotomy after osteotomy

- supracondylar circular for flexion con-
- structures after injuries to knee joint, 300
- medial displacement into intercondylar notch of
- femur in dislocation of knee joint, 419
- tenotomy for bony ankylosis of knee in flexion,
- 298, 300

## transplantation into patella, for genu recurvatum

- after poliomyelitis 334
- Hess technic of arthroplasty of knee joint, 693 694

## Hatt technic of arthrodesis for nontuberculous affec-

- tions of knee joint central bone graft,
- 681

## Heat as therapy arthritis, degenerative 587

- pyogenic, 618
- rheumatoid, 556
- after arthroplasty 696
- after débridement of knee joint for degenerative
- arthritis 590

## after reduction of fracture of femur distal end,

- supracondylar 430
- Heberden nodes of formation on fingers and toes
- in degenerative arthritis, 581 584

## Hemangioma, in femur, popliteal, 535

## Hemarthrosis in knee joint, arthritis, degenerative. 582

- hemophilic, 593
- avulsion of portion of tibial spine, 391-392
- with rupture of anterior cruciate ligament, 394.
- 395

## dislocation of knee joint traumatic, 419

- fracture, femur distal end supracondylar 426
- tibia, proximal end 445
- condylar lateral, depressed type, 448
- intercondylar (T or Y) 452
- spine or plateau, 393

## laceration synovial lining, 393

- after meniscectomy 177
- osteoarthritis dissecans, 481
- rupture, collateral ligament, fibular 386
- tibial, with combined lesions, 381
- cruciate ligament anterior 391-393
- posterior 400

## from stretching or tearing of synovialis 366 367

- 370
- synovial fluid changes from, 496
- tearing, meniscus, from capsule 393
- traumatic, 499-500
- clinical manifestations, 499 500
- diagnosis, differential, from arthritis pyogenic
- 616

## etiology 499

- management 500
- Hemorrhage, massive into knee joint of hemophilic,
- with necrosis of overlying tissue and
- vastus medialis muscle 253 254
- in muscles, prevention of in open reduction of
- fracture of femur 287
- with wounds of knee joint, penetrating 457

- Henderson incision, posteromedial, 660-663  
 technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joints, 675  
 677
- Henry incision, posterolateral, 662-664  
 posteromedial 661 663  
 technic, resection of proximal end of fibula 709 711
- Heredity as factor arthritis, hemophilic, 593  
 exostosis, osteocartilaginous, 742  
 gout, 600, 606  
 neoplasms of bone in region of knee joint 735
- Herniation vastus lateralis muscle, 212 213
- Hibbs technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joint  
 modified, 674-676  
 original, 674
- Hip, Borden contracture from tensor fasciae latae, 329  
 muscles, adductor 33 34  
 extensor 33 34  
 flexor 27 28, 33 34  
 rotator external, 33 34  
 internal, 34
- Housselmaki's knee. *See* Bursitis of knee joint  
 prepatellar
- Hughes, observations on knee flexion deformities after  
 poliomyelitis, 331 332
- Humerus, proximal end, chondroblastoma, benign, 736  
 tumor giant-cell, 753
- Humphry ligament of. *See* Ligament, of Humphry
- Hunter canal of. *See* Canal, Hunter's
- Hyaluronidase, use in hemarthrosis, 597 598
- Hydrarthrosis, intermittent 537 538  
 clinical features, 537 538  
 management, 538  
 pathologic alterations, 538  
 pregnancy effect of 537  
 type, idiopathic, 537  
 asymptomatic, 537
- Hydrocortone injection into knee joint, arthritis, de-  
 generative 587  
 bursitis, with calcification, 530  
 traumatic acute 529  
 chronic, 529  
 after manipulative therapy after reduction of  
 femoral fracture, 289
- Pellegrini Stieda disease 403  
 into suprapatellar pouch, after synovectomy 295
- Hypercalcemia, in myeloma, multiple, 790
- Hyperextension of knee joint, femur condyles, 98  
 fibrous capsule 98  
 infrapatellar fat pad compression, 112
- Hypertrophy, 89  
 arcuate 97  
 collateral, 97 98  
 fibular 94  
 cruciate, 97 98  
 anterior 96  
 posterior 97  
 popliteal oblique 97 98  
 trauma, 364-365  
 restrained by infrapatellar fat pad, 98  
 tendon of popliteus muscle 97 98  
 tibia on femur 279
- Hyperflexion of knee joint femur condyles, 99  
 fibrous capsule 98  
 gastrocnemius muscle 99
- Hyperflexion of knee joint—(Continued)  
 ligaments, cruciate 98  
 menisci, 99 111 112
- Hypermobility of menisci, 155  
 with other lesions of discoid menisci, 137
- Hyperparathyroidism, diagnosis, differential, from  
 tumor giant-cell, 760
- Hyperproteinemia, in myeloma, multiple 790
- Hypertrophy infrapatellar fat pad 156  
 leg congenital, 267 270  
 meniscus, medial, tear longitudinal 122
- Iliacus muscle, 32
- Iliopsoas muscle 27 30, 32
- Ilium, use of bone grafts in arthrodesis for tuberculous  
 joints, 677-678
- Incision, Adams and Coonse, division of quadriceps  
 tendon 668, 669  
 anterolateral, 646-647  
 anatomy surgical 646-647  
 anteromedial, 646-652  
 access to anterior and posterior compartments,  
 649-650  
 anatomy surgical, 646-647  
 curved, Bosworth 651  
 Cave 649-651  
 Fisher 647-648  
 modification by DePalma, 648  
 Jones, 646-647  
 in removal of posterior horn, Fisher method,  
 650-652
- Cave, anteromedial curved, 649-651
- Coonse and Adams, division of quadriceps tendon,  
 668, 669
- division, patellar tendon, 668, 669  
 quadriceps muscle 668 669  
 quadriceps tendon 668 669
- Erke parapatellar 643 644
- Fisher anteromedial, curved, 647-648  
 modification by DePalma, 648  
 in removal of posterior horn, 650-652  
 modification, of von Langenbeck, 643-644
- Henderson, posterolateral, drainage for sepsis of  
 knee joint, 708  
 posteromedial, 660-663
- Henry posterolateral, 662-664  
 posteromedial, 661 663
- Jones, anteromedial curved, 646-647
- Klein (posteromedial) drainage for sepsis of knee  
 joint 707 708
- Kocher 644-646
- Krikla's use of von Langenbeck method 642-643
- von Langenbeck, 642-644  
 Krikla's use of 642-643  
 modification, by Fisher 643-644  
 by Payr 643 644
- lateral 658 659  
 curved, 659  
 S-shaped, 658, 659  
 straight 659
- medial, curved, 656-657  
 S-shaped, 654-656  
 straight, 656-657  
 mid-line fascial 633

## Incision—(Continued)

- parapatellar 641-646
  - Erke's, 643 644
  - Krida's use of von Langenbeck, 642-643
  - von Langenbeck, 642-644
  - Krida's use of 642-643
  - modification, by Fisher 643-644
  - by Payr 643 644
  - lateral, of Kocher 644-646
  - median, 642
- Payr modification of von Langenbeck, 643 644
- posterior mid line, 666-668
- posterolateral, 660-664
  - Henry 662-664
  - Henderson, drainage for sepsis of knee joint 708
  - posteromedial, 660-663
  - Henderson, 660-663
  - Henry 661 663
  - Klein, drainage for sepsis of knee joint, 707 708
  - Putti Campbell, division of quadriceps muscle 668, 669
  - Tector division of patellar tendon, 668 669
  - transverse, of Annandale 646
  - See also individual operations
- Infection, with arthritis, rheumatoid 555
  - as causative agent, arthritis, degenerative 578
  - disturbances, causing angular deformities in and about knee joint, 304
  - of knee joint, 463
- Inflammation, knee joint synovial fluid changes from 496
- Infrapatellar fat pad, anatomy 30, 48 49 53 58 156, 635 641 657
  - chimpanzee 18, 20
  - compression in extension and hyperextension of knee joint 89 90, 112
  - dog, 15 16
  - fibrosis, 156
  - function, in flexion of knee 156
  - in hyperextension of knee joint 98
  - hypertrophy 156
  - lesions, acute 157
  - chronic, 156-157
  - clinical features, 156-157
  - differential diagnosis, from cystic mass in retro-patellar region, 157
  - from menisci injuries, 156-157
- Infrapatellar nerve anatomy 637
- Intramedullary nailing (pinning) arthrodesis, non tuberculous affections of knee joints, 681-682
  - fractures, femur middle third, 284 286
  - open reduction, 287
  - upper third 285 286
- Irradiation, contraindicated, synovitis villonodular pigmented, 514
  - cyst, bone solitary disadvantages, 769
  - myeloma, multiple, 793
  - osteoma osteoid, 772
  - See also Roentgen ray therapy
- Irram technique in osteotomy genu recurvatum, 328-329
- Isotonic acid compounds therapy bursitis, tuberculous 530
- Jones incision anteromedial, curved 646-647
- Key technic of arthrodesis for tuberculous joints, 673 678-679
  - DePalma modification 678-679
- Kirk technic, periosteal supracondylar tendoplastic amputation of knee joint 724-726
  - of tendoplastic amputation at middle third of leg 716-718
- Kirschner wire in osteotomy genu recurvatum 328 329
  - in rotation osteotomy for torsion of tibia 339-340
- Klein incision (posteromedial) drainage for sepsis of knee joint, 707 708
- Knowles pins in Galloway technic of arthrodesis 676
- Kocher incision, parapatellar 644-646
- Krida use of von Langenbeck incision 642-643
- Kuhns and Potter technic, arthroplasty deformities of knee joint in rheumatoid arthritis, 574 577
  - indications and contraindications, 576-577
- Kulowski technic, correction of fixed flexion contractures in rheumatoid arthritis, 56 569
- Kuntschner intramedullary nail fractures, femur middle third 286
- Lacunae of Weichselbaum formation in degenerative arthritis, 580
- Landmarks, surgical, approaches to knee joint, 639-641
- von Langenbeck incision, 642-644
  - Krida's use of 642-643
  - modification, by Fisher 643-644
  - by Payr 643 644
- Larsen-Johansson disease, 240, 241
  - treatment, 240
- Leg, hypertrophy congenital, 267 270
  - lengthening, after extensive treatment of fractures, 313
- muscles, adductor 34 36
  - extensor 30, 36
  - flexor 34 36
  - rotator 33
  - external, 35
  - internal, 36
- Lichtenstein classification of bone neoplasms, 734 735
- Ligament(s) control of motions of knee joint 97 105
  - abduction and adduction rocking of tibia on femur 100-101
  - anterior displacement of tibia on femur 98-100
  - lateral 100-101
  - performance as functional unit, 104-105
  - rotary 101 104
  - sagittal, 97 99
  - coronary 18, 59 60
  - crural, turtle 13
  - of Humphry 56, 58 59 110
  - in flexion of knee joint, 89 90
  - prevention of anterior displacement of meniscus in flexion, 112 119 120, 154
- Inguinal, 67

## Ligament(s)—(Continued)

- knee joint functional mechanism, 89 97
    - collateral fibular 93 94
    - tibial, 90, 92-93
    - cruciate 94-97
      - anterior 95 97
      - posterior 94 96, 97
    - materials and methods employed in study 87 89
    - in normal extension and flexion 89 91
    - tibia, upper end condylar 445
    - old lesions, 404-410
    - reconstruction 410-417
      - observations, 410-412
    - ruptures, old, 404-410
      - clinical features, 406-410
      - general considerations, 404-406
      - management 405-406 409-410
        - conservative, 405
        - operative 405-406
      - pathogenesis, 406
    - stretching with flexion contracture of knee joint 329
  - See also individual ligaments*
  - lateral 38
    - external. *See* Ligament, collateral, fibular
    - internal. *See* Ligament, collateral, tibial
  - mechanism(s) functional, 359
  - responsible for injuries, 359-366
  - medial 38
  - patellar (anterior) 30, 48, 58
    - displacement laterally 188
  - popliteal arcuate 54
  - oblique (of Winslow) 47-49 52 54 73
  - transverse genu, 38, 57 59
  - traumatic lesions 358-419
    - general considerations, 358-359
    - management conservative 358 359
    - factors governing success 358
    - mechanisms responsible for 359-366
      - abduction, with flexion and internal rotation of femur on tibia 360-363
      - adduction, flexion and external rotation of femur on tibia, 363 364
      - displacement anteroposterior 365-366
      - flexion, with abduction and internal rotation of femur on tibia, 360-363
      - with adduction and external rotation of femur on tibia 363 364
      - hyperextension, 364-365
      - rotation external of femur on tibia, 363 364
      - internal, of femur on tibia with abduction and flexion, 360-363
  - of Winslow. *See* Ligament, popliteal oblique
  - of Wrisberg, 38 53 55 57 59 110
    - in flexion of knee joint 89 90
    - prevention of anterior displacement of meniscus in flexion, 112 119 120, 154
  - Ligamentum mucosum, 53 58 60 156 635
    - chimpanzee 18 20
    - dog 15 16
    - opossum, 12 14
  - Line supracondylar lateral 39
  - medial, 39
  - Linea aspera 39
  - Lipoma, arborescens, in arthritis, degenerative 582
    - in fossa, popliteal, 535
  - Locking of knee joint, 146-147
    - etiology 393
    - from incomplete removal of torn meniscus, 161
    - with recent injuries of anterior cruciate ligament 393
    - rupture, old cruciate ligament anterior 407 408
      - from tears of meniscus 120 124 125
      - and displacement into center of joint, 393
      - after trauma genu valgum from, 306-307
    - treatment, conservative, 164 166
      - recurrent lesions, 166
      - technique of reduction 164 166
  - Loose bodies, 466-491
    - with arthritis, degenerative 583 584
    - suppurative 491
    - classification of Mercer 466
  - Intracapsular differential diagnosis, from cysts of menisci, 159
  - In knee joint, differential diagnosis from incomplete removal of torn meniscus, 161
  - with neuropathic joints, 491
  - origin, 466
  - with osteoarthritis, 488-490
    - clinical manifestations, 489
    - management, 489-490
    - pathology 489
    - roentgenographic studies, 489
    - sites of origin, 488-489
  - osteochoondritis dissecans. *See* Osteochoondritis dissecans
  - of traumatic origin, 490
  - from meniscus, 490
  - with tuberculosis of knee joint 491
- Lumbringuinal nerve 72
- MacAusland technic of arthroplasty of knee joint 692-694
- McCarroll and Schwartzmann operative technic for stabilization of patella in recurrent dislocation, 192 194
- McKeever method of prevention of adhesions after synovectomy 290, 294-295
  - operation for flexion increase after reduction of femoral fracture 290, 294-295
- patellar prostheses for advanced chondromalacia patellae 246
- McMurray test of to detect lesions of meniscus, posterior segment 150, 151 151
- Malformations, congenital. *See* Congenital anomalies
- Mammals, evolution of pelvic girdle 4-6
  - knee joint comparative anatomy 12 21
    - chimpanzee 18-20
    - dog, 12 15 16
    - macaque monkey, 16, 17 19
    - man 19-21
    - opossum 12 14
    - primates, 16-21
- Man, knee joint comparative anatomy 19-21
- Manipulation, dislocation, fibula 456
- fracture, femur distal end condylar in axillary plane 438
  - intercondylar 432
  - supracondylar 425-429

## Manipulation—(Continued)

## fracture—(Continued)

tibia upper end condylar lateral depressed type

448-449

separation, femur epiphysis, distal, irreducible, 442

as therapy under anesthesia, for flexion contracture after injuries to knee joint, 296

fracture femur after open reduction, 288-289

contraindicated in extensive osteoporosis, 288

genu valgum, 307

genu varum, 319

tension of tibia, 339

Massage, arthritis, degenerative 587

rheumatoid, 562 563

contractures, mild and recent, 566

after arthroplasty 696

after débridement of knee joint for degenerative arthritis, 590

fracture femur distal end supracondylar 430

Mayer technic, bone block to check hyperextension in genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis, 333

Mechanics of knee joint 75 105

analysis of control of different ligaments on motions, 97 105

abduction and adduction rocking of tibia on femur 100-101

anteroposterior displacement of tibia on femur 98 100

lateral, 100-101

performance as functional unit, 104-105

rotary 101 104

sagittal, 97-99

axis, 75 76

dynamics, 78

of motorizing muscles 81-86

extensors, 80-85

flexors, 84-85

rotators, 85 86

functional mechanism, ligaments, 89 97

collateral, fibular 93-94

tibial 90, 92 93

cruciate, 94-97

anterior 93-97

posterior 94 96 97

materials and methods employed in study, 87

normal extension and flexion 89-91

menisci, 87 90

materials and methods employed in study 87

normal extension and flexion, 89 91

movements See Extension, flexion, hyperextension rotation, etc.

patella movements, 81

stability maintenance 86-87

statics, 76-77

stress and strains on tibia, 77 78

Medial ligament, rupture, old management, conservative 409

operative 409-410

synovial, 59-62

Meniscectomy 169-175

as basis of classification of traumatic lesions of meniscus, 120

causes of poor results after 167 169

coexisting lesions, 169

delay and neglect after diagnosis of injury 167 168

failure to remove meniscus in toto, 168-169

faulty operative technic, 167

inadequate postoperative management, 169

unrecognized lesions of remaining meniscus, 168

incisions, 171

instruments, 170

postoperative management, 175

complications, 176-181

anesthesia distal to line of incision, 180

effusion, of infectious origin 178

of traumatic origin, 177 178

hemarthrosis, 17

pain, 179-180

immediate 179 180

late, 180

phlebotrombosis, 181

scar painful, 180

sepsis, 178-179

thrombophlebitis, 181

preoperative requisites, 169 170

restoration of normal function 175-176

technic, 171 175

excision, lateral meniscus, 173

medial meniscus, 171 173

important points, 174-175

indications for opening both anterior and posterior compartments, 173 174

Meniscus (I) 53 55 59

affectations, 109 182

anatomy surgical 108-111

calcification 140-141

with degenerative joint changes 141

with trauma 140-141

chimpanzee, 18, 20

cysts See Cysts, of meniscus

discolored, 63-64 66

classification of Smillie 63 64

congenital, 152

signs and symptoms, 159-160

cystic degeneration 140

differential diagnosis, from lesions of menisci, 160

differential diagnosis, from meniscus injuries 159-160

lesions, 121 136-140

detachment 137 138

general considerations, 136

hypermobility 137

"snapping," cause of 137 138

types, 136-137

horizontal, 137 139

stages, 137 138

infantile, 136, 137 139 140

intermediate, 13 139

longitudinal, 139

transverse, 139 140

dog 15 16



## Meniscus(i)—(Continued)

- external, anatomy 657
  - in man, comparative anatomy 19 20
- in extension of knee joint, 89-91
- in flexion of knee joint, 89-91
- functional mechanism, 87 97
- materials and methods employed in study 87-89
- in normal extension and flexion, 89 91
- functions, 113
- in hyperflexion, 99
- injuries, clinical features peculiar to tears of lateral meniscus, 153 154
- coexistent of both menisci, 154 155
- diagnosis, 144-145
  - differential, 155 163
  - cysts of menisci, 157 159
  - parameniscal, 159
  - from discoid menisci, 159-160
  - lesions of infrapatellar fat pad, 156-157
  - clinical features, 156-157
  - treatment 157
  - from lesions of regenerated menisci after meniscectomy 160-161
- history taking, 144-145
- physical examination, 144 145
- dysfunction after 148-155
- physical examination, 148 153
- causes of crepitus or click, 152
- extension, 150, 152
- extensor and ligamentous apparatus, 152 153
- giving way (buckling) 149 151
- loss of tone and muscle volume 149
- meniscus palpable at joint line, 153
- position of extremity 148-149
- tests, 150-152
  - compression, 150 152
  - for effusion, 149
  - to elicit "click," 150, 151
  - Fouche's*, 150 151 161
  - McMurray's*, 150 151 161
- evaluation of original injury 154
- from hypermobility 155
- incidence, 144
- predisposing factors, 142 145
  - age, 144
  - anatomic, 142 143
  - constitutional, 143
  - developmental 142
  - occupational, 143
  - pathologic, 143 144
  - sex, 144
- recurrent, 154 155
- symptoms 145 148
  - click or snap 146
  - effusion 146
  - locking 146-147
  - pain, 145 146
  - tenderness, 148
- internal, lesions, with rupture of collateral ligament
  - tibial, complete 379 371
  - with rupture of cruciate ligament, anterior 391
- in man, comparative anatomy 19 20
- lateral, 19 38 53 55 57-60, 0

## Meniscus(i)—(Continued)

- lateral—(Continued)
  - anatomy surgical, 110-111
    - relation to fibular collateral ligament, 110
    - variations in configuration, 110
  - discoid, primitive, surfaces worn away by friction, 133, 139
  - laceration and crushing with condylar fracture of tibia 443 445
  - lesions, with fracture of tibia, condylar 445
    - tears, transverse 119-120
    - or oblique 128 129 131 132
    - from trapping between femur and tibia in extension 119
  - lesions (traumatic) 118-140
  - "bucket handle," 120, 125
  - degenerative 181 182
    - conservative treatment, 181 182
  - diagnosis, differential, from fracture patella, osteochondral, 162
  - tibia, spine, 162
  - from incomplete removal of torn meniscus, 161
  - from lesions of collateral and cruciate ligaments, 161 162
  - pneumoroentgenography 162 163
  - roentgenographic studies, 162
  - from hypermobility with other lesions of discoid meniscus, 137 160
  - locked knee joint, conservative treatment, 164-166
    - technic of reduction, 164-166
  - mechanism of production, 118-120
  - rotation of femur external, 120
  - internal, 118 120
  - operative management, meniscectomy See Meniscectomy
  - recurrent, conservative management 166
  - tears, behavior 114-116
    - from capsule, hemarthrosis into knee joint, 393
    - combined, 130
    - conservative management, 166-167
    - incomplete removal of torn meniscus, differential diagnosis, 161
    - longitudinal 120-129
      - anterior segment, 126-129
      - posterior segment, 120-127
    - with rupture of ligaments, anterior cruciate and tibial collateral 390 391 393 394 405
    - transverse or oblique 128, 129
    - treatment, 115-116
  - treatment, 163-181
    - conservative, 163 167
    - general considerations, 163
  - varieties, 120-140
    - meniscectomies as basis of classification 120
  - loose bodies from 490
  - macaque monkey 16, 17
  - medial, 19 38, 51 53 55 57 60
  - anatomy 642 653 660
  - surgical, 108-110
    - relation to tibial collateral ligament 109
    - variations in configuration, 109

- Meniscus (I)—(Continued)  
 medial—(Continued)  
   attachment of anterior cornu, 56, 57  
   lesions, combined, with collateral ligament, tibial,  
     393 394  
     with cruciate ligament anterior 392 394  
     types, 362 363  
   crushing of posterior segment, 119  
   with rupture, tibial collateral ligament, opera-  
     tive repair 376-381  
   tears, avascular zone 114 116  
     longitudinal 114 115 120-129  
     anterior segment, 126 129  
     with cystic degeneration, 127 132 134  
     posterior segment, 120-127  
   peripheral zone 114 116, 119 120  
   with rupture of anterior cruciate ligament,  
     391  
   operative treatment 396-397  
   transverse 115  
   regeneration, 116-117  
   nutrition, 113 115  
   opossum 12  
   regeneration, 116-117 142  
     after meniscectomy differential diagnosis from  
       cyst, 161  
   role in mechanics of knee joint, 111 113  
   abduction 112  
   adduction, 112  
   extension, 111 113  
   flexion, 111 113  
   hyperflexion 111 112  
   rotation, 112  
   tibial lateral 46  
   medial, 46  
   turtie 13  
   Meralgia paresthetica, 636  
   Mercer classification of loose bodies, 466  
   Metabolism, disturbances, as causative agent, arthritis,  
     degenerative, 579  
   Mölich technic bone block to check hyperextension in  
     genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis, 333  
   Mifflin technic of arthrodesis for nontuberculous  
     affections of knee joint 675 679-680  
   Monkey macaque knee joint comparative anatomy  
     16 17 19  
   Morphine, arthritis, rheumatoid, 556  
   Mout 607  
   Motion, of knee joint, materials and methods em-  
     ployed in study 87-89  
   Movements knee joint *See* Extension, flexion, hyper-  
     extension, rotation, etc  
   patella, 81  
   ucin, in synovial fluid, 494 495  
   oscles, exercises, apparatus, 261  
   dosage, 257  
   execution, 263  
   focal (specific) 256-257  
   general, 256-257  
   heavy resistance and low repetition 260-261  
   principles 256-264  
   program 261 263  
   progression, 25 258  
   Muscles, exercises—(Continued)  
     quadriceps. *See* Quadriceps muscles exercises  
     restoration of power and endurance, 259-260  
     rhythm 257  
     straight leg raising. *See* Exercises, straight leg  
       raising  
     types 260  
     variations, 258  
   extensor. *See* Extensor muscles  
   gastrocnemius. *See* Gastrocnemius muscle  
   physical properties, 254-256  
   contraction, velocity and speed, 255  
   co-ordination, 255  
   endurance 255 256  
   power 254-255  
   quadriceps. *See* Quadriceps muscle  
   radial, adult formation from embryonic muscle  
     buds, with motor nerve supply 1 2  
   thigh, 27 37  
   adductor 32 34  
   anterior 27 32  
   hamstring, 34 36  
   medial 32 34  
   posterior 34-36  
   Myeloma, diagnosis, differential, from tumor giant  
     cell, 759  
   multiple, 789 793  
     age 790  
     clinical features 790-791  
     diagnosis, 790, 791  
     etiology 790  
     incidence 790  
     pathology 791 792  
     prognosis, 793  
     roentgenographic features, 792 793  
   sex, 790  
   treatment, 793  
   plasma-cell 789  
   diagnosis, age as factor 736  
   solitary 793  
   Myodystrophia foetalis, 269  
   Myositis ossificans, circumscripta, 795-797  
     age, 796  
     clinical features, 796-797  
     diagnosis, differential, from sarcoma, periosteal,  
       740  
     roentgenographic features 795-797  
   sex, 796  
   site 796  
   traumatic, vastus internus muscle 212  
   treatment, 797  
   Myxosarcoma. *See* Synovium, malignant  
   N hormone, 559  
   Nail(s) in arthroplasty Putti technic, 689  
   Rush. *See* Rush nail  
   Smith Petersen, in arthrodesis for nontuberculous  
     affections of knee joint Bownorth  
     technic, 681  
   wire in arthrodesis for tuberculous joints, Gallo-  
     way technic, 676  
   Henderson technic, 676

- Nailing intramedullary *See* Intramedullary nailing
- Nembutal, arthritis, rheumatoid, 556
- Neoplasms, of bone in region of knee joint, 733-797
- benign, 742-781
    - chondroblastoma of bone benign. *See* Chondroblastoma of bone, benign
    - chondroma. *See* Chondroma
    - chondrosarcoma. *See* Chondrosarcoma
    - cyst, bone solitary. *See* Cyst, bone solitary
    - exostosis, osteocartilaginous. *See* Exostosis, osteocartilaginous
    - fibroma of bone, chondromyxoid. *See* Fibroma of bone, chondromyxoid
    - nonosteogenic. *See* Fibroma of bone, non osteogenic
    - osteochondroma. *See* Exostosis, osteocartilaginous
    - osteoma, osteoid. *See* Osteoma, osteoid
    - tumor giant-cell. *See* Tumor giant-cell
  - carcinoma metastatic. *See* Carcinoma, metastatic
- classification, 735
- Coley 733-735
- Lichtenstein, 734-735
- diagnosis, 735-742
- age 736
  - biopsy aspiration 741-742
    - surgical, 742
  - body reaction, 739
  - differential, 735
  - examination, histologic 741
    - laboratory 740-741
  - function, loss of 738
  - heredity as factor 735
  - history 735-736
    - past 735
  - injury 736
  - objective finding 738-739
  - pain, 736-738
  - pulsating tumors, 739
  - roentgenographic studies, 739-740
  - site 736-737
- general considerations, 733
- myeloma, multiple. *See* Myeloma multiple
- myositis ossificans circumscripta. *See* Myositis ossificans circumscripta
- in fossa popliteal, 535-536
- pulsating, 739
- sarcoma of bone. *See* Sarcoma of bone
- See also* Tumors
- Nerves, knee joint 66-69-72
- Neurectomy soleus muscle in talipes equinus, 353
- Neuroblastoma metastatic bone lesions, diagnosis, differential, from Ewing's tumor 740
- Neurotrophic (Charcot) knee joint, arthrodesis compression method, 678-679
- Nodes, of Heberden, formation on fingers and toes in degenerative arthritis 581-584
- Nylon, as interposing membrane in arthroplasty of knee joint 568, 574-576
- DePalma technic 695
  - after synovectomy 294-295
  - for preservation of gliding mechanism in Thompson's quadricepsplasty 292
- Ober technic, transplantation of tendons, tensor fasciae femoris and sartorius muscles, for paralysis of quadriceps muscle 702-704
- Obesity avoidance of in gout, 606
- as contributory factor arthritis degenerative 587
- Obturator internus abdominis muscle 34
- Obturator nerve 33-34-71-73
- Opossum knee joint, comparative anatomy 12-14
- Osgood-Schlatter's disease, 237-240
- clinical features, 237-239
  - treatment, 239-240
    - technic of splitting patellar tendon 239-240
- Ossification, of femur 73
- of knee joint. *See* Pellegrini-Stieda disease
- Osteoarthritis of knee crepitus of knee joint from, 152
- hypertrophic, in all components of knee joint patellectomy 246
- loose bodies with. *See* Loose bodies, with osteoarthritis
- patellofemoral articulation after trauma to patella 218
- patellofemoral joint, from incongruity of articular surface after repair of fractured patella 220
- with synovitis, villous, chronic nonspecific, 302
- Osteochondritis, of condyles, femoral, crepitus of knee joint from 152
- dissecans, 467-481
- clinical manifestations, 473-474
  - etiology 467-469-472
    - traumatic concept, 467-469-472
  - management, 475-481
    - conservative, 476-477
    - postoperative, 481
    - surgical, 477-481
      - approaches, 479-481
      - origin of loose bodies, 478-480
  - pathogenesis, 467-469-472
  - pathology 470-473
  - roentgenographic studies, 474-475
  - site, femur condyle, lateral 470, 472-480
    - medial 467-468, 472-479-480
  - patella, 467-471-472-480
  - tibia, 472
  - of poles of patella, 240, 241
  - treatment 240
- Osteochondroma, sarcomatous transformation, 744
- Osteochondromatosis, 481-488
- clinical features, 483-485-486
  - diagnosis, 486, 487
    - differential, from rice bodies, 487
  - etiology 482-483
  - historical review 481-482
  - management, 487-488
  - pathology 482-485
  - prognosis, 488
  - roentgenographic findings, 486-487
- synovial, 525
- with bursitis, 529
  - with recurrent dislocation of patella 192
- Osteochondrosis, deformans tibiae. *See* Tibia vara
- genu varum from, 318
- Osteoma, osteoid 769-772
- see 770

- Osteoma, osteosarcoma—(Continued)  
 clinical features, 770-771  
 diagnosis, differential from Brodie's abscess 739  
 740  
 from Garré's disease, 739 740  
 from synovitis of knee joint, 739  
 incidence, 770  
 pathology 770, 772  
 prognosis, 772  
 roentgenologic features, 771 772  
 sex, 770  
 site 770  
 treatment, 772
- Osteomyelitis, acute, diagnosis, differential, from  
 Ewing's tumor 739 740  
 of patella, 248-252  
 surgical treatment, 248-252  
 patellectomy 248-252  
 with bony ankylosis in flexion, 297  
 derotation for torsion of femur 341 343  
 diagnosis, differential from bone neoplasms, 735  
 femur diagnosis, differential from arthritis, pyo-  
 genic, 616  
 flexion contractures with, supracondylar osteotomy  
 for 297  
 tibia, diagnosis, differential from arthritis, pyogenic,  
 616
- Osteophytes at osteochondral junction of tibia or  
 femur on knee joint differential diag-  
 nosis from cysts of menisci, 159
- Osteoporosis, extensive, after fracture femur open  
 reduction, manipulative therapy contra-  
 indicated 288
- Osteotomy arthritis, pyogenic, late stage, 619  
 deformities of knee joint after poliomyelitis, 329-332  
 flexion contractures after injuries to knee joint 296-  
 297  
 supracondylar circular 299-301  
 postoperative management, 300-301  
 technique, 299 300  
 cuneiform, 299  
 open wedge 297 298  
 postoperative management, 298  
 technique, 297 298  
 telescoping V 298, 301 302  
 genu recurvatum, Brett technique, 325 327  
 Campbell technique, 326-328  
 Irwin technique 328-329  
 genu valgum, 297 311 312  
 genu varum, for apex at joint space 320, 321  
 femur 320-321  
 tibia 321  
 open-wedge, for genu valgum, 305 311 312  
 postoperative management, 312  
 genu varum, tibia 321  
 tibia vara, adolescent, 323 325  
 rotation, for torsion of tibia, 339 340  
 O'Donoghue technique, 340, 342  
 separation, femur epiphysis, distal, 444  
 supracondylar for bony ankylosis of knee in  
 flexion, 297  
 circular flexion contractures after injuries to knee  
 joint, 299 301
- Osteotomy—(Continued)  
 supracondylar—(Continued)  
 cuneiform, flexion contractures after injuries to  
 knee joint 299  
 of femur for deformities, flexion or torsion, 341  
 34 699  
 flexion contractures, in children, 297 298  
 with osteomyelitis, 297  
 after paralysis, spastic 297  
 after poliomyelitis 297  
 fracture, femur distal end, 431  
 open wedge flexion contractures after injuries to  
 knee joint, 297 298  
 genu recurvatum, 303  
 tibia for genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis, 334  
 V telescoping, flexion contractures after injuries to  
 knee joint, 298 301-302
- Paget's disease of bone, with neoplasms of bone, 735  
 with sarcomatous changes, 736
- Palsy cerebral, deformities of knee incident to, 343  
 353  
 prognosis 345  
 treatment, 345-353  
 surgical advancement of patella Chandler  
 technique, 347 348, 350  
 division of patellar retinaculus Eggers tech-  
 nic, 349 350, 352  
 spastic causes, 345 346-353  
 transplantation of hamstring tendons to  
 femoral condyle, Eggers techniq 351 353
- etiology 343  
 types, 343 345  
 ataxic, 344  
 athetoid, 344  
 rigidity 344-345  
 spastic, 343 344  
 tremor 344-345
- Paralysis, complete, rupture, collateral ligament fibu-  
 lar 386
- infantile muscle imbalance causing angular de-  
 formities in and about knee joint 304  
 peroneal, after extensive treatment of fractures, 315  
 quadriceps muscles, with flexion deformity of knee  
 joint, 329  
 spastic flexion contractures after supracondylar  
 osteotomy for 297  
 muscle imbalance, causing angular deformities in  
 and about knee joint, 304
- Parathyroidectomy arthritis, rheumatoid, not recom-  
 mended, 562
- Paresthesia from severance of cutaneous nerves of  
 knee joint 636
- Patella, 30, 44-45 51 53 58-60 70  
 advancement by surgical measures, Chandler tech-  
 nic 347 348 350  
 anatomy 633 640, 641 652  
 comparative, 19 21  
 relation to femur and tibia, 82-83  
 avulsion of fibers of insertion of vastus medialis  
 muscle into, 183  
 fresh of quadriceps muscle from. See Quadriceps  
 muscle avulsion, fresh, from patella

## Patella—(Continued)

## avulsion—(Continued)

- of patellar tendon from, 209 210
- treatment, 209 210

base 44 45

border lateral, 44 45

medial, 44 45

chimpanzee 18-20

chondromalacia. *See* Chondromalacia, of patella

congenital anomalies, 184 187 267

absence 185

with multiple arthrodysplasia, 185

bipartite 186 187

differential diagnosis, from fracture 187

displacement laterally 187 188

double, bilateral 186, 187

position in quadriceps tendon abnormally high 185 187

tendon abnormally attached to tibia 187

tripartite, 187

types, 186

underdevelopment, 185 188

covering fascioperiosteal, tearing and shredding, with fracture 216

dislocation, complete, with extensive soft-tissue damage 198

treatment, 199

congenital 40, 267

incomplete, 198

treatment, 199

irreducible lateral with rotation, 200-201

persistent, 196-197

treatment, 197

primary 197 199

recurrent, 187 196

associated lesions, 191 192

of meniscus, internal 191 192

osteocondromatosis, synovial, 192

synovitis 192

clinical manifestations, 189-191

etiology acquired trauma, 187 190

congenital, 187 188

general considerations, 187 189

symptoms, 189 191

physical findings, 190-191

roentgenologic features, 191 192

treatment 192 196

nonoperative 196

operative 192 196

McCarroll and Schwartzmann technic 192 194

Smillie technic, 194-196

types of technics for stabilization, 192 191

with severance of fibers of vastus medialis muscle 213

division of surgical approaches, 668

dog 12 15

embryologic development 214

excision, arthrodesis, for nontuberculous affections of knee joint intramedullary plating, 680

Milgram technic, 680

for tuberculous joints, Albee technic, 677

Brittain technic 677

Henderson technic 676

## Patella—(Continued)

## excision—(Continued)

partial in arthrodesis for nontuberculous affections of knee joint Bownorth technic 681

exercises, after reduction of femoral fracture 286

facets (areas) 45

fixation, to femur and tibia in arthrodesis, Galloway technic 676

to tibia by screw in arthrodesis, nontuberculous affections of knee joint 681

fractures, 213 235

clinical features, 218-219

diagnosis, 218-219

general considerations, 213 215

incidence 216

with lacerations, superficial, 229 230

from manipulative therapy after open reduction of femoral fracture with osteoporosis, 288

marginal, 231 232

treatment 232

mechanisms, 215-216

open, 230-231

osteochondral, 232 234

clinical features, 233

crepitus of knee joint from, 152

differential diagnosis, from menisci lesions 162

mechanism, 232 233

roentgenographic features, 233 234

treatment 233-234

pathology associated, 216-218

with separation of fragments, 219

transverse 83

treatment, 219 229

conservative, 221 222

general considerations, 219-221

operative, 222 229

approximation of fragments, 220

complications after 220-221

excision of all fragments, 219-220, 227 229

postoperative management, 229

technic, 227 229

retention of one large fragment, 221 223 227

postoperative management 226-227

technic, 224 226

wiring of fragments, 220 228, 229

Blagoveston technic, 228, 229

postoperative management, 229

preferred methods, 221 229

types, 216

function, 82-83 214 215

ligament displacement, lateral, 188

macaque monkey 16 17

movements, 81

opossum, 12 14

osteocondritis, dissecans, 467 471 472

of poles, 240, 241

treatment, 240

osteomyelitis acute 248-252

surgical treatment 248 252

patellectomy 248 252

- Patella—(Continued)  
   poles, osteochondritis, 240-241  
   treatment, 240  
   prostheses, of McKeever in chondromalacia patellae  
     246  
   remodeling arthritis, degenerative 588  
   retinaculum, trauma, tearing and shredding 188  
   role, 628  
   rotation with irreducible lateral dislocation, 200-201  
   on longitudinal axis, 198  
   rupture (fresh) of quadriceps muscle from See  
     Quadriceps muscle, rupture, fresh from  
     patella  
   slipping, recurrent, 267  
   subluxation crepitus of knee joint from 152  
   from congenital malformation, 40  
   recurrent, differential diagnosis from incomplete  
     removal of torn meniscus, 161  
   surface, articular lateral, 44-45  
   posterior 44-45  
   transplantation of hamstring muscles into for genu  
     recurvatum after poliomyelitis, 334  
   use as free bone graft in arthrodexis, Albee technic.  
     677  
   Halt technic, 681  
   Henderson technic 676-677  
   Hibbs technic, 675-676  
   Patellar ligament, anatomy 639-640-656  
   Patellectomy 82-828  
   arthritis, degenerative, 588  
   calcification and ossification in quadriceps tendon  
     after 215  
   for chondromalacia patellae, indications and con-  
     traindications, 246  
   contraindicated, in dislocation of patella uncon-  
     plicated 197  
   indications 219-220-227-228  
   osteoarthritis changes in patellofemoral articular  
     surfaces, with recurrent or persistent dis-  
     location 197  
   osteomyelitis acute, of patella 248-252  
   Patellofemoral joint, chondromalacia patellae patel-  
     lectomy 246  
   crepitus of knee joint from, 152  
   osteoarthritis, from incongruity of articular surface  
     after repair of fractured patella 220  
   Payr incision, modification of von Langenbeck, 643  
   Pearson attachment to Thomas splint See Traction  
     skeletal, with Thomas splint with Pear-  
     son attachment  
   cineous muscle, 27-32-33-67  
   femoralized fascial flap as interposition material in  
     arthritis 366-400-404  
   epitrochlear disease 366-400-404  
   report 404  
   clinical manifestations, 402-403  
   surgery, 403-404  
   operative technic, 404  
   openness, 400-402  
   prophylaxis, 403  
   roentgenographic features, 401-403  
   Pelvis, muscles, abductor 28  
     flexors, 32  
     rotator 28  
   Penicillin therapy arthritis, pyogenic, 617  
   bursitis of knee joint, suppurative, 530  
   infection into knee joint and over wound edge after  
     operation 631-632  
   sepsis after meniscectomy 179  
   wounds of knee joint, penetrating, 459-461  
   Pentothal Sodium in examination ruptures of cruci-  
     ate ligament, anterior 392  
   intravenous, in surgery of knee joint, 631  
   in roentgenographic examination rupture of tibial  
     collateral ligament, complete, 368  
   incomplete and uncomplicated 367  
   Perituberculosis See Synovium, malignant  
   Peroneal nerve, anastomotic, of leg, 637  
   common, anatomy 69-73-637-640-641-656-664  
   rupture or stretching, 385-386  
   trauma in adduction injuries, 363-364  
   injury in correction of severe flexion contractures in  
     knee in rheumatoid arthritis 569-570  
   lesions, in fracture fibula, 455  
   superficial 72  
   transposition, for genu valgum severe, 314-315  
   Peroneus brevis muscle 28-34  
   Peroneus longus muscle, 27-28, 34-656  
   Pes anserine 35-36  
   Phlebotomy, after meniscectomy 181  
   Physical therapy after manipulative therapy after  
     reduction of femoral fracture, 289  
   Pin(s) insertion through tibia fracture femur dis-  
     tal end supracondylar 426  
   Intramedullary See Intramedullary nailing  
   Knowles, in Galloway technic of arthrodexis, 676  
   stainless steel in arthrodexis for tuberculous joints  
     Key technic, 678  
   Steinmann. See Steinmann pin  
   threaded, fracture, femur distal end condylar in  
     sagittal plane 438  
   tibia upper end, intercondylar (T or Y) 452  
   transfixion in Galloway technic of arthrodexis 676  
   Piriformis muscle, 34  
   Plantaris muscle 34-69-73-85  
   Plaster cast. See Cast (plaster)  
   Plastics, use in arthroplasty of knee joint, 663  
   Plate(s) approximation of fragments of fractured  
     patella 220  
   blade, Blount, fracture femur distal end inter-  
     condylar 434-435  
   in osteotomy supracondylar open wedge for  
     flexion contractures after injuries to knee  
     joint, 298  
   fracture, femur distal end, intercondylar 433-435  
   middle third, disadvantages, 286  
   upper third disadvantages, 286  
   Plexus, patellar 637  
   Pneumoroentgenography in diagnosis, lesions of me-  
     nhci, 162-163  
   Podagra, 605  
   Poliomyelitis, deformities of knee joint after 329-335  
   flexion contracture, 329-332  
   observations by Hughes 331-332

- Poliomyelitis, deformities of knee joint after—(Cont.)  
     flexion contracture—(Continued)  
         treatment, conservative 329  
         operative, 329-332  
             capsuloplasty 329  
             capsulotomy 329  
             osteotomy 329-332  
     genu recurvatum. *See* Genu recurvatum  
     supracondylar osteotomy for 297  
 Popliteal artery 68-70 73 636 637 662 665 667  
 Popliteal ligament, oblique, anatomy 667  
     in hyperextension of knee joint, 97  
     knee joint, extension 97  
 Popliteal nerve anatomy 637  
     external, exploration in rupture of fibular collateral  
         ligament, 387  
     internal, 66  
 Popliteal vein, 66-70 73 637 662 665 667  
 Popliteus muscle anatomy 36 49 55 59 70, 658  
     as flexor of knee joint, 84 85  
     resistance to forward displacement of meniscus of  
         knee, 154  
     as rotator of knee joint 85 86  
     as stabilizer of knee in extension 86  
 Potter and Kuhns technic, arthroplasty deformities  
     of knee joint in rheumatoid arthritis,  
         574 57  
     indications and contraindications, 576-577  
 Pouch, suprapatellar adhesions in impairment of  
     extensor apparatus of knee joint, 282  
     loose bodies arising from surgical approach 480  
     macaque monkey 16  
     protection, in open reduction of femoral fracture  
         287  
 Primates, knee joint, comparative anatomy 16-21  
     chimpanzee 18-20  
     macaque monkey 16, 17 19  
     man, 19-21  
 Procaine injection, arthritis, rheumatoid 556  
     after aspiration in effusion of synovial fluid or  
         bursarthritis, 366 370  
     in reduction of fracture femur distal end supra  
         condylar 426  
     sprain, tibial collateral ligament, uncomplicated 367  
 Profunda femoris artery 68  
 Pronation of feet genu valgum from, 306  
 Prostheses, after amputation absence of tibia, bilat  
     eral, 272 274 276  
     corrective absence of fibula, 278  
 Proteinuria Bence Jones, in myeloma, multiple 790  
     791  
 Psoas muscle major 32  
     minor 32  
 Pseudolocking of knee joint, 147  
 Pudendal artery external deep, 68  
     superficial 68  
 Pudendal vein, external superficial, 65  
 Pus, in knee joint, aspiration in pyogenic arthritis,  
     617  
 Putti technic, arthrodesis for tuberculous joints, 674  
     675 677  
     arthroplasty of knee joint 688, 689  
     transfer of fibula in congenital absence of tibia 271  
         275  
 Putti-Campbell incision, division of quadriceps muscle  
     668, 669  
 Pyribenzamine therapy hydrarthrosis, intermittent,  
     538  
 Quadriceps femoris muscle 27 31  
     avulsion, fresh from patella, 201 205  
         clinical manifestations, 202  
         pathologic findings, 202  
         treatment, 202 203  
         tendon to-bone repair 204 205  
         tendon to-tendon repair 202 204  
     chimpanzee 18  
     congenital anomalies, 184  
     disorders, restoration of normal function, 252  
         254  
     division, Putti-Campbell incision, 668, 669  
     dog, 15  
     exercises, 258 264 564  
         arthritis, degenerative 587  
             pyogenic 618, 619  
             rheumatoid, contractures, mild and recent 566  
             after arthroplasty 696  
         avulsion of portion of tibial spine with rupture  
             of anterior cruciate ligament 395 396  
         bursitis of knee joint, prepatellar 531  
         after capsulotomy posterior deformities of knee  
             in rheumatoid arthritis 572  
         contractures in rheumatoid arthritis, 568  
         after débridement of knee joint for degenerative  
             arthritis, 590  
         after excision, burnae of knee joint gastrocnemio-  
             semimembranosus, 537  
             semimembranosus, 537  
         for flexion contracture after injuries to knee  
             joint 296  
         fracture, femur distal end condylar in sagittal  
             plane, 438  
             supracondylar 429-430  
             tibia proximal end, condylar lateral or medial,  
                 without displacement, 448  
             intercondylar (T or Y) 452-453  
         bursarthritis, traumatic, 500  
         nonweight bearing, 258-259  
         osteoarthritis diarthrosis, 477 481  
         Pellegri Stieda disease, 403  
         preoperative learning, 629  
         reconstruction, collateral ligament tibial, 413  
         after reduction of fracture of patella 222  
         rupture cruciate ligament, anterior old knee,  
             410  
             with tear of medial meniscus, 396  
             posterior 400  
         separation, femur epiphysis, distal, 441  
         setting, 263 264  
         sprains, tibial collateral ligament, combined le  
             sions, 381 382  
             uncomplicated, 367 368  
         after synovectomy 503  
         tear meniscus, medial, with rupture of anterior  
             cruciate ligament, 396  
         weight bearing, 258  
         wounds of knee joint penetrating 460  
     as extensor of knee joint. 80-8

Quadriceps femoris muscle—(Continued)  
function in stability and movements of knee joint,  
83-84

- impairment of function by adhesions to femur  
shaft, 281 282
- insufficient, differential diagnosis, from incomplete  
removal of torn meniscus, 161
- loss of volume after patellectomy 219
- macaque monkey 17
- opossum, 14
- "paralysis, 84
- deformities, associated, 699
- transplantation of tendons at knee. *See* Tendons,
- replantation, undue with clicks on movement of knee  
joint, 152
- restoration of normal function, 252 254
- rupture, fresh, from patella, 201 205
- clinical manifestations, 202
- pathologic findings, 202
- treatment, 202 205
- tendon-to-bone repair 204-205
- tendon-to-tendon repair 202 204
- of isolated groups of fibers of components, 210,  
212 213
- old postoperative management, 205 207
- as stabilizer of knee in extension 86
- stretching, for genu recurvatum, congenital 281
- tendon. *See* Tendon, quadriceps
- Thompson's quadricepsplasty 290-293
- for flexion increase after reduction of femoral  
fracture 290-293
- postoperative management, 292 293
- technique, 290-292
- turtle, 13

Rectus femoris muscle, anatomy 19 27 29 31 37 51  
67 70 633 652 656  
as extensor of knee joint, 82

Redresser Böhler in fracture reduction, tibia, upper  
end, intercondylar (T or Y) 452  
epitiles, evolution of pelvic girdle, 4 5  
knee joint, comparative anatomy 12 13  
Rest as therapy arthritis, degenerative, 587  
pyogenic, 617-618  
rheumatoid, 535

gout, 606  
Rethinaculum(s) patellar 48  
division of Eggers technic 349 350, 352  
lateral, 30 31  
medial, 30, 31

rupture, with complete dislocation of patella  
193  
tears, with fracture of patella 216  
Retropatellar region, cystic mass, differential diag-  
nosis, from lesions of infrapatellar fat  
pad 157  
Rice bodies, diagnosis, differential, from osteochondro-  
matosis, 487  
Rickets, bone lesions from, 735  
causing angular deformities in and about knee  
joint 304

Rickets—(Continued)

- flexion contractures from, supracondylar osteotomy  
for 297
- as predisposing factor genu valgum, 306
- genu varum (bowleg) 317
- Roentgen ray therapy, contraindicated, burnitis with  
calcification 530
- sarcoma, Ewing's 89
- See also* Irradiation
- Roeren technic of rotation arthrodesis for tuberculous  
joints, 674
- modification by Millgram, 674 675
- Rogers technic, disarticulation of knee joint, 719 720
- Rotation of knee joint, 79-80 83 101 104
- collateral ligaments, 101 104
- tibial, 109
- cruciate ligaments, 104
- deformity surgical treatment, 330-331
- Yount procedure 330
- etiology 330
- external, of femur on tibia with adduction and  
flexion, trauma to ligaments, 363 364
- mechanism of injury to menisci, 120
- of tibia on fixed femur ligaments as checkreins  
358
- fibrous capsule, 104
- internal of femur on tibia with abduction and  
flexion, trauma to ligaments 360-363
- measurement, apparatus, 89
- mechanism of injury to menisci, 118-120
- menisci, 112
- injuries, 119
- tendon of popliteus muscle, 101 104
- Rotator muscles, knee joint, 85 86
- hip joint, 34
- external, 33 34
- leg, 33
- external, 35
- internal 36
- pelvis, 28
- thigh 33
- external, 32 35
- internal 32 36
- Rubber bands, in arthrodesis of knee joint, compres-  
sion method, 678 679
- Rupture(s) extensor apparatus of knee joint, 201
- patellar tendon old, 210 211
- quadriceps femoris muscle. *See* Quadriceps femoris  
muscle ruptures
- Rush nail, fracture, femur distal end intercondylar  
434 435

Sagittal motion of knee joint control by ligaments  
97-99

Salamander comparative anatomy 10-12

Salicylates arthritis, degenerative 587 588  
rheumatoid, 556

gout, 607

Saphenous nerve 72 652

Saphenous vein, 37 637 652 664

great, 24-27 65-67

small, 65 66 73



- Sarcoma, of bone *See* Sarcoma, osteogenic
- chondroblastic, primary pathology 778  
 prognosis, 778  
 treatment, 778
- secondary, 778-781  
 clinical features, 779  
 incidence, 778  
 pathology, 779-780  
 prognosis, 781  
 roentgenographic features, 780-781  
 sex, 778  
 sites, 778  
 treatment, 781
- chondroblastoma, diagnosis, differential, from  
 chondroblastoma of bone benign, 750
- Ewing's 786-789  
 age, 787  
 clinical features, 787  
 incidence, 787  
 pathology, 788-789  
 prognosis, 789  
 roentgenographic features, 787-788  
 sex, 787  
 site, 787  
 treatment, 789
- fibrohistiocytoma *See* Synovitis, villonodular pig-  
 mented
- osteogenic 781-789  
 age, 781  
 characteristics, 82  
 diagnosis, age as factor 736  
 differential, from chondroblastoma of bone  
 benign 750  
 from syphilis of bone 740  
 from tumor giant-cell, 750, 760  
 incidence, 781  
 malignancy, gradation of degree 781-782  
 medullary 783-786  
 osteolytic 784-785  
 diagnosis differential from carcinoma meta-  
 static, 795  
 from fibroma of bone nonosteogenic, 773  
 from neoplasms of bone metastatic single  
 740  
 sclerosing, 782-784  
 site, 736-781  
 subperiosteal 783-786  
 periosteal diagnosis differential, from myositis  
 ossificans, 740
- synovial *See* Synovium malignant
- Sarcomatous synovial *See* Synovium malig-  
 nant
- Sartorius muscle anatomy 27-28, 37, 51, 67, 633-640,  
 641-648, 650, 652, 655  
 and biceps femoris muscle transplantation of ten-  
 dons for paralysis of quadriceps muscle  
 703  
 displacement into intercondylar notch of femur in  
 dislocation of knee joint, 419  
 as flexor of knee joint, 84-85  
 as rotator of knee joint, 85-86  
 and tensor fascia femoris muscle, transplantation  
 of tendons for paralysis of quadriceps  
 muscle Ober technique 702-704
- Scars, formation, extensive prevention of in open  
 reduction of femoral fracture 287
- skin and subcutaneous tissue about knee impair-  
 ment of movements of joint 282
- from surgical incisions, impairment of quadriceps  
 function by 282
- Schwartsmann and McCarroll operative technique for  
 stabilization of patella in recurrent dis-  
 location 192-194
- Sciatic nerve 33-34, 37
- Screw(s) clamp fracture femur distal end inter-  
 condylar 432  
 fixation of patella to tibia in arthrodesis for non-  
 tuberculous affections of knee joint 681  
 fracture femur distal end condylar in frontal  
 plane 435-438  
 in sagittal plane 438  
 Intercondylar 433  
 vitallium, approximation of fragments of frac-  
 tured patella 220
- Scrubbing, preoperative of local area 629
- Scudder screw clamp in fracture reduction, tibia  
 upper end intercondylar (T or Y) 452
- Scurvy bone lesions from, 735
- Semilunar pad crushing of 156-157
- Semimembranosus muscle anatomy 36, 39, 69, 73,  
 641-656, 665  
 as flexor of knee joint, 84-85  
 as rotator of knee joint, 85-86
- Semitendinosus muscle anatomy 34, 35, 37, 51, 69,  
 73, 641-665  
 and biceps femoris muscle transplantation of ten-  
 dons for paralysis of quadriceps muscle  
 699-703  
 postoperative management 702-703  
 as flexor of knee joint, 85  
 as rotator of knee joint, 85-86
- Senescence as factor in arthritis, degenerative 578
- Separation, femur epiphysis, distal, management, op-  
 erative 442-444
- Sepsis, of knee joint drainage 706-709  
 incision, anterior (parapatellar) 707  
 posteromedial (Klein) 707-708  
 and posterolateral (Henderson) 708  
 postoperative management 708-709  
 after surgery avoidance of 631-632
- Septum(a) of fascia lata, 26
- Intermuscular lateral 70
- Serum level, calcium, test in diagnosis, neoplasms of  
 bone 740  
 phosphatase test in diagnosis, neoplasms of bone  
 740-741  
 phosphorus, test in diagnosis, neoplasms of bone  
 740, 741
- Sex as factor cyst bone solitary 765  
 exostosis, osteochondritis, 743  
 fibroma of bone, nonosteogenic 773  
 myeloma multiple 790  
 myositis ossificans circumscripta 796  
 osteoma, osteoid, 770  
 sarcoma, chondroblastic secondary 778  
 Ewing's 787  
 tumor giant-cell, 751
- Shaving of operative and adjacent region 629

- Sheath, femoral 67-68  
 Shock, with wounds of knee joint, penetrating, 457  
 Shoes, corrective for congenital absence of fibula, 278  
   genu valgum 307  
   genu varum, 319  
 osteochondritis dissecans 477  
 sprain tibial collateral ligament, uncomplicated, 367  
   tibia vara, adolescent, 324  
 Size knee joint, 36  
 Skeletal traction, with Thomas splint and Pearson attachment, McKeever method of pre-venting adhesions after synovectomy 293  
 Skin graft split thickness, after excision of necrotic soft tissue of vastus medialis muscle 254  
 Siocum technic, rounded epicondylar tendoplasty amputation of knee joint, 720-723  
 Smilie classification of discoid menisci of knee joint, 63-64  
   operation, for flexion increase after reduction of femoral fracture, 293-294  
   postoperative management, 294  
   for stabilization of patella in recurrent dislocation, 194-196  
 Snap in knee joint, discoid meniscus, 137-138-160  
 Soft tissues of knee, contractures, 184-185  
 Soleus muscle, anatomy 29-30-34-36, 69-656  
   as extensor of knee joint, 80-81  
   neurectomy in talipes equinus 353  
 Spica. See Cast  
 Splint(s) Böhler Braun See Böhler Braun splint  
   Dennis Browne with shoes attached to foot plates, for torsion of tibia, 339  
   night, arthritis, pyogenic, 619  
   for genu valgum 307-312  
   wounds of knee joint, penetrating, 460  
   Thomas. See Traction, skeletal, with Thomas splint  
   walking caliper. See Thomas walking caliper splint  
 Tobruk, immobilization for wounds of knee joint, penetrating, 459  
 Spondylarthritis ankylopoietica See Arthritis, rheumatoid of spine  
 Spondylarthritis. See Arthritis degenerative of spine  
 Stability of knee joint in extension, 101  
   maintenance 86-87  
   from menisci, 113  
   rotary 104  
 Stainless steel, use in arthroplasty of knee joint, 683  
 Stapling, for genu valgum, 308-311  
   linear deformities 310-311  
   separation femur epiphysis, distal 444  
 Statics, knee joint 76-77  
 Stehmann pin, osteotomy derotation, for torsion of femur 341-342  
   separation femur epiphysis distal, irreducible 441  
 Stiffness in knee joint after trauma, 281-295  
   general considerations, 281-284  
   mobilization of limb, early 286-287  
   safeguards against loss of flexion, 284-285  
   treatment of fractures of femur 284-286  
   surgical, 287-295  
 Still's disease. See Arthritis, rheumatoid  
 Stokes-Gritti technic, osteoplastic amputation joint 726-727  
 Stress and strains, on tibia, 77-78  
 Stretching, manual, for absence of tibia congenitive, under anesthesia after reduction of fracture, damage from, 287  
 Streptococci, hypersensitivity to in rheumatoid arthritis, 562  
 Streptomycin therapy bursitis, tuberculous, 530  
 Strumpell Marie arthritis. See Arthritis, rheumatoid of spine  
 Solcus, gluteal, 25  
 Sulfadiazine sepsis after meniscectomy 179  
 Sulfathiazole therapy arthritis, pyogenic, 617  
 Sulfur arthritis, rheumatoid, use discarded 556, 557  
 Suprapatellar fat pad, 494  
 Sural artery 70  
 Sural nerve 72  
 Surgery of knee joint 628-727  
   anatomic considerations, 632-637  
   arteries, 636  
   bony elements, 632  
   burns 635-636  
   capsule fibrous, 632-633  
   nerves, cutaneous, 636-637  
   synovial, 634-635  
   tendon, quadriceps femoris, 633-634  
   anesthesia, 631  
   approaches, anterior region 639-669  
   landmarks, 639-641  
   parapatellar incisions. See Incisions, parapatellar  
   lar  
   anterolateral, 646-647  
   anatomy (surgical) 646-647  
   incisions. See Incisions, anterolateral  
   anteromedial, 646-652  
   historical review 637-639  
   incisions. See Incisions  
   lateral, 656-659  
   anatomy (surgical) 656-659  
   structures, deep 657  
   superficial, 656  
   incisions. See Incisions, lateral  
   medial, anatomy (surgical) 652-654  
   structures, deep 653  
   superficial, 652  
   incisions. See Incisions, medial  
   patella, division of 668  
   patellar tendon division, 668-669  
   posterior 664-668  
   anatomy (surgical) 664-666  
   structures, deep, 665  
   superficial, 664  
   incisions. See Incisions, posterior  
   posterolateral, 659-664  
   anatomy (surgical) 659-661  
   incisions. See Incisions, posterolateral  
   posteromedial 659-663  
   anatomy (surgical) 659-661  
   incisions. See Incisions, posteromedial  
   quadriceps femoris muscle division, 668-669

## Surgery of knee joint—(Continued)

- closure of edges of wound 631
- dressings 631
- general considerations, 628-629
- incisions. *See* Incisions
- management preoperative 629
- preoperative preparation of local area 629-632
  - avoidance of mechanical irritation, 629
  - Esmarch bandage 630
  - incision 630
  - position of limb 630
  - scrubbing, 629
  - shaving 629
  - tissues, management 630-631
  - Zephiran application 630
- procedures, 669-727
  - amputations. *See* Amputations
  - arthrodesis. *See* Arthrodesis
  - arthroplasty. *See* Arthroplasty
  - drainage for sepsis of knee joint
    - resection, fibula upper end, 708 711
    - transplantation of tendons. *See* Transplantation tendons
  - sepsis avoidance, 631-632
- Suspension balanced after arthroplasty 696
- Sutures. *See* Individual operations
- Sympathectomy arthritis, rheumatoid use discarded, 562
- Synovectomy 502 507
  - adhesions after prevention by McKeever's technic 290, 294 295
  - in arthrodesis for tuberculous joints Henderson technic, 676
  - case report, 507
  - deformities of knee joint in rheumatoid arthritis, 577
  - discussion, 506-507
  - general considerations 502 504
  - hyarthrosis, intermittent, 538
  - indications and contraindications, 506
  - loss of flexion after manipulative therapy for 288
  - and patellectomy In chondromalacia patellae 246
  - postoperative management 505
  - results, postoperative 505-506
  - synovitis, villonodular pigmented 513 514
  - technic 503 505
- Synovia malignant diagnosis, differential, from fibroma of bone chondromyxoid 774 775
- Synovial fluid 495-496
  - bacteriostatic or bactericidal quality 457
  - cell content 495
  - changes, after hemarthrosis 496
  - in inflammation, 496
  - composition and volume 496
  - effusion massive aspiration in gout, 607
  - function 495-496
  - mucin 494 495
- Synovialis, affections 494 525
  - anatomy 494 634-635
  - fluid. *See* Synovial fluid
  - folds 495
  - hemarthrosis traumatic 499 500
  - clinical manifestations 499 500

## Synovialis—(Continued)

- hemarthrosis, traumatic—(Continued)
  - etiology 499
  - management 500
- hyperplasia, in arthritis, degenerative 582
- laceration of lining hemarthrosis into knee joint 393
- synovium, malignant. *See* Synovium, malignant
- synovitis. *See* Synovitis
- variations, adipose 495
  - areolar 494
  - fibrous, 494-495
- villous formation, in arthritis, degenerative 582
- Synovium malignant 518 525
  - appearance macroscopic 519 520
  - microscopic, 520-524
  - case report, 519 520
  - clinical manifestations 518-520
  - diagnosis, 524
    - differential 524
  - incidence 518
  - prognosis, 525
  - sites, 518
  - synonyms, 518
  - treatment, 524-525
- Synovitis of knee joint, diagnosis, differential, from osteoid osteoma 739
- with recurrent dislocation of patella 192
- syphilitic diagnosis, serologic examination, 502
- traumatic, acute, 496-499
  - clinical features, 497-498
  - diagnosis, differential, from arthritis, pyogenic 616
  - etiology 496-497
  - management, 498-499
    - technic of aspiration, 498-499
  - with effusion with hydrops of intra-articular soft tissue in degenerative arthritis, 582
- tuberculous, diagnosis biopsy 502
- villonodular pigmented, 507 518
  - with advanced osteoarthritic alterations, 192
  - with bursitis, 526 529
  - case reports, 514 518
  - diagnosis differential, 507 508
    - from fibroma of bone nonosteogenic 773
  - etiology 507 509
  - theories of origin 507 509
  - form circumscribed, 511 512
  - clinical manifestations, 513
    - diffuse 509-512
  - history 509
  - pathologic features, 509
  - prognosis, 514
  - surgical treatment synovectomy 513 514
  - synonyms, 508
  - See also* Tumor giant-cell
- villous, chronic nonspecific, 500-507
  - clinical manifestations 501 502
  - diagnosis, 502
    - differential 502
      - from synovitis, villonodular pigmented, 507 508
  - etiology 500-501
  - recurrences after synovectomy 503

- Synovitis of knee joint—(Continued)  
 vitreous, chronic nonspecific—(Continued)  
 treatment, conservative, 502  
 postoperative management 503  
 surgical, case report, 507  
 synovectomy 502 507
- Syphilis of bone diagnosis, differential, from neoplasm of bone, 735
- Syringomyelia, from sarcoma, osteogenic, 740
- Syringomyelia, with neuropathic arthropathies 607
- Talus dorsalis, with Charcot joint, 607
- "Tailor" muscle 27 28
- Talipes equinovarus, with absence of fibula, congenital 276
- Talipes equinus, surgical treatment neurectomy of soleus muscle, 353
- Tes subcutaneus thick, 24 25
- Tendon(s) adductor brevis, 33  
 longus, 33  
 magnus 641 653  
 biceps femoris, 35 47 640, 641  
 gastrocnemius, medial head anatomy 634-635  
 gracilis, 32  
 hamstring, transplantation to femoral condyles, Eggers technic, 351 353  
 infrapatellar 45  
 see joint, snapping, 152  
 aggraving for fibula absence, congenital, 278  
 tellar 38  
 anatomy 633 634 640, 652  
 avulsion, from patella 209 210  
 treatment 209-210  
 from tibial tubercle 206-209  
 treatment, 207 209  
 Tendon Textor incision, 668 669  
 1, 15 16  
 Taque monkey 16  
 attachment to retained upper fragment of fractured patella, 223 224  
 urea, old, 210, 211  
 ing in treatment of Osgood Schlatter's disease, 239 240  
 1, anatomy 38 47 48, 52 53 55 58 634  
 657  
 Tendon and hyperextension of knee joint 94  
 reextension of knee joint, 97 98  
 prevention of anterior displacement of meniscus in flexion, 120  
 in rotation of knee joint, 101 104  
 pons muscle, minor 32  
 quadriceps femoris, anatomy 30 31 37 48 59 633  
 634 636  
 division, Coonse and Adams incision 663, 669  
 reattachment to retained lower fragment of fractured patella, 223 224  
 ruptures, old, 203 207  
 postoperative management, 205 207  
 rectus femoris, 29 31 633 640 641  
 sartorius 28  
 avulsion from tibial insertion, with complete rupture of tibial collateral ligament, 370  
 semimembranosus, 36 47 49 52 634
- Tendon(s)—(Continued)  
 semitendinosus 35  
 avulsion from tibial insertion, with complete rupture of tibial collateral ligament, 370  
 transposition, 412-413  
 suprapatellar 45  
 transplantation for paralyzed quadriceps, 697 706  
 biceps femoris, 706  
 and sartorius muscles, 703  
 and semitendinosus muscles, 699 703  
 postoperative management 702 703  
 and tensor fascia femoris muscles, Yount technique, 704 706  
 deformities, associated, 699  
 general considerations, 697-698  
 historical considerations 697  
 indications, 698-699  
 sartorius, and biceps femoris muscles, 703  
 and tensor fascia femoris muscles, Ober technic 702 704  
 semitendinosus and biceps femoris muscles, 699 703  
 postoperative management, 702 703  
 tensor fascia and biceps femoris muscles, Yount technic, 704 706  
 tensor fascia and sartorius muscles, Ober technic, 702 704  
 vastus, intermedius, 30  
 lateralis, 29 48 633  
 medialis, 48, 633  
 Tenotomy for fibula absence, congenital 278  
 of hamstring muscles, for bony ankylosis of knee in flexion 298 300  
 after osteotomy supracondylar circular for flexion contractures after injuries to knee joint, 300  
 Tensor fascia femoris muscle, and biceps femoris muscle, transplantation of tendons for paralysis of quadriceps muscle, Yount technic, 704-706  
 role in flexion contracture, of hip 329 331  
 after injuries to knee joint, 296  
 and sartorius muscle transplantation of tendons for paralysis of quadriceps muscle, Ober technic, 702 704  
 as extensor of knee joint, 27 28, 67  
 as flexor of knee joint, 80, 81  
 role, in flexion contracture of hip 329  
 in knock knee, 330  
 Test, compression, for determination of injury to meniscus, 150 152  
 extension, for determination of injury to meniscus 150, 152  
 Fouches, to detect tear of meniscus posterior segment, 150 151 161  
 McMurray's, to detect lesions of meniscus, posterior segment, 150 151 161  
 Wassermann, buritis of knee joint, syphilitic, 529  
 Tetanus antitoxin, wounds of knee joint penetrating 457  
 Textor incision, division of patellar tendon 668 669  
 Thigh anatomy normal 24-37

## Thigh—(Continued)

- cross section, distal third 3
- middle 37
- fasciae 24 27
- lata (deep) 24 7
- superficial (tela subcutanea) 24 25
- muscles, 27 37
  - abductor 28
  - adductor (medial) 32-36
  - anterior 27 32
  - extensor 35 36
  - flexor 29 32 33
  - hamstring (posterior) 34 36
  - medial (adductor) 32-34
  - posterior (hamstring) 34 36
  - rotator 33
    - external 32 35
    - internal 28, 32 36
- Thomas ring, with weight bearing caliper after arthroplasty 696
- walking caliper splint, fracture femur distal end supracondylar 430
- Thompson quadricepsplasty for flexion increase after reduction of femoral fracture 290-293
  - postoperative management, 292 293
  - technique, 290-292
- Thrombophlebitis after meniscectomy 181
- Thromboplastogen deficiency as etiologic factor in hemophilic arthritis, 593
- Thud in knee joint, from congenital discoid meniscus, 160
- Thyroid administration as therapy arthritis degenerative 587
- Tibia, abduction, and adduction rocking on femur 100-101
  - ligaments as checkreins, 358
  - absence congenital, 268, 269 271 276
    - coexisting anomalies, 69
    - diagnosis, differential, from congenital absence of fibula, 277 278
  - treatment, 271 276
    - conservative, 271
    - operative amputation through knee joint, 271 272 274 276
    - stabilization of distal end of fibula, 274 276
    - transfer of fibula (Putti) 271 275
      - postoperative management 274
  - bone graft from, in arthrodesis, Brittain technique 677
  - Putti technique 675 677
  - bowing, severe treatment operative osteotomy 279
  - chimpanzee 18
  - condyle lateral fracture mechanism, 363
    - with rupture of tibial collateral ligament 391
    - and anterior cruciate 391
  - deformities torsion with paralyzed quadriceps muscle 699
  - displacement anteroposterior on femur 98 100
  - dog 15 16
  - evolution 8 9
  - fixation of patella to in Bosworth technique of arthrodesis for non-tuberculous affections of knee joint, 681

## Tibia—(Continued)

- fracture(s) proximal end 443-454
  - condylar 443-446
    - comminution and impaction, 443-447
    - diagnosis, 445-446
    - lateral, 443-452
      - comminuted, 449-452
      - depressed type 448-451
      - management, 446-452
      - mechanisms, 446-447
      - or medial, without displacement management, 447 448
    - with lesions, associated, 444 445
    - and shaft 453
  - Intercondylar (T or Y) 443 452-454
    - reduction, closed, 452-453
    - open 453-454
      - postreduction management 452-453
      - principles, 452
    - mechanism, 443-446
    - types, 443-445
      - spine or plateau, Bernarthrosis into knee joint
  - genu varum. See Genu varum
  - head, avulsion of bone flake 365
  - hyperextension extreme on femur 279
  - ligaments. See Individual ligaments
  - macaque monkey 17
  - opossum, 12 14
  - osteochondritis dissecans, 472
  - osteomyelitis, diagnosis, differential, from arthritis pyogenic 616
  - osteotomy for genu recurvatum after poliomyelitis 334
  - and patella, anatomic relation, 82-83
  - patellar tendon abnormally attached to 187
  - proximal end, 45-48
    - chondroblastoma benign, 736 737
    - cyst bone 767
    - fibroma, nonosteogenic, 773
    - fractures. See Tibia fractures, proximal end
    - sarcoma osteogenic, 736, 783
    - torsion deformity outward, 188
    - tumor giant-cell 758
    - walrus deformity osteotomy open wedge 3 337
  - retroversion, site 303 305
  - rotation external, on femur with flexion contour of knee joint 329
    - ligaments as checkreins, 358
  - spine avulsion, differential diagnosis from meniscus lesions, 162
    - fracture differential diagnosis from meniscus lesions, 162
  - stress and strains, 77 78
  - column theory 7
  - subluxation posterior in rheumatoid arthritis, c
  - sulotomy 570 572
    - Wilson technique 56 572 5 4
  - torsion, 330, 336-340, 142
    - angle in primates, cursorial animals and man
    - etiology 337 338
    - examination, physical, 338-339
    - measurement 336-337

- Tibia—(Continued)  
 torsion—(Continued)  
 treatment 339-340, 342  
 manipulation, 339  
 postoperative 340, 342  
 surgical, 330, 339-340 342  
 rotation osteotomy 339 340, 342  
 O'Donoghue technic, 340, 342  
 types, 336  
 berke anatomy 46, 640 656  
 avulsion epiphysis, complete 236-237  
 treatment, 236-237  
 of patellar tendon from 206-209  
 treatment, 207 209  
 fractures 234-235  
 clinical features, 234 235  
 mechanism 234  
 treatment, 235  
 separation of upper epiphysis from 235  
 treatment, 235  
 Smillie operative technic for anchorage in recur  
 rent dislocation of patella, 194-196  
 turtle 12 13  
 Tibia vara (osteochondrosls deformans [tibiae]) 307  
 321 325  
 adolescent, 322 325  
 clinical features, 324  
 etiology 323  
 roentgenographic features, 323 324  
 treatment, 324-325  
 conservative 324  
 spontaneous correction, 324  
 surgical, 323 325  
 causing angular deformities in and about knee  
 joint, 305  
 with genu valgum, severe, oblique osteotomy 312  
 313  
 infantile, 321 322  
 etiology 322  
 pathology 322  
 Tibial artery, recurrent, 70, 72 636  
 Tibial muscle anterior 656  
 Tibial nerve (internal popliteal) 66, 70 73 665  
 Tibialis muscle anterior 27 28  
 posterior 36  
 Tibiofibula frog 10 11  
 salamander 10 11  
 Tibial osteoid formation, in arthritis degenerative  
 582  
 Tobruk splint immobilization for wounds of knee  
 joint penetrating, 459  
 Toe(s) formation of Heberden's nodes in degenera  
 tive arthritis, 581 584  
 great involvement, in gout, 605  
 Tophi See Gout  
 Trabeculae of femur system compression (medial)  
 41  
 longitudinal, 44  
 medial (compression) 41  
 tensile 41-43  
 transverse 44  
 Traction, adhesive fracture femur distal end, supra  
 condylar 429  
 arthritis pyogenic 618  
 Traction—(Continued)  
 Buck's extension, for flexion contracture after in  
 juries to knee joint, 296  
 skeletal, after capsulotomy posterior deformities  
 of knee in rheumatoid arthritis 572  
 dislocation of knee joint, traumatic, 419  
 fracture femur distal end, condylar in sagittal  
 plane 438  
 intercondylar 432-435  
 supracondylar reduction closed 425-430  
 tibia, proximal end condylar lateral depressed  
 type, 448-449  
 intercondylar 452  
 separation femur epiphysis, distal 441  
 subluxation, tibia 567  
 Thomas splint with Pearson attachment arthritis,  
 pyogenic, 619  
 fracture, femur condylar 438  
 intercondylar 432  
 middle third, 285 286  
 supracondylar 429  
 Thompson's quadricepsplasty, 292  
 wounds of knee joint penetrating, 460 461  
 skin, Buck's extension, arthritis, pyogenic, 619  
 Transfusions of whole blood, after operations on knee  
 joint, 652  
 Trauma, genu valgum from, 306  
 Triangle Codman's, 778 782  
 Trochanter muscle 34  
 Tuberculosis, with ankylosis, bony in flexion, 297  
 of bone cystic, diagnosis differential from car  
 cinoma of bone metastatic, 740  
 diagnosis, differential from bone neoplasms, 735  
 knee joint, loose bodies with 491  
 Tumor(s) of bone See Neoplasms of bone in region  
 of knee joint  
 Ewing's, diagnosis, differential, from neuroblastoma  
 metastatic bone lesions, 740  
 from osteomyelitis, acute 739 40  
 site, 736, 737  
 giant-cell 750-764  
 age 751  
 clinical features, 754-755  
 diagnosis, 759-761  
 age as factor 756  
 differential 759  
 from carcinoma metastatic, 760-761  
 from chondroblastoma of bone benign 750  
 759 760  
 from cyst, bone 759 768  
 from dysplasia, fibrous, 760  
 from fibroma of bone, chondromyxoid, 774  
 775  
 nonosteogenic, 773  
 from hyperparathyroidism, 760  
 malignant from benign, 750 757 759  
 from sarcoma osteogenic, 750, 760  
 etiology 751 752  
 traumatic theory 751  
 incidence, 751  
 malignant, diagnosis, differential, from benign,  
 750, 757 759  
 from carcinoma, metastatic, 795

## Tibia—(Continued)

- cross section, distal third 3
- middle, 37
- fasciae 24-27
  - late (deep) 24-27
  - superficial (tela subcutanea) 24 25
- muscles, 27 37
  - abductor 28
  - adductor (medial) 32 36
  - anterior 27 32
  - extensor 35 36
  - flexor 29 32 33
  - hamstring (posterior) 34-36
  - medial (adductor) 32-34
  - posterior (hamstring) 34-36
  - rotator 33
    - external, 32 35
    - internal 28, 32 36
- Thomas, ring with weight-bearing caliper after arthroplasty 696
- walking caliper splint, fracture, femur distal end, supracondylar 430
- Thompson quadricepsplasty for flexion increase after reduction of femoral fracture 290-293
  - postoperative management, 292 293
  - technic 290-292
- Thrombophlebitis, after meniscectomy, 181
- Thromboplastogen deficiency as etiologic factor in hemophilic arthritis, 593
- Thud, in knee joint, from congenital discoid meniscus, 160
- Thyroid, administration as therapy arthritis, degenerative 587
- Tibia, abduction, and adduction rocking on femur 100-101
  - ligaments as checkreins, 358
- absence congenital, 268 269 271 276
  - coexisting anomalies, 269
  - diagnosis, differential, from congenital absence of fibula, 277 278
  - treatment, 271 276
    - conservative, 271
    - operative, amputation through knee joint, 271 272 274 276
    - stabilization of distal end of fibula 274 276
    - transfer of fibula (Putti) 271 275
    - postoperative management, 274
- bone graft from, to arthrodesis, Brittain technic 677
- Putti technic, 675 67
- bowling severe treatment, operative osteotomy 279
- chimpanzee, 18
- condyle lateral fracture mechanism 363
  - with rupture of tibial collateral ligament 391
  - and anterior cruciate 391
- deformities torsion, with paralyzed quadriceps muscle, 699
- displacement, anteroposterior on femur 98-100
- dog, 15 16
- evolution, 8-9
- fixation of patella to in Bosworth technic of arthrodesis for posttuberculous affections of knee joint, 681

## Tibia—(Continued)

- fracture(s) proximal end, 443-454
  - condylar 443-446
    - combination and impaction, 443-447
    - diagnosis, 445-446
    - lateral, 443-452
      - comminuted, 449-452
      - depressed type 448-451
      - management, 446-452
      - mechanisms, 446-447
      - or medial, without displacement 447 448
      - with lesions, associated, 444 445
      - and shaft, 453
    - intercondylar (T or X) 443 452-454
    - reduction, closed, 452-453
    - open 453-454
    - postreduction management 452-453
    - principles, 452
    - mechanism 443-446
    - types, 443-445
      - spine or plateau, hemiarthrosis into knee joint genu varum
    - head avulsion of bone flake 365
    - hyperextension, extreme on femur 279
    - ligaments. See individual ligaments
    - macaque monkey 17
    - opossum, 12 14
    - osteochondritis dissecans, 472
    - osteomyelitis, diagnosis, differential, from pyogenic, 616
    - osteotomy for genu recurvatum after polk 334
  - and patella, anatomic relation 82-83
  - patellar tendon abnormality attached to, 18
  - proximal end, 45-48
    - chondroblastoma, benign, 736 737
    - cryst, bone, 767
    - fibroma, nonosteogenic, 773
    - fractures. See Tibia, fractures, proximal end
    - sarcoma, osteogenic, 736 783
    - torsion deformity outward, 188
    - tumor giant-cell, 758
    - valgus deformity osteotomy open wed 317
  - retroversion, site, 303 305
  - rotation, external on femur with flexion of knee joint, 329
    - ligaments as checkreins, 358
  - spine, avulsion, differential diagnosis, from lesions, 162
    - fracture differential diagnosis, from lesions, 162
  - stress and strains, 77 78
  - column theory 77
  - subluxation, posterior in rheumatoid arthritis 570-572
    - Wilson technic, 567 572 5 4
  - torsion, 330, 336-340, 342
    - angle in primates, cursorial animals and etiology 337 338
    - examination, physical, 338-339
    - measurement 336-337

Tibia—(Continued)

torion—(Continued)

- treatment, 339 340, 342
- manipulation, 339
- postoperative, 340, 342
- surgical, 330, 339 340 342
- rotation osteotomy 339 340, 342
- O'Donoghue technic 340, 342
- types, 336

- tubercle, anatomy 46 640, 656
- avulsion, epiphysis, complete, 236-237
- treatment, 236-237
- of patellar tendon from 206 209
- treatment 207 209
- fractures, 234-235
- clinical features, 234-235
- mechanism 234
- treatment, 235
- separation of upper epiphysis from, 235
- treatment, 235
- Smillie operative technic for anchorage in recur-
- rent dislocation of patella, 194-196

turk 12 13

Tibia vara (osteochondrodis deformans tibiae) 307

- adolescent, 322 325
- clinical features, 324
- etiology 323
- roentgenographic features, 323 324
- treatment, 324-325
- conservative 324
- spontaneous correction, 324
- surgical, 323 325
- causing angular deformities in and about knee
- joint, 305
- with genu valgum, severe, oblique osteotomy 312
- 313

infantile, 321 322

- etiology 322
- pathology 322
- Tibial artery recurrent, 70 72 636
- Tibial muscle anterior 656
- Tibial nerve (internal popliteal) 66, 70, 73 665
- Tibialis muscle anterior 27 28
- posterior 36

Tubifibula frog, 10, 11

salamander 10 11

Tissue osteoid, formation in arthritis, degenerative, 582

Tobruk splint, immobilization for wounds of knee joint, penetrating, 459

Toe(s) formation of Heberden's nodes in degenerative arthritis, 581 584

great involvement, in gout, 605

Tophi. See Gout

Trabeculae of femur system compression (medial)

- 41
- longitudinal, 44
- medial (compression) 41
- tensile 41-43
- transverse 44

Traction, adhesive, fracture femur distal end, supra-

condylar 429

arthritis, pyogenic, 618

Traction—(Continued)

Buck's extension, for flexion contracture after in-

jury to knee joint, 296

skeletal, after capsulotomy posterior deformities

of knee in rheumatoid arthritis 572

dislocation of knee joint, traumatic, 419

fracture femur distal end condylar in sagittal

plane 438

intercondylar 432-435

supracondylar reduction, closed 425-430

tibia proximal end condylar lateral depressed

type, 448-449

Intercondylar 452

separation, femur epiphysis, distal 441

subluxation, tibia, 567

Thomas splint with Pearson attachment arthritis

pyogenic, 619

fracture femur condylar 438

Intercondylar 432

middle third, 285 286

supracondylar 429

Thompson's quadricepsplasty 292

wounds of knee joint, penetrating 460 461

skin Buck's extension, arthritis, pyogenic 619

Transfusions of whole blood, after operations on knee

joint, 632

Trauma genu valgum from 306

Triangle Codman's 778, 782

Trochanter muscle, 34

Tuberculosis, with ankylosis, bony in flexion 297

of bone, cystic, diagnosis differential from car-

cinoma of bone, metastatic, 740

diagnosis, differential from bone neoplasms 735

Tumor(s) of bone. See Neoplasms of bone in region

of knee joint

Ewing's, diagnosis, differential, from neuroblastoma

metastatic bone lesions, 740

from osteomyelitis, acute, 739 740

site, 736 737

giant-cell 750-764

age, 751

clinical features, 754-755

diagnosis 759 761

age as factor 736

differential 759

from carcinoma, metastatic, 760- 71

from chondroblastoma of bone benign 750,

759 760

from cyst, bone 759 68

from dysplasia, fibrous, 760

from fibroma of bone chondromyxoid, 774

nonosteogenic, 773

from hyperparathyroidism, 760

malignant from benign, 750, 757 759

from sarcoma, osteogenic, 750, 760

etiology 751 752

traumatic theory 751

incidence, 751

malignant diagnosis, differential, from benign,

750, 757 759

from carcinoma, metastatic, 795





